Service Manual

iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series

Canon

Jul 3 2008

Symbols Used

This documentation uses the following symbols to indicate special information:

Symbol	Description
	Indicates an item of a non-specific nature, possibly classified as Note, Caution, or Warning.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid electric shocks.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid combustion (fire).
	Indicates an item prohibiting disassembly to avoid electric shocks or problems.
	Indicates an item requiring disconnection of the power plug from the electric outlet.
Memo	Indicates an item intended to provide notes assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
REF.	Indicates an item of reference assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
	Provides a description of a service mode.
	Provides a description of the nature of an error indication.

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

1. Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.
   In the diagrams, ▭▮▮▮▭ represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol , the arrow ⟶ indicates the direction of the electric signal.
   The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.
2. In the digital circuits, '1'is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low".(The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (*) as in "DRMD*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'.
   In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.
All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine."

Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1 System Construction 1- 1
1.1.1 System Configuration of Original Feeding Options 1- 1
1.1.2 System Configuration of Pickup/Delivery Options 1- 2
1.1.3 System Configuration of Print/Send Options 1- 4
1.1.4 Functions of Print/Send Options 1- 6
1.2 Product Specifications 1- 7
1.2.1 Names of Parts 1- 7
1.2.1.1 External View 1- 7
1.2.1.2 Cross-Section 1- 8
1.2.2 Using the Machine 1- 9
1.2.2.1 Turning On the Power Switch 1- 9
1.2.2.2 When Turning Off the Main Power Switch 1- 9
1.2.2.3 Control Panel 1- 11
1.2.3 User Mode Items 1- 12
1.2.3.1 Overview 1- 12
1.2.3.2 Common Settings 1- 12
1.2.3.3 Timer Settings 1- 13
1.2.3.4 Adjustment/Cleaning 1- 13
1.2.3.5 Report Settings 1- 14
1.2.3.6 System Settings 1- 14
1.2.3.7 Copy Settings 1- 16
1.2.3.8 Communications Settings*2 ..... 1- 17
1.2.3.9 Mail Box Settings 1- 18
1.2.3.10 Address Book Settings*5 ..... 1- 18
1.2.4 Maintenance by the User 1- 19
1.2.4.1 Routine Cleaning 1- 19
1.2.4.2 Inspection 1- 22
1.2.5 Safety 1- 23
1.2.5.1 Points to note at disassembly/assembly 1- 23
1.2.5.2 Safety of the Laser Light 1- 23
1.2.5.3 CDRH Regulations 1- 23
1.2.5.4 Handling the Laser Unit 1- 23
1.2.5.5 Safety of Toner 1- 24
1.2.5.6 Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery 1- 25
1.2.6 Product Specifications 1- 25
1.2.6.1 Methods/Functions 1- 25
1.2.7 Function List 1- 26
1.2.7.1 Printing Speed 1- 26
1.2.7.2 Paper Type 1- 28

Chapter 2 Installation

2.1 Making Pre-Checks 2- 1
2.1.1 Checking Installation Environment 2- 1
2.1.2 Points to Note Before Installation 2- 2
2.1.3 Combination Table of Accessories 2- 2
2.1.4 Checking the Contents 2- 3
2.2 Unpacking and Installation 2- 5
2.2.1 Unpacking and Removing Fixing Member 2- 5
2.2.2 Installing the Filter 2- 6
2.2.3 Installing Toner Container 2- 7
2.2.4 Installing Drum Unit 2- 8

2.2.5 Installing Other Parts 2- 11
2.2.6 Fixing the Host Machine 2- 13
2.2.7 Connecting the Cable 2- 13
2.2.8 Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power 2- 14
2.2.9 Stirring Toner 2- 14
2.2.10 Cassette Setting 2- 14
2.2.11 APVC Correction of Drum 2- 14
2.2.12 Auto Gradation Correction 2- 14
2.2.13 Screen Position Adjustment 2- 15
2.3 Checking the Connection to the Network 2- 17
2.3.1 Overview 2- 17
2.3.2 Ping Operation Procedure 2- 17
2.3.3 Checking Network with Remote Host Address 2- 17
2.3.4 When Not Using Network Connection 2- 17
2.4 Troubleshooting the Network 2- 17
2.4.1 Overview 2- 17
2.4.2 Check with Loopback Address 2- 17
2.4.3 Check with Local Host Address 2- 17
2.5 Checking the Images/Operations 2- 17
2.5.1 Checking the Image/Operation 2- 17
2.6 Installing the Card Reader 2- 18
2.6.1 Notice At Installation 2- 18
2.6.2 Checking the Contents 2- 18
2.6.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 18
2.6.4 Installation Procedure 2- 18
2.6.5 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (hereinafter referred to iWAM) Environment 2- 21
2.7 Installing the Original Holder 2- 21
2.7.1 Notice At Installation 2- 21
2.7.2 Checking Components 2- 21
2.7.3 Installation Procedure 2- 21
2.8 Installing the Reader Heater 2- 22
2.8.1 Checking Parts to Install 2- 22
2.8.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 23
2.8.3 Installation Procedure 2- 23
2.9 Installing the Cassette Heater 2- 26
2.9.1 Checking Parts to Install 2- 26
2.9.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 26
2.9.3 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Unit) 2- 26
2.10 Installing the Cassette Heater for the Cassette Pedestal 2- 29
2.10.1 Checking Parts to Install 2- 30
2.10.2 Checking Parts to Install 2- 30
2.10.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 30
2.10.4 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Unit) 2- 30
2.10.5 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Attachment) 2- 31
2.11 Installing the Deck Heater 2- 35
2.11.1 Checking the Parts to Install 2- 35
2.11.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 35
2.11.3 Installation Procedure 2- 35
2.12 Installing the Memory 2- 38
2.12.1 Checking the Contents 2- 38
2.12.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 38
2.12.3 Installation Procedure 2- 38
2.13 Installing the Memory (System upgrade memory) 2- 38
2.13.1 Checking the Contents 2- 38
2.13.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 38

2.13.3 Installation Procedure 2- 39
2.14 Installing the Expansion Bus Kit 2- 39
2.14.1 Checking the contents 2- 39
2.14.2 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine 2- 39
2.14.3 Installation Procedure 2- 39
2.15 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit 2- 40
2.15.1 Notice At Installation 2- 40
2.15.2 Checking the Contents 2- 40
2.15.3 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine 2- 40
2.15.4 Installation Procedure 2- 40
2.15.5 Checking the Settings 2- 43
2.15.6 Operation Check 2- 43
2.16 Installing the Voice Operation Kit 2- 43
2.16.1 Notice At Installation 2- 43
2.16.2 Checking the Contents 2- 43
2.16.3 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine 2- 44
2.16.4 Installation Procedure 2- 44
2.16.5 Checking the Settings 2- 48
2.16.6 Operation Check 2- 48
2.17 Installing the Wireless Network Interface Adapter 2- 48
2.17.1 Notice At Installation 2- 48
2.17.2 Checking the Contents 2- 48
2.17.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 48
2.17.4 Installation Procedure 2- 49
2.17.5 Attaching the Label 2- 50
2.18 Installing the IPSec Board 2- 50
2.18.1 Notice At Installation 2- 50
2.18.2 Checking the Contents 2- 50
2.18.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2- 50
2.18.4 Installation Procedure 2- 50

Chapter 3 Basic Operation

3.1 Construction 3- 1
3.1.1 Functional Construction 3- 1
3.1.2 Connecting the Main PCBs 3- 2
3.2 Basic Sequence 3- 3
3.2.1 Basic Sequence of Operation at Power-On 3- 3

Chapter 4 Main Controller

4.1 Construction 4- 1
4.1.1 Construction and Mechanisms 4- 1
4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry 4- 3
4.2.1 Main Controller PCB 4- 3
4.2.2 HDD 4- 4
4.3 Start-Up Sequence 4- 6
4.3.1 Overview 4- 6
4.4 Shut-Down Sequence 4- 7
4.4.1 Overview 4- 7
4.4.2 Flow of Operation 4- 7
4.5 Image Processing 4- 8
4.5.1 Construction of the Image Processing Module 4- 8
4.5.2 Reader Unit Input Image Processing 4- 8
4.5.3 Compression/Extension/Editing Block 4- 9

4.5.4 Printer unit Output Image Processing 4- 9
4.6 Flow of Image Data 4- 10
4.6.1 Flow of Image Data According to Copy Functions 4- 10
4.6.2 Flow of Image Data for the Box Function 4- 10
4.6.3 Flow of Image Data for the SEND Function 4- 11
4.6.4 Flow of Image Data for the Fax Transmission 4- 11
4.6.5 Flow of Image Data for the Fax Reception Function 4- 12
4.6.6 Flow of Image Data for the PDL Function 4- 12
4.7 Parts Replacement Procedure 4- 13
4.7.1 Image PCB 4- 13
4.7.1.1 Removing the Image PCB 4- 13
4.7.2 Main Controller PCB 4- 13
4.7.2.1 Before Removing the Main Controller PCB 4- 13
4.7.2.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB 4- 13
4.7.3 SDRAM 4- 14
4.7.3.1 Removing the SDRAM (for image processing) 4- 14
4.7.3.2 Removing the SDRAM (for system processing) 4- 15
4.7.4 HDD 4- 15
4.7.4.1 Removing the HDD 4- 15
4.7.5 Wireless LAN PCB 4- 15
4.7.5.1 Removing the Wireless LAN PCB 4- 15
4.7.6 IPSec PCB 4- 16
4.7.6.1 Removing the IPSec PCB 4- 16
4.7.7 PCI Bus Expansion PCB 4- 17
4.7.7.1 Before Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB 4- 17
4.7.7.2 Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB 4- 17
4.7.8 Voice Guidance PCB 4- 17
4.7.8.1 Removing the Voice Guidance PCB 4- 17
4.7.9 Voice Operation PCB 4- 18
4.7.9.1 Removing the Voice Operation PCB 4- 18
4.7.10 FAX Expansion PCB 4- 19
4.7.10.1 Removing the FAX Expansion PCB 4- 19

Chapter 5 Original Exposure System

5.1 Construction 5- 1
5.1.1 Specifications/controls/functions 5- 1
5.1.2 Major Components 5- 2
5.1.3 Configuration of Control System 5- 3
5.1.4 Reader Controller PCB 5- 4
5.2 Basic Sequence 5- 5
5.2.1 Basic Sequence at Power-On 5- 5
5.2.2 Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (book mode/1 original) 5- 5
5.2.3 Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (ADF mode/1 original) 5- 5
5.3 Various Control 5- 6
5.3.1 Controlling the Scanner Drive System 5- 6
5.3.1.1 Overview 5- 6
5.3.1.2 Scanner Motor Control 5- 6
5.3.2 CCD 5- 8
5.3.2.1 Overview 5- 8
5.3.3 Enlargement/Reduction 5- 11
5.3.3.1 Magnifications in Main Scanning Direction 5- 11
5.3.3.2 Magnification in Sub Scanning Direction 5- 11
5.3.4 Detecting the Size of Originals 5- 12
5.3.4.1 Overview 5- 12
5.3.4.2 Control Details 5- 12
5.3.4.3 Detection Operation Overview 5- 14
5.3.5 Dirt Sensor Control 5- 15

5.3.5.1 Overview 5- 15
5.3.5.2 White Board Dust Detection Control 5- 17
5.3.6 Image Processing 5- 18
5.3.6.1 Overview 5- 18
5.3.6.2 CCD Drive 5- 18
5.3.6.3 Gain Correction and Offset Correction of CCD Output 5- 18
5.3.6.4 A/D Conversion of CCD Output 5- 19
5.3.6.5 Shading Correction (overview) 5- 19
5.3.6.6 Shading Adjustment 5- 19
5.3.6.7 Shading Correction 5- 19
5.4 Parts Replacement Procedure 5- 20
5.4.1 CCD Unit 5- 20
5.4.1.1 Removing the CCD Unit 5- 20
5.4.1.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit 5- 21
5.4.2 CCD Cover Unit 5- 21
5.4.2.1 Removing the CCD Cover Unit 5- 21
5.4.3 Copyboard glass 5- 21
5.4.3.1 Removing the Copyboard Glass 5- 21
5.4.3.2 When Replacing the Copyboard Glass 5- 22
5.4.3.3 Removing the ADF Reading Glass 5- 23
5.4.3.4 When Replacing the ADF Reading Glass 5- 23
5.4.4 Reader Controller PCB 5- 24
5.4.4.1 Points to Note Before Replacing the Reader Controller PCB 5- 24
5.4.4.2 Removing the Reader Controller PCB 5- 24
5.4.4.3 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB 5- 24
5.4.5 LED Driver PCB 5- 25
5.4.5.1 Removing the LED Driver PCB 5- 25
5.4.6 Scanner Motor 5- 25
5.4.6.1 Removing the Scanner Motor 5- 25
5.4.7 Copyboard Cover Open/Close Sensor 5- 25
5.4.7.1 Removing the Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (Front/Rear) 5- 25
5.4.8 CCD HP Sensor 5- 26
5.4.8.1 Removing the CCD Unit HP Sensor 5- 26
5.4.9 Original Size Sensor 5- 26
5.4.9.1 Removing the Original Size Sensor 5- 26
5.4.10 Reader Heater (option) 5- 27
5.4.10.1 Removing the Reader Heater (Right) 5- 27
5.4.10.2 Removing the Reader Heater (Left) 5- 27

Chapter 6 Laser Exposure

6.1 Construction 6- 1
6.1.1 Specifications/Controls/Functions 6- 1
6.1.2 Main Configuration Parts 6- 1
6.1.3 Control System Configuration 6- 2
6.2 Basic Sequence 6- 3
6.2.1 Basic Sequence 6- 3
6.3 Various Controls 6- 4
6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing 6- 4
6.3.1.1 Laser ON/OFF Control 6- 4
6.3.1.2 Main Scanning Synchronous Control 6- 5
6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light 6- 5
6.3.2.1 APC Control 6- 5
6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor 6- 6
6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control 6- 6
6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter 6- 7
6.3.4.1 Laser Shutter Control 6- 7
6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure 6- 8
6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit 6- 8

6.4.1.1 Before Removing the Laser Unit 6- 8
6.4.1.2 Removing the Laser Unit 6- 8
6.4.1.3 After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit 6- 8

Chapter 7 Image Formation

7.1 Construction 7- 1
7.1.1 Specifications of the Image Formation System 7- 1
7.1.2 Major Components of the Image Formation System 7- 2
7.2 Image Formation Process 7- 3
7.2.1 Image Formation Process (outline) 7- 3
7.2.2 Image Formation Process (image formation) 7- 4
7.3 Basic Sequence 7- 5
7.3.1 Sequence of Operation (initial rotation) 7- 5
7.3.2 Sequence of Operation (copying) 7- 5
7.3.3 Sequence of Operation (last rotation) 7- 6
7.4 Image Stabilization Control 7- 7
7.4.1 Overview 7- 7
7.4.2 APVC Control 7- 7
7.4.3 ATVC Control 7- 7
7.4.4 PASCAL Control (image gradation) 7- 8
7.5 Drum Unit 7- 9
7.5.1 Outline of the Drum Unit 7- 9
7.5.1.1 Configuration 7- 9
7.5.2 Charging Mechanism 7- 10
7.5.2.1 Controlling the Primary Charging Bias 7- 10
7.5.2.2 Primary Charging Roller Cleaning Mechanism 7- 10
7.6 Drum Cleaner Unit 7- 10
7.6.1 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning 7- 10
7.7 Developing Unit 7- 11
7.7.1 Configuration 7- 11
7.7.2 Controlling the Developing Bias 7- 11
7.8 Toner Container 7- 12
7.8.1 Configuration 7- 12
7.8.2 Route of Toner Supply 7- 13
7.8.3 Controlling the Drive of the Toner Cartridge 7- 13
7.8.4 Toner Supply Control 7- 14
7.8.5 Recovery Sequence 7- 14
7.8.6 Toner Level Detection 7- 14
7.9 Transfer Unit 7- 15
7.9.1 Outline of the Transfer Unit 7- 15
7.9.1.1 Outline 7- 15
7.9.2 Controlling the Transfer Bias 7- 15
7.9.2.1 Transfer Roller Bias Control 7- 15
7.9.3 Cleaning 7- 15
7.9.3.1 Transfer Roller Cleaning Mechanism 7- 15
7.9.4 Separation Mechanism 7- 15
7.9.4.1 Controlling the Static Eliminator Bias 7- 15
7.10 Transfer Mechanism 7- 16
7.10.1 Transfer Guide Bias 7- 16
7.10.1.1 Transfer Guide Bias Control 7- 16
7.11 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning 7- 17
7.11.1 Outline 7- 17
7.11.2 Collection of Waste Toner 7- 17
7.11.3 Checking the Waste Toner Box 7- 17
7.12 Parts Replacement Procedure 7- 18

7.12.1 Pre-Exposure Lamp 7- 18
7.12.1.1 Before Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp 7- 18
7.12.1.2 Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp 7- 18
7.12.2 Drum Unit 7- 18
7.12.2.1 Before Removing the Drum Unit 7- 18
7.12.2.2 Removing the Drum Unit 7- 18
7.12.2.3 After Replacing Drum Unit 7- 19
7.12.3 Hopper Assembly 7- 19
7.12.3.1 Before Removing the Hopper Unit 7- 19
7.12.3.2 Removing the Hopper Unit 7- 19
7.12.4 Sub Hopper 7- 20
7.12.4.1 Before Removing the Sub Hopper 7- 20
7.12.4.2 Removing the Sub Hopper 7- 20
7.12.5 Developing Assembly 7- 21
7.12.5.1 Before Removing the Developing Assembly 7- 21
7.12.5.2 Removing the Developing Assembly 7- 21
7.12.5.3 After Replacing Developing Assembly/Developing Cylinder 7- 22
7.12.6 Developing Cylinder 7- 22
7.12.6.1 Before Removing the Developing Cylinder 7- 22
7.12.6.2 Removing the Developing Cylinder 7- 22
7.12.6.3 After Replacing Developing Assembly/Developing Cylinder 7- 23
7.12.7 Transfer Charging Roller 7- 24
7.12.7.1 Removing the Transfer Roller 7- 24
7.12.8 Waste Toner Box 7- 24
7.12.8.1 Removing the Waste Toner Container 7- 24
7.12.9 Toner Level Sensor 7- 25
7.12.9.1 Before Removing the Toner Level Sensor 7- 25
7.12.9.2 Removing the Toner Level Sensor 7- 25
7.12.10 Toner Feedscrew Motor 7- 25
7.12.10.1 Before Removing the Toner Feed Screw Motor 7- 25
7.12.10.2 Removing the Toner Feed Screw Motor 7- 25
7.12.11 Static Charge Eliminator 7- 25
7.12.11.1 Removing the Static Eliminator 7- 25

Chapter 8 Pickup/Feeding System

8.1 Construction 8- 1
8.1.1 Specifications, Controls, and Functions 8- 1
8.1.2 Division into Blocks 8- 2
8.1.3 Arrangement of Rollers 8- 3
8.1.4 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ 3 Way Unit-A1/ copy tray) 8- 4
8.1.5 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ Inbody Finisher/ copy tray) 8- 5
8.1.6 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ Finisher/Saddle Finisher) 8- 6
8.1.7 Arrangement of Sensors 8- 7
8.1.8 Route of Drive 8- 8
8.2 Basic Sequence 8- 10
8.2.1 Basic Sequence 8- 10
8.2.2 Acceleration Intervals 8- 10
8.3 Detecting Jams 8- 14
8.3.1 Delay Jams 8- 14
8.3.1.1 Delay Jam Outside the Cassette Pickup Assembly 8- 14
8.3.1.2 Delay Jam in the Cassette Pickup Assembly 8- 14
8.3.2 Stationary Jams 8- 15
8.3.2.1 Common Stationary Jam 8- 15
8.3.2.2 Stationary Jam at Power-On 8- 15
8.3.3 Other Jams 8- 15
8.3.3.1 Door Open Jam 8- 15
8.3.3.2 Paper size mismatch JAM 8- 16
8.3.3.3 Error retry JAM 8- 16

8.4 Cassette Pick-Up Unit 8- 17
8.4.1 Overview 8- 17
8.4.2 Basic Sequence 8- 17
8.4.3 Identifying the Paper Size 8- 18
8.4.4 Setting Up the Universal Cassette 8- 19
8.4.5 Paper Level Sensor 8- 20
8.5 Manual Feed Pickup Unit 8- 22
8.5.1 Overview 8- 22
8.5.2 Basic Sequence of Operation 8- 22
8.5.3 Identifying the Paper Size 8- 23
8.5.4 Paper Retaining Mechanism 8- 24
8.6 Registration Unit 8- 25
8.6.1 Overview 8- 25
8.6.2 Checking Horizontal Registration 8- 25
8.7 Duplex Feeding Unit 8- 26
8.7.1 Overview 8- 26
8.7.2 Sequence of Image Formation 8- 27
8.7.3 Flow of Paper 8- 28
8.8 Parts Replacement Procedure 8- 30
8.8.1 Pick-up Unit 1 ..... 8- 30
8.8.1.1 Before Removing the Pickup Unit 1 ..... 8- 30
8.8.1.2 Removing the Pickup Unit 1 ..... 8- 30
8.8.2 Pick-up Unit 2 ..... 8- 30
8.8.2.1 Before Removing the Pickup Unit 2 ..... 8- 30
8.8.2.2 Removing the Pickup Unit 2 ..... 8- 30
8.8.3 Pickup Roller 8- 30
8.8.3.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/Separation Roller 8- 30
8.8.4 Sensor Mount 8- 31
8.8.4.1 Before Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate 8- 31
8.8.4.2 Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate 8- 31
8.8.4.3 Attaching the Sensor Mounting Plate 8- 31
8.8.5 Cassette Pick-up Motor 1 ..... 8- 32
8.8.5.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 1 ..... 8- 32
8.8.5.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 1 ..... 8- 32
8.8.6 Cassette Pick-up Motor 2 ..... 8- 33
8.8.6.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 2 ..... 8- 33
8.8.6.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 2 ..... 8- 33
8.8.7 Cassette Size Sensor 8- 33
8.8.7.1 Before Removing the Cassette Size Sensor 8- 33
8.8.7.2 Removing the Cassette Size Sensor 8- 33
8.8.8 Cassette Retry Paper Sensor 8- 34
8.8.8.1 Before Removing the Cassette Retry Paper Sensor 8- 34
8.8.8.2 Removing the Cassette Retry Paper Sensor 8- 34
8.8.9 Cassette Paper Sensor 8- 34
8.8.9.1 Before Removing the Cassette Paper Sensor 8- 34
8.8.9.2 Removing the Cassette Paper Sensor 8- 34
8.8.10 Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B) 8- 34
8.8.10.1 Before Removing the Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B) 8- 34
8.8.10.2 Removing the Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B) 8- 34
8.8.11 Slide Resistor 8- 34
8.8.11.1 Before Removing the Slide Resistor 8- 34
8.8.11.2 Removing the Slide Resistor 8- 35
8.8.12 Cassette Pickup Solenoid 8- 35
8.8.12.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Solenoid 8- 35
8.8.12.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Solenoid 8- 35
8.8.13 Manual Tray Assembly 8- 35
8.8.13.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Tray Unit 8- 35
8.8.13.2 Removing the Manual Feed Tray Unit 8- 35

8.8.13.3 When Replacing the Manual Feed Tray ... 8- 36
8.8.14 Manual Feed Unit ... 8- 36
8.8.14.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Unit ... 8- 36
8.8.14.2 Removing the Manual Feed Unit ... 8- 36
8.8.15 Manual Pickup Roller ... 8- 36
8.8.15.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Roller ... 8- 36
8.8.15.2 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Roller ... 8- 36
8.8.16 Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid ... 8- 37
8.8.16.1 Before Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid ... 8- 37
8.8.16.2 Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid (iR 3425/3235/3230) ... 8- 37
8.8.16.3 Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid (iR 3225) ... 8- 39
8.8.17 Manual Pick-up Clutch ... 8- 40
8.8.17.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3245/3235/3230) ... 8- 40
8.8.17.2 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3245/3235/3230) ... 8- 40
8.8.17.3 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3225) ... 8- 40
8.8.17.4 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3225) ... 8- 40
8.8.18 Manual Separation Pad ... 8- 41
8.8.18.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Separation Pad ... 8- 41
8.8.18.2 Removing the Manual Feed Separation Pad ... 8- 41
8.8.19 Registration Clutch ... 8- 41
8.8.19.1 Before Removing the Registration Clutch ... 8- 41
8.8.19.2 Removing the Registration Clutch ... 8- 41
8.8.20 3 Way Unit ... 8- 41
8.8.20.1 Before Removing the 3 Way Unit ... 8- 41
8.8.20.2 Removing the 3 Way Unit ... 8- 41
8.8.21 Feeding Roller ... 8- 42
8.8.21.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/Separation Roller ... 8- 42
8.8.22 Vertical Path Roller ... 8- 42
8.8.22.1 Before Removing the Vertical Path Roller ... 8- 42
8.8.22.2 Removing the Vertical Path Roller ... 8- 42
8.8.23 Duplex Feed Roller 2 ... 8- 42
8.8.23.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Roller 2 ... 8- 42
8.8.23.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Roller 2 ... 8- 43
8.8.24 Duplex Feed Motor ... 8- 43
8.8.24.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) ... 8- 43
8.8.24.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) ... 8- 43
8.8.25 Duplex Feed Sensor ... 8- 43
8.8.25.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Sensor ... 8- 43
8.8.25.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Sensor ... 8- 43
8.8.26 Duplex Feed Clutch ... 8- 44
8.8.26.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Clutch (iR 3225) ... 8- 44
8.8.26.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Clutch (iR 3225) ... 8- 44
8.8.27 Delivery Assembly 1 ... 8- 44
8.8.27.1 Before Removing the Delivery Unit 1 ... 8- 44
8.8.27.2 Removing the Delivery Unit 1 ... 8- 44
8.8.28 Fixing/ Delivery Drive Assembly ... 8- 44
8.8.28.1 Before Removing the Fixing/Delivery Drive Unit ... 8- 44
8.8.28.2 Removing the Fixing/Delivery Drive Unit ... 8- 45
8.8.29 Separation Roller ... 8- 45
8.8.29.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/Separation Roller ... 8- 45

Chapter 9 Fixing System

9.1 Construction ... 9- 1
9.1.1 Specifications, Control Mechanisms, and Functions ... 9- 1
9.1.2 Major Components ... 9- 1
9.2 Basic Sequence ... 9- 2
9.2.1 Power-On Sequence ... 9- 2
9.2.2 Down Sequence ... 9- 2

9.3 Various Control Mechanisms 9- 3
9.3.1 Controlling the Speed of the Fixing Film 9- 3
9.3.1.1 Controlling the Fixing Film Speed in Response to Low Temperature 9- 3
9.3.1.2 Controlling the Fixing Film Speed 9- 3
9.3.2 Controlling the Fixing Film Temperature 9- 3
9.3.2.1 Controlling the Power Supply in Response to Low Temperature 9- 3
9.3.2.2 Controlling the Feeding in Response to Low Temperature 9- 3
9.3.2.3 Controlling the Power Supply at Start-Up 9- 4
9.3.2.4 Copying Temperature Control 9- 4
9.3.2.5 Changing the Fixing Film Control Temperature 9- 4
9.3.2.6 Temperature Control in Response to Automatic Double-Sided Copy 9- 4
9.3.2.7 Temperature Control in Response to Change of Paper Size 9- 4
9.3.3 Cleaning 9- 5
9.3.3.1 Fixing Film Cleaning 9- 5
9.3.4 Detecting the Passage of Paper 9- 5
9.3.4.1 Detecting the Passage of Paper 9- 5
9.4 Protective Functions 9- 6
9.4.1 Protective Functions 9- 6
9.4.2 Detecting an Error 9- 7
9.5 Parts Replacement Procedure 9- 8
9.5.1 Fixing Unit 9- 8
9.5.1.1 Before Removing the Fixing Unit 9- 8
9.5.1.2 Removing the Fixing Unit 9- 8
9.5.2 Pressure Roller 9- 8
9.5.2.1 Before Removing the Pressure Roller 9- 8
9.5.2.2 Removing the Pressure Roller 9- 8
9.5.3 Cleaning Roller 9- 9
9.5.3.1 Before Removing the Cleaning Roller 9- 9
9.5.3.2 Removing the Cleaning Roller 9- 9
9.5.4 Fixing Film 9- 10
9.5.4.1 Before Removing the Fixing Film Unit 9- 10
9.5.4.2 Removing the Fixing Film Unit 9- 10
9.5.5 Internal Delivery Sensor 9- 12
9.5.5.1 Before Removing the Internal Delivery Sensor 9- 12
9.5.5.2 Removing the Internal Delivery Sensor 9- 12
9.5.6 Fixing Film Sensor 9- 13
9.5.6.1 Before Removing the Fixing Film Sensor 9- 13
9.5.6.2 Removing the Fixing Film Sensor 9- 13
9.5.7 Fixing Inlet Guide 9- 14
9.5.7.1 Before Removing the Fixing Inlet Guide 9- 14
9.5.7.2 Removing the Fixing Inlet Guide 9- 14

Chapter 10 External and Controls

10.1 Control Panel 10- 1
10.1.1 Overview 10- 1
10.1.2 LCD Indication Processing 10- 1
10.1.3 Adjusting the LCD Contrast 10- 1
10.1.4 Adjusting Fax Sound Volume 10- 1
10.1.5 Functions of the Control Panel CPU 10- 2
10.2 Counters 10- 3
10.2.1 Overview 10- 3
10.2.2 Timing of Increasing the Count 10- 3
10.3 Fans 10- 4
10.3.1 Overview 10- 4
10.3.2 2-speed control 10- 5
10.3.3 Operation sequence 10- 5
10.4 Power Supply System 10- 6

10.4.1 Power Supply 10- 6
10.4.1.1 Power Supply Route Inside the Printer 10- 6
10.4.1.2 Power Supply Route in the Reader Unit 10- 8
10.4.1.3 Timing of Supply to the Reader Unit 10- 8
10.4.1.4 Connection to Options 10- 9
10.4.1.5 Heater operating condition 10- 9
10.4.2 Rated Output of the DC Power Supply PCB 10- 9
10.4.2.1 Rated Output of the 24V Power Supply PCB 10- 9
10.4.2.2 Rated Output of the 12V Power Supply PCB 10- 10
10.4.2.3 Rated Output of the Option Power Supply PCB 10- 10
10.4.2.4 Rated Output of the All-Night Power Supply PCB 10- 10
10.4.3 Protection Function 10- 10
10.4.3.1 Protective Functions 10- 10
10.4.4 Backup Battery 10- 10
10.4.4.1 Backup Battery 10- 10
10.4.5 Energy-Saving Function 10- 11
10.4.5.1 Overview 10- 11
10.4.5.2 Power Supply State 10- 11
10.4.5.3 SNMP Settings 10- 12
10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure 10- 14
10.5.1 External Covers 10- 14
10.5.1.1 Delivery Tray 10- 14
10.5.1.2 Delivery Tray Right Cover 10- 14
10.5.1.3 Delivery Tray Rear Cover 10- 14
10.5.1.4 Delivery Tray Rear Cover (Lower) 10- 14
10.5.1.5 Support Cover 10- 15
10.5.1.6 Support Cover (Right) 10- 15
10.5.1.7 Right Cover (Lower Front) 10- 16
10.5.1.8 Right Cover (Rear) 10- 16
10.5.1.9 Inside Right Cover 10- 16
10.5.1.10 Inside Bottom Cover 10- 16
10.5.1.11 Front Cover Unit 10- 17
10.5.1.12 Rear Cover (Upper) 10- 17
10.5.1.13 Rear Cover (Lower) 10- 17
10.5.1.14 Left Cover 10- 17
10.5.1.15 Left Cover (Lower) 10- 18
10.5.1.16 Left Cover (Rear) 10- 18
10.5.1.17 Delivery Cover 10- 18
10.5.1.18 Toner Supply Cover 10- 18
10.5.1.19 Reader Left Cover 10- 19
10.5.1.20 Reader Right Cover 10- 19
10.5.1.21 Reader Front Cover 10- 19
10.5.1.22 Reader Rear Cover 10- 19
10.5.1.23 FAX Unit Cover 10- 20
10.5.1.24 Control Panel Inside Frame 10- 20
10.5.1.25 Control Panel Lower Cover 10- 21
10.5.2 Main Drive Assembly 10- 21
10.5.2.1 Before Removing the Main Drive Unit 10- 21
10.5.2.2 Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3245/3235/3230) 10- 21
10.5.2.3 Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3225) 10- 22
10.5.3 Power Supply Unit 10- 24
10.5.3.1 Before Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB 10- 24
10.5.3.2 Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB 10- 24
10.5.3.3 Before Removing the 24V Power Supply PCB 10- 25
10.5.3.4 Removing the 24V Power Supply PCB 10- 25
10.5.4 Control Panel 10- 25
10.5.4.1 Removing the Control Panel Unit 10- 25
10.5.5 Control Panel LCD Unit 10- 26
10.5.5.1 Before Removing the Control Panel LCD 10- 26
10.5.5.2 Removing the Control Panel LCD 10- 27

10.5.6 DC Controller PCB 10- 27
10.5.6.1 Removing the DC Controller PCB 10- 27
10.5.6.2 When Replacing DC Controller PCB 10- 27
10.5.7 Control Panel Inverter PCB 10- 28
10.5.7.1 Before Removing the Control Panel Inverter PCB 10- 28
10.5.7.2 Removing the Control Panel Inverter PCB 10- 28
10.5.8 Control Panel Key Switch PCB 10- 28
10.5.8.1 Before Removing the Control Panel KEY PCB 10- 28
10.5.8.2 Removing the Control Panel KEY PCB 10- 28
10.5.9 Control Panel CPU PCB 10- 28
10.5.9.1 Before Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB 10- 28
10.5.9.2 Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB 10- 29
10.5.10 Control Panel USB PCB 10- 29
10.5.10.1 Before Removing the Control Panel USB PCB 10- 29
10.5.10.2 Removing the Control Panel USB PCB 10- 29
10.5.11 FAX Unit 10- 29
10.5.11.1 Removing the Fax Unit 10- 29
10.5.12 AC Driver PCB 10- 30
10.5.12.1 Before Removing the AC Driver PCB 10- 30
10.5.12.2 Removing the AC Driver PCB 10- 30
10.5.13 All Night Power Supply PCB 10- 30
10.5.13.1 Before Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB 10- 30
10.5.13.2 Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB 10- 30
10.5.14 Option Power Supply PCB 10- 31
10.5.14.1 Before Removing the Option Power Supply PCB 10- 31
10.5.14.2 Removing the Option Power Supply PCB 10- 31
10.5.15 Relay PCB 10- 31
10.5.15.1 Before Removing the Relay PCB 10- 31
10.5.15.2 Removing the Relay PCB 10- 31
10.5.16 High-Voltage PCB 10- 31
10.5.16.1 Before Removing the High-Voltage Power Supply PCB 10- 31
10.5.16.2 Removing the High-Voltage Power Supply PCB 10- 32
10.5.17 Power Supply Cooling Fan 1 ..... 10- 32
10.5.17.1 Before Removing the Power Supply Cooling Fan 10- 32
10.5.17.2 Removing the Power Supply Cooling Fan 10- 32
10.5.18 Exhaust Fan 10- 33
10.5.18.1 Removing the Exhaust Fan 10- 33
10.5.19 Fan Filter 10- 33
10.5.19.1 Removing the Exhaust Fan Filter 10- 33
10.5.20 Motor of Main Drive Assembly 10- 34
10.5.20.1 Before Removing the Main Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) 10- 34
10.5.20.2 Removing the Main Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) 10- 34
10.5.20.3 Before Removing the Main Motor (iR 3225) 10- 35
10.5.20.4 Removing the Main Motor (iR 3225) 10- 35
10.5.21 Fixing Driver Motor 10- 35
10.5.21.1 Removing the Fixing Driver Motor 10- 35
10.5.22 Right Door/Right Cover 10- 36
10.5.22.1 Releasing the Right Cover 10- 36
10.5.22.2 Removing the Right Cover 10- 37
10.5.23 Circuit Breaker 10- 39
10.5.23.1 Before Removing the Circuit Breaker 10- 39
10.5.23.2 Removing the Circuit Breaker 10- 39

Chapter 11 MEAP

11.1 MEAP 11- 1
11.1.1 Overview 11- 1
11.1.2 Changes 11- 1
11.1.3 Checking the Operating Environment 11- 1

11.1.4 Setting Up the Network 11- 4
11.1.5 Login to SMS 11- 6
11.1.6 Setting the method to login to SMS 11- 8
11.1.7 Checking Application List 11- 12
11.1.8 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application 11- 12
11.1.9 Checking the Platform Information 11- 13
11.1.10 MEAP Specifications 11- 14
11.1.11 MFID 11- 16
11.1.12 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS 11- 18
11.1.13 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application 11- 19
11.1.14 Reference (Application System Information) 11- 20
11.1.15 Installing an Application 11- 21
11.1.16 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager 11- 23
11.1.17 Adding a License File 11- 24
11.1.18 Disabling a License File (suspending a license) 11- 26
11.1.19 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File 11- 27
11.1.20 Reusable license 11- 29
11.1.21 License for forwarding 11- 29
11.1.22 Uninstalling an Application 11- 32
11.1.23 Login Service 11- 33
11.1.24 Changing Login Services 11- 38
11.1.25 Initializing the Password 11- 39
11.1.26 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool) 11- 40
11.1.27 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive 11- 40
11.1.28 MEAP Safe Mode 11- 41
11.1.29 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2) 11- 42
11.1.30 USB keyboard support 11- 44
11.1.31 USB memory related functions(supported outside of Japan and Europe) 11- 45
11.1.32 Reference material 11- 47
11.1.33 Option for exclusive individual measure 11- 48

Chapter 12 e-maintenance/imageWARE Remote

12.1 e-maintenance/imageWARE Remote 12- 1
12.1.1 Overview 12- 1
12.1.2 Settings procedures 12- 1
12.1.3 Troubleshooting guide 12- 4
12.1.4 Service cautions 12- 7

Chapter 13 Maintenance and Inspection

13.1 Periodically Replaced Parts 13- 1
13.1.1 Overview 13- 1
13.1.2 Periodically Replaced Parts 13- 1
13.2 Durables and Consumables 13- 1
13.2.1 Overview 13- 1
13.2.2 ADF 13- 1
13.2.3 Reader 13- 1
13.2.4 Printer Unit 13- 2
13.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure 13- 3
13.3.1 Scheduled Servicing for Reader Unit 13- 3
13.3.2 Scheduled Servicing for the Printer Unit 13- 4
13.4 Cleaning 13- 7
13.4.1 Cleaning Fixing Entrance Guide 13- 7
13.4.2 Cleaning the Mirror inside CCD Unit 13- 8

13.4.3 Cleaning Film Bias Static Eliminator 13- 11

Chapter 14 Standards and Adjustments

14.1 Image Adjustments 14- 1
14.1.1 Standards for Image Position 14- 1
14.1.2 Adjusting the Image Position 14- 1
14.1.3 Left End Margin Adjustment (each pickup position basis) 14- 2
14.2 Scanning System 14- 4
14.2.1 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB or Initializing the RAM 14- 4
14.2.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit 14- 4
14.2.3 When Replacing the Copyboard Glass 14- 4
14.2.4 When Replacing the ADF Scanning Glass 14- 4
14.3 Laser Exposure System 14- 6
14.3.1 After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit 14- 6
14.4 Image Formation System 14- 6
14.4.1 After Replacing Developing Assembly/Developing Cylinder 14- 6
14.4.2 After Replacing Drum Unit 14- 6
14.5 Electrical Components 14- 6
14.5.1 After Replacing the Hard Disk 14- 6
14.5.2 After Replacing the Main Controller 14- 6
14.5.3 When Replacing DC Controller PCB 14- 7
14.6 Pickup/Feeding System 14- 7
14.6.1 When Replacing the Cassette 14- 7
14.6.2 When Replacing the Duplex Unit 14- 7
14.6.3 When Replacing the Manual Feed Tray 14- 7
14.6.4 Registration of Paper Width Basic Value for Manual Feed Tray 14- 7

Chapter 15 Correcting Faulty Images

15.1 Making Initial Checks 15- 1
15.1.1 Installation Procedure 15- 1
15.1.2 Checking Paper 15- 1
15.1.3 Checking Paper Set 15- 1
15.1.4 Checking Consumables 15- 1
15.1.5 Checking Periodical Service Item 15- 1
15.1.6 Checking Each Unit/Each Function System 15- 2
15.1.7 Others 15- 2
15.2 Outline of Electrical Components 15- 3
15.2.1 Clutch/Solenoid 15- 3
15.2.1.1 Clutches and Solenoids (Reader) 15- 3
15.2.1.2 Clutches and Solenoids (Printer) 15- 3
15.2.2 Motor 15- 4
15.2.2.1 Motors (Reader) 15- 4
15.2.2.2 Motors (Printer) 15- 4
15.2.3 Fan 15- 5
15.2.3.1 Fans (Reader) 15- 5
15.2.3.2 Fans (Printer) 15- 5
15.2.4 Sensor 15- 6
15.2.4.1 Sensors (Reader) 15- 6
15.2.4.2 Sensors (Printer) 15- 6
15.2.5 Switch 15- 8
15.2.5.1 Switches (Reader) 15- 8
15.2.5.2 Switches (Printer) 15- 8
15.2.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others 15- 8
15.2.6.1 Lamps, Heaters, and Others (Reader) 15- 8
15.2.6.2 Lamps, Heaters, and Others (Printer) 15- 9

15.2.7 PCBs 15- 10
15.2.7.1 PCBs (Reader) 15- 10
15.2.7.2 PCBs (Printer) 15- 10
15.2.8 Connectors 15- 12
15.2.8.1 Connectors (1/6) 15- 12
15.2.8.2 Connectors (2/6) 15- 14
15.2.8.3 Connectors (3/6) 15- 16
15.2.8.4 Connectors (4/6) 15- 18
15.2.8.5 Connectors (5/6) 15- 20
15.2.8.6 Connectors (6/6) 15- 22
15.2.9 Variable Resistors (VR), Light-Emitting Diodes (LED), and Check Pins by PCB 15- 24
15.2.9.1 Variable Resistors (VR), Light-Emitting Diodes, and Check Pins by PCB 15- 24
15.2.9.2 Points to Note About the Leakage Breaker 15- 24

Chapter 16 Self Diagnosis

16.1 Error Code Details 16- 1
16.1.1 E000 to E197 (DC Controller) 16- 1
16.1.2 E202 to E248, E280 (Reader) 16- 3
16.1.3 E261 to E315 (DC Controller, Main Controller) 16- 3
16.1.4 E400, E413, E490 (ADF) 16- 4
16.1.5 E500 to E5F9 (Finisher) 16- 5
16.1.6 E602 (Error in HDD/encryption board) 16- 7
16.1.7 Detail in E602 ..... 16- 8
16.1.8 E604 to E748 (Main Controller, DC Controller) 16- 10
16.1.9 E804 to E805 (DC Controller Control Fan) 16- 13
16.2 Error Code (SEND) 16- 14
16.2.1 Self-Diagnostic Display 16- 14
16.2.2 List of Error Codes without Messages 16- 15
16.3 Jam Code 16- 21
16.3.1 Jam codes (printer unit) 16- 21
16.3.2 Jam Code (ADF) 16- 21
16.3.3 Jam codes (Finisher) 16- 22
16.4 Alarm Code 16- 22
16.4.1 Alarm Code 16- 22

Chapter 17 Service Mode

17.1 Outline 17- 1
17.1.1 Construction of Service Mode 17- 1
17.1.2 Starting Service Mode and Making Selections 17- 2
17.1.3 Ending Service Mode 17- 2
17.1.4 Back-Up 17- 2
17.1.5 Initial Screen 17- 3
17.1.6 2nd/3rd Item Screen 17- 3
17.1.7 4th Item Screen 17- 4
17.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode) 17- 5
17.2.1 COPIER 17- 5
17.2.1.1 COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION 17- 5
17.2.1.2 COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS 17- 19
17.2.1.3 COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG 17- 22
17.2.1.4 COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-STS 17- 23
17.2.1.5 COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM 17- 24
17.2.1.6 COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR 17- 24
17.2.1.7 COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS 17- 25
17.2.1.8 COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD 17- 26
17.2.1.9 COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR 17- 28
17.2.1.10 COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-2 ..... 17- 28

17.2.1.11 COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT 17- 28
17.2.2 FEEDER 17- 29
17.2.2.1 FEEDER > DISPLAY 17- 29
17.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode) 17- 29
17.3.1 Outline 17- 29
17.3.2 <DC-CON> 17- 30
17.3.3 <R-CON> 17- 32
17.3.4 <FEEDER> 17- 32
17.3.5 <SORTER> 17- 33
17.3.6 <MN-CONT> 17- 38
17.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode) 17- 38
17.4.1 COPIER 17- 38
17.4.1.1 COPIER > ADJUST > AE 17- 38
17.4.1.2 COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY 17- 38
17.4.1.3 COPIER > ADJUST > CCD 17- 40
17.4.1.4 COPIER > ADJUST > LASER 17- 55
17.4.1.5 COPIER > ADJUST > DEVELOP 17- 57
17.4.1.6 COPIER > ADJUST > DENS 17- 58
17.4.1.7 COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK 17- 58
17.4.1.8 COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL 17- 59
17.4.1.9 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI 17- 59
17.4.1.10 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR 17- 60
17.4.1.11 COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ 17- 69
17.4.1.12 COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ 17- 72
17.4.1.13 COPIER > ADJUST > FIXING 17- 73
17.4.1.14 COPIER > ADJUST > MISC 17- 74
17.4.2 FEEDER 17- 77
17.4.2.1 FEEDER > ADJUST 17- 77
17.4.3 SORTER 17- 78
17.4.3.1 SORTER > ADJUST 17- 78
17.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode) 17- 79
17.5.1 COPIER 17- 79
17.5.1.1 Points To Note When Operate The Service Mode (FUNCTION) 17- 79
17.5.1.2 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL 17- 79
17.5.1.3 COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD 17- 81
17.5.1.4 COPIER > FUNCTION > DENS 17- 83
17.5.1.5 COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC 17- 83
17.5.1.6 COPIER > FUNCTION > CST 17- 83
17.5.1.7 COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING 17- 84
17.5.1.8 COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL 17- 85
17.5.1.9 COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK 17- 86
17.5.1.10 COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR 17- 88
17.5.1.11 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R 17- 93
17.5.1.12 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P 17- 93
17.5.1.13 COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM 17- 96
17.5.2 FEEDER 17- 97
17.5.2.1 FEEDER > FUNCTION 17- 97
17.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode) 17- 101
17.6.1 COPIER 17- 101
17.6.1.1 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (1/15) 17- 101
17.6.1.2 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (2/15) 17- 104
17.6.1.3 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (3/15) 17- 107
17.6.1.4 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (4/15) 17- 109
17.6.1.5 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (5/15) 17- 111
17.6.1.6 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (6/15) 17- 113
17.6.1.7 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (7/15) 17- 114
17.6.1.8 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (8/15) 17- 116
17.6.1.9 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (9/15) 17- 118
17.6.1.10 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (10/15) 17- 120
17.6.1.11 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (11/15) 17- 122

17.6.1.12 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (12/15) 17- 124
17.6.1.13 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (13/15) 17- 126
17.6.1.14 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (14/15) 17- 129
17.6.1.15 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (15/15) 17- 132
17.6.1.16 COPIER > OPTION > USER (1/7) 17- 133
17.6.1.17 COPIER > OPTION > USER (2/7) 17- 141
17.6.1.18 COPIER > OPTION > USER (3/7) 17- 144
17.6.1.19 COPIER > OPTION > USER (4/7) 17- 147
17.6.1.20 COPIER > OPTION > USER (5/7) 17- 150
17.6.1.21 COPIER > OPTION > USER (6/7) 17- 153
17.6.1.22 COPIER > OPTION > USER (7/7) 17- 155
17.6.1.23 COPIER > OPTION > CST 17- 157
17.6.1.24 COPIER > OPTION > ACC 17- 160
17.6.1.25 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE (1/2) 17- 162
17.6.1.26 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE (2/2) 17- 163
17.6.1.27 COPIER > OPTION > COMBO 17- 164
17.6.1.28 COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR 17- 166
17.6.2 FEEDER 17- 176
17.6.2.1 FEEDER > OPTION 17- 176
17.6.3 SORTER 17- 177
17.6.3.1 SORTER > OPTION 17- 177
17.6.4 BOARD 17- 177
17.6.4.1 BOARD > OPTION 17- 177
17.7 TEST (Test Print Mode) 17- 178
17.7.1 COPIER 17- 178
17.7.1.1 COPIER > TEST > PG 17- 178
17.7.1.2 COPIER > TEST > NETWORK 17- 179
17.7.1.3 COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP 17- 180
17.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode) 17- 182
17.8.1 COPIER 17- 182
17.8.1.1 COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL 17- 182
17.8.1.2 COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP 17- 183
17.8.1.3 COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER 17- 184
17.8.1.4 COPIER > COUNTER > JAM 17- 184
17.8.1.5 COPIER > COUNTER > MISC 17- 185
17.8.1.6 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 ..... 17- 186
17.8.1.7 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 ..... 17- 188

Chapter 18 Upgrading

18.1 Outline 18- 1
18.1.1 Outline of Upgrading the Machine 18- 1
18.1.2 Outline of the Service Support Tool 18- 2
18.1.3 Points to Note at Time of Downloading 18- 4
18.2 Making Preparations 18- 5
18.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST) 18- 5
18.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB) 18- 7
18.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use) 18- 9
18.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use) 18- 11
18.3 Formatting the HDD 18- 13
18.3.1 Formatting Selected Partitions 18- 13
18.3.2 Formatting Procedure 18- 14
18.4 Downloading System Software 18- 16
18.4.1 Downloading the System Software (ALL) 18- 16
18.4.1.1 Outline 18- 16
18.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure (Assist mode) 18- 18
18.4.1.3 Downloading Procedure (Normal mode) 18- 22
18.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single) 18- 25
18.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure 18- 25

18.4.3 Downloading Dcon and Rcon....18- 28
18.4.3.1 Outline....18- 28
18.4.4 Downloading G3 FAX....18- 29
18.4.4.1 Outline....18- 29
18.4.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data....18- 30
18.4.5.1 Outline....18- 30
18.4.5.2 Uploading Procedure....18- 31
18.4.5.3 Downloading Procedure....18- 33
18.4.6 Version Upgrade using USB....18- 35
18.4.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions....18- 35
18.4.6.2 Points to Note....18- 36
18.4.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto)....18- 37
18.4.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)....18- 38
18.4.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting)....18- 39
18.4.6.6 Formatting the HDD....18- 41
18.4.6.7 Other Functions....18- 42

Chapter 19 Service Tools

19.1 Service Tools....19- 1
19.1.1 Special Tools....19- 1
19.1.2 Oils and Solvents....19- 1

Chapter 1 Introduction

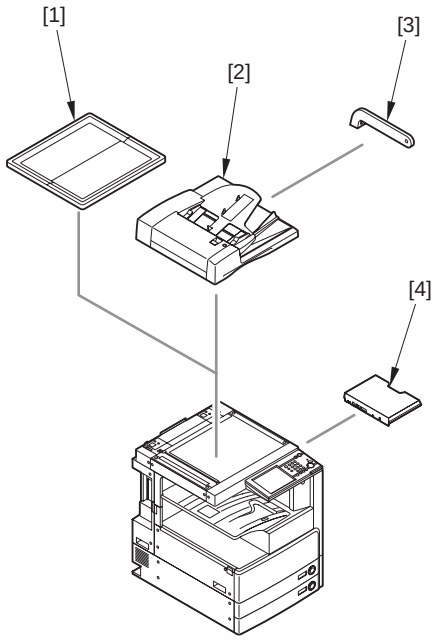
Contents

1.1 System Construction 1-1
1.1.1 System Configuration of Original Feeding Options 1-1
1.1.2 System Configuration of Pickup/Delivery Options 1-2
1.1.3 System Configuration of Print/Send Options 1-4
1.1.4 Functions of Print/Send Options 1-6
1.2 Product Specifications 1-7
1.2.1 Names of Parts 1-7
1.2.1.1 External View 1-7
1.2.1.2 Cross-Section 1-8
1.2.2 Using the Machine 1-9
1.2.2.1 Turning On the Power Switch 1-9
1.2.2.2 When Turning Off the Main Power Switch 1-9
1.2.2.3 Control Panel 1-11
1.2.3 User Mode Items 1-12
1.2.3.1 Overview 1-12
1.2.3.2 Common Settings 1-12
1.2.3.3 Timer Settings 1-13
1.2.3.4 Adjustment/Cleaning 1-13
1.2.3.5 Report Settings 1-14
1.2.3.6 System Settings 1-14
1.2.3.7 Copy Settings 1-16
1.2.3.8 Communications Settings*2 1-17
1.2.3.9 Mail Box Settings 1-18
1.2.3.10 Address Book Settings*5 1-18
1.2.4 Maintenance by the User 1-19
1.2.4.1 Routine Cleaning 1-19
1.2.4.2 Inspection 1-22
1.2.5 Safety 1-23
1.2.5.1 Points to note at disassembly/assembly 1-23
1.2.5.2 Safety of the Laser Light 1-23
1.2.5.3 CDRH Regulations 1-23
1.2.5.4 Handling the Laser Unit 1-23
1.2.5.5 Safety of Toner 1-24
1.2.5.6 Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery 1-25
1.2.6 Product Specifications 1-25
1.2.6.1 Methods/Functions 1-25
1.2.7 Function List 1-26
1.2.7.1 Printing Speed 1-26
1.2.7.2 Paper Type 1-28

1.1 System Construction

1.1.1 System Configuration of Original Feeding Options

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-1-1

[1]	Platen Cover Type M	[2]	DADF-U1
[3]	ADF Access Handle-A1	[4]	Document Tray-J1 *1

*1: Except China

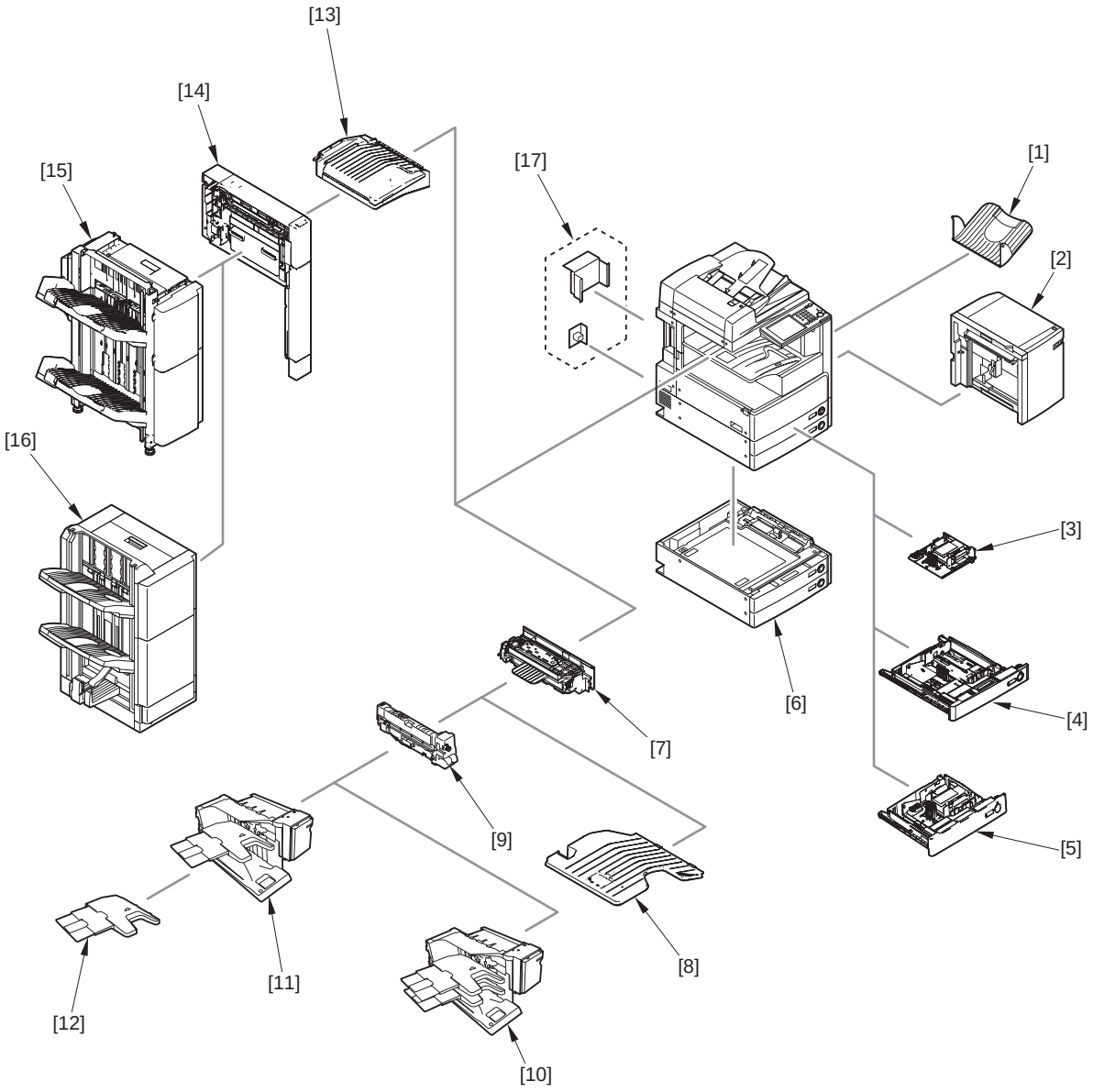
MEMO:

Only one of the following options can be installed at a time.
- Document Tray-J1
- Voice Guidance Kit-D1
- Voice Operation Kit-B1
- Hand Set-G2 (Japan only)

1.1.2 System Configuration of Pickup/Delivery Options

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

[Pickup/delivery]



F-1-2

[1]	Copy Tray-J1	[2]	Paper Deck-Q1
[3]	Envelope Feeder Attachment-C2 *1	[4]	FL Cassette-Y1/Z1
[5]	Envelope Cassette-C2 *2	[6]	Cassette Feeding Unit-Y3/Y3H *3
[7]	3 Way Unit-A2 (standard)	[8]	Inner 2 Way Tray-D1
[9]	Puncher Unit-Q1/R1/S1/T1 *4	[10]	Finisher-S1G *5
[11]	Finisher-S1	[12]	Additional Finisher Tray-B1
[13]	Buffer Path Unit-E2	[14]	Puncher Unit-L1/M1/N1/P1 *6
[15]	Finisher-AE1 *7	[16]	Saddle Finisher-AE2
[17]	Optional Power Supply-T1 *2		

*1 :	Except Japan	*2 :	Japan only
*3 :	Y3H is for China only	*4 :	Q1 is for all excluding USA and AUS R1 is for North America, AUS and KR S1 is for Europe and AUS T1 is for Europe only
*5 :	For US government only	*6 :	L1 is for all excluding USA and AUS M1 is for north America, AUS and KR N1 is for Europe and AUS P1 is for Europe only
*7 :	Except China		

MEMO:

The paper deck-Q1 require the cassette feeding unit-Y3/Y3H for installation.

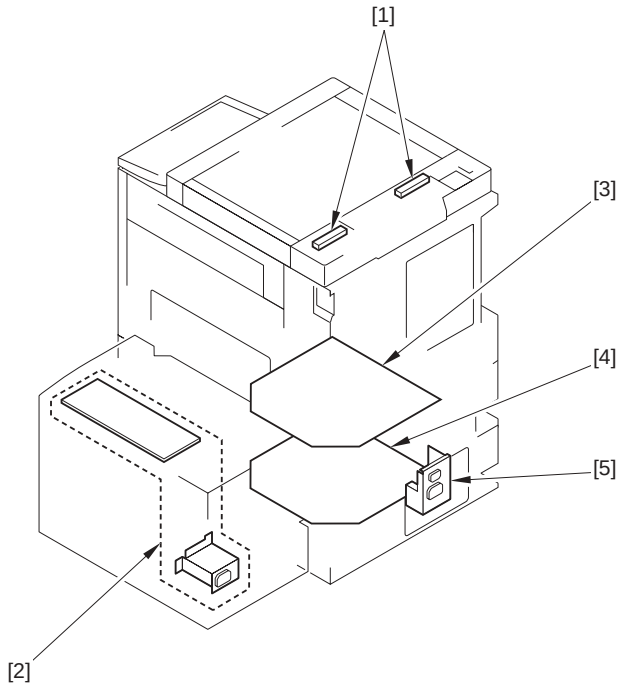
The following options can be installed on the cassette 1 only.
- Envelope Feeder Attachment-C2
- Envelope Cassette-C2 (Japan only)
- FL Cassette-Z1

The following options can be installed on the cassette 2/3/4.
- FL Cassette-Y1

The following options require the buffer path unit-E2 for installation.
- Finisher-AE1
- Saddle Finisher-AE2

The Copy Tray-J1 cannot be used with the Finisher-AE1 or Saddle Finisher-AE2.

[Heater]



F-1-3

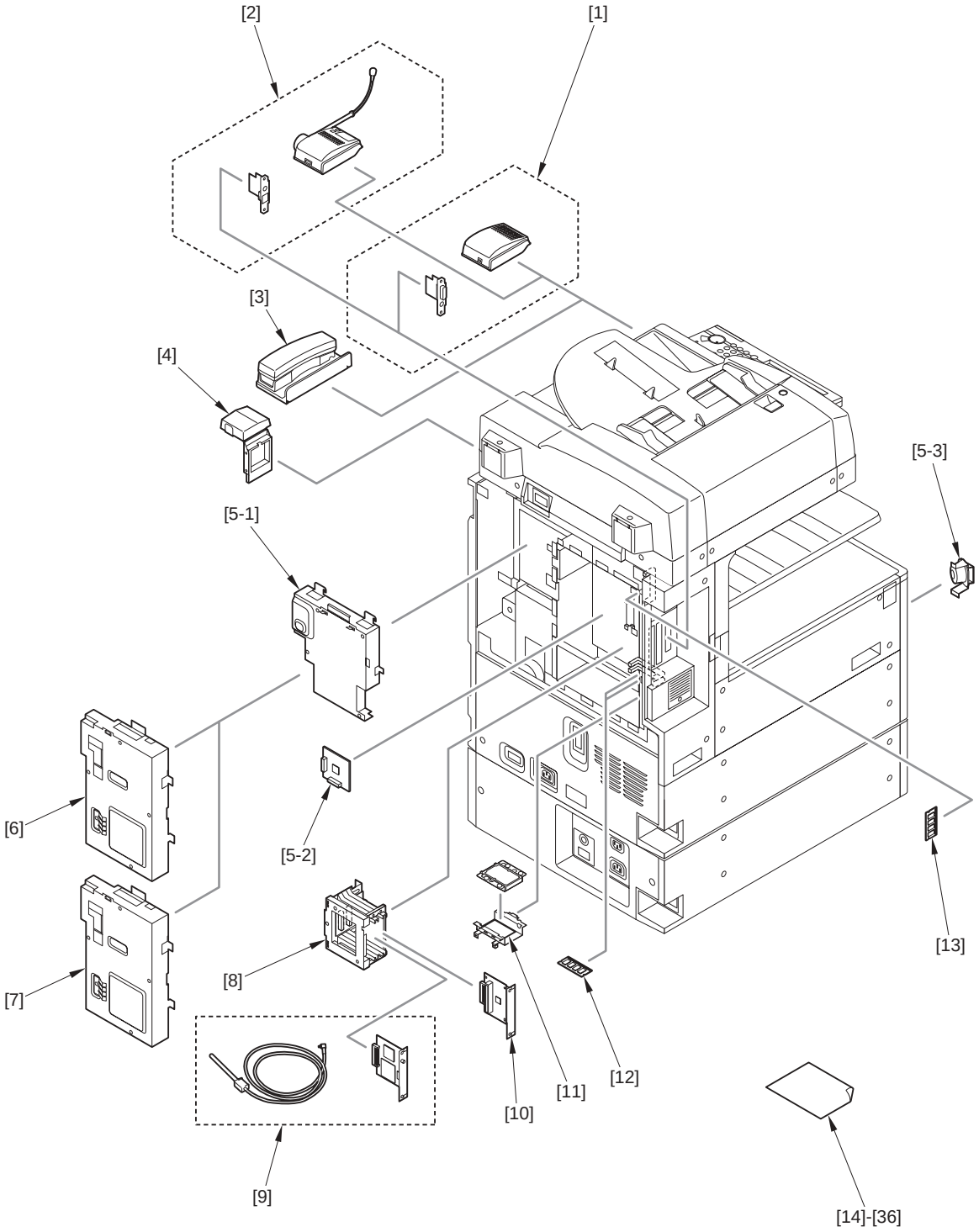
[1]	Reader Heater Unit-B1 *1	[2]	Cassette Heater Unit-31 *1
[3]	Cassette Heater Unit-29 *2 (Standard for China)	[4]	Cassette Heater Unit-36 *3
[5]	Cassette Heater Attachment-D2 *2		

*1 :	For Japan only	*2 :	For Latin, HK, KR only
*3 :	For HK, TW only		

[Others]
- Staple Cartridge-D2/D3/J1
- Stamp Ink Cartridge-C1

1.1.3 System Configuration of Print/Send Options

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-1-4

[1]	Voice Guidance Kit-D1 *1	[2]	Voice Operation Kit-B1 *1
[3]	Hand Set-G2 *2	[4]	Card Reader-C1 Card Reader Attachment-B3
[5]	Super G3 FAX Board-AC1	[5-1]	Super G3 FAX Board
[5-2]	FAX expansion PCB	[5-3]	Speaker Unit
[6]	Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AC1 *3	[7]	Super G3 2nd/3rd Line Fax Board-AC1 *3
[8]	Expansion Bus-E1 *5	[9]	Wireless LAN Board-A1 *4
[10]	IPSec Board-A1 *5	[11]	HDD Data Encryption Kit-B5 *5 (released in the future)
[12]	Additional Memory Type A (512MB)	[13]	System Upgrade RAM-A1 *6
[14]	ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM KIT-A2 *7	[15]	Barcode Printing Kit-A1 *6
[16]	Color Universal Send Kit-P1 *6	[17]	Digital User Signature Kit-B1 *6
[18]	Direct Printing Kit-F1 *3	[19]	Encrypted Printing Software-C1 *8
[20]	Encrypted Secure Print Software-C1 *9	[21]	HDD Data Erase Kit-A1
[22]	HDD Data Erase Kit-B2 *10	[23]	PCL Printer Kit-AA1 *11
[24]	PS Printer Kit-AA1 *6	[25]	Remote Operators Software Kit-A3 *6
[26]	Secure Watermark-A1	[27]	Serial Interface Kit-G1 *12
[28]	UFR II Printer Kit-AA1 *13	[29]	UFR II/PCL Printer Kit-AA1 *14
[30]	Universal Send and PCL Print Package-D1 *12	[31]	Universal Send Advanced Feature Set-B1 *6
[32]	Universal Send Security Feature Set-B1 *15	[33]	Universal Send Searchable PDF Kit-B1 *16
[34]	Universal Send Trial Kit-B1 *17	[35]	USB Memory Connectivity Kit-A1 *11
[36]	Web Access Software-G1		

*1 :	For all excluding CN, KR, TW	*2 :	For JP only
*3 :	For all excluding Europe	*4 :	For North America, Europe, AU only
*5 :	For all excluding CN	*6 :	For all excluding JP
*7 :	For all excluding CN, TW	*8 :	For Europe, AU, HK, KR, TW only
*9 :	For North America only	*10 :	For North America, AU only
*11 :	For all excluding JP, Europe	*12 :	For North America only
*13 :	For Europe, HK, KR, TW only	*14 :	For Europe, AU only
*15 :	For all excluding JP, CN	*16 :	For JP, HK, CN, KR, TW only
*17 :	For JP, AU, HK, TW only		

MEMO:

Only one of the following options can be installed at a time.
- Document Tray-J1
- Voice Guidance Kit-D1
- Voice Operation Kit-B1
- Hand Set-G2

The following options require the supper G3 FAX board-AC1 for installation.
- Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AC1
- Super G3 2nd/3rd Line Fax Board-AC1

The following options require the PCI expansion bus-E1.
- Wireless LAN Board-A1
- IPSec Board-A1

[5-1], [5-2] and [5-3] are included in [5].

1.1.4 Functions of Print/Send Options

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is a brief explanation of the functions expected of the accessories; for details, see the chapters that follow:

T-1-1

Machine Function		Optional Equipment Needed	Simultaneous Installation	
			Required	Limitations
Send Function		Color Universal Send Kit (activated)	-	To use the Send function, the Color Universal Send Kit must be activated.
		Universal Send PDF Advanced Feature Set	Color Universal Send Kit	To use the features of the Universal Send PDF Advanced Feature Set, it must be activated after the optional Color Universal Send Kit has been activated.
		Universal Send PDF Security Feature Set	Color Universal Send Kit	To use the features of the Universal Send PDF Security Feature Set, it must be activated after the optional Color Universal Send Kit has been activated.
		Digital User Signature PDF Kit	Color Universal Send Kit	To use the features of the Digital User Signature PDF Kit, it must be activated after the optional Color Universal Send Kit has been activated.
Fax Function		Super G3 FAX Board	-	-
		Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board or Super G3 2nd/3rd Line FAX Board	Super G3 FAX Board	To use the features of the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board or the Super G3 2nd/3rd Line Fax Board, it must be installed after the Super G3 FAX Board has been installed.
				The optional Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board and Super G3 2nd/3rd Line FAX Board cannot be installed at the same time.
PCL Printer Function and TIFF/JPEG Direct Print Function		PCL Printer Kit	-	To use the PCL Printer Function, the PCL Printer Kit (standard-equipped for the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i) must be activated.
PS Printer Function and PDF/PS Direct Print Function		PS Printer Kit	PCL Printer Kit	To use the features of the PS Printer Kit (standard-equipped for the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i), it must be activated after the optional PCL Printer Kit (standard-equipped for the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i) has been activated.
Secure Watermark		Secure Watermark (activated)	-	To use the features of the Secure Watermark, it must be activated.
Department ID Management*		Card Reader-C1	-	-
Security Management (Data Encryption)		HDD Data Encryption Kit	-	-
Security Management (Data Erase)		HDD Data Erase Kit	-	To use the Data Erase function, the HDD Data Erase Kit must be activated.
Displaying	Viewing	Web Access Software	-	If you are using the imageRUNNER 3245/3235/3230/3225, to display Flash content, the memory of the machine must be expanded by installing the Additional Memory Type A (512MB). If you are using the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i, it is not necessary to install the Additional Memory Type A (512MB).
Web Pages	Printing Web Pages/PDF Files		PS Printer Kit	-
Encrypted Secured Printing		Encrypted Printing Software	PCL Printer Kit or PS Printer Kit	To use the features of the Encrypted Secure Print Software, the PCL Printer Kit or PS Printer Kit must be available for use.

*: The Department ID Management function is a standard function in this machine. If the optional Card Reader-C1 is attached, Department ID Management is performed automatically, and you do not have to enter the Department ID and password manually. The Card Reader-C1 enables you to check the print totals and the remaining number of pages that can be printed on the touch panel display.

1GB or more memory is necessary with the host machine to enable the following options:
- Flash of Web Access Software
- Voice recognition
- PS Print Kit (*PDF Direct Print is available as standard)

Thus, if the host machine equips less than 1GB memory, additional memory, Type A (512MB), is required to enable above options.

T-1-2

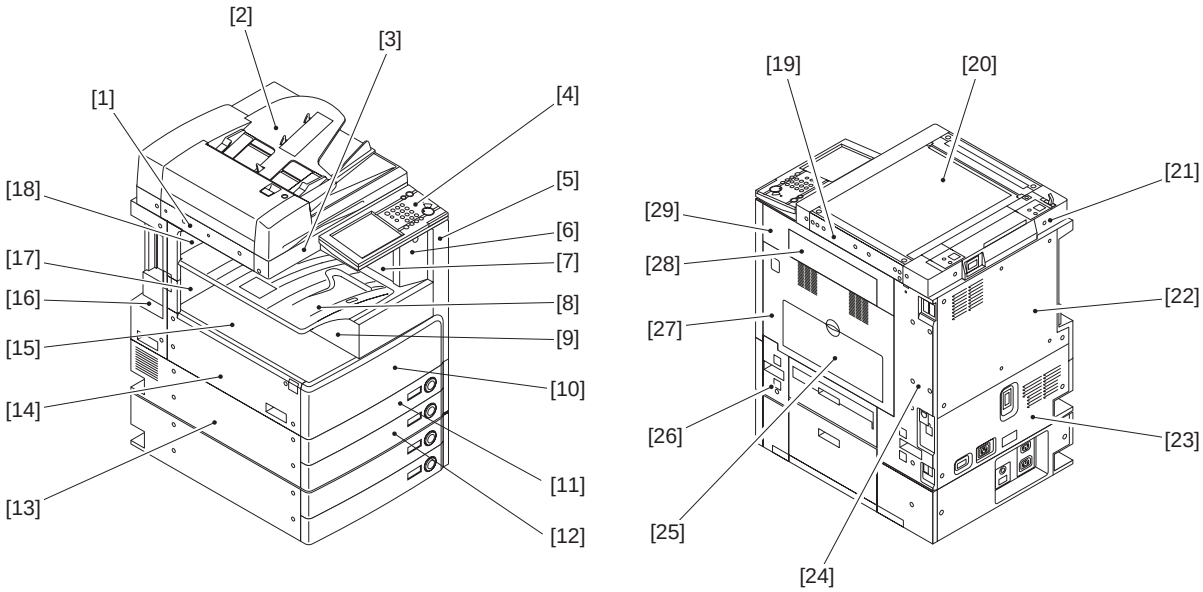
Host machine with 1GB of memory as standard	- iR3245i / 3235i (120V) - iR3245N / 3235N / 3225N (230V EUR)
Host machine with less than 1GB of memory	Those machines other than the above

1.2 Product Specifications

1.2.1 Names of Parts

1.2.1.1 External View

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

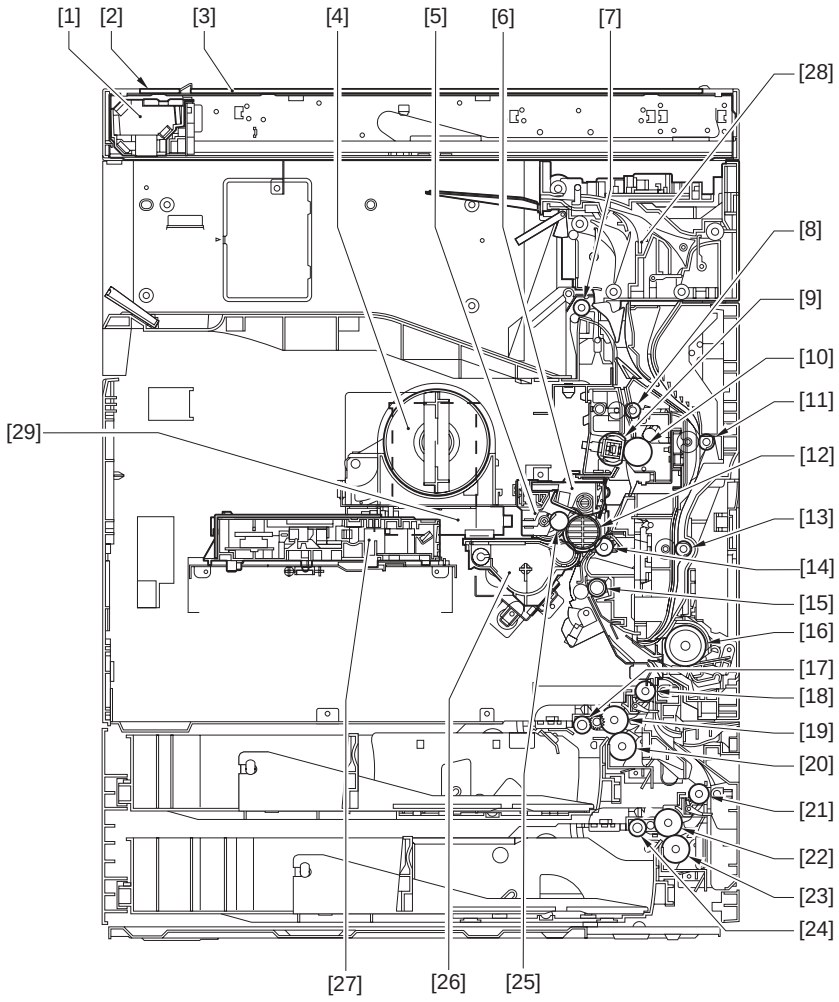


F-1-5

[1]	Reader left cover	[2]	DADF (optional)
[3]	Reader front cover	[4]	Control panel
[5]	Support right cover	[6]	Support cover
[7]	3 way unit	[8]	Delivery tray
[9]	Inside right cover	[10]	Front cover unit
[11]	Cassette 1	[12]	Cassette 2
[13]	Lower left cover	[14]	Left cover
[15]	Inside base cover	[16]	Rear left cover
[17]	Output tray lower rear cover	[18]	Output tray rear cover
[19]	Reader right cover	[20]	Platen glass
[21]	Reader rear cover	[22]	Upper rear cover
[23]	Lower rear cover	[24]	Rear right cover
[25]	Manual feed pickup tray	[26]	Right cover (lower front)
[27]	Right cover	[28]	Delivery cover
[29]	Upper right cover		

1.2.1.2 Cross-Section

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-1-6

T-1-3

[1]	CCD unit	[2]	ADF reading glass
[3]	Platen glass	[4]	Toner bottle
[5]	Drum unit	[6]	Drum cleaning unit
[7]	Delivery roller	[8]	Fixing outlet roller
[9]	Fixing film unit	[10]	Pressure roller
[11]	Duplex feed roller	[12]	Photosensitive drum
[13]	Duplex feed roller 2	[14]	Transfer roller
[15]	Registration roller	[16]	Manual feed pickup roller
[17]	Pickup roller (cassette 1)	[18]	Vertical path roller 1
[19]	Feed roller (cassette 1)	[20]	Separation roller (cassette 1)
[21]	Vertical path roller 2	[22]	Feed roller (cassette 2)
[23]	Separation roller (cassette 2)	[24]	Pickup roller (cassette 2)
[25]	Primary charging roller	[26]	Developing unit
[27]	Laser scanner unit	[28]	3 way unit
[29]	Sub hopper		

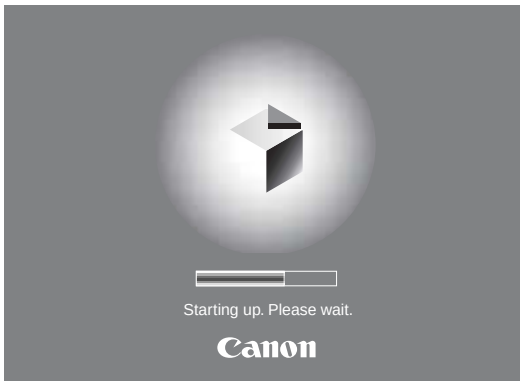
1.2.2 Using the Machine

1.2.2.1 Turning On the Power Switch

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine possesses 2 power switches: main power switch and control power switch. Normally (i.e., unless the machine is in a sleep state), the machine will be supplied with power when you turn on its main power switch.

⚠
Never turn off the main power while the display shows the progress bar, indicating that the HDD is being accessed. Otherwise, the HDD may suffer a fault (E602).

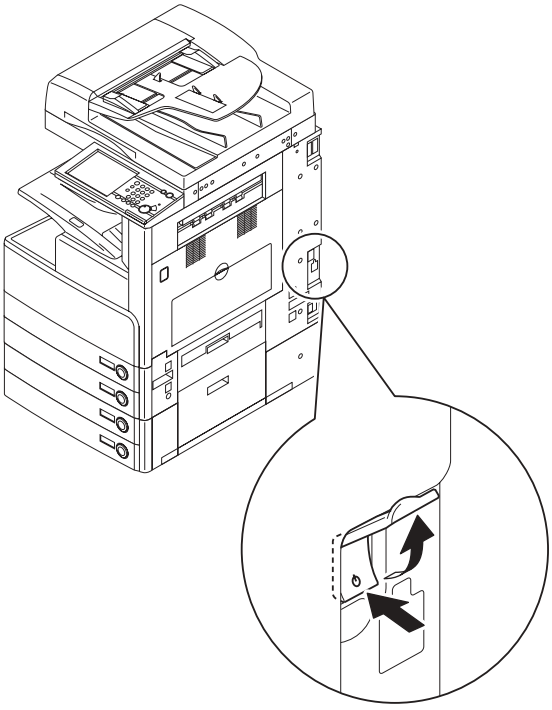


1.2.2.2 When Turning Off the Main Power Switch

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

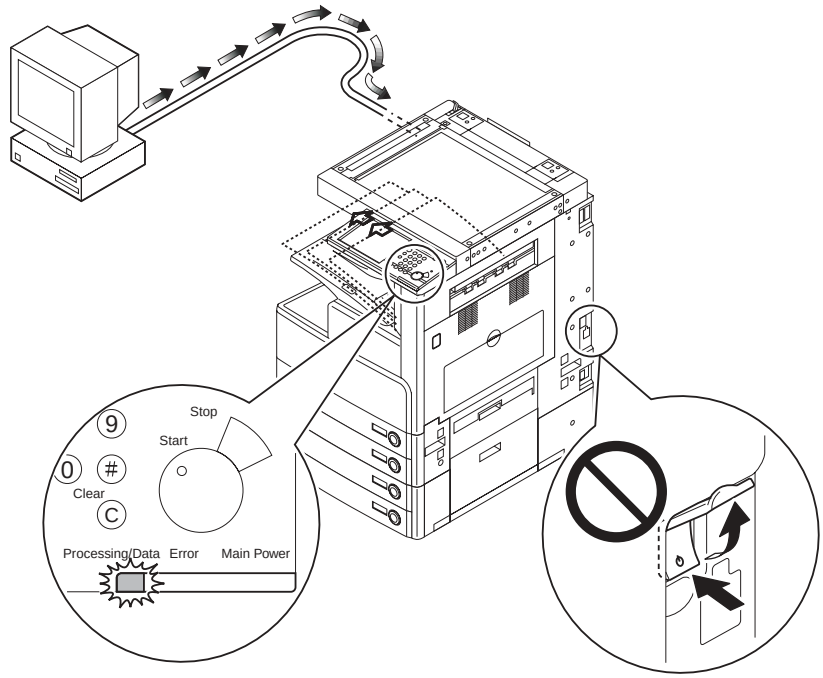
Be sure always to turn off the control panel power switch before turning off the main power switch.

MEMO:
The cover is attached with the main power switch to prevent from turning OFF the main power switch wrongly.
When turning OFF the main power switch, open the cover upward, and then press the switch.



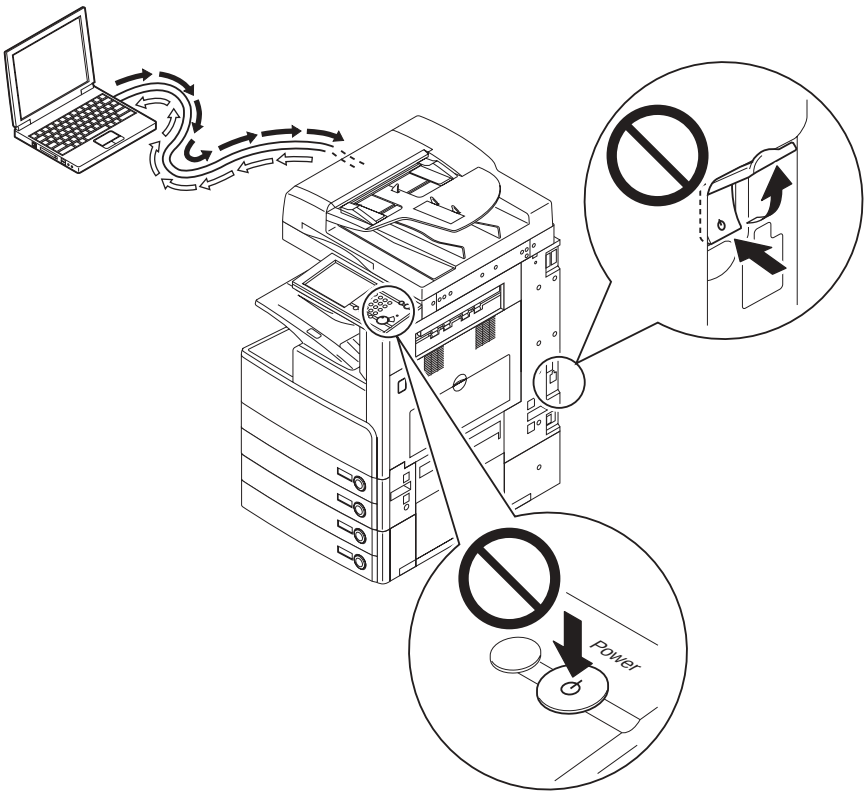
When Using the Print Function/When Receiving or Transmitting a Fax

Before using the main power switch, check to be sure that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off. (Turning off the main power switch while an operation is under way can cause loss of data.)



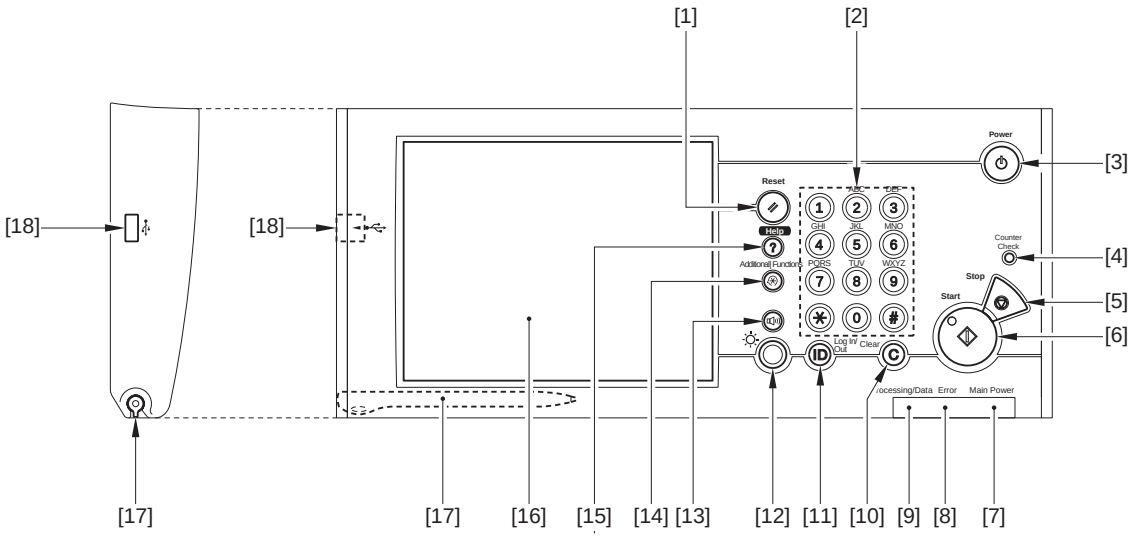
At Time of Downloading

Do not turn off the main power switch while downloading is under way. Otherwise, the machine may not be able to operate normally.



1.2.2.3 Control Panel

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-1-7

[1]	Reset key	[2]	Numeric keys
[3]	Control Panel Power Switch (Sub Power Supply)	[4]	Counter Check key
[5]	Stop key	[6]	Start key
[7]	Main Power Indicator	[8]	Error Indicator
[9]	Processing/Data Indicator	[10]	Clear key
[11]	ID (Log In/Out) key	[12]	Brightness Adjustment Dial
[13]	Fax Volume Adjustment Key	[14]	Additional Functions key
[15]	Help key	[16]	Touch Panel Display
[17]	Edit Pen	[18]	USB Port

1.2.3 User Mode Items

1.2.3.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If you are performing user authentication using the SSO-H login service, you cannot change the Additional Functions settings of the machine if you are logged in as a general user.

If you are logged in as an Administrator, you can change the Additional Functions settings of the machine. (When the dialog box prompting you to enter the System Manager ID and System Password appears, enter the System Manager ID and System Password).

1.2.3.2 Common Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.
*2: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.
*3: Indicates information that is delivered only if the number of output trays in the host machine and client machines is the same.
*4: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imageRUNNER 3230/3225. For the imageRUNNER 3245/3245i/3235/3235i, these items are displayed by default.

T-1-4

Item	Settings	Delivered
Function Display Settings		No
Initial Function and Function Order Settings	Copy*1, Send, Mail Box, Print Job, Scan, MEAP	
Copy Screen Display Settings	Regular Copy Only*1, Regular and Express Copy, Express Copy Only	
Set System Monitor as the Default Screen	On, Off*1	
Set the Default Screen for System Monitor	Copy, Send, Fax, Print, Receive, Device*1	
Auto Clear Setting	Initial Function*1, Selected Function	Yes
Display Remaining Paper Message	On*1, Off	No
Inch Entry	On, Off*1	Yes
Drawer Eligibility For APS/ADS	Copy, Printer, Mail Box, Receive/Fax,	No
	Other: (Stack Bypass: On, Off*1, All Other Paper Sources: On*1, Off)	
	Copy: Consider Paper Type: On, Off*1	
Envelope Cassette	Env. 1: COM10 No.10, ISO-B5, Monarch: Catalog Glove No.8, ISO-C5, DL, Yougata 4*1	No
	Env. 2: COM10 No.10 *1, ISO-B5, Monarch: Catalog Glove No.8, ISO-C5, DL, Yougata 4	
Register Paper Type	Plain*1, Recycled, Color, Pre-punched, Bond Paper, Heavy, Tracing Paper, Transparency, Labels	No
Paper Select Screen Priority	Simple*1, Detailed	No
Energy Consumption in Sleep Mode	Low*1, High	Yes
LTRR/STMT Original Selection	Distinguish Manually, Use LTRR Format*1, Use STMT Format	Yes
Tray Designation*2	If the Optional Copy Tray-J1 Is Attached Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer, Receive, Fax, Other Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*1, Receive*1, Fax*1, Other*1	No*3
	If the Optional Inner 2 Way Tray-D1 Is Attached Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer, Receive, Fax, Other Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*1, Receive*1, Fax*1, Other*1	
	If the Optional Inner 2 Way Tray-D1 and Copy Tray-J1 Are Attached Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer, Receive, Fax, Other Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*1, Receive, Fax, Other Tray C: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive*1, Fax*1, Other*1	
	If the Optional Finisher-S1 and Additional Finisher Tray-B1 Are Attached Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer, Receive, Fax, Other Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*1, Receive*1, Fax*1, Other*1	
	If the Optional Finisher-S1 and Copy Tray-J1 Are Attached Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive, Fax, Other Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive*1, Fax*1, Other*1	
	If the Optional Finisher-S1, Copy Tray-J1, and Additional Finisher Tray-B1 Are Attached Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer, Receive, Fax, Other Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*1, Receive, Fax, Other Tray C: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive*1, Fax*1, Other*1	
	If the Optional Finisher-AE1 or Saddle Finisher-AE2, and Buffer Pass Unit-E2 Are Attached Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer, Receive, Fax, Other Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*1, Receive, Fax, Other Tray C: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive*1, Fax*1, Other*1 Tray Home Position: Tray A*1, Tray B, Off	
Printing Priority	Copy: 1*1, 2, 3	Yes
	Printer: 1, 2*1, 3	
	Mail Box, Receive/Fax, Other: 1, 2, 3*1	
Register Form for Form Composition	Register (Entire Image Composition/ Transparent Image), Erase, Check Print, Details	No
Register Characters for Page No./Watermark	Register, Edit, Erase	Yes
Stack Bypass Standard Settings	On, Off*1	No
Paper Feed Method Switch	Speed Priority*1, Print Side Priority	No

Item	Settings	Delivered
Standard Local Print Settings		No
Paper Select	All Paper Sources, Auto*1	
Copies	1*1 to 9,999 sets	
Finishing	If No Finisher Is Attached or Only the Optional Inner 2 Way Tray-D1 is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate*1, Rotate Collate, Group, Rotate Group	
	If the Optional Finisher-S1 Is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner)	
	If the Optional Finisher-S1 and Puncher Unit-R1 Are Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner), Hole Punch	
	If the Optional Finisher-AE1 or Saddle Finisher-AE2, and Buffer Pass Unit-E2 Are Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right), (Double: Left, Right)	
	If the Optional Finisher-AE1 or Saddle Finisher-AE2, and Buffer Pass Unit-E2 and Puncher Unit-M1 Are Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right), (Double: Left, Right), Hole Punch	
2-Sided Print	On, Off*1	
Erase Document After Printing	On, Off*1	
Merge Documents	On, Off*1	
Language Switch	On, Off*1	Yes
Reversed Display (Color)	On, Off*1	Yes
Offset Jobs*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Job Separator between Jobs	On, Off*1	Yes
Job Separator between Copies	On, Off*1	No
Job Duration Display	Copy: On, Off*1	No
	Mail Box: On, Off*1	
	Other: On, Off*1	
Number of Copies/Job Duration Status Display	On*1, Off	No
Different Paper Sizes for the Output Tray*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Cleaning Display for the Original Scanning Area*4	On*1, Off	No
Data Compression Ratio for Remote Scans	High Ratio, Normal*1, Low Ratio	Yes
Gamma Value for Remote Scans	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*1, Gamma 2.2	Yes
Limited Functions Mode*2	On, Off*1	Yes
Shutdown Mode	Press [Start]	No
Suspended Job timeout	On(0 to 999 minutes, in one minute increments, 5minutes*1), Off*1	Yes
Initialize Common Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.3 Timer Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.

T-1-5

Item	Settings	Delivered
Time Fine Adjustment	00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	No
Auto Sleep Time	10 seconds, 1*1, 2, 10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes
Auto Clear Time	0 (Off) to 9 minutes, in one minute increments; 2 min.*1	Yes
Time Until Unit Quiets Down	0 (Off), to 9 minutes, in one minutes increments; 1 min.*1	Yes
Daily Timer Settings	Sunday to Saturday, 00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes

1.2.3.4 Adjustment/Cleaning

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.
*2: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.
*4: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imageRUNNER 3230/3225. For the imageRUNNER 3245/3245i/3235/3235i, these items are displayed by default.

T-1-6

Item	Settings	Delivered
Zoom Fine Adjustment	X, Y: -1.0% to +1.0%, in 0.1% increments; 0.0%*1	No
Saddle Stitcher Staple Repositioning*2	Press [Start]	No
Saddle Stitch Position Adjustment*2	All paper sizes: -2.0 mm to +2.0 mm, in 0.25 mm increments; 0.00 mm*1	Yes
Creep (Displacement) Correction Adjustment	Correction (for each paper type) 0.000" to 0.078" (0.00 mm to 2.00 mm), in 0.002" (0.05 mm) increments; 0.010" (0.25 mm)*1	No
Auto Gradation Adjustment	Automatic after the machine prints and scans three sets of test prints	No
Exposure Recalibration	Copy/Inbox, Send:	No
	Light, Dark: 1 to 9 levels; 5*1	

Item	Settings	Delivered
Character/Background Contrast Adjustment*2	Relative Contrast Value: -7 to +7; 1*1 (for the imageRUNNER 3245/3245i/3235/3235i), -1*1 (for the imageRUNNER 3225), Sample Print, Sample Print Settings	No
	Standard Value Settings: 1 to 64; 16*1(for the imageRUNNER 3245/3245i/3235/3235i), 28*1 (for the imageRUNNER 3225), Print, Print Settings	
	Latent String Density: 1 to 36; 7*1 (for the imageRUNNER 3245/3245i/3235/3235i), 11*1 (for the imageRUNNER 3225)	
	Initialize	
Feeder Cleaning*4	Press [Start]	No

1.2.3.5 Report Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.
*2: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.
*5: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imageRUNNER 3245/3235/3230/3225. For the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i, these items are displayed by default.

T-1-7

Item	Settings	Delivered
Settings: Send*5		
TX Report	For Error Only*1, On, Off Report with TX Image: On*1, Off	Yes
Activity Report		Yes
Auto Print	On*1, Off	
Daily Activity Report Time	On, Off*1 Timer Setting: 00:00 to 23:59	
Send/Receive Separate	On, Off*1	
Settings: Fax*2		
Fax TX Report	For Error Only*1, On, Off Report with TX Image: On*1, Off	Yes
Fax Activity Report		Yes
Auto Print	On*1, Off	
Daily Activity Report Time	On, Off*1 Timer Setting: 00:00 to 23:59	
Send/Receive Separate	On, Off*1	
Fax RX Report	For Error Only, On, Off*1	Yes
Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report	On*1, Off	Yes
Print List: Send*5		
Address Book List	Address Book 1 to 10; One-touch Buttons, Print List	No
User Data List	Print List	No
Print List: Fax*2		
User Data List	Print List	No

1.2.3.6 System Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.
*2: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.
*5: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imageRUNNER 3245/3235/3230/3225. For the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i, these items are displayed by default.
*6: Indicates items that are not delivered as device information.

T-1-8

Item	Settings	Delivered
System Manager Settings		
System Manager ID	Seven digit number maximum	Yes
System Password	Seven digit number maximum	
System Manager	32 characters maximum	
E-mail Address	64 characters maximum	
Contact Information	32 characters maximum	
Comment	32 characters maximum	
Dept. ID Management		
Dept. ID Management	On, Off*1	Yes
Register Dept. ID/Password	Register, Edit, Erase, Limit Functions	Yes
Page Totals	Clear, Print List, Clear All Totals	No
Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs	On*1, Off	Yes
Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs	On*1, Off	Yes
Communications Settings		
E-mail/I-Fax Common Settings*5		

Item	Settings	Delivered
Maximum Data Size for Sending	0 (Off), 1 to 99 MB; 3 MB*1	Yes
Default Subject	40 characters maximum; Attached Image*1	
Specify Authorized User Reply-to Destination	On, Off*1	No
E-mail Settings*5		
Specify Authorized User Dest. Sender	On*1, Off	No
I-Fax Settings*5		
Full Mode TX Timeout	1 to 99 hours; 24 hours*1	Yes
Divided Data RX Timeout	0 to 99 hours; 24 hours*1	
Print MDN/DSN on Receipt	On, Off*1	
Always send notice for RX errors	On*1, Off	
Use Send Via Server	On, Off*1	
Allow MDN Not Via Server	On*1, Off	
Fax Settings*2		
Send Start Speed	33600 bps*1, 14400 bps, 9600 bps, 7200 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps	Yes
Receive Start Speed	33600 bps*1, 14400 bps, 9600 bps, 7200 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps	Yes
Receive Password	20 digits maximum	No
PIN Code Access	On, Off*1	Yes
Memory RX Inbox Settings		
Memory RX Inbox Password	Seven digit number	No
Use Fax Memory Lock*2	On, Off*1	Yes
Use I-Fax Memory Lock*5	On, Off*1	Yes
Memory Lock Start Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*1	Yes
Memory Lock End Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*1	Yes
Remote UI	On*1, Off Use SSL*6: On, Off*1	Yes
Restrict the Send Function*5		
Address Book Password	Seven digit number	Yes
Access Number Management	On, Off*1	Yes
Restrict New Addresses	Fax: On, Off*1	Yes
	E-mail: On, Off*1	
	I-fax: On, Off*1	
	File: On, Off*1	
Allow Fax Driver TX*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Confirm Entered Fax Numbers*2	On, Off*1	Yes
E-mail/I-Fax Domain Sending Restriction*4	Restrict Sending to Domains; On, Off*1 Register, Edit, Erase	Yes
Allow Sending with Expired Certificates*5	On, Off*1	Yes
Always Add Device Signature to Send*2	On, Off*1	Yes
Device Information Settings		
Device Name	32 characters maximum	No
Location	32 characters maximum	No
Forwarding Settings*2	Receive Type, E-mail Priority, Edit, Erase, Print List	No
	Validate/Invalidate, Register (Registered Forwarding Settings), Forward w/o Conditions	Yes
Clear Message Board	Clear	No
Auto Online/Offline		
Display Status Before Authentication	On*1, Off	No
Allow Secured Print from Print Status Screen	On, Off*1	Yes
Date & Time Settings	Date and Time Setting (12 digit number)	No
	Time Zone: GMT -12:00 to GMT +12:00; GMT -05:00*1	
	Daylight Saving Time: On*1, Off	
License Registration	24 characters maximum	No
System Monitor Screen Restriction		
Display Status Before Authentication	On*1, Off	No
Allow Secured Print from Print Status Screen	On, Off*1	No
Job Log Display	On*1, Off Obtain Job Log From Management Software: Permit, Do Not Allow*1	No
Register LDAP Server*2	Register, Edit, Erase, Register/Edit LDAP Search, Print List	No
MEAP Settings		
Use HTTP	On*1, Off Use SSL*6: On, Off*1	Yes
Print System Information	Print	No
Copy Set Numbering Option Settings	Copy Set Num. Op: On (ID/User Name: On, Off; Date: On, Off; Characters: On, Off), Off*1	Yes
Display ID/User Name	On*1, Off	No
USB Settings		
Use USB Device	On*1, Off	Yes

Item	Settings	Delivered
Use USB Host	On*1, Off	Yes
Use MEAP Driver for USB Device	On*1, Off	Yes
Use MEAP Driver for USB External Disk Driver	On, Off*1	Yes
Device Information Delivery Settings		
Register Destinations	Auto Search/Register, Register, Details, Erase, Print List	
Auto Delivery Settings	Everyday, Select Days, Off*1 Add. Functions Settings Value: On (Network Settings: Include, Exclude*1), Off*1 Dept. ID: On, Off*1 Address Book: On, Off*1 Printer Settings: On, Off*1 Paper Information: On, Off*1	
Manual Delivery	Everyday, Select Days, Off*1 Add. Functions Settings Value: On (Network Settings: Include, Exclude*1), Off*1 Dept. ID: On, Off*1 Address Book: On, Off*1 Printer Settings: On, Off*1 Paper Information: On, Off*1	
Restrictions for Receiving Device Info.	On*1, Off	
Restore Data	Add. Functions Set. Value, Dept. ID, Address Book, Printer Settings,Paper Information: On, Off*1	
Receive Restriction for Each Function	Add. Functions Settings Value: On*1, Off	
	Dept. ID: On*1, Off	
	Address Book: On*1, Off	
	Printer Settings: On*1, Off	
	Paper Information: On*1, Off	
Communication Log	Details, Print List, Report Settings	
	Auto Print: On*1, Off	
	Daily Activity Report Time: On (00:00 to 23:59), Off*1	
	Separate Report Type: On, Off*1	
Initialize All Data/Settings	Initialize	No
Use Asterisks to Enter Access No./Passwords	On*1, Off	Yes
Secure Watermark Mode*2		
Forced Secure Watermark	Copy:Do Not Set*1, Set	Yes
	Mail Box:Do Not Set*1, Set	
	Printer:Do Not Set*1, Set	
Printer Driver Secure Watermark	Do Not Set*1, Set	Yes
Encrypted Print Settings*2		
Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs	On, Off*1	No
Settings for All User Inboxes		
Time until Document Auto Erase	0=Off, 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*1, 7, 30 days	No
Print Upon Storing From the Printer Driver	On, Off*1	No
Paper Type Management Settings	Details/Edit Name, Category, Basis Weight, Type, Finish, Creep(Displacement) Correct., Color	Yes
	Duplicate, Erase, Sort List by	No
PDL Selection (PnP) *2	PCL5e, PCL5c, PCL6, PS3, FAX	No
Restrict Printer Jobs	On, Off*1	Yes
Erasing All Encrypted PDF Passwords	Erase	No

1.2.3.7 Copy Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.
*2: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-9

Item	Settings	Delivered
Paper Select Key Size for Express Copy Screen	Large*1: Four paper sources maximum (Stack Bypass, Stack Bypass Settings, 1: Paper Drawer 1, 2: Paper Drawer 2, 3: Paper Drawer 3, 4: Paper Drawer 4, 5: Paper Deck-Q1), Small	No
Standard Key 1, 2 Settings for Regular Screen	Various modes; No Settings*1	No
Standard Key Settings for Express Copy Screen	Displayed Standard Keys: Up to 5 Set Keys*1, Up to 10 Set Keys,	No
	Settings: Various modes; No Settings*1	
Auto Collate*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Auto Orientation	On*1, Off	Yes
Photo Mode	On, Off*1	Yes
Standard Settings	Store, Initialize	No

Item	Settings	Delivered
Register Remote Device	Register (Seven devices maximum), Details, Erase, Move To Top	No
Remote Device Transmission Timeout	5 to 30 seconds; 30 seconds*1	Yes
Initialize Copy Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.8 Communications Settings*2

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.
*2: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.
*5: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imageRUNNER 3245/3235/3230/3225. For the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i, these items are displayed by default.
*7: Indicates item that appears only if the optional Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board is installed in addition to installing the optional Super G3 FAX Board.
*8: Indicates item that appears only if the optional Super G3 2nd/3rd Line FAX Board is installed in addition to installing the optional Super G3 FAX Board.

T-1-10

Item	Settings	Delivered
Common Settings: TX Settings		
Unit Name for E-mail/I-Fax*5	24 characters maximum	No
Erase Failed TX	On*1, Off	Yes
Data Compression Ratio*5	High Ratio, Normal*1, Low Ratio	Yes
Handle Documents with Forwarding Errors	Always Print, Store/Print, Off*1	Yes
Photo Mode	On, Off*1	Yes
Retry Times*5	0 to 5 times; 3 times*1	Yes
Edit Standard Send Settings	Scanning Mode: Clr/B&W 200x200 dpi	No
	File Format: TIFF/PDF Auto Select	
	Stamp: Off	
Register Favorites Button	Register/Edit, Erase (M1 to M18), Display Comment: On, Off*1	Yes
Display Confirmation for Favorites Button	On*1, Off	Yes
Image Level for High Compression*5	Image Level in Text/Photo or Photo Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*1, Image Priority	No
	Image Level in Text Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*1, Image Priority	
OCR(Text Searchable) Settings*5	Smart Scan: On*1, Off	Yes
	Num. of Char. for Doc. Name Setting: 1 to 24 characters; 24 characters*1	
Trace & Smooth Settings*5	Outline Graphics: On, Off*1	Yes
	Graphics Recognition Level: Normal*1, Moderate, High	
	Background Image Level: Data Size Priority, Normal*1, Image Priority	
Check Device Signature Certificate*5	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Check User Signature Certificate*2	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Default Screen for Send	Favorites Buttons, One-touch Buttons, New Address*1	No
TX Terminal ID	On*1 (Printing Position: Inside, Outside*1;Display Destination Name: On*1, Off; Telephone # Mark: FAX*1, TEL), Off	Yes
Use Chunked Encoding with WebDav Sending*5	On*1, Off	Yes
Gamma Value for YCbCr Send Jobs*5	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*1, Gamma 2.2	Yes
Initialize TX Settings	Initialize	No
Common Settings: RX Settings		
2-Sided Print	On, Off*1	Yes
Select Drawer	Switch A: On*1, Off	Yes
	Switch B: On*1, Off	
	Switch C: On*1, Off	
	Switch D: On*1, Off	
Receive Reduction	On*1: RX Reduction: Auto*1, Fixed Reduction Reduce %: 75 to 97% (in 1% increments); 90%*1 Reduce Direction: Vertical & Horizontal, Vertical Only*1 Off	Yes
Received Page Footer	On, Off*1	Yes
2 On 1 Log	On, Off*1	Yes
Fax Settings: Basic Settings		
Sender's Names (TTI)*2	01 to 99, Register/Edit, Erase	No
Fax Settings: Tx Settings		
ECM TX	On*1, Off	Yes
Pause Time	1 to 15 seconds; 2 seconds*1	Yes

Item	Settings	Delivered
Auto Redial	On*1: Option: Redial Times: 1 to 10 times; 2 times*1 Redial Interval: 2 to 99 minutes; 2 minutes*1 TX Error Resend Error and 1st Page*1, All pages, Off Off	Yes
Check Dial Tone Before Sending	On*1, Off	Yes
Fax Settings: RX Settings		
ECM RX	On, Off*1	Yes
Fax Settings: Line Options		
Line 1		No
Line 2*7, Line 3*8		No
Unit Telephone #	20 digits maximum	No
Unit Name	24 characters maximum	No
Tel Line Type	Pulse, Tone*1	No
TX Line Selection	Optional FAX Board is installed: Line 1 Priority TX*1, Prohibit TX	No
	Optional Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board or Super G3 2nd/3rd Line FAX Board is installed in addition to installing the optional Super G3 FAX Board: Line 2 Priority TX*1, Prohibit TX	
	Optional Super G3 2nd/3rd Line FAX Board is installed in addition to installing the optional Super G3 FAX Board: Line 3 Priority TX*1, Prohibit TX	

1.2.3.9 Mail Box Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*1: Indicates the default setting.
*2: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.
*6: Indicates items that are not delivered as device information.
*8: Information is not delivered if a password is set for the inbox.

T-1-11

Item	Settings	Delivered
User Inboxes Settings	Inbox No.: 00 to 99	Yes*8
	Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum	
	Password: Seven digits	
	Time until Document Auto Erase: 0 (Off), 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*1, 7, 30 days	
	URL Send Settings	
	Print upon storing from the printer driver: On, Off*1	
	Initialize*5	
Photo Mode	On, Off*1	Yes
Standard Scan Settings	Store, Initialize	No
Confidential Fax Inboxes Settings*2	Inbox No.: 00 to 49	Yes*8
	Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum	
	Password: Seven digits maximum	
	URL Send Settings	
	Initialize*6	

1.2.3.10 Address Book Settings*5

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

*5: Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imageRUNNER 3245/3235/3230/3225. For the imageRUNNER 3245i/3235i, these items are displayed by default.

T-1-12

Item	Settings	Delivered
Register Address	Register New Address, Edit, Erase, Incremental	Yes
Register Address Book Name	Register Name	Yes
One-touch Buttons	Register/Edit (from 001 to 200), Erase	Yes

1.2.4 Maintenance by the User

1.2.4.1 Routine Cleaning

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If the original is not copied clearly, clean the following parts of the machine. For high-quality printouts, we recommend cleaning these parts once or twice a month.
- Platen glass
- Underside of the platen cover
- Feeder's rollers

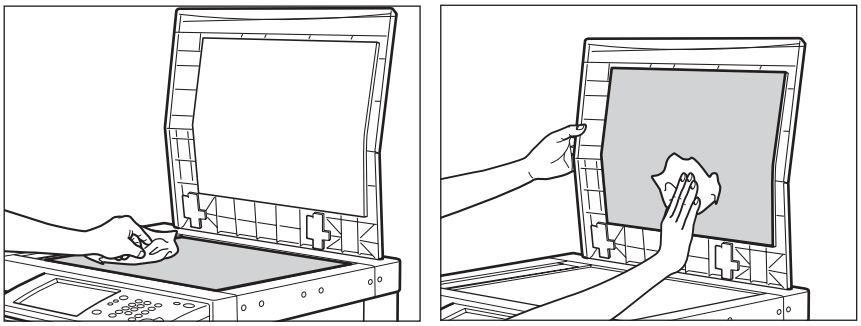
- When cleaning the machine, first turn OFF the main power switch, and disconnect the power cord. Failure to observe these steps may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other solvents for cleaning. Doing so may result in damage to the plastic parts.
- Disconnect the power cord from the power outlet regularly, and clean the area around the base of the power plug's metal pins and the power outlet with a dry cloth to ensure that all dust and grime is removed. If the power cord is connected for a long period of time in a damp, dusty, or smoky location, dust can build up around the power plug and become damp. This may cause a short circuit and result in a fire.

1. Platen Glass and Cover

Clean the platen glass and the underside of the optional platen cover by following the procedure below.

If the platen glass or the underside of the optional platen cover is dirty, the original may not be scanned clearly, or the size of the original may be detected incorrectly.

1) Clean the platen glass and the underside of the optional platen cover with a cloth dampened with water, and then wipe them clean with a soft, dry cloth.



F-1-8

Do not dampen the cloth too much, as this may damage the original or break the machine.

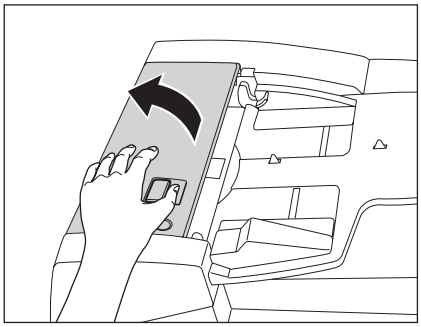
2. Manual Feeder Cleaning

If originals that have been fed through the feeder have streaks or appear dirty, clean the feeder's rollers.

- Do not dampen the cloth too much, as this may damage the original or break the machine.
- Spin the rollers while cleaning them.

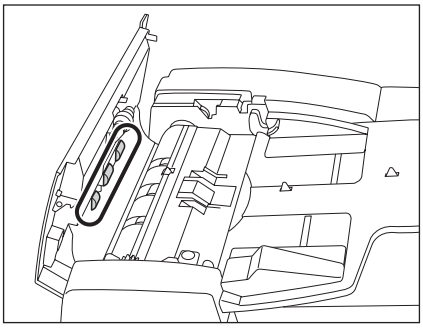
MEMO:
This procedure is necessary only if the optional Feeder (DADF-U1) (standard-equipped for the imageRUNNER 3245/3245i/3235/3235i) is attached.

1) Open the feeder cover.



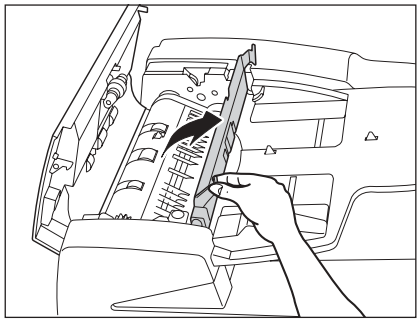
F-1-9

2) Clean the rollers (a total of three places) inside the feeder cover with a cloth dampened with water. Then, wipe the area with a soft, dry cloth.



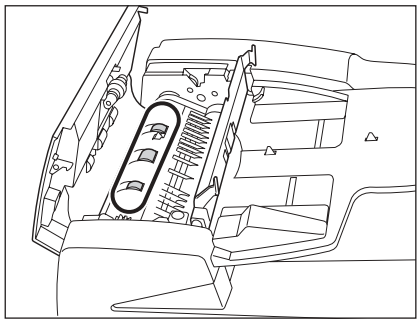
F-1-10

3) Open the inner cover, holding it by its front tab.



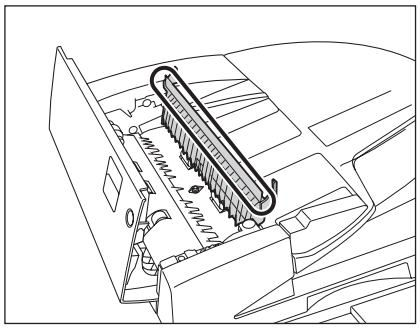
F-1-11

4) Clean the rollers (a total of three places) inside the inner cover with a cloth dampened with water. Then, wipe the area with a soft, dry cloth.



F-1-12

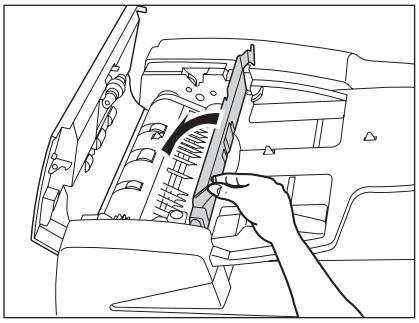
5) Clean the transparent plastic part of the inner cover with a cloth dampened with water. Then, wipe the area with a soft, dry cloth.



F-1-13

6) Close the inner cover.

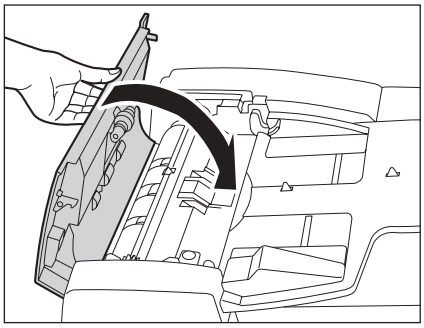
> ⚠
> When closing the inner cover, be careful not to get your fingers caught, as this may result in personal injury.



F-1-14

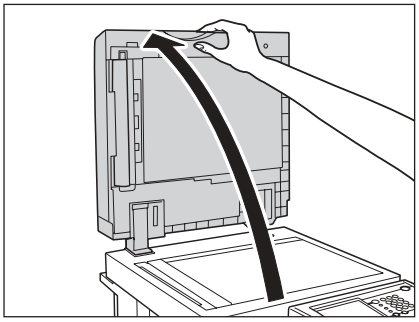
7) Close the feeder cover.

> ⚠
> When closing the feeder cover, be careful not to get your fingers caught, as this may result in personal injury.



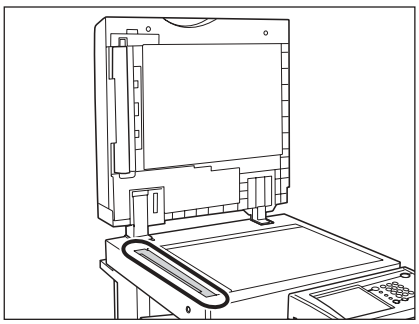
F-1-15

8) Lift the feeder.



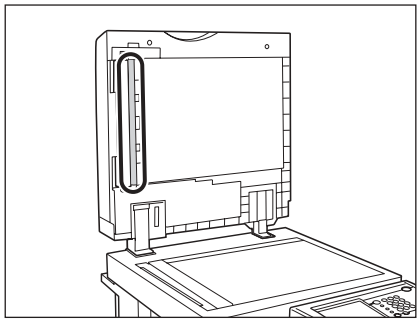
F-1-16

9) Clean the feeder scanning area with a cloth dampened with water. Then, wipe the area with a soft, dry cloth.



F-1-17

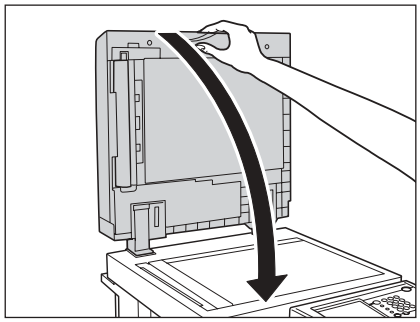
10) Clean the metal part located next to the rubber roller with a cloth dampened with water. Then, wipe the area with a soft, dry cloth.



F-1-18

11) Close the feeder.

- When closing the feeder, be careful not to get your fingers caught, as this may result in personal injury.
- Be aware that the light emitted from the platen glass may be very bright when closing the feeder.



F-1-19

3. Automatic Feeder Cleaning

If your originals have black streaks or appear dirty after scanning them through the feeder, clean the rollers of the feeder.

MEMO:
- This procedure is necessary only if the optional Feeder (DADF-U1) (standard-equipped for the imageRUNNER 3245/3245i/3235i/3235i) is attached.
- It takes approximately 20 seconds to clean the feeder.

1) Press (Additional Functions) -> [Adjustment/Cleaning] -> [Feeder Cleaning].
2) Place 10 sheets of blank paper into the feeder -> press [Start].

- Make sure that you fan the sheets of paper well.
- Use LTR paper (16 to 20 lb bond (60 to 80 g/m2)).
- When cleaning is complete, try scanning again.
- To cancel feeder cleaning while it is in progress, press [Cancel].

1.2.4.2 Inspection

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

This machine has a breaker that detects excess current or leakage current. Be sure to test the breaker once or twice a month using the following procedure.

- Make sure that the main power is turned OFF, before inspecting the breaker.
- Be sure to turn off the main power switch after executing shutdown sequence (to protect HDD).
- If a malfunction occurs after an inspection, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Checking the Breaker

1) Push the test button on the rear of the machine with the tip of a ball-point pen, or a similar object.

MEMO:
The breaker is located on the rear of the machine.

Briefly push the test button.

2) Confirm that the breaker lever is switched to the OFF position.

- Do not use the test button to turn the power ON and OFF.
- If the breaker lever does not switch to the OFF position, repeat step 1.

If the breaker lever does not switch to the OFF position, despite carrying out the above procedure two or three times, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

3) Switch the breaker lever to ON ("I" side).
4) Press the main power switch to the "I" side.
5) Fill in the check sheet, located on the Manual, to document your periodic inspections of the breaker.

1.2.5 Safety

1.2.5.1 Points to note at disassembly/assembly

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Make sure to follow the instruction below at disassembly/assembly.
1. At disassembly/assembly, be sure to unplug the power plug for safety reason.
2. At assembly, execute the operation in the reverse order of disassembly procedure.
3. Take care not to make a mistake in the type of screws (length/diameter) and their usage locations in assembly.
4. To check the electrical continuity, a screw with washer is used for the grounding wire and the varistor etc. Make sure to use this screw when attaching them.
5. Do not operate the machine without any part.
6. At disassembly, do not remove the screw with bond lock.

1.2.5.2 Safety of the Laser Light

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

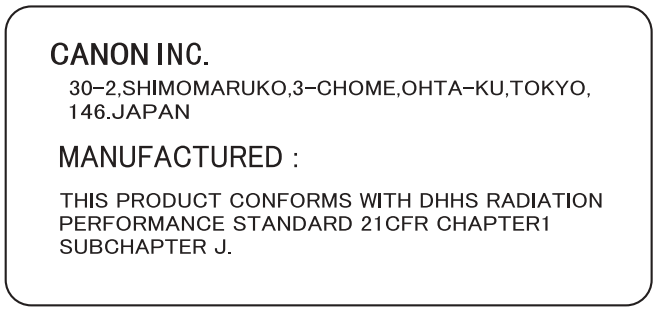
Laser beam radiation may pose a danger to the human body. A laser scanner mounted on the machine is sealed with the protection housing and external cover to prevent the laser beam from leaking to the outside. The laser beam never leaks out of the scanner as far as users operate the machine normally.

The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950).
Laserstrahlen können für den menschlichen Körper gefährlich sein. Aus diesem Grund ist das optische Lasersystem mit einem Schutzgehäuse und einer Außenabdeckung dicht verschlossen und hat eine Struktur, die keine Laserstrahlen nach außen dringen lässt. Unter der Voraussetzung, dass der Benutzer dieses Gerät normal bedient, ist ein Austritt von Laserstrahlen daher ausgeschlossen.

1.2.5.3 CDRH Regulations

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health of the US Food and Drum Administration put into force regulations concerning laser products on August 2, 1976. These regulations apply to laser products manufactured on and after August 1, 1976, and the sale of laser products not certified under the regulations is banned within the Untied States. The label shown here indicates compliance with the CDRH regulations, and its attachment is required on all laser products that are sold in the United States.



F-1-20

A different description may be used for a different product.

1.2.5.4 Handling the Laser Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If you must service the area around the machine's laser unit, be sure to take full care to avoid exposure to laser light: do not insert a tool (e.g., screwdriver or those with a high reflectance) into the laser path; also, remove watches, rings, and the like before starting the work, as they reflect laser light.
The machine's laser light is red in color, and an appropriate label ([1], [2]) is attached to all covers that can reflect laser light. Keep also in mind that the machine's laser unit cannot be adjusted in the field.

The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950).

Handhabung des Laserteils

Bei Servicearbeiten am oder in der Nähe des Laserteils zuerst das Hauptgerät abschalten.

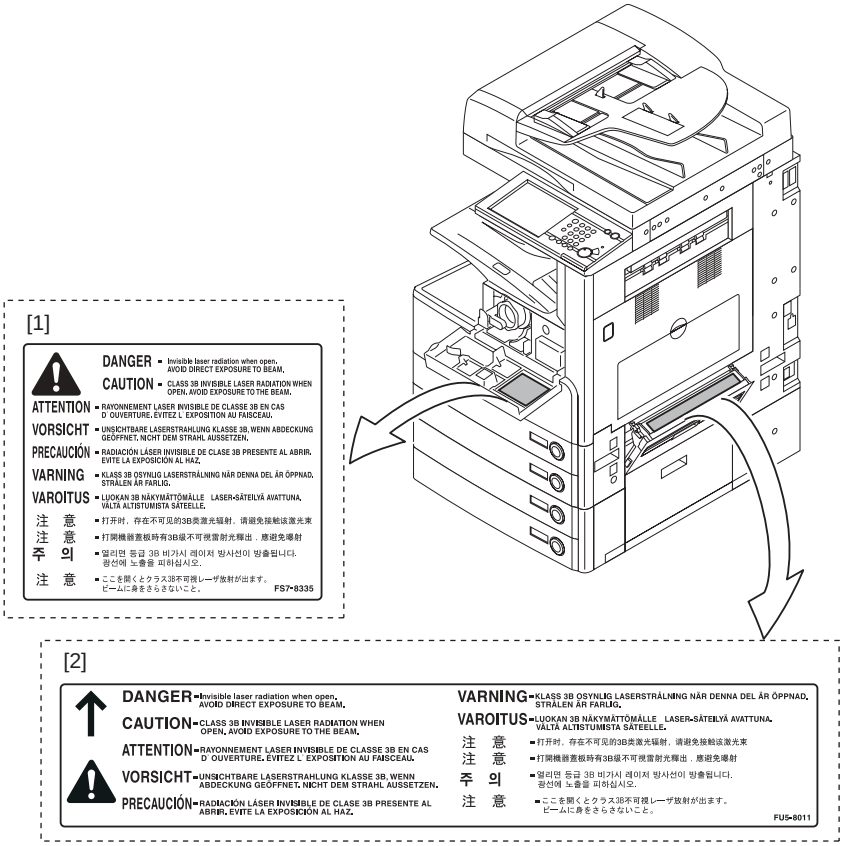
Bei Servicearbeiten, die unbedingt bei eingeschaltetem Gerät durchgeführt werden müssen, auf jeden Fall die folgenden Vorsichtsmaßnahmen beachten.

• Keine stark reflektierenden Schraubenzieher oder ähnliche Werkzeuge direkt in den Lichtpfad des Laserstrahls bringen.

• Vor Beginn der Arbeit Uhren, Ringe und ähnliche Gegenstände abnehmen. (Reflektierte Laserstrahlen könnten sonst in die Augen geraten.)

Abdeckungen, die möglicherweise Laserstrahlen reflektieren, haben in der auf dem Bild gezeigten Position einen Aufkleber. Bei Servicearbeiten auf der Innenseite von Abdeckungen mit Aufkleber ist besondere Vorsicht erforderlich.

F-1-21



F-1-22

1.2.5.5 Safety of Toner

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

About Toner
The machine's toner is a non-toxic material made of plastic, iron, and small amounts of dye.

⚠
Do not throw toner into fire. It may cause explosion.

Toner on Clothing or Skin
1. If your clothing or skin has come into contact with toner, wipe it off with tissue; then, wash it off with water.
2. Do not use warm water, which will cause the toner to jell and fuse permanently with the fibers of the cloth.
3. Do not bring toner into contact with plastic material. It tends to react easily.
4. Storage of copy/print output
   Do not use the polyvinyl case.
   If printed side contacts with the surface of case, toner melts and the paper may be adhered with a case.

1.2.5.6 Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

⚠
RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950).

⚠
Wenn mit dem falschen Typ ausgewechselt, besteht Explosionsgefahr.
Gebrauchte Batterien gemäß der Anleitung beseitigen.

1.2.6 Product Specifications

1.2.6.1 Methods/Functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Copyboard	Stream reading, original fixed reading
Body	Integrated reader/printer, desktop
Light source type	LED (RGB)
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (30 mm dia)
Image reading method	CCD
Reproduction method	Indirect electrostatic method
Exposure method	Laser exposure system
Charging method	AC charge roller
Development method	Dry single component projection developing
Transfer method	By transfer roller
Separation method	By curvature and static eliminator
Cassette pickup method	Center reference/ retard separation method
Multifeeder pickup method	Center reference/ dual processing
Drum cleaning method	By cleaning blade
Fixing method	On demand
Delivery method	Face down delivery (in-body delivery)
Reproduction ratio	25% to 400%
Warm-up time	At power ON: 30 sec or less (with no options installed) 35 sec or less (for USA/ N/ F/ i model) At wake up from sleep mode: 10 sec or less
Non-image width (leading edge)	2.5 -/+ 2.0mm or less
Non-image width (trailing edge)	2.5 -/+ 2.0mm or less
Non-image width (left/right)	2.5 -/+ 2.0mm or less
Number of gradations	256 gradations
Reading resolution	B/W: 600dpi X 600dpi Colour: 300dpi X 300dpi (*) * For Japan, 600dpi X 600dpi For overseas, 600dpi X 600dpi is possible with added memory (System Upgrade RAM-A1; option)
Writing resolution	1200dpi x 1200dpi
First print time	iR 3245: 3.9 sec or less iR 3235: 3.9 sec or less iR 3230: 4.2 sec or less iR 3225: 4.9 sec or less
Cassette capacity	550 sheets (80g/m2) 650 sheets (64g/m2)
Multifeeder tray capacity	50 sheets (80 g/m2) 55 sheets (64 g/m2)
Continuous reproduction	1 to 999 sheets
Toner level detection function	Yes
Toner type	Magnetic negative toner
Original type	Sheet, book
Original size detection function	Yes (copyboard, ADF)
Duplex method	Through path Stackless
Sleep mode	Yes
Option	Refer to the system configuration

Operating environment (temperature range)	Refer to the installation
Operating environment (humidity range)	Refer to the installation
Operating environment (atmospheric pressure)	0.6 to 1.0 atm
Noise	iR3245: stand-by : 53dB or less, operation : 74.8 dB iR3235: stand-by : 53dB or less, operation : 71.3 dB iR3230: stand-by : 43dB or less, operation : 69.5 dB iR3225: stand-by : 43dB or less, operation : 67.8 dB
Power supply rating	100V/50-60Hz, 120V/60Hz, 230V/50Hz, 127V 220V/60Hz (Saudi), 110V/60Hz (Taiwan), 220V/50Hz (China), 220V/60Hz (Korea)
Power consumption (maximum)	100V: 1.48 kW or less, 120V: 1.41 kW or less, 230V: 1.41 kW or less (Main body only)
Ozone	Max: 0.02 ppm or less, ave: 0.01 ppm or less
Dimensions	iR 3245F/ iR 3235F/ iR 3225F: 565 mm x 700 mm x 901 mm (W x D x H) iR 3245/ iR 3235/ iR 3225: 565 mm x 700 mm x 761 mm (W x D x H)
Weight	iR3245F/iR3235F/iR3225F: 83.5 kg iR3245/iR3235/iR3225: 74 kg iR3245/iR3235 (ADF standard model): 82 kg

1.2.7 Function List

1.2.7.1 Printing Speed

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Max/Min (Max value required when the machine is fully cooled.)
If picking up the envelope from a cassette, optional envelope cassette is required.
1. iR3245/iR3235 model equipped with 2/3 delivery
*: The value in brackets [] represents iR3235.

T-1-13

Paper type	**Paper size**	**Single-sided**								**Duplexing**							
		Cassette 1 pickup		**Cassette 2/3/4 pickup**		**Manual feed tray pickup**		**Paper Deck**		**Cassette 1 pickup**		**Cassette 2/3/4 pickup**		**Manual feed tray pickup**		**Paper Deck**	
		1/2 delivery	**3 delivery**	**1/2 delivery**	**3 delivery**	**1/2 delivery**	**3 delivery**	**1/2 delivery**	**3 delivery**	**1/2 delivery**	**3 delivery**	**1/2 delivery**	**3 delivery**	**1/2 delivery**	**3 delivery**	**1/2 delivery**	**3 delivery**
Plain paper	A4, LTR	45[35]	15	45[35]	15	25	8	45[35]	15	22	7	22	7	12	4	22[17]	7
	A5R, STMTR, EXE	20/16	15	20/16	15	17/14	8	-	-	10/8	7	10/8	7	8/7	4	-	-
	B5	35	15	35	15	25	8	-	-	17	7	17	7	12	4	-	-
	B5R, A4R, LTRR	20/16	7	20/16	7	17/14	4	-	-	10/8	3	10/8	3	8/7	2	-	-
	B4	24/16	7	24/16	7	13	4	-	-	12/8	3	12/8	3	6	2	-	-
	A3	-	-	22	7	14	4	-	-	-	-	11	3	7	2	-	-
	LGL	16/14	7	16/14	7	13	4	-	-	8/7	3	8/7	3	6	2	-	-
	LDR	-	-	22	7	14	4	-	-	-	-	11	3	7	2	-	-
	Free	-	-	-	-	13	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heavy paper	A4, B5, LTR	-	-	-	-	25	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R, B5R, A4R, STMTR, LTRR	-	-	-	-	14	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B4, A3, LGL, LDR, Free	-	-	-	-	12	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Postcard	-	-	-	-	18/10	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
OHP	A4, LTR	-	-	-	-	25	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Envelope	Monarch, COM10, ISO-B5, ISO-C5, Yougata 4	12/8	-	-	-	12/8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DL	12/9	-	-	-	12/8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Bond paper	A4, A5R, B5, B5R, A4R, B4, A3, STMTR, LTR, LTRR, LGL, LDR, EXE, Free	-	-	-	-	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

2. iR3230 model equipped with 2/3 delivery

T-1-14

Paper type	Paper size	Single-sided								Duplexing							
		Cassette 1 pickup		Cassette 2/3/4 pickup		Manual feed tray pickup		Paper Deck		Cassette 1 pickup		Cassette 2/3/4 pickup		Manual feed tray pickup		Paper Deck	
		1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery
Plain paper	A4, LTR	30	15	30	15	25	8	30	15	15	7	15	7	12	4	15	7
	A5R, STMTR	20/16	15	20/16	15	17/14	8	-	-	10/8	7	10/8	7	8/7	4	-	-
	B5	30	15	30	15	25	8	-	-	15	7	15	7	12	4	-	-
	B5R, A4R, LTRR, EXE	20/16	7	20/16	7	17/14	4	-	-	10/8	3	10/8	3	8/7	2	-	-
	B4	24/16	7	24/16	7	13	4	-	-	12/8	3	12/8	3	6	2	-	-
	A3	-	-	22	7	14	4	-	-	-	-	11	3	7	2	-	-
	LGL	16/14	7	16/14	7	13	4	-	-	8/7	3	8/7	3	6	2	-	-
	LDR	-	-	22	7	14	4	-	-	-	-	11	3	7	2	-	-
	Free	-	-	-	-	13	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heavy paper	A4, B5, LTR	-	-	-	-	25	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R, B5R, A4R, STMTR, LTRR	-	-	-	-	14	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B4, A3, LGL, LDR, Free	-	-	-	-	12	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Postcard	-	-	-	-	18/10	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
OHP	A4, LTR	-	-	-	-	25	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Envelope	Monarch, COM10, ISO-B5, ISO-C5, Yougata 4	12/8	-	-	-	12/8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DL	12/9	-	-	-	12/8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Bond paper	A4, A5R, B5, B5R, A4R, B4, A3, STMTR, LTR, LTRR, LGL, LDR, EXE, Free	-	-	-	-	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

3. iR3225 model equipped with 2/3 delivery

Postcard and envelope have 3 levels depending on the edge heat control.

T-1-15

Paper type	Paper size	Single-sided								Duplexing							
		Cassette 1 pickup		Cassette 2/3/4 pickup		Manual feed tray pickup		Paper Deck		Cassette 1 pickup		Cassette 2/3/4 pickup		Manual feed tray pickup		Paper Deck	
		1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery	1/2 delivery	3 delivery
Plain paper	A4	25	8	25	8	25	8	25	8	14	4	14	4	25	8	14	4
	A5R	17/14	8	17/14	8	17/14	8	-	-	8/7	4	8/7	4	8/7	4	-	-
	B5	25	8	25	8	25	8	-	-	13	4	13	4	25	8	-	-
	B5R, A4R, STMTR, EXE	17/14	4	17/14	4	17/14	4	-	-	8/7	2	8/7	2	8/7	4	-	-
	B4	13	4	13	4	13	4	-	-	6	2	6	2	13	4	-	-
	A3, LDR	-	-	14	4	14	4	-	-	-	-	7	2	7	2	-	-
	LTR	25	8	25	8	25	8	25	8	14	4	14	4	12	4	14	4
	LTRR	17/14	4	17/14	4	17/14	4	-	-	8/7	2	8/7	2	8/7	2	-	-
	LGL	13	4	13	4	13	4	-	-	6	2	6	2	6	2	-	-
	Free	-	-	-	-	13	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heavy paper	A4, LTR	-	-	-	-	25	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R, B5R, A4R, STMTR, LTRR	-	-	-	-	13	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B5	-	-	-	-	23	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B4, LGL, Free	-	-	-	-	11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A3, LDR	-	-	-	-	12	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Postcard	-	-	-	-	12/10/8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
OHP	A4, LTR	-	-	-	-	25	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Envelope	Monarch, COM10, ISO-B5, ISO-C5, DL, Yougata 4	10/8/6	-	-	-	10/8/6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Bond paper	A4, A5R, B5, B5R, A4R, B4, A3, STMTR, LTR, LTRR, LGL, LDR, EXE, Free	-	-	-	-	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

1.2.7.2 Paper Type

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is the available paper types.
Prefer to the table below for paper weight of each paper type.

A: Supported
-: Operation unavailable

*1: Plain and Recycled paper are from 17 to 24 lb bond (64 to 90 g/m2). Load paper heavier than 20 lb bond (81 g/m2) in the stack bypass.
*2: Heavy paper is from 24 to 32 lb bond (91 to 128 g/m2).
*3: Some types of tracing paper cannot be used.
*4: Use only LTR transparencies made especially for this machine.
*5: If the optional Envelope Feeder Attachment-C2 is attached to Paper Drawer 1, envelopes can be loaded.

T-1-16

Paper Type	paper weight (g/m2)	Paper Source		
		Paper Drawer	Stack Bypass	Paper Deck (optional)
Plain*1	64 to 90	A	A	A
Recycled*1	64 to 90	A	A	A
Color	64	A	A	A
Pre-punched	64 to 90	A	A	A
Bond Paper	90	-	A	-
Heavy*2	91 to 128	-	A	-
Tracing Paper*3	64 to 79	-	A	-
Transparency*4	151 to 180	-	A	-
Labels	151 to 180	-	A	-
Envelopes	80 to 105	A*5	A	-

MEMO:
Glossy/Japanese/Tub paper is not supported.

Refer to the table below for custom paper.

T-1-17

Size	Main scanning direction (mm)	Sub scanning direction (mm)
Custom	148 to 431.8	99 to 297
Custom (extra long)	431.9 to 630	99 to 297

1. Pickup Source, Duplexing
A: Supported
B: Not supported (operation possible)
-: Operation unavailable

T-1-18

Paper type	Size	Pickup source						Duplexing
		Manual feed tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2	Cassette 3	Cassette 4	Paper Deck	
Plain, color paper	A4, LTR	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	B4, A4R, B5R, B5, LGL, LTRR, STMTR, A5R, EXEC, K8, K16	A	A	A	A	A	-	A
	A3, 11x17	A	-	A	A	A	-	A
	OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS	-	B	B	B	B	-	B
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom (extra long)	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
Recycle	A4, LTR	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	B4, A4R, B5R, B5, LGL, LTRR, A5R	A	A	A	A	A	-	A
	A3, 11x17	A	-	A	A	A	-	A
	STMTR, EXEC, K8, K16	B	B	B	B	B	-	B
	OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS	-	B	B	B	B	-	B
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom (extra long)	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heavy paper	A3, B4, A4R, A4, B5R, B5, A5R, 11x17, LGL, LTR, LTRR, STMTR, EXEC, Custom	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8, K16	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper type	Size	Pickup source						Duplexing
		Manual feed tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2	Cassette 3	Cassette 4	Paper Deck	
3-hole/4-hole punched paper	A4, LTR	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	A4R, LTRR	A	A	A	A	A	-	A
	B4, B5R, B5, LGL, A5R, STMTR, EXEC, K8, K16	B	B	B	B	B	-	B
	A3, 11x17	B	-	B	B	B	-	B
	OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS	-	B	B	B	B	-	B
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom (extra long)	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
Bond paper	A3, B4, A4R, A4, B5R, B5, A5R, 11x17, LGL, LTR, LTRR, STMTR, EXEC, Custom	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8, K16	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, 0STMT, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transparency	A4, LTR	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A3, B4, A4R, B5R, B5, A5, A5R, 11x17, LGL, LTRR, STMTR, STMT, EXEC, K8, K16, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS, Custom, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Labels	B4, A4R, A4, LTR, LTRR	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A3, B5R, B5, A5R, 11x17, LGL, STMTR, EXEC, K8, K16, Custom	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Tracing paper	A3, B4, A4R, A4, B5R, B5	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R, 11x17, LGL, LTR, LTRR, STMTR, EXEC, K8, K16, Custom, Custom (extra long)	B	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Postcard	Postcard, return postcard, 4 on 1 card	A	-	-	-	-	-	-
Envelope	COM10, Monarch, ISO-C5, ISO-B5, DL, Yougata 4	A	A	-	-	-	-	-

2. delivery
A: Supported
B: Not supported (operation possible)
-: Operation unavailable

T-1-19

Paper type	Size	Delivery																				
		Common		Main body delivery			In-body Finisher					Finisher / Saddle finisher										Saddle finisher
							Standard tray (lower) Option tray (upper)					In-body	Middle, lower tray									
		Rotate collate	Rotate group	Tray 1 (FD)	Tray 2 (FD)	Tray 3 (FD)	Straight delivery	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Punch	In-body tray	In-body tray	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Double	2-hole	2/3-hole	4-hole FRN	4-hole SWE	Saddle
Plain paper Color paper	A4R	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A
	A3	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	LTRR	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A
	11x17, LGL	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A
	B4	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A
	A4	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-
	LTR	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	-
	B5	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	-
	B5R	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	-	-	A	A	A	-	-	-	-	A	-	-	A	-
	A-LTR	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	-
	OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, FLS	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	-
	EXEC	-	-	A	A	A	-	B	B	B	B	A	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	B	-
	A-LTRR, GLTR	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	B	-
	E-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	B	-
	GLTR-R	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	B	-
	GLGL, AFLS	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	B	-
	K8, K16	-	-	A	A	A	-	B	B	B	-	A	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R, STMTR	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom	-	-	A	A	-	-	B	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom (extra long)	-	-	B	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper type	Size	Delivery																				
		Common		Main body delivery			In-body Finisher					Finisher / Saddle finisher										Saddle finisher
							Standard tray (lower) Option tray (upper)					In-body	Middle, lower tray									
		Rotate collate	Rotate group	Tray 1 (FD)	Tray 2 (FD)	Tray 3 (FD)	Straight delivery	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Punch	In-body tray	In-body tray	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Double	2-hole	2/3-hole	4-hole FRN	4-hole SWE	Saddle
Recycle	A4R	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A
	A3	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	LTRR	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A
	11x17, LGL	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A
	B4	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A
	A4	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-
	LTR	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	-
	B5	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	-
	B5R	A	A	A	A	A	-	A	-	-	A	A	A	-	-	-	-	A	-	-	A	-
	A-LTR	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	-
	OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, FLS	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	-
	A-LTRR, GLTR	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	B	-
	EXEC, E-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	B	-
	GLTR-R	B	B	B	B	B	-	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	B	-
	GLGL, AFLS	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	B	-
	K8, K16	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	STMTR	-	-	B	B	B	-	A	-	-	-	B	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom	-	-	A	A	-	-	B	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom (extra long)	-	-	B	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper type	Size	Delivery																				
		Common		Main body delivery			In-body Finisher					Finisher / Saddle finisher										Saddle finisher
							Standard tray (lower) Option tray (upper)					In-body	Middle, lower tray									
		Rotate collate	Rotate group	Tray 1 (FD)	Tray 2 (FD)	Tray 3 (FD)	Straight delivery	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Punch	In-body tray	In-body tray	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Double	2-hole	2/3-hole	4-hole FRN	4-hole SWE	Saddle
Heavy paper	A4R	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	-	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	A3	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	LTRR	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	11x17, LGL	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	B4	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	-	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	A4	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	-
	LTR	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	-	A	-
	B5	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	-	-	A	-
	B5R	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	A	A	A	-	-	-	-	A	-	-	A	-
	EXEC	-	-	A	A	-	-	B	B	B	B	A	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	B	-
	K8, K16	-	-	B	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	STMTR, Custom	-	-	A	A	-	-	B	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper type	Size	Delivery																				
		Common		Main body delivery			In-body Finisher					Finisher / Saddle finisher										Saddle finisher
							Standard tray (lower) Option tray (upper)					In-body	Middle, lower tray									
		Rotate collate	Rotate group	Tray 1 (FD)	Tray 2 (FD)	Tray 3 (FD)	Straight delivery	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Punch	In-body tray	In-body tray	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Double	2-hole	2/3-hole	4-hole FRN	4-hole SWE	Saddle
Bond paper	A3	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	LTRR	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	11x17, LGL	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	A4R	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	-	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	B4	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	-	-	A	Cover: A / Text: B
	A4	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	-
	LTR	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	-	A	-
	B5	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	A	A	A	A	A	A	Cover: A / Text: B	Cover: A / Text: B	A	-	-	A	-
	B5R	A	A	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	A	A	A	-	-	-	-	A	-	-	A	-
	EXEC	-	-	A	A	-	-	B	B	B	B	A	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	B	-
	K8, K16	-	-	B	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	STMTR, Custom	-	-	A	A	-	-	B	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper type	Size	Delivery																				
		Common		Main body delivery			In-body Finisher					Finisher / Saddle finisher										Saddle finisher
							Standard tray (lower) Option tray (upper)					In-body	Middle, lower tray									
		Rotate collate	Rotate group	Tray 1 (FD)	Tray 2 (FD)	Tray 3 (FD)	Straight delivery	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Punch	In-body tray	In-body tray	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Double	2-hole	2/3-hole	4-hole FRN	4-hole SWE	Saddle
Transparency	A4, LTR	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A3, B4, A4R, B5R, B5, A5, A5R, 11x17, LGL, LTRR, STMTR, STMT, EXEC, K8, K16, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS, Custom, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Labels	B4, A4R, A4, LTR, LTRR	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8, K16	-	-	B	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	-
	A3, B5R, B5, A5R, 11x17, LGL, STMTR, EXEC, Custom	-	-	B	B	-	-	B	-	-	-	B	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT, Custom (extra long)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper type	Size	Delivery																				
		Common		Main body delivery			In-body Finisher					Finisher / Saddle finisher										Saddle finisher
							Standard tray (lower) Option tray (upper)					In-body	Middle, lower tray									
		Rotate collate	Rotate group	Tray 1 (FD)	Tray 2 (FD)	Tray 3 (FD)	Straight delivery	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Punch	In-body tray	In-body tray	Collate (alignment)	Offset collate	Top or bottom 1-staple	Double	2-hole	2/3-hole	4-hole FRN	4-hole SWE	Saddle
3-hole/ 4-hole punched paper	A4, LTR, LTRR	-	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	-	-	-
	A4R	-	-	A	A	A	-	B	B	B	-	A	A	A	A	A	A	-	-	-	-	-
	A3, B4, B5, 11x17, LGL	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	A	A	-	-	-	-	-
	EXEC, K8, K16, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR, FLS	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	-
	B5R, A5R, STMTR, GLTR-R, GLGL, AFLS	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	-	-	-	B	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom	-	-	B	B	-	-	B	-	-	-	B	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom (extra long)	-	-	B	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transparency	A3, B4, A4R, A4, B5R, B5	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8, K16	-	-	B	B	-	-	B	B	B	-	B	B	B	B	B	B	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R, 11x17, LGL, LTR, LTRR, STMTR, EXEC, Custom	-	-	B	B	-	-	B	-	-	-	B	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Custom (extra long)	-	-	B	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	B	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5, STMT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Postcard	Postcard, return postcard, 4 on 1 card	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Envelope	COM10, Monarch, ISO-C5, ISO-B5, DL, Yougata 4	-	-	A	A	-	-	A	-	-	-	A	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Chapter 2 Installation

Contents

2.1 Making Pre-Checks 2-1
2.1.1 Checking Installation Environment 2-1
2.1.2 Points to Note Before Installation 2-2
2.1.3 Combination Table of Accessories 2-2
2.1.4 Checking the Contents 2-3
2.2 Unpacking and Installation 2-5
2.2.1 Unpacking and Removing Fixing Member 2-5
2.2.2 Installing the Filter 2-6
2.2.3 Installing Toner Container 2-7
2.2.4 Installing Drum Unit 2-8
2.2.5 Installing Other Parts 2-11
2.2.6 Fixing the Host Machine 2-13
2.2.7 Connecting the Cable 2-13
2.2.8 Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power 2-14
2.2.9 Stirring Toner 2-14
2.2.10 Cassette Setting 2-14
2.2.11 APVC Correction of Drum 2-14
2.2.12 Auto Gradation Correction 2-14
2.2.13 Screen Position Adjustment 2-15
2.3 Checking the Connection to the Network 2-17
2.3.1 Overview 2-17
2.3.2 Ping Operation Procedure 2-17
2.3.3 Checking Network with Remote Host Address 2-17
2.3.4 When Not Using Network Connection 2-17
2.4 Troubleshooting the Network 2-17
2.4.1 Overview 2-17
2.4.2 Check with Loopback Address 2-17
2.4.3 Check with Local Host Address 2-17
2.5 Checking the Images/Operations 2-17
2.5.1 Checking the Image/Operation 2-17
2.6 Installing the Card Reader 2-18
2.6.1 Notice At Installation 2-18
2.6.2 Checking the Contents 2-18
2.6.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2-18
2.6.4 Installation Procedure 2-18
2.6.5 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (hereinafter referred to iWAM) Environment 2-21
2.7 Installing the Original Holder 2-21
2.7.1 Notice At Installation 2-21
2.7.2 Checking Components 2-21
2.7.3 Installation Procedure 2-21
2.8 Installing the Reader Heater 2-22
2.8.1 Checking Parts to Install 2-22
2.8.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2-23
2.8.3 Installation Procedure 2-23
2.9 Installing the Cassette Heater 2-26
2.9.1 Checking Parts to Install 2-26
2.9.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine 2-26
2.9.3 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Unit) 2-26
2.10 Installing the Cassette Heater for the Cassette Pedestal 2-29

2.10.1 Checking Parts to Install ... 2-30
2.10.2 Checking Parts to Install ... 2-30
2.10.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-30
2.10.4 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Unit) ... 2-30
2.10.5 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Attachment) ... 2-31
2.11 Installing the Deck Heater ... 2-35
2.11.1 Checking the Parts to Install ... 2-35
2.11.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-35
2.11.3 Installation Procedure ... 2-35
2.12 Installing the Memory ... 2-38
2.12.1 Checking the Contents ... 2-38
2.12.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-38
2.12.3 Installation Procedure ... 2-38
2.13 Installing the Memory (System upgrade memory) ... 2-38
2.13.1 Checking the Contents ... 2-38
2.13.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-38
2.13.3 Installation Procedure ... 2-39
2.14 Installing the Expansion Bus Kit ... 2-39
2.14.1 Checking the contents ... 2-39
2.14.2 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-39
2.14.3 Installation Procedure ... 2-39
2.15 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit ... 2-40
2.15.1 Notice At Installation ... 2-40
2.15.2 Checking the Contents ... 2-40
2.15.3 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-40
2.15.4 Installation Procedure ... 2-40
2.15.5 Checking the Settings ... 2-43
2.15.6 Operation Check ... 2-43
2.16 Installing the Voice Operation Kit ... 2-43
2.16.1 Notice At Installation ... 2-43
2.16.2 Checking the Contents ... 2-43
2.16.3 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-44
2.16.4 Installation Procedure ... 2-44
2.16.5 Checking the Settings ... 2-48
2.16.6 Operation Check ... 2-48
2.17 Installing the Wireless Network Interface Adapter ... 2-48
2.17.1 Notice At Installation ... 2-48
2.17.2 Checking the Contents ... 2-48
2.17.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-48
2.17.4 Installation Procedure ... 2-49
2.17.5 Attaching the Label ... 2-50
2.18 Installing the IPSec Board ... 2-50
2.18.1 Notice At Installation ... 2-50
2.18.2 Checking the Contents ... 2-50
2.18.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine ... 2-50
2.18.4 Installation Procedure ... 2-50

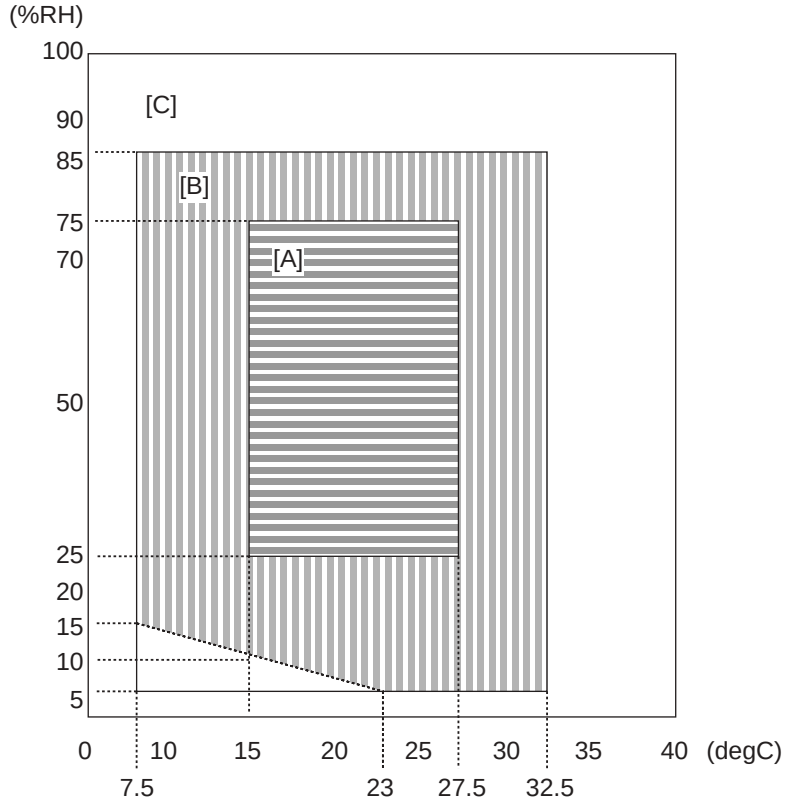
2.1 Making Pre-Checks

2.1.1 Checking Installation Environment

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The followings are the condition for installation environment.
It is better to see the planned location of installation before carrying the host machine in the user site.

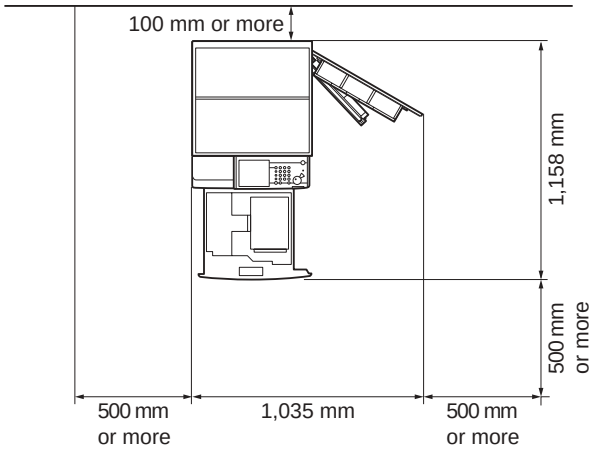
1) The host machine can singly connect to the outlet of rated +/-10V, 15A or more.
2) Temperature and humidity is within the following range. Especially avoid the close location to faucet, water heater, humidifier and refrigerator.



F-2-1

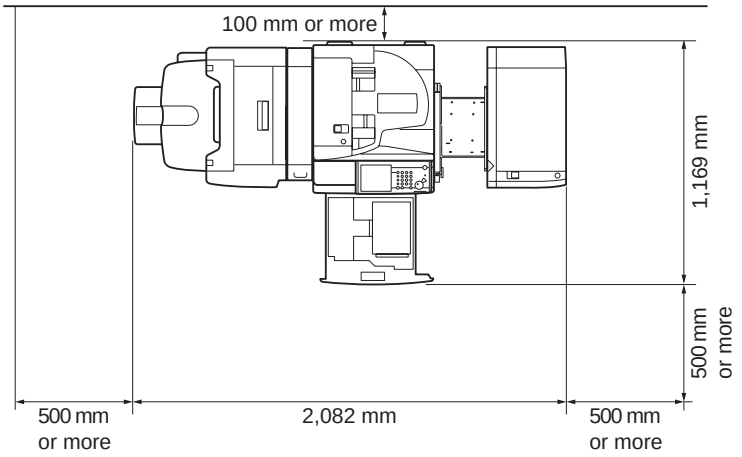
<Environment zone assured>
[A] Zone A: Satisfies all the conditions of the standard image quality and paper feed performance.
[B] Zone B: Inferior to Zone A in terms of the standard image quality and paper feed performance, or may not apply.
[C] Zone C: Problems associated with safety, malfunctions, or incorrect message display do not occur, but image quality and paper feed performance are not guaranteed.

3) Avoid fire, dusty place and the location where ammonia gas is generated. Also, if the host machine receives direct sunlight at installation location, it is recommended to put curtains on the window.
4) The ozone amount that is generated during operation with the host machine does not cause a hazard to human health; however, its odor may be recognized if the host machine is used for many hours in the poor ventilated location. Thus, provide adequate ventilation to keep the operation environment comfortable.
5) Make sure that the foot of the host machine does not float, and also, the host machine is leveled.
6) Allocate enough space for service operation of the host machine.
- When options not installed,



F-2-2

- DADF-U1 + Saddle Finisher-AE2 + Puncher Unit-M1 + Buffer Pass Unit-E2 + Paper Deck-Q1



F-2-3

7) Install the host machine in well-ventilated location; however, do not install the host machine near the air inlet of a room.

2.1.2 Points to Note Before Installation

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Make sure to note the followings before installing the host machine.

1) If moving the host machine from the cold place to a warm place abruptly, dew condensation is generated inside host machine and it may cause various image failures. Thus unpack and place the host machine in warm place for 2 hours or more to accustom the host machine to room temperature before installation. (Condensation: condensation commonly occurs when a vapor is cooled to a liquid, for example, when metals are moved from a cool place to a warm place, vapors around metals are cooled into a liquid and attaches to metals.)
2) Since the host machine weighs 97kg at the maximum (including DADF), make sure to lift it with 4 people and also lift it in a horizontal position.

2.1.3 Combination Table of Accessories

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following list describes the accessories that can be installed on the right of host machine.
When installing the accessories described in the list, refer to the following list to check the combination before installation.

T-2-1

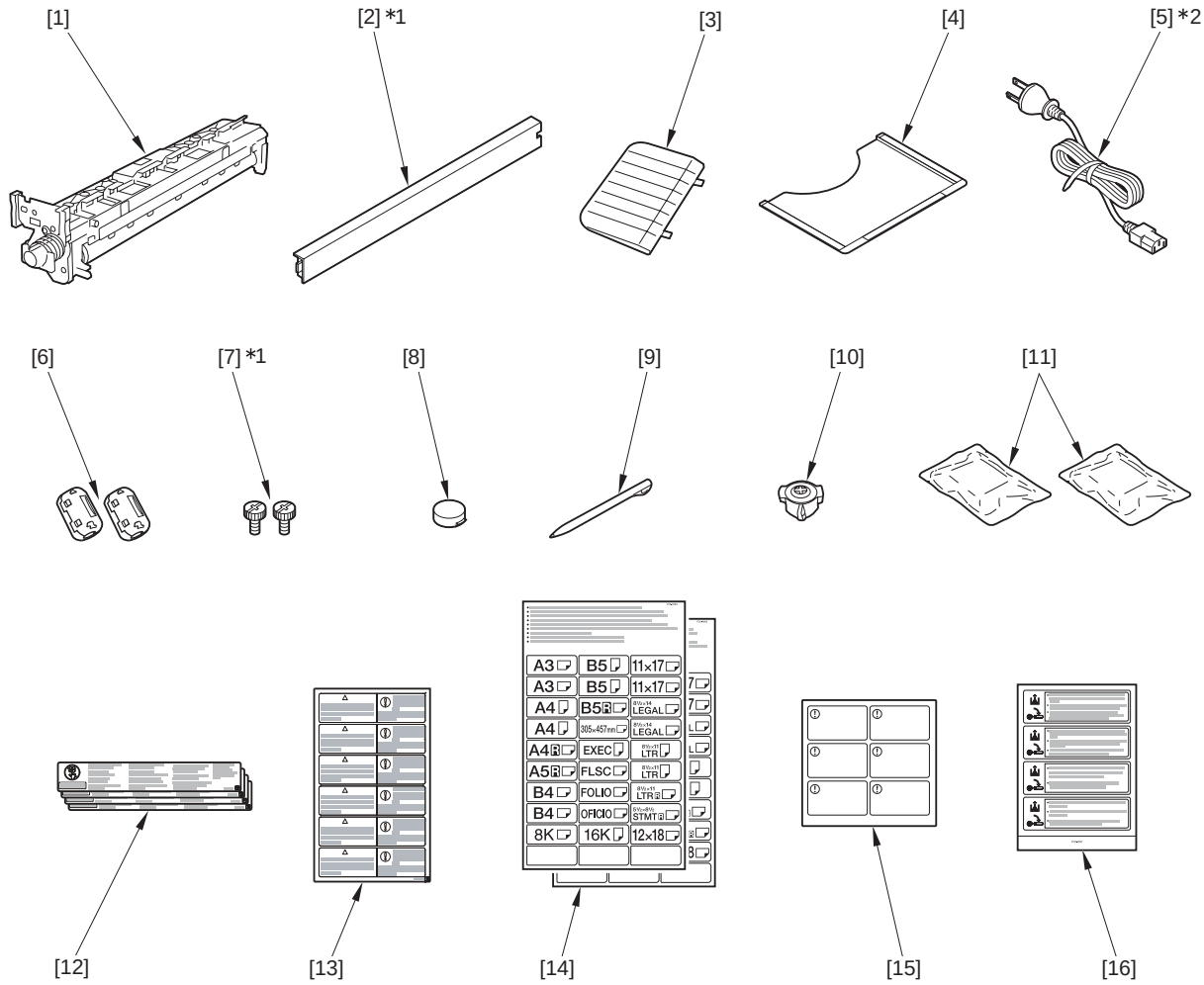
	Card Reader-C1	Document Tray-J1	Voice Guidance Kit-D1*	Voice Operation Kit-B1*
Card Reader-C1	-	yes	yes	yes
Document Tray-J1	yes	-	no	no
Voice Guidance Kit-D1*	yes	no	-	no
Voice Operation Kit-B1*	yes	no	no	-

yes: Can be installed together no: Cannot be installed together
* Unavailable in some regions.

2.1.4 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

MEMO:
Get out all of the contents in the cassette.



F-2-4

[1]	Drum unit	1pc.	[2]*1	Right cover (lower)	1pc.
[3]	Reverse guide	1pc.	[4]	Service book case	1pc.
[5]*2	Power code	1pc.	[6]	Ferrite core	2pc.
[7]*1	Adjustment screw	2pc.	[8]	Rubber face cover	1pc.
[9]	Touch pen	1pc.	[10]	Stamp (only for the model with DADF)	1pc.
[11]	Filter	2pc.	[12]	Copy prohibition label	4pc.
[13]	Cleaning point label	1pc.	[14]	Paper size label	2pc.
[15]	Shut down label	1pc.	[16]	Lever set label	1pc.

*1; Use only when the cassette feeding unit is not installed.

*2; Use the correct power code to mach the location/area of installation.
Make sure not to leave unused power code at the site.

Check the CD and guides according to the following table.

T-2-2

	iR3245/3235/3225	**iR3245N/3235N/3225N**
Users Guide	yes	yes
e-Manual	yes	yes
Tutorial CD (2pc.)	yes	yes
MEAP Administration Software CD	yes	yes

	iR3245/3235/3225	iR3245N/3235N/3225N
UFR II/PCL Driver/Utility CD	-	yes
iW MC CD	-	yes
SEND TRIAL EUR-B1	yes	yes

yes: included

2.2 Unpacking and Installation

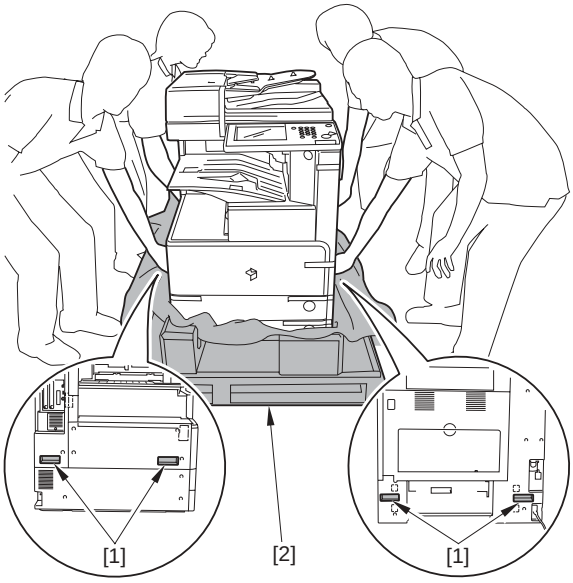
2.2.1 Unpacking and Removing Fixing Member

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

MEMO:
When installing the cassette feeding unit, put the host machine on the cassette feeding unit.
(Refer to the installation procedure of cassette feeding unit when installing the cassette feeding unit.)

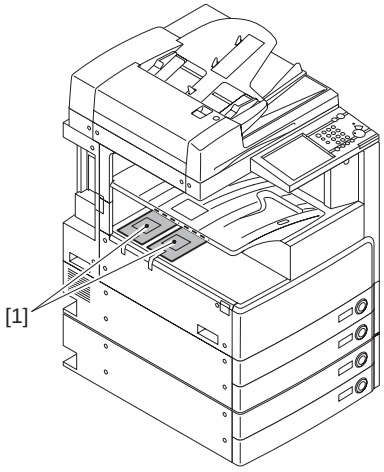
1) Unpack the package of the host machine and remove the plastic covers.
2) Hold the 4 grips [1] at right and left, and lift down the host machine from the palette [2].

⚠ Since the host machine weighs 97kg at the maximum (including DADF), make sure to lift it with 4 people or more.



F-2-5

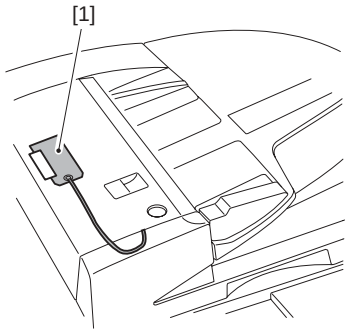
3) Remove the 2 filters [1] secured with the tape.



F-2-6

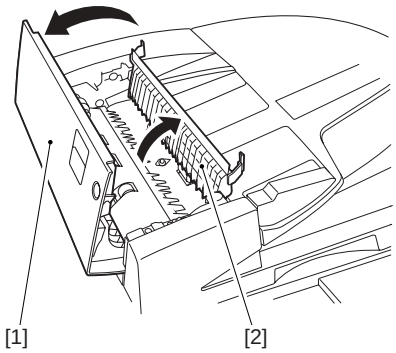
MEMO:
Perform the procedure from step 4) to 6) only for the model with DADF.

4) Remove the tag [1] secured to the DADF with a tape.



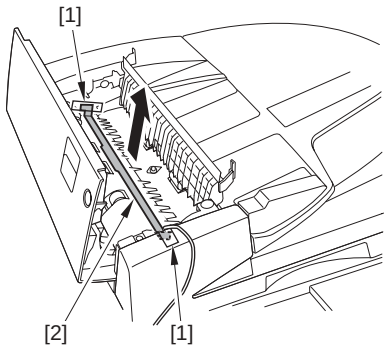
F-2-7

5) Open the feeder cover [1] of DADF and separation guide [2].



F-2-8

6) Remove the 2 tapes [1] and then remove the spacer [2]. (Do not use the removed spacer.)



F-2-9

7) Remove all tapes and fixing members at all parts.
8) Remove the 2 scanner fixing screws [1] on the right of reader. (Store the scanner fixing screws for moving the host machine.)

F-2-10

9) Open the host machine right cover [1].

F-2-11

10) Remove the fixing pressure release cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.

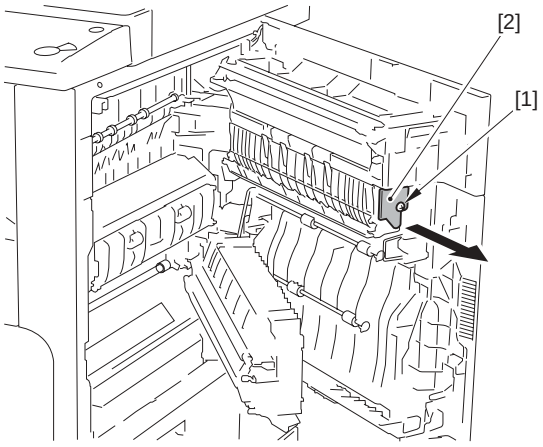
> ⚠
> If turning on the main power without removing the fixing pressure release cover, fixing heater may get damaged.

F-2-12

2.2.2 Installing the Filter

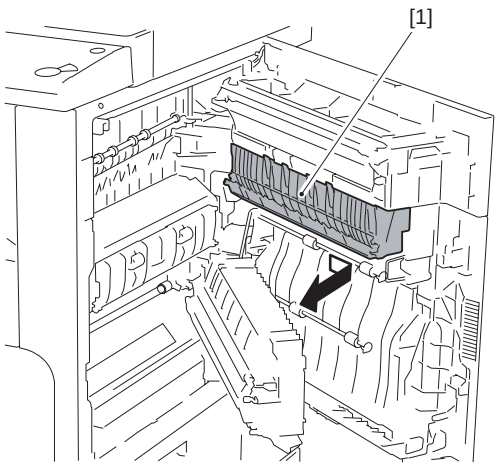
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the screw [1] with the host machine right cover opened and remove the fixing plate [2].



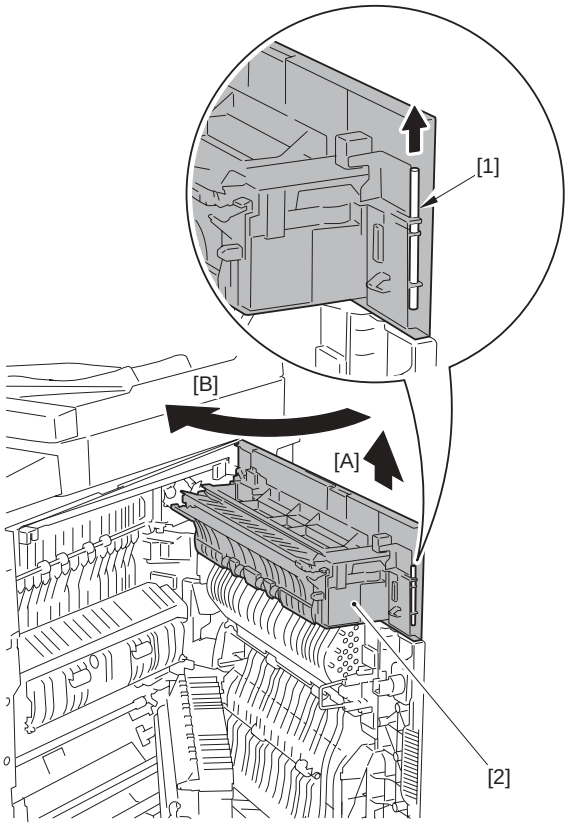
F-2-13

2) Remove the feeder guide [1] in the direction of the arrow.



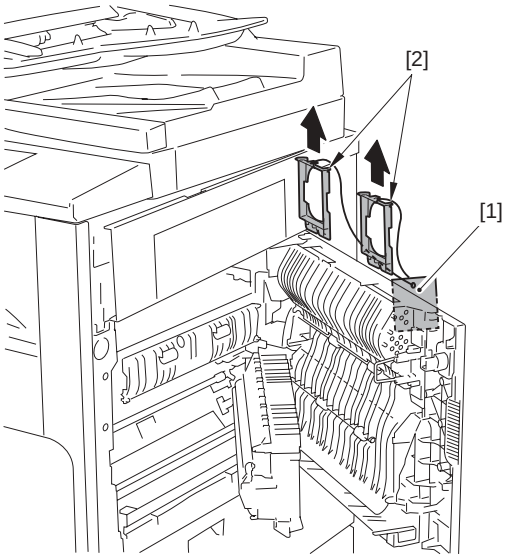
F-2-14

3) Remove the connecting shaft [1], move the 3 way unit [2] in the direction of [A], and then in the direction of [B] to free it.



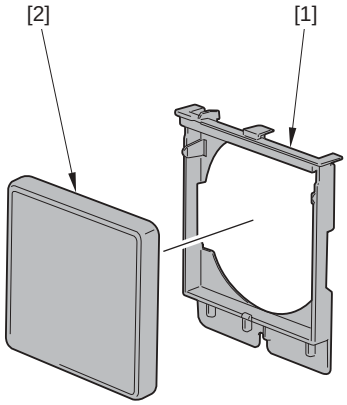
F-2-15

4) Remove the tape that secures the tag [1], remove the 2 filter holders [2].



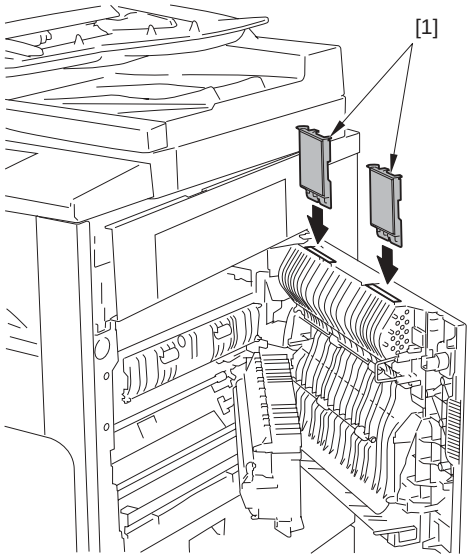
F-2-16

5) Remove the tag from the filter holder [1], and then install the filter [2] to the filter holder [1].



F-2-17

6) Install the 2 filter holders [1].



F-2-18

7) Install the connecting shaft to the 3 way unit and install the right cover of the host machine.
8) Install the feeder guide and fixing plate.
9) Close the host machine right cover.

2.2.3 Installing Toner Container

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the front cover [1].

F-2-19

2) Turn the lock lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.

F-2-20

3) Unpack the toner container and remove the cap [1].

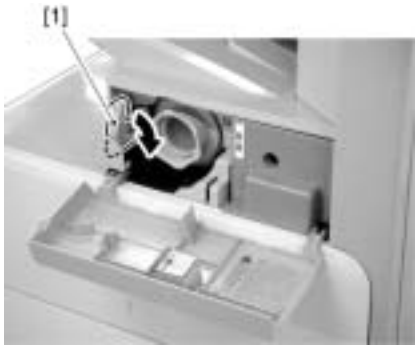
F-2-21

4) Set the toner container [1] into the host machine.

F-2-22

5) Turn the lock lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to secure the toner container.

⚠
Turn the lock lever until it is in a horizontal position. If it is not turned enough, the toner is not normally supplied.

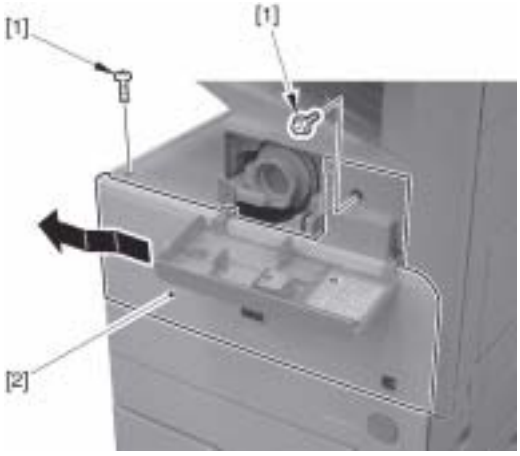


F-2-23

2.2.4 Installing Drum Unit

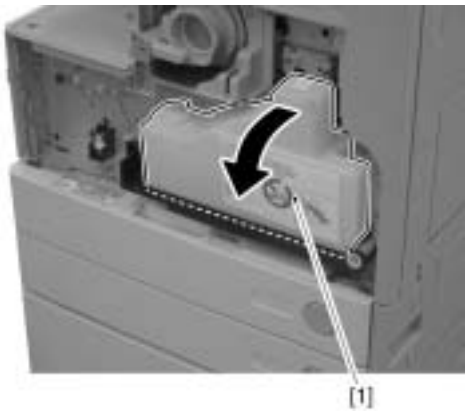
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the front cover unit [2] in the direction of the arrow.



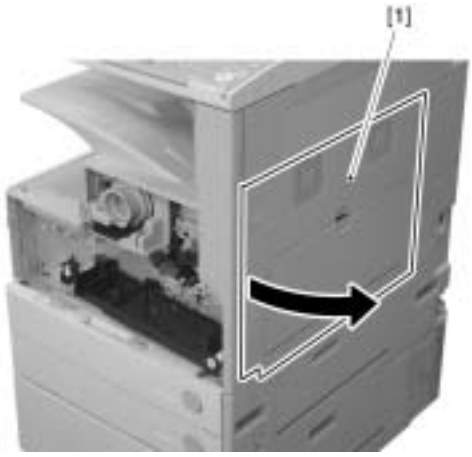
F-2-24

2) Remove the waste toner container [1].



F-2-25

3) Open the host machine right cover [1].

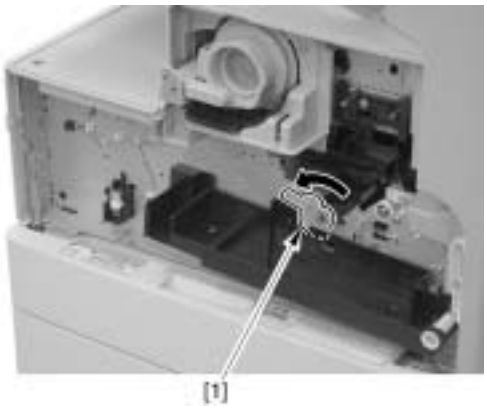


F-2-26

4) Remove the screw [1] on the developing assembly pressure lever.

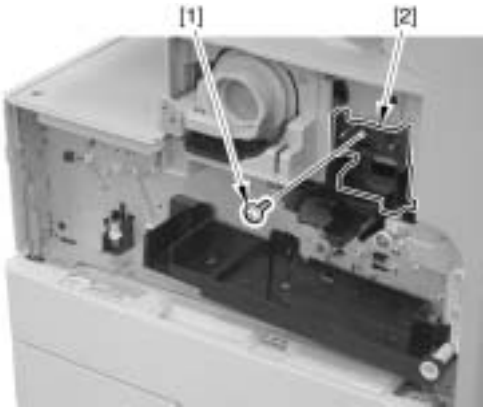
F-2-27

5) Turn the developing assembly pressure lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to release the pressure.

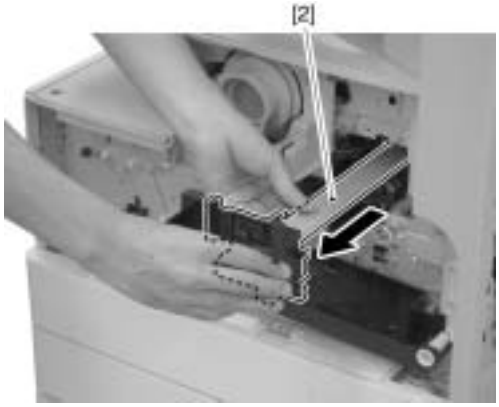


F-2-28

6) Remove the screw [1] and the dummy drum [2]. (Removed dummy drum will not be used.)



F-2-29



F-2-30

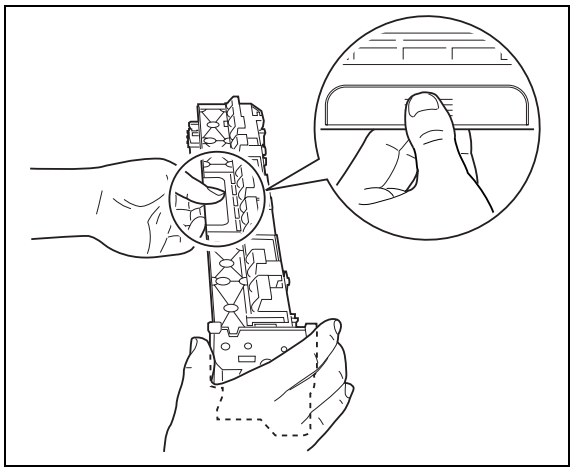
7) Remove the package of the drum unit and remove the 2 drum pressure release rollers [1].

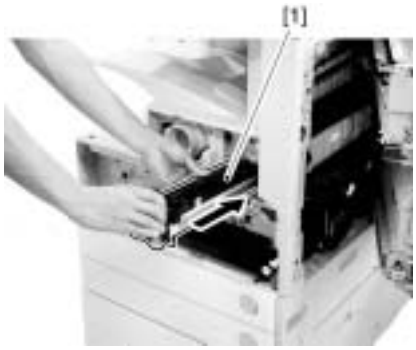
⚠
- Do not touch the surface of the photosensitive drum.
- Prevent the photosensitive drum from being exposed to the direct sunlight for many hours.
- Do not touch the rowel of the drum unit.

F-2-31

8) Insert the drum unit [1] into the host machine.

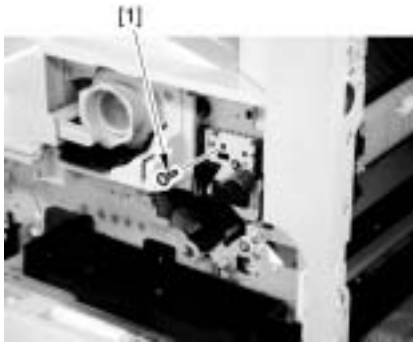
⚠
Hold the drum unit as instructed.





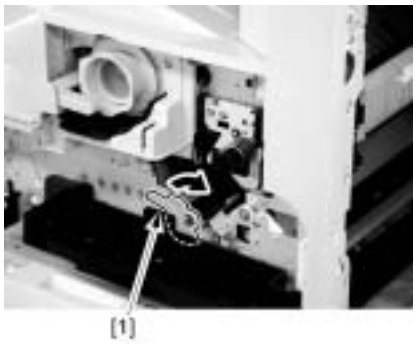
F-2-32

9) Fix the drum unit with the screw [1] removed by step 6).



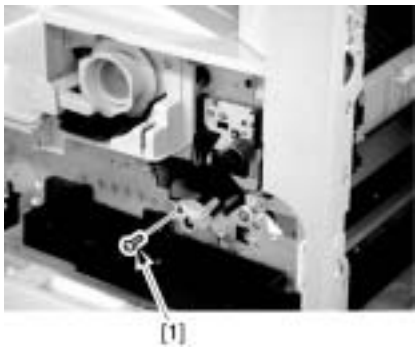
F-2-33

10) Turn the developing assembly pressure lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to apply the pressure.



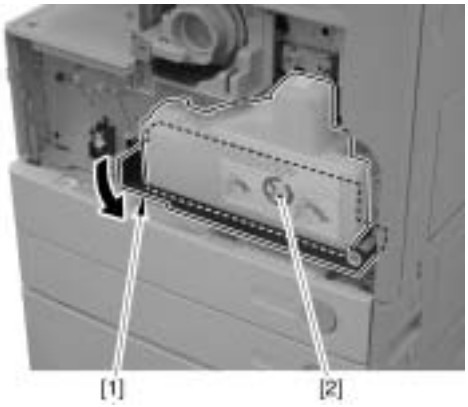
F-2-34

11) Fix the developing assembly pressure lever with the screw [1] removed by step 4).



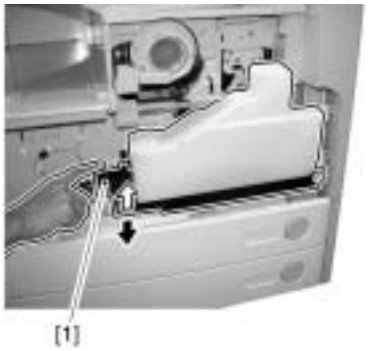
F-2-35

12) Close the host machine right cover.
13) While lowering the waste toner full level detection lever [1], install the waste toner container [2].

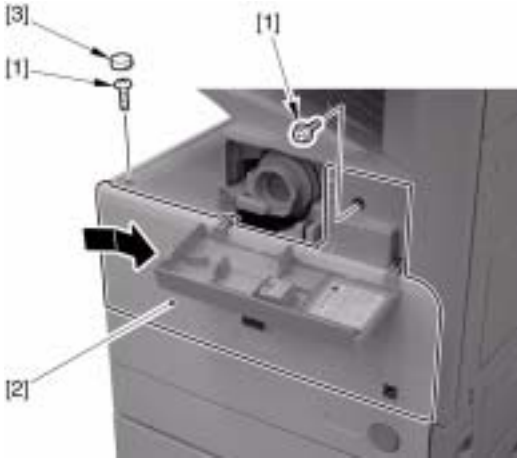


F-2-36

After installing the waste toner container, move the waste toner full level detection lever [1] up and down to check that it moves smoothly. If not, the lever may detect the full level erroneously.



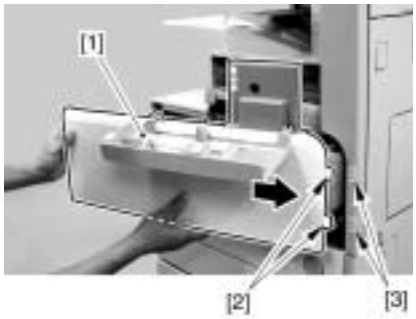
14) Fix the front cover unit [2] with the 2 screws removed by step 1) and install the rubber face cover [3].



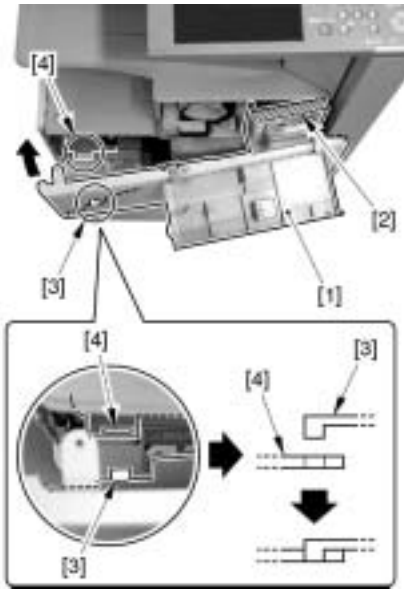
F-2-37

MEMO: installing the front cover unit

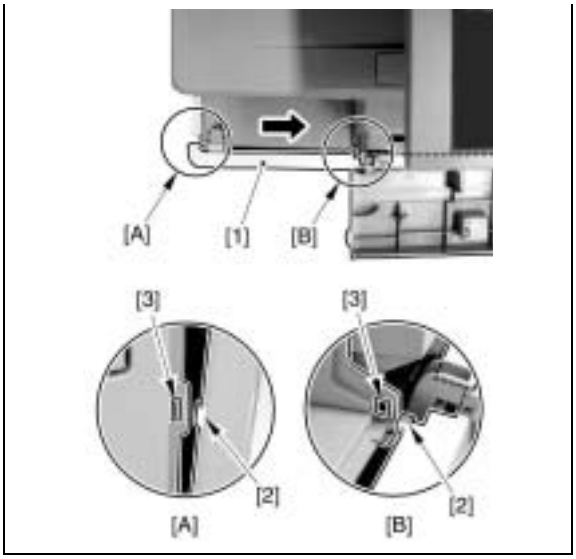
1) Insert the 2 claws [2] on the right of the front cover unit [1] into the claw holes [3] of host machine.



2) While aligning the top [2] of the front cover unit [1] with the host machine, insert the claw [3] on the left of the front cover unit [1] into the claw hole [4] of the host machine.



3) While aligning the 2 claws [2] on the front cover unit [1] with the 2 claw holes [3] of the host machine, install the front cover unit [1] in the right side.

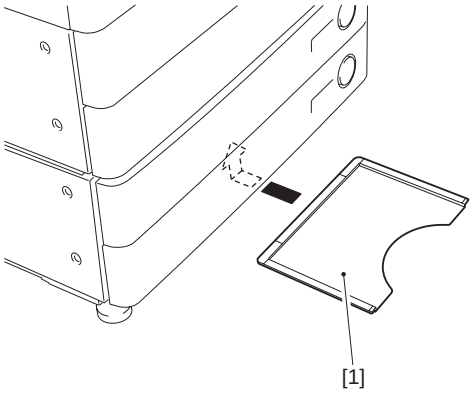


15) Close the front cover.

2.2.5 Installing Other Parts

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Service book case>
1) Remove the backing paper on the service book case [1] and put the service book case on the bottom plate of the cassette feeding unit.

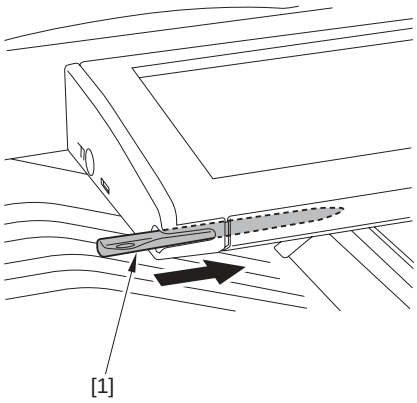


F-2-38

Prohibited position for installation
- Inside body (inner side of front cover)
- The position that covers the louver
- The position that covers the grip

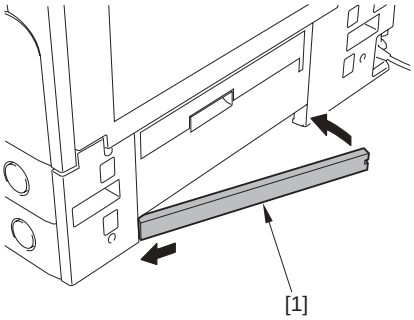
MEMO:
If the cassette feeding unit is not installed, put it on the left cover of the host machine.

<Touch pen>
1) Set the touch pen [1] into the control panel.



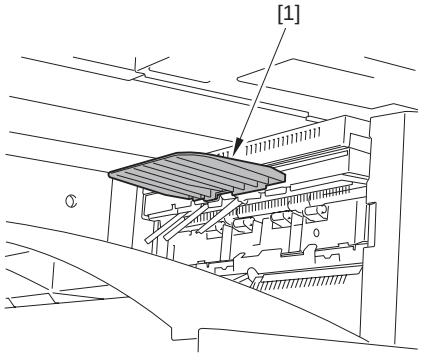
F-2-39

<Right cover (lower) (only when the cassette feeding unit is not installed)>
1) Install the right cover (lower) [1] in the direction of the arrow.



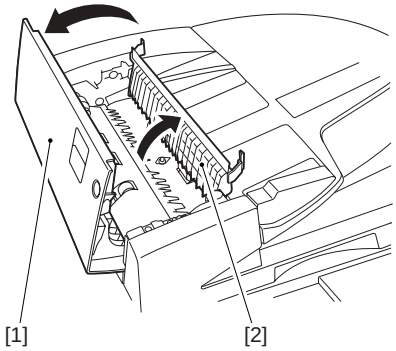
F-2-40

<Reverse guide>
1) Install the reverse guide [1] onto the delivery assembly.



F-2-41

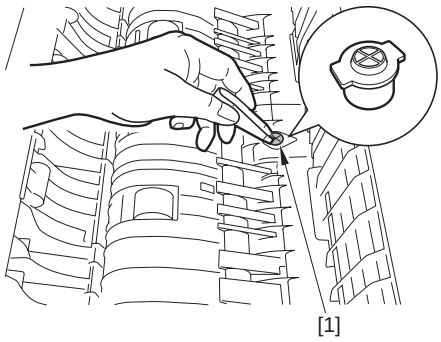
<Stamp (only for the model with DADF) >
1) Open the feeder cover [1] of DADF and separation guide [2].



F-2-42

2) Install the stamp [1] with tweezers etc. Make sure to place the stamp with print side facing up.

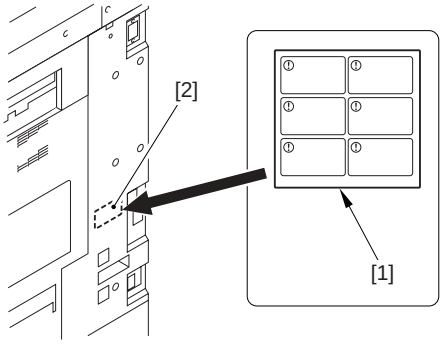
If the stamp is not set completely, jam may be generated. Be sure to push it until it clicks.



F-2-43

<Shut down label>

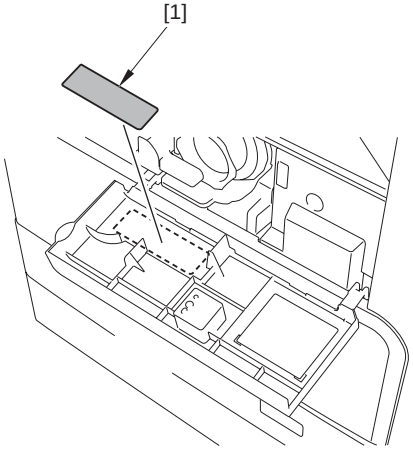
1) Put the shutdown label [1] in corresponding language on the left [2] of the main power on the right cover (rear).



F-2-44

<Lever set label>

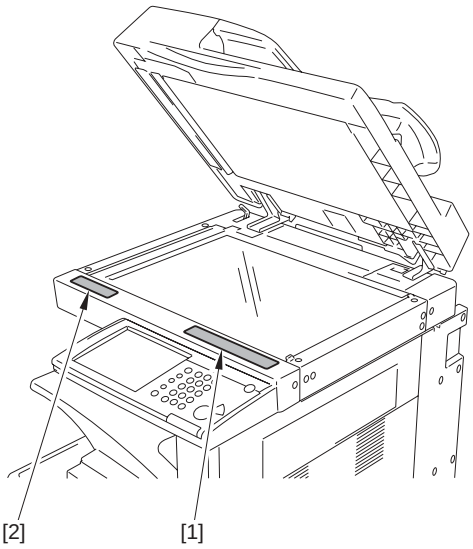
1) Open the front cover and put the laver set label [1] in the corresponding language.



F-2-45

<Copy prohibition label/Cleaning point label>

1) Open the platen cover/DADF.
2) Put the copy prohibition label [1] in corresponding language.
3) Put the cleaning point label [1] in corresponding language.
(Labels in English are affixed at shipping.)



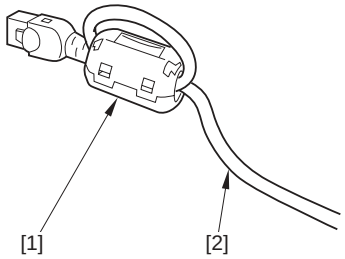
F-2-46

<Ferrite core>

To prevent noise, be sure to install the ferrite core as follows.
- Install it as close as possible to the connection between the host machine and the cable.
- Make a turn of the cable around the ferrite core.
- Be careful not to get the cable caught in the ferrite core.

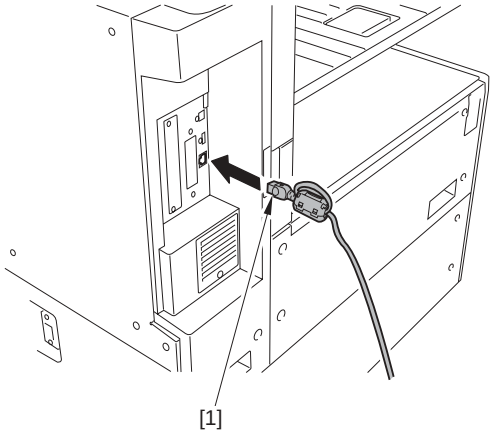
1) Install the ferrite core [1] to the network cable [2] of the user.

If using 1000Base-T, it is recommended to use twist pair cable that supports the enhanced category 5 (CAT5e) or higher.



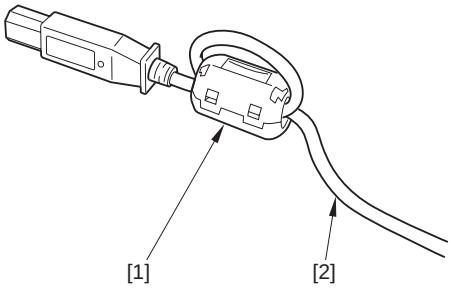
F-2-47

2) Connect the network cable [1] to the host machine.



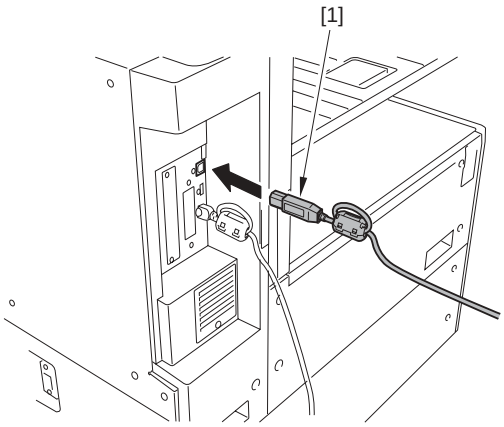
F-2-48

3) Install the ferrite core [1] to the USB cable [2] of the user.



F-2-49

4) Connect the USB cable [1] to the host machine.



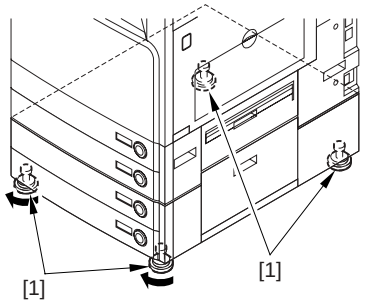
F-2-50

2.2.6 Fixing the Host Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<In case that cassette feeding unit is installed>

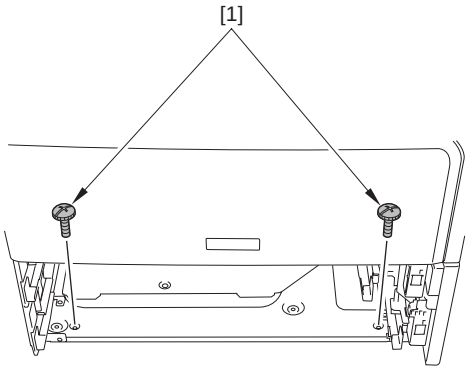
1) Move the host machine to the installation position and secure it with the 4 adjusters [1] of the cassette feeding unit.



F-2-51

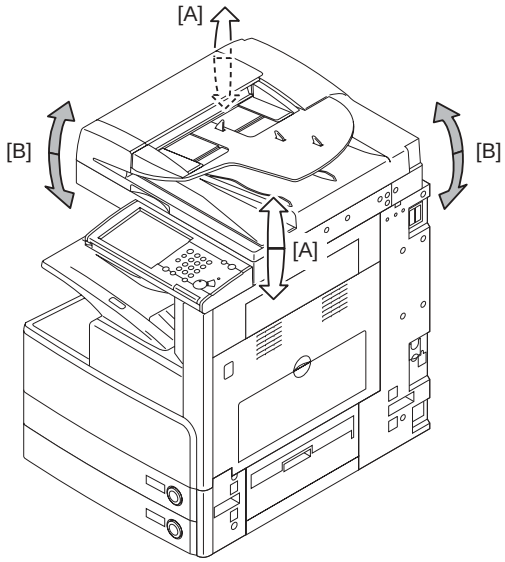
<In case that cassette feeding unit is not installed>

1) Remove the cassette 1, 2 and temporally tighten the adjustment screws [1] until they slightly touch the bottom plate of the host machine.

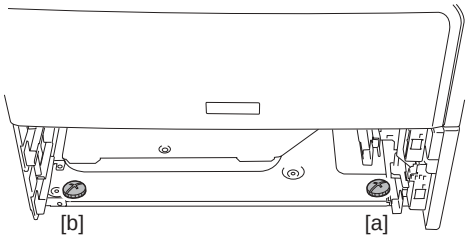


F-2-52

2) Check the stability of the host machine against a desk or floor etc and tighten the adjustment screw depending on the situation.
   - If there is a gap in [A] direction, tighten the screw [a].
   - If there is a gap in [B] direction, tighten the screw [b].



F-2-53



F-2-54

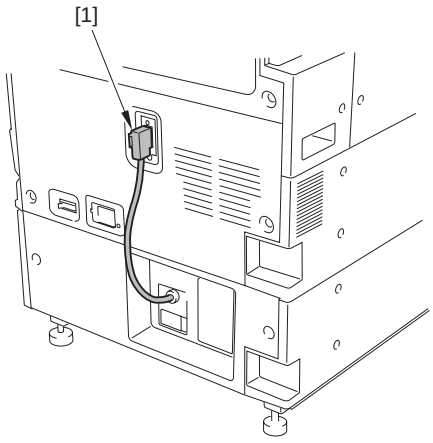
3) Put back the cassette 1, 2.

2.2.7 Connecting the Cable

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> For other than the models with DADF, install the copyboard cover or the DADF as an option. When installing the DADF, refer to the installation procedure of the DADF.

1) When installing the cassette feeding unit, remove the lattice connector cover and insert the lattice connector [1] of the cassette feeding unit into the host machine.



F-2-55

2) Plug in the power code.

Use the correct power code to mach the location/area of installation.
Make sure not to leave unused power code at the site.

4) Turn ON the main power switch.

2.2.8 Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Turning OFF the main power
When turning off the main power, follow the procedures described below to protect the hard disk
1) Hold down the control panel power switch for 3 sec or more.
2) Operate the control panel as instructed on the shut-down sequence screen. (The main power will go off automatically.)
3) Unplug the power plug.

2.2.9 Stirring Toner

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Enter the service mode.
Select: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > TONER-S.

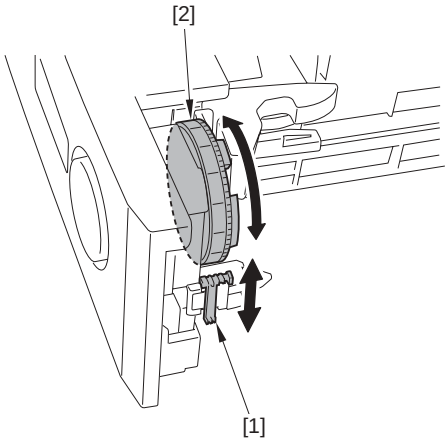
MEMO:
Stirring toner operation takes for approx 6 min. After counted, it automatically stops. Perform the cassette setting before the completion of toner stirring. (Refer to the cassette setting.)

2) When the count displays "OK!", exit the service mode.

2.2.10 Cassette Setting

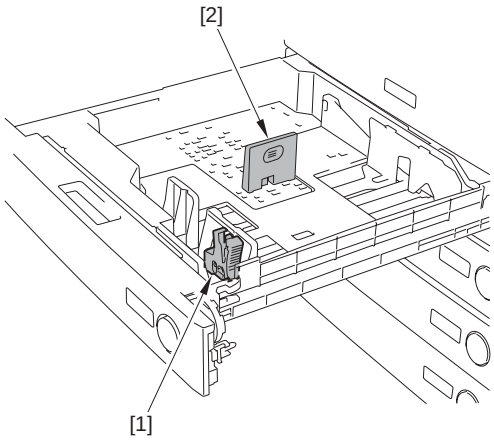
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Press the cassette release button to pull out the cassette.
2) Check the paper type that users will be using and make sure that the size type selection switch [1] of the cassette matches with the required paper size type. If not, adjust the position of the size type selection switch to the corresponding paper size type.
3) Adjust the paper size registration dial [2] to the requires paper size.



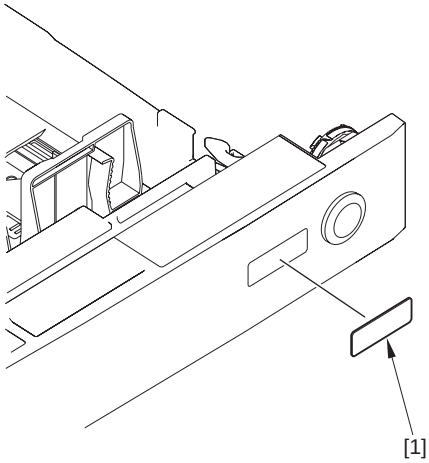
F-2-56

4) Pick the lever [1] on the side guide plate and adjust the side guide plate to the intended size.
5) Tilt the side guide plate and remove it. Adjust the leading edge guide plate [2] to the intended size by following the instruction on the bottom on the cassette.



F-2-57

6) Put the paper size label [1] corresponding to the paper set on front of the cassette.



F-2-58

7) Set the paper into the cassette and put back the cassette.
8) Specify the setting for the other cassette in the same manner.
9) If the cassette feeding unit is installed, refer to the installation procedure of cassette pedestal to specify the cassette settings.

2.2.11 APVC Correction of Drum

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Enter the service mode.
Select: COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > D-GAMMA.

MEMO:
After the paper is picked up from the cassette 1, blank paper is delivered and APVC correction completes automatically (indifferent to paper size in the cassette).

2) Exit the service mode.

Just after the stirring toner, floating toner inside the body due to toner stirring may attaches to the test print (back side) slightly. This will be cleared after making a couple of copies.

2.2.12 Auto Gradation Correction

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the platen cover/DADF.
2) Clean the copyboard glass.
3) Set the A3, A4, 11x17 or LTR paper into the cassette. (refer to the cassette settings.)
4) Press [Additional Functions].
5) Press [Adjustment/Cleaning] > [Auto Gradation Adjustment] > [Test Print].

- Test print will be output.

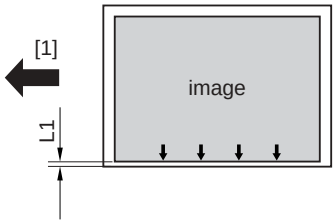
6) By following the control panel screen, place the test print on the copyboard glass.
7) Close the platen cover/DADF.
8) Press [Start Scan].
   - Test print will be scanned.
   - 'Auto gradation Adjust is finished' will be displayed.
9) Remove the test print from the copyboard glass.
10) Exit the [Additional Functions].

2.2.13 Screen Position Adjustment

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

"2nd side on 2-sided print" used below means the 2nd side at image formation.
With the host machine, 2nd side on 2-sided copy/print at image formation is corresponding to the 1st side of originals.

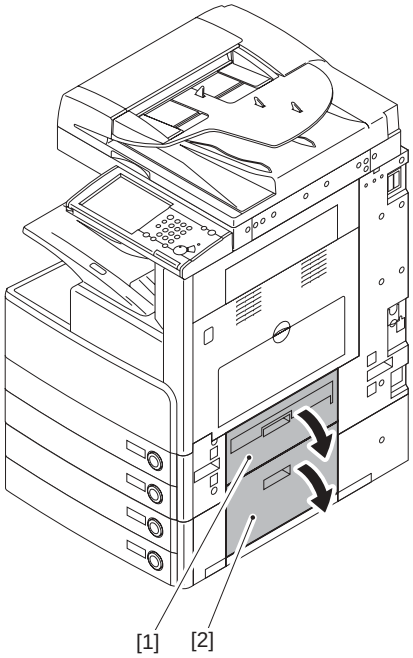
1. Left Marge adjustment (1st side)
Make a copy from cassette 1, 2 and manual pickup feed unit, and check that the left margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.



F-2-59

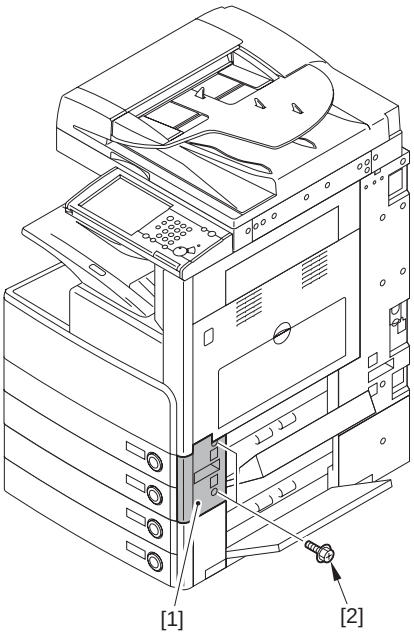
[1] paper feed direction

<If the cassette 1 or 2 is out of standard>
1) Open the cassette upper right cover [1]. If the cassette feeding unit is installed, open the cassette lower right cover [2].



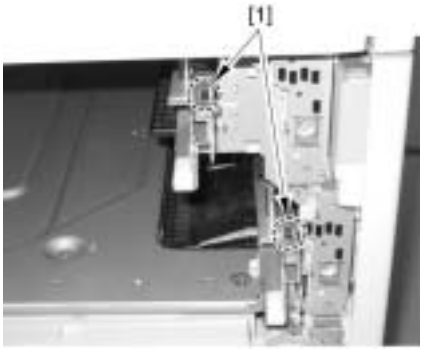
F-2-60

2) Remove the right cover (lower front) [1].
   - 2 screws [2]



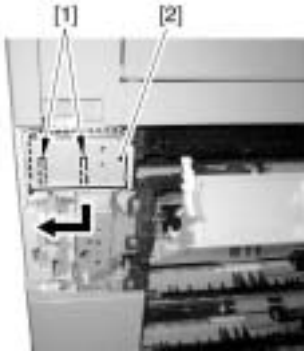
F-2-61

3) Remove the cassette 1 or 2.
4) Check the position [1] of the scale on the adjustment plate.



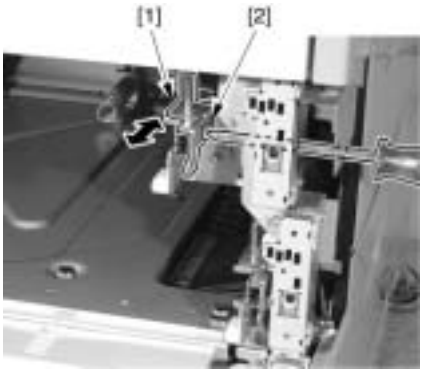
F-2-62

A. Adjusting the cassette 1.
A-1) Disengage the 2 claws [1] and remove the grip (front right) [2] in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-63

A-2) Loosen one fixing screw [2] on the adjustment plate [1].
A-3) Move the adjustment plate back or forth in reference to the scale checked by step 4). Moving the adjustment plate toward rear of the host machine increases the left margin.

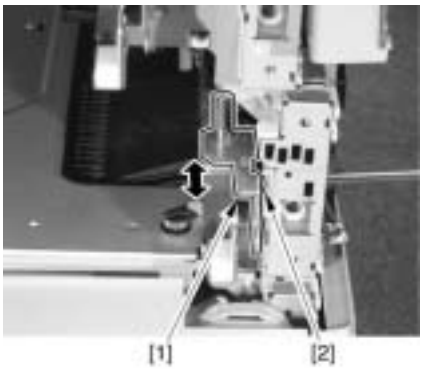


F-2-64

A-4) Tighten the fixing screw.
A-5) Put back the cassette 1.
A-6) Make a copy from the cassette 1 and check that the left margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.
A-7) Install the grip (front right).
A-8) Install the right cover (lower front). (if continuing to adjust the cassette 2, this is not needed.)
A-9) Close the cassette lower right cover and cassette upper right cover.

B. Adjusting the cassette 2.

B-1) Loosen one fixing screw [2] on the adjustment plate [1].
B-2) Move the adjustment plate back or forth in reference to the scale checked by step 4). Moving the adjustment plate toward rear of the host machine increases the left margin.

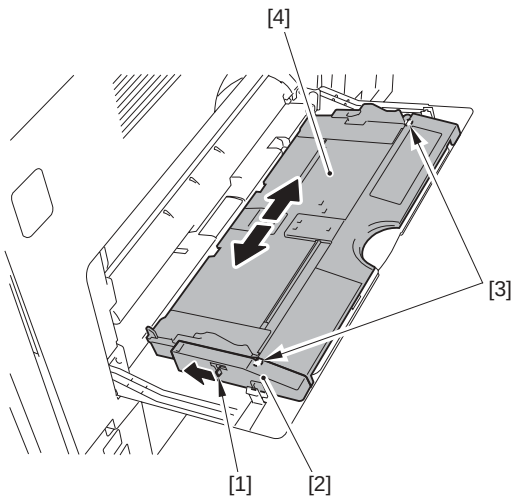


F-2-65

B-3) Tighten the fixing screw.
B-4) Put back the cassette 2.
B-5) Make a copy from the cassette 2 and check that the left margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.
B-6) Install the right cover (lower front).
B-7) Close the cassette lower right cover and cassette upper right cover.

<If the manual pickup feed unit is out of standard>

1) Remove the paper on the manual feed tray.
2) Move the tab [1] in the direction of the arrow and remove the MP side guide plate stopper [2].
3) Loosen the 2 cover fixing screws [3] on the manual feed tray.
4) With reference to the value checked before, move the manual feed tray upper cover [4] back or forth. Moving the manual feed tray upper cover [4] toward the rear of the host machine increases the left margin.



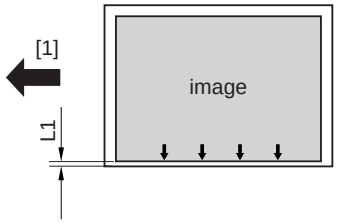
F-2-66

5) Tighten the fixing screw on the manual feed tray upper cover.
6) Install the MP side guide plate stopper.
7) Set the paper on the manual feed tray.
8) Make a copy from the manual feed pickup unit and check that the left margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.

2. Left Margin adjustment (2nd side)

Make an adjustment for small paper and large paper respectively.
- Small paper: The paper that its length in paper feed direction is shorter than LTR such as A4 or B5 etc.
- Large paper: The paper that its length is paper feed direction is longer than LTR such as A3, A4R or B5R etc.

1) Set the small paper into the cassette 1 and the large paper into cassette 2.
2) Make a 2-sided copy from cassette 1 and check that the left margin L1 on the 2nd side is within 2.5 +/- 2.0mm.



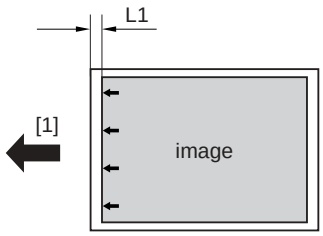
F-2-67

[1] paper feed direction

3) If it is out of standard, change the adjustment values of left margin on 2nd side for small paper.
   - Service mode > COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-REFE
   Increasing the value by "1" enlarges the left margin on 2nd side of small paper by 0.1mm.
4) Enter the values adjusted by step 3) into the field for adjustment value of left margin on 2nd side of large paper.
   - Service mode > COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-RE-L
   Increasing the value by "1" enlarges the left margin on 2nd side of large paper by 0.1mm.
5) Make a 2-sided copy from the cassette 2 and check that the left margin on the 2nd side is within 2.5 +/- 2.0mm.
6) If it is out of standard, change the adjustment values of the left margin on 2nd side for large paper.
   - Service mode > COPYER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-RE-L
   Increasing the value by "1" enlarges the left margin on 2nd side of large paper by 0.1mm.
7) Enter the new adjustment value on the service label.

3. Leading edge margin adjustment

1) Make a copy from the cassette 1 and check that the leading edge margin L1 is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.



F-2-68

[1] paper feed direction

2) If it is out of standard, change the adjustment values of the leading edge margin.
   - Service mode > COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST
   Increasing the value by "1" enlarges the leading edge margin by 0.1mm.
3) Make a copy from the cassette 1 and check that the leading edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.
4) Enter the new adjustment value on the service label.

2.3 Checking the Connection to the Network

2.3.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

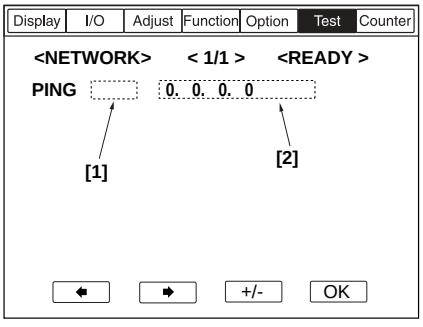
Perform this item only when connecting the host machine to the network.
If the user's network environment is TCP/IP, use Ping function to check that the network setting is performed appropriately.
If the user's network environment is IPX/SPX or Apple Talk, this check is not needed.

If using 1000Base-T, it is recommended to use twist pair cable that supports the enhanced category 5 (CAT5e) or higher.

2.3.2 Ping Operation Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Enter the service mode.
   Select: COPIER > TEST > NETWORK > PING.
2) Enter the IP address with using numeric keys on the control panel and press [OK].
3) Press [Start].
   - If Ping succeeds, "OK" will be displayed.
   - If Ping fails, "NG" will be displayed.



F-2-69

[1] Result (OK/NG)
[2] IP address

2.3.3 Checking Network with Remote Host Address

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Executing Ping with using remote host address enables to check if the connection is properly made with network or not.

MEMO: Remote host address
IP address of the PC terminal that connects with the TCP/IP network environment which the host machine will be connected to.

1) Let a system administrator know that the check of network connection with Ping will be performed.
2) Ask a system administrator the remote host address.
3) Enter the remote host address into Ping.
   - If "OK", the machine is connected to the network appropriately.
   - If "NG", the machine is not connected to the network appropriately; thus, perform the following "Troubleshooting the Network".

2.3.4 When Not Using Network Connection

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When the machine is not connected to the network, the massage that prompts "Check the network connection" is displayed. To hide this, change the following setting from ON => OFF in additional function mode.
- [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [Change Settings/Display Connection Confirm]

2.4 Troubleshooting the Network

2.4.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Execute this item only when connecting the host machine to the network.
If the network connection cannot be made, the following factors may contribute.

a. Failure in the connection between the network and the host machine
b. Failure in the setting of TCP/IP in the host machine
c. Failure in the user's network
d. Failure in the main controller PCB

The following shows how to check these factors.

2.4.2 Check with Loopback Address

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Since loopback address returns before the network controller (main controller PCB), executing Ping with this address enables to check whether the TCI/IP setting in the host machine is valid or not.

1) Enter the loopback address (127.0.0.1) into PING.
   - If "NG", check the TCP/IP setting again and execute Ping again.
   - If "OK", check t the local host address.

2.4.3 Check with Local Host Address

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Since the local host address is the host machine's IP address and it returns from the network controller, executing Ping with this address enables to check whether the network controller (main controller PCB) is valid or not.

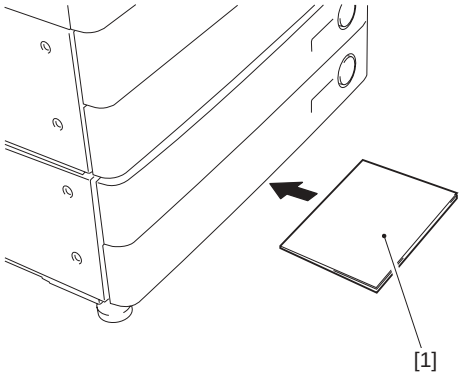
1) Enter the host machine's IP address into PING.
2) If "NG", make the following check/measure and execute Ping again.
   - Failure in the IP address of the host machine: ask a system administrator whether the assigned IP address is valid or not.
   - Failure in main controller PCB: Replace the main controller PCB.
3) If "OK", user's network environment may have problems. Tell a system administrator the situation and ask to cope with it.

2.5 Checking the Images/Operations

2.5.1 Checking the Image/Operation

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Set a test chart on the copyboard glass and feed the paper from the each cassette to check the image.
   - Check that there is no abnormal noise generated.
   - Check the image quality in each magnification.
   - Check that the copy is appropriately made in compliance with the specified number of copy set.
2) Configure the [Additional Functions] (date, time etc.) if requested.
3) Configure the machine specification related to users if requested.
   - Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > USER
4) Output P-PRINT.
   - Service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT
5) Exit service mode.
6) Store the output P-PRINT [1] into the service book case.



F-2-70

7) Clean around the host machine.

2.6 Installing the Card Reader

2.6.1 Notice At Installation

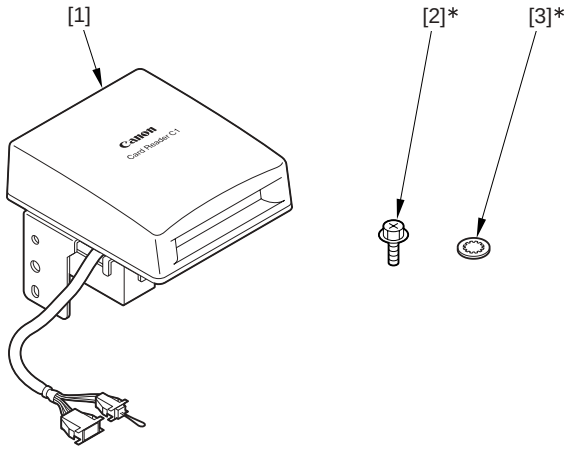
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Installation of the equipment calls for a Card Reader Attachment-B3.
- See "Combination Table of Accessories" when installing this equipment.

2.6.2 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Card Reader-C1>

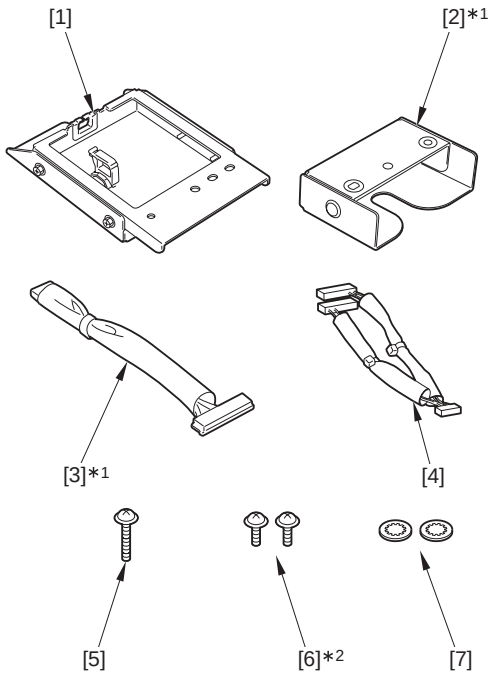


F-2-71

[1]	Card reader	1 pc.
[2]*	Screw (RS tightening; M4X10)	1 pc.
[3]*	Toothed washer	1 pc.

* Not used in this host machine.

<Card Reader Attachment-B3>



F-2-72

[1]	Card reader attachment base	1pc
[2]*1	Card reader support plate	1pc
[3]*1	Relay harness1	1pc
[4]	Relay harness2	1pc
[5]	Screw (TP; M4X25)	1pc
[6]*2	Screw (TP; M4X8)	2pc
[7]	Toothed washer	2pc

*1 Not used in this host machine.

*2 1pc is used with this host machine.

2.6.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

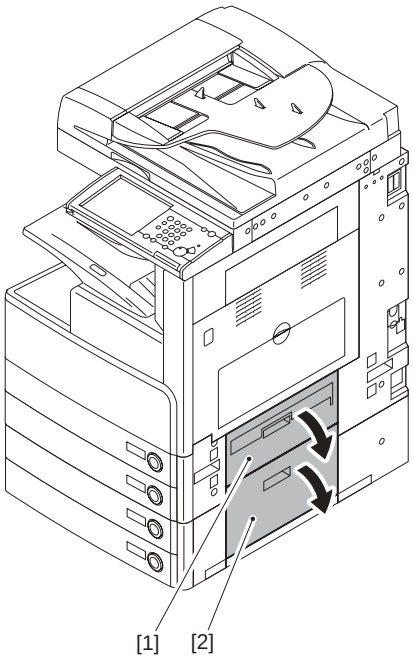
Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.6.4 Installation Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

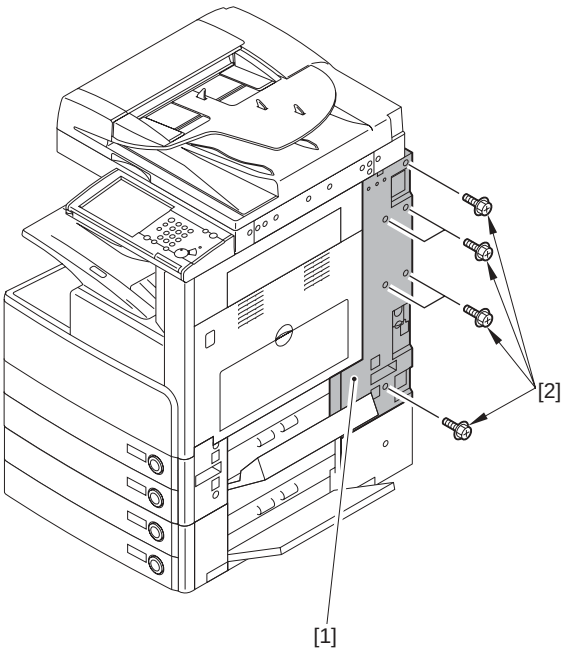
After the card reader is installed, go through the following in Service Mode of this machine: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD, and enter the card number to use. Be sure to enter the card number otherwise the card is not recognized when the card is inserted.

1) Open the cassette upper right cover [1]. If the cassette pedestal is installed, open the cassette lower right cover [2].



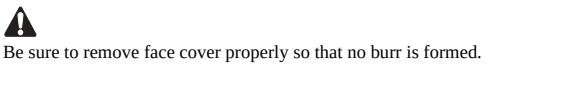
F-2-73

2) Remove the rear right cover [1].
- 6 screws [2]

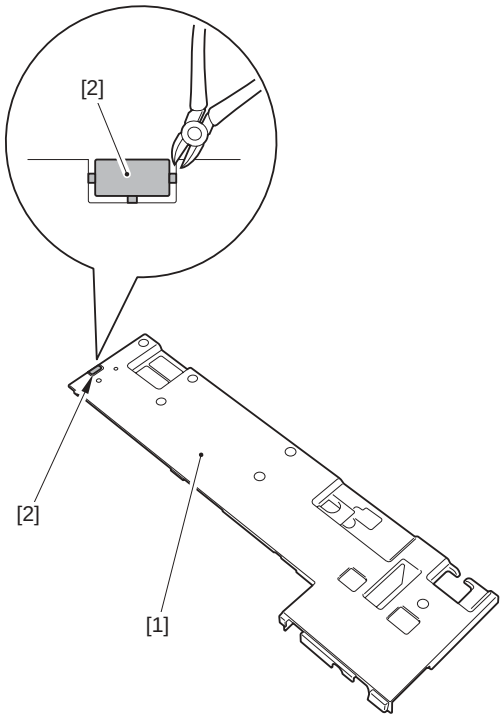


F-2-74

3) Remove the face cover [2] of the rear right cover [1] with nippers.

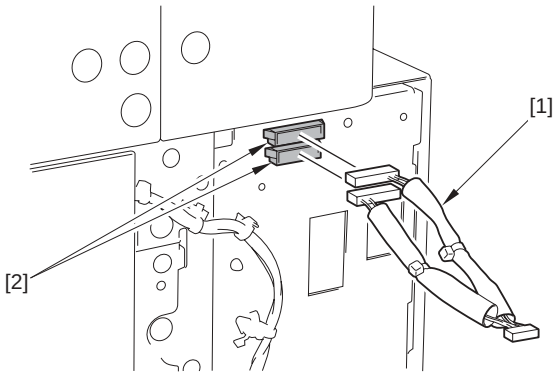


Be sure to remove face cover properly so that no burr is formed.



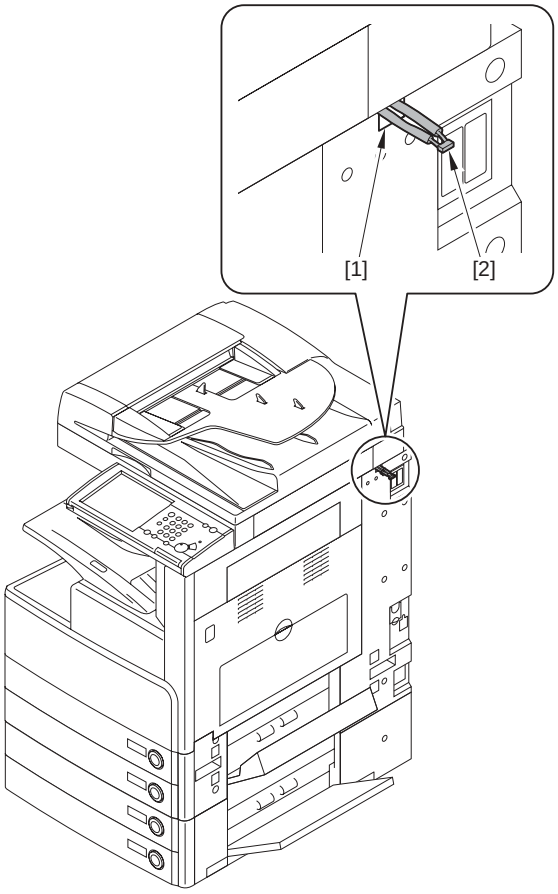
F-2-75

4) Insert the relay harness2 [1] to the 2 connectors [2] of the host machine.



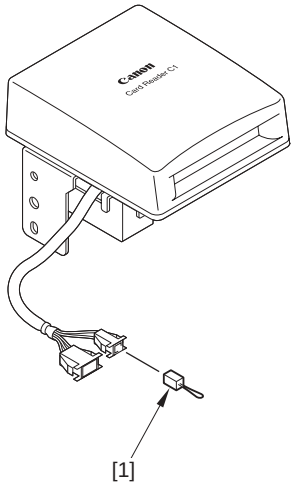
F-2-76

5) Take out the relay harness2 [2] from the cutoff [1] and install the rear right cover.



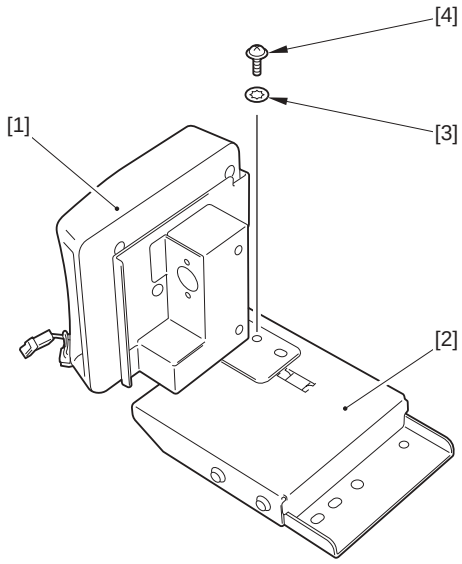
F-2-77

6) Close the cassette upper right cover and the cassette lower right cover.
7) Disconnect the jumper [1]. (Do not use the removed jumper.)



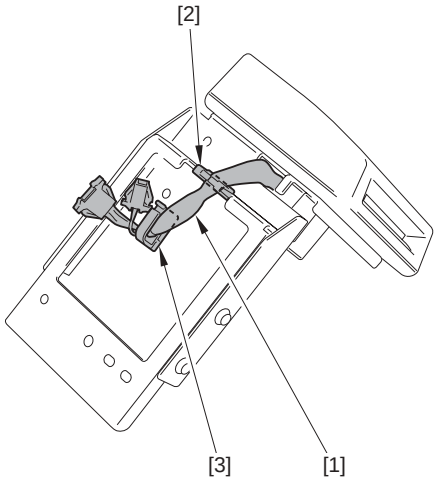
F-2-78

8) Install the card reader [1] to the card reader attachment base [2].
- 1 toothed washer [3]
- 1 screw (TP; M4X8) [4]



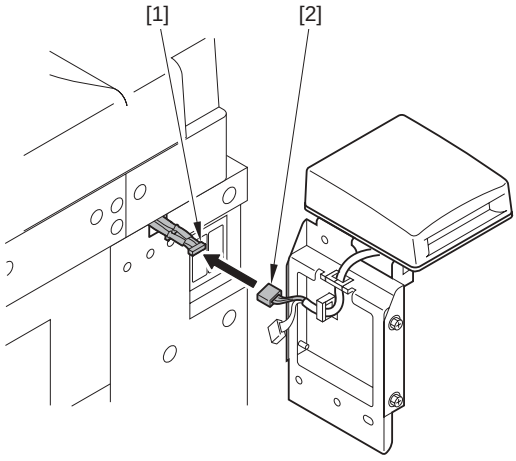
F-2-79

9) Secure the card reader relay harness [1].
- 1 edge saddle [2]
- 1 wire saddle [3]



F-2-80

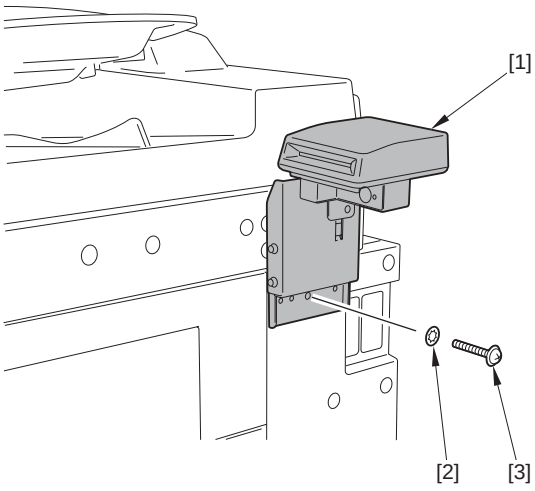
10) Connect the relay harness connector [1] installed in step 4) to the card reader relay harness connector [2].



F-2-81

11) Fit the 2 bosses to install the card reader [1].
- 1 toothed washer [2]
- 1 screw (TP; M4X25) [3]

⚠
Do not get the harness caught.



F-2-82

12) Insert the power plug into the outlet.
13) Turn ON the main power switch.
14) Get in Service Mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD) and enter the card number to use (1 to 2000).
- Enter the smallest card number of the cards used by the user.
- From the entered number, up to 1000 cards can be used.
15) Follow the instructions on the shutdown sequence screen to turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
16) Insert the card with registered valid number to check it's at standby state.

2.6.5 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (hereinafter referred to iWAM) Environment

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Check to see that 'ID00000001 to ID00001000' have been created in '[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Dept. ID Management] > [Register Dept.ID/Password] / [Page Totals]' (In the case of entering '1' as the first number in 'Service Mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD')
2) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].
3) Select [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IP Address Settings], and then make the setting of [IP Address], [Gateway Address], [Subnet Mask] according to the user environment.
4) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].
5) Turn OFF the power supply following the shutdown sequence.
6) Turn on the main power switch.
7) [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings], and then input any number into [System Manager ID] and [System Password].

> ⚠
> [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings] is selected and [System Manager ID] and [System Password] are registered, 'Registration of card to the device' is impossible to execute in the setting of iWAM.

8) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].

2.7 Installing the Original Holder

2.7.1 Notice At Installation

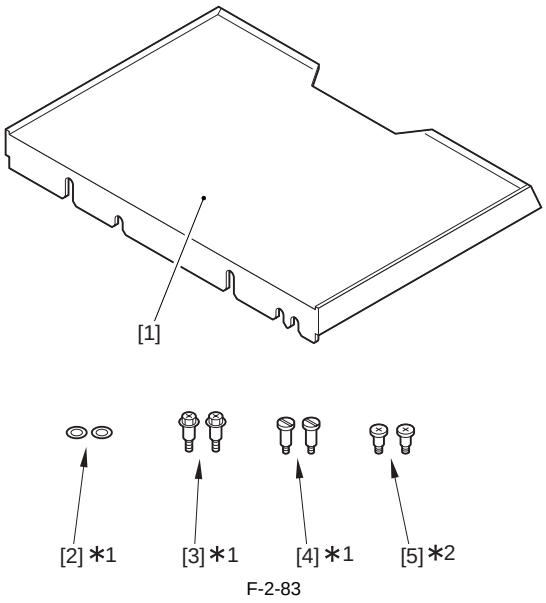
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> See "Combination Table of Accessories" when installing this equipment.

2.7.2 Checking Components

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Document Tray-J1>



F-2-83

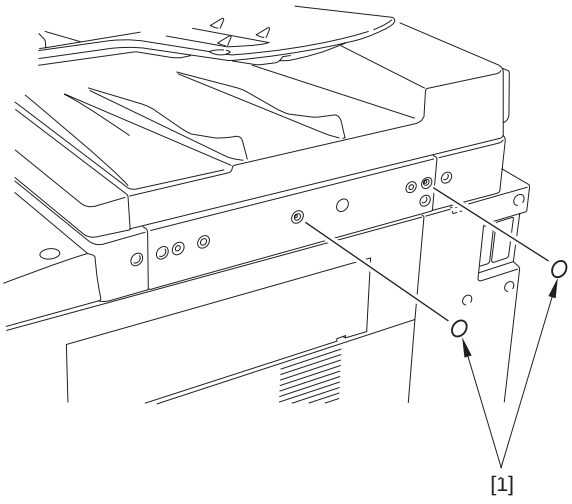
[1]	Document tray	1pc.
[2]*1	Washer	2pc.
[3]*1	Stepped screw (RS tightening; M4X18)	2pc.
[4]*1	Stepped screw (M4X17.6)	2pc.
[5]*2	Stepped screw (M4X10.8)	2pc.

*1 Not used with this machine.
*2 Only the head of a screw is painted in white.

2.7.3 Installation Procedure

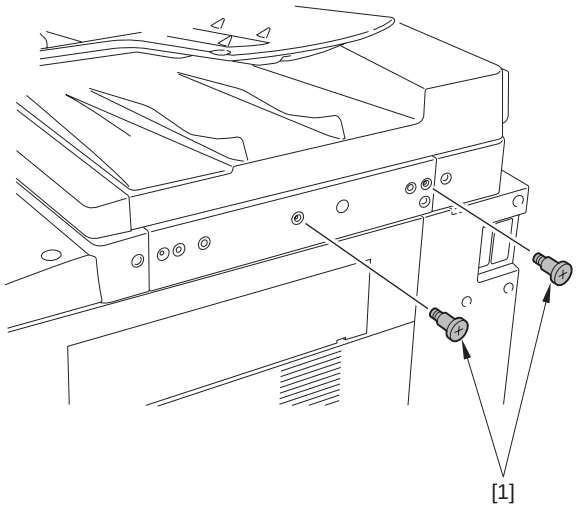
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A: If the card reader is not equipped to the host machine
1) Remove the 2 face cover seals [1]. (Do not use the removed face cover seals.)



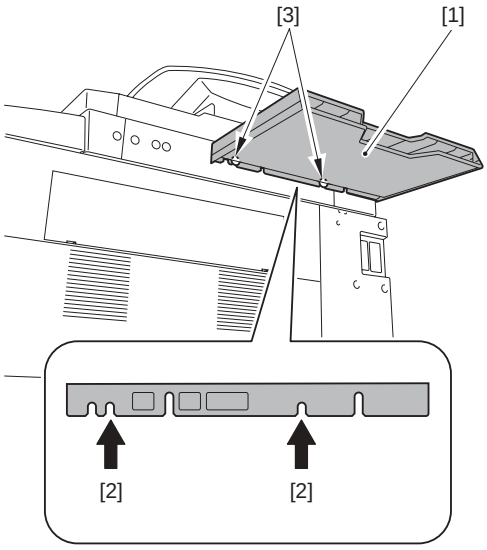
F-2-84

2) Install the 2 stepped screw (M4X10.8) [1] with the reader right cover.



F-2-85

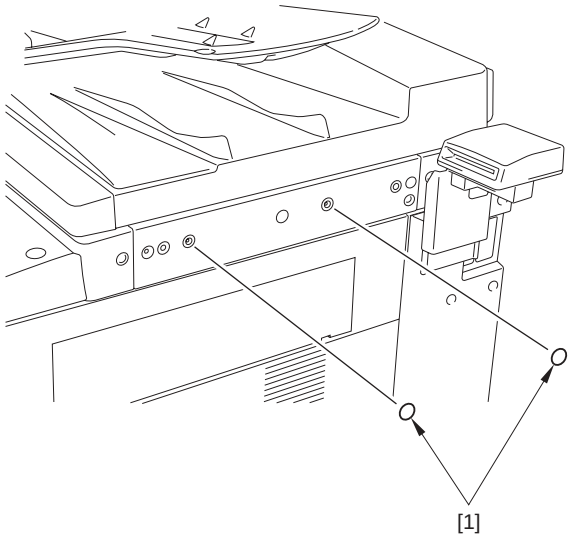
3) Fit the support plate's cutoff [2] of the document tray [1] with the stepped screws [3] installed in the previous step.



F-2-86

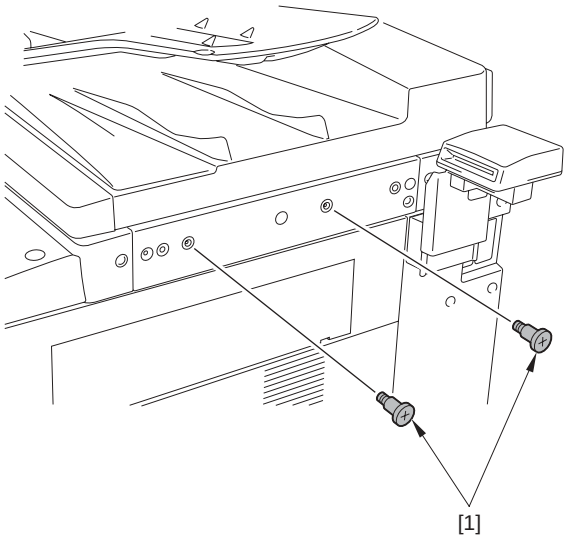
B: If the card reader is equipped to the host machine.

1) Remove the 2 face cover seals [1]. (Do not use the removed face cover seals.)



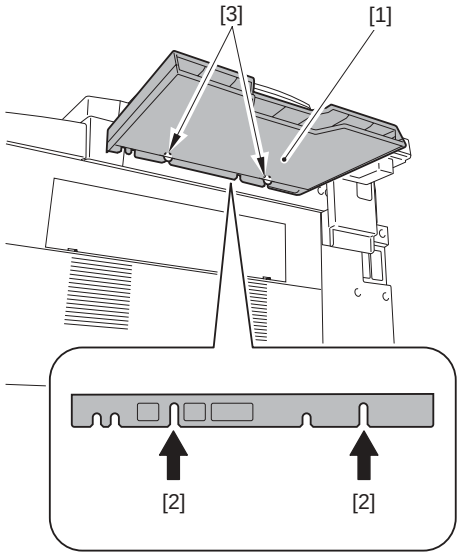
F-2-87

2) Install the 2 stepped screw (M4X10.8) [1] with the reader right cover.



F-2-88

3) Fit the support plate's cutoff [2] of the document tray [1] with the stepped screws [3] installed in the previous step.



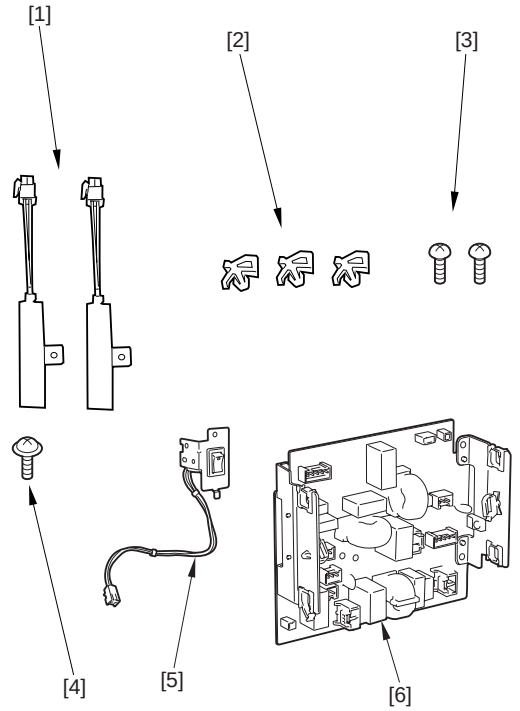
F-2-89

2.8 Installing the Reader Heater

2.8.1 Checking Parts to Install

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to have the following parts ready because each part of the Reader Heater is supplied as Service Parts.



F-2-90

T-2-3

No.	Name	Part No.	Qty.
[1]	Reader Heater	FK2-0228-000	2 pc.
[2]	Clamp	WT2-0507-000	3 pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding M4X6)	XB1-2400-609	2 pc.
[4]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	XB6-7300-607	1 pc.
[5]	Environment switch unit	FM3-7052-000	1 pc.
[6]	AC driver PCB	FM3-5085-000	1 pc.

2.8.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

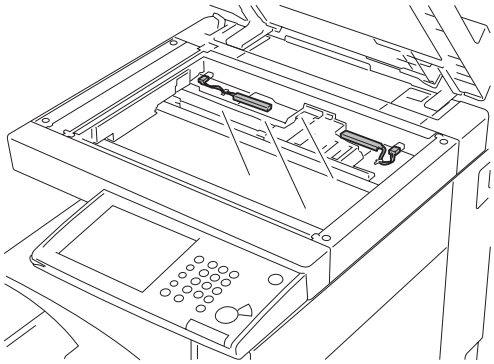
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.8.3 Installation Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Installation positions of the reader heaters (2pc.)
Install the reader heater both at the rear left and rear right sides of the reader. (a total of 2 reader heaters).

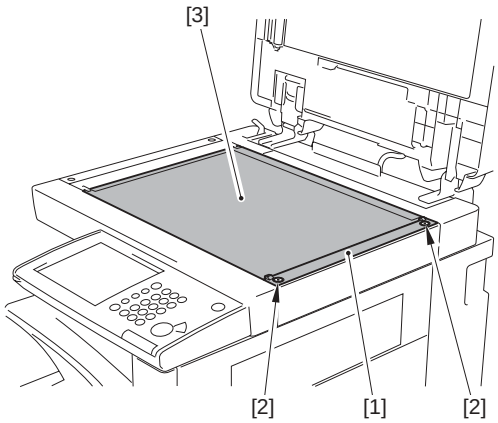


F-2-91

MEMO:
The 2 reader heaters are identical.
They can be installed either at left or right side.

1) Open the copyboard cover/DADF
2) Remove the glass retainer (right) [1].
   -2 screws [2]
3) Remove the copyboard glass [3].

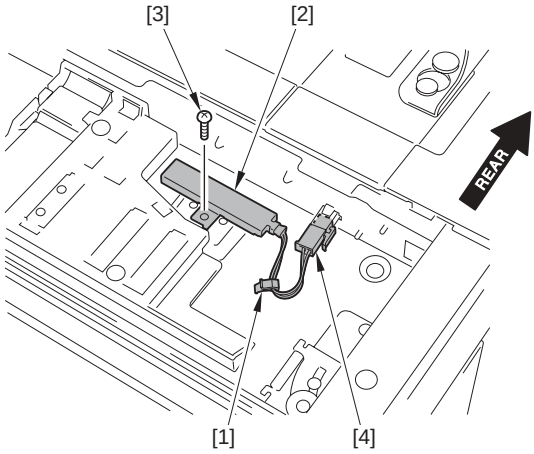
When removing the copyboard glass, be sure not to put your fingers on the glass surface and the white plate at the back (soil causes black lines on image).
Be sure to clean soil with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol if soil is attached.



F-2-92

4) Install the clamp [1].
5) Install the reader heater [2].
   - 1 screw (Binding; M4X6) [3]
6) Connect the connector [4] of the reader heater and secure the harness of the reader heater with the clamp [1].

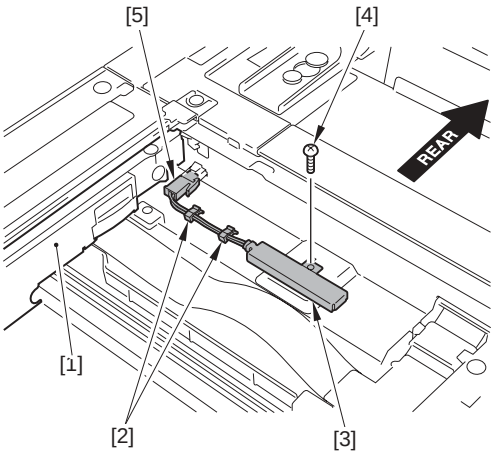
Rear right side of the reader (enlarged)



F-2-93

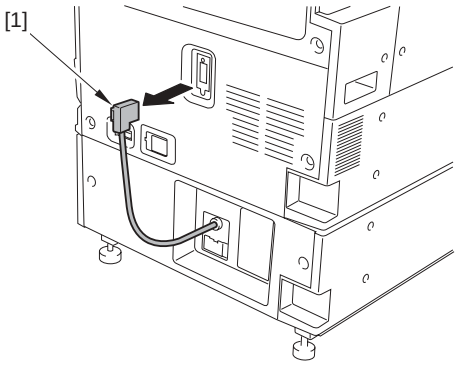
7) Move the CCD unit [1] to the far left.
8) Install the 2 clamps [2].
9) Install the reader heater [3].
   -1 screw (Binding; M4X6) [4]
10) Connect the connector [5] of the reader heater and secure the harness of the reader heater with the 2 clamps [2].

Rear left side of the reader (enlarged)



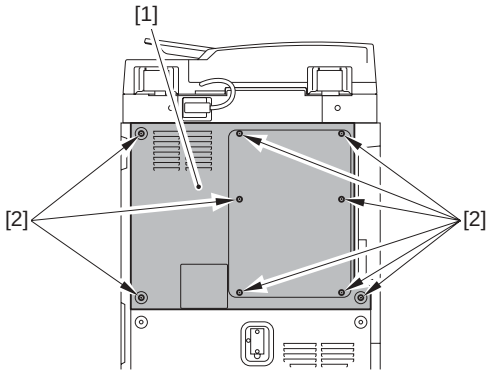
F-2-94

11) Install the copyboard glass and the glass retainer (right), and close the copyboard cover/DADF.
12) Disconnect the lattice connector [1] of the cassette pedestal.



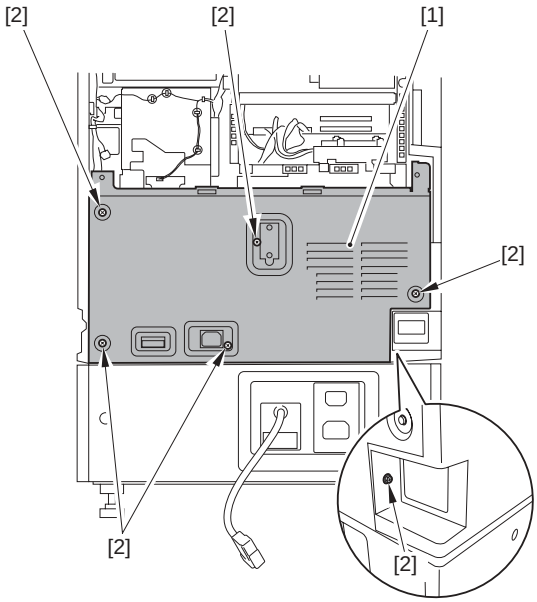
F-2-95

13) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



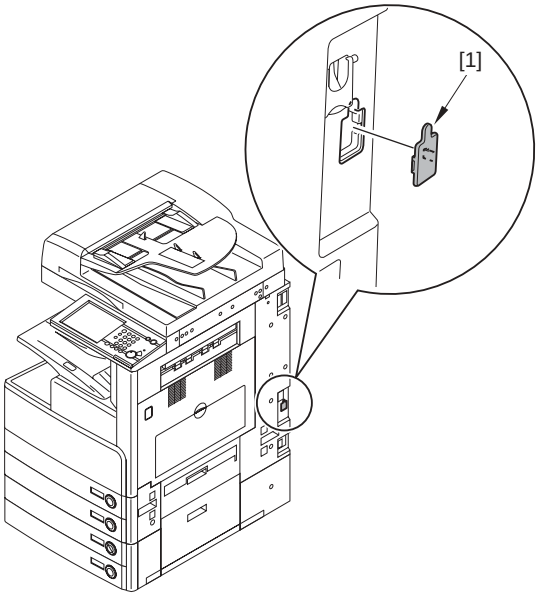
F-2-96

14) Remove the lower rear cover [1].
-6 screws [2]



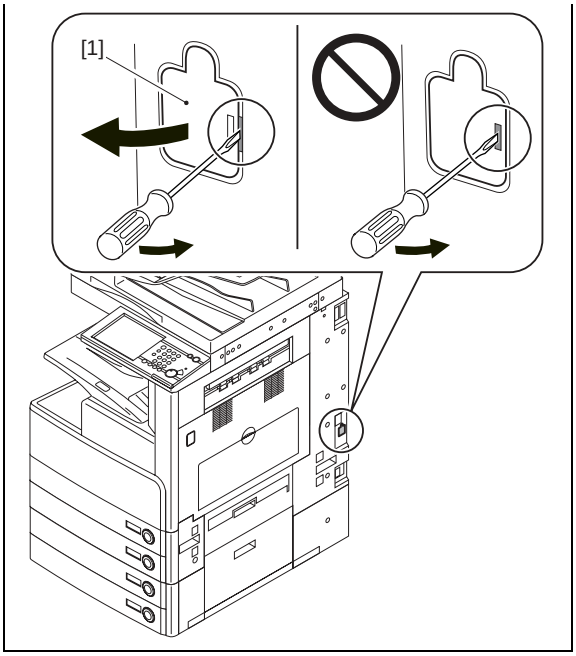
F-2-97

15) Remove the environment heater switch cover [1].



F-2-98

When turning detaching the environment heater switch cover [1], use a flatblade screwdrivers.

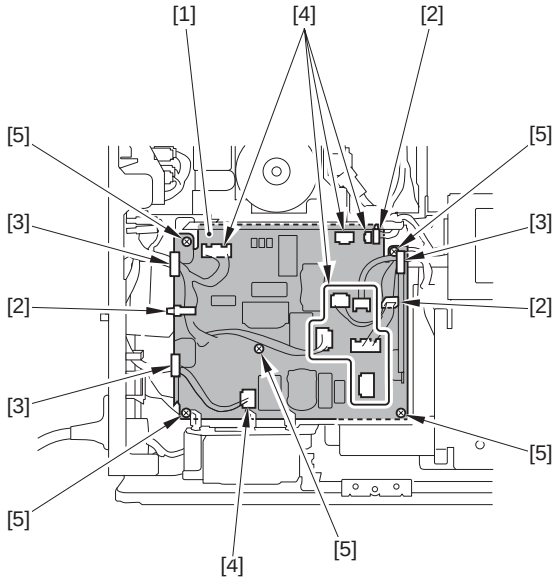


16) Remove the AC driver PCB from the host machine and replace it with the new AC driver PCB [1].

> When replacing the AC driver PCB, be sure to make a note of the position of the connector and to connect the connector to the original position.

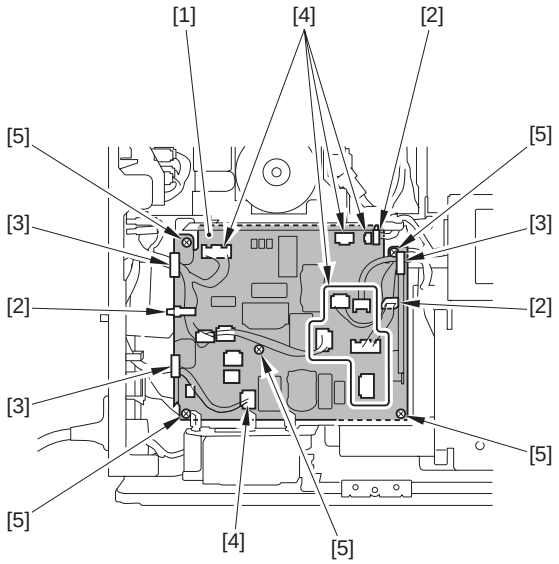
- 3 wire saddles [2]
- 3 edge saddles [3]
- 9 connectors [4]
- 5 screws (w/washer) [5]

Before replacing the AC driver PCB



F-2-99

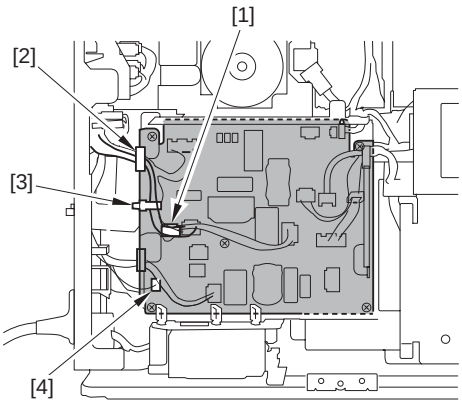
After replacing the AC driver PCB



F-2-100

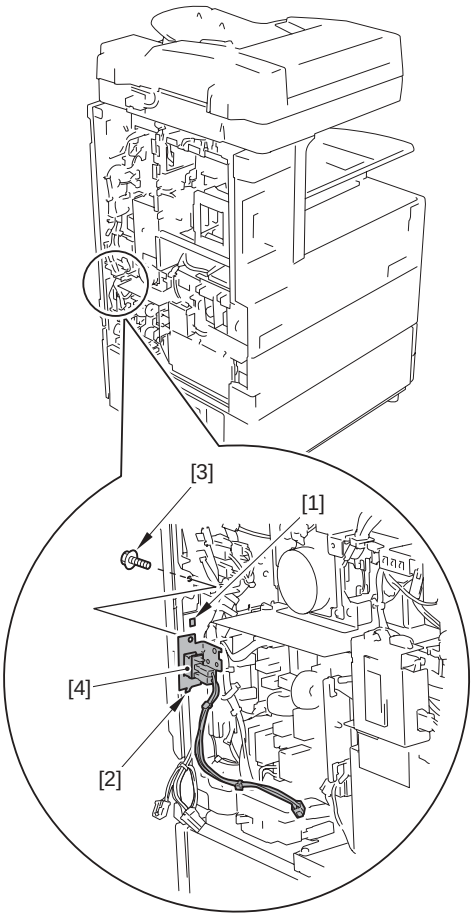
17) Connect the connector for the reader heater that is situated near the AC driver PCB and is connected to the host machine to J485 [1] of the AC driver PCB.
- 1 edge saddles [2]
- 1 wire saddles [3]

Connect the connector for the DC controller that is situated near the AC driver PCB and is connected to the host machine to J486 [4] of the AC driver PCB.



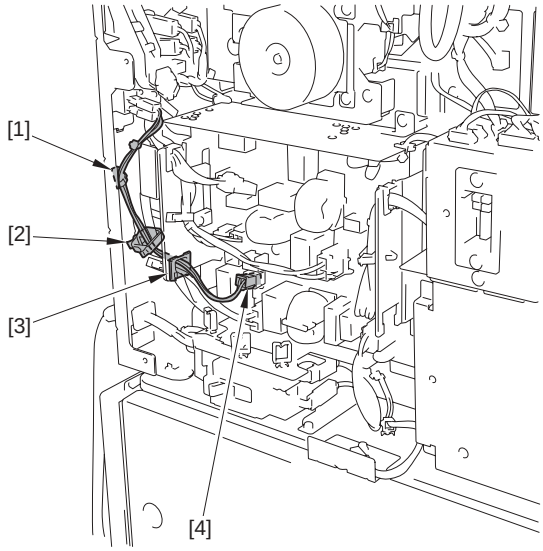
F-2-101

18) Insert the protrusion [2] of the environment switch unit into the host machine frame hole [1] and install the environment switch unit [4] with the screw (TP; M3X6) [3].



F-2-102

19) Connect the connector [1] of the environment switch unit to J483 of the AC driver PCB.
- 1 reuse band [2]
- 1 wire saddles [3]
- 1 edge saddles [4]



F-2-103

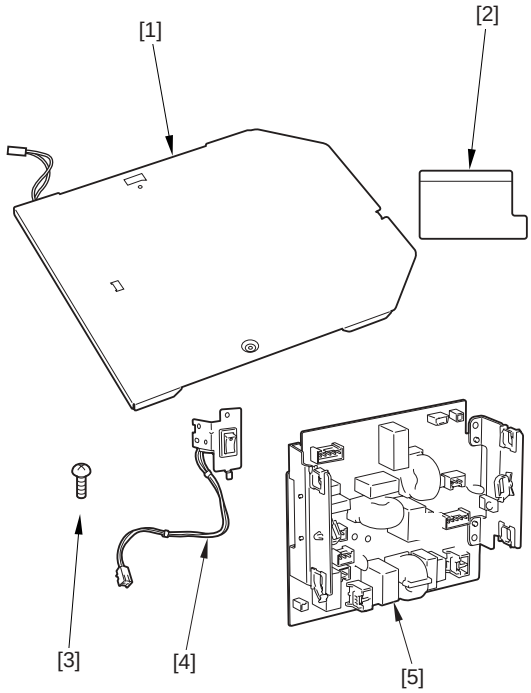
20) Install the lower rear cover.
21) Install the upper rear cover.
22) Connect the lattice connector to the host machine.
23) Connect the host machine's power plug to the outlet, and then turn ON the main power switch.
24) Turn on the environment heater switch.
25) Install the environment heater switch cover.

2.9 Installing the Cassette Heater

2.9.1 Checking Parts to Install

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to have the following parts ready because each part of the Cassette heater unit is supplied as Service Parts.



F-2-104

T-2-4

No.	Name	Part No.	Qty.
[1]	Cassette heater	FM3-3772-000	1pc.
[2]	Heater cover	FC5-6899-000	1pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	XB1-2400-607	1pc.
[4]	Environment switch unit	FM3-7052-000	1pc.
[5]	AC driver PCB	FM3-5085-000	1pc.

2.9.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

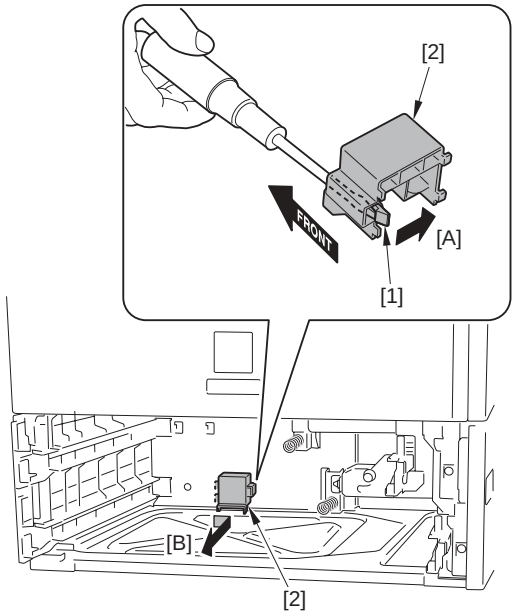
Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.9.3 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Unit)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1. Installation to the host machine's cassette

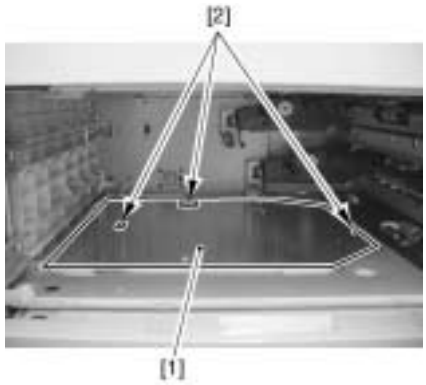
1) Pull out cassette 1 and 2.
2) Remove the claw [1] in the direction of the arrow [A] using a flat-blade screwdriver, and move the connector cover [2] in the direction of the arrow [B] to remove.



F-2-105

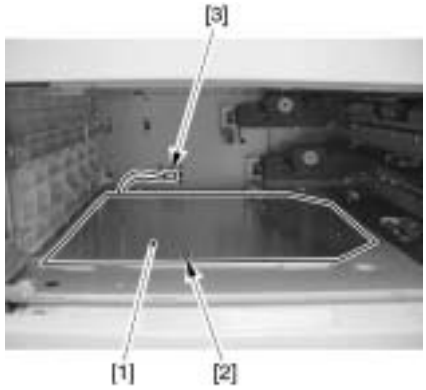
3) Insert the 3 hooks [2] of the cassette heater [1] into the slits of the bottom plate to fit with the holes position.

> ⚠
> When installing the cassette heater, be sure to securely insert the 3 hooks [2] to be fitted with the plate.



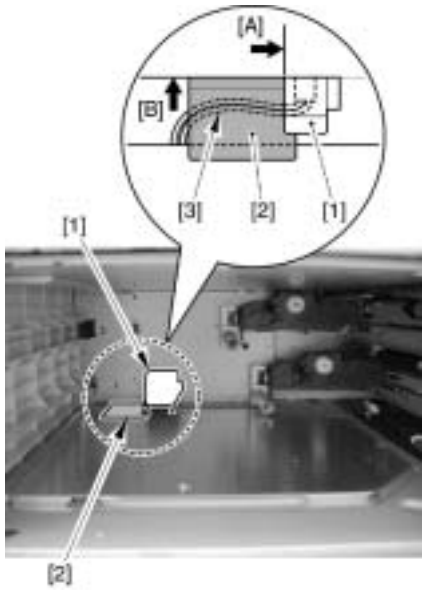
F-2-106

4) Install the cassette heater [1].
-1 screw (Binding; M4X6) [2]
-1 connector [3]



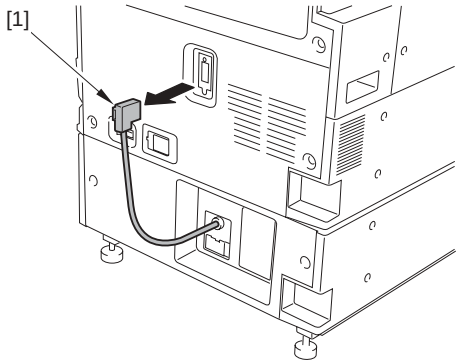
F-2-107

5) Install the connector cover [1].
6) Fit the heater cover [2] (for protecting AC cable) with the wall at the connector cover side [A] as well as the wall at the rear side [B] of the host machine to attach it over the cable [3].



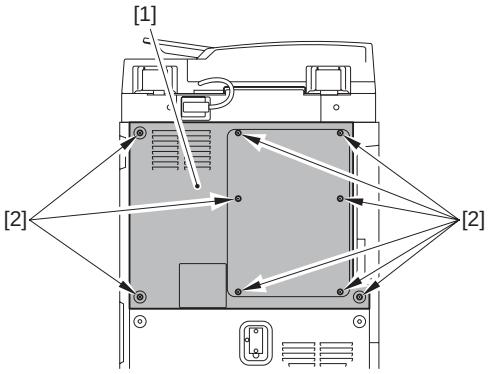
F-2-108

7) Put cassette 1 and 2 back.
8) Disconnect the lattice connector [1] of the cassette pedestal.



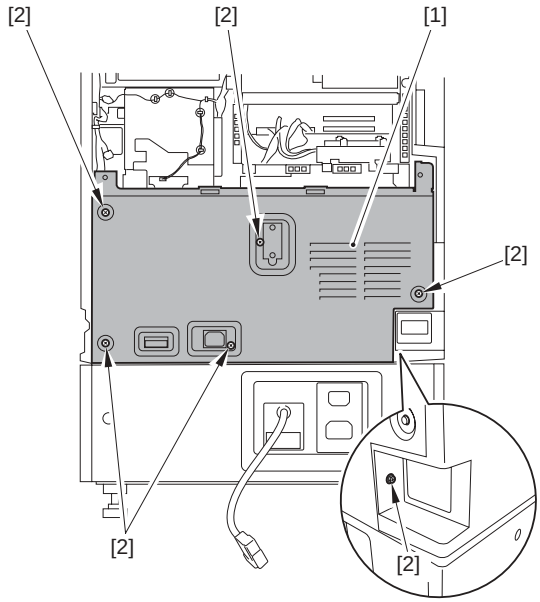
F-2-109

9) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



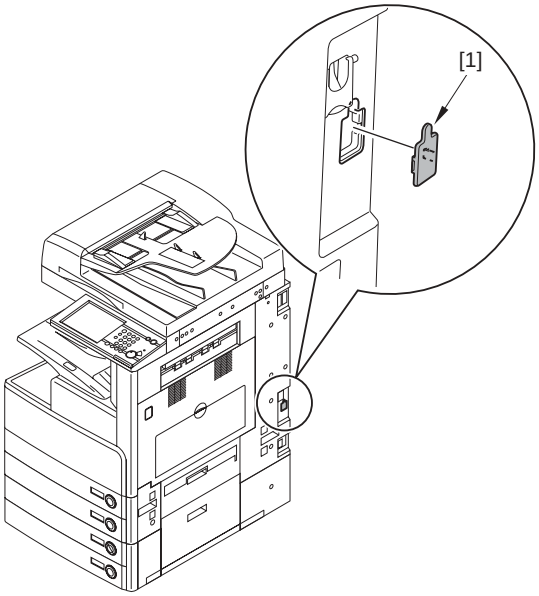
F-2-110

10) Remove the lower rear cover [1].
-6 screws [2]



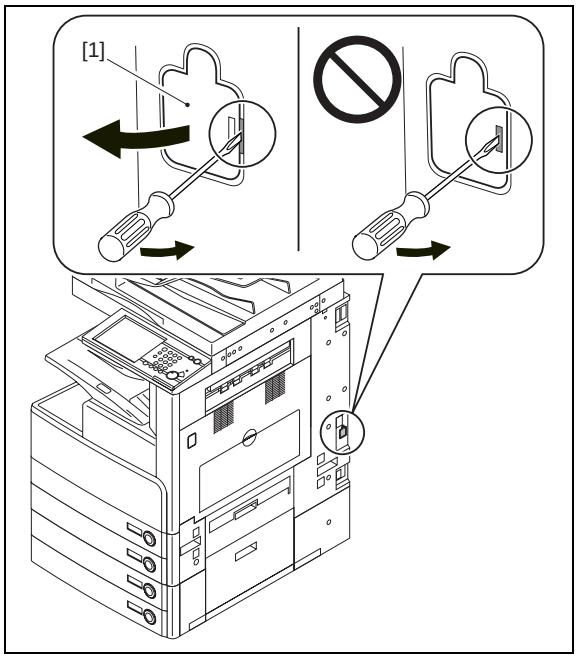
F-2-111

11) Remove the environment heater switch cover [1].



F-2-112

When turning detaching the environment heater switch cover [1], use a flatblade screwdrivers.

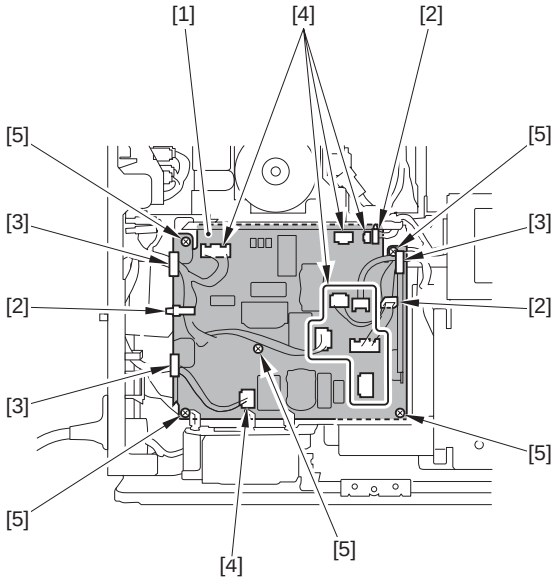


12) Remove the AC driver PCB from the host machine and replace it with the new AC driver PCB [1].

When replacing the AC driver PCB, be sure to make a note of the position of the connector and to connect the connector to the original position.

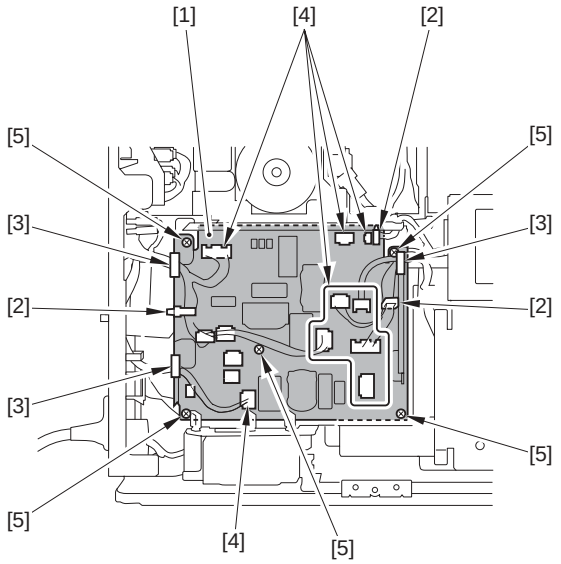
- 3 wire saddles [2]
- 3 edge saddles [3]
- 9 connectors [4]
- 5 screws (w/washer) [5]

Before replacing the AC driver PCB



F-2-113

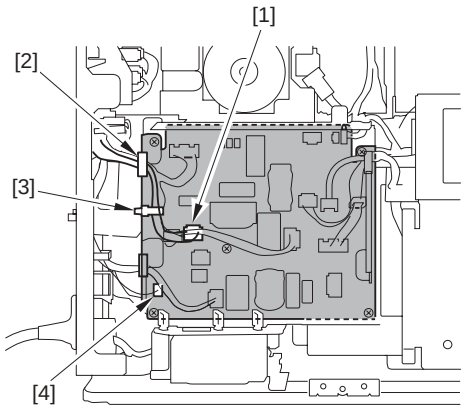
After replacing the AC driver PCB



F-2-114

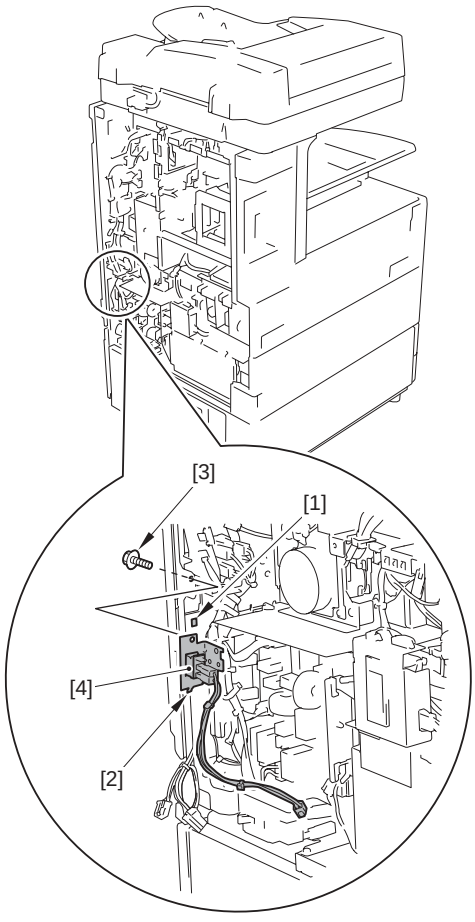
13) Connect the connector for the cassette heater that is situated near the AC driver PCB and is connected to the host machine to J482 [1] of the AC driver PCB.
- 1 edge saddles [2]
- 1 wire saddles [3]

Connect the connector for the DC controller that is situated near the AC driver PCB and is connected to the host machine to J486 [4] of the AC driver PCB.



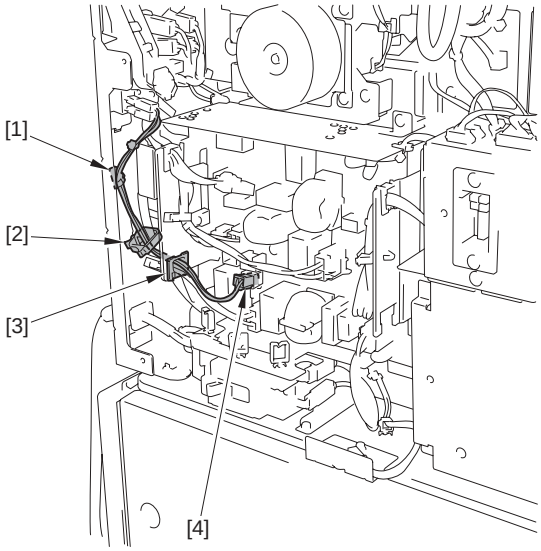
F-2-115

14) Insert the protrusion [2] of the environment switch unit into the host machine frame hole [1] and install the environment switch unit [4] with the screw (TP; M3X6) [3].



F-2-116

15) Connect the connector [1] of the environment switch unit to J483 of the AC driver PCB.
- 1 reuse band [2]
- 1 wire saddles [3]
- 1 edge saddles [4]



F-2-117

16) Install the lower rear cover.
17) Install the upper rear cover.
18) Connect the lattice connector to the host machine.
19) Connect the host machine's power plug to the outlet, and then turn ON the main power switch.
20) Turn on the environment heater switch.
21) Install the environment heater switch cover.

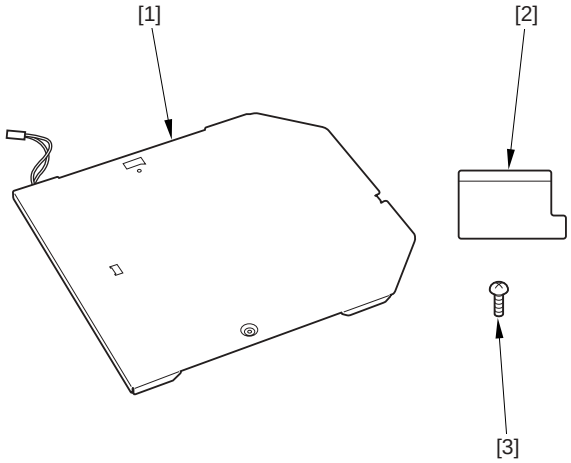
2.10 Installing the Cassette Heater for the

Cassette Pedestal

2.10.1 Checking Parts to Install

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to have the following parts ready because each part of the Cassette heater unit is supplied as Service Parts.



F-2-118

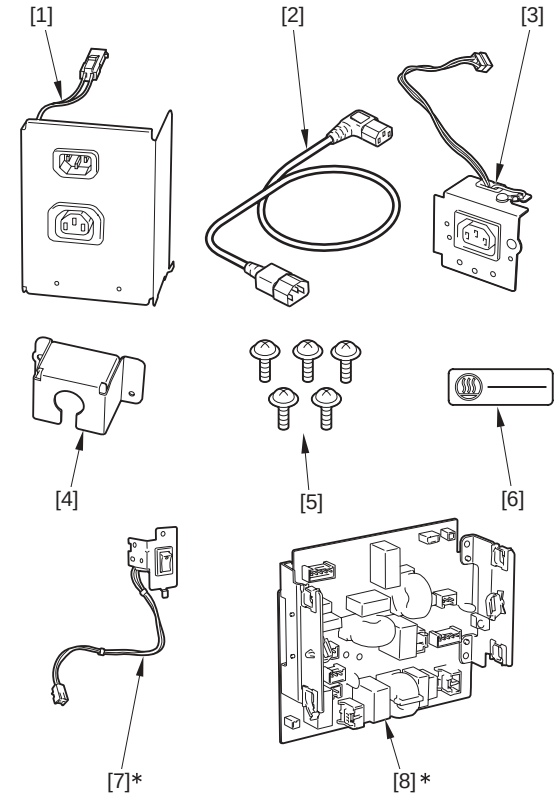
T-2-5

No.	Name	Part No.	Qty.
[1]	Cassette heater	FM3-3772-000	1pc.
[2]	Heater cover	FC5-6899-000	1pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	XB1-2400-607	1pc.

2.10.2 Checking Parts to Install

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to have the following parts ready because each part of the Cassette Heater Attachment is supplied as Service Parts.



F-2-119

T-2-6

No.	Name	Part No.	Qty.
[1]	Power cord terminal assembly	FM3-0278-000	1pc.
[2]	Power cord	FK2-4628-000	1pc.
[3]	Environment heater outlet	FM3-4391-000	1pc.
[4]	Plug cover	FC7-7138-000	1pc.
[5]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	XB6-7300-607	5pc.
[6]	Outlet label	FU5-8803-000	1pc.
[7]*	Environment switch unit	FM3-7052-000	1pc.
[8]*	AC driver PCB	FM3-5085-000	1pc.
* Unnecessary in the case that the cassette heater is installed to the host machine.			

2.10.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

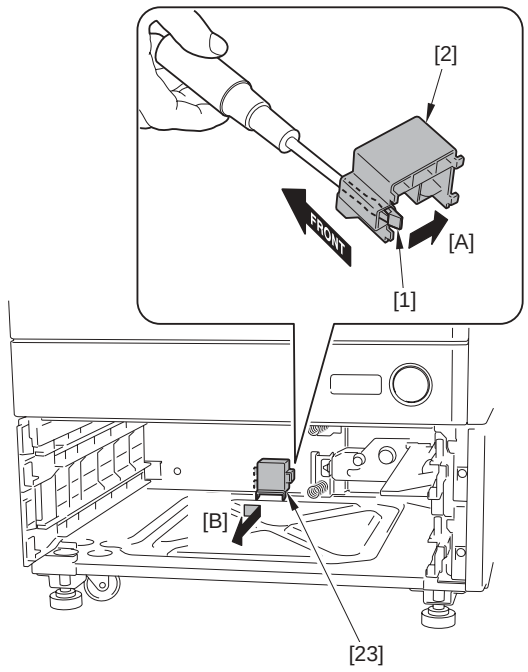
Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.10.4 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Unit)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

⚠ Cassette Heater Attachment needs to be installed to operate Cassette Heater Unit.

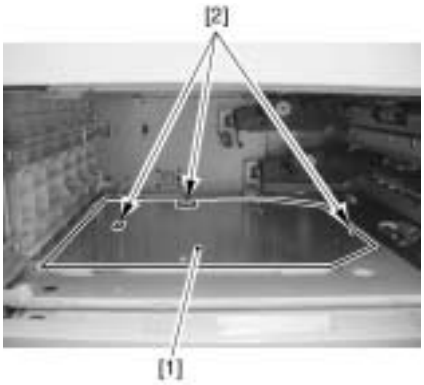
1) Pull out cassette 3 and 4.
2) Remove the claw [1] in the direction of the arrow [A] using a flat-blade screwdriver, and move the connector cover [2] in the direction of the arrow [B] to remove.



F-2-120

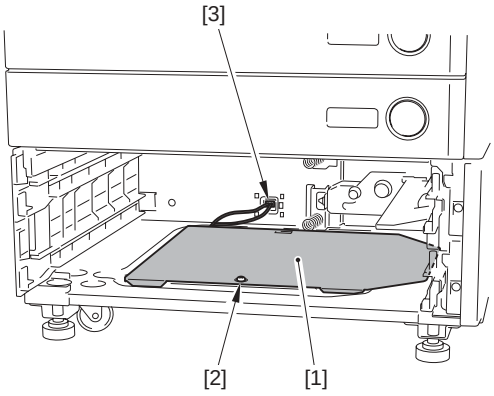
3) Insert the 3 hooks [2] of the cassette heater [1] into the slits of the bottom plate to fit with the holes position.

⚠ When installing the cassette heater, be sure to securely insert the 3 hooks [2] to be fitted with the plate.



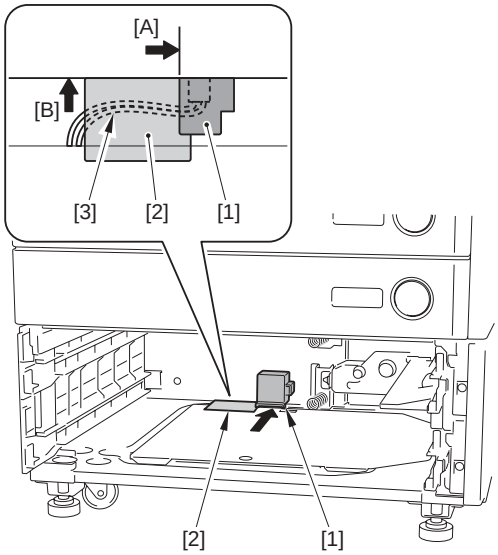
F-2-121

4) Install the cassette heater [1].
-1 screw (Binding; M4X6) [2]
-1 connector [3]



F-2-122

5) Install the connector cover [1].
6) Fit the heater cover [2] (for protecting AC cable) with the wall at the connector cover side [A] as well as the wall at the rear side [B] of the host machine to attach it over the cable [3].



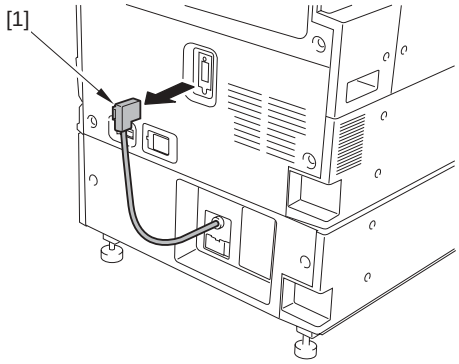
F-2-123

7) Put cassette 3 and 4 back.

2.10.5 Installation Procedure (Cassette Heater Attachment)

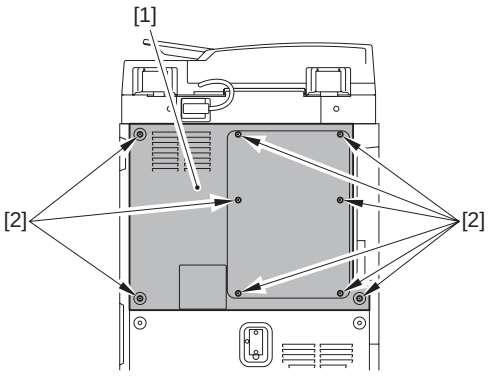
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Disconnect the lattice connector [1] of the cassette pedestal.



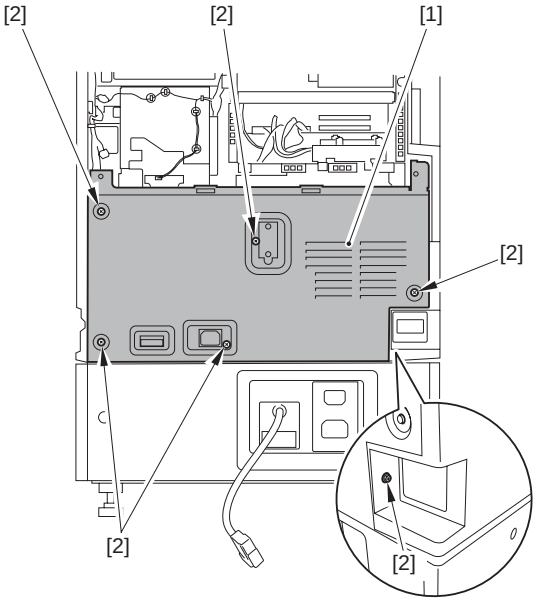
F-2-124

2) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



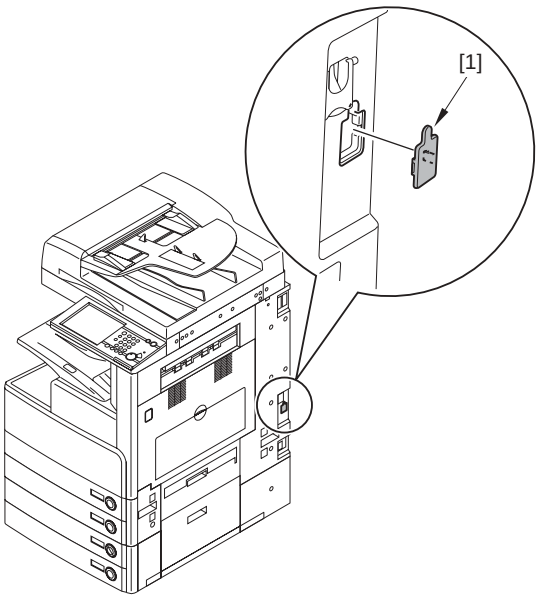
F-2-125

3) Remove the lower rear cover [1].
-6 screws [2]



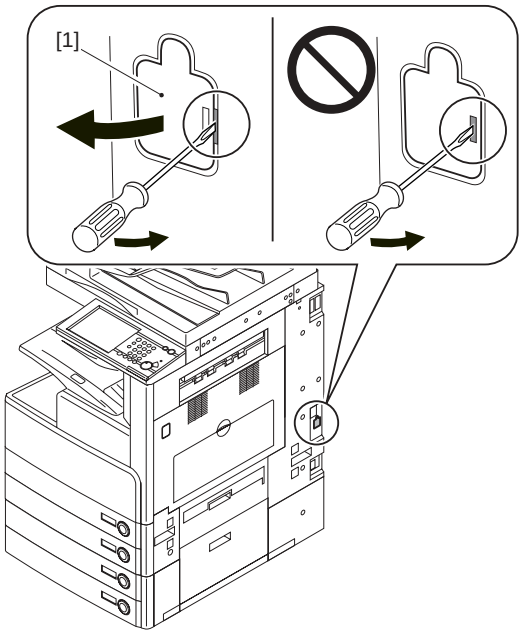
F-2-126

4) Remove the environment heater switch cover [1].



F-2-127

When turning detaching the environment heater switch cover [1], use a flatblade screwdrivers.

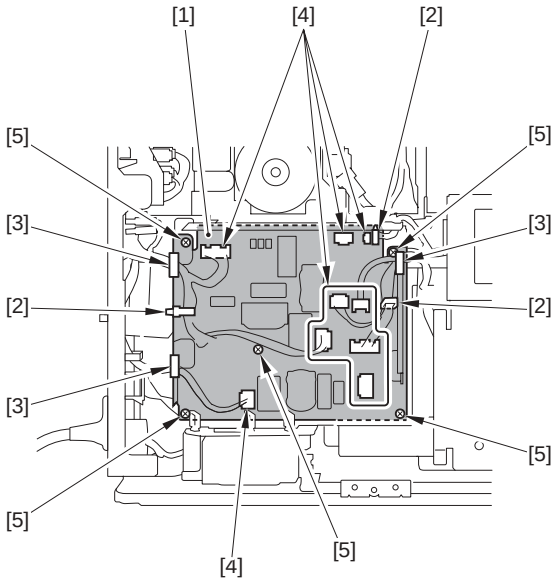


5) Remove the AC driver PCB from the host machine and replace it with the new AC driver PCB [1].

When replacing the AC driver PCB, be sure to make a note of the position of the connector and to connect the connector to the original position.

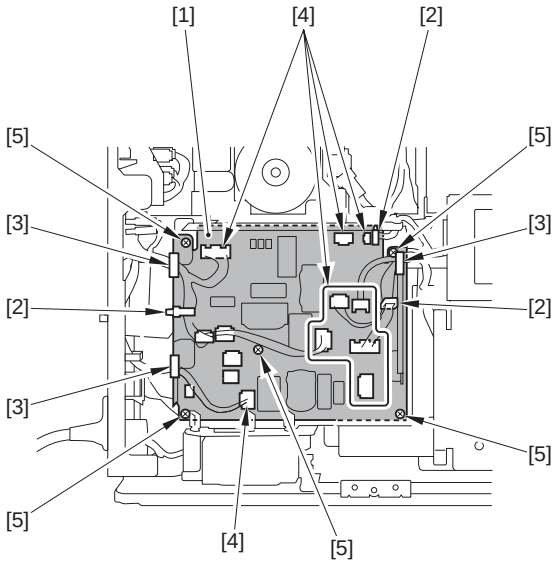
- 3 wire saddles [2]
- 3 edge saddles [3]
- 9 connectors [4]
- 5 screws (w/washer) [5]

Before replacing the AC driver PCB



F-2-128

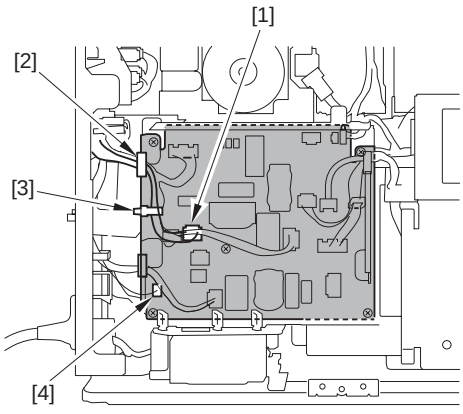
After replacing the AC driver PCB



F-2-129

6) Connect the connector for the cassette heater that is situated near the AC driver PCB and is connected to the host machine to J482 [1] of the AC driver PCB.
- 1 edge saddles [2]
- 1 wire saddles [3]

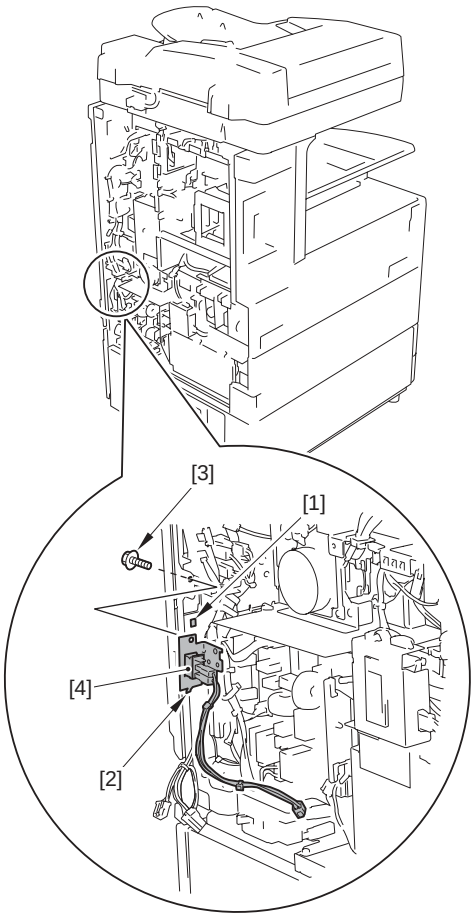
Connect the connector for the DC controller that is situated near the AC driver PCB and is connected to the host machine to J486 [4] of the AC driver PCB.



F-2-130

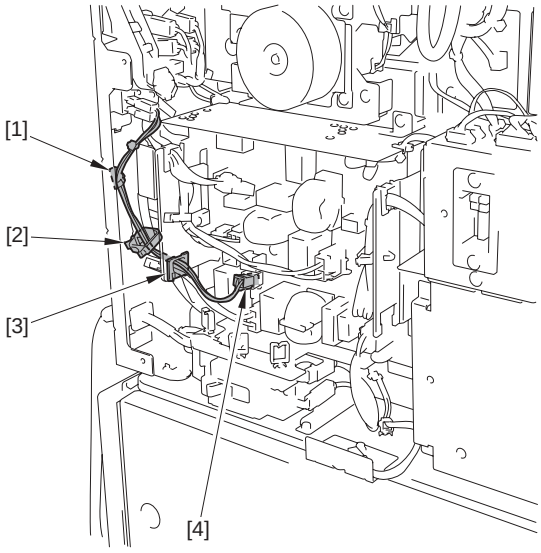
7) Insert the protrusion [2] of the environment switch unit into the host machine frame hole [1] and install the environment switch unit [4] with the

screw (TP; M3X6) [3].



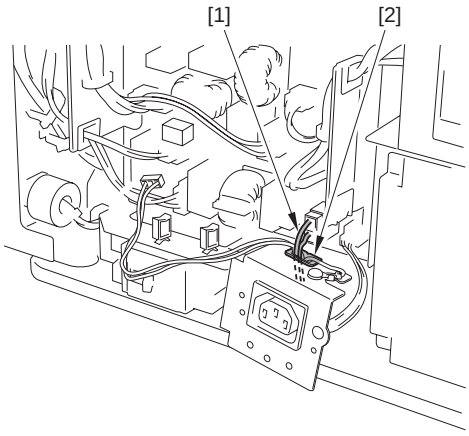
F-2-131

8) Connect the connector [1] of the environment switch unit to J483 of the AC driver PCB.
- 1 reuse band [2]
- 1 wire saddles [3]
- 1 edge saddles [4]



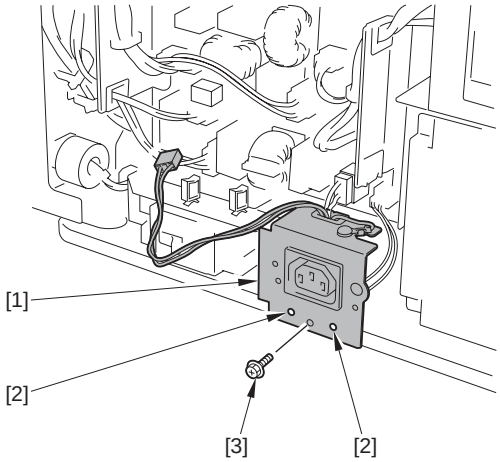
F-2-132

9) Secure the connector harness [1] that connects to the AC driver PCB with the edge saddle [2] of the environment heater outlet.



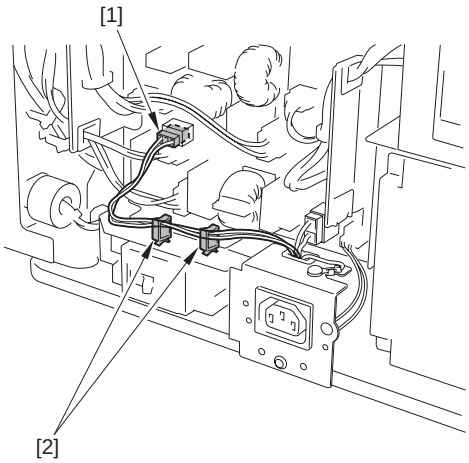
F-2-133

10) Fit the environment heater outlet [1] with the 2 bosses [2] to install.
- 1screw (TP; M3X6) [3]



F-2-134

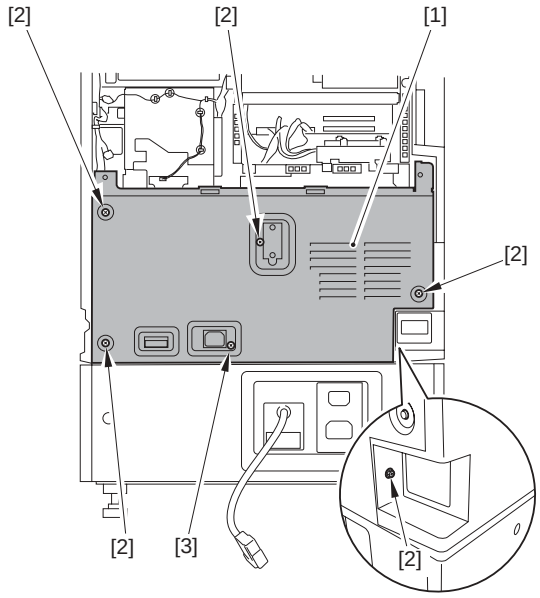
11) Connect the connector [1] to J481 of the AC driver PCB and secure it with the 2 wire saddles [2].



F-2-135

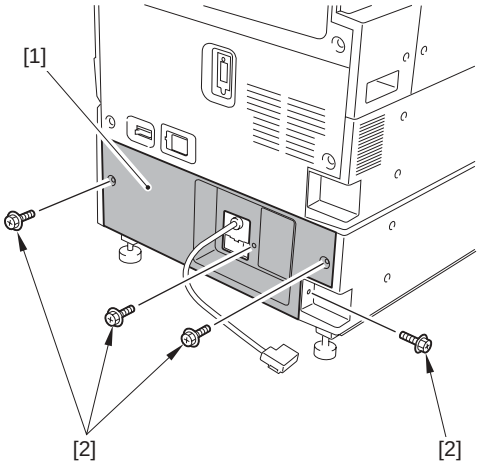
12) Install the lower rear cover [1].
- 5 screws [2]

MEMO:
The screw [3] will be tightened along with the plug cover in step 21), thus is not tightened in this step.



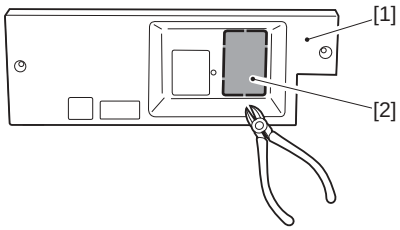
F-2-136

13) Install the upper rear cover.
14) Remove the cassette pedestal rear cover [1].
-4 screws [2]



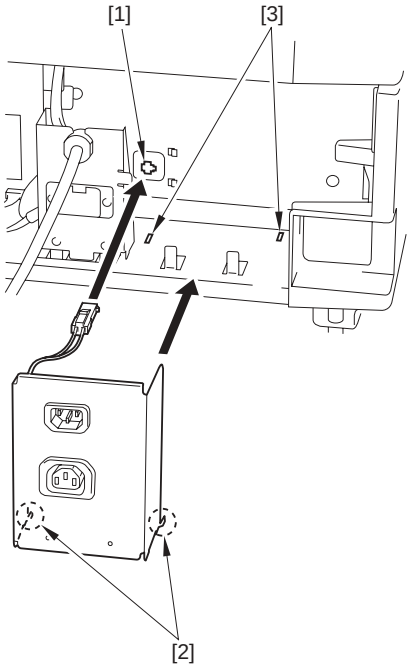
F-2-137

15) Cut off the face covers [2] of the cassette pedestal rear cover [1] with nippers.

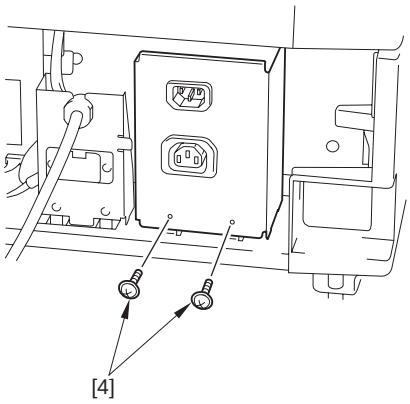


F-2-138

16) Connect the connector [1] of the Power cord terminal assembly and fit the hook [2] into the hole [3] at the bottom surface of the cassette pedestal with 2 screws (TP; M3X6) [4] to install.

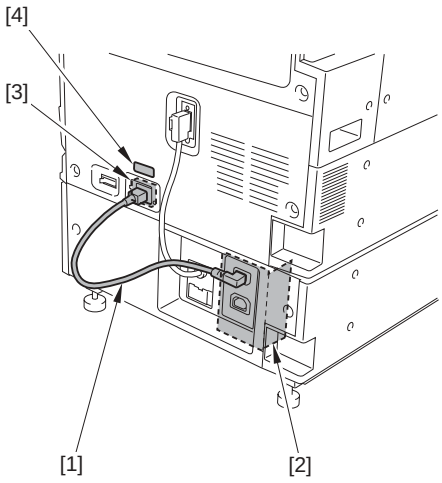


F-2-139



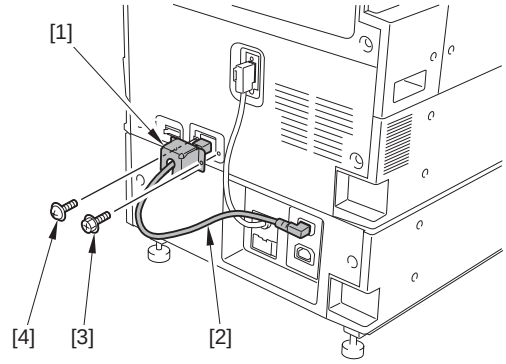
F-2-140

17) Install the cassette pedestal rear cover.
18) Connect the lattice connector to the host machine.
19) Connect the power cord [1] to the Power cord terminal assembly [2] and also to the environment heater outlet [3] of the host machine.
20) Attach the outlet label [4].



F-2-141

21) Install the plug cover [1] over the Power cord [2].
- 1 screw [3] (use the screw removed in step 3)
- 1 screw (TP; M3X6) [4]



F-2-142

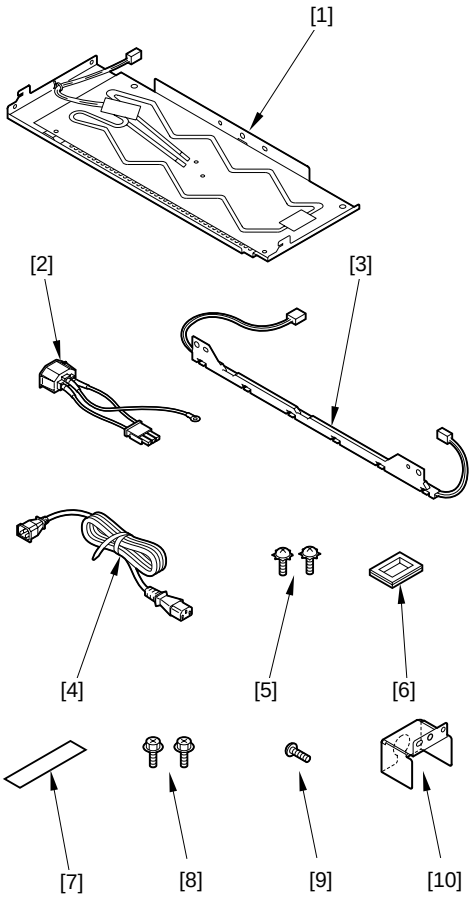
22) Connect the host machine's power plug to the outlet, and then turn ON the main power switch.
23) Turn on the environment heater switch.
24) Install the environment heater switch cover.

2.11 Installing the Deck Heater

2.11.1 Checking the Parts to Install

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Every components of the cassette heater unit are supplied as service parts, so have the following parts on hand.



F-2-143

T-2-7

No.	Part name	Part number	Qty.
[1]	Heater unit	FG6-9651-000	1pc.
[2]	Power supply code base	FG6-1117-000	1pc.
[3]	Relay harness unit	FG6-2957-000	1pc.
[4]	AC cable	FK2-1777-000	1pc.
[5]	Screw (w/ washer)	XA9-0266-000	2pcs.
[6]	Cable protection bush	WT2-5098-000	1pc.
[7]	Power supply label	FS6-8725-000	1pc.
[8]	Screw (RS tight; M4X8)	XA9-0628-000	2pcs.
[9]	Screw (Binding; M4X4)	XB1-2400-409	1pc.
[10]	Plug cover	FC6-5776-000	1pc.

2.11.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

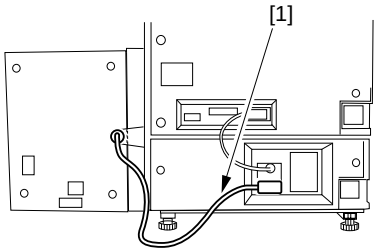
2.11.3 Installation Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

⚠
In order to operate the cassette heater unit, it is required to install the cassette pedestal heater kit.
Refer to the corresponding page for its installation procedure.

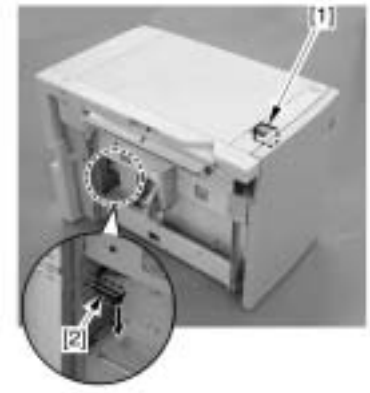
⚠
Be sure to attach after installation of the host machine and the paper deck.

1) Disconnect the cable [1] of the paper deck from the host machine.



F-2-144

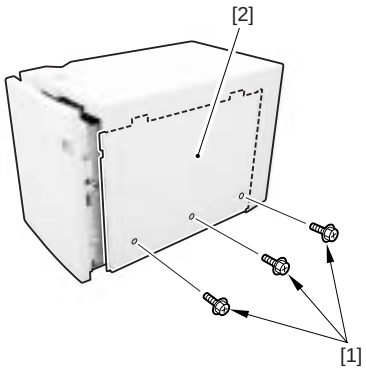
2) Hold down the paper deck release grip [1] to release the paper deck from the host machine. Hold down the latch plate [2] with a finger to open the compartment.



F-2-145

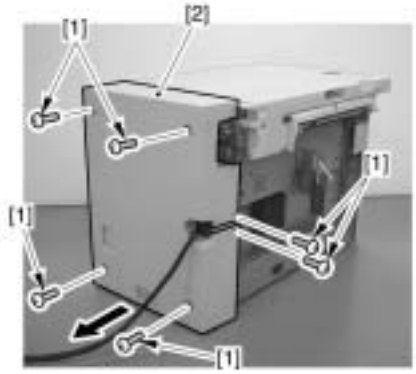
3) Remove the right cover [2] of the paper deck.

- Screw [1], 3 pcs.



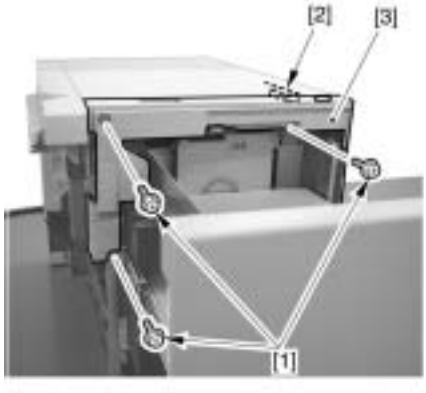
F-2-146

4) Remove the rear cover [2] of the paper deck.
- Screw [1], 6 pcs.



F-2-147

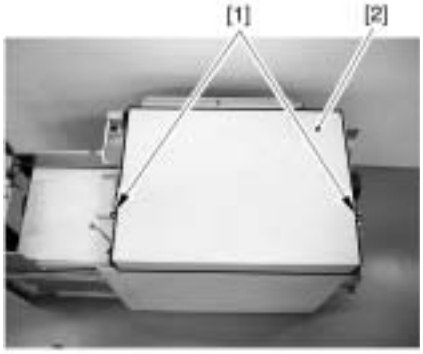
5) Remove the front cover (upper) [3].
- Screw [1], 3 pcs.
- Connector [2], 1 pc.



F-2-148

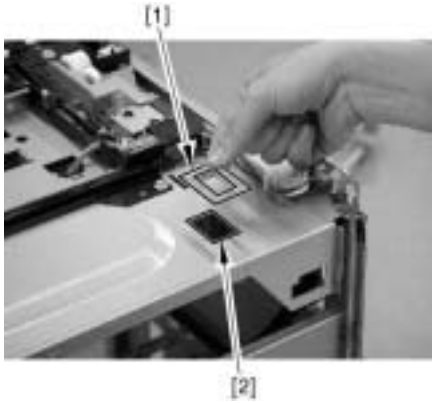
6) Remove the upper cover [2].

- Screw [1], 2 pcs.



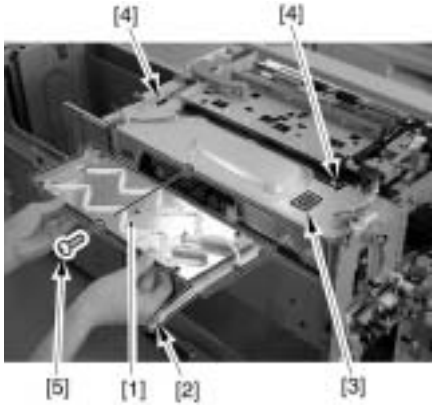
F-2-149

7) Attach the cable protective bush [1] included with the package to the hole [2] on the top board of the paper deck.



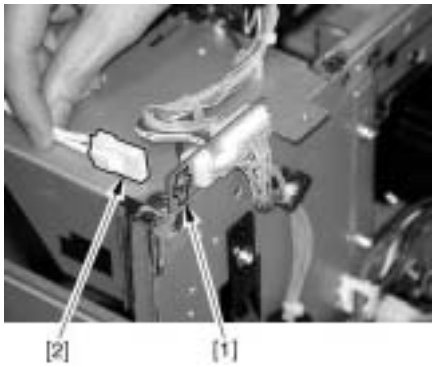
F-2-150

8) Place the heater unit [1] under the top board of the paper deck, and pull out the connector [2] from the hole [3] on the top board.
9) Hook the 2 hooks on the heater unit to the slit [4] on the top board of the paper deck, and fix it on the paper deck with the screw with washer [5].



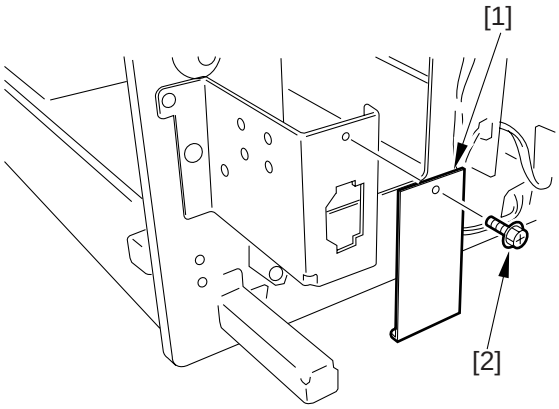
F-2-151

10) Set the connector [2] of the heater to the panel mount [1].



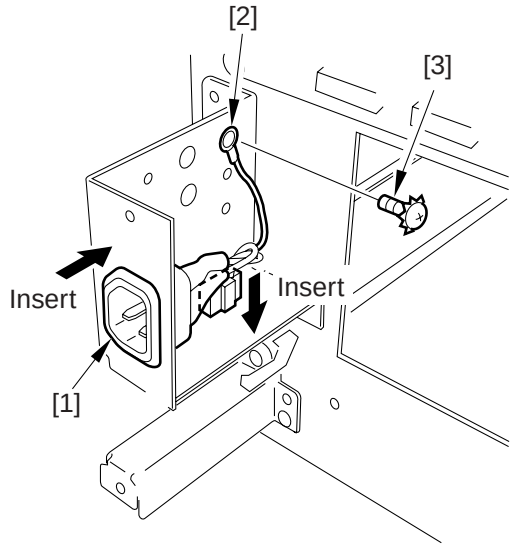
F-2-152

11) Remove the screw [2] to remove the blanking plate [1] attached on the power cord mount of the paper deck.



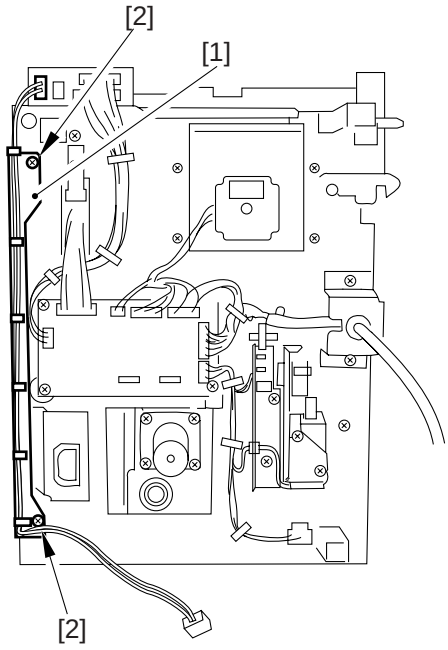
F-2-153

12) Connect the AC inlet connector [1].
13) Attach the grounding wire [2].
- Screw with washer [3], 1 pc.



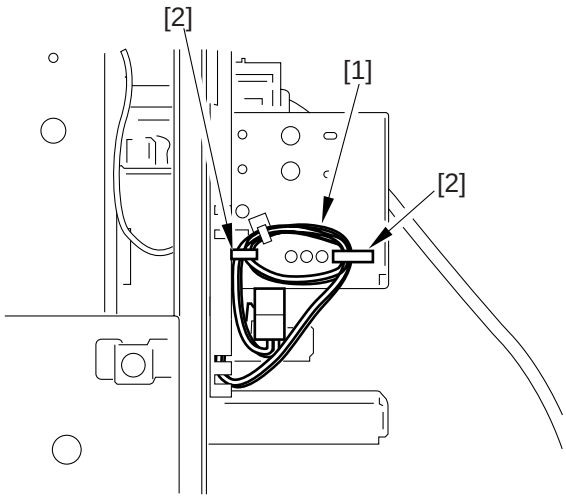
F-2-154

14) Attach the harness [1] to the rear end plate of the paper deck.
- Screw (M4X8) [2], 2 pc.



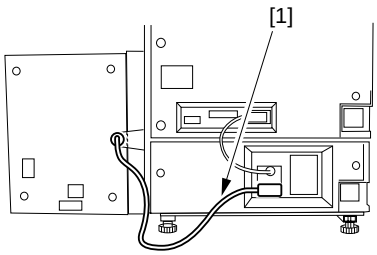
F-2-155

15) Wrap the harness [1] around the cable guide [2] on the power cord mount. (One and a half turn)



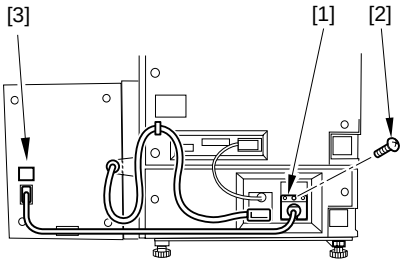
F-2-156

16) Connect each of the connectors at both ends of the harness unit to the heater connector and the AC power supply connector respectively.
17) Attach the external cover of the paper deck in the following orders.
[1] Upper cover (Make sure that the cable is not stuck in) (M4X8; 2 screws)
[2] Upper front cover (Connect the connector) (M4X8; 3 screws)
[3] Rear cover (M3X8; 2 screws, M4X8; 4 screws)
[4] Right cover (M4X8; 3 screws)
18) Slide the paper deck in the left direction and set it to the host machine.
19) Connect the paper deck connector [1] to the rear surface of the host machine.



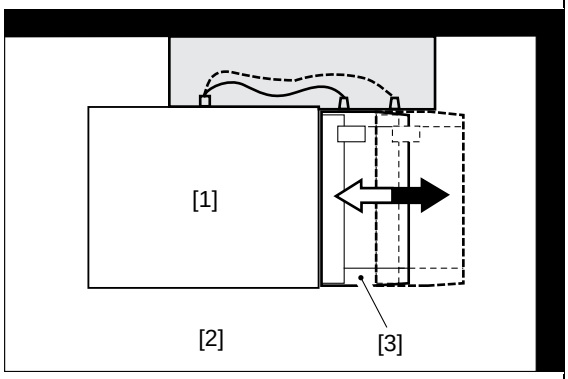
F-2-157

20) Connect one of the AC cable (for the host machine outlet) to the power cord mount of the heater, and the other to the cassette pedestal of the host machine.
21) Put the plug cover [1] to the AC cable connector, and fix it with the screw [2].
22) Affix the power label [3] to the rear cover of the paper deck as shown in the figure below.



F-2-158

Be sure to tell the users not to place any things within the shaded area for not disturbing opening/closing the paper deck when connecting the power plug of the heater.



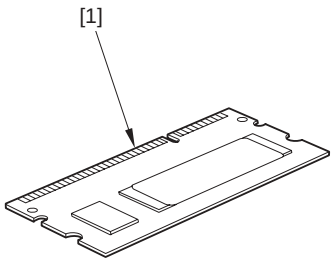
[1] Host machine
[2] Front side
[3] Paper deck

2.12 Installing the Memory

2.12.1 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Additional Memory Type A (512MB)>



F-2-159

[1] Expansion memory 1pc.

2.12.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

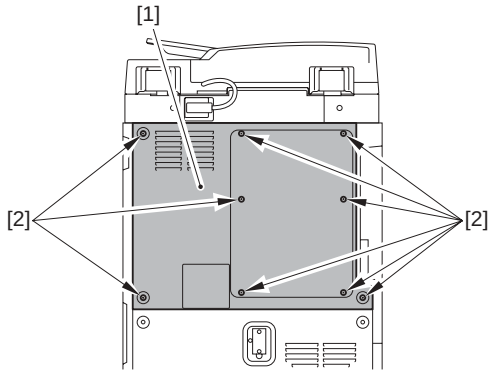
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.12.3 Installation Procedure

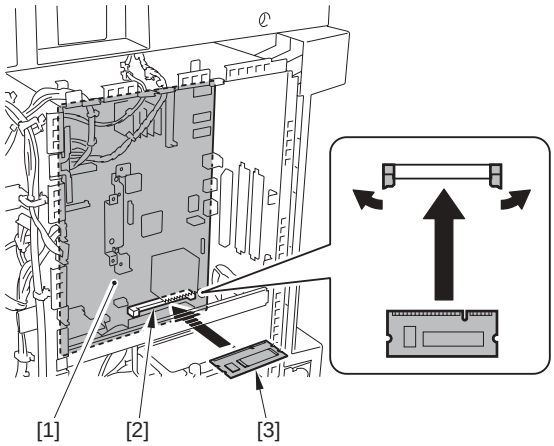
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1. Installation Procedure
1) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



F-2-160

2) Release the claw of the DIMM stopper [2] on the main controller PCB [1] in the direction of the arrow, and then install the expansion memory [3].



F-2-161

3) Install the upper rear cover.
4) Insert the power plug into the power outlet.
5) Turn on the main power switch.

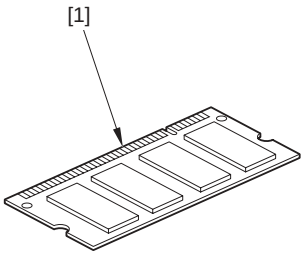
2. Checking Memory Expansion
Service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS > IA-RAM
After expanding the expansion memory, check to see that the memory capacity has increased.

2.13 Installing the Memory (System upgrade memory)

2.13.1 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<System Upgrade RAM-A1>



F-2-162

[1] Expansion RAM 1pc.

2.13.2 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

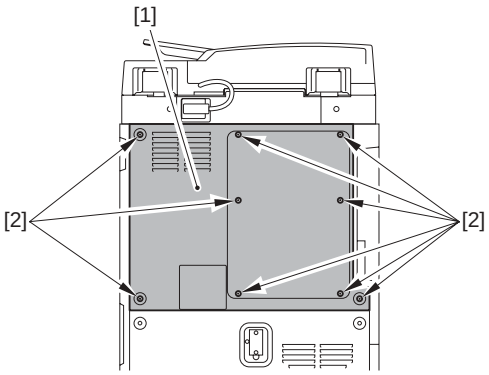
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.13.3 Installation Procedure

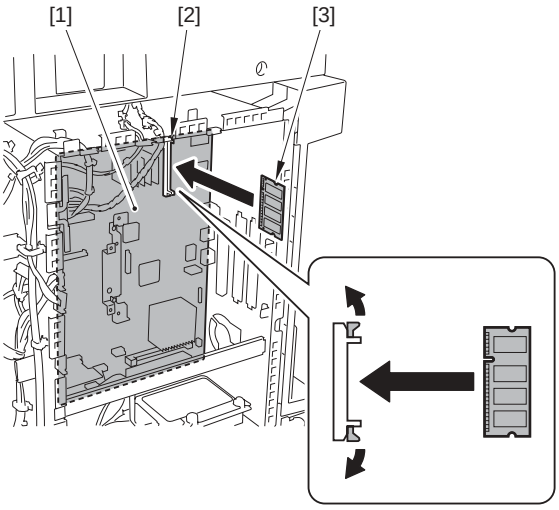
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1. Installation Procedure
1) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



F-2-163

2) Release the claw of the DIMM stopper [2] on the main controller PCB [1] in the direction of the arrow, and then install the expansion RAM [3].



F-2-164

3) Install the upper rear cover.
4) Insert the power plug into the power outlet.
5) Turn on the main power switch.

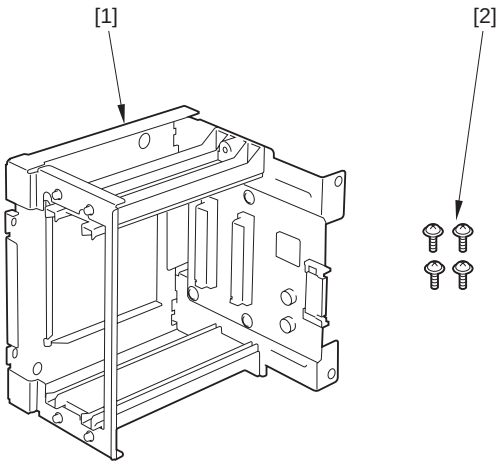
2. Checking Expansion RAM
Service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS > RAM
After expanding the Expansion RAM, check to see that the memory capacity has increased.

2.14 Installing the Expansion Bus Kit

2.14.1 Checking the contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Expansion Bus-E1>



F-2-165

[1]	Expansion bus kit	1pc
[2]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	4pc

2.14.2 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine

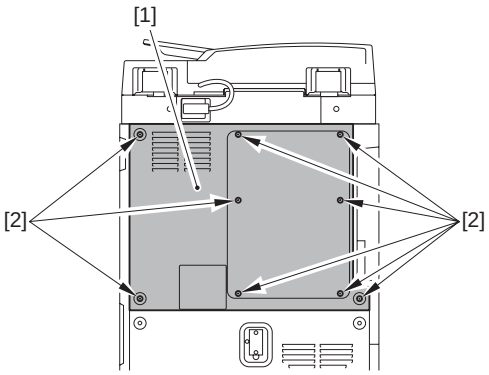
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.14.3 Installation Procedure

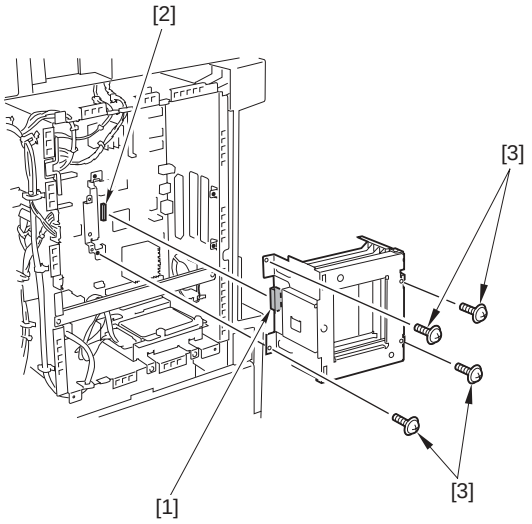
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1. Installation procedure
1) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



F-2-166

2) Insert the mouth [1] of Expansion bus kit into the connector [2] of the main controller PCB and then install it with 4 screws (TP; M3X6) [3].



F-2-167

3) Install the upper rear cover.
4) Insert the power plug into the outlet.

5) Turn ON the main power switch.

2.15 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit

2.15.1 Notice At Installation

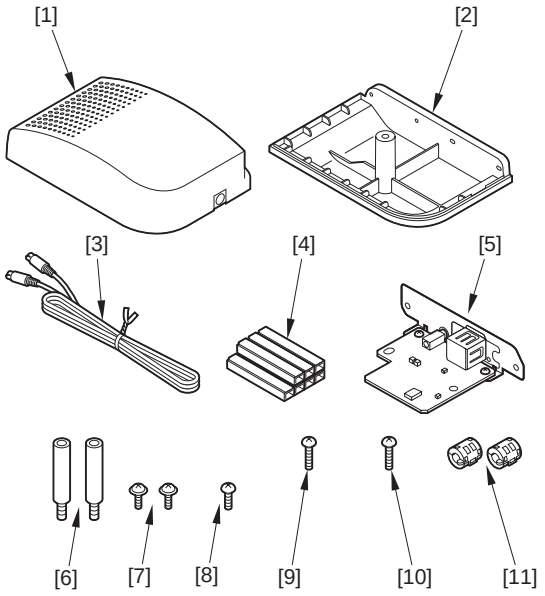
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> See 'Combination Table of Accessories' when installing this equipment.
> - When installing this equipment with the Expansion Bus, be sure to install this equipment first.
> - If the Expansion Bus has been installed, be sure to remove it and then install this equipment.

2.15.2 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Voice Guidance Kit-D1>



F-2-168

[1]	Speaker unit (upper)	1pc
[2]	Speaker unit (lower)	1pc
[3]	Cable (1300 mm)	1pc
[4]	Cable guide (4 or 5 pc used for this equipment)	7pc
[5]	Voice board unit	1pc
[6]	Card spacer	2pc
[7]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	1pc
[8]	Screw (binding; M4X6)	1pc
[9]	Screw (binding; M3X16)	1pc
[10]	Screw (binding; M4X16)	1pc
[11]	Ferrite core	2pc

<CDs/guides>
- Voice guidance guide
- Voice guidance guide CD
- FCC/IC Sheet

2.15.3 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine

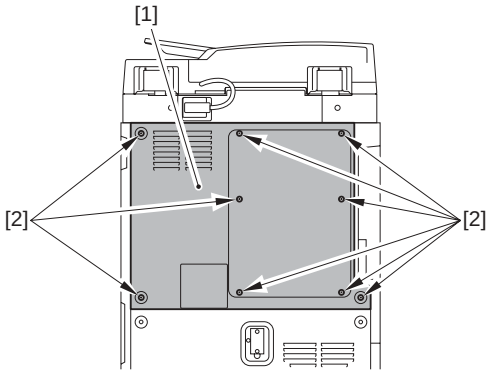
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.15.4 Installation Procedure

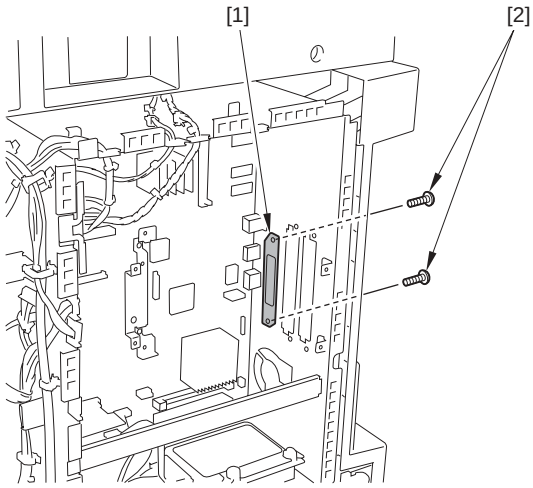
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
   - 9 screws [2]



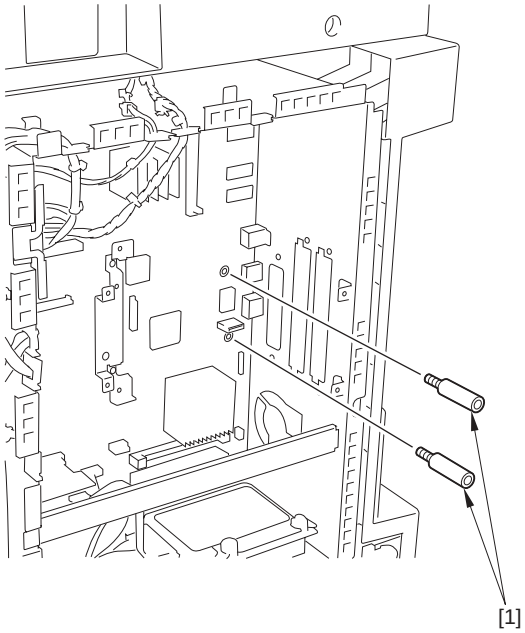
F-2-169

2) Remove the face plate [1]. (Do not use the removed face plate.)
   - 2 screws [2]



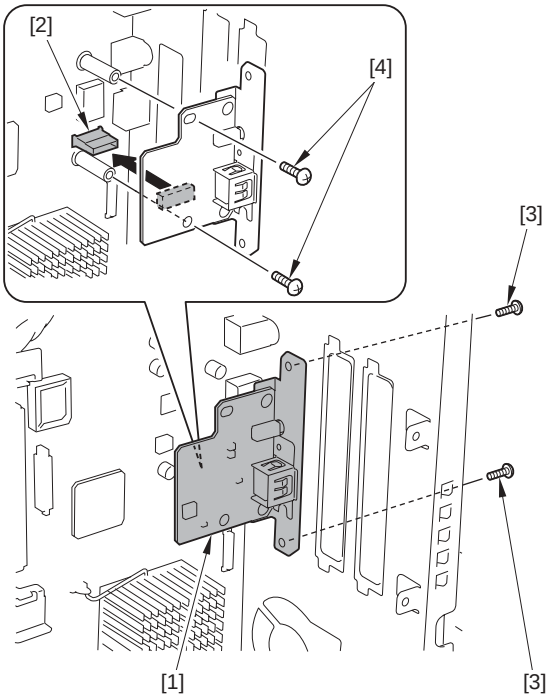
F-2-170

3) Install the 2 card spacers [1] on the main controller PCB.



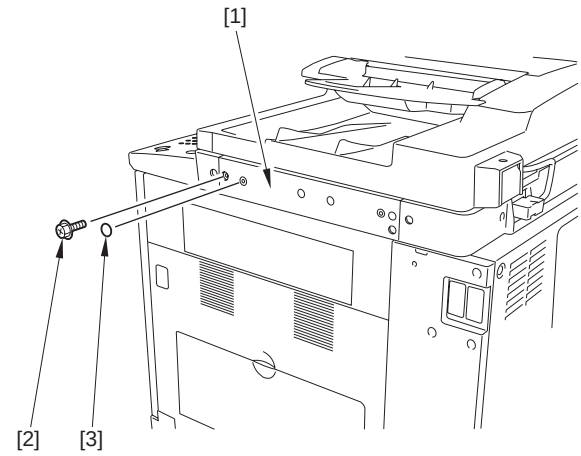
F-2-171

4) Insert the voice board unit [1] into the connector [2] on the main controller PCB, and then install it.
- 2 screws [3] (that have been removed in step 2)
- 2 screws (TP; M3X6) [4]



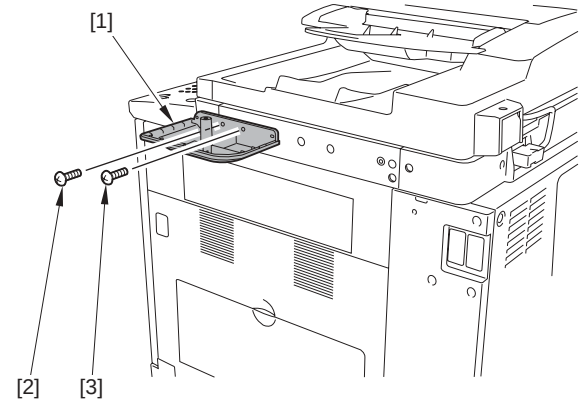
F-2-172

5) Remove the screw [2] and the face seal [3] at the reader right cover [1]. (Do not use the removed screw and the face seal.)



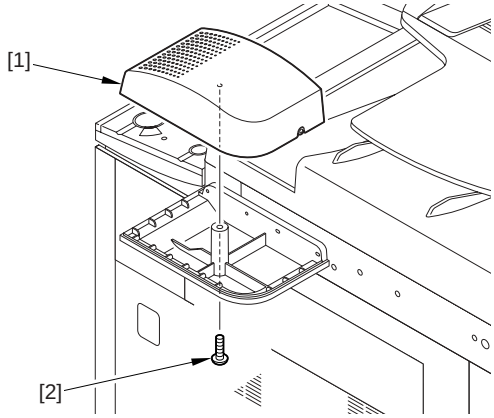
F-2-173

6) Install the speaker unit (lower) [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M3X16) [2]
- 1 screw (binding; M4X16) [3]



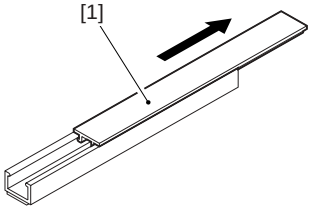
F-2-174

7) Install the speaker unit (upper) [1] to the speaker unit (lower).
- 1 screw (binding; M4X6) [2]



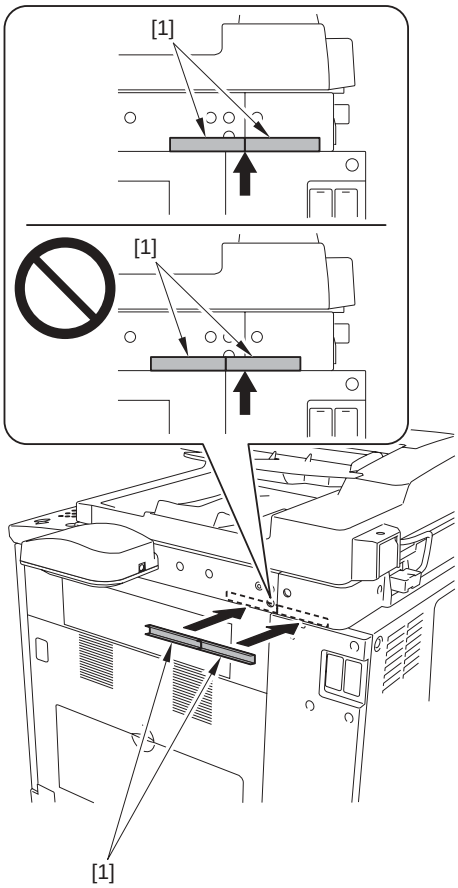
F-2-175

8) Remove the cover [1] of the cable guide.



F-2-176

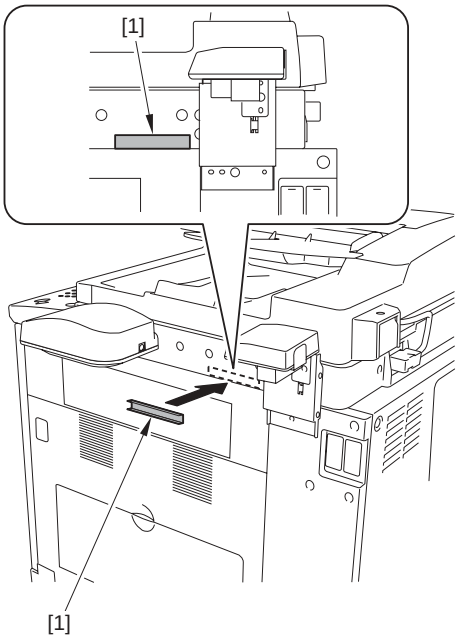
9) Remove the release paper of the cable guide [1] and install the cable guide.
A: In the case that the card reader has not been installed on the host machine
<Right side - 2 locations>



F-2-177

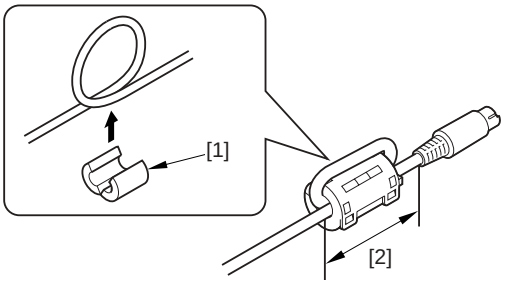
B: In the case that the card reader has been installed on the host machine

<Right side - 1 location>



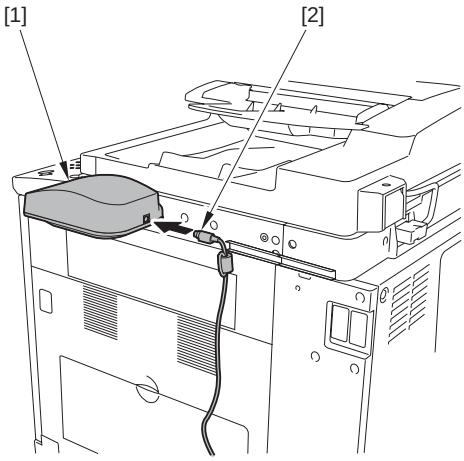
F-2-178

10) Install the ferrite core [1] to the cable. The installation position [2] should be at 50 mm from the root of cable. Install it also to the other side in the same manner.



F-2-179

11) Insert the cable [2] into the speaker unit [1].



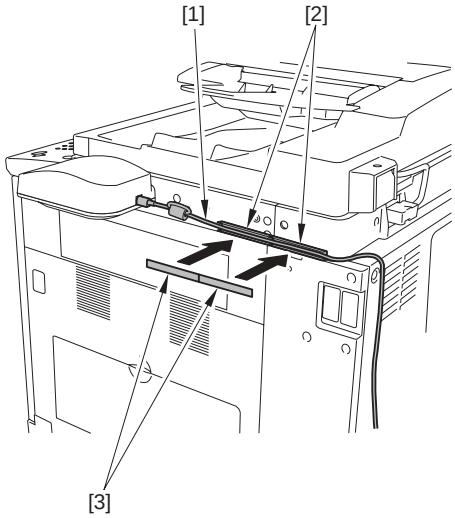
F-2-180

12) Route the cable [1] through the cable guide [2] and install the cable guide cover [3].

> ⚠
> There should be no excess slack on the cable.

A: In the case that the card reader has not been installed on the host machine

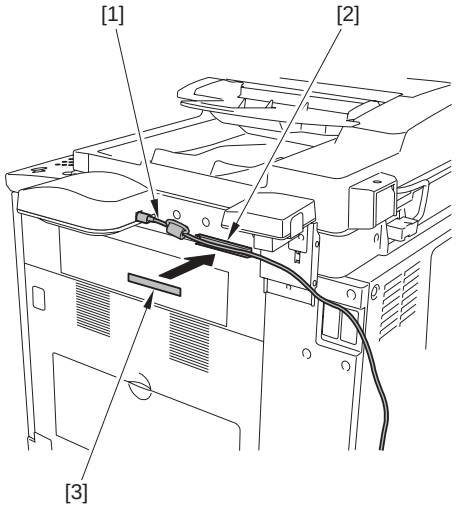
<Right side>



F-2-181

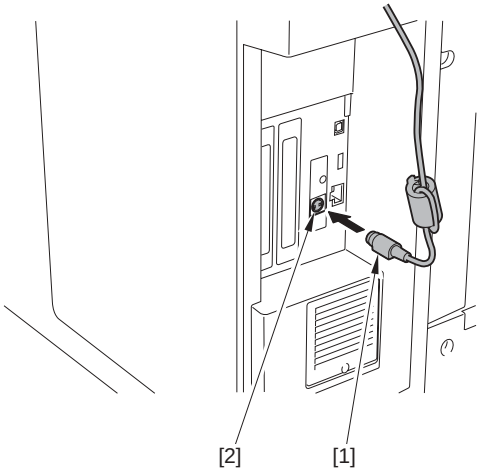
B: In the case that the card reader has been installed on the host machine

<Right side>



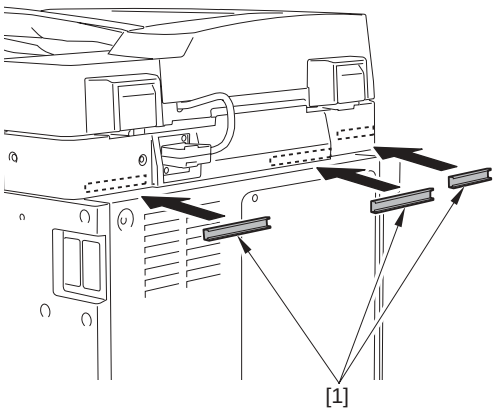
F-2-182

13) Insert the cable [1] into the terminal [2] of the voice board.



F-2-183

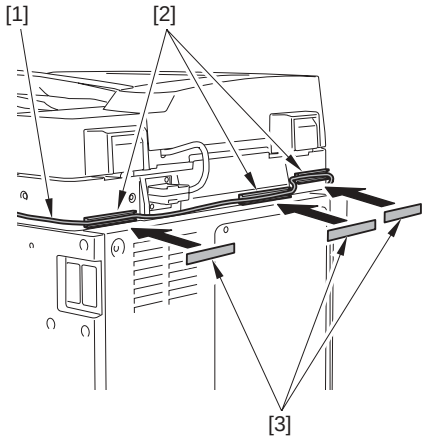
14) Remove the release paper of the cable guide [1] and install the cable guide.
<Rear side - 3 location>



F-2-184

15) Route the cable [1] through the cable guide [2] and install the cable guide cover [3].

> There should no excess slack on the cable.



F-2-185

16) Insert the power plug into the power outlet.
17) Turn on the main power switch.
18) Check to see that the voice board is recognized.
123 key (Counter Check key) > [Device Configuration]
When 'voice guidance' is displayed, the functions are enabled.

2.15.5 Checking the Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

After turning on the power supply of the host machine, check the following settings to use the voice guidance kit.
1) [Additional Function] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Voice Guide from Speaker]
2) Check to see that it is ON.
3) If 'voice guidance kit' does not function normally, check the following points.
The following item in service mode;
- COPIER > Display > VERSION
TTS-JA/TTS-EN has been correctly installed.

2.15.6 Operation Check

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<To use>
1) Press the reset key for 3 sec or more.
2) Voice guidance kit becomes available to use if the copy count display on the screen is framed in red.
<To stop>
1) Press the reset key for 3 sec or more.

2.16 Installing the Voice Operation Kit

2.16.1 Notice At Installation

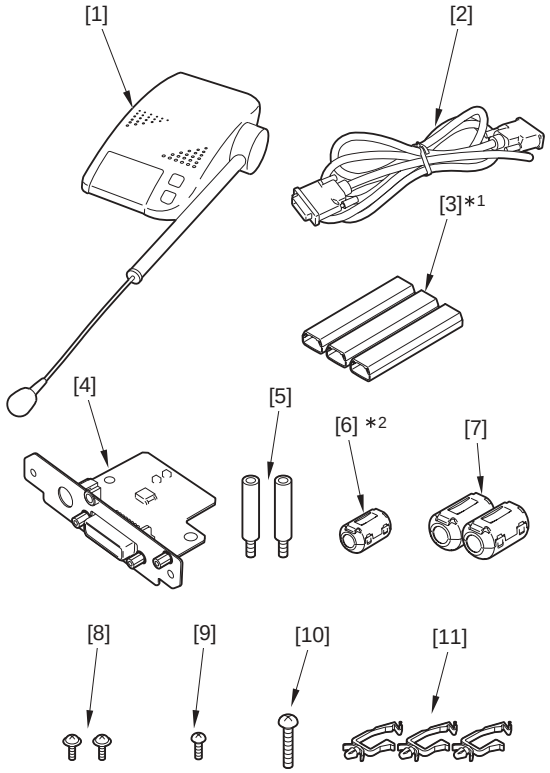
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> See 'Combination Table of Accessories' when installing this equipment.
> When the memory pre-installed on the host machine is less than 1GB, install the additional memory Type A (512MB).
> - When installing this equipment with the Expansion Bus, be sure to install this equipment first.
> - If the Expansion Bus has been installed, be sure to remove it and then install this equipment.

2.16.2 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Voice Operation Kit-B1>



F-2-186

[1]	Speaker unit	1pc
[2]	Cable	1pc
[3]*1	Cable guide	3pc
[4]	Voice operation board unit	1pc
[5]	Card spacer	2pc
[6]*2	Ferrite core	1pc
[7]	Ferrite core	2pc
[8]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	2pc
[9]	Screw (binding; M4X16)	1pc
[10]	Screw (binding; M3X20)	1pc
[11]	Wire saddle	3pc

*1 Only 1pc used for this *1 Only 1pc used for this equipment.
*2 Use it for the foot SW cable which is the belonging of the user.

<CDs/guides>
- Voice guidance guide
- Voice guidance guide CD
- Voice operation kit user manual
- Voice operation kit user manual CD
- Voice operation quick reference guide

2.16.3 Turning Off the Power of the Host Machine

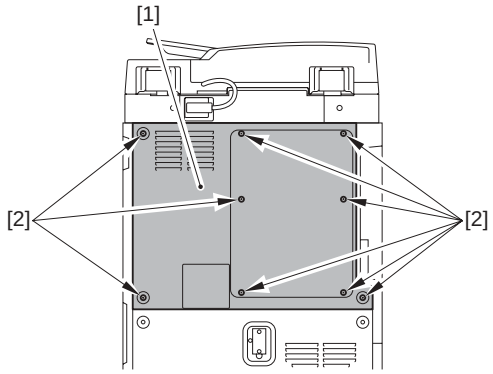
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.16.4 Installation Procedure

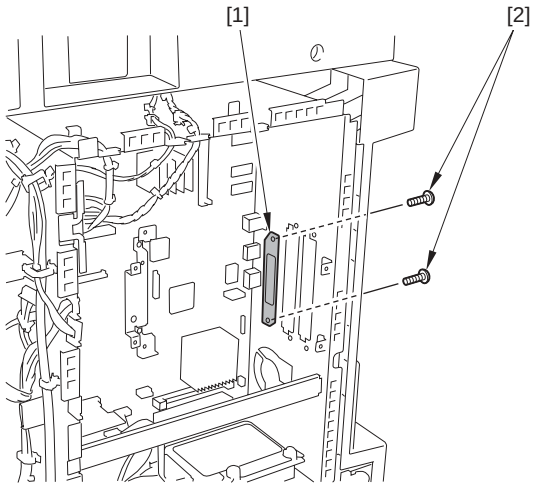
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover [1].
   - 9 screws [2]



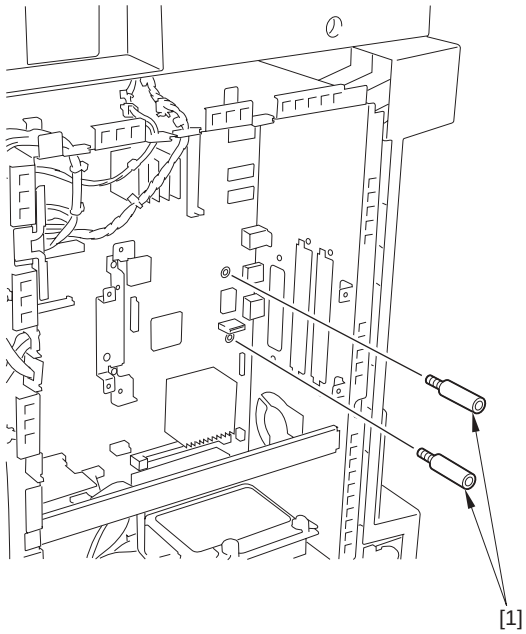
F-2-187

2) Remove the face plate [1]. (Do not use the removed face plate.)
   - 2 screws [2]



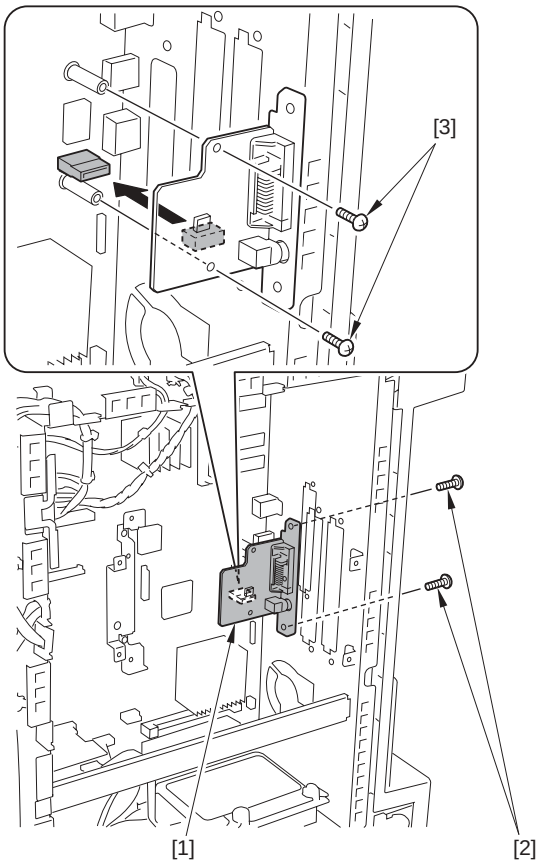
F-2-188

3) Install the 2 card spacers [1] on the main controller PCB.



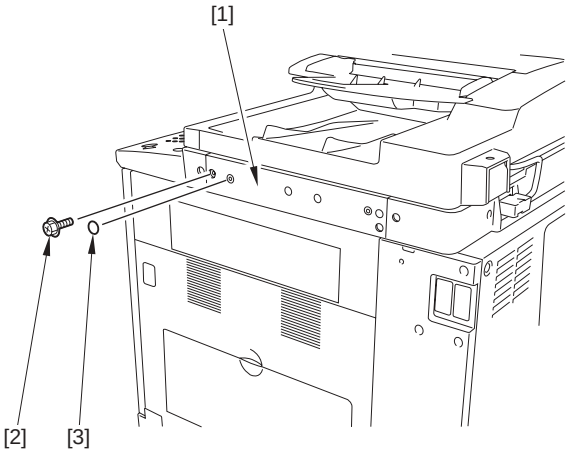
F-2-189

4) Install the voice operation board unit [1] on the main controller PCB.
   - 2 screws [2] (that have been removed in step 2)
   - 2 screws (TP; M3X6) [3]



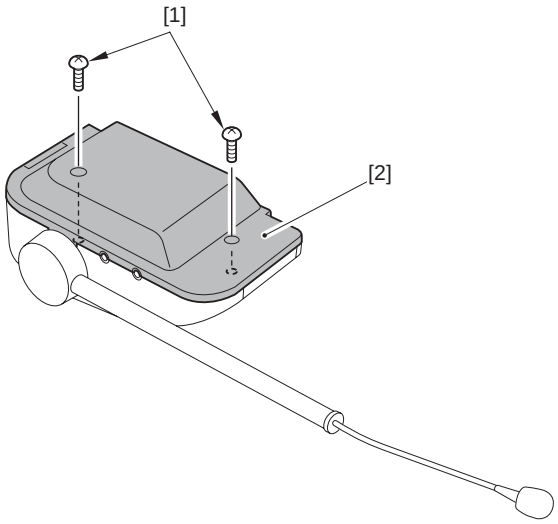
F-2-190

5) Remove the screw [2] and the face seal [3] at the reader right cover [1]. (Do not use the removed screw and the face seal.)



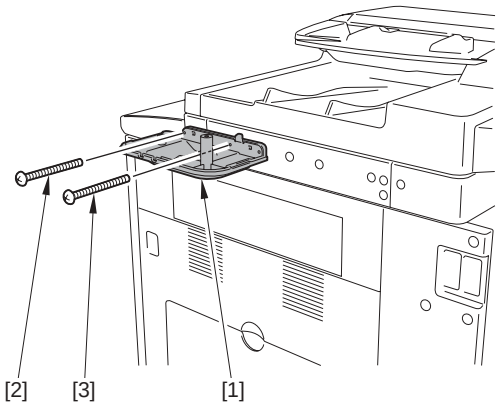
F-2-191

6) Remove the 2 screws [1] from the speaker unit and remove the speaker unit (lower) [2].



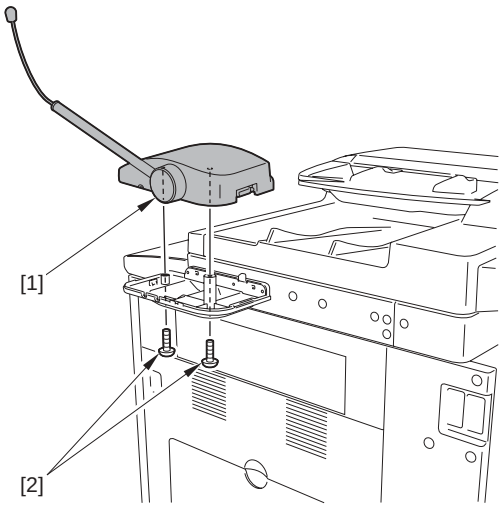
F-2-192

7) Install the speaker unit (lower) [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M3X20) [2]
- 1 screw (binding; M4X16) [3]



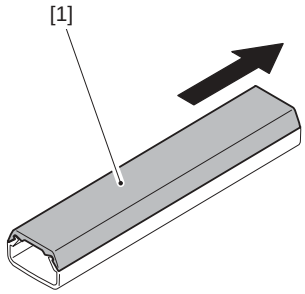
F-2-193

8) Install the speaker unit (upper) [1].
- 2 screws [2] (Use the screws removed in step 7)



F-2-194

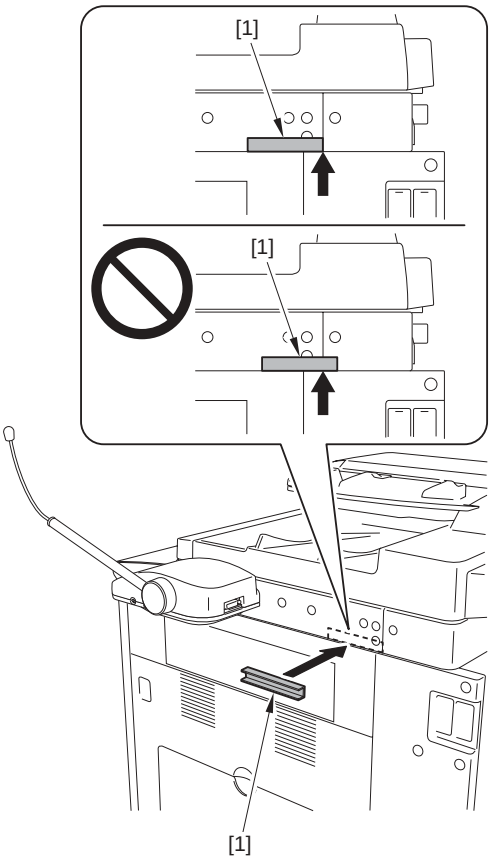
9) Remove the cover [1] of the cable guide.



F-2-195

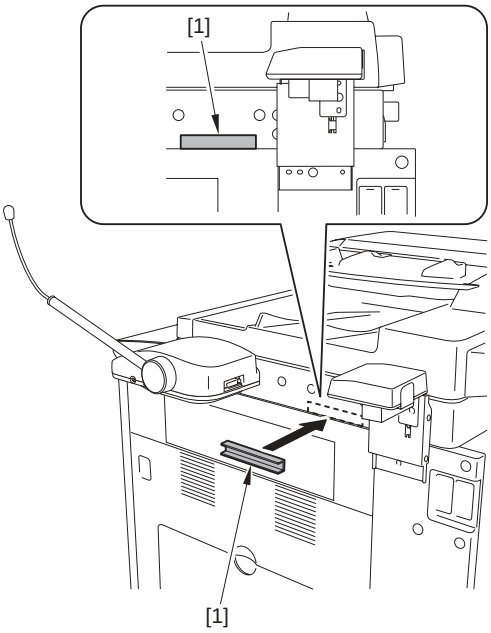
10) Remove the release paper of the cable guide [1] and fix it to the right side as shown in the figure.

A: In the case that the card reader has not been installed on the host machine



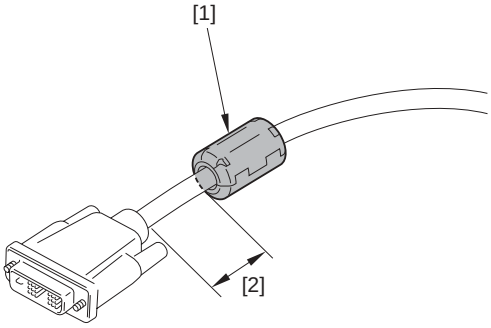
F-2-196

B: In the case that the card reader has been installed on the host machine



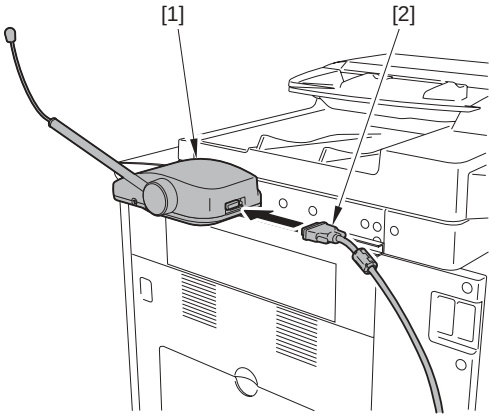
F-2-197

11) Install the ferrite core [1] to the cable. The installation position [2] should be at 50 mm from the root of cable. Install it also to the other side in the same manner.



F-2-198

12) Insert the cable [2] into the speaker unit [1].

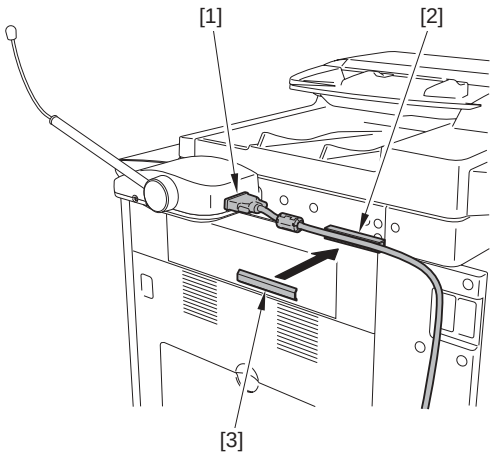


F-2-199

13) Route the cable [1] through the cable guide [2] and install the cable guide cover [3].

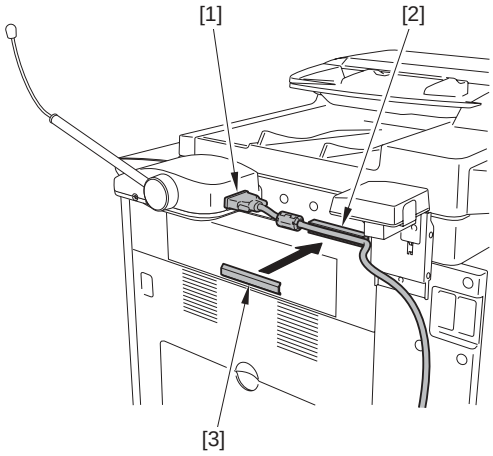
> ⚠
> There should be no excess slack on the cable.

A: In the case that the card reader has not been installed on the host machine



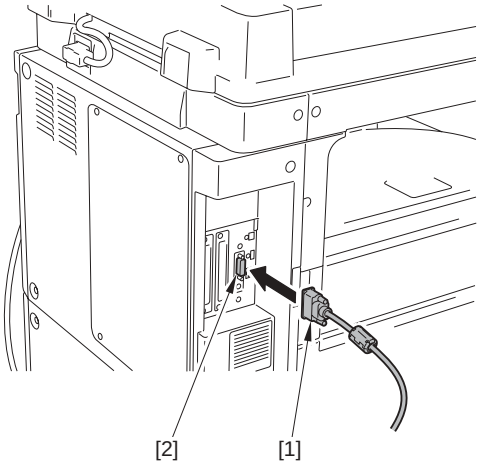
F-2-200

B: In the case that the card reader has been installed on the host machine



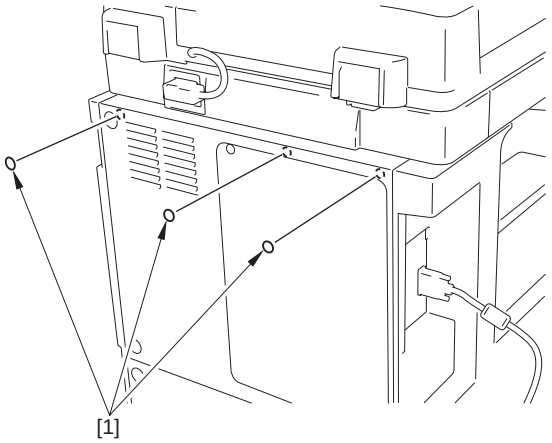
F-2-201

14) Insert the other side of cable [1] into the terminal [2] of the voice operation board.



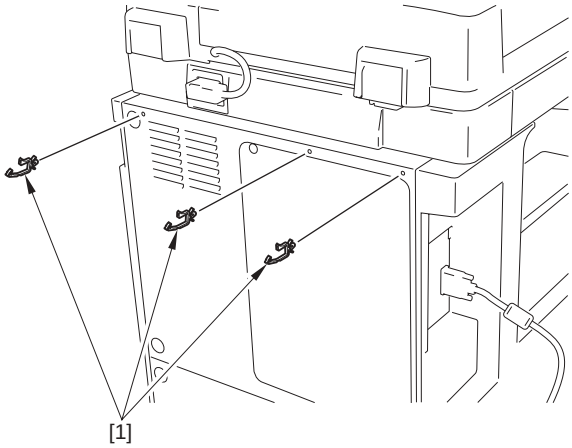
F-2-202

15) Remove the 3 face seals [1] at the rear cover. (Do not use the removed face seals.)



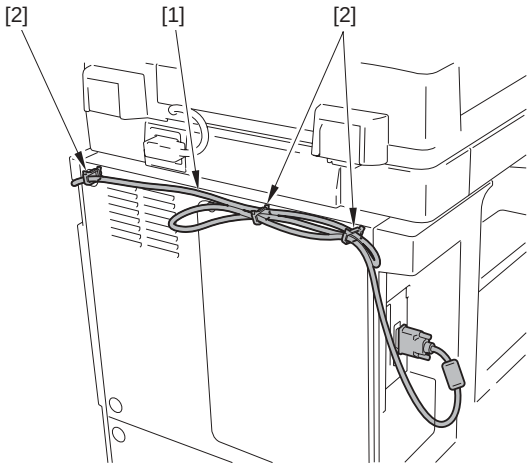
F-2-203

16) Install the wire saddles [1] to the 3 locations that the face seals have been removed.



F-2-204

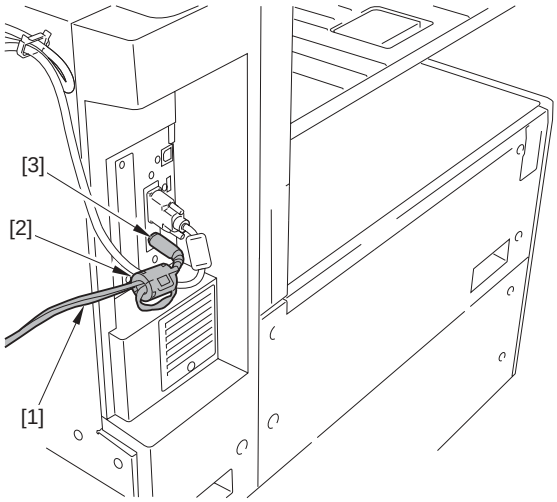
17) Fix the cable [1] with the 3 wire saddles [2] while preventing excess slack on the cable as shown in the figure.



F-2-205

18) Make a turn of the ferrite core [2] around the foot switch cable [1] of the user and install it, and then insert it into the terminal [3] of the voice operation board.

⚠
Be sure to install the ferrite core as close as possible to the connection of the cable.



F-2-206

19) Insert the power plug into the power outlet.
20) Turn on the main power switch.
21) Check to see that the voice operation board is recognized.
123 key (Counter Check key) > [Device Configuration]
When 'voice operation' is displayed, the functions are enabled.

> If there is not a sufficient memory, the functions are not enabled even with the board connected.

2.16.5 Checking the Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

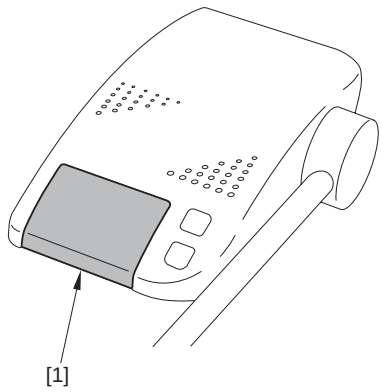
After turning on the power supply of the host machine, check the following settings to use the voice operation kit.
1) [Additional Function] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Voice Recognition Settings]
Check to see that it is set to ON.

> **MEMO:**
> When it is set to on, each confirmation screen at copy start, resetting, and calling the mode memory by voice operation is displayed.

2.16.6 Operation Check

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<To use>
1) Press the reset key or voice recognition button[1] for 3 sec or more.



F-2-207

2) Select Voice the Navigation Selection [Voice Guide + Recognition / Voice Guide / Voice Recognition] on the control panel screen and hold down OK.
3) 'Voice operation kit' becomes available to use if the copy count display on the screen is framed in red.

> If 'voice operation kit' does not function normally, check the following points.
> - The item 'TTS-JA/TTS-EN, ASR-JA/ASR-EN' has been installed in service mode > COPIER > Display > VERSION.

<To stop>
1) Press the reset key or Voice Recognition button for 3 sec or more.

2.17 Installing the Wireless Network Interface Adapter

2.17.1 Notice At Installation

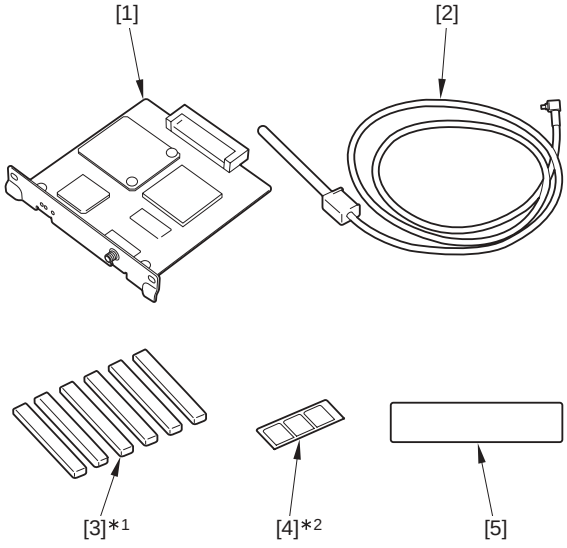
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> Install the equipment after installing the Expansion Bus-E1.

2.17.2 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<Wireless LAN Board-A1>



F-2-208

[1]	Wireless LAN board	1pc.
[2]	MFP antenna	1pc.
[3]*1	Cord guide	6pc.
[4]*2	Antenna affixing tape	1sheet.
[5]	Wireless LAN display label	1pc.

*1; Use 4 pieces for the host machine.

*2; Keep the remaining tape from the 3 sheets in a safe place for later use.

< CD/Guides >

- Wireless LAN User's Guide
- Manual CD (Wireless LAN User's Guide)
- FCC/IC instruction sheet (included only for the USA area)

2.17.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

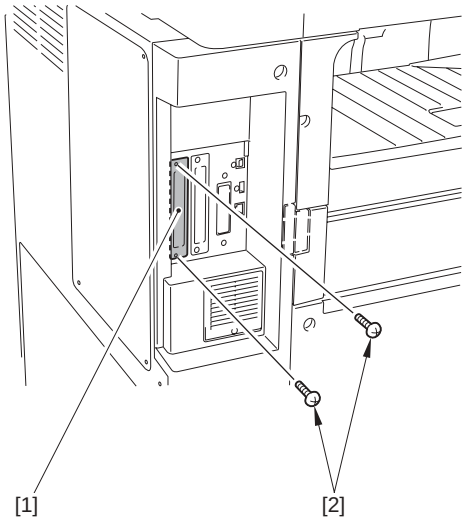
Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.17.4 Installation Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

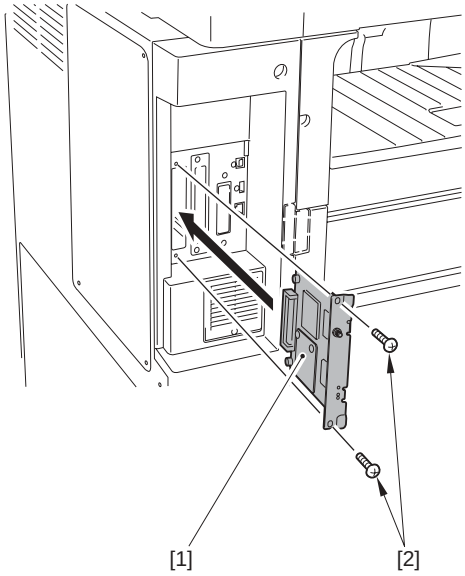
1. Installation Procedure

1) Remove the face plate [1] at the rear left side. (Do not use the removed face plate.)
   - 2 screws [2]



F-2-209

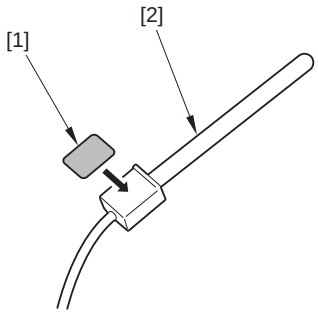
2) Install the wireless LAN board [1]
   - 2 screws [2] (Use the screw removed in step 1.)



F-2-210

3) Remove the antenna fixing tape [1] from the sheet and affix it to the MFP antenna [2].

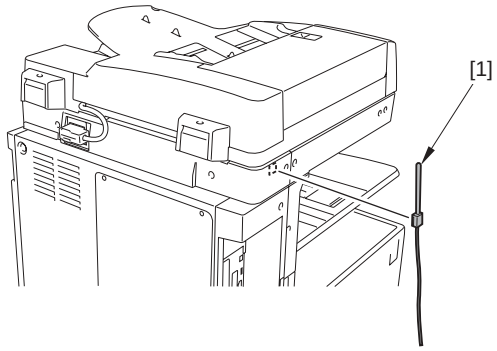
MEMO:
Keep the 2 remaining tapes in the safe place for later use.



F-2-211

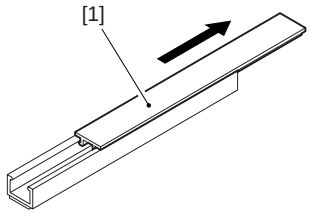
4) Install the MFP antenna [1] at the position shown in the figure.

The installing position shown in the figure is recommended.
Do not install it at positions that may affect the operating portions of the host machine or hinder opening/closing operations.



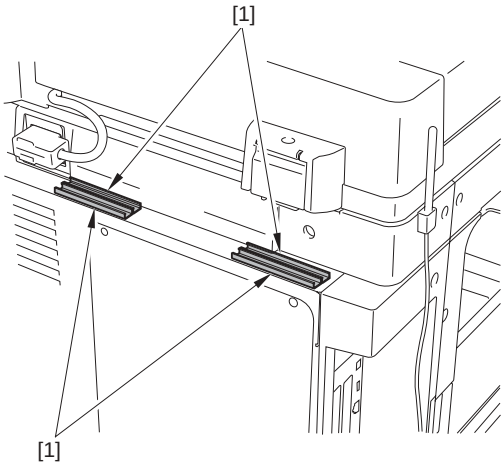
F-2-212

5) Remove the covers [1] of the 4 cord guides.



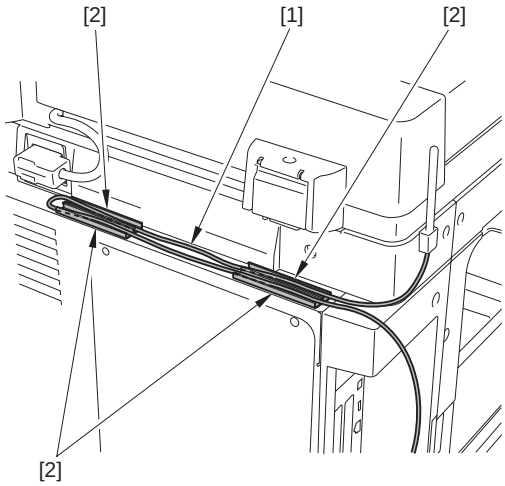
F-2-213

6) Remove the release papers of the 4 cord guides [1] and install them to the positions shown in the figure.



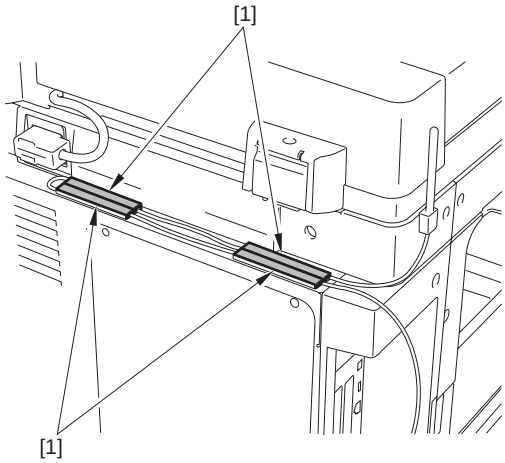
F-2-214

7) Route the cable [1] of the MFP antenna through the 4 cord guides [2].



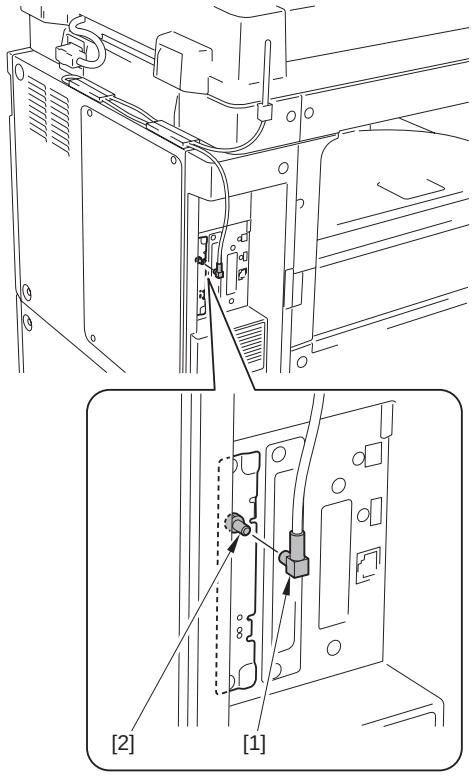
F-2-215

8) Install the 4 cord guide covers [1].



F-2-216

9) Connect the cable [1] of the MFP antenna to the terminal [2] of the wireless LAN board.



F-2-217

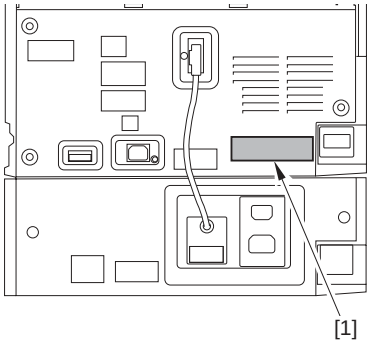
10) Insert the power plug into the power outlet.
11) Turn on the main power switch.
12) Check to see that the wireless LAN board is recognized.
Enter service mode.
COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS > PCI to 2
hen 'Wireless LAN Board' is displayed, the wireless LAN board is correctly recognized.

2. User data list output
Output the user data list in order to check that the wireless LAN has been recognised.
1) Select: [Additional Functions] > [Report Settings] > [Extension Card] in the Print List > [User Data List].
2) After a message is displayed, select 'Yes' to output the user data list.

2.17.5 Attaching the Label

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Attach the Wireless LAN display label[1] as shown in the figure.



F-2-218

2.18 Installing the IPSec Board

2.18.1 Notice At Installation

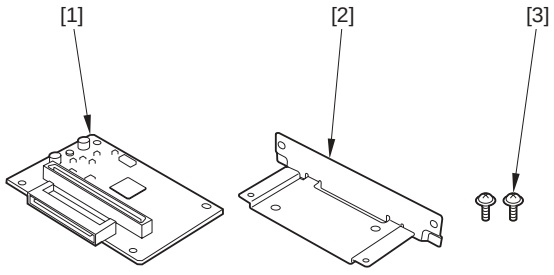
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> Install this equipment after installing the Expansion Bus.

2.18.2 Checking the Contents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<IPSec Board-A1>



F-2-219

[1]	IPSec Board	1pc.
[2]	IP board support plate	1pc.
[3]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	2pc.

2.18.3 Turning OFF the Power of the Host Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

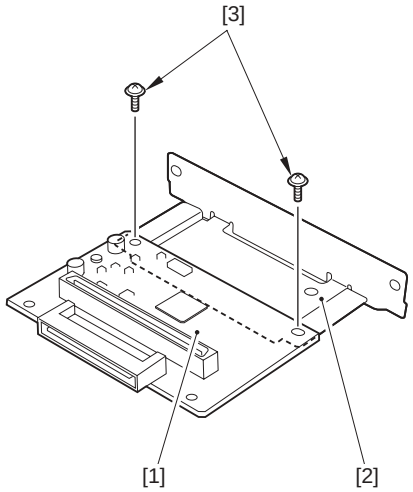
Be sure to refer to "Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power" in installation of the host machine.

2.18.4 Installation Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

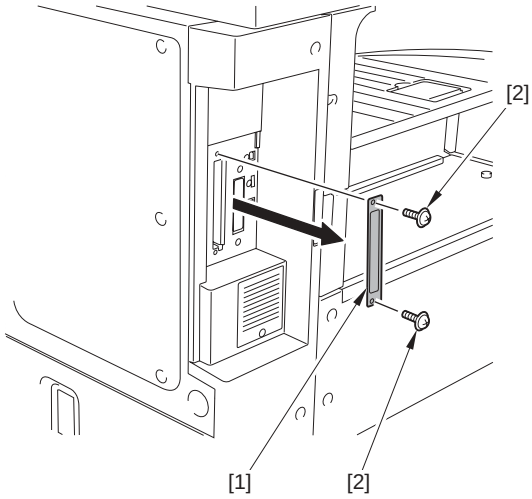
1. Installation Procedure

1) Install the IP board support plate [2] to the IPSec board [1].
- 2 screws (TP; M3X6) [3]



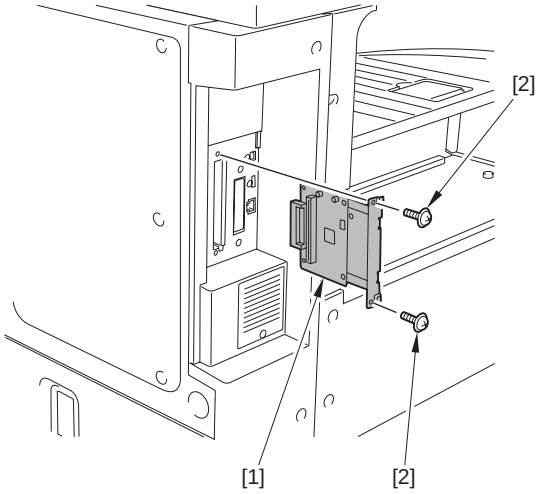
F-2-220

2) Remove the face plate [1]. (Do not use the removed face plate.)
- 2 screws [2]



F-2-221

3) Install the IPSec board [1] to the host machine.
- 2 screws [2] (Use the screw removed in step 2.)



F-2-222

4) Insert the power plug into the power outlet.
5) Turn on the main power switch.

2. Checking After Installation

1) Check to see that the IPSec board is recognized.
Service mode >COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS > PCI
When 'IPsec Board' is displayed, the IPSec board is correctly recognized.

Chapter 3 Basic Operation

Contents

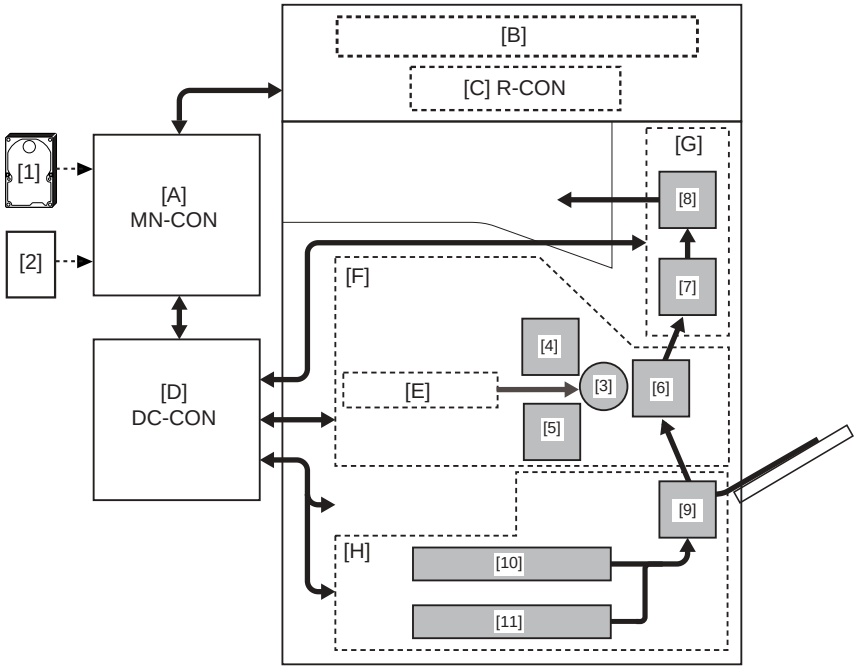
3.1 Construction 3-1
3.1.1 Functional Construction 3-1
3.1.2 Connecting the Main PCBs 3-2
3.2 Basic Sequence 3-3
3.2.1 Basic Sequence of Operation at Power-On 3-3

3.1 Construction

3.1.1 Functional Construction

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine may broadly be divided into the following functional blocks: general control system, original exposure system, reader control system, printer control system, laser exposure system, image formation system, pickup/feed system, fixing/delivery system.
For detailed discussions of the individual blocks, see the chapters that follow.



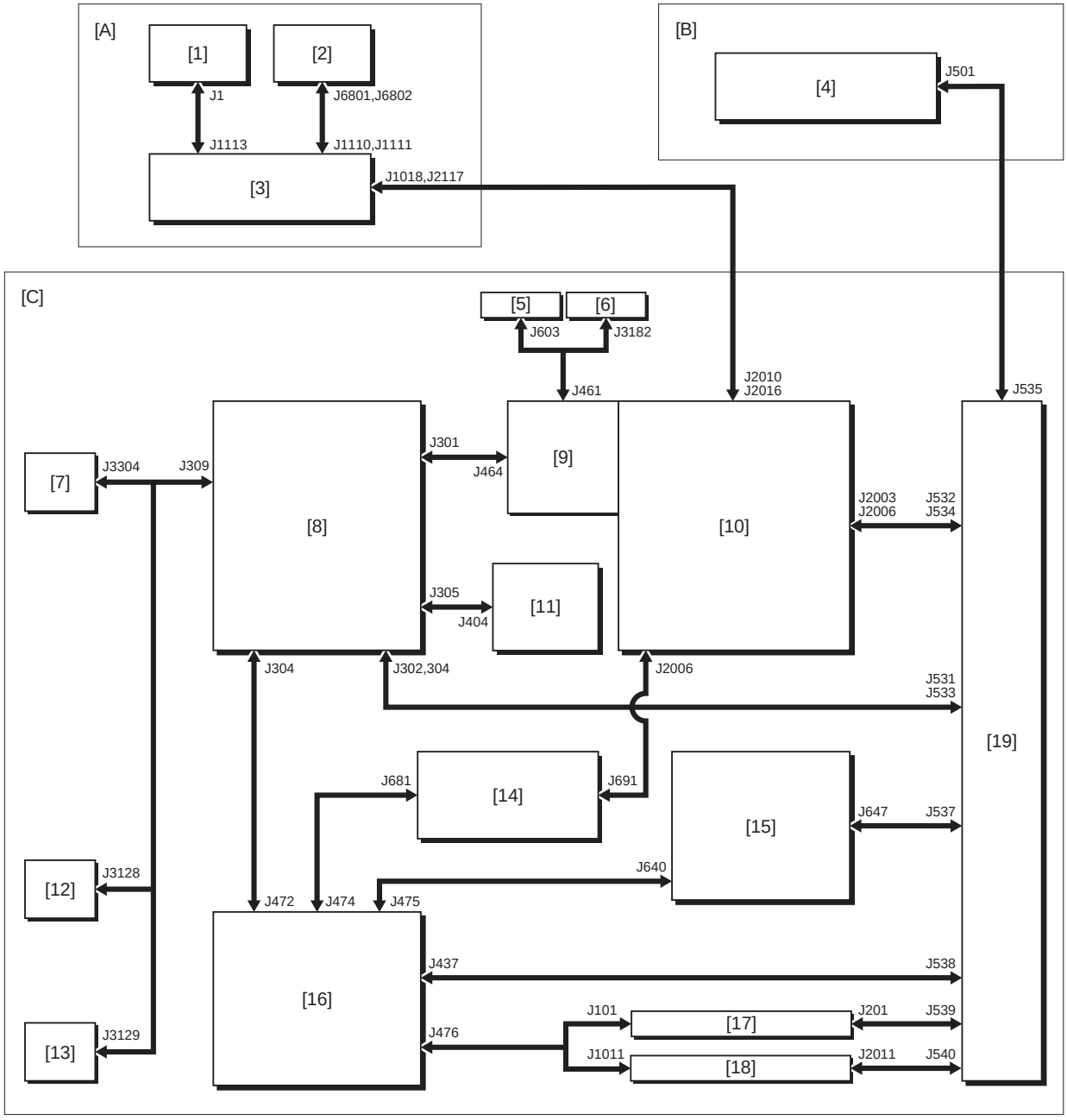
F-3-1

T-3-1

[A] General Control System	[1] HDD
main controller PCB	[2] accessories PCB
[B] Original Exposure System	[3] photosensitive drum
[C] reader Control System	[4] charging
reader controller PCB	[5] developing
[D] Printer Control System	[6] transfer
DC controller PCB	[7] fixing
[E] Laser Exposure System	[8] delivery/reversal/duplex assembly
[F] Image Formation System	[9] pickup control
[G] Fixing/Delivery System	[10] cassette 1
[H] Pickup/Feed System	[11] cassette 2

3.1.2 Connecting the Main PCBs

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-3-2

[A] Control panel [B] Reader part [C] Printer part

[1]	Control panel inverter PCB	[11]	High-voltage power supply PCB
[2]	Control panel keypad PCB	[12]	Cassette 1 size detection PCB
[3]	Control panel CPU PCB	[13]	Cassette 2 size detection PCB
[4]	Reader controller PCB	[14]	All-night power supply PCB
[5]	BD PCB	[15]	Option power supply PCB
[6]	Laser driver PCB	[16]	AC driver PCB
[7]	Manual feeder paper size sensor PCB	[17]	24V power supply PCB
[8]	DC controller PCB	[18]	12V power supply PCB
[9]	Image PCB	[19]	Relay PCB
[10]	Main controller PCB		

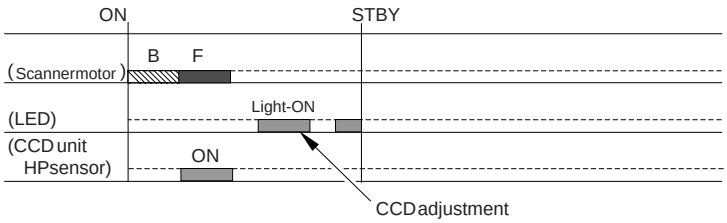
MEMO:
The arrows in the diagram indicate the connection between the PCBs, not the directions of signals.

3.2 Basic Sequence

3.2.1 Basic Sequence of Operation at Power-On

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1. Reader Unit



F-3-3

Footnote
- F: Scanner motor moves forward (toward right).
- B: Scanner motor moves backward (toward left).
- Light-ON: LED on CCD unit lights-on.
- ON: When CCD unit HP sensor (photo interrupter type) detects.

2. Printer Unit

If any of the cassettes (1 through 4) is in low position, the lifter is moved up until the top of the stack of sheets is detected.

Chapter 4 Main Controller

Contents

4.1 Construction 4-1
4.1.1 Construction and Mechanisms 4-1
4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry 4-3
4.2.1 Main Controller PCB 4-3
4.2.2 HDD 4-4
4.3 Start-Up Sequence 4-6
4.3.1 Overview 4-6
4.4 Shut-Down Sequence 4-7
4.4.1 Overview 4-7
4.4.2 Flow of Operation 4-7
4.5 Image Processing 4-8
4.5.1 Construction of the Image Processing Module 4-8
4.5.2 Reader Unit Input Image Processing 4-8
4.5.3 Compression/Extension/Editing Block 4-9
4.5.4 Printer unit Output Image Processing 4-9
4.6 Flow of Image Data 4-10
4.6.1 Flow of Image Data According to Copy Functions 4-10
4.6.2 Flow of Image Data for the Box Function 4-10
4.6.3 Flow of Image Data for the SEND Function 4-11
4.6.4 Flow of Image Data for the Fax Transmission 4-11
4.6.5 Flow of Image Data for the Fax Reception Function 4-12
4.6.6 Flow of Image Data for the PDL Function 4-12
4.7 Parts Replacement Procedure 4-13
4.7.1 Image PCB 4-13
4.7.1.1 Removing the Image PCB 4-13
4.7.2 Main Controller PCB 4-13
4.7.2.1 Before Removing the Main Controller PCB 4-13
4.7.2.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB 4-13
4.7.3 SDRAM 4-14
4.7.3.1 Removing the SDRAM (for image processing) 4-14
4.7.3.2 Removing the SDRAM (for system processing) 4-15
4.7.4 HDD 4-15
4.7.4.1 Removing the HDD 4-15
4.7.5 Wireless LAN PCB 4-15
4.7.5.1 Removing the Wireless LAN PCB 4-15
4.7.6 IPSec PCB 4-16
4.7.6.1 Removing the IPSec PCB 4-16
4.7.7 PCI Bus Expansion PCB 4-17
4.7.7.1 Before Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB 4-17
4.7.7.2 Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB 4-17
4.7.8 Voice Guidance PCB 4-17
4.7.8.1 Removing the Voice Guidance PCB 4-17
4.7.9 Voice Operation PCB 4-18
4.7.9.1 Removing the Voice Operation PCB 4-18
4.7.10 FAX Expansion PCB 4-19
4.7.10.1 Removing the FAX Expansion PCB 4-19

4.1 Construction

4.1.1 Construction and Mechanisms

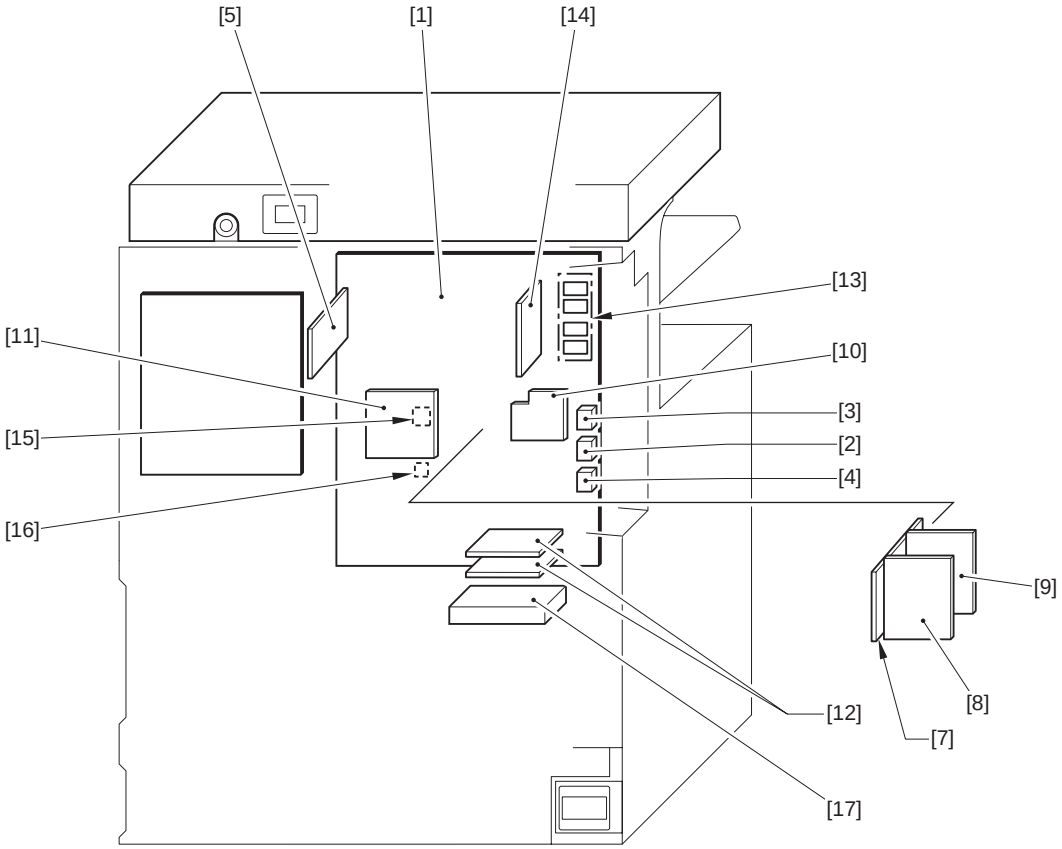
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The main controller unit of the equipment is constructed of and functions with the following items.

T-4-1

No.	Item	Details
[1]	main controller PCB	system control/memory control/printer unit output image processing control, reader unit input image processing, rendering processing, color LCD controller, card reader interface, image processing for FAX, etc.
[2]	USB connector (device)	USB2.0 device I/F
[3]	USB connector (host)	USB2.0 host I/F
[4]	Ethernet connector (10/100BASE-T/1000BASE-T*1)	Ethernet interface *1: When using 1000BASE-T, be sure to use the twisted pair cable for enhanced category 5 (CAT5e).
[5]	image PCB	Controls the laser scanner
[6]	HDD	Stores system software Saves BOX/FAX image data Capacity; 60 GB
[7]	PCI bus expansion PCB (option)	Main controller PCB and relay PCB for the following PCBs - wireless LAN PCB (connected to the front connector) - IPsec PCB (connected to the rear connector)
[8]	wireless LAN PCB (option)	Communication of wireless communication data
[9]	IPsec PCB (option)	Encrypts packets of internet protocol (IP)
[10]	voice guidance PCB/voice operation PCB (option)	Input and output of voice data * Cannot install them together.
[11]	FAX expansion PCB (option)	Communication of FAX data
[12]	SDRAM for system processing	Temporary saving of system files Capacity; 512 MB (option, maximum 1 G by increasing the memory)
[13]	SDRAM for image processing (standard)	Temporary saving of image data Capacity; 256 MB
[14]	SDRAM for image processing (option)	Temporary saving of image data. Installs it for color scan (SEND). Capacity; 512 MB
[15]	BootROM (on-board)	Stores BOOT program.*2
[16]	BIOS ROM (on-board)	Stores BIOS program.
[17]	HDD	Stores system software. Saves BOX/FAX image data. Capacity; 60 GB

*2 The boot program of the main CPU (IC51) is stored in HDD.



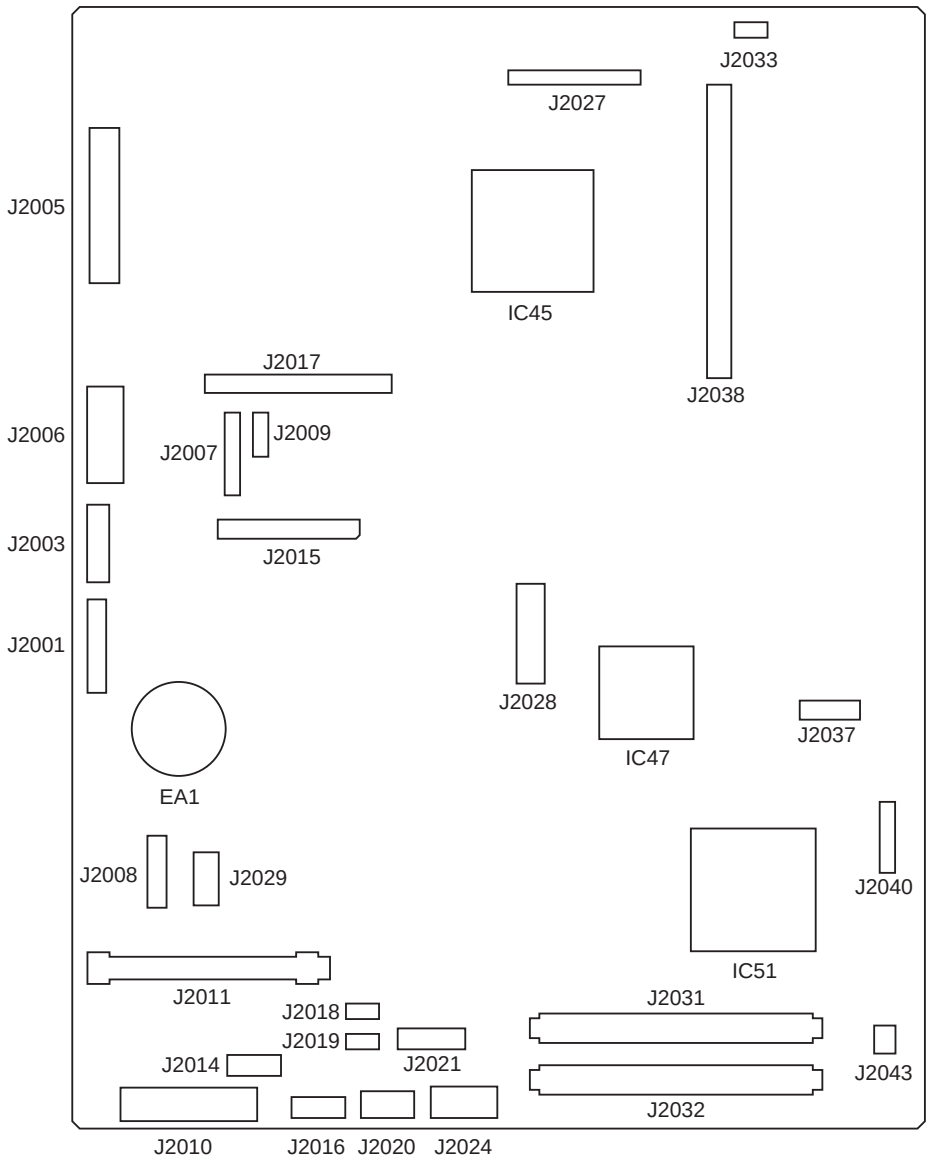
F-4-1

4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry

4.2.1 Main Controller PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Main controls of the main controller PCB for each connector are described below.



F-4-2

T-4-2

Connector No/IC	Functions
J2001	for development
J2003	power supply/software ID communication cable connector
J2005	image PCB slot
J2006	power supply (12V/all-night 3V) connector
J2007	for development
J2008	memory PCB slot
J2009	for development
J2010	control panel CPU PCB slot
J2011	SRAM PCB slot
J2014	HDD connector (data)
J2015	FAX expansion PCB slot
J2016	Control panel USB connector
J2017	Minerva board connector
J2018	for development
J2019	for development
J2020	coin vender connector
J2021	card reader connector

Connector No/IC	Functions
J2024	HDD connector (power supply)
J2027	reader controller PCB connector
J2028	PCI bus expansion PCB slot
J2029	for connecting the V6-FLASH PCB
J2031	SDRAM (for system processing) slot (option)
J2032	SDRAM (for system processing) slot
J2033	connector for serial communication (for development)
J2037	voice guidance PCB/voice operation PCB slot
J2038	SDRAM (for image processing) slot
J2040	for debug (for development)
J2043	controller fan connector
CPU (IC45)	color image processing, JBIG/JPEG image data compression/extension, scanner/printer IF, USB (H)/(D) -IF, SDRAM (for image processing) controller, RIP (convert PostScript data into bitmap data available for printing and display)
CPU (IC47)	PCI (PCI bus) IF, serial ATA IF, USB2.0 Host I/F, RTC (real-time clock), Audio I/F
CPU (IC51)	LCD controller, SDRAM (J2031/2032) controller, main CPU

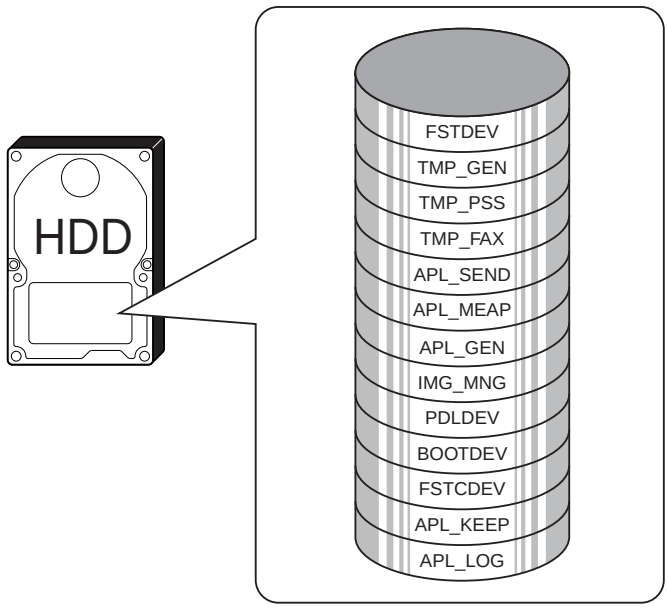
4.2.2 HDD

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The HDD is divided into 13 partitions (blocks), each assigned with specific functions.

T-4-3

Partition	Description
FSTDEV	Collects compressed image data.
TMP_GEN	Stores temporary files, log data.
TMP_PSS	PDL spool
TMP_FAX	Ensures fax reception.
APL_SEND	Stores user data (address book, transfer settings).
APL_MEAP	Stores MEAP applications.
APL_GEN	Mode memory data, standard mode data History (e.g., print job history) iFax image data Fax image data Other
IMG_MNG	Stores file management table, profile.
PDL_DEV	Stores PDL font, etc.
BOOTDEV	Stores execution module, message data file, RUI content, etc.
FSTCDEV	Chasing (not used)
APL_KEEP	Stores non-initialized data
APL_LOG	Stores LOG for development

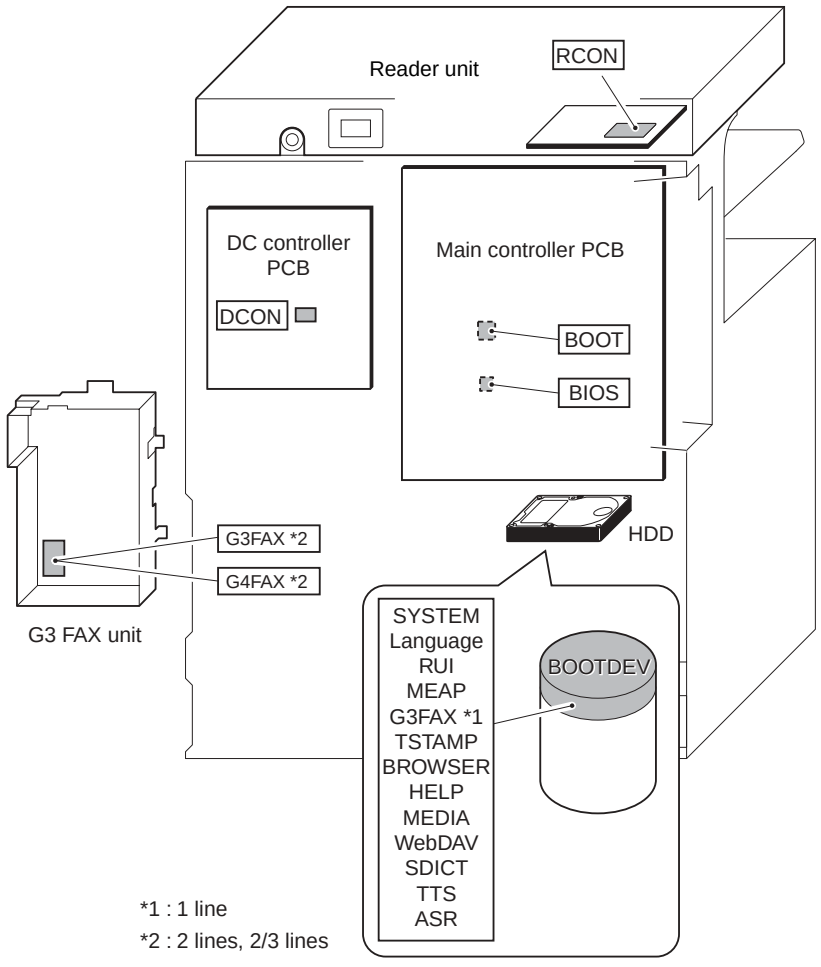


F-4-3

The following shows system software configuration of this machine:

T-4-4

System Software	Function	Storage location	Remarks
System	Module for system (overall control)	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
Language	Module for language (LCD display control)	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
RUI	Module for Remote UI	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
Boot*	Initializes sub CPU (IC45)	BOOTROM	* Upgrading in the field is not available
BIOS*	Initializes main CPU (IC51)	BIOSROM	* Upgrading in the field is not available
G3FAX	Controls G3Fax (for 2 lines, for 2/3 lines)	G3 FAX PCB	DIMM (on Fax board) 2 lines, 2/3 lines
	Controls G3Fax (for 1 line)	HDD (BOOTDEV)	1 line
G4FAX	Controls G4Fax	G4 FAX PCB	DIMM (on Fax board)
Dcon	Controls DC controller	DC controller PCB	Mask ROM (Soldered)
Rcon	Controls reader controller	Reader controller PCB	Flash ROM (Soldered)
Meapcont	Controls MEAP application	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
TSTAMP	Module for PDF transmission with electrical signature	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
BROWSER	Module for image display of WEB browser	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
HELP	Module for image display of Easy NAVI	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
MEDIA	Module for paper description to be selected on UI	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
WebDAV	Module for WebDAV	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
SDICT	Module for dictionary to convert character code (OCR process)	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
TTS	Module for voice dictionary (data)	HDD (BOOTDEV)	
ASR	Module for voice recognition	HDD (BOOTDEV)	



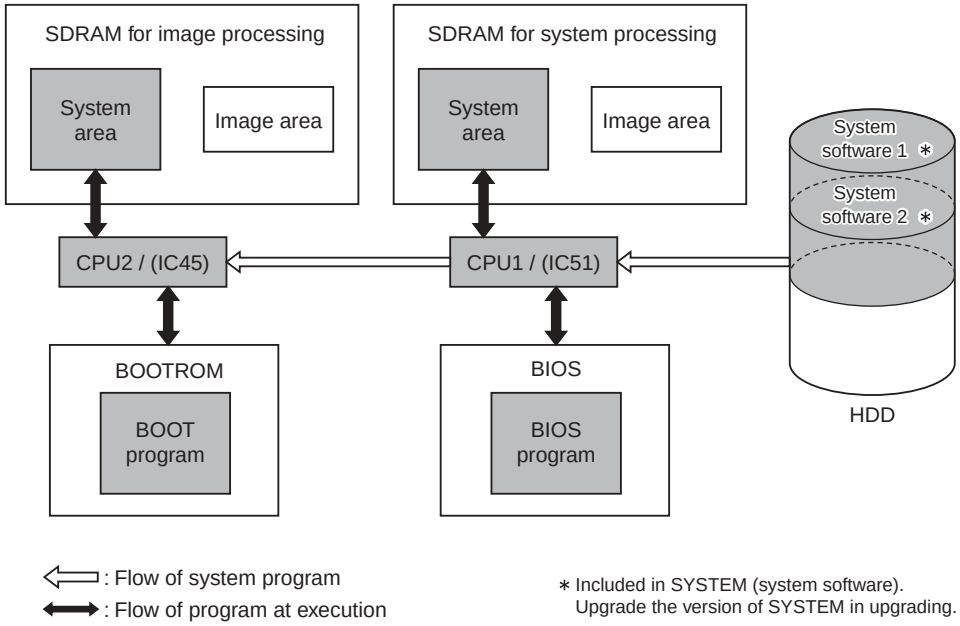
F-4-4

4.3 Start-Up Sequence

4.3.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

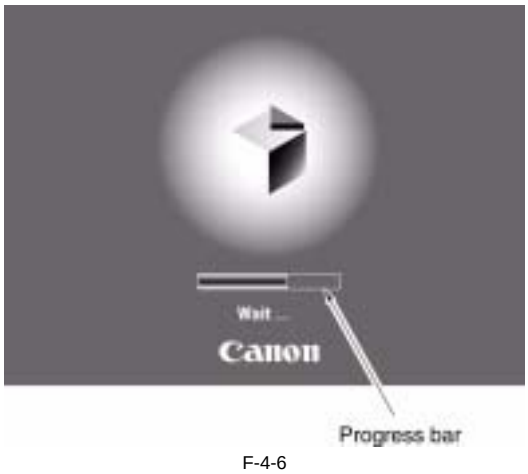
The system software that controls the equipment is installed on HDD.
There are two types of system software; system software 1 for CPU1 (IC51), system software 2 for CPU2 (IC45).
When the host machine is started, the CPU1 loads the BIOS program in BIOS to the SDRAM for system processing, and then loads the system software 1 and the system software 2 from HDD to the SDRAM for system processing. After that, the CPU 1 executes the system software 1.
The CPU2 requests the system software 2 to the CPU1 according to the BOOT program in the BOOTROM.
The system software 2 is transferred from the SDRAM for system processing to the SDRAM for image processing, and then executed.



F-4-5
T-4-5

MEMO:
The boot program (included in system program 1) of the CPU1 (IC51) is stored in HDD.

While the CPU1 or the CPU2 is reading system software from HDD to SDRAM and executing start-up sequence including hardware initialization, the following screen is displayed, where the progress bar indicates the progress status.



F-4-6

⚠
HDD is accessed while the progress bar is being displayed. Never turn off the main power.
If the main power is turned off, a fault in HDD (E602) may occur.

4.4 Shut-Down Sequence

4.4.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

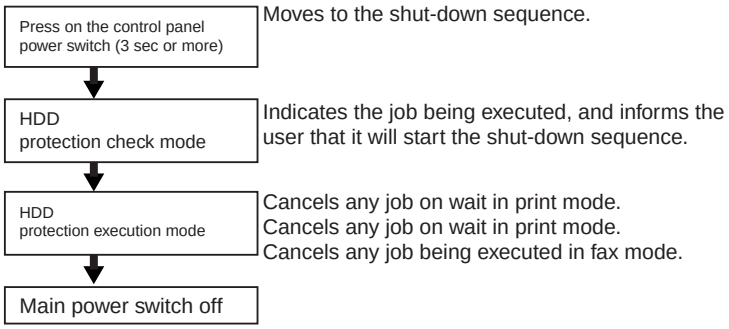
If the main power switch is turned off while the machine is accessing its HDD, damage can well occur on the HDD.
To avoid such damage, the machine is provided with a shut-down sequence.

> **MEMO:**
> When turning OFF the power of the host machine, be sure to press the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more, and then select “Execute” key on the shutdown sequence screen. There is no need to turn OFF the main power switch.

4.4.2 Flow of Operation

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following diagram shows the flow of shut-down operation:



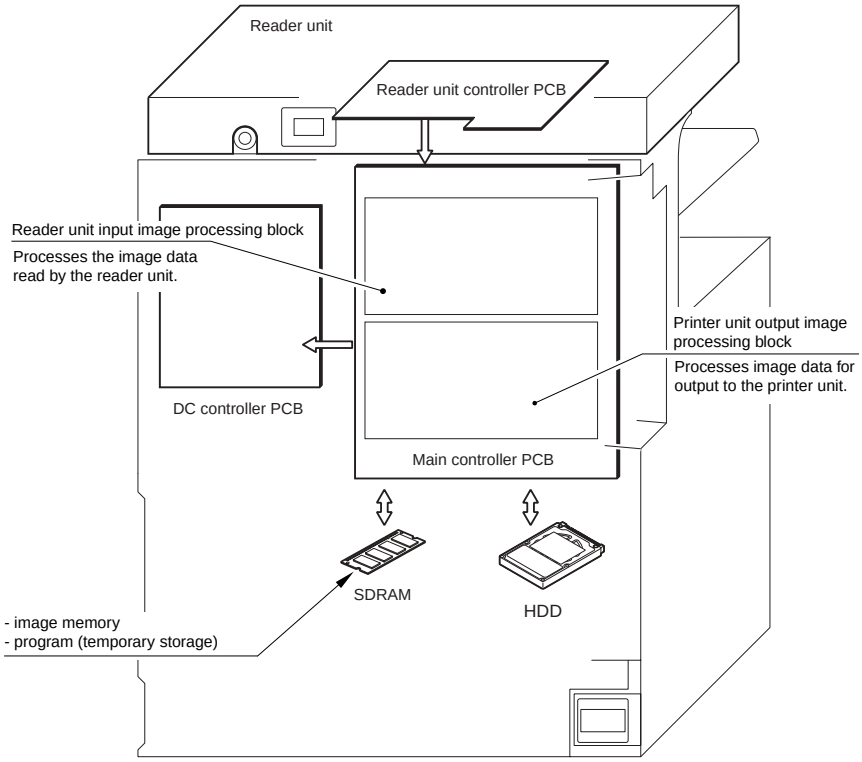
F-4-7

4.5 Image Processing

4.5.1 Construction of the Image Processing Module

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine's major image processing is executed by the main controller PCB.
The following shows the construction of the modules associated with image processing:

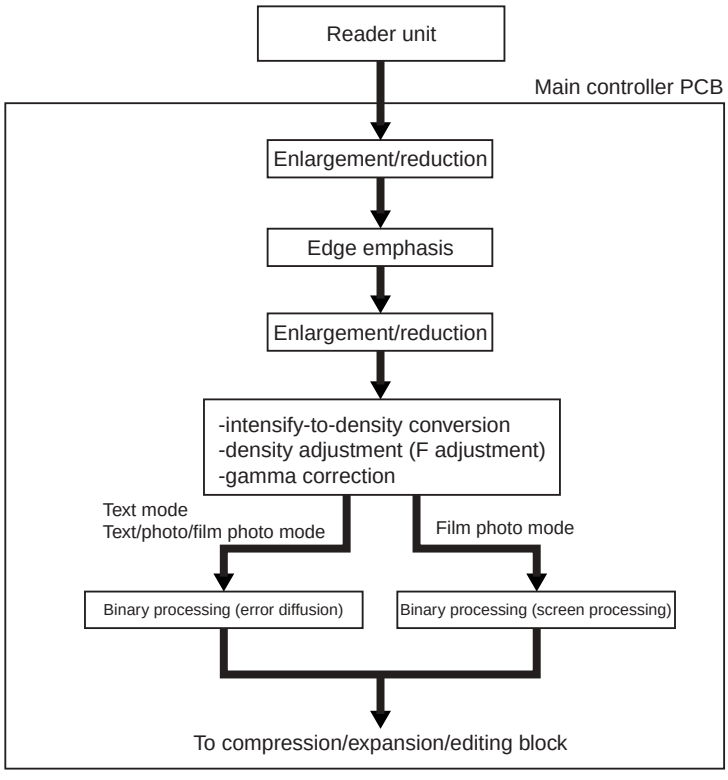


F-4-8

4.5.2 Reader Unit Input Image Processing

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The image data read by the CCD unit is processed by the main controller PCB.

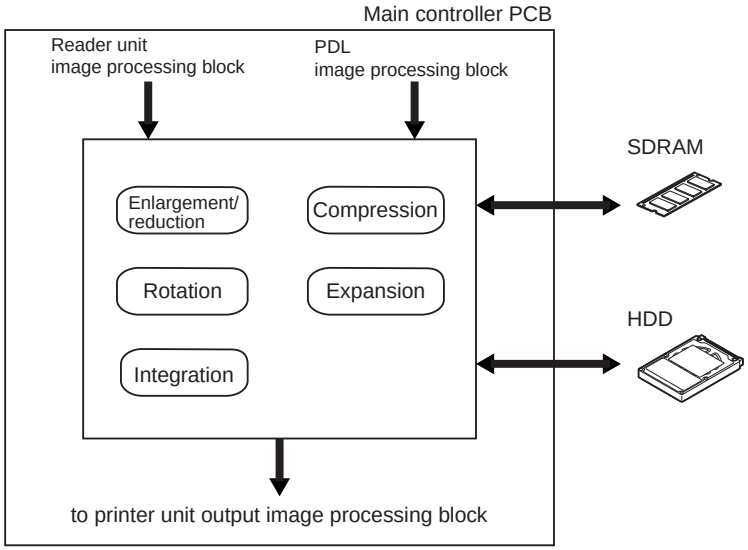


F-4-9

4.5.3 Compression/Extension/Editing Block

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Here, image data is processed for compression, extension, and editing.

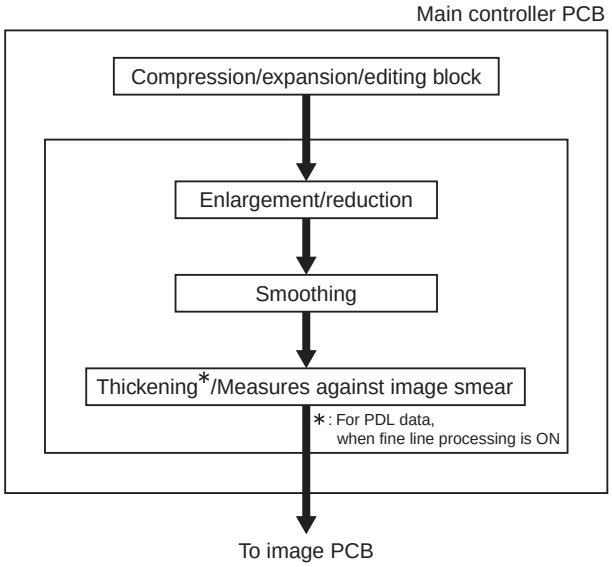


F-4-10

4.5.4 Printer unit Output Image Processing

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The main controller processes the image data coming from the reader unit for output to the printer unit.



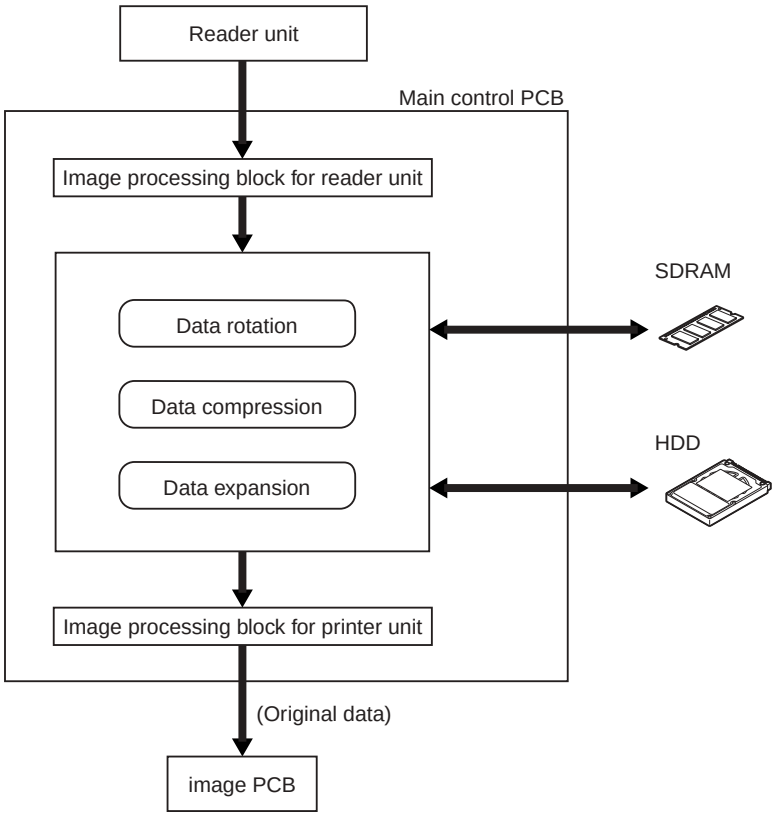
F-4-11

4.6 Flow of Image Data

4.6.1 Flow of Image Data According to Copy Functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is the flow of image data when the Copy Function is in use:

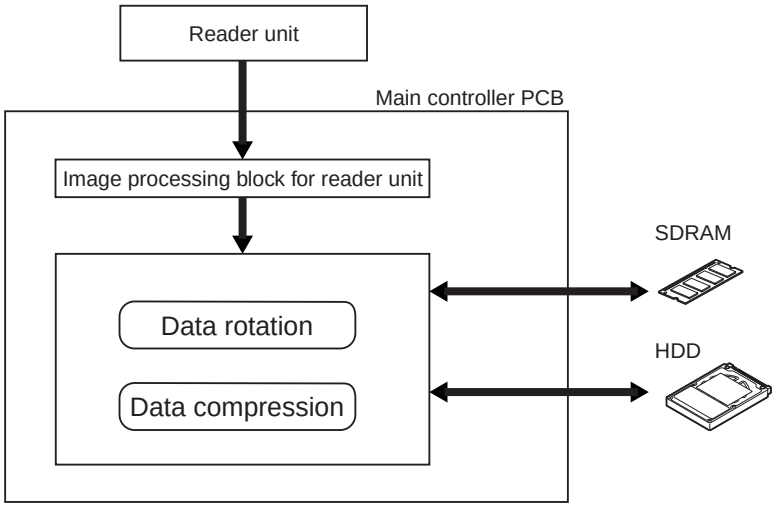


F-4-12

4.6.2 Flow of Image Data for the Box Function

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is the flow of image data when the Box function is in use:

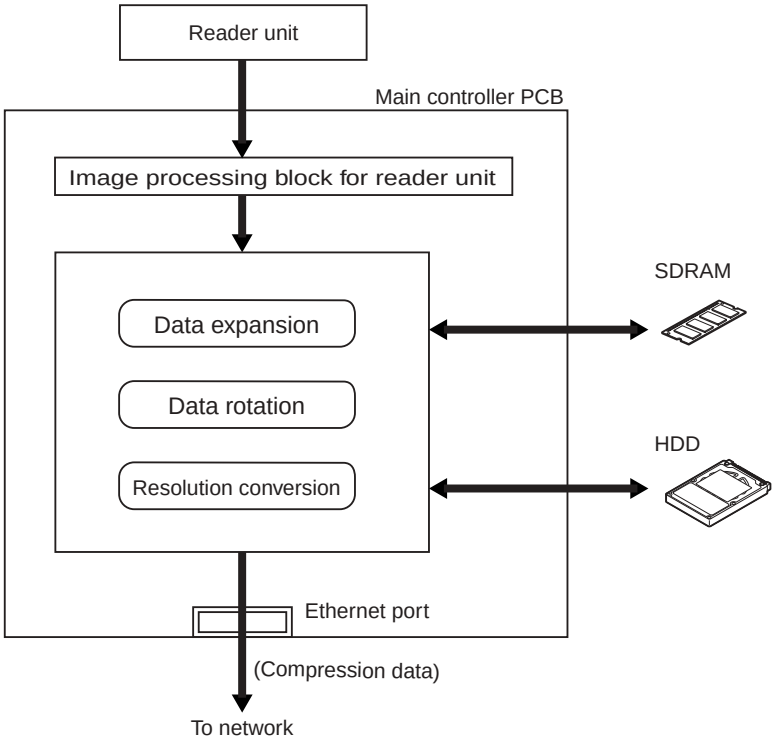


F-4-13

4.6.3 Flow of Image Data for the SEND Function

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is the flow of image data when the SEND function is in use:

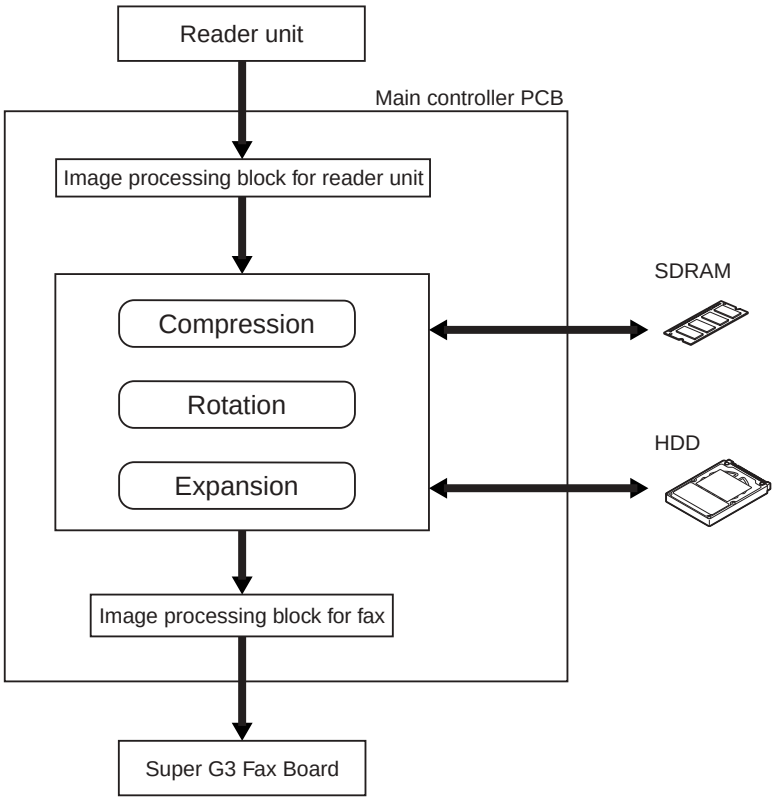


F-4-14

4.6.4 Flow of Image Data for the Fax Transmission

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is the flow of image data when the fax transmission function is in use:

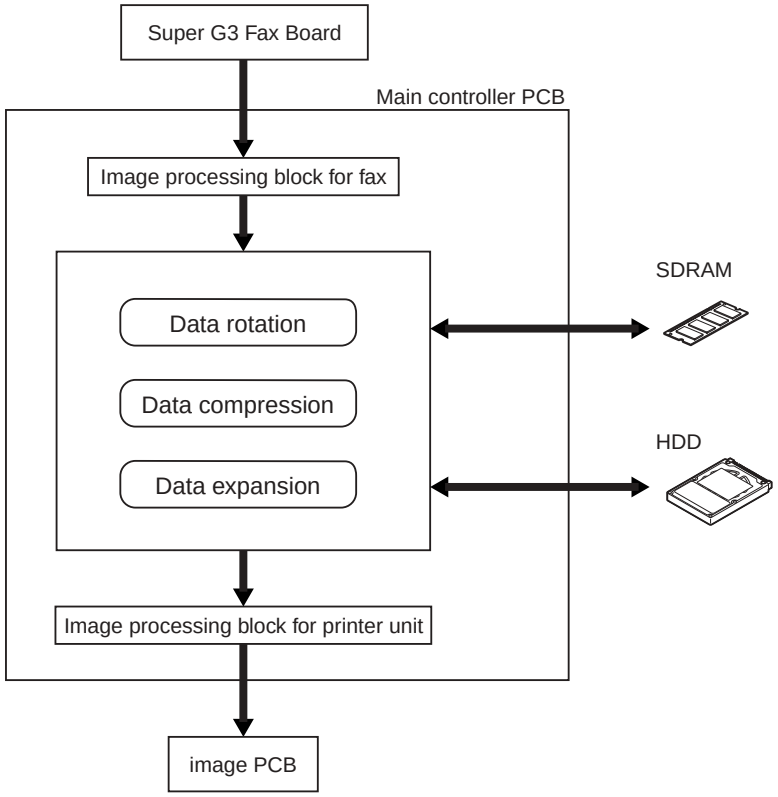


F-4-15

4.6.5 Flow of Image Data for the Fax Reception Function

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is the flow of image data when the fax reception function is in use:

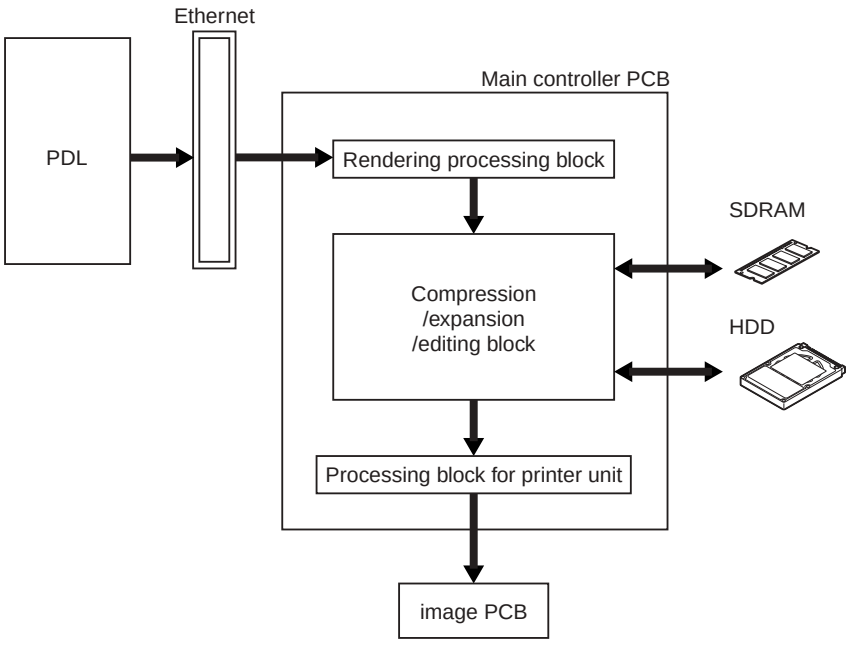


F-4-16

4.6.6 Flow of Image Data for the PDL Function

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following is the flow of image data when the PDL function is in use:



F-4-17

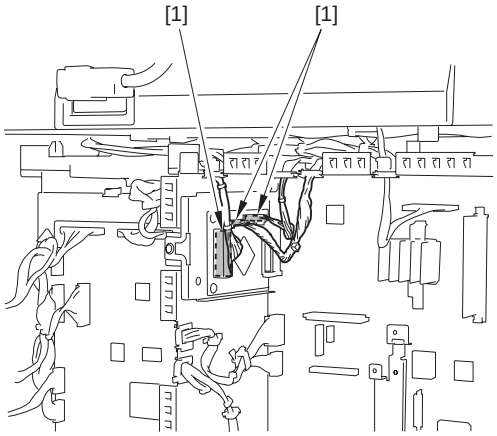
4.7 Parts Replacement Procedure

4.7.1 Image PCB

4.7.1.1 Removing the Image PCB

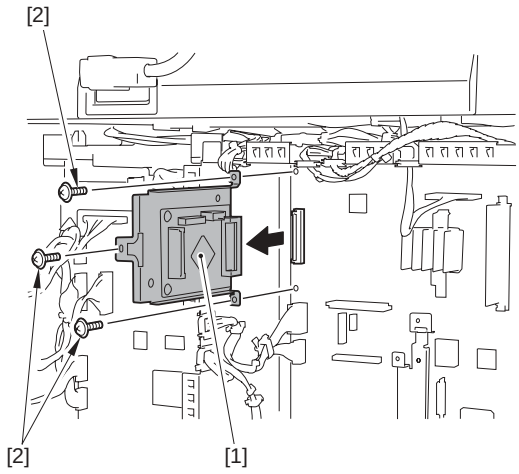
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Disconnect the 3 connectors [1].



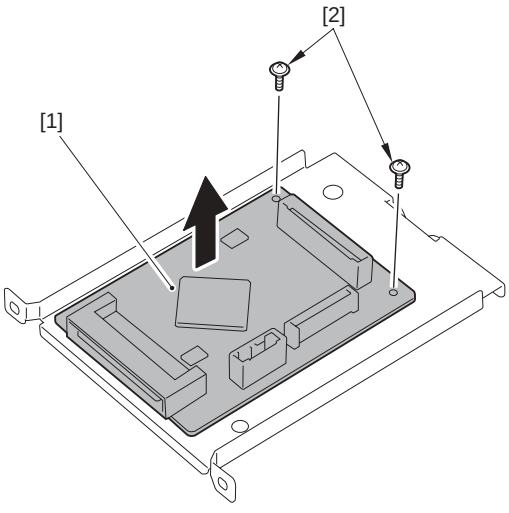
F-4-18

3) Remove the image PCB unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-4-19

4) Remove the image PCB [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-4-20

4.7.2 Main Controller PCB

4.7.2.1 Before Removing the Main Controller PCB

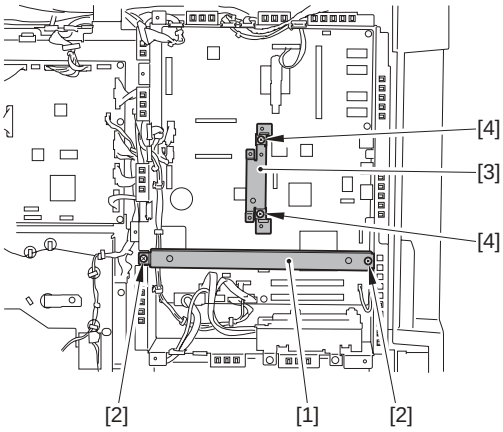
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the image PCB unit. (page 4-13)[Removing the Image PCB]
3) Remove the wireless LAN PCB as needed. (page 4-15)[Removing the Wireless LAN PCB]
4) Remove the IPSec PCB as needed. (page 4-16)[Removing the IPSec PCB]
5) Remove the PCI bus expansion PCB unit as needed. (page 4-17)[Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB]
6) Remove the voice guidance PCB or the voice operation PCB as needed. (page 4-17)[Removing the Voice Guidance PCB] (page 4-18)[Removing the Voice Operation PCB]
7) Remove the FAX expansion PCB as needed. (page 4-19)[Removing the FAX Expansion PCB]

4.7.2.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB

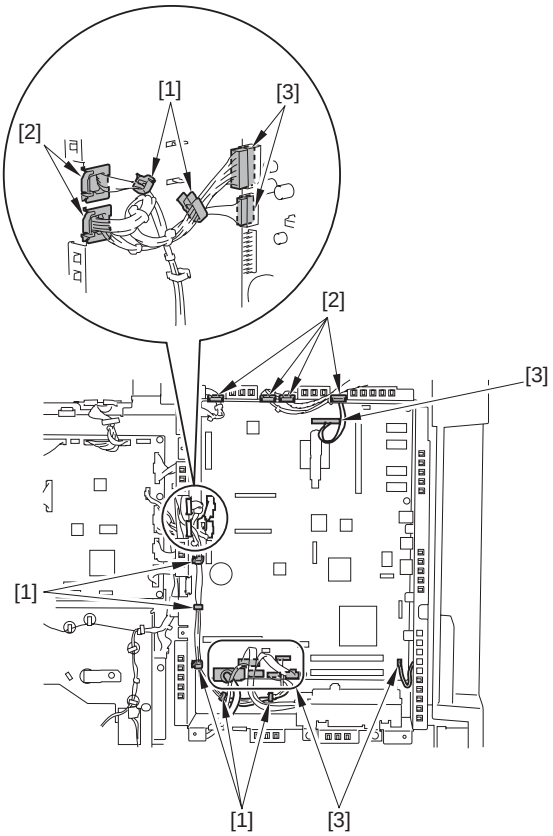
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]
2) Remove the plate [3].
- 2 screws [4]



F-4-21

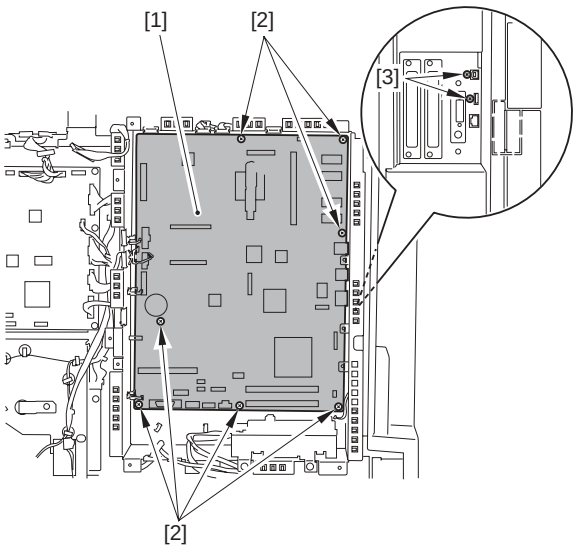
3) Remove the following parts.
- 7 wire saddles [1]
- 6 edge saddles [2] (7 pcs. when the fax unit is mounted)
- 10 connectors [3]



F-4-22

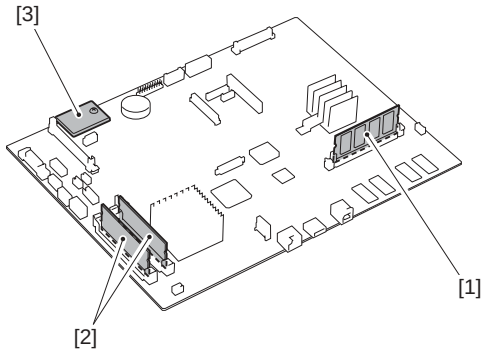
4) Remove the main controller PCB [1].
- 7 screws [2]
- 2 screws [3]

The card spacer may be installed on the main controller PCB when a option is mounted. In such cases, be sure to remove all card spacers.



F-4-23

5) Remove the following parts from the main controller PCB as needed.
- SDRAM (for image processing) [1]
- SDRAM (for system processing) [2]
- Memory PCB [3] (1 screw)



F-4-24

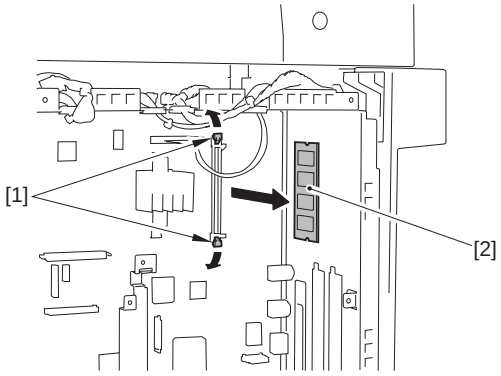
Points to Note When Replacing the Main Controller PCB
Be sure to install the parts removed here to the new main controller PCB.

4.7.3 SDRAM

4.7.3.1 Removing the SDRAM (for image processing)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Release the 2 levers [1] and remove the SDRAM (for image processing) [2].

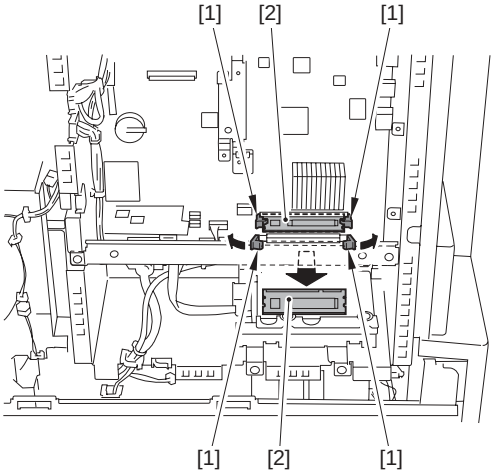


F-4-25

4.7.3.2 Removing the SDRAM (for system processing)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Release the 2 levers [1] and remove the SDRAM (for system processing) [2].



F-4-26

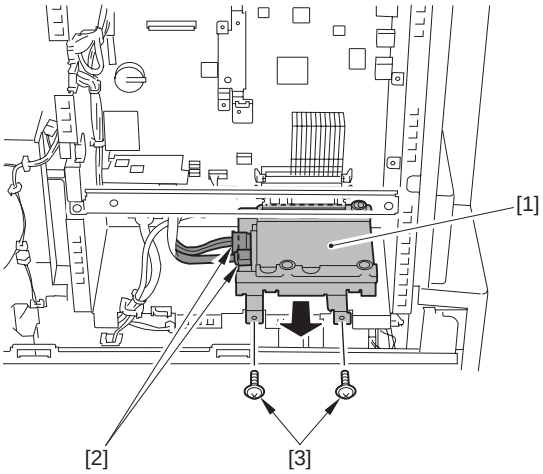
4.7.4 HDD

4.7.4.1 Removing the HDD

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Take care not to cause a breakage due to electrostatic discharge.
- Take care not to damage the HDD.

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the HDD unit [1].
   - 2 screws [2]
   - 2 connectors [3]



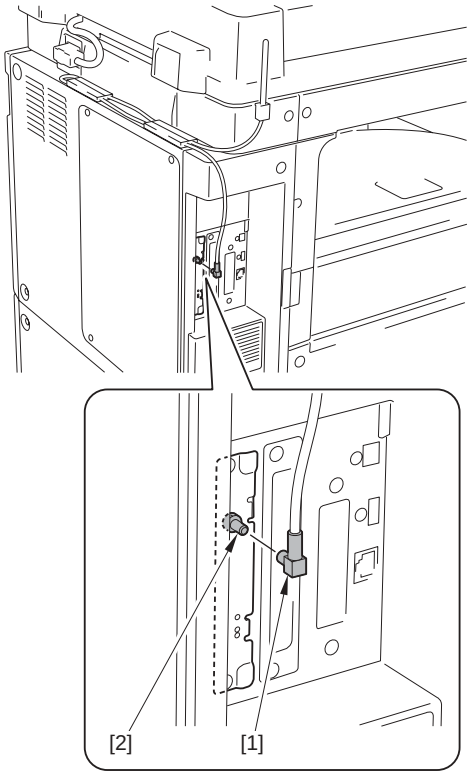
F-4-27

4.7.5 Wireless LAN PCB

4.7.5.1 Removing the Wireless LAN PCB

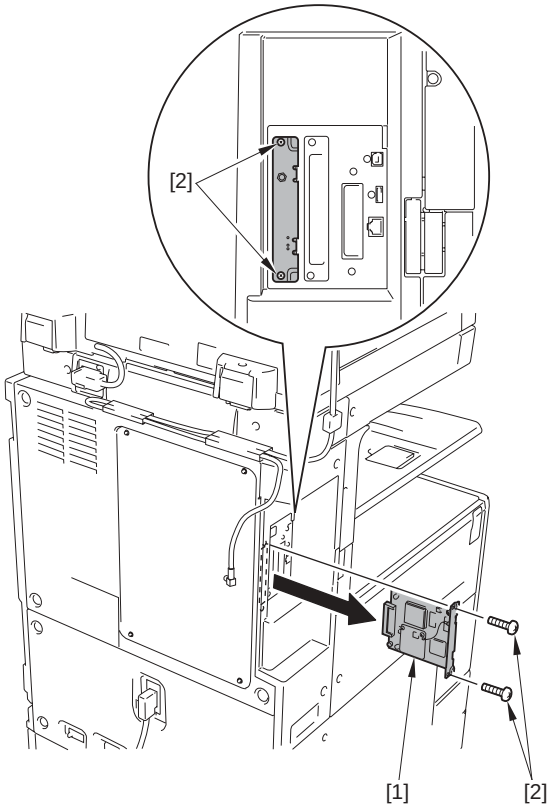
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Free the antenna cable [1] from the terminal [2].



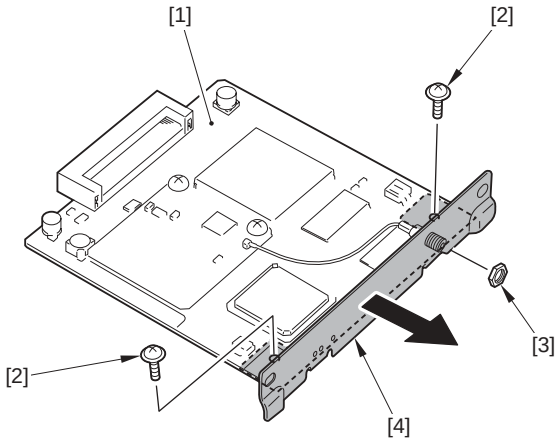
F-4-28

2) Pull out the wireless LAN PCB unit [1].
   - 2 screws [2]



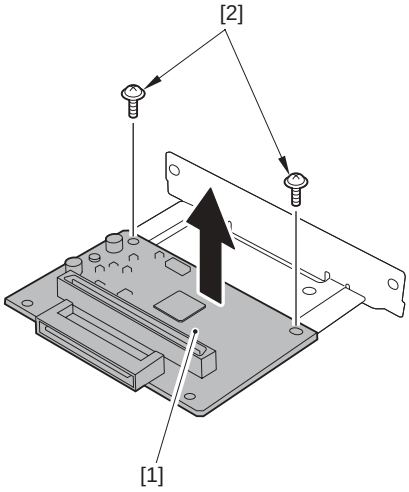
F-4-29

3) Remove the wireless LAN PCB [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 1 hex nut [3]
- 1 plate [4]



F-4-30

2) Remove the IPSec PCB [1].
- 2 screws [2]



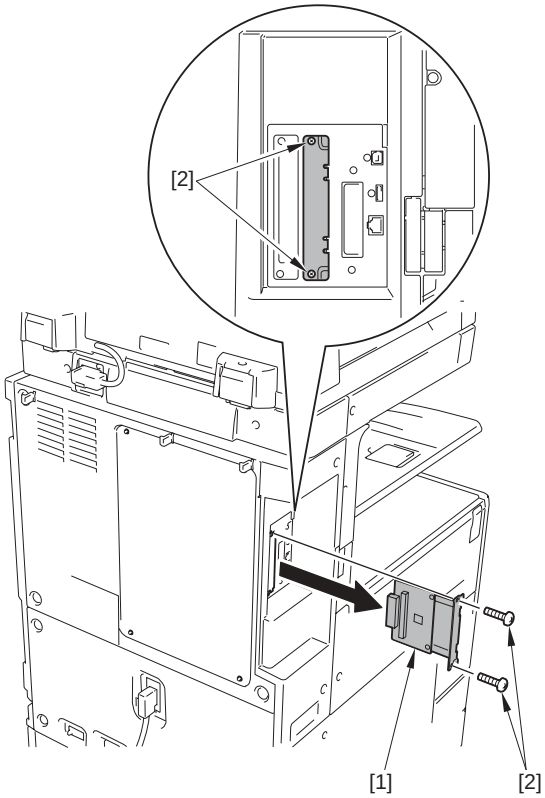
F-4-32

4.7.6 IPSec PCB

4.7.6.1 Removing the IPSec PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Pull out the IPSec PCB unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-4-31

4.7.7 PCI Bus Expansion PCB

4.7.7.1 Before Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB

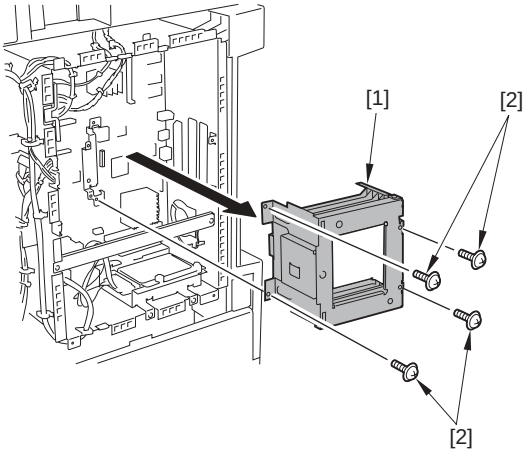
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the wireless LAN PCB as needed. (page 4-15)[Removing the Wireless LAN PCB]
3) Remove the IPSec PCB as needed. (page 4-16)[Removing the IPSec PCB]

4.7.7.2 Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB

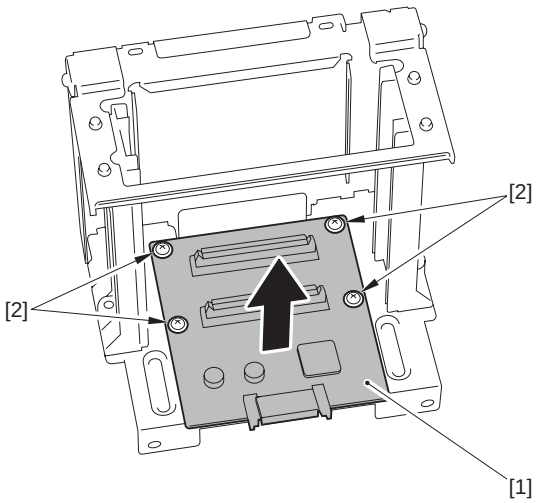
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the PCI bus expansion PCB unit [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-4-33

2) Remove the PCI bus expansion PCB [1].
- 4 screws [2]



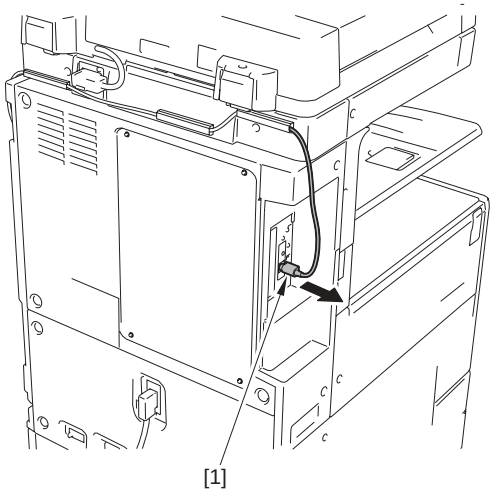
F-4-34

4.7.8 Voice Guidance PCB

4.7.8.1 Removing the Voice Guidance PCB

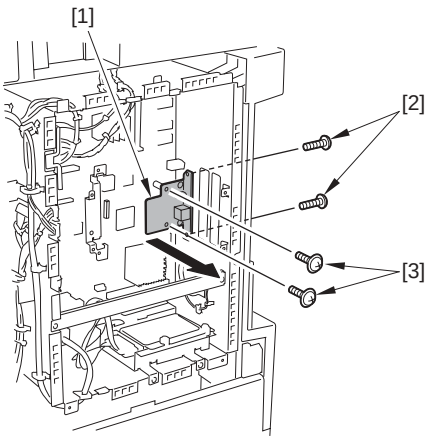
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the terminal [1] of the cable.



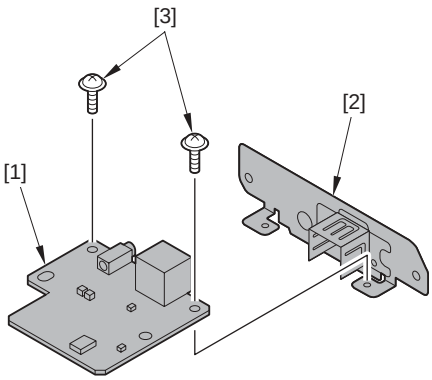
F-4-35

2) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
3) Remove the wireless LAN PCB as needed. (page 4-15)[Removing the Wireless LAN PCB]
4) Remove the IPSec PCB as needed. (page 4-16)[Removing the IPSec PCB]
5) Remove the PCI bus expansion PCB unit as needed. (page 4-17)[Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB]
6) Remove the voice guidance PCB unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 screws [3]



F-4-36

7) Remove the voice guidance PCB [1] from the plate [2].
- 2 screws (binding; M3X6) [3]



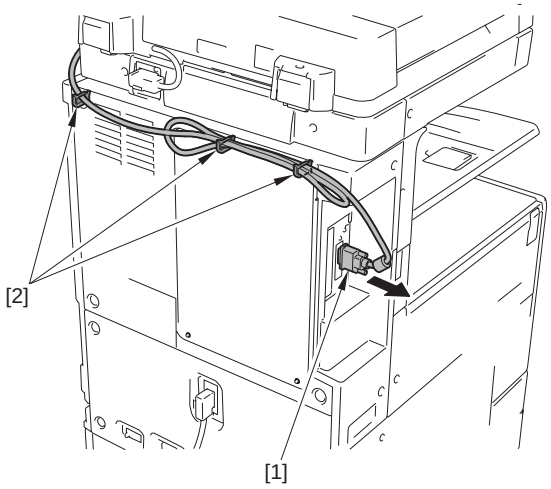
F-4-37

4.7.9 Voice Operation PCB

4.7.9.1 Removing the Voice Operation PCB

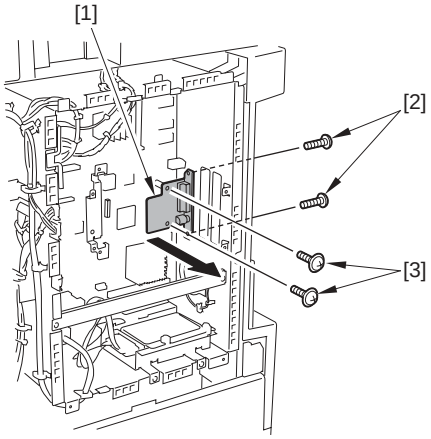
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the terminal [1] of the cable and the 3 wire saddles [2].



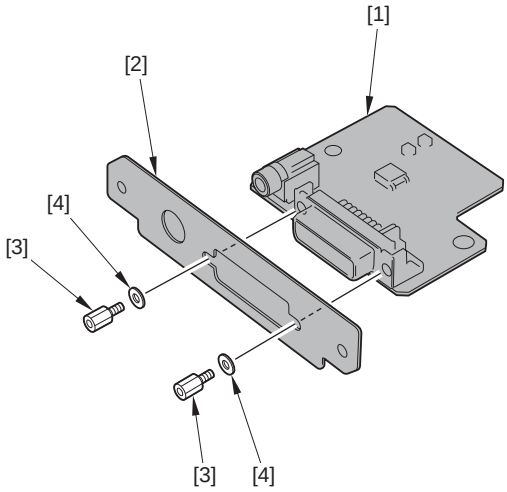
F-4-38

2) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
3) Remove the wireless LAN PCB as needed. (page 4-15)[Removing the Wireless LAN PCB]
4) Remove the IPSec PCB as needed. (page 4-16)[Removing the IPSec PCB]
5) Remove the PCI bus expansion PCB unit as needed. (page 4-17)[Removing the PCI Bus Expansion PCB]
6) Remove the voice operation PCB unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 screws [3]



F-4-39

7) Remove the voice operation PCB [1] from the plate [2].
- 2 hex nut screws [3]
- 2 washers [4]



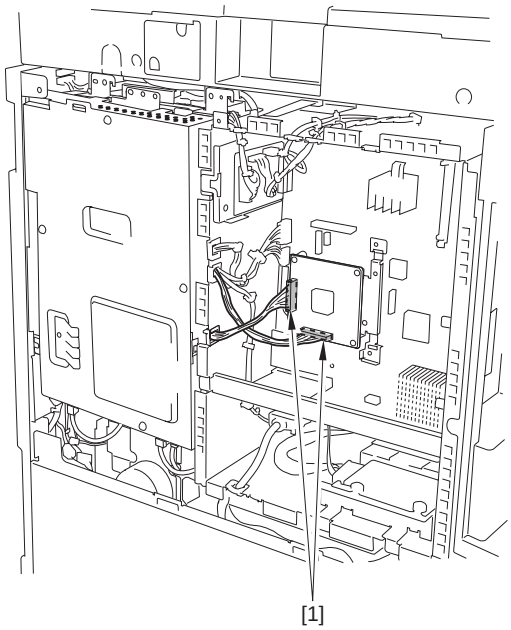
F-4-40

4.7.10 FAX Expansion PCB

4.7.10.1 Removing the FAX Expansion PCB

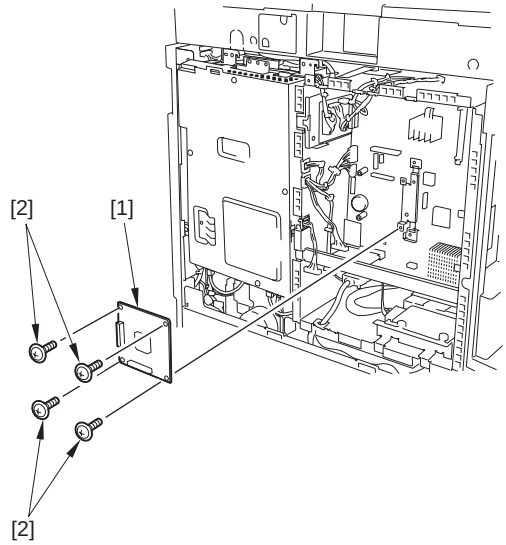
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1]. (1 pcs. for one FAX line)



F-4-41

3) Remove the FAX expansion PCB [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-4-42

Chapter 5 Original Exposure System

Contents

5.1 Construction 5-1
5.1.1 Specifications/controls/functions 5-1
5.1.2 Major Components 5-2
5.1.3 Configuration of Control System 5-3
5.1.4 Reader Controller PCB 5-4
5.2 Basic Sequence 5-5
5.2.1 Basic Sequence at Power-On 5-5
5.2.2 Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (book mode/1 original) 5-5
5.2.3 Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (ADF mode/1 original) 5-5
5.3 Various Control 5-6
5.3.1 Controlling the Scanner Drive System 5-6
5.3.1.1 Overview 5-6
5.3.1.2 Scanner Motor Control 5-6
5.3.2 CCD 5-8
5.3.2.1 Overview 5-8
5.3.3 Enlargement/Reduction 5-11
5.3.3.1 Magnifications in Main Scanning Direction 5-11
5.3.3.2 Magnification in Sub Scanning Direction 5-11
5.3.4 Detecting the Size of Originals 5-12
5.3.4.1 Overview 5-12
5.3.4.2 Control Details 5-12
5.3.4.3 Detection Operation Overview 5-14
5.3.5 Dirt Sensor Control 5-15
5.3.5.1 Overview 5-15
5.3.5.2 White Board Dust Detection Control 5-17
5.3.6 Image Processing 5-18
5.3.6.1 Overview 5-18
5.3.6.2 CCD Drive 5-18
5.3.6.3 Gain Correction and Offset Correction of CCD Output 5-18
5.3.6.4 A/D Conversion of CCD Output 5-19
5.3.6.5 Shading Correction (overview) 5-19
5.3.6.6 Shading Adjustment 5-19
5.3.6.7 Shading Correction 5-19
5.4 Parts Replacement Procedure 5-20
5.4.1 CCD Unit 5-20
5.4.1.1 Removing the CCD Unit 5-20
5.4.1.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit 5-21
5.4.2 CCD Cover Unit 5-21
5.4.2.1 Removing the CCD Cover Unit 5-21
5.4.3 Copyboard glass 5-21
5.4.3.1 Removing the Copyboard Glass 5-21
5.4.3.2 When Replacing the Copyboard Glass 5-22
5.4.3.3 Removing the ADF Reading Glass 5-23
5.4.3.4 When Replacing the ADF Reading Glass 5-23
5.4.4 Reader Controller PCB 5-24
5.4.4.1 Points to Note Before Replacing the Reader Controller PCB 5-24
5.4.4.2 Removing the Reader Controller PCB 5-24
5.4.4.3 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB 5-24
5.4.5 LED Driver PCB 5-25
5.4.5.1 Removing the LED Driver PCB 5-25
5.4.6 Scanner Motor 5-25
5.4.6.1 Removing the Scanner Motor 5-25
5.4.7 Copyboard Cover Open/Close Sensor 5-25

5.4.7.1 Removing the Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (Front/Rear) 5-25
5.4.8 CCD HP Sensor 5-26
5.4.8.1 Removing the CCD Unit HP Sensor 5-26
5.4.9 Original Size Sensor 5-26
5.4.9.1 Removing the Original Size Sensor 5-26
5.4.10 Reader Heater (option) 5-27
5.4.10.1 Removing the Reader Heater (Right) 5-27
5.4.10.2 Removing the Reader Heater (Left) 5-27

5.1 Construction

5.1.1 Specifications/controls/functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The major specifications, controls and functions of the original exposure system are described below.

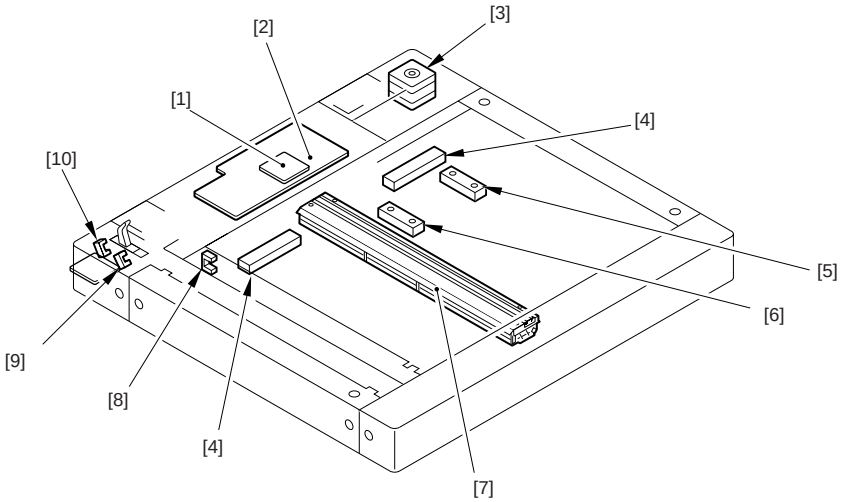
Item	Description
Original exposure	Indirect exposure by LED (LED & photoconductive body)
Original scan	In book mode: scan by movement of CCD In ADF mode: stream reading with CCD fixed
Read resolution	600 dpi (main scanning) x 600dpi (sub scanning)
Gradation	256 gradation, 8 bit
Scanning speed (in ADF mode)	51 ipm (single sided, A4,LTR)
Carriage position detection	CCD unit HP sensor (SR1)
Magnification	25% to 400% (in ADF mode: 25% to 200%)
	Main scanning direction: image is processed on main controller PCB.
	Sub scanning direction:
	In book mode: speed change by carriage travel, image process on reader controller PCB, image process on main controller PCB *1
	In ADF mode: original feed speed change, image process on reader controller PCB, image process on main controller PCB *1 original feed speed change, image process on reader controller PCB, image process on main controller PCB *1
Lens	Gauss lens
CCD	Number of lines: 4 (R, G, B, B/W)
	Number of pixels: 7500 x 3 color lines, 7500 x 1 B/W line
	Maximum original read width: 304mm
CCD unit drive control	By reader motor (M1)
Original size detection	[1] in book mode
	Main scanning direction: by CCD
	Sub scanning direction: by reflection sensor
	[2] in ADF mode
	Width: by original width volume/photo interrupter on ADF
	Length: by photo interrupter on ADF

*1 Controls differ depending on magnifications. Refer to [Magnifications] for more information.

5.1.2 Major Components

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Following shows major components of document exposure system.



F-5-1

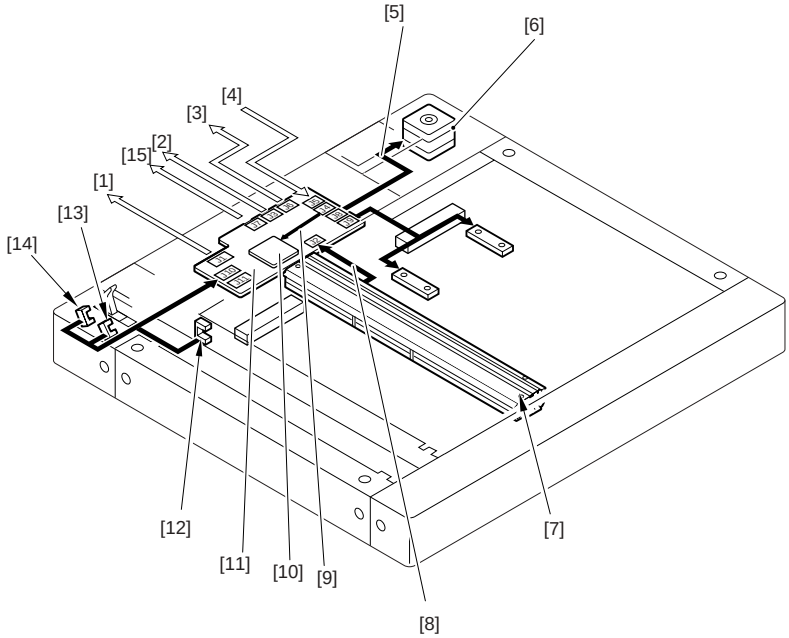
	Item	Notation	Description
[1]	LED driver PCB	-	Controls to turn on LED
[2]	Reader controller PCB	-	Controls the reader unit drive and image process
[3]	Scanner motor	M1	Pulse motor: controls the carriage drive
[4]	Reader heater *1	-	Prevents condensation on the copyboard glass
[5]	Original sensor 1	SR5	Helps identify original size (A/Inch, AB/Inch only)
[6]	Original sensor 0	SR4	Helps identify original size (AB,A,AB/Inch only)
[7]	CCD unit	-	Indirect exposure by LED (LED & photoconductive body)
[8]	CCD unit HP sensor	SR1	Detects CCD home position
[9]	Copyboard cover sensor (front)	SR2	Ends original size identification with the copy board cover at 5 deg
[10]	Copyboard cover sensor (rear)	SR3	Detects the copyboard cover open/close. Starts original size identification with the copy board cover at 25 deg.

*1 Optional (for 100V model only/ available as a service part only for 230V model)

5.1.3 Configuration of Control System

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The control system of original exposure is described below.



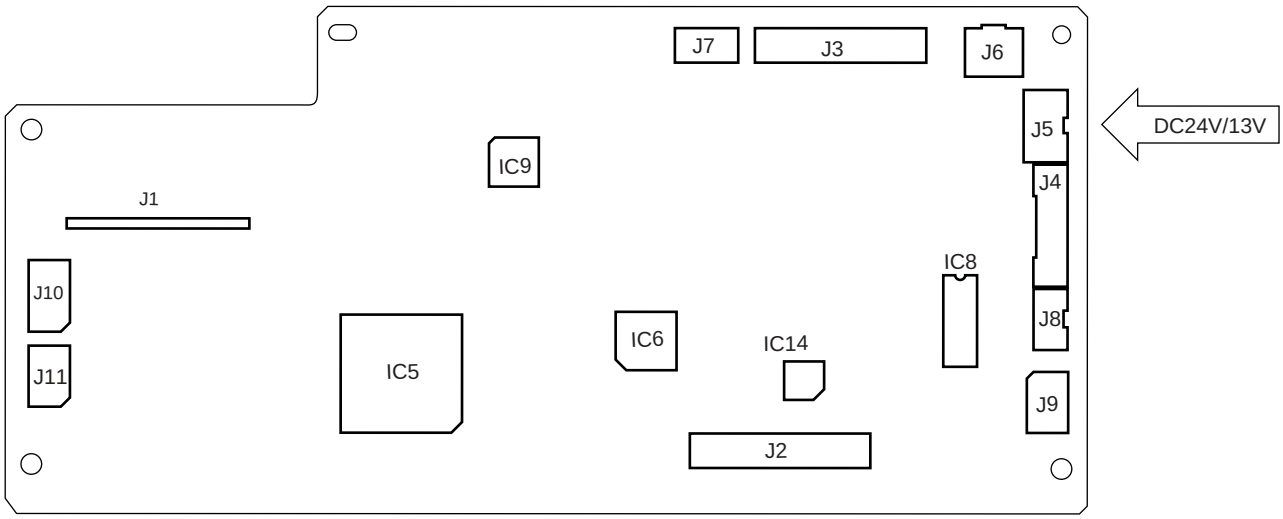
F-5-2

[1] Printer body (connection to main controller PCB)
[2] Connection to ADF
[3] Connection to ADF
[4] Connection to printer body
[5] Printer motor drive control
[6] Reader motor (M1)
[7] CCD unit
[8] Image signal
[9] LED drive signal
[10] LED driver PCB
[11] Reader controller PCB
[12] CCD unit HP sensor (SR1)
[13] Copyboard cover sensor (front: SR2)
[14] Copyboard cover sensor (rear: SR3)
[15] For factory adjustment

5.1.4 Reader Controller PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The function configuration of reader controller PCB is described below.



F-5-3

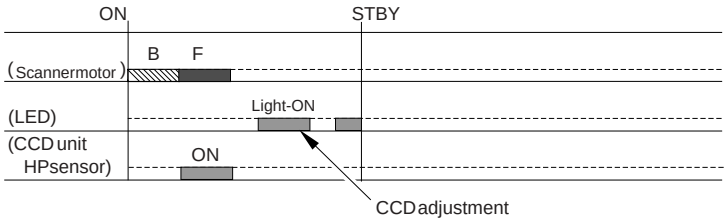
Jack No.	Description
J1	Connection to printer body
J2	Communication with CCD
J3	Communication with ADF
J4	Connection with LED driver PCB
J5	Receives power from the machine (printer unit)
J6	Communication with ADF
J7	For factory adjustment
J8	Connection to Scanner motor
J9	Connection to original size sensor 0 and original size sensor 1
J10	Connection to copyboard cover sensor and CCD HP sensor

5.2 Basic Sequence

5.2.1 Basic Sequence at Power-On

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Basic Sequence at Power-On



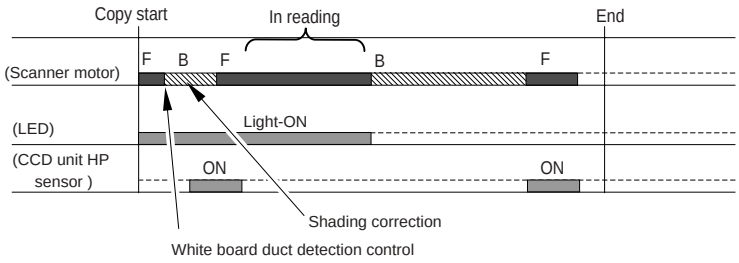
F-5-4

Footnote
- F: Scanner motor moves forward (toward right).
- B: Scanner motor moves backward (toward left).
- Light-ON: LED on CCD unit lights-on.
- ON: When CCD unit HP sensor (photo interrupter type) detects.

5.2.2 Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (book mode/1 original)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (book mode/1 original)



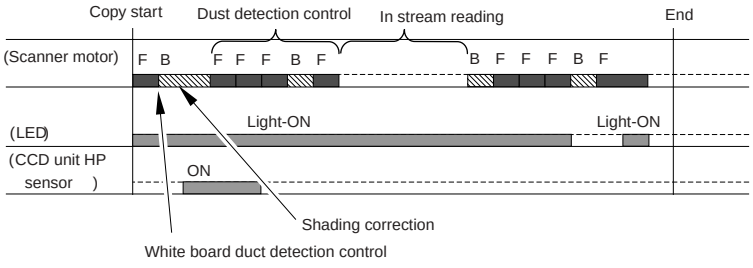
F-5-5

Footnote
- F: Scanner motor moves forward (toward right).
- B: Scanner motor moves backward (toward left).
- Light-ON: LED on CCD unit lights-on.
- ON: When CCD unit HP sensor (photo interrupter type) detects.

5.2.3 Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (ADF mode/1 original)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Basic Sequence at Start Key ON (ADF mode/1 original)



F-5-6

Dust detection control
This is activated when any of the following conditions is true.
- In 1 job copy at power ON
- Dust has been detected in all 3 locations at previous 1 job.
- Dust detection could not be activated due to JAM etc at previous job.

Footnote
- F: Scanner motor moves forward (toward right).
- B: Scanner motor moves backward (toward left).
- Light-ON: LED on CCD unit lights-on.
- ON: When CCD unit HP sensor (photo interrupter type) detects.

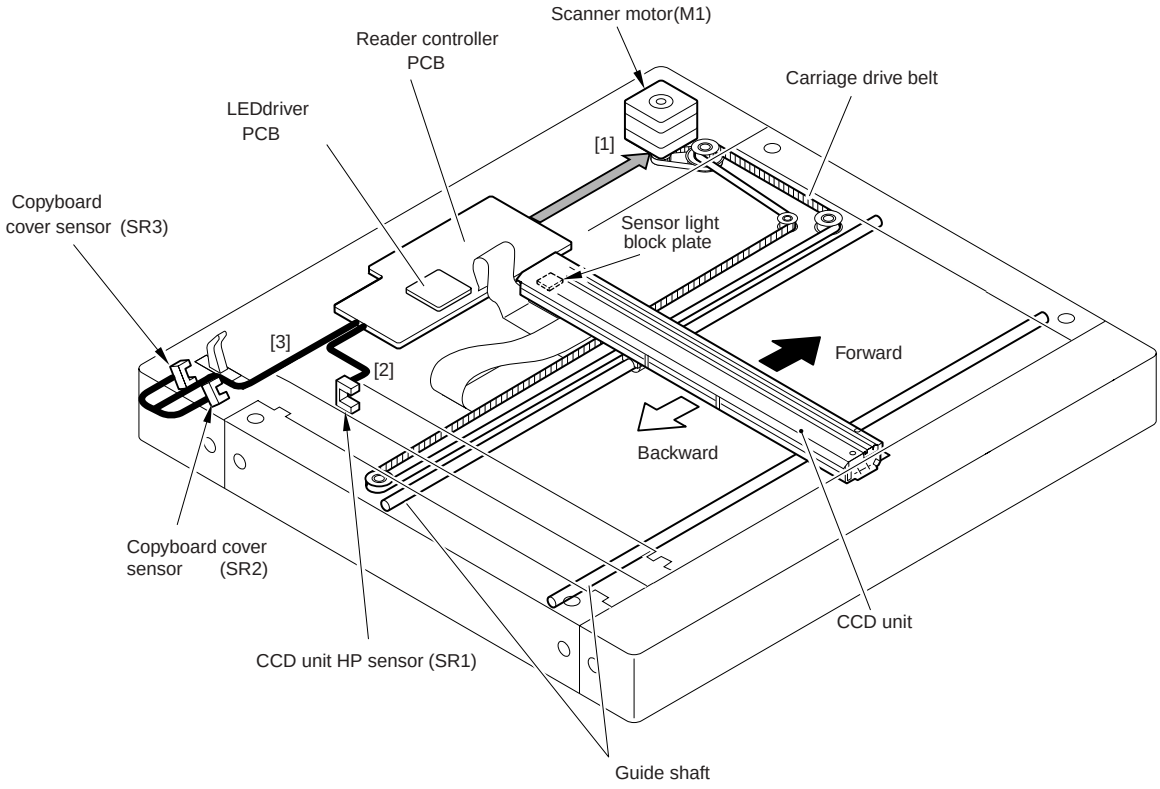
5.3 Various Control

5.3.1 Controlling the Scanner Drive System

5.3.1.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Parts configuration of scanner drive is described below.



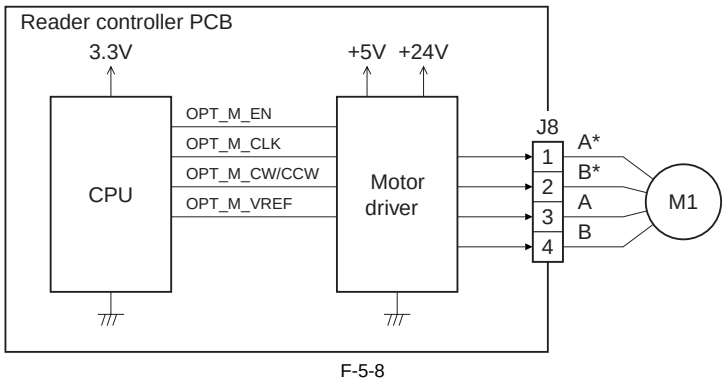
F-5-7

[1] Reader motor (M1) drive signal Turns on/off the motor and controls its direction/speed of rotation.
[2] CCD unit HP sensor (SR1) detection signal Checks if CCD is at home position.
[3] Copyboard cover sensor (front: SR2/rear: SR3) detection signal Detects the open/close status of the copyboard cover

5.3.1.2 Scanner Motor Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Reader motor driver turns on/off the motor and controls its direction/speed of rotation according to the signals from CPU.

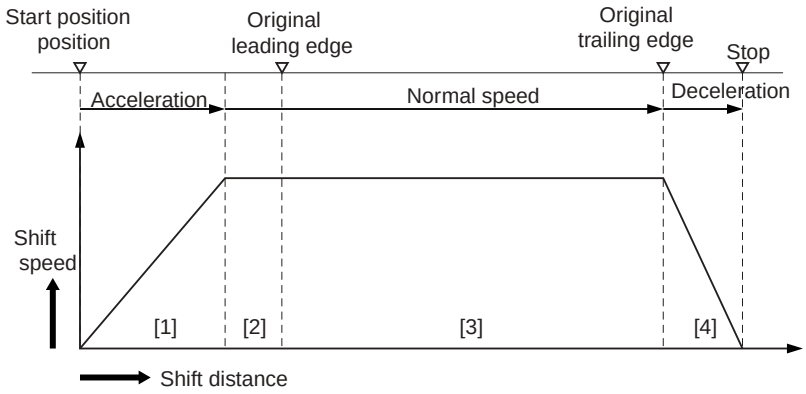


F-5-8

MEMO:
The scanning speed of this machine is as follows.
Black/white (600 x 600 dpi): 51 ipm (260 mm/s)
Color (600 x 600 dpi): 25 ipm (130 mm/s)
(600 x 300 dpi): 51 ipm (260 mm/s)

a. Forward movement when scanning an image

CCD operation is controlled by the following sensors when scanning the image.



[1]Acceleration area: Accelerates until a speed suited to the selected mode is reached
[2]Run-up speed area: Run-up margin to ensure a stable speed.
[3]Image reading area: Reads an image at a specific speed.
[4]Deceleration area: Decelerates and stops promptly once the image end is reached.

F-5-9

b. Backward movement after scanning an image

After scanning an image, CCD moves backward to CCD shading position at a specific speed (260 mm/s).

5.3.2 CCD

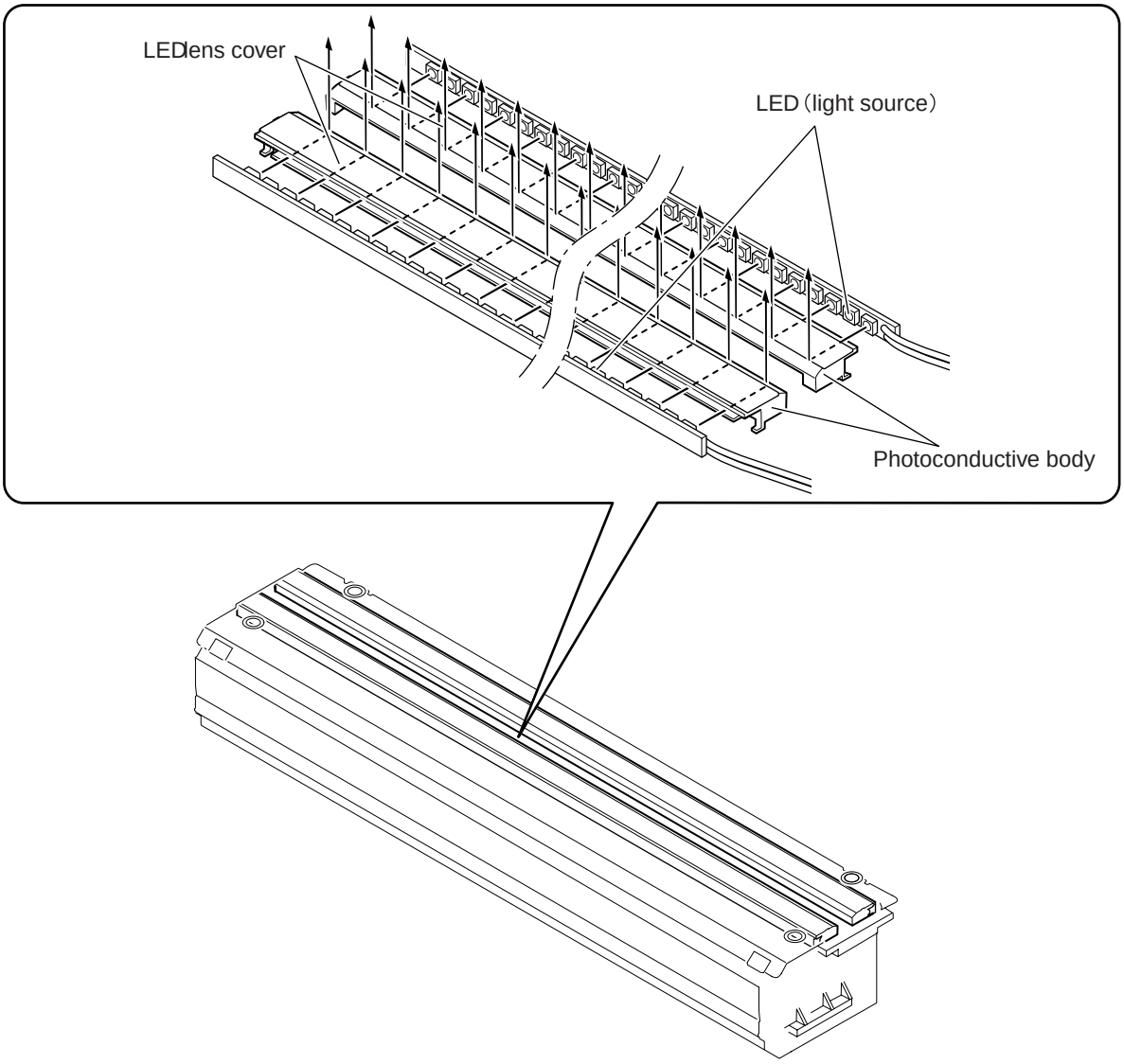
5.3.2.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

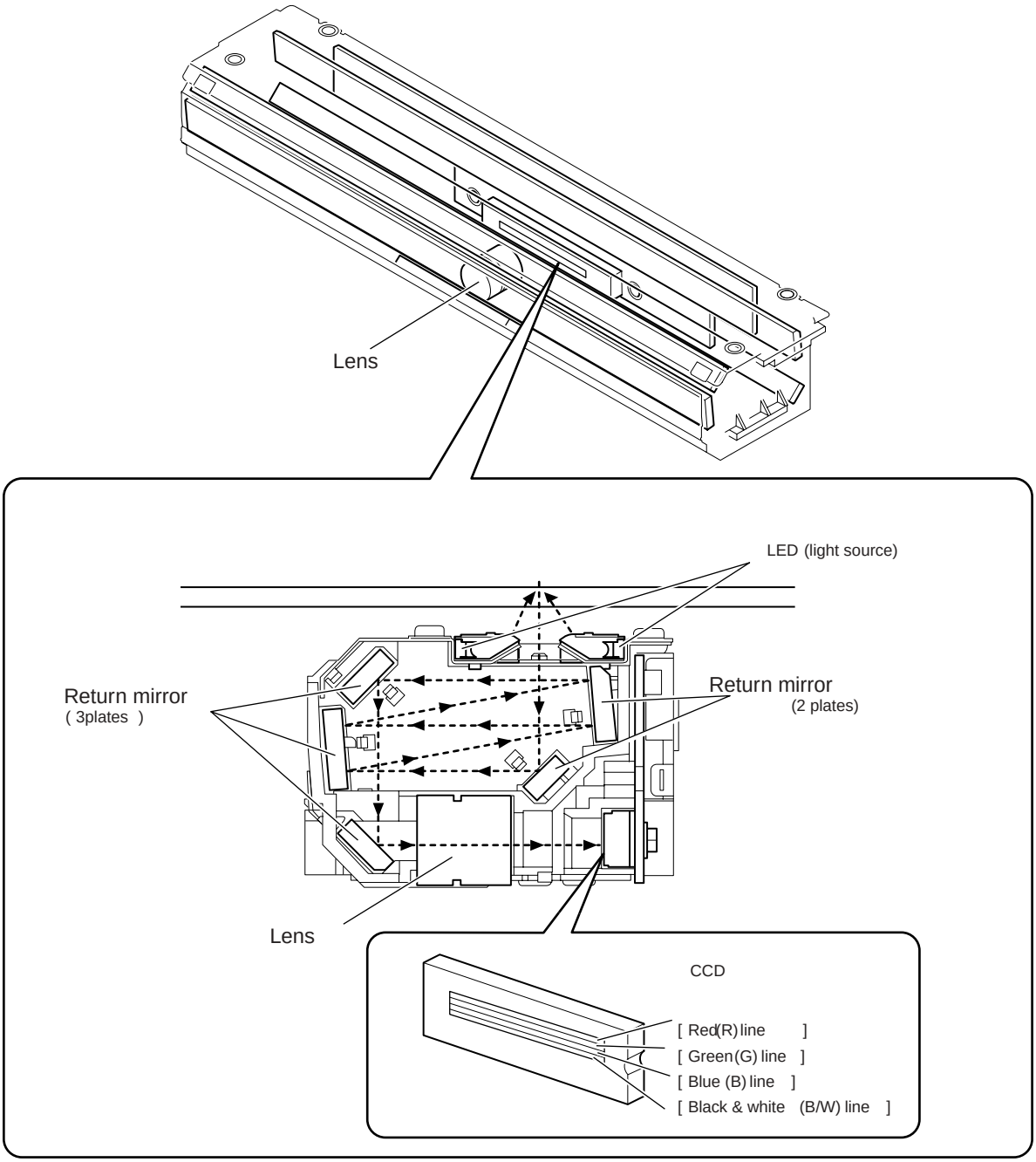
The machine uses the CCD to expose and read an image and the image is read on a line-by-line basis.
CCD features 4 lines (R, G, B, B/W) and B/W line is used in B/W copy and R, G, B lines are used at color scan.
CCD overview

1. Integrated scanning configuration; CCD, lens, light source and mirror are integrated.
2. CCD elemental size: 4.7 mm
3. Lens diameter: 18mm dia
4. Light source: LED
5. Effective number of pixel: 7500 pix x 3 color lines, 7500 pix x 1 B/W line

[Optical path from LED]
The light generated from LED is reflected by an original and by the 5 mirrors. And then it is irradiated to the CCD through the lens.



F-5-10



F-5-11

Items	Description
CCD	Receives the reflected light that has gone through the lens and converts it into electric signal to output it.
Lens	Collects the light reflected by an original.
LED (light source)	Light source to expose an original to laser
Return mirror	Return the light

5.3.3 Enlargement/Reduction

5.3.3.1 Magnifications in Main Scanning Direction

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

In book mode/ADF mode
An image is read at 100% in main scanning direction. Magnification variation and its data process are controlled on main controller PCB.

5.3.3.2 Magnification in Sub Scanning Direction

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

To vary the magnification of sub scanning direction, the machine operates as below depending on the original reading methods and the magnifications.
1) Magnifications in book mode
To suite the selected rate of magnification, the machine changes the speed of original reading and executes data processing on reader controller PCB/ main controller PCB.
e.g.) Reduction to 25%: an original is read at 260mm/s, and the data is processed for 50% reduction (skipping for 2/1) by the reader controller PCB and for 50% reduction (skipping for 2/1) by the main controller PCB.
e.g.) at 100%: an original is read at 260mm/s.

T-5-1

Operation	Magnifications		
	25% to 50%	**50.1% to 199.9%**	**200% to 400%**
Speed change of original reading (mm/sec)	260	260	130
Digital magnification process (%) on the reader controller PCB	50	100	100
Digital magnification process (%) on the main controller PCB	50 to 100	50.1 to 199.9	100 to 200

2) Magnifications in ADF mode
To suite the selected rate of magnification, the machine changes the speed of original reading and executes data processing on reader controller PCB/ main controller PCB.
e.g.) Reduction to 25%: an original is read at 260mm/s and the data is processed for 50% reduction (skipping 2/1) by the reader controller PCB and for 50% reduction (skipping 2/1) by the main controller PCB.
e.g.) Enlargement to 200%: an original is read at 130mm/s and the data is processed for 100% direct reproduction by main controller PCB.

T-5-2

Operation	Magnification		
	25% to 50%	**50.1% to 199.9%**	**200%**
Speed change of original reading (mm/sec)	260	260	130
Digital magnification process (%) on the reader controller PCB	50	100	100
Digital magnification process (%) on the main controller PCB	50 to 100	50.1 to 199.9	100

5.3.4 Detecting the Size of Originals

5.3.4.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

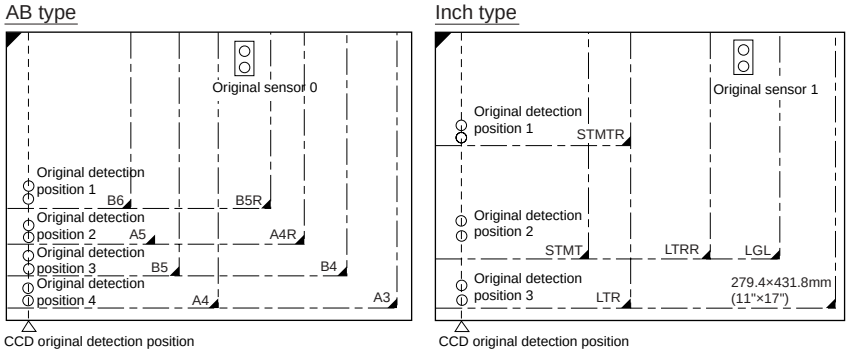
The machine identifies the original size by the combination of measurement result of reflection light from the reflection sensor and specific points of CCD. Also to identify it accurately even though an original moves when ADF is closed, the machine measures 2 points for each size.
- Main scanning direction: CCD (AB type: 8 points measurement, inch type: 6 points measurement)
- Sub scanning direction: Reflection type photo sensor (AB type: 1 point, inch type: 1 point (original sensor 2 is not used.))

The followings are the procedures of original size identification.
1)External light search (main scanning direction only)
According to the LED status, the machine identifies the CCD level of each detection position in main scanning direction.
2)Output level detection of each sensor
The machine turns on the LED on CCD unit and measures the CCD level of each detection position in main scanning direction.
Also, turns on the LED on reflection type photo sensor in sub scanning direction and measures the sensor output.
The original size is identified by the combination of these output result.

5.3.4.2 Control Details

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

For main scanning direction, the machine moves the CCD unit to the following CCD original detection positions according to the location of original to measure the CCD level of each detection position. For sub scanning direction, the machine uses the original sensor 0, 1 to identify sizes.

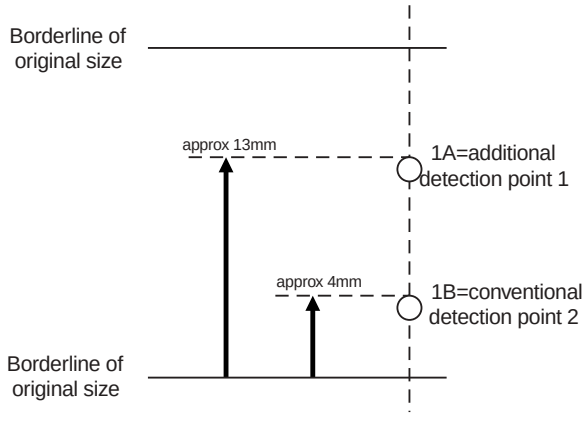


F-5-12

1. 2 points original detection at each detection position
For each point of measurement in main scanning direction, the machine checks the presence/absence of an original with reference to the CCD output at 2 points near the point of measurement.

* The machine checks if the signal is changed or not from ADF (pressure plate) open to close at both points of 1A and 1B.
Change in the signal: Yes
Change in the signal: No

Judgment is done by the measurement results of 1A and 1B, and it indicates the presence of original if either point shows absence (absence). It indicates absence of original if both signals show Yes (presence).



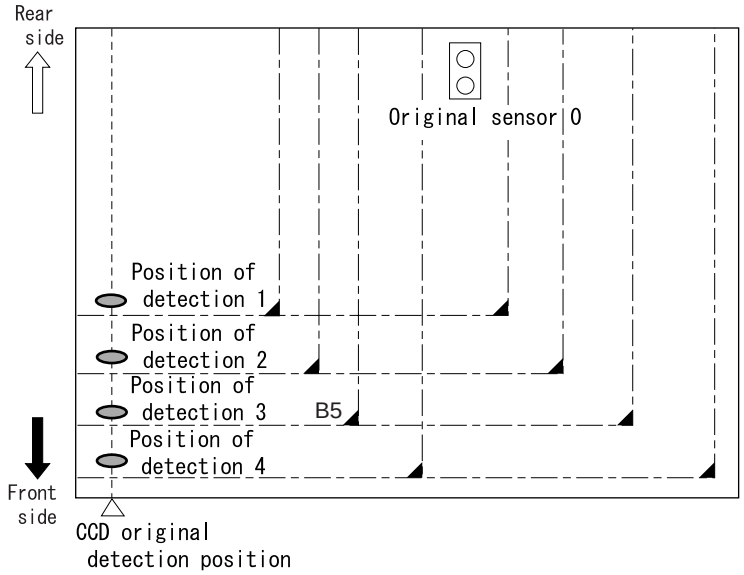
F-5-13

T-5-3

Change		Result of detection
1A	1B	
Yes	Yes	Original absence
No	Yes	Original presence
Yes	No	Original presence
No	No	Original presence

2. Priority on the front sensor

When checking the measurements for main scanning direction, if the absence of an original is indicated at the rear while the presence of an original is indicated at the front, the machine will give priority to the indication at the front.



F-5-14

T-5-4

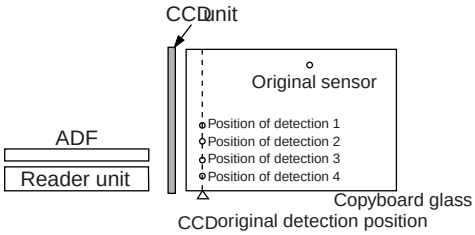
In case of B5 size original

Position of detection	Result of detection	Result of identification
1	Yes	Yes
2	No	Yes
3	Yes	Yes
4	No	No

5.3.4.3 Detection Operation Overview

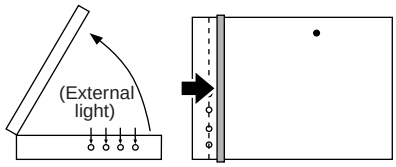
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Standby state (The following is in case that the AB type, A4R size is set.)
CCD unit: shading position
LED: OFF
Original sensor: OFF



F-5-15

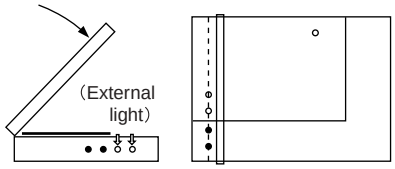
2) ADF opened
CCD unit: moves to original detection position
LED: OFF
Original sensor: OFF



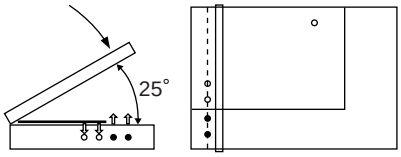
F-5-16

3) ADF closed
CCD unit: in original detection position
LED: OFF to ON
Original sensor: in original detection operation

- With the ADF angle at 25 deg or less, the external light is blocked at the original width area. Then, the machine determines that the original is absent at the points that the external light is detected (external light search operation). When the original mount sensor (rear) detects [close], original size detection is started. In this case, B5/B4/A4/A3 size is eliminated at this point.
- After external light search, LED is turned ON at main scanning side and the CCD checks the reflection light (4 points). For sub scanning direction, original sensor detects the size.

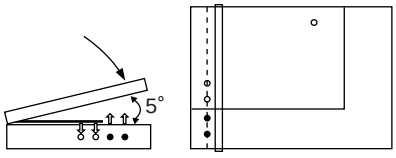


F-5-17



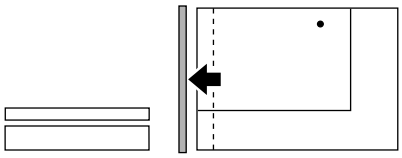
F-5-18

4) ADF fully closed (5 deg or less)
CCD unit: in original detection position
LED: ON
Original sensor: in original detection operation
For 2 sec from the original mount sensor (front) detected [close], this monitors the changes of output level of each sensor. The machine determines that the original is present in the position where the level is not changed.
The machine identifies the original size by the combination of level changes at 5 points (in case of AB type size).



F-5-19

5) Standby status (waiting for start key)
CCD unit: in original detection position
LED: OFF
Original sensor: OFF



F-5-20

ABtype

Original size	CCD detection position 1 A	1 B	2 A	2 B	3 A	3 B	4 A	4 B	Original sensor 0
A3	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
B4	○	○	○	○	○	○	●	●	○
A4R	○	○	○	○	●	●	●	●	○
A4	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	●
B5	○	○	○	○	○	○	●	●	●
B5R	○	○	●	●	●	●	●	●	○
A5	○	○	○	○	●	●	●	●	●
B6	○	○	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Absent	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

Inch type

Original size	CCD detection position 1 A	1 B	2 A	2 B	3 A	3 B	Original sensor 1
11"×17"	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
LGL	○	○	○	○	●	●	○
LTRR	○	○	○	○	●	●	●
LTR	○	○	○	○	○	○	●
STMTR	○	○	●	●	●	●	●
STMT	○	○	○	○	●	●	●
Absent	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

○: No change ●: Changed

F-5-21

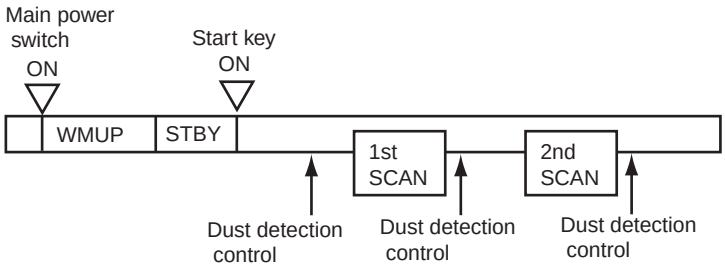
5.3.5 Dirt Sensor Control

5.3.5.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine changes the original read point or executes image correction depending on the presence/absence of dust on the stream reading glass or the platen roller of the ADF to prevent the dust from showing up in the output. These operations are carried out only when the ADF is in use and, in addition, is closed.

[Control timing]
- At the end of a job
- Between sheets (for each reading of a sheet)
- At the start of a job (only when any of the following conditions is true.)
  First job after power-on
  Dust detected at all points of detection at the end of the previous job
  Dust detection failed to end normally at the end of the previous job (e.g., ADF opened)



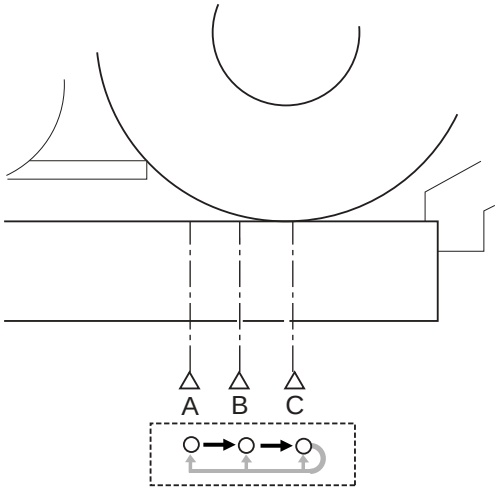
F-5-22

[Particulars of control]
- At the end of a job (dust detection)
  CCD checks the light reflected by the surface of the platen roller of the ADF at the read point to detect the presence/absence of dust. Presence of dust is detected at points A, B, and C in this order. The point where least dust is detected will be used as the read position for the next job.
  The point selected here will be used as the read position for the next job.

> ⚠
> Regarding the control at the end of a job, if an original is placed in the ADF with dust detected at all points (A, B, C), the machine will indicate a message on its control panel to prompt cleaning of the glass surface. The Start key will remain invalid until this message is cleared.

- At the start of a job (dust bypass)

Presence of dust is detected at points A, B, and C in this order in the same manner as at the end of the job. Read will take place at the point where least dust is detected.



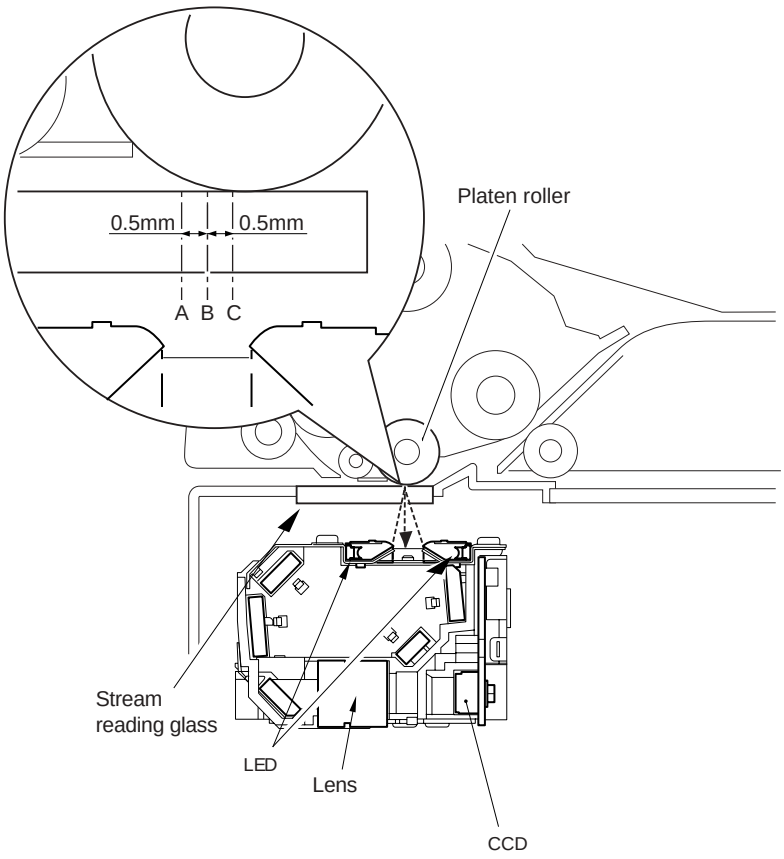
F-5-23

- Between sheets

The machine does not move CCD.

It reads the original using the position determined at the end or start of a job; however, if the presence of dust is still detected at the position, the machine will execute image correction.

Point	Description
A	Read reference position
B	About 0.5mm from the reference position to the inner side of the roller
C	About 1.0mm from the reference position to the inner side of the roller



F-5-24

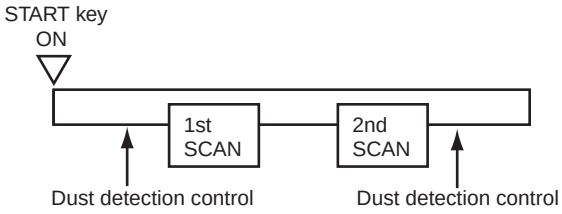
<Service Mode>

COPIER>OPTION>BODY>DFDST-L1 (level 1)
(used to adjust the dust detection level between sheets)
COPIER>OPTION>BODY>DFDST-L2 (level 1)
(used to adjust the dust detection level at the end of a job)

5.3.5.2 White Board Dust Detection Control

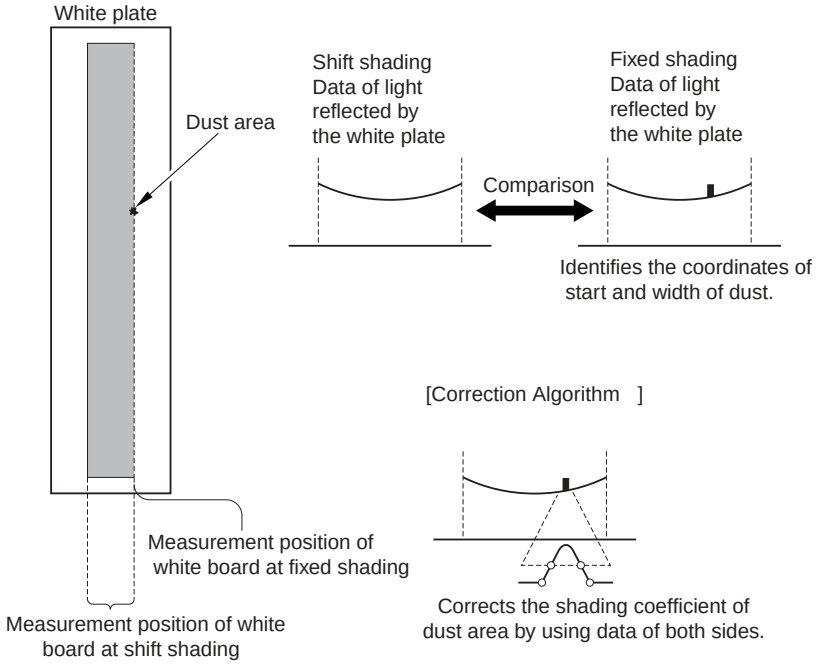
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When the dust in the air attaches to the white board inside the reader unit, lines may appear on the image. To reduce the influence from the dust, the machine carries out the white board dust detection and correction.
[Control timing]
1. Before job
   - White board dust detection
   - White board dust correction
2. After job
   - White board dust detection
   - White board dust correction



F-5-25

[Particulars of control]
- White board dust detection
  The machine compares the data of light reflected by the white plate at the shift shading and at the fixed shading to detect the presence/absence of dust, and if any, it identifies the coordinates and width of dust.
- White board dust correction
  If the machine detects dust as a result of white plate dust detection, it corrects the shading coefficient of the dust area using the shading coefficient of both sides so as to decrease the effects of the dust.



F-5-26

5.3.6 Image Processing

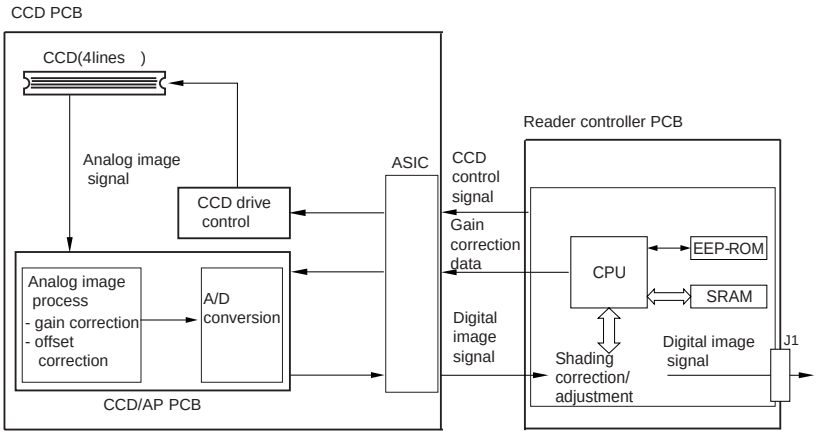
5.3.6.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The functions of image processing system's PCB are described below.

- Reader controller PCB	CCD drive, analog image process, A/D conversion, shading correction (executed per each job), shading adjustment (executed at power-on)
- CCD PCB	Analog image process, A/D conversion

The machine uses the reader controller PCB to process images for every single image line. Specific functions are as follows.
1) CCD PCB (inside CCD unit)
   - CCD drive
   - CCD output gain correction, offset correction
2) Reader controller PCB
   - Shading correction

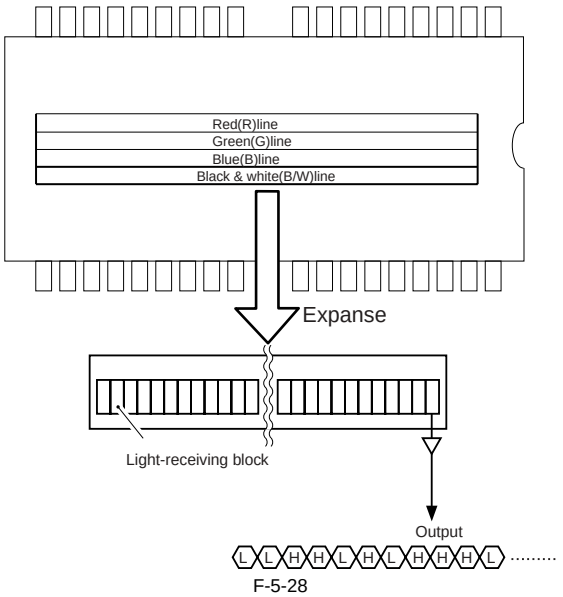


F-5-27

5.3.6.2 CCD Drive

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine's CCD sensor is a 4-line linear image sensor consisting of 7500 pixels. After completion of photoelectric conversion in the light-receiving block, the signals are output to the analog front end PCB unit on CCD PCB in parallel for each channel (R, G, B, B/W) of the CCD array.



F-5-28

5.3.6.3 Gain Correction and Offset Correction of CCD Output

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The analog video signal generated by the CCD is corrected so that it will have a specific level (gain correction); moreover, the output voltage occurring in the absence of incident light is also corrected so that it will have a specific level (offset correction).

5.3.6.4 A/D Conversion of CCD Output

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The corrected analog video signal is converted into a digital signal that is suited to the voltage level of individual pixels by the A/D converter.

5.3.6.5 Shading Correction (overview)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The output of the CCD is not necessarily even for the following factors even when the density of the original is uniform:
1) Variation in the sensitivity of the CCD among pixels
2) Variation in the intensity of the rod lens array
3) Variation in the intensity of light that goes through the center and surroundings of lens
4) Variation in the intensity of light at the center and surroundings of LED
5) LED deterioration
The machine executes shading correction to even out the output of the CCD.
Shading correction may be the shading adjustment executed at power-on or the shading correction executed for each job.

5.3.6.6 Shading Adjustment

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

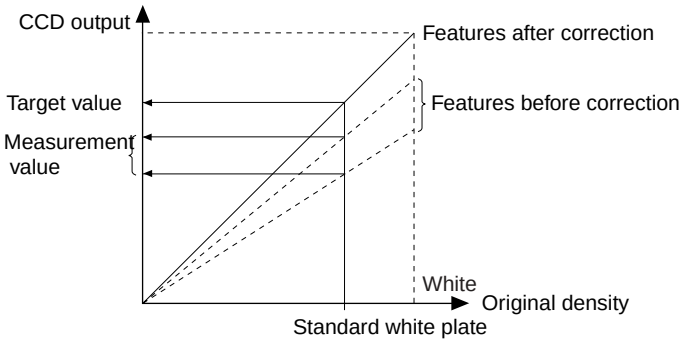
In this adjustment, the machine measures the density of the standard white plate, and stores the results in memory as density data. It then performs computations on the shading data, and uses the result as the target value for shading correction.

5.3.6.7 Shading Correction

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine executes the shading correction for every scan made.

In this correction, the analog image process unit on CCD PCB digitalizes the LED light reflected by the standard white board. After the reflected light is digitalized, it is held in the shading correction circuit on reader controller PCB as a shading coefficient.
Shading correction circuit compares the stored target value with the shading coefficient. The difference between the two will be held as the shading correction value for use in correcting variation among CCD pixels when scanning the original, thus evening out the density levels of the image.



F-5-29

5.4 Parts Replacement Procedure

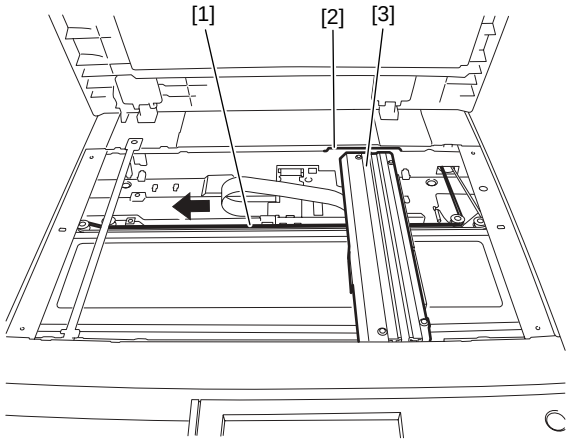
5.4.1 CCD Unit

5.4.1.1 Removing the CCD Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

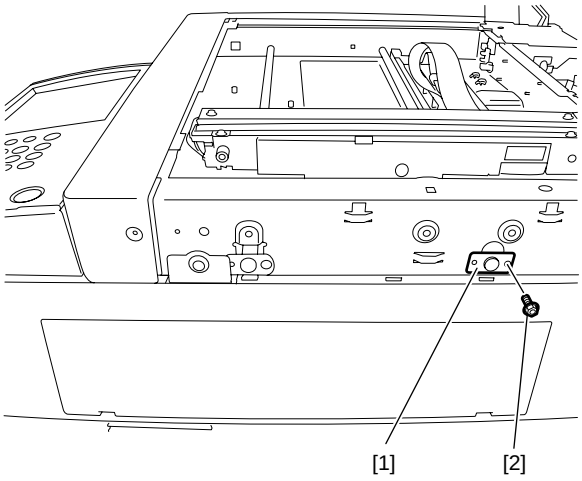
1)Open the copyboard cover (platen board cover/ADF).
2)Remove the reader right cover.
3)Remove the copyboard glass.
4)Move the belt [1] in the direction of the arrow and move the CCD unit to the position [2] of the groove [3] of the frame.

> Do not touch the LED on the CCD unit.



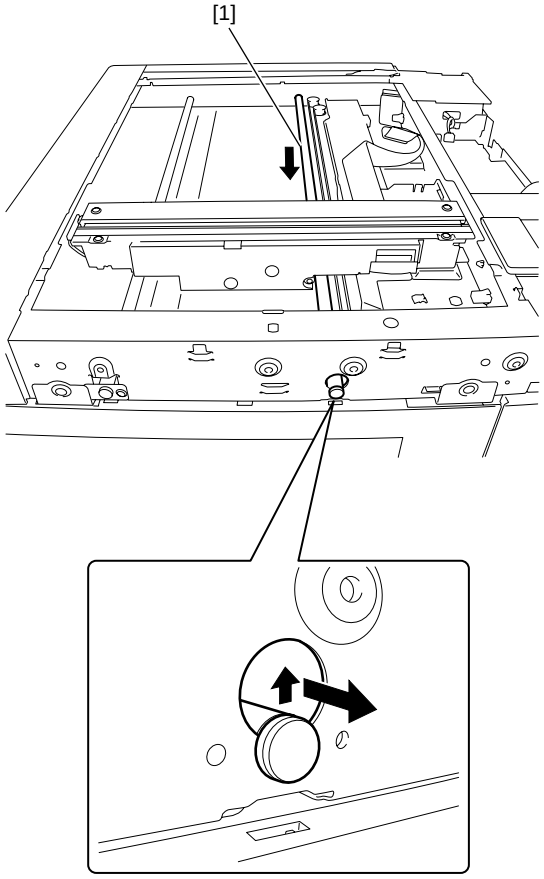
F-5-30

5)Remove the shaft retaining plate [1].
-Screw[2]



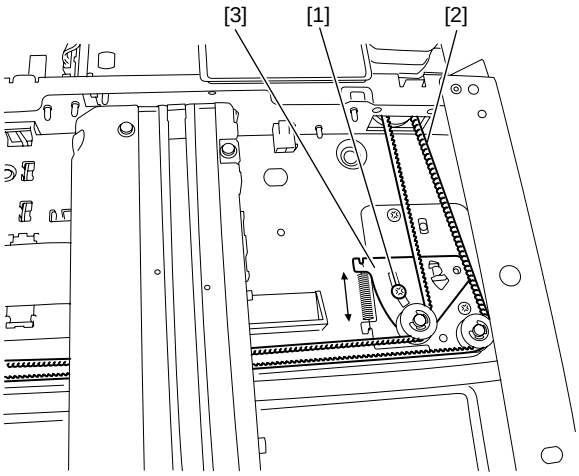
F-5-31

6)Remove the shaft [1].



F-5-32

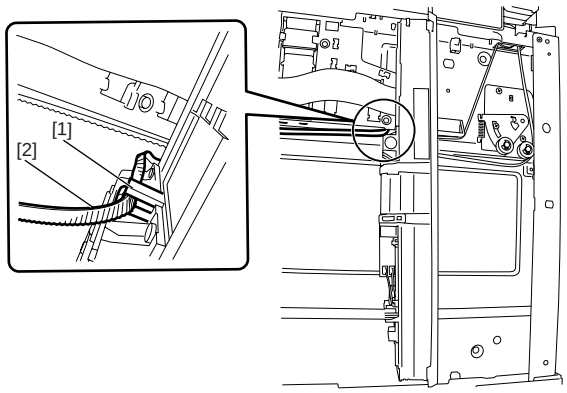
7)Loosen the screw [1] and remove the belt [2] from the pulley [3].



F-5-33

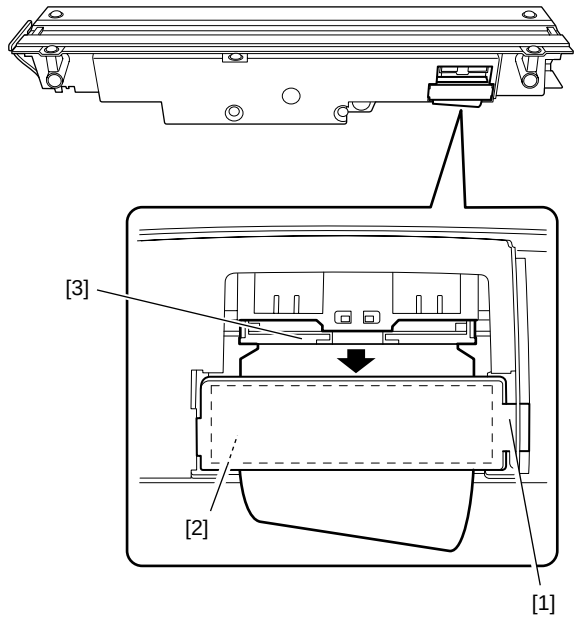
8)Remove the belt [2] from the hook [1] at the back of the CCD unit.

> ⚠ Do not touch the LED on the CCD unit.



F-5-34

9)Remove the cable retainer [1] at the CCD unit.
10) Remove the core [2], the connector [3], and then the CCD cable.



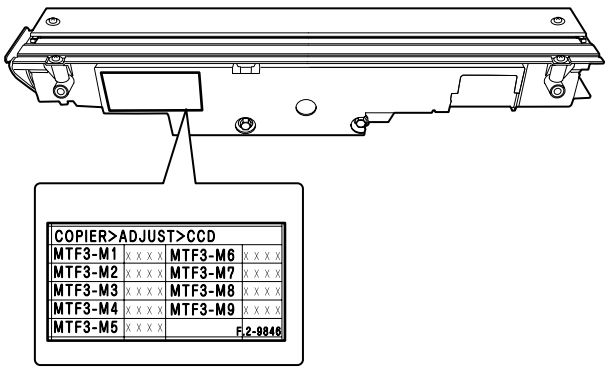
F-5-35

5.4.1.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Perform the following procedure after replacing the CCD unit.

1) Enter the value on the label affixed to the CCD unit in the following service mode. (following 2 items).



F-5-36

-COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M1/M2/M3/M4/M5/M6/M7/M8/M9
After that, finalize the setting in the following service mode.
-COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > CCD-CHNG

2)Input the above correction value on the service label at the inside of the reader left cover.

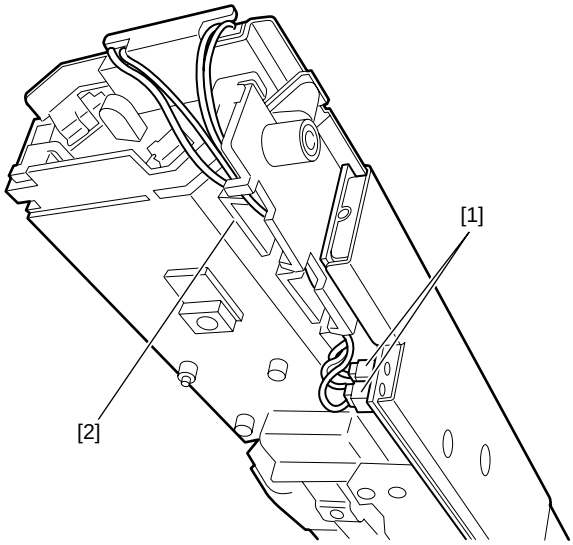
3)Execute the following item in service mode.
- ADF white level adjustment (COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/WLVL2/WLVL3/WLVL4)

5.4.2 CCD Cover Unit

5.4.2.1 Removing the CCD Cover Unit

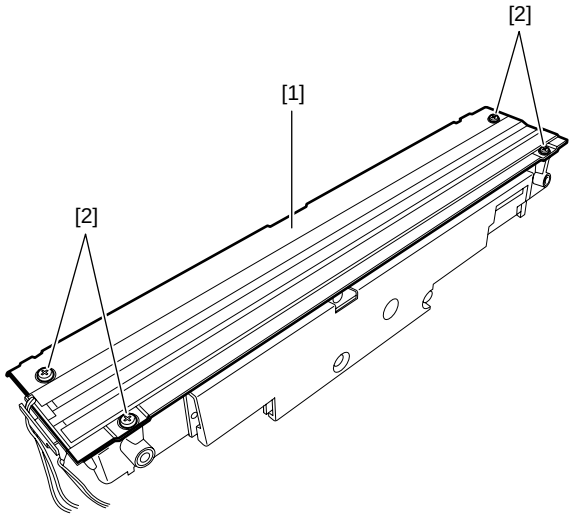
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Remove the CCD unit.
2)Remove the 2 connectors [1], and then the harness from the guide [2].



F-5-37

3)Remove the CCD cover [1].
-4 screws [2]



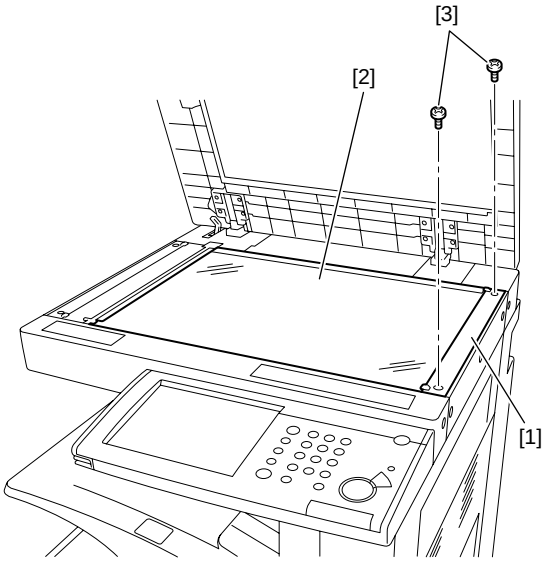
F-5-38

5.4.3 Copyboard glass

5.4.3.1 Removing the Copyboard Glass

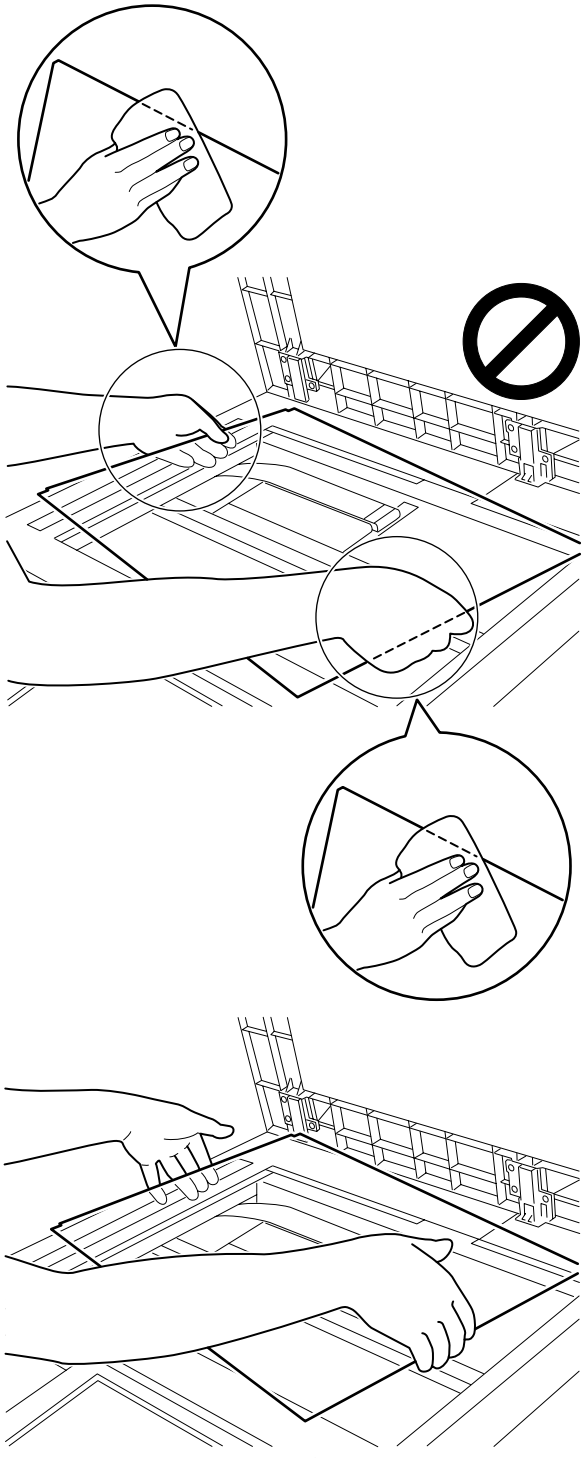
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Open the copyboard cover (platen board cover/ADF).
2)Remove the glass retainer [1] and the copyboard glass [2].
-2 screws [3]



F-5-39

When removing the copyboard glass, take care not to touch the following parts with your fingers.
-Glass surface
-Standard white plate
Soils on these parts may cause white/black lines on images.
If they are soiled, clean them with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



F-5-40

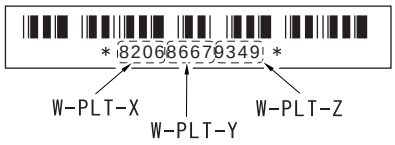
5.4.3.2 When Replacing the Copyboard Glass

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Execute the following item in service mode.

> Be sure to execute white plate data adjustment surely before ADF white level adjustment.

Enter the value (see the following figure) on the copyboard glass in the following service mode.
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>W-PLT-X/Y/Z
Entering the data of the standard white plate



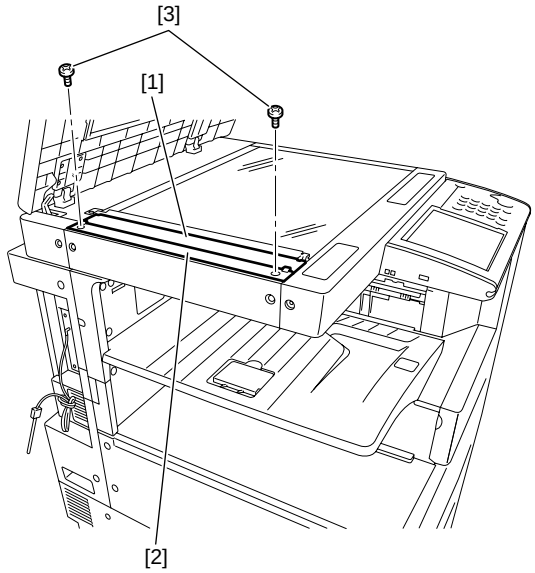
F-5-41

Execute the following item in service mode.
-ADF white level adjustment (COPIER >FUNCTION >CCD >DF-WLVL1/2/3/4)

5.4.3.3 Removing the ADF Reading Glass

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Open the platen board cover or the ADF.
2)Remove the glass retainer [2].
-2 screws [3]
3)Remove the ADF reading glass [1].



F-5-42

> When removing the ADF reading glass, take care not to touch the glass surface with your fingers.
> Soils on it may cause white/black lines on images. If it is soiled, clean it with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

5.4.3.4 When Replacing the ADF Reading Glass

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Execute the following item in service mode.
-ADF white level adjustment (COPIER >FUNCTION >CCD >DF-WLVL1/2/3/4)

5.4.4 Reader Controller PCB

5.4.4.1 Points to Note Before Replacing the Reader Controller PCB

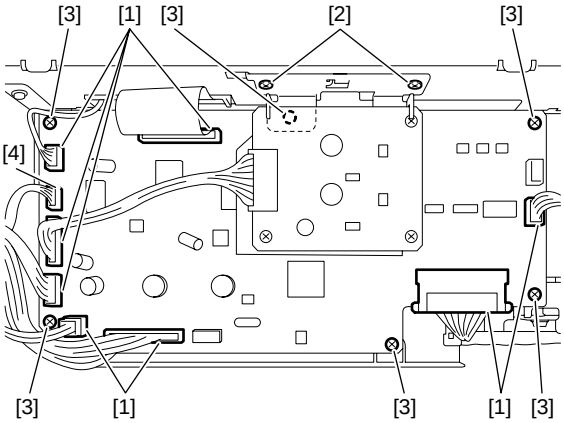
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> Be sure to output P-PRINT in service mode before replacement.
> COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT

5.4.4.2 Removing the Reader Controller PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Remove the ADF communication cable (ADF only).
2)Remove the platen board cover or the ADF.
3)Remove the reader rear cover
4)Remove the LED driver PCB.
-1 screw [2]
-J4 connector [4]
5)Remove the reader controller PCB.
-6 screws [3]
-7 connectors [1]



F-5-43

5.4.4.3 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB

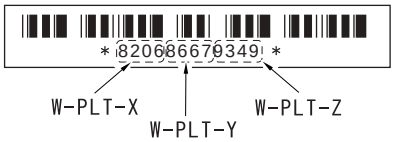
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> Be sure to output the latest P-PRINT before replacing the reader controller PCB.
> -In the case of clearing RAM for the reader controller without replacing the PCB, the following adjustment is unnecessary if uploading the R-CON backup data using SST and downloading the data after clearing RAM.

1. Adjustment related to the reader unit
1)Using SST, download the latest system software (R-CON).
2)Select the following service mode; COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > R-CON,
hold down OK, and then execute RAM clear. After that, turn off/on the main power switch.
3)Enter the values of the following items in service mode.
a. Value on the service label (inside of the reader left cover)

a-1.Adjusting the CCD reading position (in fixed reading)
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-X
a-2.Adjusting the position in main scanning direction (in fixed reading)
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-Y
a-3.Adjusting the shading position (in fixed reading)
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-S
a-4.Value of MTF in main scanning direction
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>MTF3-M1/M2/M3/M4/M5/M6/M7/M8/M9
After that, finalize the setting in the following mode.
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>CCD-CHNG
a-5.Value of copyboard sub scanning magnification adjustment
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-X-MAG
a-6.Value of Pascal offset (black) adjustment
COPIER>ADJUST>PASCAL>OFST-P-K
a-7.Value of 100% color displacement correction
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>100-RG/100-GB
a-8.Value of 50% color displacement correction
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>50-RG/50-GB

b.Entering the data of the standard white plate
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>W-PLT-X/Y/Z



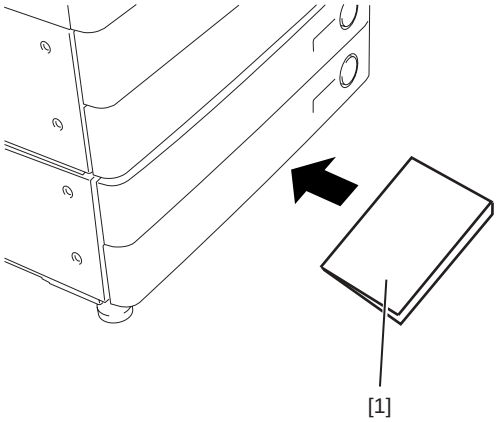
F-5-44

2. Adjustment related to ADF

> ⚠
> In the equipment, the service data related to ADF is stored in RAM of the reader controller.
> Therefore, adjustment for ADF is necessary when replacing the reader controller and clearing RAM

1)Enter the value of the output P-PRINT in the following item in service mode.
a. Adjusting the position in main scanning direction (in stream reading)
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-Y-DF
b. Adjusting the trailing edge registration
FEEDER>ADJUST>DOCST
c. Adjusting magnification
FEEDER>ADJUST>LA-SPEED
2)Execute adjustment using the following items.
a. Adjusting the tray width
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-A4
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-A5R
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-LTR
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-LTRR
b. Adjusting the CCD reading position (in stream reading)
COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>STRD-POS
c. Adjusting the white level
COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1(black and white)
COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL2(black and white)
COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL3(color)
COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL4(color)

After completing the above adjustments, keep the output P-PRINT [1] in the service book case and dispose the old P-PRINT



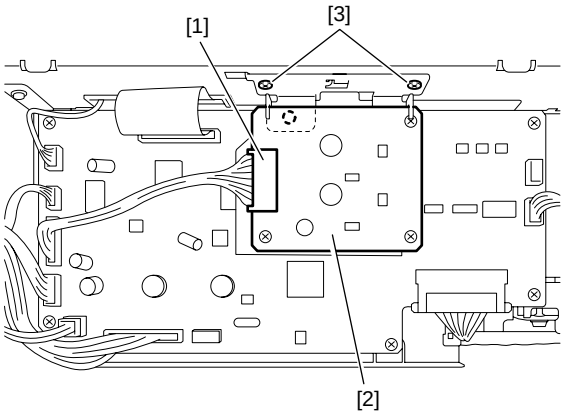
F-5-45

5.4.5 LED Driver PCB

5.4.5.1 Removing the LED Driver PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Remove the ADF communication cable (ADF only).
2)Remove the copyboard cover (platen board cover/ADF).
3)Remove the rear cover.
4)Remove the J801 connector [1] and the LED driver PCB [2].
-2 screws [3]



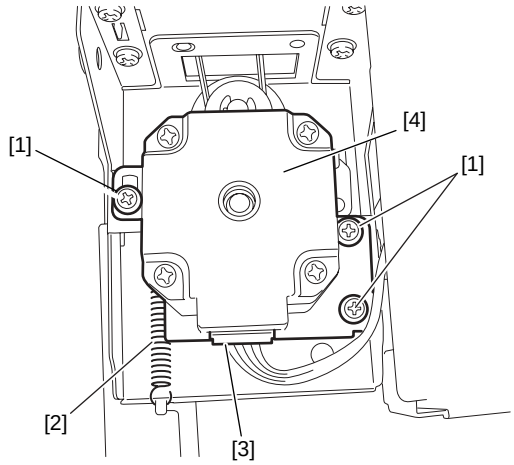
F-5-46

5.4.6 Scanner Motor

5.4.6.1 Removing the Scanner Motor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Remove the ADF communication cable (only machines with ADF installed).
2)Open the platen board cover or the ADF.
3)Remove the reader rear cover.
4)Remove the 2 screws [1] and the connector [3].
5)Remove the spring [2] and the Scanner motor [4].



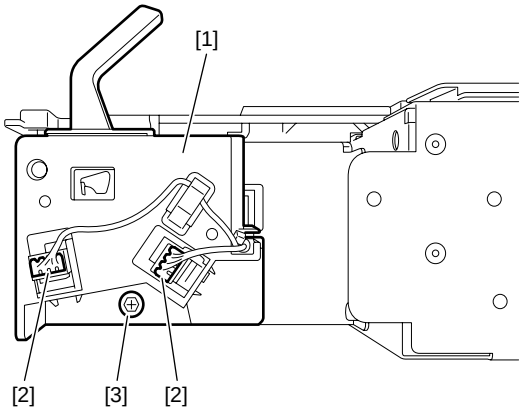
F-5-47

5.4.7 Copyboard Cover Open/Close Sensor

5.4.7.1 Removing the Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (Front/Rear)

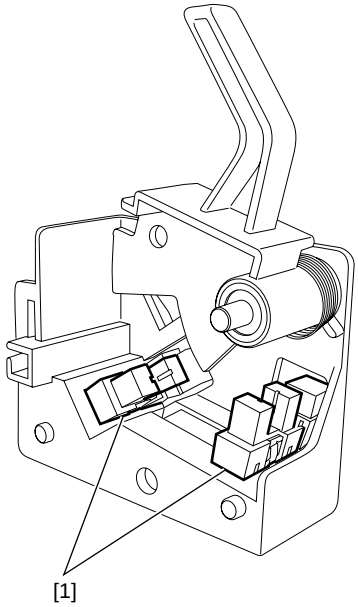
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Remove the ADF communication cable (ADF only).
2)Open the copyboard cover (platen board cover/ADF).
3)Remove the reader rear cover.
4)Remove the sensor mount [1] at rear left of the reader unit.
-2 connectors [2]
-1 screw [3]



F-5-48

5)Remove the 2 sensors [1] form the sensor mount.
Ç¶



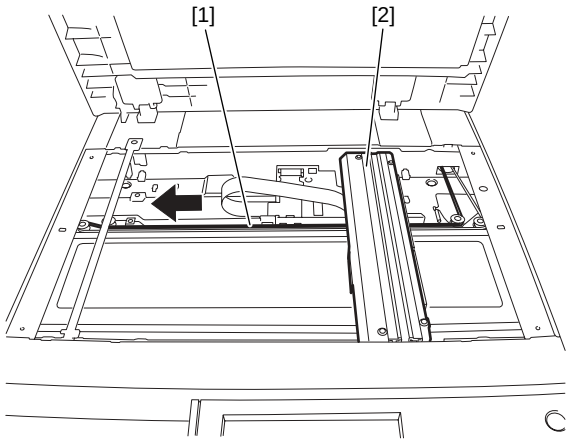
F-5-49

5.4.8 CCD HP Sensor

5.4.8.1 Removing the CCD Unit HP Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

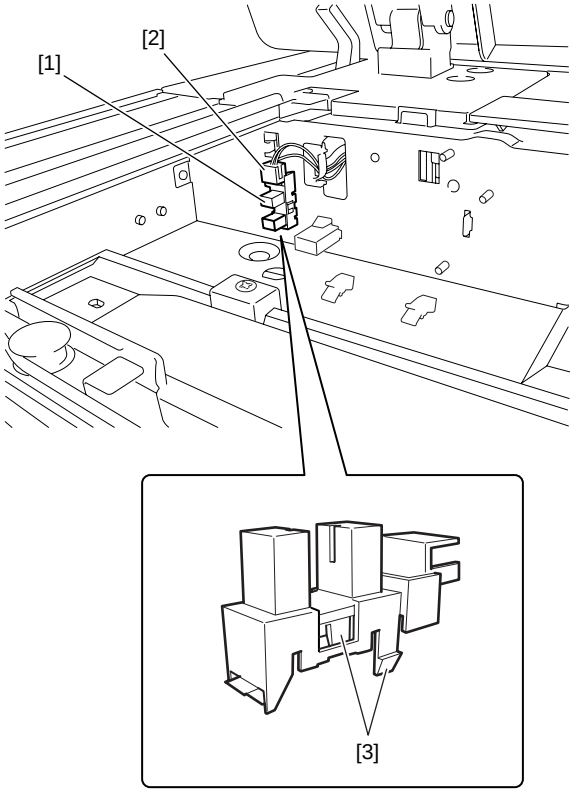
1)Remove the copyboard glass.
2)Remove the ADF reading glass.
3)Pull the drive belt [1] in the direction of the arrow and move the CCD [2] to the position shown in the figure.



F-5-50

4)Remove the CCD unit HP sensor [1].
-1 connector [2]

> ⚠
> When removing the sensor, it is good to push inward the claw [3] at the rear side.



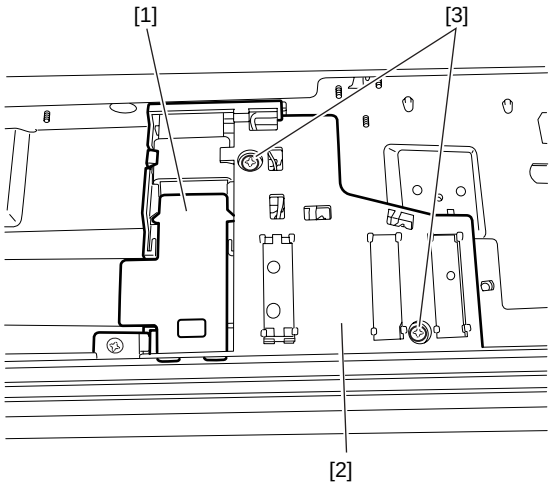
F-5-51

5.4.9 Original Size Sensor

5.4.9.1 Removing the Original Size Sensor

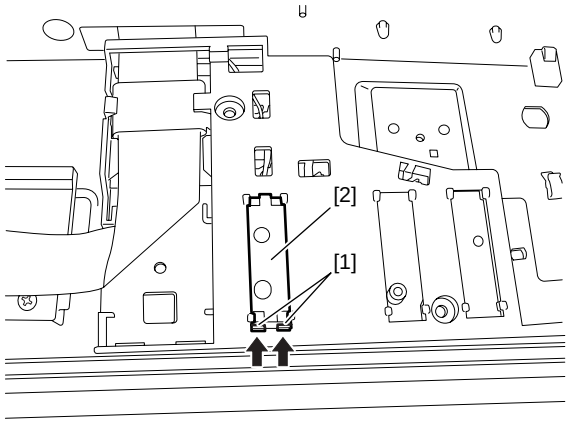
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Remove the ADF communication cable (only for machine with ADF installed).
2)Open the copyboard cover (platen board cover/ADF).
3)Remove the reader rear cover.
4)Remove the copyboard glass.
5)Remove the cable retainer [1] and the sensor cover [2].
-2 screws [3]



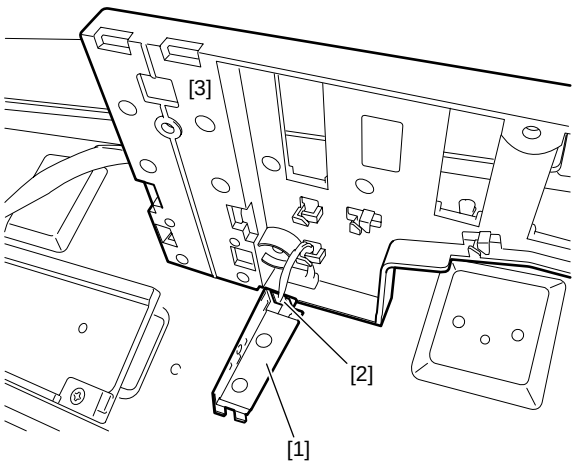
F-5-52

6)Remove the hook [1] and the original size sensor [2].



F-5-53

7)Turn the sensor cover around and remove the connector [2] of the original size sensor [1].



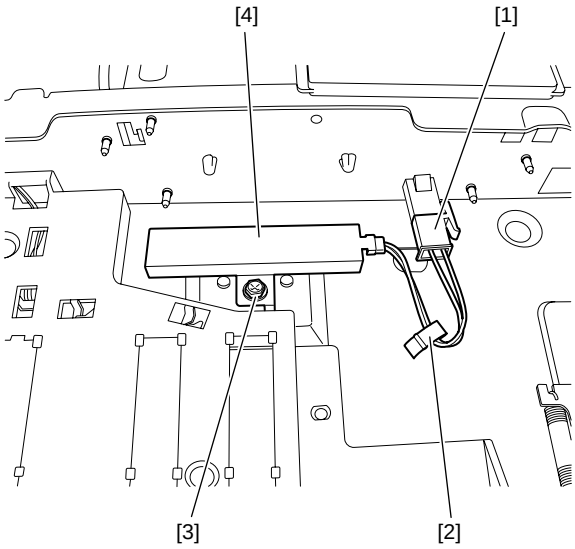
F-5-54

5.4.10 Reader Heater (option)

5.4.10.1 Removing the Reader Heater (Right)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1)Open the platen board cover or the ADF.
2)Remove the copyboard glass.
3)Remove the connector [1], and then the cable from the wire saddle [2].
4)Remove the screw [3] and the reader heater (right) [4].

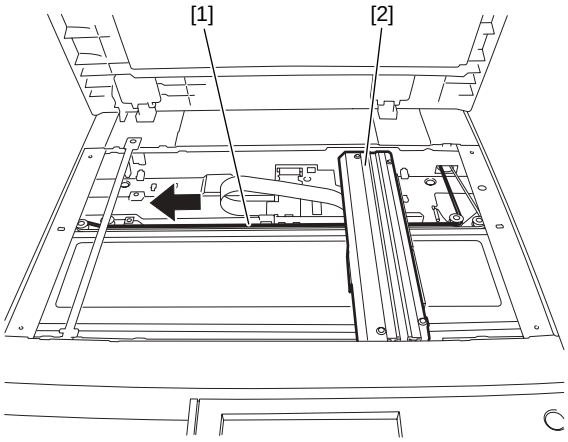


F-5-55

5.4.10.2 Removing the Reader Heater (Left)

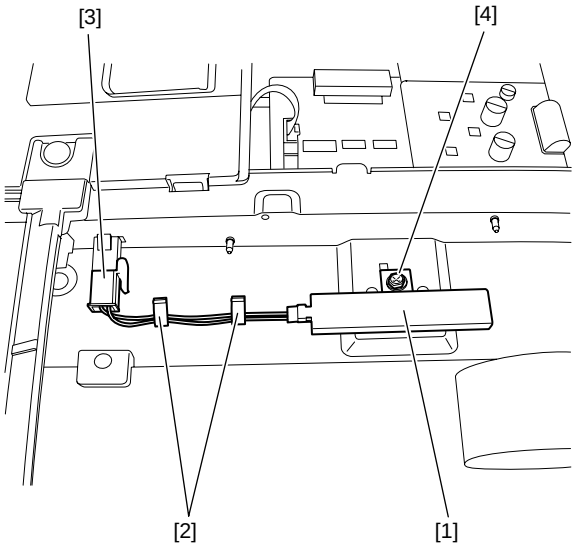
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the platen board cover or the ADF.
2) Remove the copyboard glass.
3) Pull the drive belt (at the front side) [1] in the direction of the arrow and move the CCD [2] to the position shown in the figure.



F-5-56

4) Remove the reader heater (left) [1].
-2 wire saddles [2]
-1 connector [3]
-1 screw [4]



F-5-57

Chapter 6 Laser Exposure

Contents

6.1 Construction 6-1
6.1.1 Specifications/Controls/Functions 6-1
6.1.2 Main Configuration Parts 6-1
6.1.3 Control System Configuration 6-2
6.2 Basic Sequence 6-3
6.2.1 Basic Sequence 6-3
6.3 Various Controls 6-4
6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing 6-4
6.3.1.1 Laser ON/OFF Control 6-4
6.3.1.2 Main Scanning Synchronous Control 6-5
6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light 6-5
6.3.2.1 APC Control 6-5
6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor 6-6
6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control 6-6
6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter 6-7
6.3.4.1 Laser Shutter Control 6-7
6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure 6-8
6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit 6-8
6.4.1.1 Before Removing the Laser Unit 6-8
6.4.1.2 Removing the Laser Unit 6-8
6.4.1.3 After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit 6-8

6.1 Construction

6.1.1 Specifications/Controls/Functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Laser light

T-6-1

The number of laser light	4
Output	10 mW
Wave length	775nm to 899nm (Infrared laser)

Scanner motor

T-6-2

Motor type	DC brushless motor
Te number of rotation	IR3225: Approx 16000rpm (1-speed control) iR3245/3235/3230: Cassette pickup: approx 27000 rpm Manual feed pickup: approx 16000 rpm (2-speed control)
Type of bearing	Oil

Polygon mirror

T-6-3

The number of facet:	6 (*40)

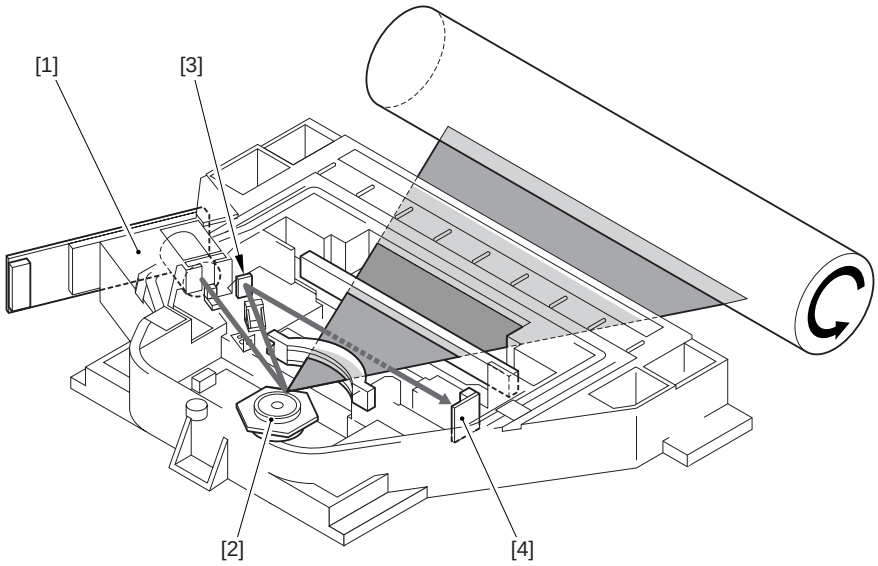
Controls

T-6-4

Synchronous control	Main scanning direction synchronous control
Laser intensity control	APC control
Others	Laser ON/OFF control
	Laser scanner motor control
	Laser shutter control

6.1.2 Main Configuration Parts

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-6-1

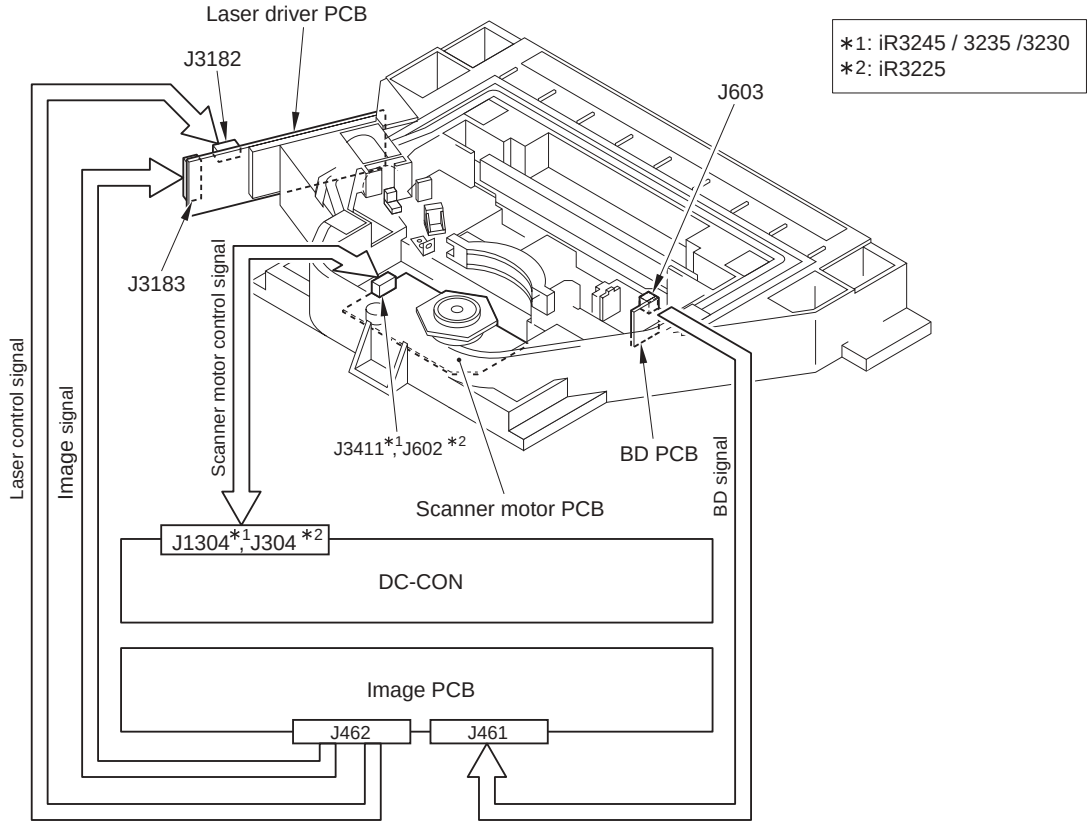
T-6-5

Name	Function
[1] Laser Unit	Emits laser
[2] Polygon mirror	Scans the laser light in the main scanning direction
[3] BD mirror	Reflects the laser light in the BD PCB direction
[4] BD PCB	Generates the BD signal

6.1.3 Control System Configuration

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Controls for the laser exposure system are mainly performed by the DC controller PCB and image PCB.



F-6-2

T-6-6

Signal name	Function
Image signal	
LVDS0N	A laser image data signal entry
LVDS0P	A laser image data signal entry
LVDS1N	C laser image data signal entry
LVDS1P	C laser image data signal entry
LVDS2N	B laser image data signal entry
LVDS2P	B laser image data signal entry
LVDS3N	D laser image data signal entry
LVDS3P	D laser image data signal entry
Laser control signal	
APC_CTRL0-0	A/B laser control signal
APC_CTRL0-1	A/B laser control signal
APC_CTRL0-2	A/B laser control signal
APC_CTRL1-0	C/D laser control signal
APC_CTRL1-1	C/D laser control signal
APC_CTRL1-2	C/D laser control signal
Scanner motor control signal	
POLYGON_M_FG	FG output signal
M_ACC*1, POLYGON_M_ACC*2	Motor speed-up signal
M_DEC*1, POLYGON_M_DEC*2	Motor speed-down signal
POLYGON_M_STANBY*2	Scanner motor speed change control signal
POLYGON_FG_PULS*2	Not used
BD signal	
BD	BD signal

*1: iR3245 / 3235 / 3230
*2: iR3225

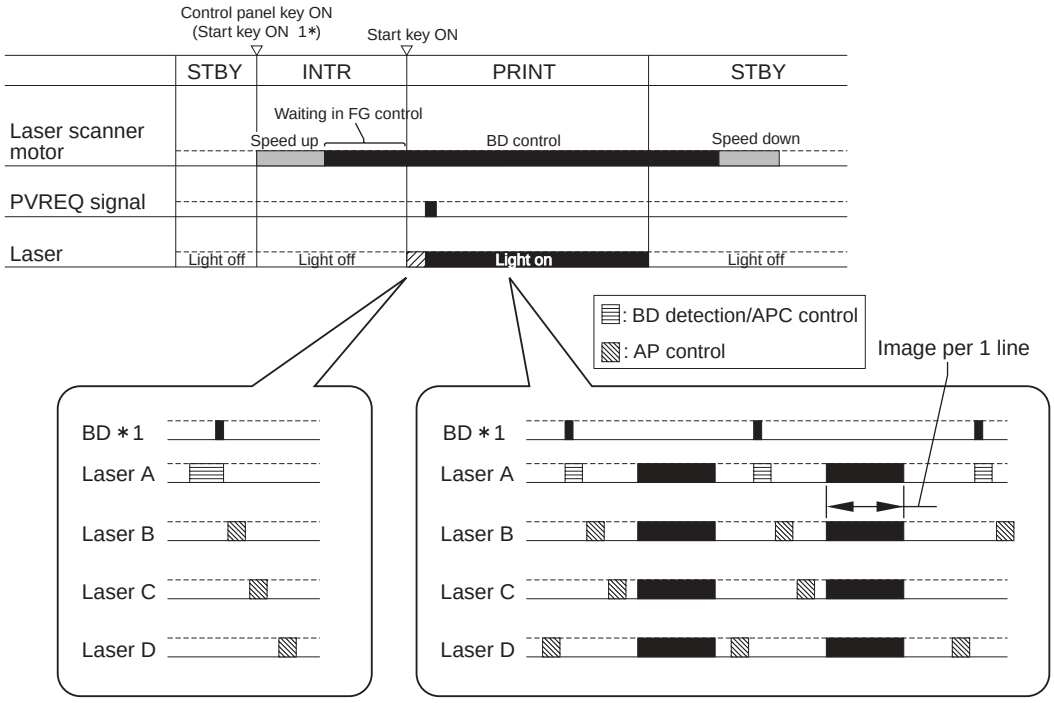
6.2 Basic Sequence

6.2.1 Basic Sequence

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Initial rotation INTR):
After the control panel key is ON, the machine starts the scanner motor and rotates the laser scanner motor until it reaches the number of target rotation while keeping all laser OFF. Once it reaches the target, the machine enters stand-by mode. (FG control)
If pressing the start key before the control panel key is ON*, standby time gets shorter after the scanner motor reaches the target.
Print (PRINT)]
When copy start key is ON, the machine drives A laser. After BD PCB detects A laser, the machine performs the APC (laser intensity) control of each laser. Once the BD signal reaches the specified cycle, the machine is ready to print. Image data is output from the main controller based on the synchronous signal and laser is emitted corresponding to it.

In the case of A4, 1 sheet



*1: BD signal is generated based on A laser light. Only A laser light reaches BD sensor on BD PCB and B/C/D laser does not reach.

F-6-3

6.3 Various Controls

6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing

6.3.1.1 Laser ON/OFF Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Laser ON/OFF control is dependent on the combination of the laser control signal (A/B laser: CNT1-0/1-1/1-2, C/D laser: CNT0-0/0-1/0-2) from the image PCB.

<A laser/B laser>

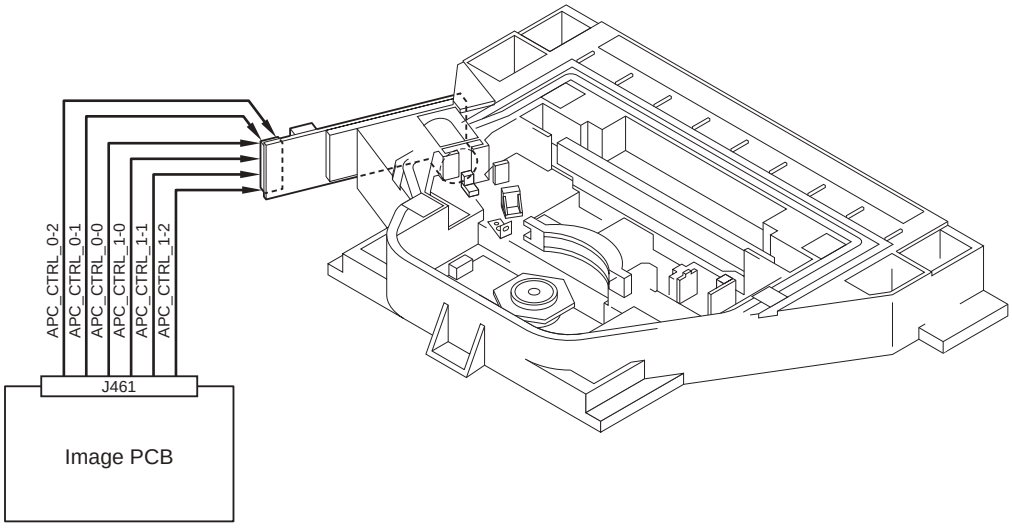
T-6-7

Laser control signal			Laser status	
CNT1-2	**CNT1-1**	**CNT1-0**	**A Laser**	**B Laser**
0	1	0	ON (For APC control)	OFF
0	1	1	OFF	OFF
0	0	1	OFF	ON (For APC control)
0	1	1	OFF	OFF
1	1	1	Video signal entry arrowed	Video signal entry arrowed
0	1	1	OFF	OFF
0	0	1	OFF	ON (For APC control)
0	1	1	OFF	OFF

<C laser/D laser>

T-6-8

Laser control signal			Laser status	
CNT0-2	**CNT0-1**	**CNT0-0**	**C Laser**	**D Laser**
0	0	1	ON (For APC control)	OFF
0	1	1	OFF	OFF
0	1	0	OFF	ON (For APC control)
0	1	1	OFF	OFF
1	1	1	Video signal entry arrowed	Video signal entry arrowed
0	1	1	OFF	OFF
0	0	1	OFF	ON (For APC control)
0	1	0	OFF	OFF

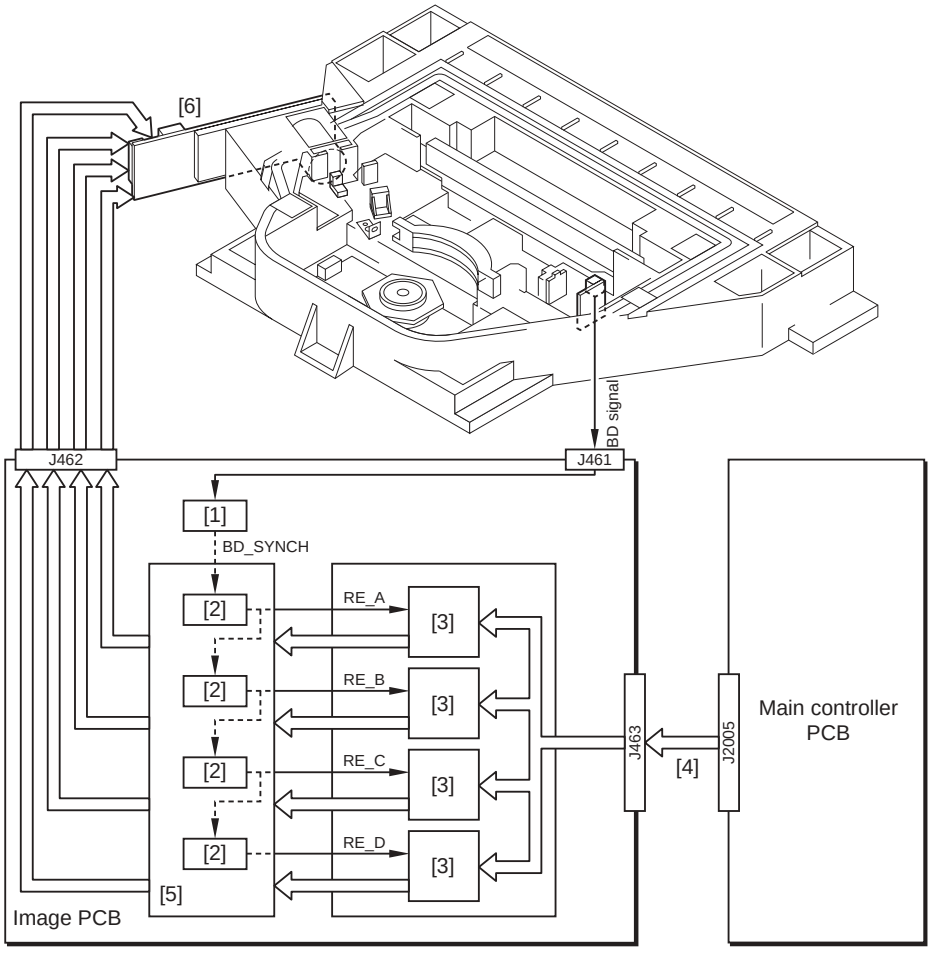


F-6-4

6.3.1.2 Main Scanning Synchronous Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Main scanning synchronous control is operated at synchronous PCB based on BD synchronous signal.
Based on BD signal that is formed from A laser light detected by BD PCB, BD synchronous signal for each laser is formed inside image PCB.
Image data written in the line memory is read out by the readable signal (RE_A, RE_B, RE_C, RE_D) according to the 4 phase differences formed inside the delay PCB based on the BD synchronous signal (BD_SYNCH) and is sent to the laser driver.



F-6-5

[1] Synchronous PCB
[2] Delay PCB
[3] Line memory
[4] VDO
[5] VDO signal process unit
[6] Laser driver PCB
BD_SYNCH: BD synchronous signal
RE_A/B/C/D: Readable signal

MEMO: Regarding BD signal formation
Not B laser but A laser only reaches BD sensor on BD PCB. BD signal is formed based on A laser light.

6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light

6.3.2.1 APC Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

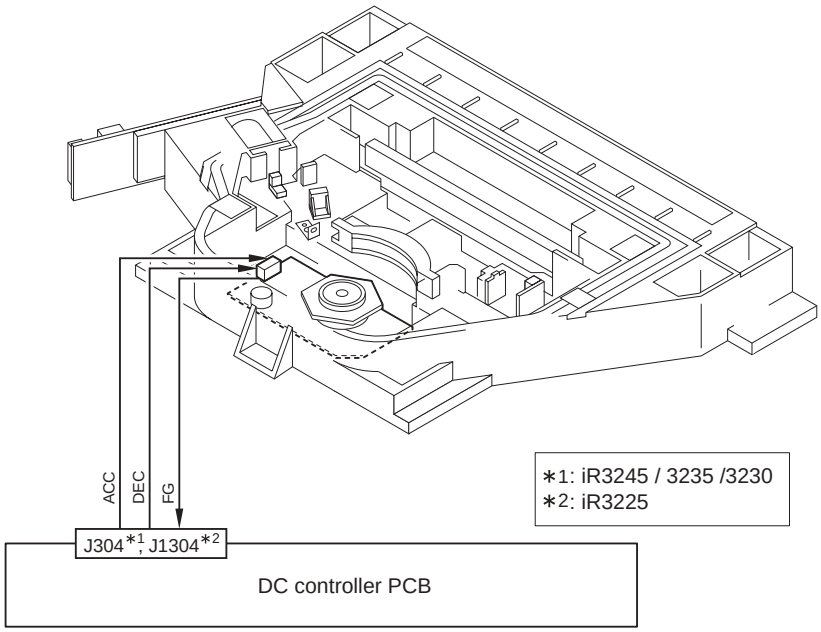
The machine monitors the laser light that is emitted to the built-in photo diode of laser diode and adjusts the laser to appropriate intensity.

6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor

6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

From when the laser scanner motor starts and the laser scanner motor reaches the number of target rotation to before image formation starts, the machine controls the rotation speed by referring to the laser scanner motor rotation speed signal (FG signal). During image formation, it controls the laser scanner motor rotation speed based on BD signal.
Laser scanner motor rotation speed is controlled by speed-up signal (ACC signal) and speed-down signal (DEC signal).



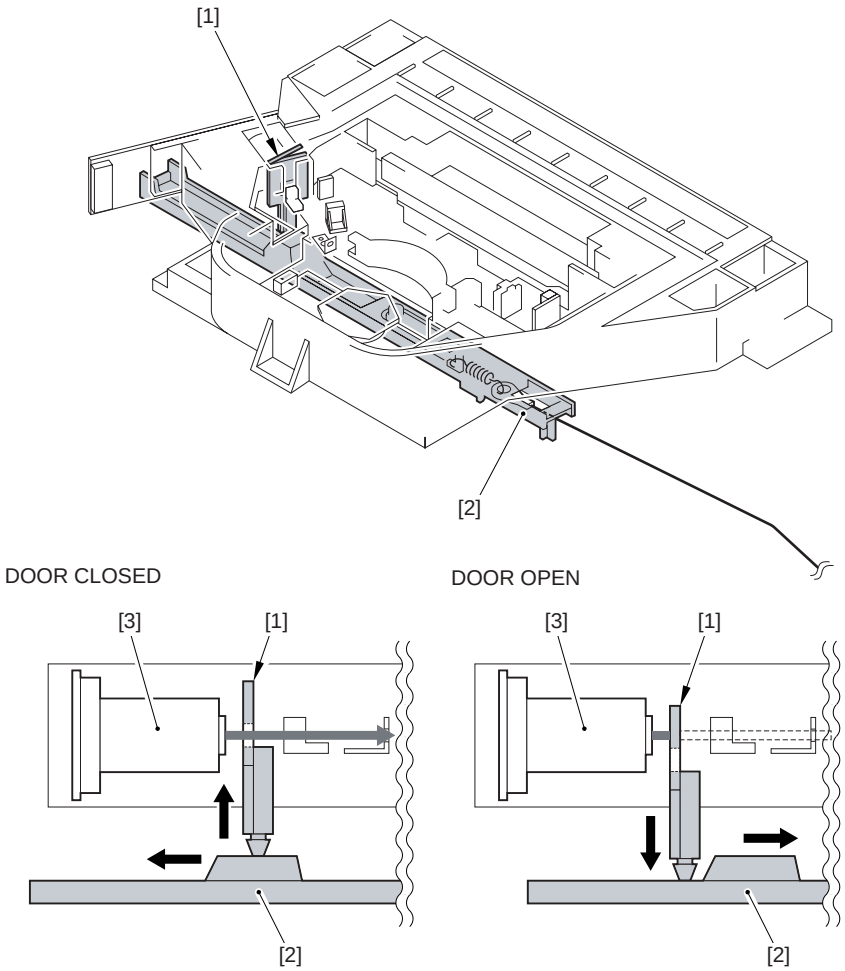
F-6-6

6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter

6.3.4.1 Laser Shutter Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When the right door opens, laser shutter will be closed by laser shutter link that works in conjunction with the right door and the laser light is blocked. Also, when the front door or right door open is detected, laser scanner motor and the laser emission will be turned OFF.



F-6-7

Laser Shutter Control
[1] Laser shutter
[2] Laser shutter link (works in conjunction with the right door)
[3] Laser unit

6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure

6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit

6.4.1.1 Before Removing the Laser Unit

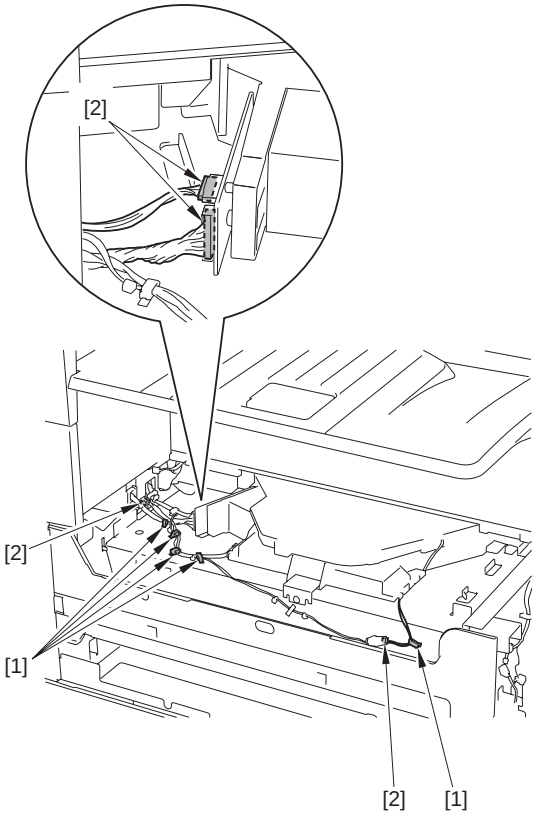
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
3) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]

6.4.1.2 Removing the Laser Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

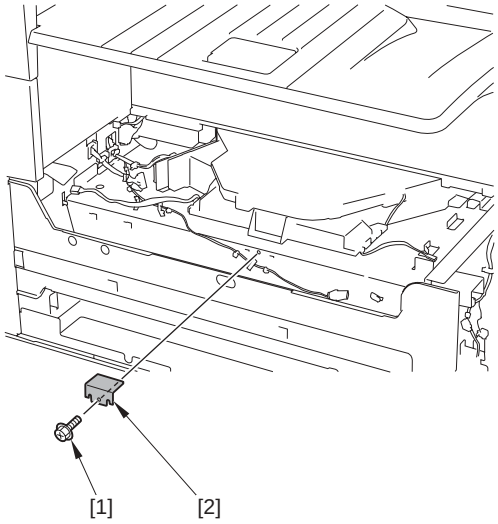
1) Open the 5 wire saddles [1] at the left side to disconnect the 4 connectors [2].



F-6-8

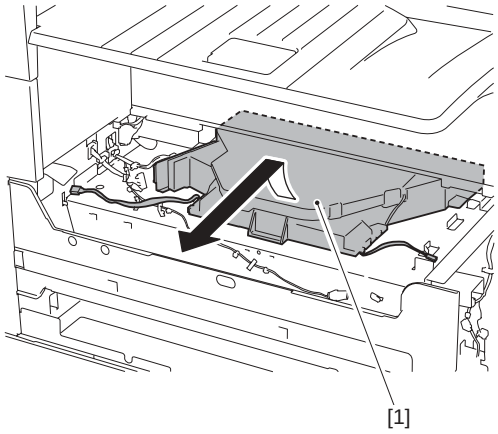
Be sure not to make the disconnected connector [1] come into contact with the PCB attached to the laser scanner unit (The PCB is equipped with the laser intensity adjustment volume resistor, so contact with the PCB can change the adjustment setting.

2) Disconnect the connector [1] to remove the fixture [2].



F-6-9

3) Lift the front of the laser unit [1] to pull it out to the front.



F-6-10

When pulling out the laser scanner, be careful not to touch the PCB attached to the laser scanner unit (The PCB is equipped with the laser intensity adjustment volume resistor, so contact with the PCB can change the adjustment setting).

6.4.1.3 After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When replacing the laser unit, enter the values recorded on the label on the laser scanner unit to be replaced for the following in service mode.

Difference in magnification between the lasers
[1] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ1-K
[2] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ2-K
[3] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ3-K

Difference in phase between the lasers
[4] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ4-K
[5] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ5-K
[6] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ6-K

Chapter 7 Image Formation

Contents

7.1 Construction 7-1
7.1.1 Specifications of the Image Formation System 7-1
7.1.2 Major Components of the Image Formation System 7-2
7.2 Image Formation Process 7-3
7.2.1 Image Formation Process (outline) 7-3
7.2.2 Image Formation Process (image formation) 7-4
7.3 Basic Sequence 7-5
7.3.1 Sequence of Operation (initial rotation) 7-5
7.3.2 Sequence of Operation (copying) 7-5
7.3.3 Sequence of Operation (last rotation) 7-6
7.4 Image Stabilization Control 7-7
7.4.1 Overview 7-7
7.4.2 APVC Control 7-7
7.4.3 ATVC Control 7-7
7.4.4 PASCAL Control (image gradation) 7-8
7.5 Drum Unit 7-9
7.5.1 Outline of the Drum Unit 7-9
7.5.1.1 Configuration 7-9
7.5.2 Charging Mechanism 7-10
7.5.2.1 Controlling the Primary Charging Bias 7-10
7.5.2.2 Primary Charging Roller Cleaning Mechanism 7-10
7.6 Drum Cleaner Unit 7-10
7.6.1 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning 7-10
7.7 Developing Unit 7-11
7.7.1 Configuration 7-11
7.7.2 Controlling the Developing Bias 7-11
7.8 Toner Container 7-12
7.8.1 Configuration 7-12
7.8.2 Route of Toner Supply 7-13
7.8.3 Controlling the Drive of the Toner Cartridge 7-13
7.8.4 Toner Supply Control 7-14
7.8.5 Recovery Sequence 7-14
7.8.6 Toner Level Detection 7-14
7.9 Transfer Unit 7-15
7.9.1 Outline of the Transfer Unit 7-15
7.9.1.1 Outline 7-15
7.9.2 Controlling the Transfer Bias 7-15
7.9.2.1 Transfer Roller Bias Control 7-15
7.9.3 Cleaning 7-15
7.9.3.1 Transfer Roller Cleaning Mechanism 7-15
7.9.4 Separation Mechanism 7-15
7.9.4.1 Controlling the Static Eliminator Bias 7-15
7.10 Transfer Mechanism 7-16
7.10.1 Transfer Guide Bias 7-16
7.10.1.1 Transfer Guide Bias Control 7-16
7.11 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning 7-17
7.11.1 Outline 7-17
7.11.2 Collection of Waste Toner 7-17
7.11.3 Checking the Waste Toner Box 7-17
7.12 Parts Replacement Procedure 7-18

7.12.1 Pre-Exposure Lamp 7-18
7.12.1.1 Before Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp 7-18
7.12.1.2 Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp 7-18
7.12.2 Drum Unit 7-18
7.12.2.1 Before Removing the Drum Unit 7-18
7.12.2.2 Removing the Drum Unit 7-18
7.12.2.3 After Replacing Drum Unit 7-19
7.12.3 Hopper Assembly 7-19
7.12.3.1 Before Removing the Hopper Unit 7-19
7.12.3.2 Removing the Hopper Unit 7-19
7.12.4 Sub Hopper 7-20
7.12.4.1 Before Removing the Sub Hopper 7-20
7.12.4.2 Removing the Sub Hopper 7-20
7.12.5 Developing Assembly 7-21
7.12.5.1 Before Removing the Developing Assembly 7-21
7.12.5.2 Removing the Developing Assembly 7-21
7.12.5.3 After Replacing Developing Assembly/Developing Cylinder 7-22
7.12.6 Developing Cylinder 7-22
7.12.6.1 Before Removing the Developing Cylinder 7-22
7.12.6.2 Removing the Developing Cylinder 7-22
7.12.6.3 After Replacing Developing Assembly/Developing Cylinder 7-23
7.12.7 Transfer Charging Roller 7-24
7.12.7.1 Removing the Transfer Roller 7-24
7.12.8 Waste Toner Box 7-24
7.12.8.1 Removing the Waste Toner Container 7-24
7.12.9 Toner Level Sensor 7-25
7.12.9.1 Before Removing the Toner Level Sensor 7-25
7.12.9.2 Removing the Toner Level Sensor 7-25
7.12.10 Toner Feedscrew Motor 7-25
7.12.10.1 Before Removing the Toner Feed Screw Motor 7-25
7.12.10.2 Removing the Toner Feed Screw Motor 7-25
7.12.11 Static Charge Eliminator 7-25
7.12.11.1 Removing the Static Eliminator 7-25

7.1 Construction

7.1.1 Specifications of the Image Formation System

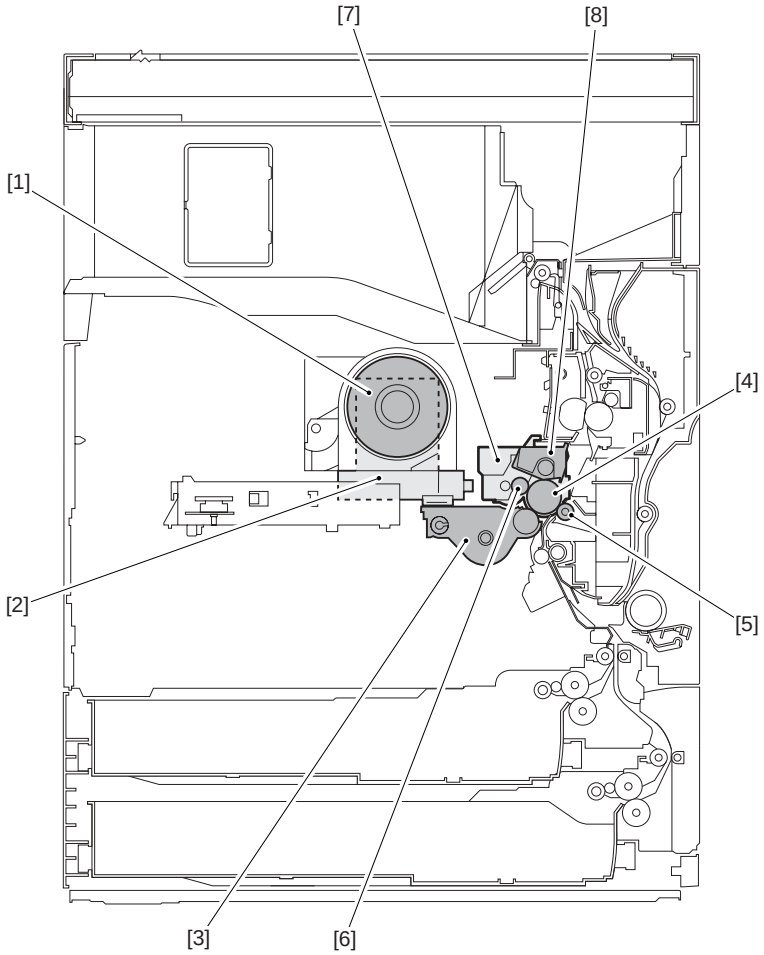
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-7-1

Item		Specifications/Mechanism/Method
Photosensitive drum	Type	OPC
	Diameter	30 mm
	Cleaning mechanism	by cleaning blade
	Process speed	230 mm/sec (iR3245/3235/3230; Cassette) 137 mm/sec (iR3245/3235/3230; Manual feed tray) 137 mm/sec (iR3225)
Primary charging	Charging method	by roller (AC + DC)
	Diameter	16 mm
	Cleaning mechanism	by brush roller
Developing Assembly	Development method	dry, 1-component toner projection
	Diameter	20 mm
	Toner	magnetic negative toner
	Toner level detection	by toner level sensor (inside sub hopper and developing assembly)
Toner cartridge	Toner variable resistor	1220 g (iR3245/3235/3230) 1060 g (iR3225)
	Toner level detection	none
Transfer charging	Charging method	by roller (DC)
	Diameter	16 mm
	Cleaning mechanism	cleaning bias application
Separation	Separation method	static separation (static eliminator) + Curvature separation

7.1.2 Major Components of the Image Formation System

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



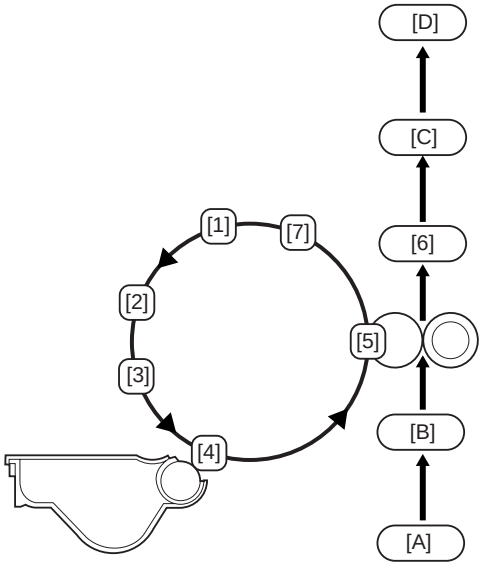
F-7-1

[1] Toner cartridge
[2] Sub hopper
[3] Developing assembly
[4] Photosensitive drum
[5] Transfer roller
[6] Primary charging roller
[7] Drum unit
[8] Drum cleaning unit

7.2 Image Formation Process

7.2.1 Image Formation Process (outline)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-7-2

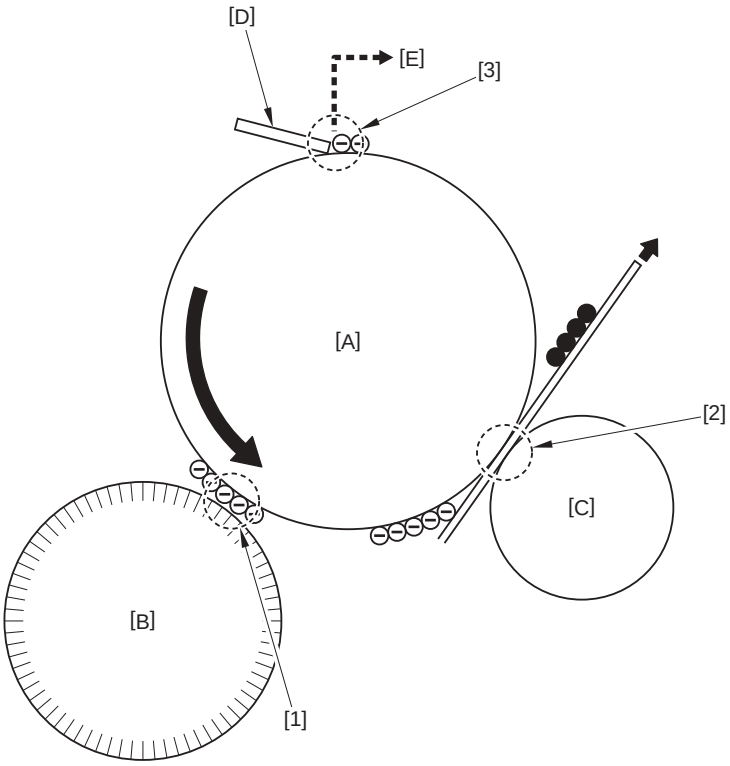
T-7-2

Item	Description
[1]Pre-exposure	removes residual charges from the drum.
[2]Primary charging	charges the surface of the photosensitive drum to a uniform negative potential.
[3]Laser exposure	forms a latent static image on the drum.
[4]Development	forms a visible image on the drum.
[5]Transfer	transfers images from the drum to paper.
[6]Separation	separates paper from the drum.
[7]Drum cleaning	removes toner from the drum.

[A] Pickup
[B] Registration
[C] Fixing
[D] Delivery

7.2.2 Image Formation Process (image formation)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-7-3

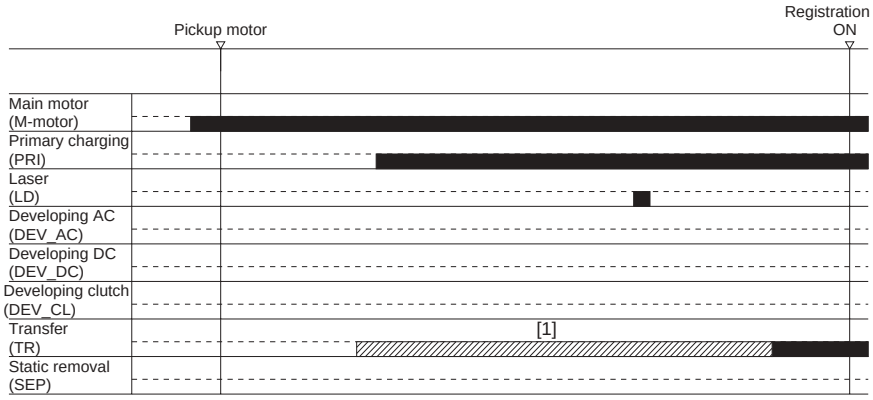
[1] The difference in potential between the drum [A] surface and the developing cylinder [B] causes toner to adhere to the latent static image on the drum, turning the image into a visible image.
[2] The bias voltage applied to the transfer roller causes the toner to be transferred to the paper.
[3] The cleaning blade [D] in contact with the drum scrapes off the residual toner from the drum. The residual drum is collected into the collected toner container [E].

7.3 Basic Sequence

7.3.1 Sequence of Operation (initial rotation)

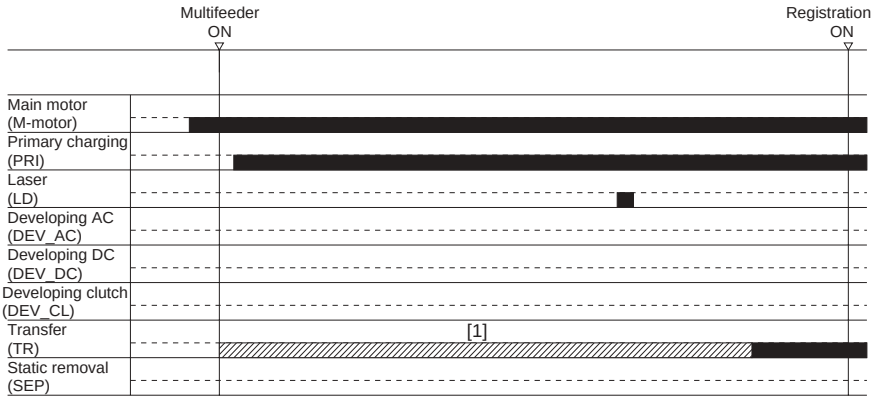
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The sequence of operation of initial rotation is as follows:
Pickup from the Cassette



F-7-4

Pickup from the Manual Feeder



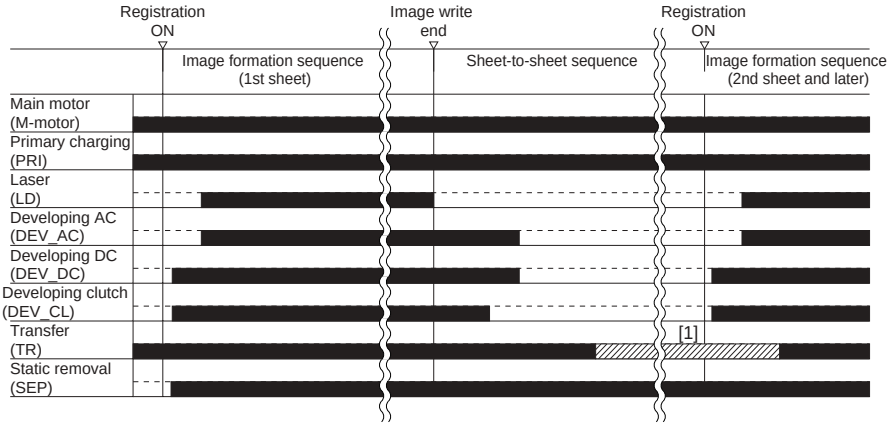
F-7-5

In [1] above, a cleaning bias (-2600 V) is applied.

7.3.2 Sequence of Operation (copying)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The sequence of operation during copying is as follows:



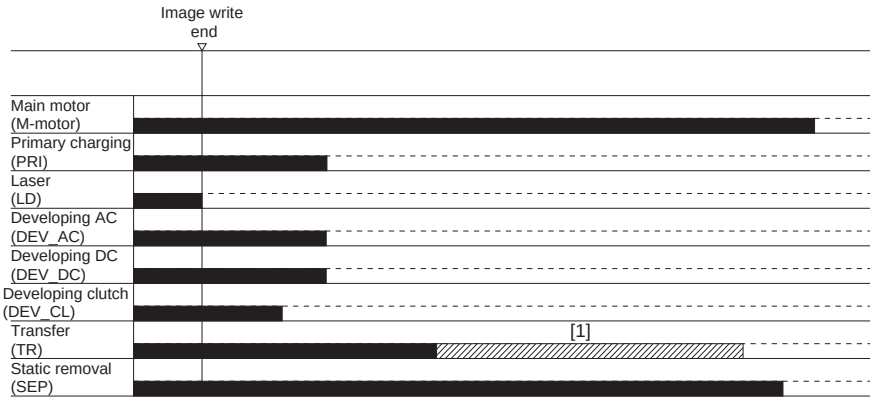
F-7-6

In [1] above, a cleaning bias (-2600 V) is applied.

7.3.3 Sequence of Operation (last rotation)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The sequence of operation of last rotation is as follows:



F-7-7

In [1] above, a cleaning bias (-2600 V) is applied.

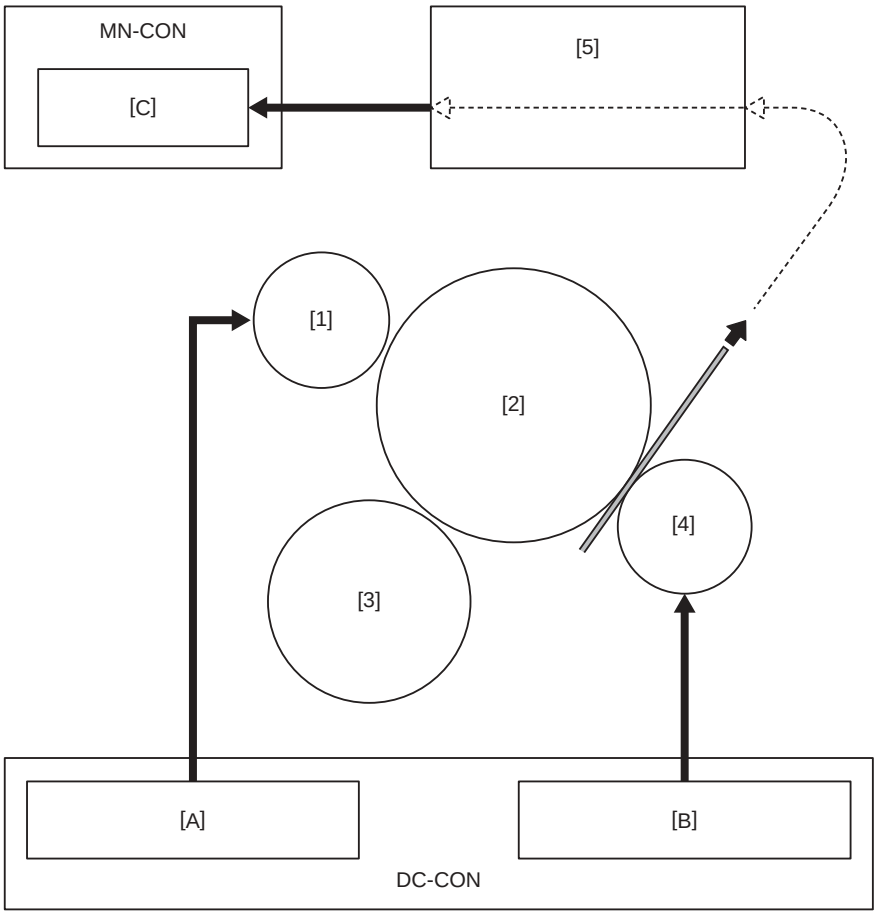
7.4 Image Stabilization Control

7.4.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

At times, changes in the environment or wear on the machine can cause its image output to become unstable. To obtain a stable image, the machine uses the following control mechanisms.

[A] APVC control: Corrects the primary charging bias.
[B] ATVC control: Corrects the transfer bias.
[C] PASCAL control: Corrects the gradation density of an image.



F-7-8

[1] Primary charging roller [2] Photosensitive drum
[3] Developing assembly [4] Transfer roller
[5] Reader MN-CON: Main controller
DC-CON: DC controller

7.4.2 APVC Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The term APVC stands for "auto primary voltage control," and it is a mechanism used to control the primary charging application voltage (DC component) to suit the film thickness of the machine's photosensitive drum. APVC is performed every 500 sheets while the machine is in operation. It is forcibly performed when the drum unit is replaced.

7.4.3 ATVC Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine is provided with a constant current control mechanism that can be enabled or disabled in service mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > TRANS-SW.

7.4.4 PASCAL Control (image gradation)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Changes in temperature/humidity or wear on the machine can cause changes in gradation characteristics.
The PASCAL control mechanism is used to stabilize gradation characteristics of images on paper.
It makes up for the changes in gradation characteristics in response to changes in temperature/humidity or wear on the machine.

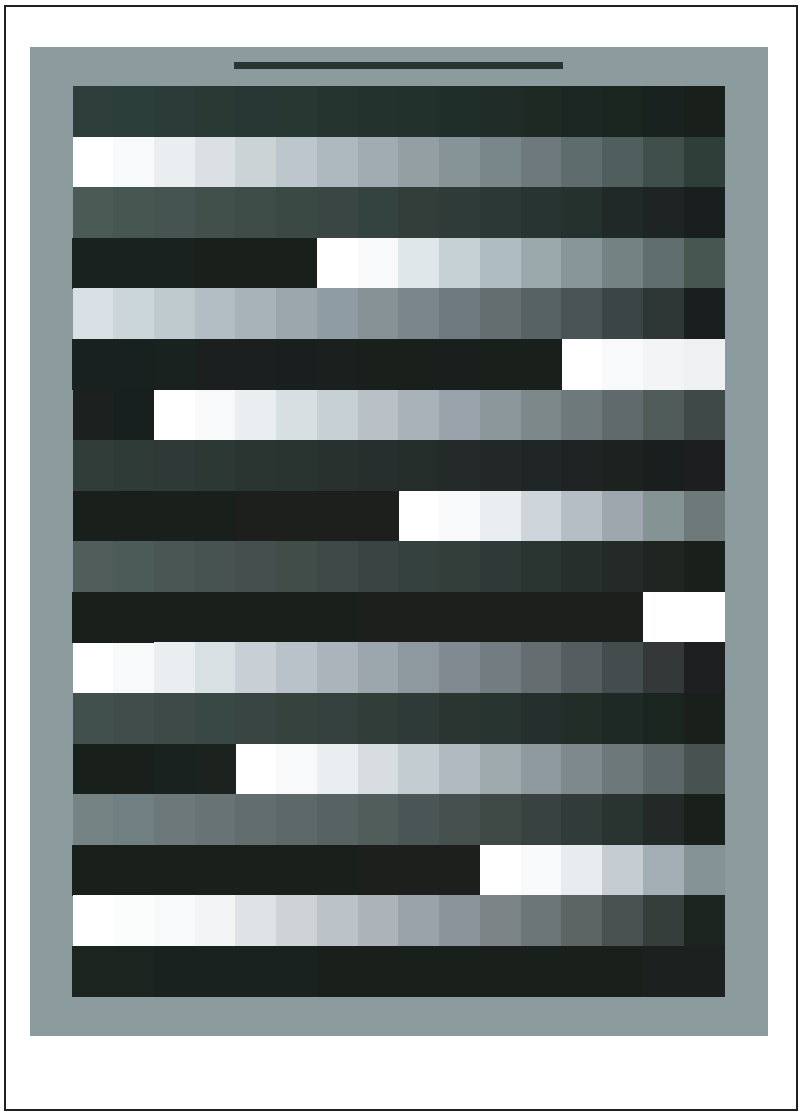
Description of Control

Start-up
V
Prints out the test pattern stored in the main controller.
V
Sets the previously printed-out test print in the reader and reads it by the scanner.
V
Prepares the image correction table A *1(data processing)
V
End

*1 The image correction table A created in PASCAL control is applied only in copy mode.

Timing of Control
Any time: During execution of automatic gradation correction in the user mode

<TEST PATTERN>



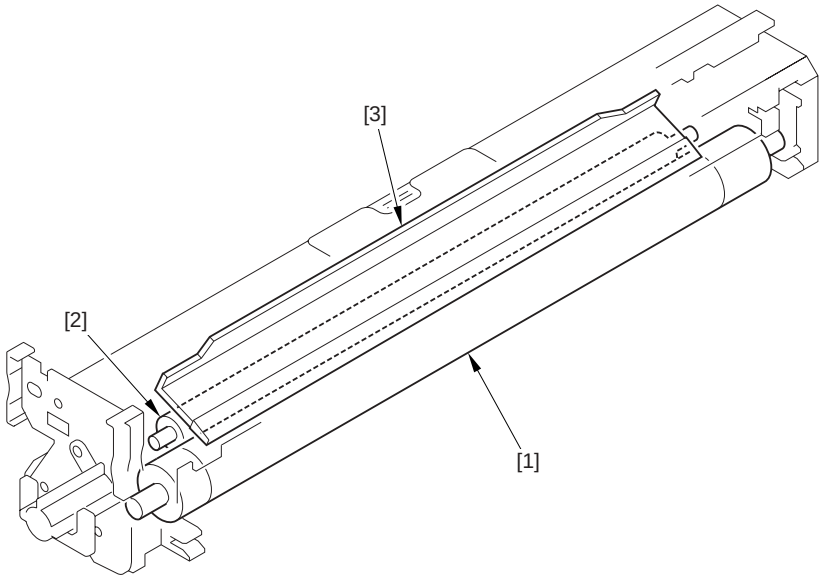
F-7-9

7.5 Drum Unit

7.5.1 Outline of the Drum Unit

7.5.1.1 Configuration

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-7-10

[1] Photosensitive drum
[2] Primary charging assembly
[3] Cleaning blade

7.5.2 Charging Mechanism

7.5.2.1 Controlling the Primary Charging Bias

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The primary charging bias consists of AC and DC components.

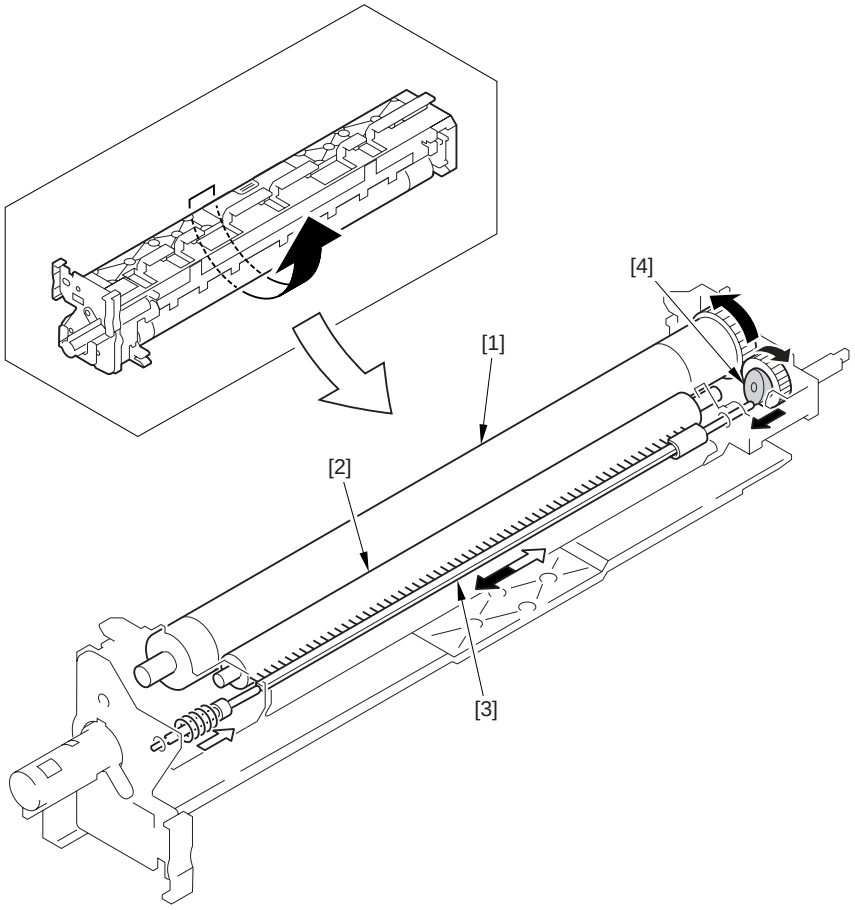
AC bias:	2700 Vp-p (max.)
DC bias:	-450 V to -850 V

These AC and DC biases are applied between sheets while an image is being formed (until the end of the ongoing job).

7.5.2.2 Primary Charging Roller Cleaning Mechanism

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine uses a brush [3] to clean the primary charging roller [2], which remains in contact with the photosensitive drum [1]. The brush has a reciprocating mechanism and is driven by a cam [4], operating while the photosensitive drum is being driven.



F-7-11

7.6 Drum Cleaner Unit

7.6.1 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning

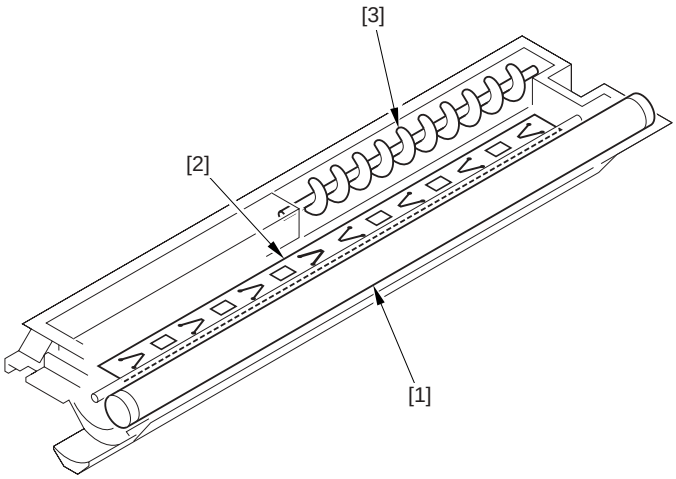
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The cleaning blade is kept in contact with the surface of the photosensitive drum. It serves to scrape off the residual toner left behind from transfer to paper for collection in the waste toner box.

7.7 Developing Unit

7.7.1 Configuration

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-7-12

[1] Developing cylinder
[2] Stirring plate
[3] Feeding screw

7.7.2 Controlling the Developing Bias

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The developing bias consists of AC and DC components.

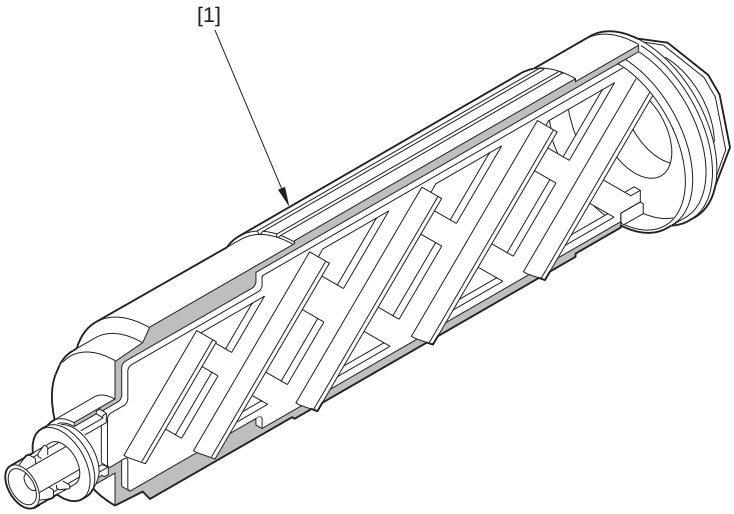
AC bias:	800 Vp-p
DC bias:	-450 to -650 V

Both these AC and DC biases are applied while an image is being formed, but are not applied between sheets.

7.8 Toner Container

7.8.1 Configuration

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

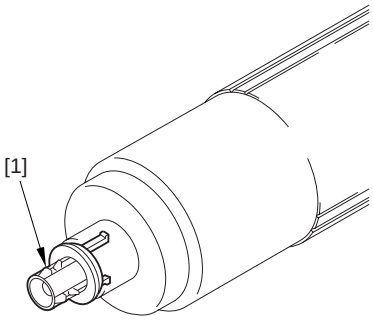


F-7-13

[1] Toner Cartridge

Points to Note on Handing the Toner Cartridge

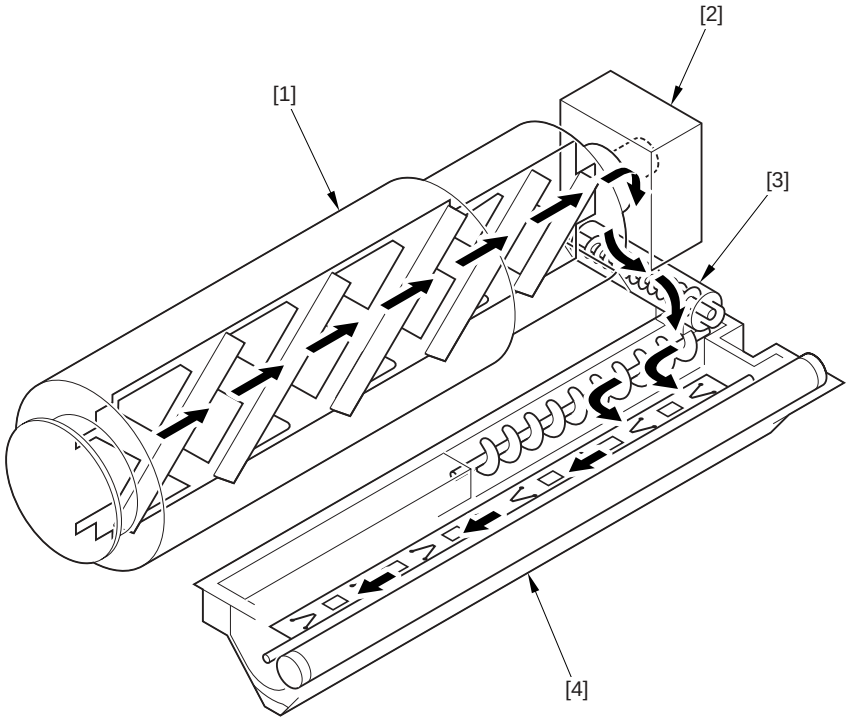
- Care should be taken not to bump the toner stop [1] against the covers or the like when and after removing the toner cartridge. Since the toner stop comes off easily, toner scattering may be resulted if it comes off by accident.
- Keep the toner cartridge horizontal after removing. Since the toner stop [1] comes off easily as mentioned above, toner scattering may be resulted if the toner cartridge is placed with the toner stop side down.



7.8.2 Route of Toner Supply

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When the user fits the toner cartridge [1] in place, toner is temporarily stored in the sub hopper [2], inside which is a sensor (TS2) that makes sure that the amount of toner remains at a specific level at all times. When the developing assembly [4] requests a supply of toner, the machine rotates the feedscrew [3] to move toner from the sub hopper to the developing assembly.
The machine's toner cartridge serves as a hopper (as found in past models).

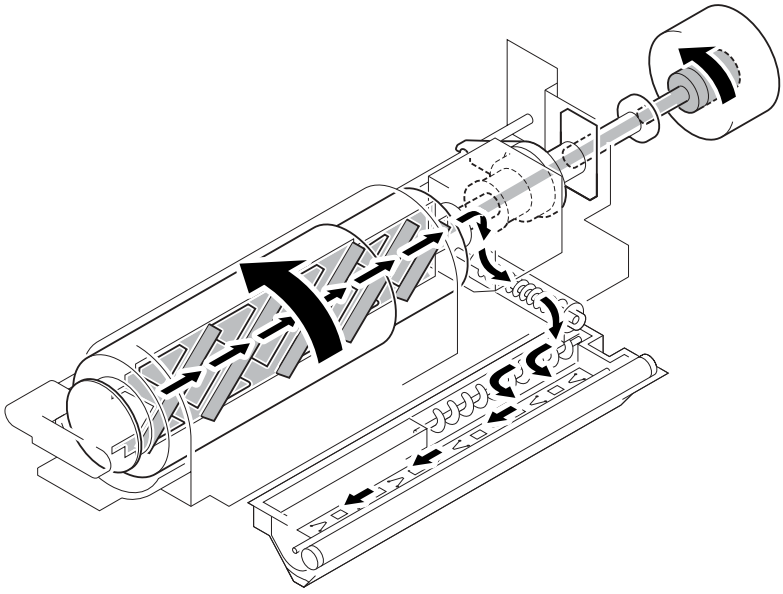


F-7-14

7.8.3 Controlling the Drive of the Toner Cartridge

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When a request is made for a supply of toner, the toner cartridge drive motor (M5) rotates in the direction shown in the following figure; its drive is transmitted from the drive motor to the toner cartridge, thus rotating the toner cartridge.



F-7-15

7.8.4 Toner Supply Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Supply of Toner from the Toner Bottle to the Sub Hopper
If the "absence of toner inside the sub hopper" is detected while the main motor (M2/M22) is rotating, the toner bottle motor (M5) is rotated intermittently (on for 3 sec, off for 2 sec).
The length of time during which the absence is detected is counted using a soft counter that increases its count for each cycle of intermittent rotation.
When the count reaches 20 (approximately 100 sec), the machine assumes that the sub hopper has become empty, and displays the "Add Toner" message on its control panel.
The counter is reset when the presence of toner inside the sub hopper is detected during any cycle of intermittent rotation.

Supply of Toner from the Sub Hopper to the Developing Assembly
If the "absence of toner inside the developing assembly" is detected while the main motor (M2/M22) is rotating and the developing clutch is on, the machine rotates the hopper motor (M12) intermittently (on for 1 sec, off for 1 sec).
The length of time during which the absence is detected is counted using a soft counter that increases its count when the developing sensor (TS1) state is off during a single cycle of intermittent rotation.
When the count reaches 20 (approximately 40 sec), the machine assumes that the developing assembly is more or less empty (i.e., there is a possibility of a blank sheet of paper printed if printing continues), and issue a "No Toner" error (prohibition of image formation).
The counter is reset when the "presence of toner inside the developing assembly" is detected during intermittent rotation.

> **Detection of E020-0000**
> If the "absence of toner" is detected by the developing toner level sensor (TS1) and the "presence of toner" is detected by the sub hopper toner level sensor (TS2), the route of supply from the sub hopper to the developing assembly may be clogged or the output of these toner sensors may be faulty. This error code (E020-0000) is displayed when the soft counter reaches 194 (approximately 388 sec). The counter is designed to increase its count when the hopper sensor level is on during a single cycle of intermittent rotation while toner is being supplied from the sub hopper to the developing assembly.

> **Detection of E025-0001**
> The toner bottle motor (M5) becomes unlocked when it rotates over the regular range. The machine detects whether or not the motor is locked for every 100msec during operation of the toner bottle motor. Considering the occurrence of unlocked status at 15 times or more continuously (1.5 sec or more) as the unit of measurement, when the unlocked status occurs for 12 units or more, the machine judges that a failure has occurred in the motor or in the drive mechanism and displays the toner bottle motor error (E025-0001).

7.8.5 Recovery Sequence

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine is not equipped with a mechanism to detect the replacement of its toner bottle, but is designed to execute toner recovery sequence in response to the following, assuming that the toner bottle has been replaced:
- The front cover has been opened and closed after the machine has detected the absence of toner inside the toner bottle and the developing assembly.
- The machine has been turned off and then on after it has detected the absence of toner inside the toner bottle and the developing assembly.

The machine's recovery sequence is performed as follows:
1) The machine rotates the toner bottle motor (M5) intermittently (on for 3 sec, off for 2 sec).
2) When the sub hopper toner level sensor (TS2) detects the "presence of toner", the machine stops the recovery sequence.
3) When the sub hopper toner sensor does not detect the "presence of toner" after the foregoing intermittent rotation is repeated 20 times, the machine assumes that the toner bottle has not been replaced and causes the toner bottle motor to stop.

7.8.6 Toner Level Detection

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Detecting the Level of Toner in the Sub Hopper
The machine checks the level of the sub hopper toner sensor (TS2) every 100 msec, and assumes the presence of toner in the sub hopper if the sensor detects the "presence of toner" twice or more continuously (200 msec or more).
If the machine detects the "absence of toner" 100 times or more continuously (10 sec or more) as the result of its check on the sensor level made every 100 msec, the machine assumes that there is no toner in the sub hopper.
The machine executes the foregoing detection at all times regardless of the ON/OFF state of the main motor (M2/M22) and the developing cylinder clutch (CL3).

Detecting the Level of Toner in the Developing Assembly
1) The machine samples the output of the toner sensor (TS1) in the developing assembly every 100 msec (only if the developing clutch is on).
2) Considering 1.5 sec (15 times; continuous cumulative sampling when the clutch is on) as the unit of measurement, when the presence of toner is detected 3 times or more, the machine assumes that there is toner in the developing assembly. When the presence of toner is detected two times or less on the other hand, the machine assumes that there is no toner in the developing assembly.

However, in the case of iR3225/3230/3235/3245 series machines, the drive of the main motor is controlled to two different speeds.
Since stirring operation in the developing assembly is driven by the main motor, it is necessary to switch over the methods of detection.

Normal Speed Mode:
Considering 1.5 sec (25 times; continuous cumulative sampling when the clutch is on) as the unit of measurement, when the presence of toner is detected three times or more, the machine assumes that there is toner in the developing assembly.

Low Speed Mode:
Considering 2.5 sec (42 times; continuous cumulative sampling when the clutch is on) as the unit of measurement, when the presence of toner is detected five times or more, the machine assumes that there is toner in the developing assembly.

The machine converts the number of samplings and the number of times toner detection has been executed when switching over the methods of detection. The conversion is based on proportional calculation of speed.

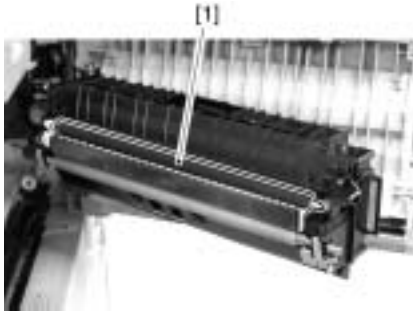
7.9 Transfer Unit

7.9.1 Outline of the Transfer Unit

7.9.1.1 Outline

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The transfer unit [1] consists of the transfer roller and the static eliminator.
The transfer roller rotates in connection with the photosensitive drum.
Bias is applied to the static eliminator so that sheets can be separated from the drum.



F-7-16

7.9.2 Controlling the Transfer Bias

7.9.2.1 Transfer Roller Bias Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine changes the output of transfer bias based on the following conditions.
Environment: 5 settings according to absolute moisture content
Paper type: plain paper, envelope, thick paper, tracing paper, postcard, transparency, bond paper, label sheet
Paper width: size boundaries as defined by 2 points
Source of paper: feeding from cassette, automatic double-sided feeding from cassette, feeding from multi-feeder, i.e., 1st side (half-speed), 2nd side (half-speed)

Transfer bias:	1000 to 6000 V
Transfer bias for cleaning:	-2600 V

The transfer bias is applied at the time of image formation. A voltage of a specific level is applied between sheets for cleaning of the transfer roller.

7.9.3 Cleaning

7.9.3.1 Transfer Roller Cleaning Mechanism

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine uses the transfer roller cleaning mechanism to return the toner sticking to the transfer roller back to the photosensitive drum by applying a cleaning bias to the roller.
Once the toner reaches the drum, it is scraped by the photosensitive drum cleaning blade for collection in the waste toner box.

7.9.4 Separation Mechanism

7.9.4.1 Controlling the Static Eliminator Bias

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A different level of static eliminator bias is applied depending on the 1st and 2nd side.

1st side:	-2300 V
2nd side:	-3000 V

A DC bias is applied between sheets while an image is being formed. (It is applied until the ongoing job is over.)

7.10 Transfer Mechanism

7.10.1 Transfer Guide Bias

7.10.1.1 Transfer Guide Bias Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

To prevent soiling of the transfer guide with toner or the photosensitive drum with toner images, the following transfer guide bias is applied to the transfer guide. The surface of the transfer guide is covered with an insulating sheet.

1st side:	-570 V
2nd side:	-740 V

7.11 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning

7.11.1 Outline

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The photosensitive drum cleaning mechanism uses the photosensitive drum cleaning blade to scrape off the residual toner left behind from transfer; the toner thus collected is moved to the waste toner box.

7.11.2 Collection of Waste Toner

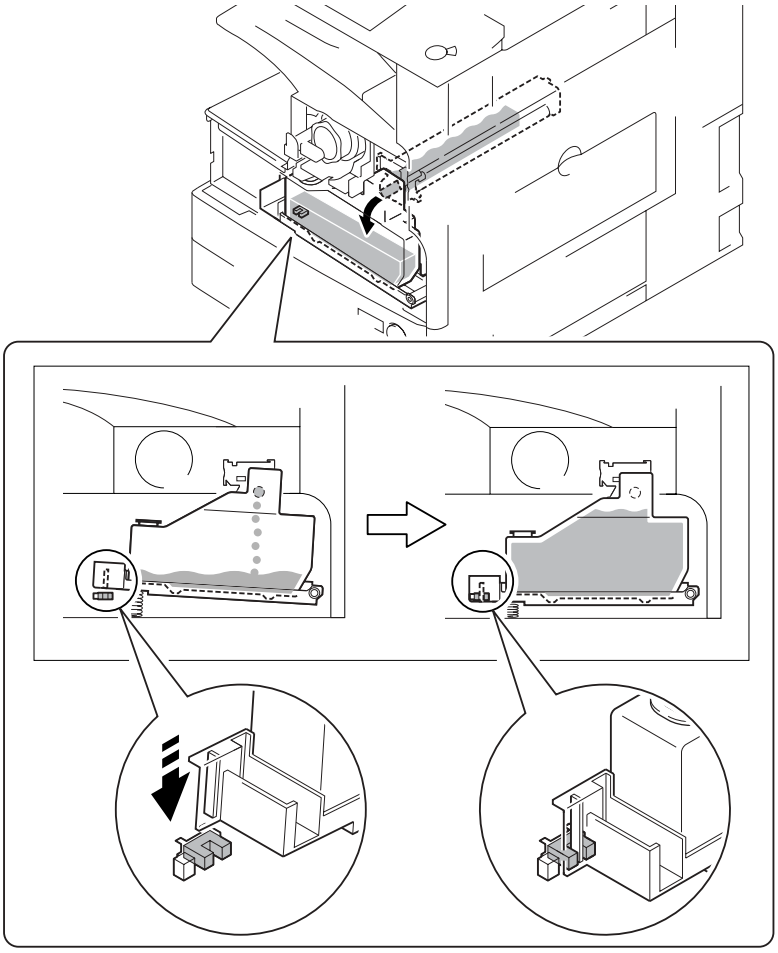
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The waste toner scraped off by the cleaning blade is moved by the waste toner feedscrew to the waste toner box found at the front of the machine. The waste toner feedscrew is operated by the drive from the drum flange.

7.11.3 Checking the Waste Toner Box

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

To prevent leakage of waste toner from the waste toner box or to prevent overloading the waste toner feedscrew, the machine is equipped with a waste toner detection mechanism. The waste toner box can hold about 2043 cc of toner, and the machine identifies the waste toner box as being full when there is about 1766 cc of toner or when the toner comes to weigh about 1050 g.
When the weight of waste toner increases, the waste toner case itself lowers on its own, thus causing the machine to assume that the case has become full.



F-7-17

Detection of E019-0000
When the machine identifies the waste toner full sensor as being continuously on for 2000 sheets, it will indicate a warning; if it then detects the activation of the sensor for 100 sheets continuously, it will indicate 'E190-000'. (The count is increased coinciding with delivery.)

7.12 Parts Replacement Procedure

7.12.1 Pre-Exposure Lamp

7.12.1.1 Before Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp

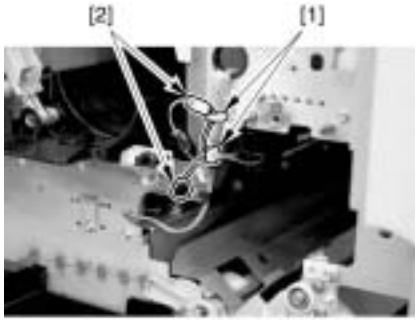
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]
3) Remove the toner container cover. (page 10-18)Reference[Removing the Toner Container Cover]
4) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Drum Unit]

7.12.1.2 Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp

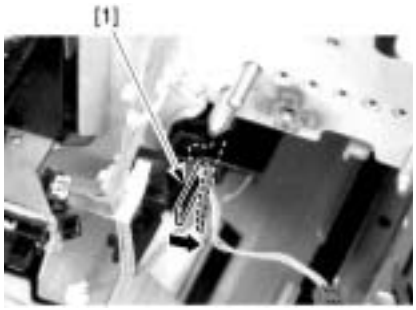
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the 2 wire saddles [1] and disconnect the 2 relay connectors [2].



F-7-18

2) While releasing the lock [1] to the right, remove the pre-exposure lamp [2].



F-7-19

F-7-20

7.12.2 Drum Unit

7.12.2.1 Before Removing the Drum Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]

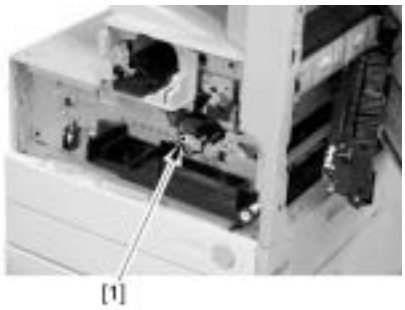
7.12.2.2 Removing the Drum Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the right cover [1].

F-7-21

2) Remove the screw [1].

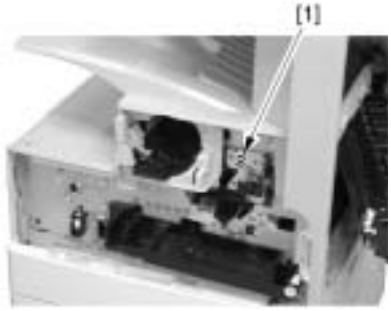


F-7-22

3) Shift the locking lever [1] to the left to release the pressure of the developing assembly.

F-7-23

4) Remove the screw [1].

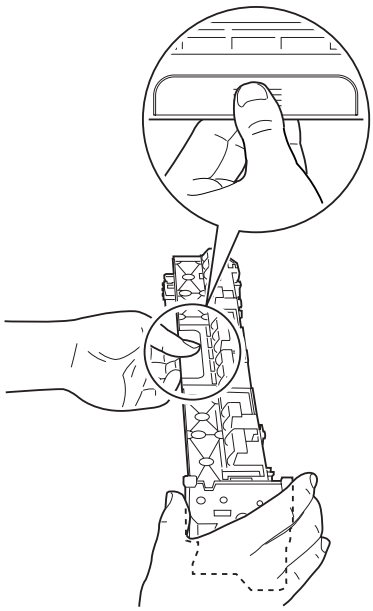


F-7-24

5) Remove the drum unit [1].

F-7-25

Be sure to hold the drum unit as shown in the figure.



7.12.2.3 After Replacing Drum Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Execute APVC correction
  COPIER> FUNCTION> DPC> D-GAMMA

MEMO:
After the paper is picked up from the cassette 1, blank paper is delivered and APVC correction finishes automatically. (Paper size inside cassette does not matter.)

7.12.3 Hopper Assembly

7.12.3.1 Before Removing the Hopper Unit

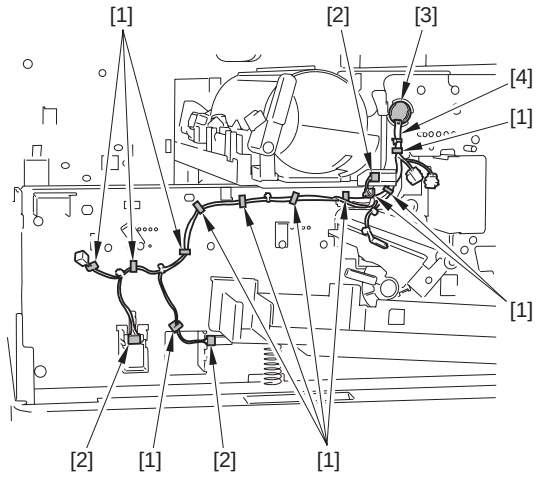
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the toner container.
2) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
3) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]
4) Remove the toner container cover. (page 10-18)Reference[Removing the Toner Container Cover]
5) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
6) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
7) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]
8) Remove the inside right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Right Cover]
9) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Drum Unit]
10) Remove the developing assembly. (page 7-21)Reference[Removing the Developing Assembly]
11) Remove the pre-exposure lamp. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp]
12) Remove the laser scanner unit. (page 6-8)Reference[Removing the Laser Unit]

7.12.3.2 Removing the Hopper Unit

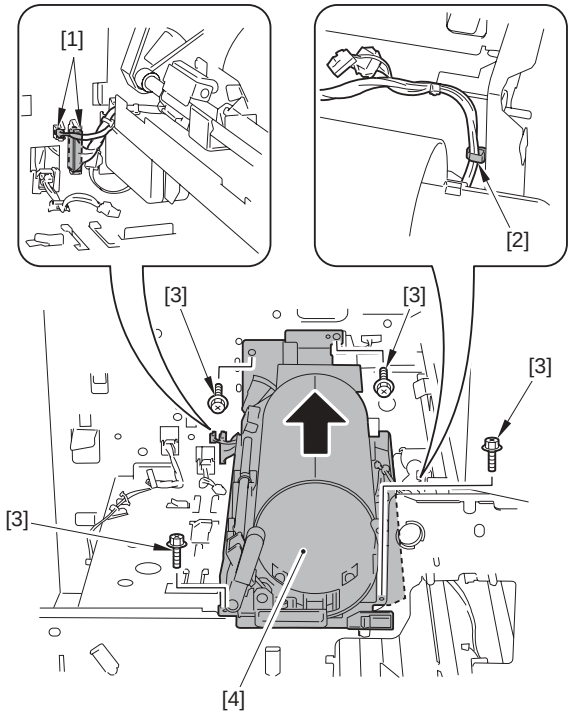
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Pull out the harness [4] from the hole [3] of the plate.
   - 11 wire saddles [1] (free the harness)
   - 3 connectors [2]



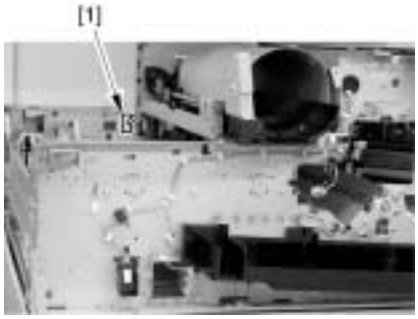
F-7-26

2) Remove the hopper unit [4].
   - 2 connectors [1]
   - 1 wire saddle [2] (free the harness)
   - 4 screws [3]



F-7-27

Point to note when attaching the hopper unit
Be sure to check that the connector [1] is securely connected when attaching the hopper unit to the host machine. If the connector [1] is disconnected, it may cause troubles (e.g. image fault) because of no power distribution to the environment sensor.



7.12.4 Sub Hopper

7.12.4.1 Before Removing the Sub Hopper

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the toner container.
2) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
3) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]
4) Remove the toner container cover. (page 10-18)Reference[Removing the Toner Container Cover]
5) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
6) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
7) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]
8) Remove the inside right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Right Cover]
9) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Drum Unit]
10) Remove the developing assembly. (page 7-21)Reference[Removing the Developing Assembly]
11) Remove the pre-exposure lamp. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp]
12) Remove the laser scanner unit. (page 6-8)Reference[Removing the Laser Unit]
13) Remove the hopper unit. (page 7-19)Reference[Removing the Hopper Unit]
14) Remove the toner feed screw motor. (page 7-25)Reference[Removing the Toner Feed Screw Motor]

7.12.4.2 Removing the Sub Hopper

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 2 screws [2] behind the sub hopper [1].

F-7-28

2) Check the phase of the gear [1] shown in the figure.

F-7-29

3) Remove the 3 screws [1].

F-7-30

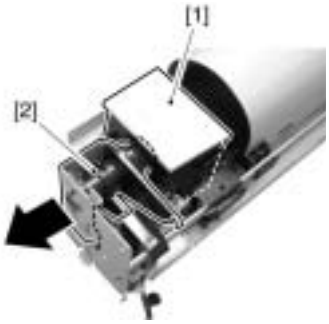
4) Free the cable from the edge saddle [1].

F-7-31

5) Remove the screw [1] to release the arm [2].

F-7-32

6) Remove the bushing unit [2] from the sub hopper [1].

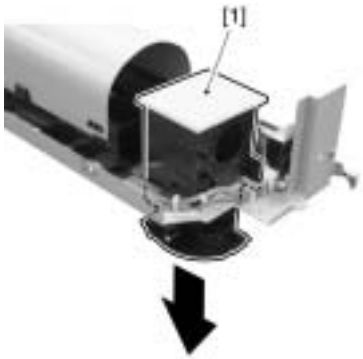


F-7-33

7) Disconnect the connector [1].

F-7-34

8) Remove the sub hopper [1] from the bottom.



F-7-35

7.12.5 Developing Assembly

7.12.5.1 Before Removing the Developing Assembly

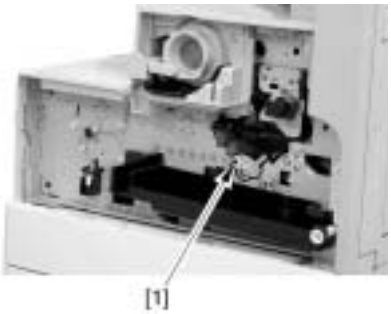
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]

7.12.5.2 Removing the Developing Assembly

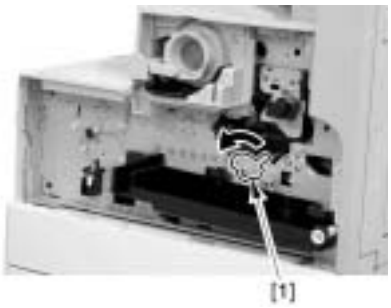
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the screw [1].



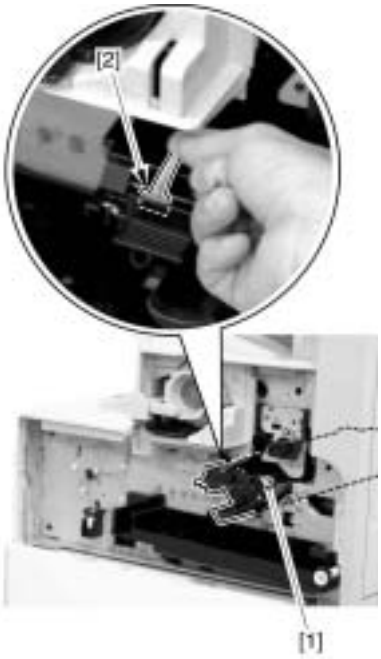
F-7-36

2) Shift the locking lever [1] to the left to release the pressure of the developing assembly.



F-7-37

3) Slightly pull out the developing assembly [1] toward the front to disconnect the connector [2].

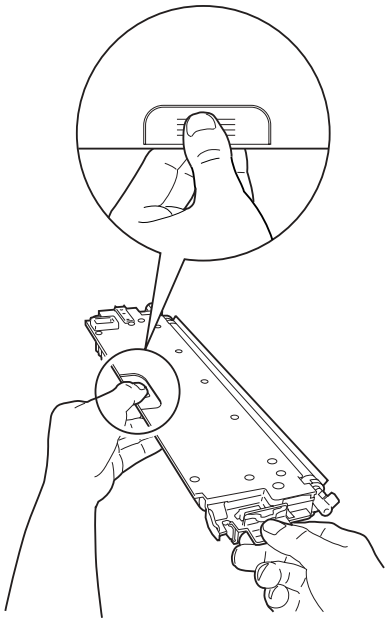


F-7-38

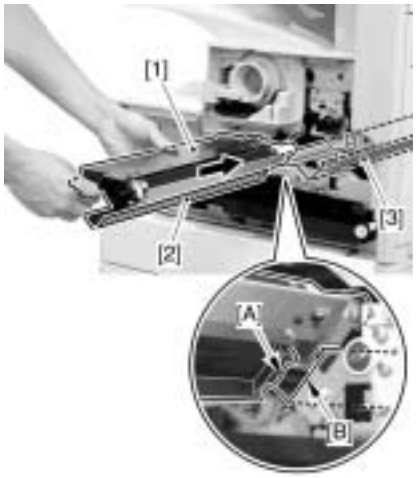
4) Remove the developing assembly [1].

F-7-39

⚠
Be sure to hold the developing assembly as shown in the figure.



Point to note when attaching the developing assembly
Be sure to fit the lower right segment [2] of the developing assembly [1] in the rail [3] of the host machine when attaching the developing assembly. Slide the developing assembly so that [A] of the developing assembly fits with [B] of the machine's rail.



7.12.5.3 After Replacing Developing Assembly/ Developing Cylinder

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Execute toner stirring.
   COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> STIR-K
2) Clear the counter of consumables.
   COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> DVG-CYL
3) Execute auto gradation correction (additional function mode)
   Additional functions> Adjustment/cleaning> Auto gradation correction

A test copy that is made right after the toner has been stirred can be soiled on its back with a small amount of stray toner. The symptom will likely disappear when 3 or so copies are made.

7.12.6 Developing Cylinder

7.12.6.1 Before Removing the Developing Cylinder

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]
3) Remove the developing assembly. (page 7-21)Reference[Removing the Developing Assembly]

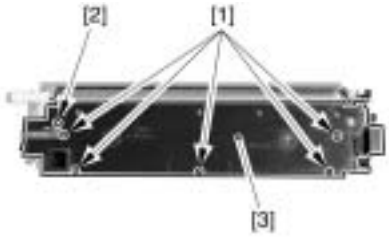
7.12.6.2 Removing the Developing Cylinder

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Take note of the following points when removing the developing cylinder from the developing assembly:

1. Lots of self-tapping screws are used. Be careful not to damage the screw holes by tightening the self-tapping screws.
2. Remove the developing cylinder after removing the developing blade on a blade unit basis.
3. Be sure to attach the developing cylinder on the developing assembly housing before attaching the blade unit.
4. Do not touch nor give a shock to the developing cylinder.

1) Detach the top cover [3].
   - 1 self-tapping screw [1]
   - 1 washer screw [2]



F-7-40

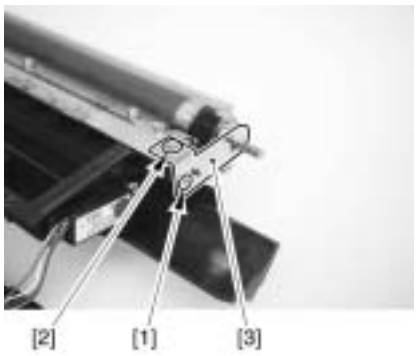
2) Disconnect the connector [1] from the top cover.

F-7-41

3) While releasing the claw [1], remove the sleeve front guide [2] in the direction of the arrow.

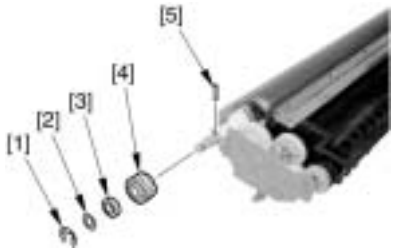
F-7-42

4) Detach the angle adjustment plate [3].
- 1 self-tapping screw [1]
- 1 washer screw [2]



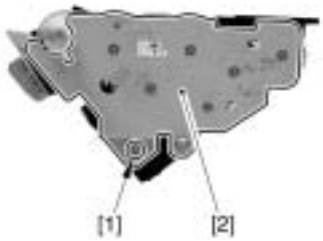
F-7-43

5) Remove the E-ring [1], the washer [2], the bearing [3], the gear [4] and the parallel pin [5].



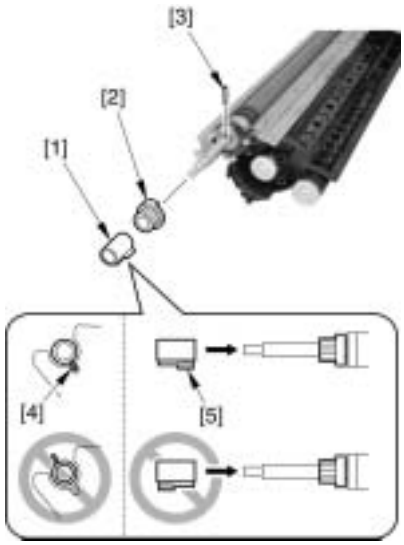
F-7-44

6) Remove the screw [1] to remove the gear unit [2].



F-7-45

7) Remove the sleeve bushing [1], the gear [2] and the parallel pin [3].

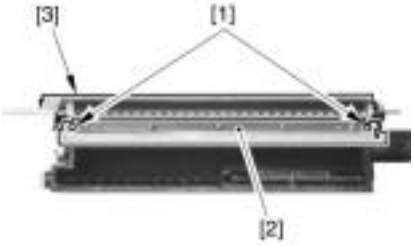


F-7-46

Points to note when attaching the sleeve bushing
- Match the projection [4] of the sleeve bushing to the depression of the gear unit side plate (otherwise, the projection of the sleeve bushing may come into contact with the surface of the photosensitive drum).
- Pay attention to the attaching direction of the sleeve bushing (attach the sleeve bushing with longer projection [5] on the developing cylinder, otherwise, the gear unit cannot be attached).

8) Remove the 2 screws [1] to remove the blade unit [2].

Do not remove the transfer upper guide [3]. Otherwise, the following trouble may occur because the attaching position is inappropriate (lost):
- Soil on the paper's lead edge (surface)
- Jam

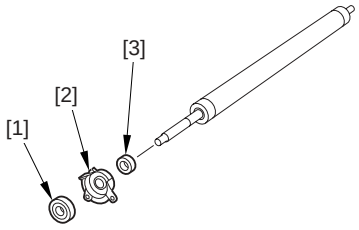


F-7-47

9) Remove the 4 self-tapping screws (2 each) [1] securing the sleeve holder (front and rear).
10) Remove the developing cylinder [2] along with the pushing wheel and other members.

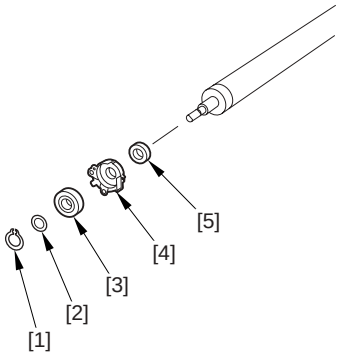
F-7-48

11) Remove the pushing wheel [1], the sleeve holder [2], the bearing [3] and the sleeve holder (rear) [3] from the developing cylinder.



F-7-49

12) Remove the grip ring [1], and remove the washer [2], the pushing wheel [3], the sleeve holder (front) [4] and the bearing [5] from the developing cylinder.



F-7-50

7.12.6.3 After Replacing Developing Assembly/ Developing Cylinder

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Execute toner stirring.
COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> STIR-K
2) Clear the counter of consumables.
COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> DVG-CYL
3) Execute auto gradation correction (additional function mode)
Additional functions> Adjustment/cleaning> Auto gradation correction

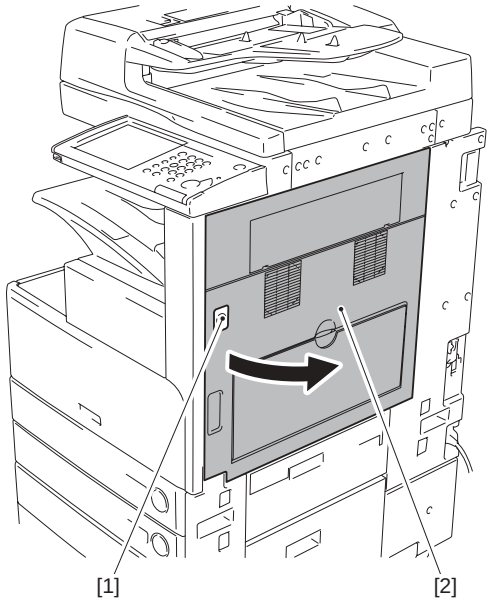
> ⚠
> A test copy that is made right after the toner has been stirred can be soiled on its back with a small amount of stray toner. The symptom will likely disappear when 3 or so copies are made.

7.12.7 Transfer Charging Roller

7.12.7.1 Removing the Transfer Roller

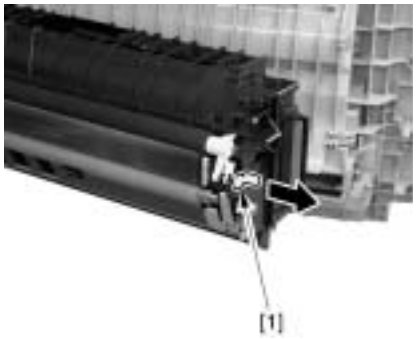
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



F-7-51

2) Pull out the pin [1] toward the front.

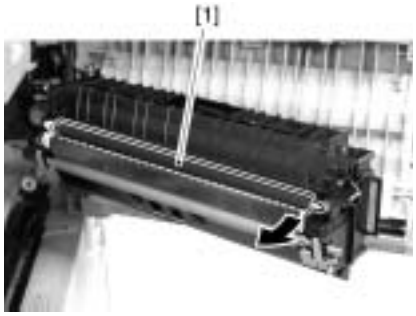


F-7-52

3) Remove the holder [1] at the front side of the transfer roller.

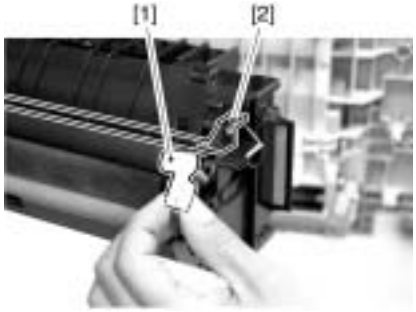
F-7-53

4) Remove the transfer roller [1] toward the front.



F-7-54

> ⚠ **Points to note when attaching the transfer roller**
> - Be sure that the top of the holder [1] is attached inside the static eliminator [2].



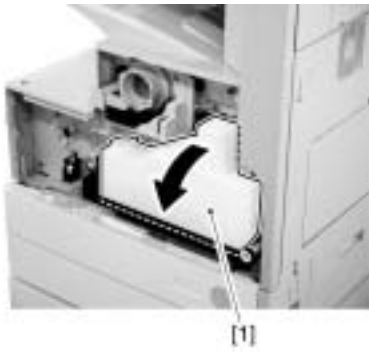
> - Be sure that the spring [1] of the holder is fitted with the pushing position [2].

7.12.8 Waste Toner Box

7.12.8.1 Removing the Waste Toner Container

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the waste toner container [1].



F-7-55

Point to note when attaching the waste toner container
After attaching the waste toner container, be sure to move the waste toner full detection lever [1] up and down to check that the lever moves smoothly. If the lever is caught in something and does not move smoothly, it may result in faulty detection.

7.12.9 Toner Level Sensor

7.12.9.1 Before Removing the Toner Level Sensor

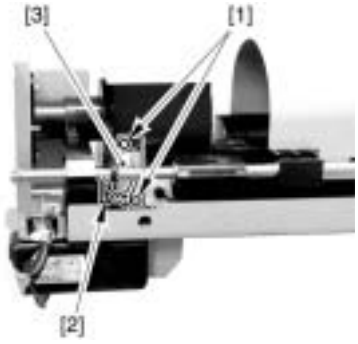
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the toner container.
2) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
3) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]
4) Remove the toner container cover. (page 10-18)Reference[Removing the Toner Container Cover]
5) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
6) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
7) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]
8) Remove the inside right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Right Cover]
9) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Drum Unit]
10) Remove the developing assembly. (page 7-21)Reference[Removing the Developing Assembly]
11) Remove the pre-exposure lamp. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp]
12) Remove the laser scanner unit. (page 6-8)Reference[Removing the Laser Unit]
13) Remove the hopper unit. (page 7-19)Reference[Removing the Hopper Unit]

7.12.9.2 Removing the Toner Level Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Free the harness from the wire saddle to remove the toner sensor [3].
- 2 screws [1]
- 1 connector [2]



F-7-56

7.12.10 Toner Feedscrew Motor

7.12.10.1 Before Removing the Toner Feed Screw Motor

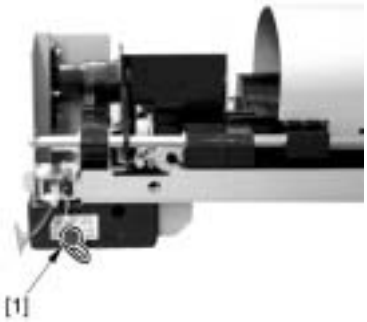
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the toner container.
2) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
3) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]
4) Remove the toner container cover. (page 10-18)Reference[Removing the Toner Container Cover]
5) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
6) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
7) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]
8) Remove the inside right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Right Cover]
9) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Drum Unit]
10) Remove the developing assembly. (page 7-21)Reference[Removing the Developing Assembly]
11) Remove the pre-exposure lamp. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp]
12) Remove the laser scanner unit. (page 6-8)Reference[Removing the Laser Unit]
13) Remove the hopper unit. (page 7-19)Reference[Removing the Hopper Unit]

7.12.10.2 Removing the Toner Feed Screw Motor

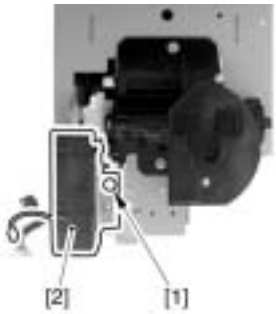
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Disconnect the connector [1].



F-7-57

2) Remove the screw [1] to remove the toner feed screw motor assembly [2].



F-7-58

3) Remove the screw [1] to remove the toner feed screw motor [3] from the base [2].

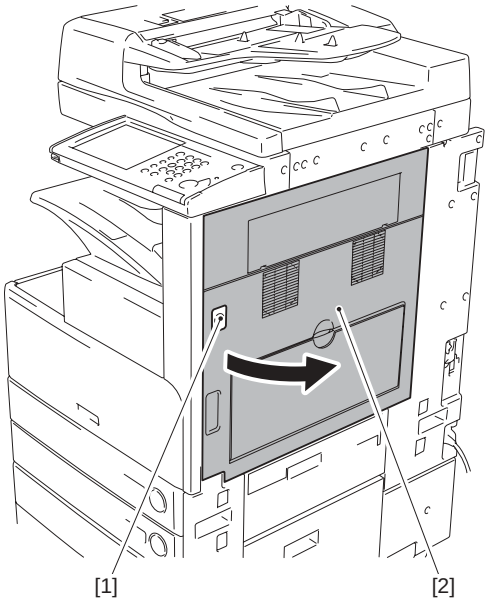
F-7-59

7.12.11 Static Charge Eliminator

7.12.11.1 Removing the Static Eliminator

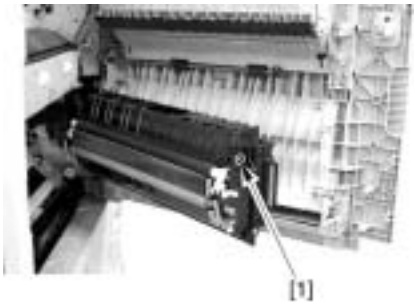
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



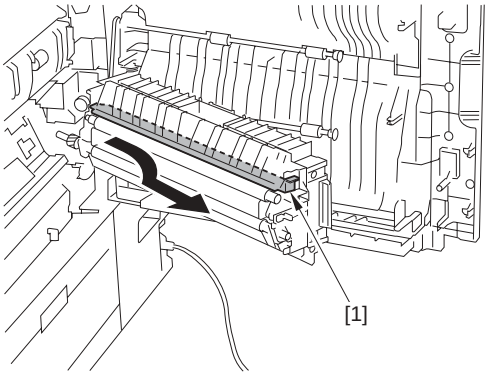
F-7-60

2) Remove the screw [1].



F-7-61

3) Remove the static eliminator [1].



F-7-62

Chapter 8 Pickup/Feeding System

Contents

8.1 Construction 8-1
8.1.1 Specifications, Controls, and Functions 8-1
8.1.2 Division into Blocks 8-2
8.1.3 Arrangement of Rollers 8-3
8.1.4 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ 3 Way Unit-A1/ copy tray) 8-4
8.1.5 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ Inbody Finisher/ copy tray) 8-5
8.1.6 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ Finisher/Saddle Finisher) 8-6
8.1.7 Arrangement of Sensors 8-7
8.1.8 Route of Drive 8-8
8.2 Basic Sequence 8-10
8.2.1 Basic Sequence 8-10
8.2.2 Acceleration Intervals 8-10
8.3 Detecting Jams 8-14
8.3.1 Delay Jams 8-14
8.3.1.1 Delay Jam Outside the Cassette Pickup Assembly 8-14
8.3.1.2 Delay Jam in the Cassette Pickup Assembly 8-14
8.3.2 Stationary Jams 8-15
8.3.2.1 Common Stationary Jam 8-15
8.3.2.2 Stationary Jam at Power-On 8-15
8.3.3 Other Jams 8-15
8.3.3.1 Door Open Jam 8-15
8.3.3.2 Paper size mismatch JAM 8-16
8.3.3.3 Error retry JAM 8-16
8.4 Cassette Pick-Up Unit 8-17
8.4.1 Overview 8-17
8.4.2 Basic Sequence 8-17
8.4.3 Identifying the Paper Size 8-18
8.4.4 Setting Up the Universal Cassette 8-19
8.4.5 Paper Level Sensor 8-20
8.5 Manual Feed Pickup Unit 8-22
8.5.1 Overview 8-22
8.5.2 Basic Sequence of Operation 8-22
8.5.3 Identifying the Paper Size 8-23
8.5.4 Paper Retaining Mechanism 8-24
8.6 Registration Unit 8-25
8.6.1 Overview 8-25
8.6.2 Checking Horizontal Registration 8-25
8.7 Duplex Feeding Unit 8-26
8.7.1 Overview 8-26
8.7.2 Sequence of Image Formation 8-27
8.7.3 Flow of Paper 8-28
8.8 Parts Replacement Procedure 8-30
8.8.1 Pick-up Unit 1 8-30
8.8.1.1 Before Removing the Pickup Unit 1 8-30
8.8.1.2 Removing the Pickup Unit 1 8-30
8.8.2 Pick-up Unit 2 8-30
8.8.2.1 Before Removing the Pickup Unit 2 8-30
8.8.2.2 Removing the Pickup Unit 2 8-30
8.8.3 Pickup Roller 8-30
8.8.3.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/Separation Roller 8-30
8.8.4 Sensor Mount 8-31

8.8.4.1 Before Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate ... 8-31
8.8.4.2 Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate ... 8-31
8.8.4.3 Attaching the Sensor Mounting Plate ... 8-31
8.8.5 Cassette Pick-up Motor 1 ... 8-32
8.8.5.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 1 ... 8-32
8.8.5.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 1 ... 8-32
8.8.6 Cassette Pick-up Motor 2 ... 8-33
8.8.6.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 2 ... 8-33
8.8.6.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 2 ... 8-33
8.8.7 Cassette Size Sensor ... 8-33
8.8.7.1 Before Removing the Cassette Size Sensor ... 8-33
8.8.7.2 Removing the Cassette Size Sensor ... 8-33
8.8.8 Cassette Retry Paper Sensor ... 8-34
8.8.8.1 Before Removing the Cassette Retry Paper Sensor ... 8-34
8.8.8.2 Removing the Cassette Retry Paper Sensor ... 8-34
8.8.9 Cassette Paper Sensor ... 8-34
8.8.9.1 Before Removing the Cassette Paper Sensor ... 8-34
8.8.9.2 Removing the Cassette Paper Sensor ... 8-34
8.8.10 Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B) ... 8-34
8.8.10.1 Before Removing the Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B) ... 8-34
8.8.10.2 Removing the Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B) ... 8-34
8.8.11 Slide Resistor ... 8-34
8.8.11.1 Before Removing the Slide Resistor ... 8-34
8.8.11.2 Removing the Slide Resistor ... 8-35
8.8.12 Cassette Pickup Solenoid ... 8-35
8.8.12.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Solenoid ... 8-35
8.8.12.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Solenoid ... 8-35
8.8.13 Manual Tray Assembly ... 8-35
8.8.13.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Tray Unit ... 8-35
8.8.13.2 Removing the Manual Feed Tray Unit ... 8-35
8.8.13.3 When Replacing the Manual Feed Tray ... 8-36
8.8.14 Manual Feed Unit ... 8-36
8.8.14.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Unit ... 8-36
8.8.14.2 Removing the Manual Feed Unit ... 8-36
8.8.15 Manual Pickup Roller ... 8-36
8.8.15.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Roller ... 8-36
8.8.15.2 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Roller ... 8-36
8.8.16 Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid ... 8-37
8.8.16.1 Before Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid ... 8-37
8.8.16.2 Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid (iR 3425/3235/3230) ... 8-37
8.8.16.3 Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid (iR 3225) ... 8-39
8.8.17 Manual Pick-up Clutch ... 8-40
8.8.17.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3245/3235/3230) ... 8-40
8.8.17.2 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3245/3235/3230) ... 8-40
8.8.17.3 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3225) ... 8-40
8.8.17.4 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3225) ... 8-40
8.8.18 Manual Separation Pad ... 8-41
8.8.18.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Separation Pad ... 8-41
8.8.18.2 Removing the Manual Feed Separation Pad ... 8-41
8.8.19 Registration Clutch ... 8-41
8.8.19.1 Before Removing the Registration Clutch ... 8-41
8.8.19.2 Removing the Registration Clutch ... 8-41
8.8.20 3 Way Unit ... 8-41
8.8.20.1 Before Removing the 3 Way Unit ... 8-41
8.8.20.2 Removing the 3 Way Unit ... 8-41
8.8.21 Feeding Roller ... 8-42
8.8.21.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/Separation Roller ... 8-42
8.8.22 Vertical Path Roller ... 8-42
8.8.22.1 Before Removing the Vertical Path Roller ... 8-42
8.8.22.2 Removing the Vertical Path Roller ... 8-42

8.8.23 Duplex Feed Roller 2 8-42
8.8.23.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Roller 2 8-42
8.8.23.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Roller 2 8-43
8.8.24 Duplex Feed Motor 8-43
8.8.24.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) 8-43
8.8.24.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) 8-43
8.8.25 Duplex Feed Sensor 8-43
8.8.25.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Sensor 8-43
8.8.25.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Sensor 8-43
8.8.26 Duplex Feed Clutch 8-44
8.8.26.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Clutch (iR 3225) 8-44
8.8.26.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Clutch (iR 3225) 8-44
8.8.27 Delivery Assembly 1 8-44
8.8.27.1 Before Removing the Delivery Unit 1 8-44
8.8.27.2 Removing the Delivery Unit 1 8-44
8.8.28 Fixing/ Delivery Drive Assembly 8-44
8.8.28.1 Before Removing the Fixing/Delivery Drive Unit 8-44
8.8.28.2 Removing the Fixing/Delivery Drive Unit 8-45
8.8.29 Separation Roller 8-45
8.8.29.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/Separation Roller 8-45

8.1 Construction

8.1.1 Specifications, Controls, and Functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

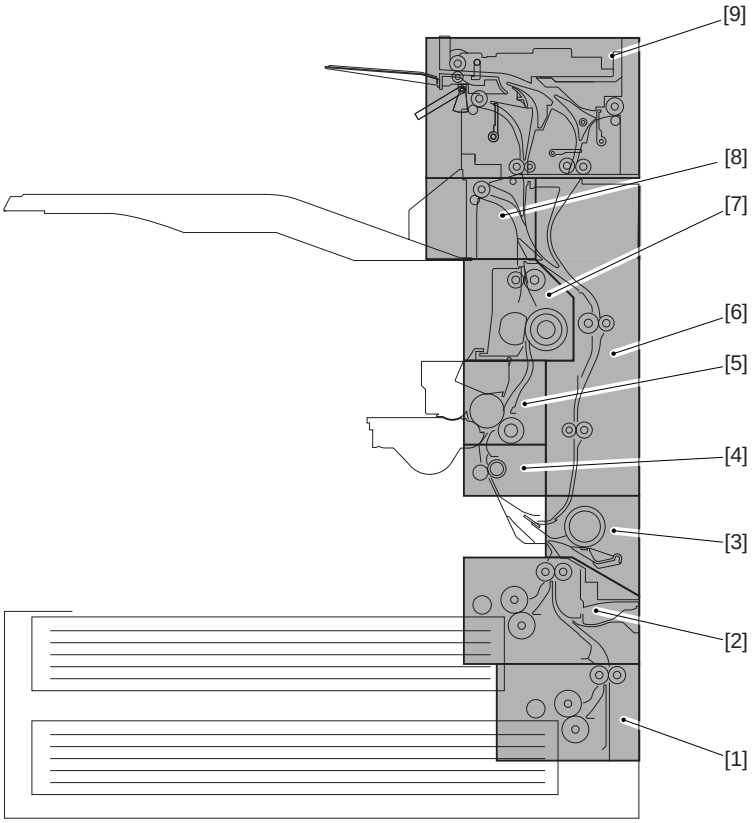
T-8-1

Item	Specifications/Mechanism/ Method	-
Paper compartment	front loading	
Pickup method	cassette	separation retard
	manual feeder	separation pad
Paper reference	center	
Paper volume	cassette 1/2	550 sheets (80 g/m2), 650 sheets (64 g/m2)
	manual feed tray	50 sheets (80 g/m2), 55 sheets (64 g/m2)
Paper size	cassette 1	B4, A4, B5, LGL, LTR, EXE, A4R, B5R, LTRR, A5R, STMTR, envelope, 8K, 16K
	cassette 2	A3, B4, A4, B5, LGL, LTR, EXE, LDR, A4R, B5R, LTRR, A5R, STMTR, 11x17, 8K, 16K
	manual feed tray	A3, B4, A4, B5, LGL, LTR, A4R, B5R, LTRR, A5R, STMTR, EXE, LDR, postcard, envelope, free size (99x140 mm to 297x457 mm)
Paper weight	cassette 1/2	64 to 80 g/m2 (single-sided) 90g/m2 can be used in the case of the paper recommended in Europe.
		64 to 80 g/m2 (auto double-sided)
	manual feed tray	64 to 128 g/m2 (auto double-sided printing for plain paper only)
Paper size switch-over	cassette 1/2	by the user
	manual feed tray	by the user
Duplexing method	through path	

Envelope: COM10, Monarch, DL, ISO-C5, ISO-B5, Youkei No. 4
Postcard: A6R Variable, A5R Variable, A4 Variable

8.1.2 Division into Blocks

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

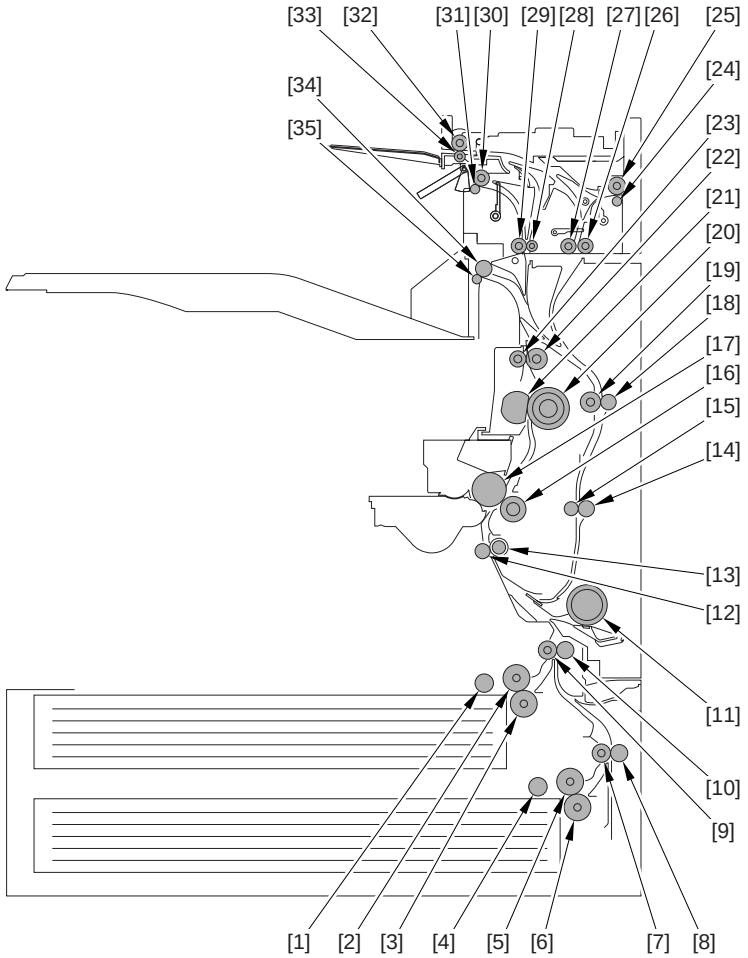


F-8-1

[1] Pickup assembly (cassette 2)
[2] Pickup assembly (cassette 1)
[3] Manual feed pickup assembly
[4] Registration roller assembly
[5] Transfer assembly
[6] Duplexing/feeding assembly
[7] Fixing assembly
[8] No.1 delivery assembly
[9] No.2/No.3 delivery assembly

8.1.3 Arrangement of Rollers

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

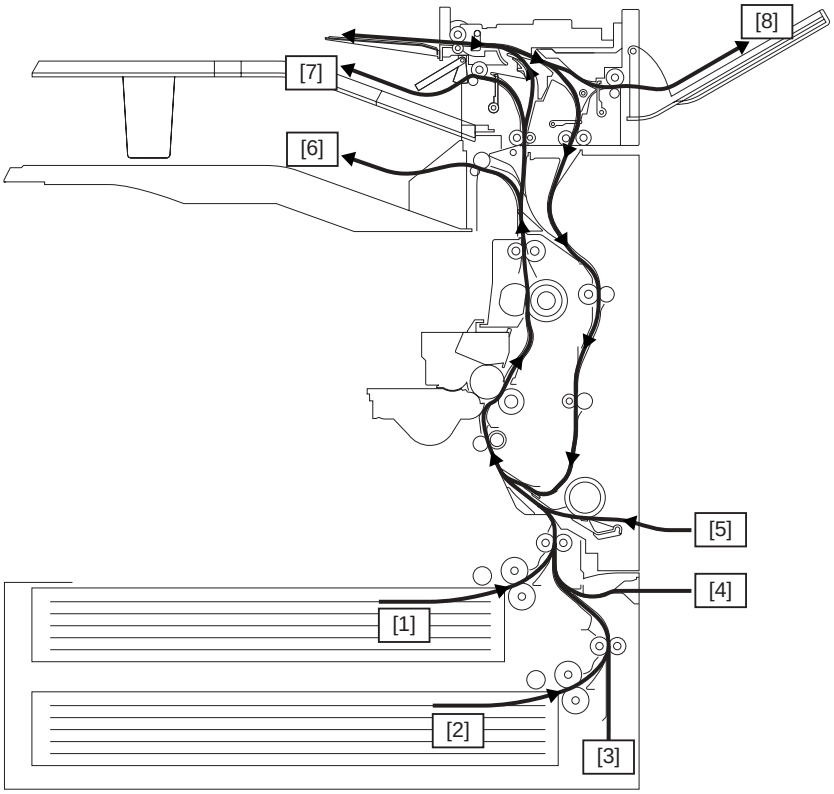


F-8-2

[1]	Pickup roller (cassette 1)	[2]	Feed roller (cassette 1)
[3]	Separation roller (cassette 1)	[4]	Pickup roller (cassette 2)
[5]	Feed roller (cassette 2)	[6]	Separation roller (cassette 2)
[7]	Vertical path roller 2	[8]	Vertical path slave roller 2
[9]	Vertical path roller 1	[10]	Vertical path slave roller 1
[11]	Manual feed pickup roller	[12]	Registration roller (inside)
[13]	Registration roller (outside)	[14]	Duplexing/feeding roller 2
[15]	Duplexing/feeding member 2	[16]	Transfer roller
[17]	Drum	[18]	Duplexing/feed roller 1
[19]	Duplexing/feeding member 1	[20]	Presser roller
[21]	Fixing film	[22]	Fixing outlet roller
[23]	Fixing outlet roll	[24]	Delivery roll (No.3 delivery assembly)
[25]	Delivery roller (No.3 delivery assembly)	[26]	Duplexing inlet roller
[27]	Duplexing inlet member	[28]	Vertical path slave roller 3
[29]	Vertical path roller 3	[30]	Delivery roller (No.2 delivery assembly)
[31]	Delivery member (No.2 delivery assembly)	[32]	Reversing roller
[33]	Reversing member	[34]	Delivery roller (No.1 delivery assembly)
[35]	Delivery member (No.1 delivery assembly)		

8.1.4 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ 3 Way Unit-A1/ copy tray)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

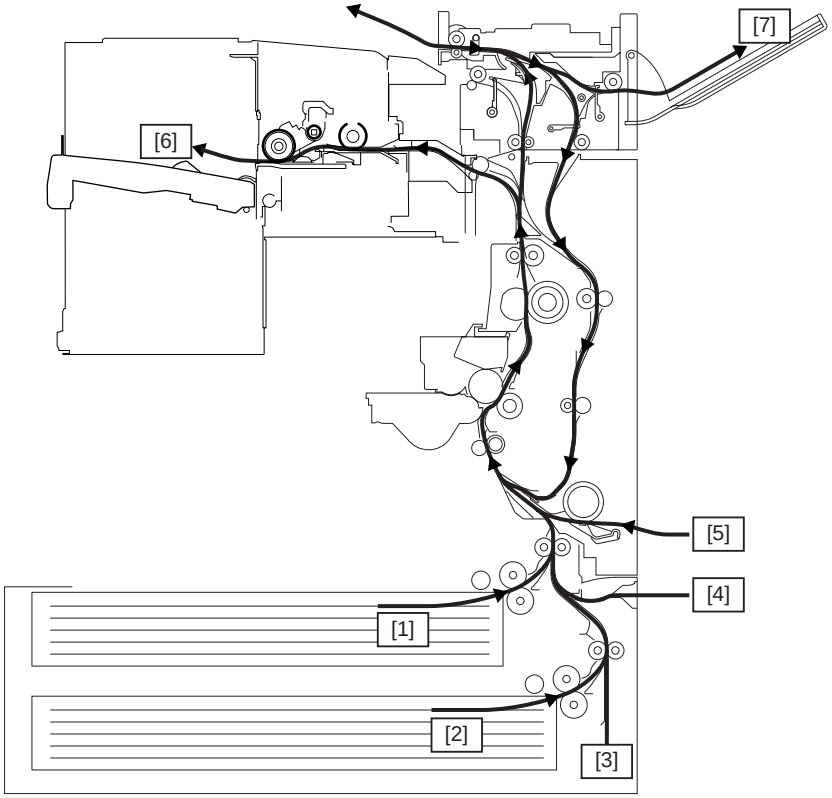


F-8-3

[1] Pickup from cassette 1
[2] Pickup from cassette 2
[3] Pickup from cassette pedestal (option)
[4] Pickup from side paper deck (option)
[5] Pickup from manual feeder
[6] Delivery to copy tray 1
[7] Delivery to copy tray 2 (option)
[8] Delivery to copy tray 3 (option)

8.1.5 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ Inbody Finisher/ copy tray)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

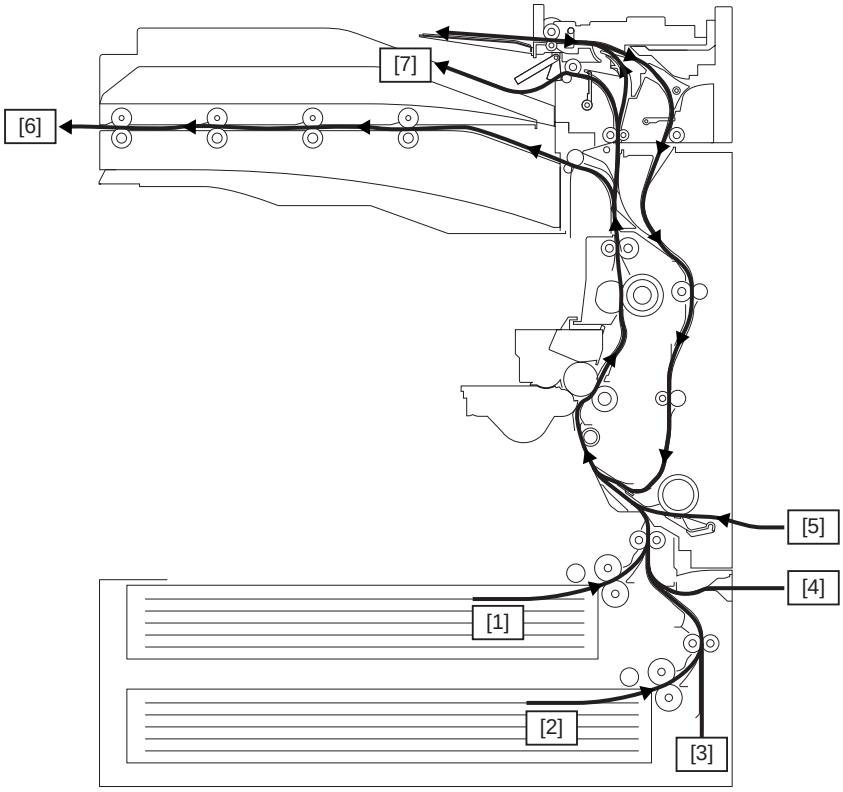


F-8-4

[1] Pickup from cassette 1
[2] Pickup from cassette 2
[3] Pickup from cassette pedestal (option)
[4] Pickup from paper deck (option)
[5] Pickup from manual feeder
[6] Delivery to inbody finisher (option)
[7] Delivery to copy tray (option)

8.1.6 Diagram of Paper Paths (w/ Finisher/Saddle Finisher)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

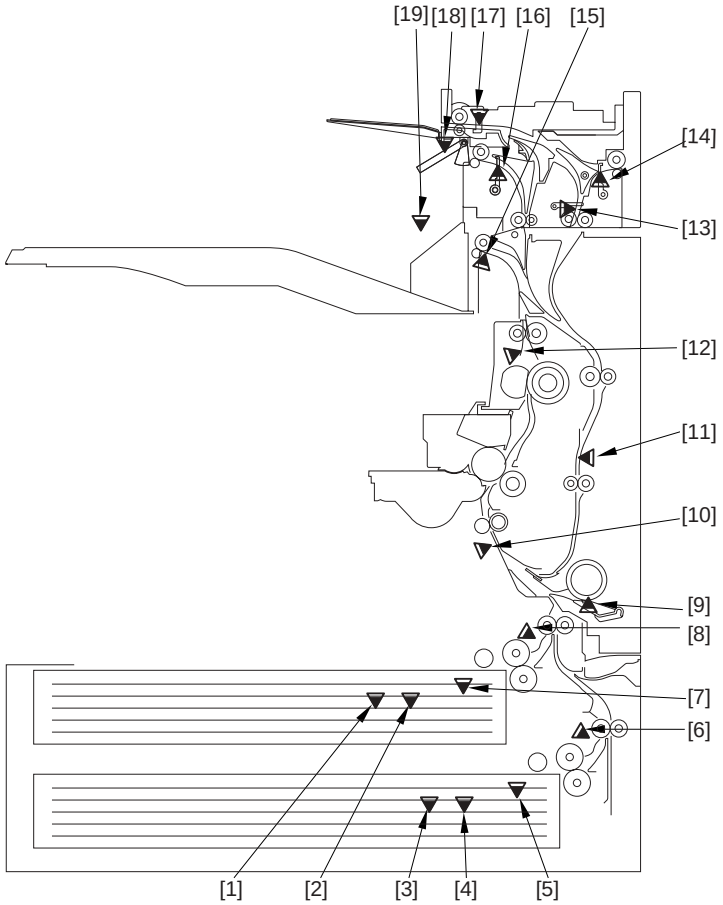


F-8-5

[1] Pickup from cassette 1
[2] Pickup from cassette 2
[3] Pickup from cassette pedestal (option)
[4] Pickup from paper deck (option)
[5] Pickup from manual feeder
[6] Delivery to finisher/saddle finisher (option)
[7] No.2 delivery assembly (option)

8.1.7 Arrangement of Sensors

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



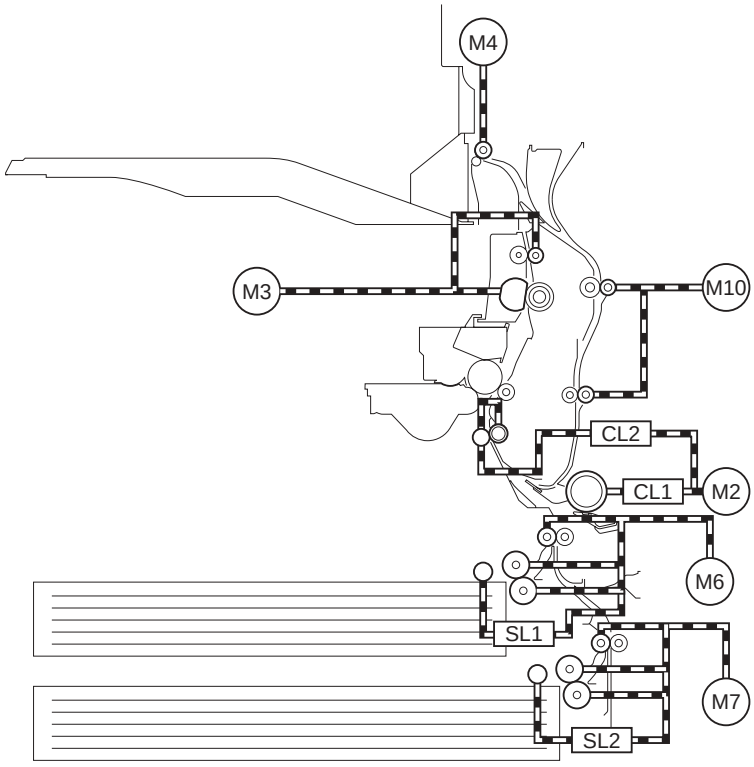
F-8-6

[1]	Cassette 1 paper level sensor B (PS4)	[2]	Cassette 1 paper level sensor A (PS3)
[3]	Cassette 2 paper level sensor B (PS6)	[4]	Cassette 2 paper level sensor A (PS5)
[5]	Cassette 2 paper sensor (PS2)	[6]	Cassette 2 retry sensor (PS11)
[7]	Cassette 1 paper sensor (PS1)	[8]	Cassette 1 retry sensor (PS10)
[9]	Manual feed paper sensor (PS7)	[10]	Registration sensor (PS9)
[11]	Duplexing/feed sensor (PS17)	[12]	Fixing outlet sensor (PS13)
[13]	Duplexing inlet sensor (PS3A: 2/3 delivery)	[14]	Delivery sensor 3 (PS5A: 2/3 delivery)
[15]	Delivery sensor 1 (PS14)	[16]	Delivery sensor 2 (PS1A: 2/3 delivery)
[17]	Reversal sensor (PS4A: 2/3 delivery)	[18]	Delivery full sensor 2 (PS2A: 2/3 delivery)
[19]	Delivery full sensor 1 (PS15)		

8.1.8 Route of Drive

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

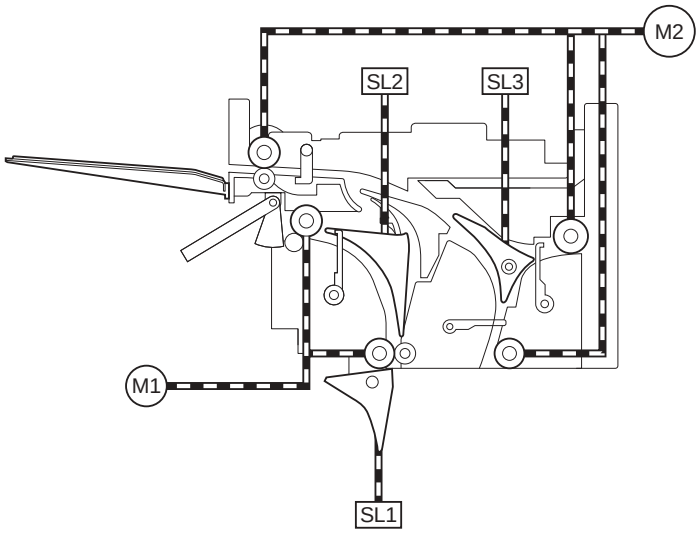
For iR3245/3235/3230
- Main Body



F-8-7

M2:	Main motor	SL1:	Cassette pickup solenoid 1
M3:	Fixing motor	SL2:	Cassette pickup solenoid 2
M4:	No.1 delivery motor	CL1:	Manual pickup clutch
M6:	Cassette pickup motor 1	CL2:	Registration clutch
M7:	Cassette pickup motor 2		
M10:	Duplexing/feed motor		

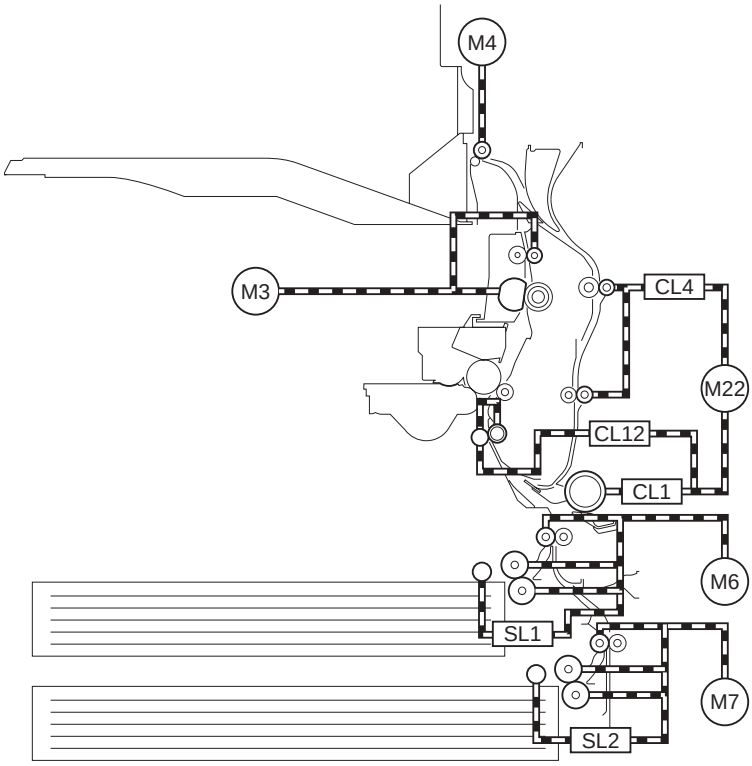
- 3 Way Unit



F-8-8

M1: No.2 delivery motor
M2 No.3 delivery motor
SL1: No.1 delivery solenoid
SL2: No.2 delivery solenoid
SL3: No.3 delivery solenoid

For iR3225



F-8-9

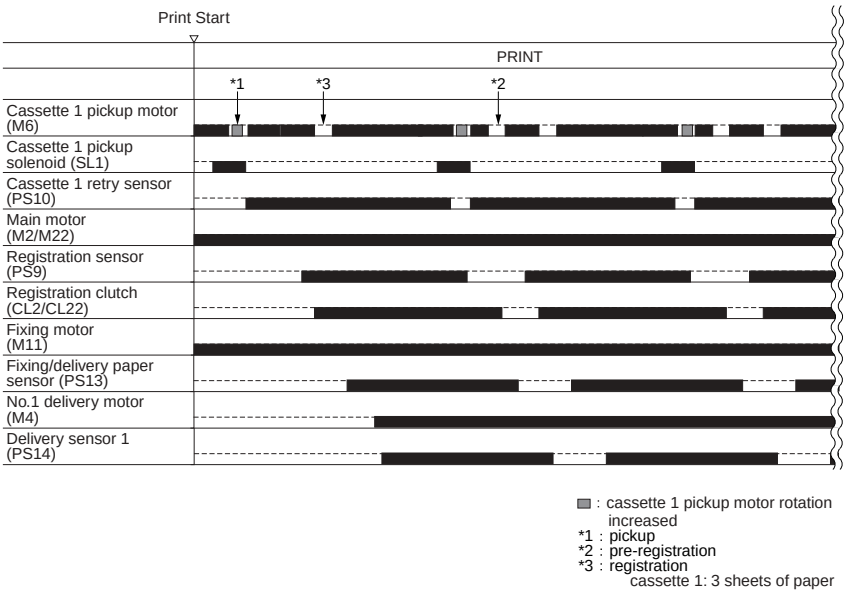
M22:	Main motor	SL1:	Cassette pickup solenoid 1
M3:	Fixing motor	SL2:	Cassette pickup solenoid 2
M4:	No.1 delivery motor	CL1:	Manual pickup clutch
M6:	Cassette pickup motor 1	CL12:	Registration clutch
M7:	Cassette pickup motor 2	CL4:	Duplexing/feed clutch

8.2 Basic Sequence

8.2.1 Basic Sequence

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Basic Sequence of Operation for Making 3 Prints



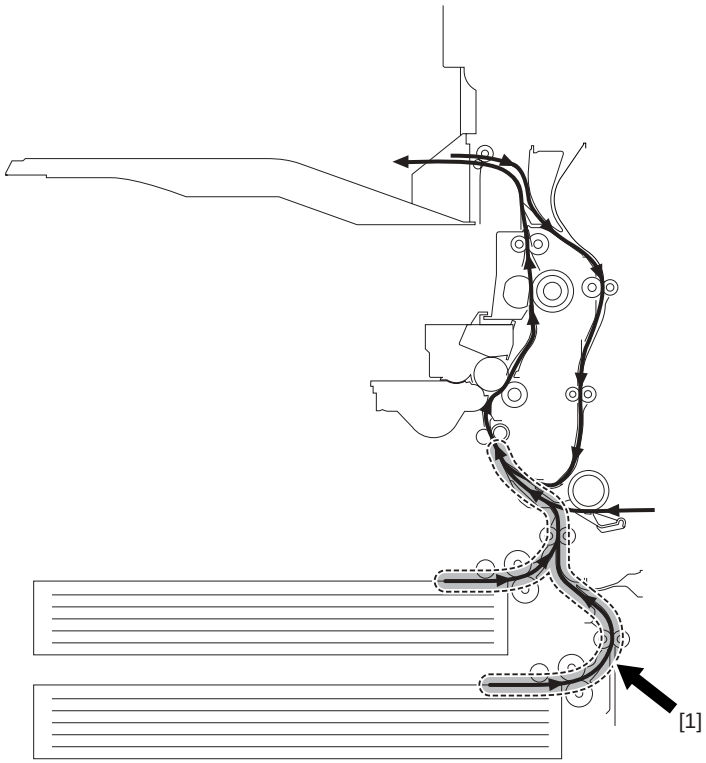
F-8-10

8.2.2 Acceleration Intervals

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine increases the speed of moving paper over specific intervals. An overview and the associated accessories for the increase in speed are as follows:

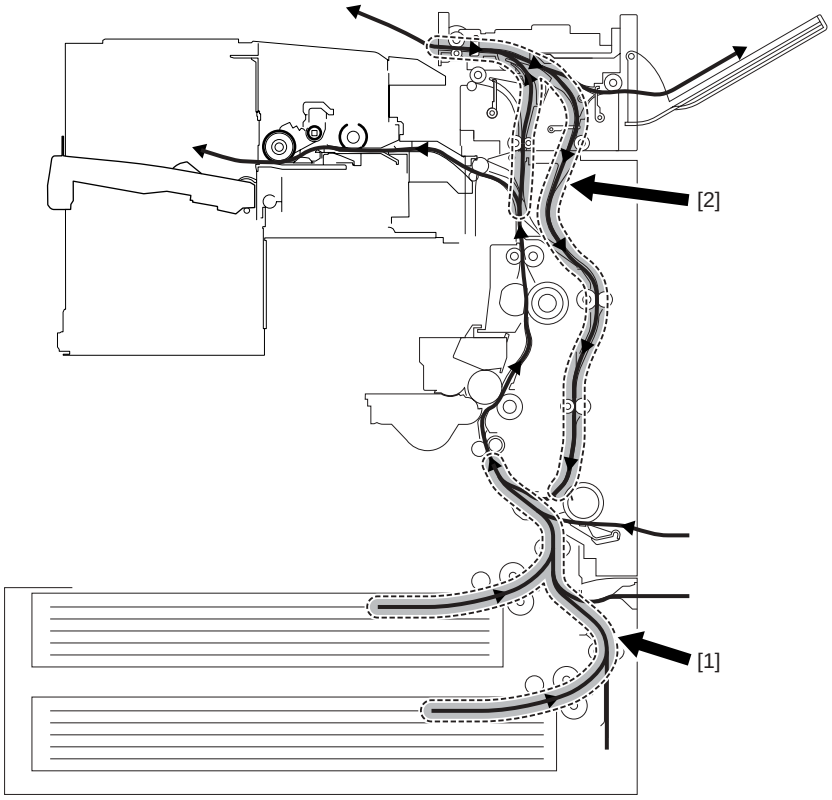
- No Delivery Accessory



F-8-11

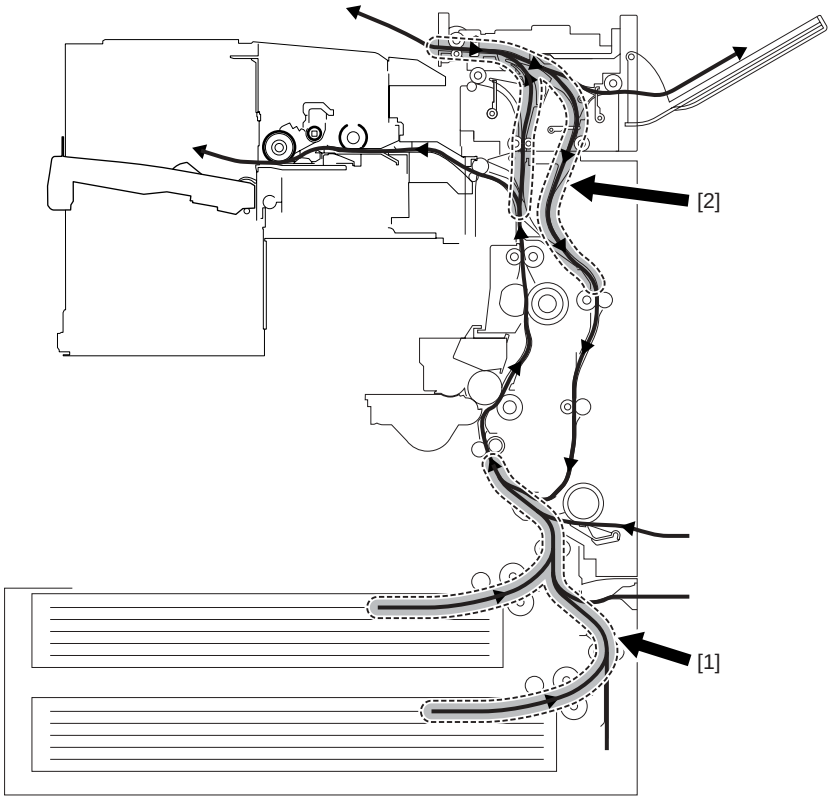
[1] Increase in Speed for Pickup Operation
The speed is 1.5 times as high as the process speed (no increase if for manual feed pickup/in the case of the 1st sheet from cassette 1, accelerates to about twice as fast).

- Inbody Finisher in Use
For iR3245/3235/3230



F-8-12

For iR3225

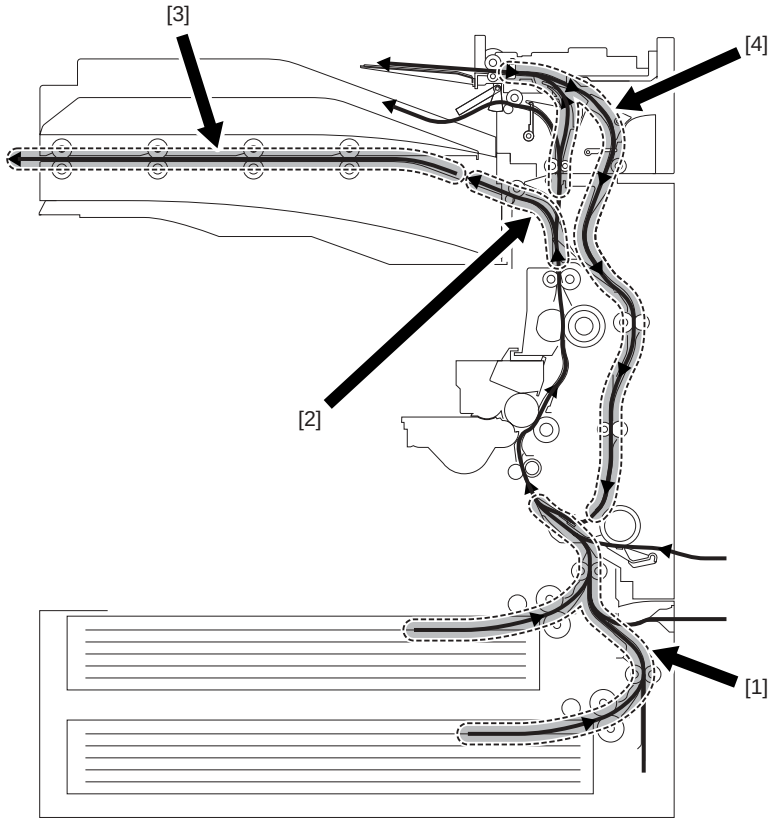


F-8-13

[1] Increase in Speed for Pickup Operation
The speed is 1.5 times as high as the process speed (no increase if for manual feed pickup/in the case of the 1st sheet from cassette 1, accelerates to about twice as fast).
[2] Increase in Speed for Reversal
The speed is 3.4 times as high as the process speed (no increase if for delivery to the copy tray).

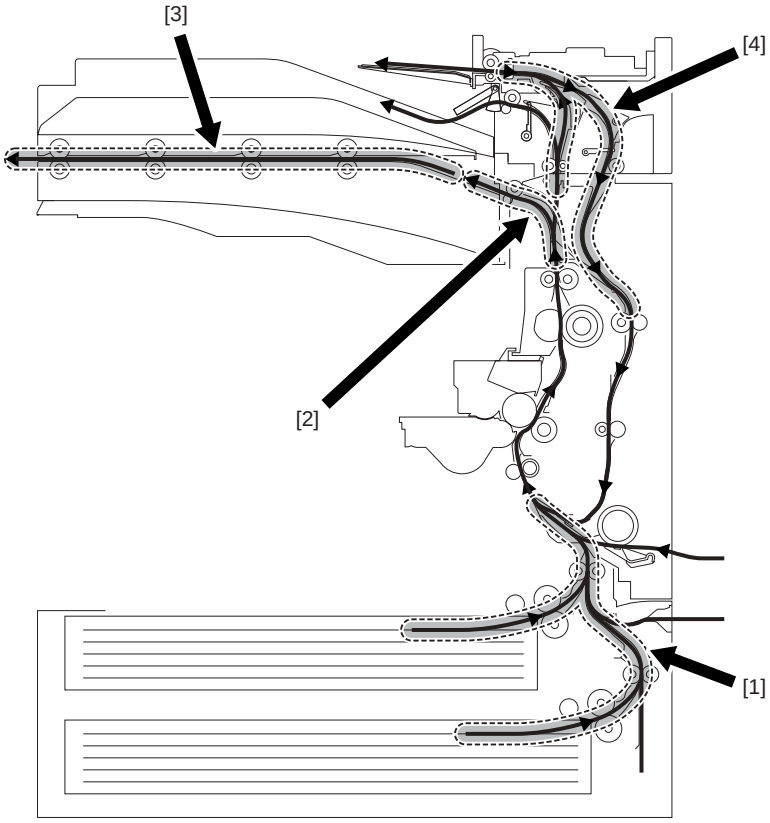
- Finisher in Use

For iR3245/3235/3230



F-8-14

For iR3225



F-8-15

[1] Increase in Speed for Pickup Operation
The speed is 1.5 times as high as the process speed (no increase if for manual feed pickup/in the case of the 1st sheet from cassette 1, accelerates to about twice as fast).
[2] Increase in Speed After Fixing
The speed is 2.5 times as high as the process speed.
[3] Increase in Speed for the Buffer Path
The speed is 2.5 times as high as the process speed (no increase if for delivery to saddle).
[4] Increase in Speed for Reversal
The speed is 3.4 times as high as the process speed. (no increase if for delivery to copy tray).

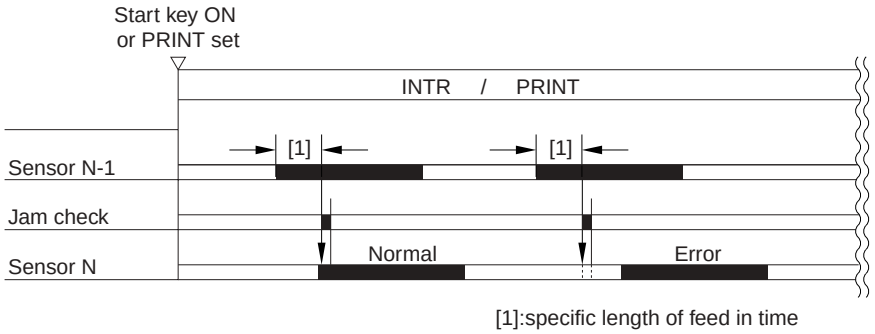
8.3 Detecting Jams

8.3.1 Delay Jams

8.3.1.1 Delay Jam Outside the Cassette Pickup Assembly

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A delay jam outside the cassette pickup assembly is identified as follows:
The length of time it takes for paper to move from the sensor N-1 to the delay jam sensor N is kept under control; a delay jam is identified if the delay jam sensor does not go on within a specific length of time after the sensor N has gone on.



F-8-16

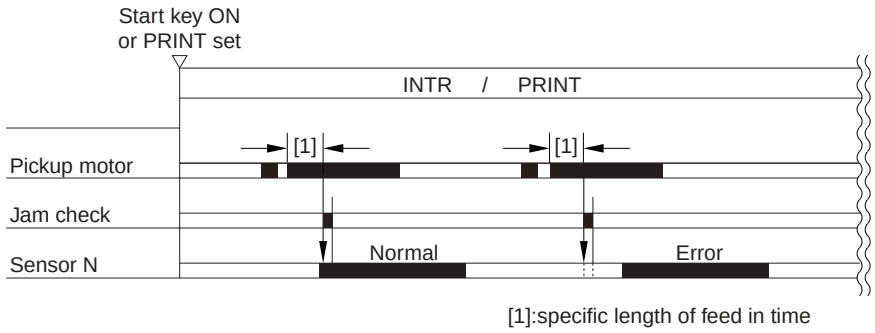
T-8-2

Sensor
Registration sensor (PS9)
Fixing delivery sensor (PS13)
No. 1 delivery sensor (PS14)
Duplex feed sensor (PS17)

8.3.1.2 Delay Jam in the Cassette Pickup Assembly

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The leading edge of paper does not reach the sensor after the cassette 1/2 pickup motor has started to rotate.



F-8-17

T-8-3

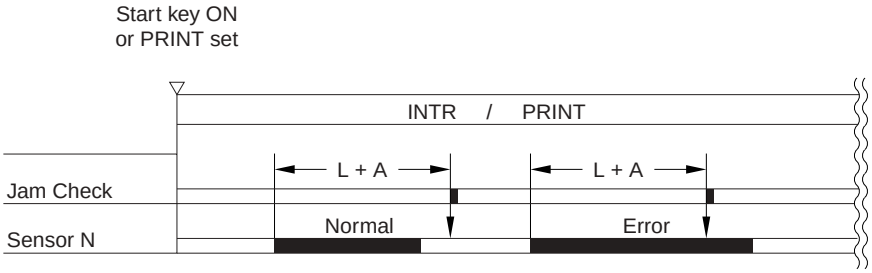
Source of paper	Motor	Sensor
Cassette 1	cassette 1 pickup motor	cassette 1 retry sensor (PS10)
Cassette 2	cassette 2 pickup motor	cassette 2 retry sensor (PS11)

8.3.2 Stationary Jams

8.3.2.1 Common Stationary Jam

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The sensor N does not go off within a specific length of time after the sensor has gone on.



(L =paper length feed distance A = specific feed length)

F-8-18

T-8-4

Sensor
Cassette 1 retry sensor (PS10)
Cassette 2 retry sensor (PS11)
Registration sensor (PS9)
Fixing outlet sensor (PS13)
No. 1 delivery sensor (PS14)
Duplex feed sensor (PS17)

8.3.2.2 Stationary Jam at Power-On

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine makes a check to see that there is no paper over the following sensors before it starts initial multiple rotation at power-on:

T-8-5

Sensor
Cassette 1 retry sensor (PS10)
Cassette 2 retry sensor (PS11)
Registration sensor (PS9)
Fixing outlet sensor (PS13)
No. 1 delivery sensor (PS14)
Duplex feed sensor (PS17)

8.3.3 Other Jams

8.3.3.1 Door Open Jam

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A door open jam is identified when the machine detects the opening of the door while it is making copies/prints.

T-8-6

Sensor
Front cover open sensor (PS22)
Right cover open sensor (PS18)

8.3.3.2 Paper size mismatch JAM

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If the paper size (length in horizontal direction) specified with the cassette size dial and the paper size actually fed are different, JAM is generated.
The paper length at feeding is identified by registration front sensor (PS9).

Paper size mismatch JAM
0D91

8.3.3.3 Error retry JAM

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

To prevent the machine stop (OFF/ON) at an error due to misdetection etc., JAM is generated when the following errors occur and an error is generated if an error still appears after restart.
If the paper remains inside the machine, remove the paper by following the instruction and the machine will resume. If no paper remains, the machine resumes automatically.
The history of error retry JAM can be reviewed in service mode: COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM as well as normal JAM.

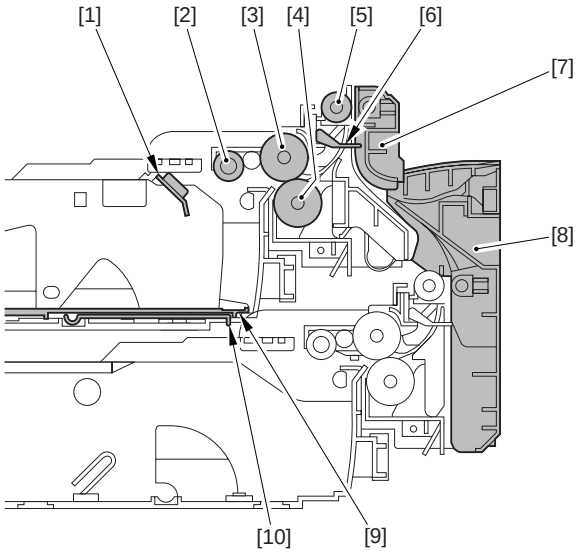
Error retry JAM (intended error codes are shown in parentheses)
0CF1 (E007/E010/E014/E/E110/E191/E197/E261/E805)
0CA0 (E733)

8.4 Cassette Pick-Up Unit

8.4.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The paper inside the cassette is held up by the lifter plate.
When pickup takes place, the pickup solenoid (SL1, SL2) is turned on, and the pickup roller is moved down. When the pickup roller comes into contact with the surface of paper, the sheet is picked up by rotation of the roller.
Only a single sheet of paper picked up is moved to the feed path by the feed roller and the separation roller, and moved as far as the registration roller by the pickup vertical path roller.
The pickup vertical path roller, pickup roller, feed roller, and separation roller are driven by the cassette pickup motor (M6, M7).

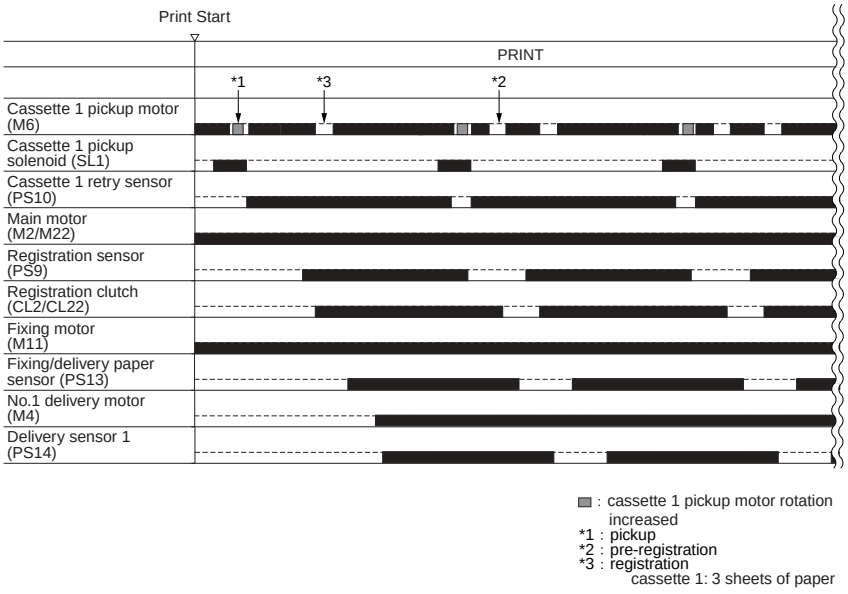


F-8-19

[1]	Cassette paper sensor 1 (PS1)	[2]	Pickup roller (roller A)
[3]	Feed roller (roller B)	[4]	Separation roller (roller C)
[5]	Pickup vertical path roller	[6]	Cassette retry paper sensor 1 (PS10)
[7]	Vertical path guide	[8]	Right cover (front lower)
[9]	Holding plate	[10]	Lifter plate

8.4.2 Basic Sequence

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



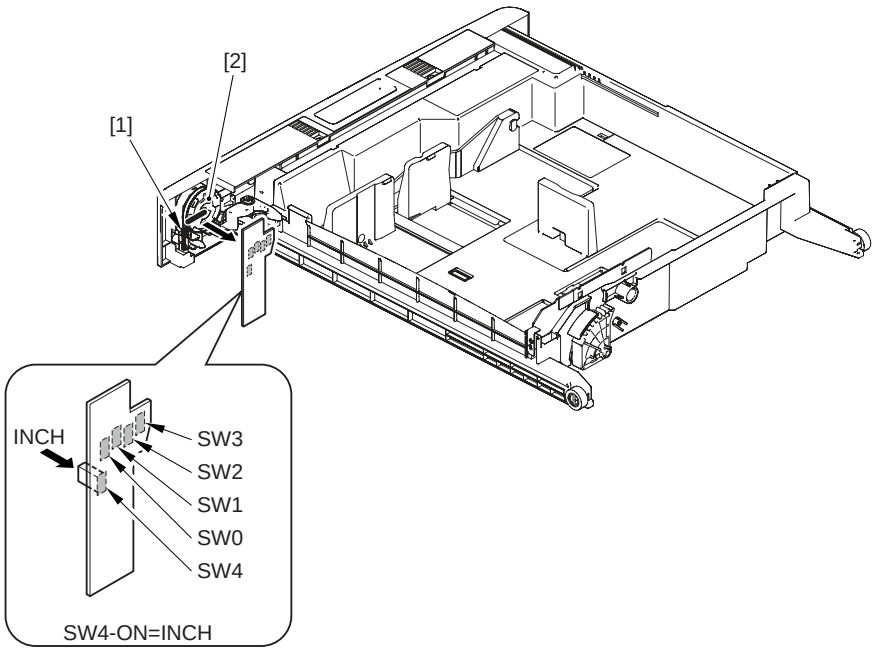
F-8-20

8.4.3 Identifying the Paper Size

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The size of paper inside the cassette is detected by the cassette size dial, and is communicated to the cassette size detection PCB.
As may as 15 positions may be detected with reference to the combinations of on and off states of the array of 4 actuators mounted to the cassette size detection PCB on the printer side and operating in conjunction with the cassette size dial.
In the absence of a cassette, all 4 actuators are off, causing the machine to assume there is no cassette.

AB/Inch Switch
The cassette size dial is equipped with a switch operated to change between AB and Inch configurations; the cassette size detecting switch will detect the configuration as soon as a cassette is fitted in the machine.



F-8-21

[1] AB/Inch switch
[2] Cassette size dial
[3] Cassette size detection PCB

AB-configuration

T-8-7

Size	SW0	SW1	SW2	SW3	SW4
(no cassette)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
A5R	ON	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
A4	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF
A4R	OFF	ON	ON	ON	OFF
A3	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
B5	ON	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
B5R	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
B4	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
U1	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
U2	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
Envelope	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON/OFF

MEMO:
- SW4 is used to detect the state of the AB/Inch-configuration switch.
- The machine will assume the absence of a cassette if it detects a combination not found in the table. At this time, it does not move up the cassette lifter.
- Since the paper size is not identified, there will be no indication of a paper size on the control panel; when the cassette in question is selected, the machine will indicate a message prompting the supply of paper.
- If an envelope size is detected, an envelope cassette must be fitted.

Inch-configuration

T-8-8

Size	SW0	SW1	SW2	SW3	SW4
(no cassette)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
STMTR	ON	OFF	ON	ON	ON
LTR	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
LTRR	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
LGL	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
11x17	ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON
EXEC	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
U3	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
U4	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON
Envelope	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON/OFF

MEMO:
- SW4 is used to detect the state of the AB/Inch-configuration switch.
- The machine will assume the absence of a cassette if it detects a combination not found in the table. At this time, it does not move up the cassette lifter.
- Since the paper size is not identified, there will be no indication of a paper size on the control panel; when the cassette in question is selected, the machine will indicate a message prompting the supply of paper.
- If an envelope size is detected, an envelope cassette must be fitted.

8.4.4 Setting Up the Universal Cassette

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The following are default sizes the machine will assume when U1 through U4 are detected:

U1:	G-LTR
U2:	FLSC
U3:	G-LGL
U4:	A-LTR

The following is a list of sizes that may be assigned in addition to default sizes in service mode:

T-8-9

Size
FLSC
OFI
E-OFI
B-OFI
A-OFI
M-OFI
FOLI
A-FLS
G-LTR
G-LGL
A-LTR(LTR)
A-LTRR(LTRR)

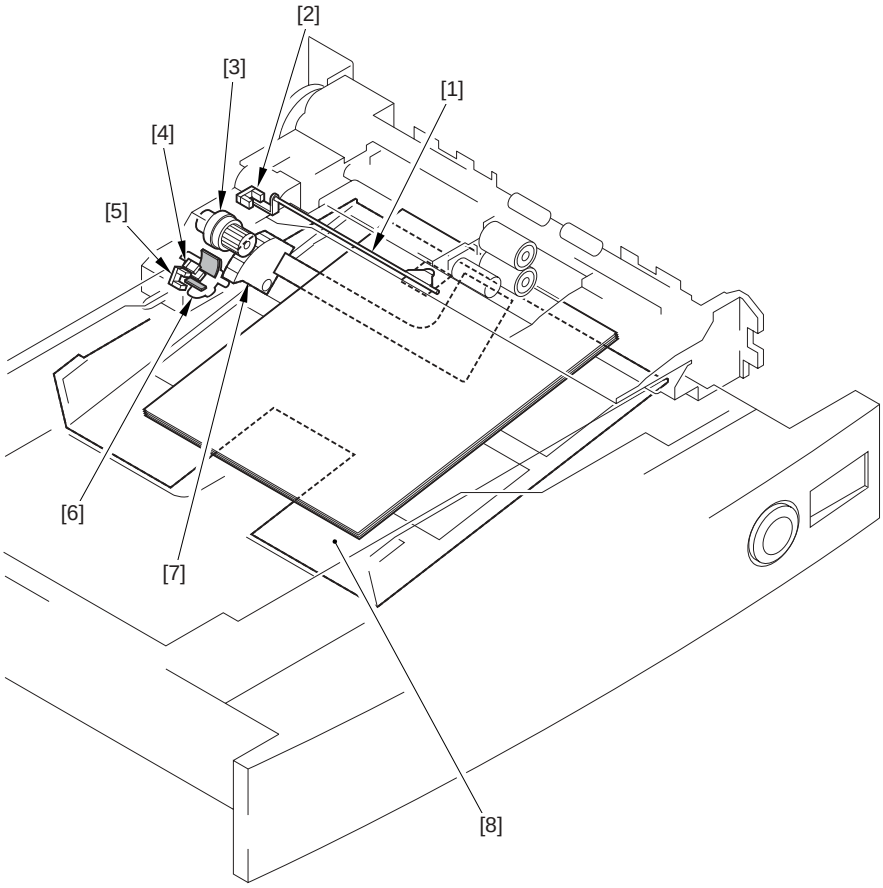
8.4.5 Paper Level Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The level of paper inside the cassette is checked using the following sensors:

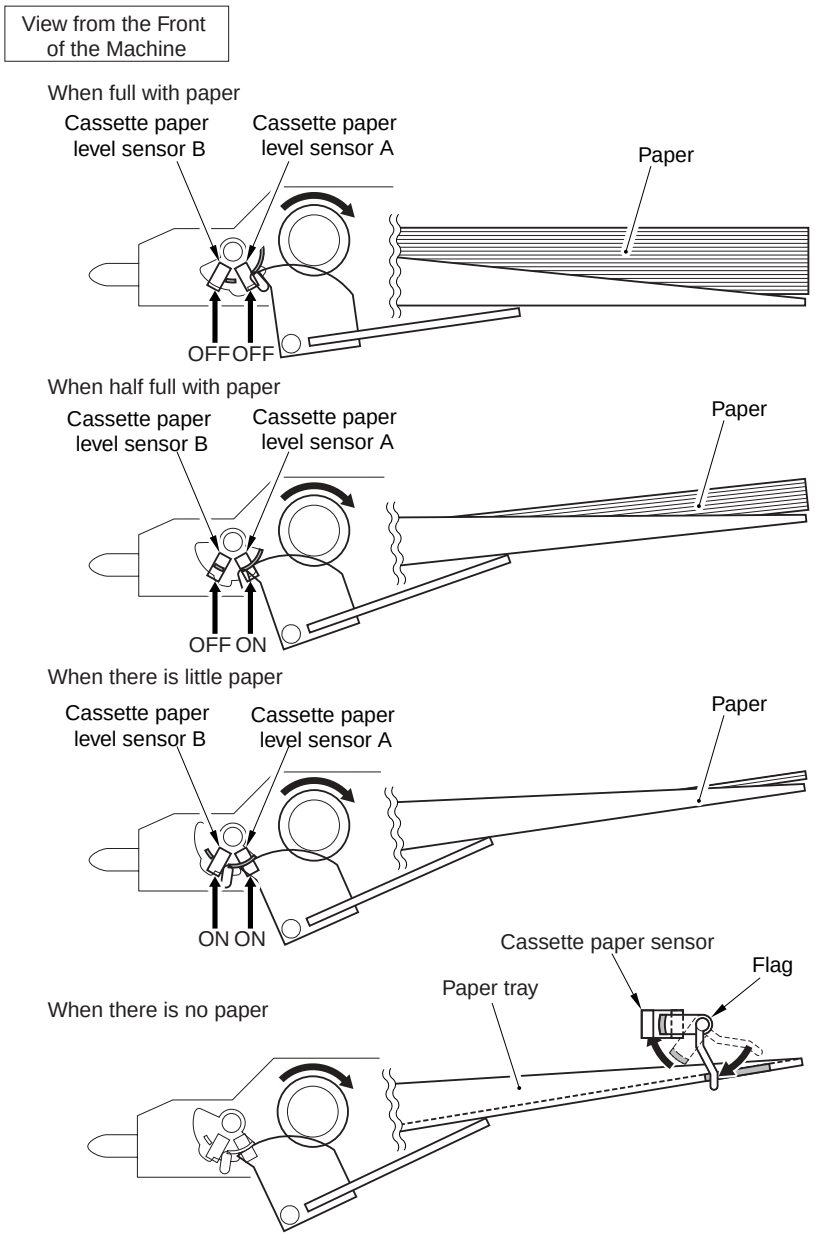
T-8-10

	Cassette 1	Cassette 2
Paper level sensor A	PS3	PS5
Paper level sensor B	PS4	PS6
Paper sensor	PS1	PS2



F-8-22

[1] Flag
[2] Cassette paper sensor
[3] Lifter clutch
[4] Cassette paper level sensor A
[5] Cassette paper level sensor B
[6] Paper level sensor flag
[7] Lifter gear
[8] Tray



F-8-23

T-8-11

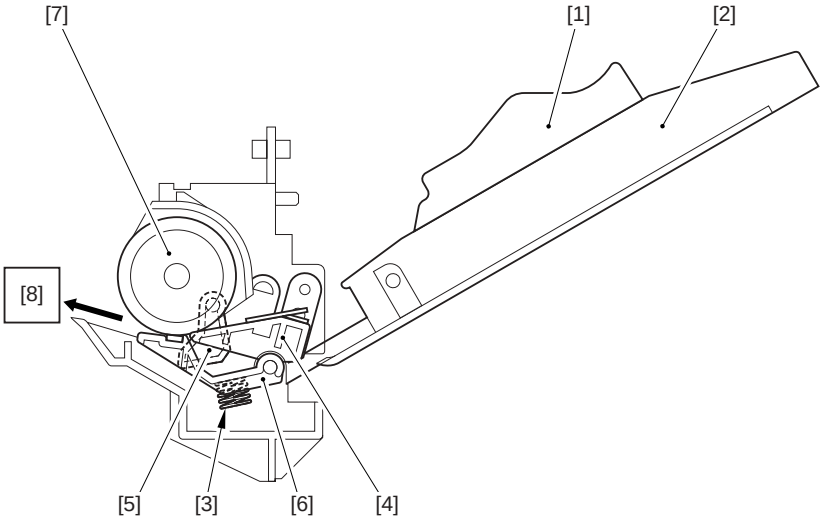
Paper level sensor A	Paper level sensor B	Paper sensor	Paper level	Control panel indication
OFF	OFF	OFF	100% to 50% of capacity	
ON	OFF	OFF	50% to 50 sheets (approx.)	
ON	ON	OFF	50 sheets or less (approx.)	
---	---	ON	No paper	

8.5 Manual Feed Pickup Unit

8.5.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The paper in the tray of the manual feed pickup unit is forced against the manual feed pickup roller by the work of the pickup guide plate, and only a single sheet of paper is separated and moved into the machine by the work of the manual feed pickup roller and the separation pad.



F-8-24

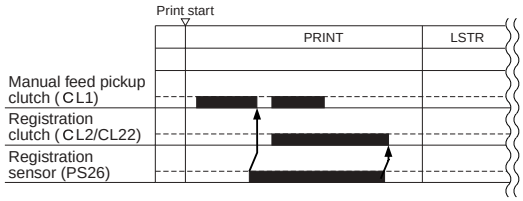
[1] Side guide
[2] Side guide
[3] Pressure spring
[4] Pickup guide plate
[5] Manual feed paper sensor flag
[6] Separation pad
[7] Manual feed pickup roller
[8] (to registration roller assembly)

MEMO:
The manual feed pickup unit of this machine is not equipped with a sensor detecting the last sheet of paper.

8.5.2 Basic Sequence of Operation

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The multi-pickup roller starts to rotate when the manual pickup clutch (CL1) goes on to start upper separation to pick up a single sheet of paper. When the leading edge of the sheet reaches the registration sensor (PS26) and is moved a specific distance, the manual pickup clutch goes off, causing the sheet to arch in the registration roller area.
When the registration clutch (CL2/CL22) goes on, the manual feed pickup clutch (CL1) once again goes on to pick up paper. The manual feed pickup clutch (CL1) goes off immediately before the trailing edge of paper moves past the manual feed pickup roller; thereafter, the registration roller serves to pull off the paper.

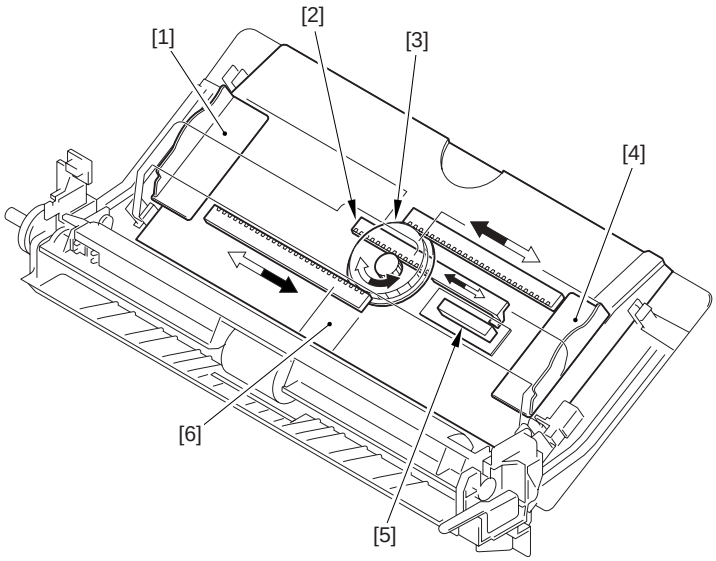


F-8-25

8.5.3 Identifying the Paper Size

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The width of paper is detected with reference to the output of the variable resistor (SVR1), which operates in conjunction with the movement of the side guide. The side guide in the manual feed tray is set when the user moves it to place paper in the cassette.



F-8-26

[1] Side guide (rear)
[2] Stop arm
[3] Center gear
[4] Side guide (front)
[5] Variable resistor (SVR1)
[6] Manual feed tray

Calculate the paper width based on the A/D conversion value of the volume of manually-fed paper.
Set A/D conversion values for three standard points (paper width of A4, A4R, and A6R paper) to the backup RAM in advance. (Make the setting in the service mode.)

Service Mode:

- Registration of a standard point

  COPIER>FUNCTION>CST>MF-A4R
  COPIER>FUNCTION>CST>MF-A6R
  COPIER>FUNCTION>CST>MF-A4

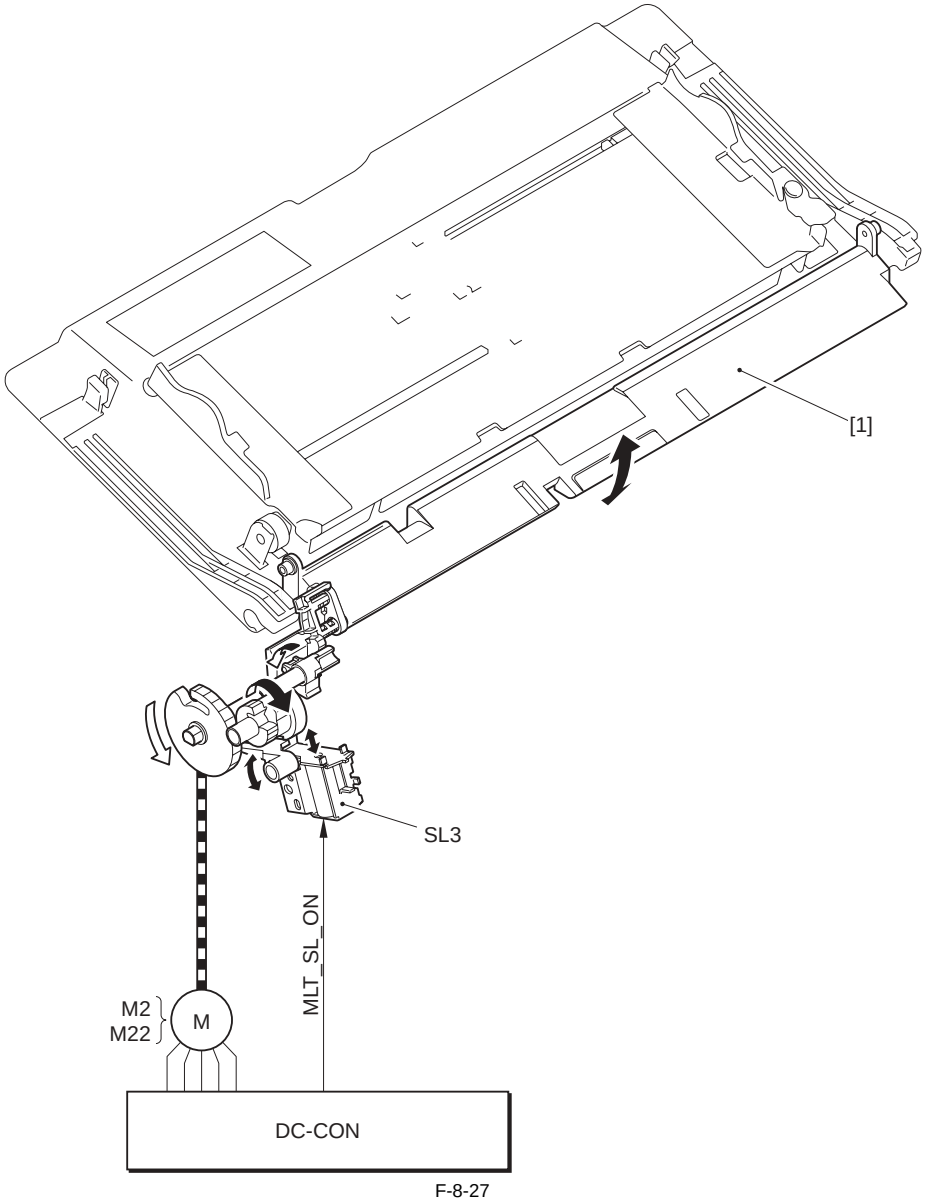
- Adjustment of the value set for the above-mentioned standard point

  COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ>MF-A4R
  COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ>MF-A6R
  COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ>MF-A4

8.5.4 Paper Retaining Mechanism

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When manual feed pickup operation starts, the manual feed pickup guide plate up/down solenoid (SL3) is turned on and the manual feed pickup guide plate moves up.
The paper in the manual feed pickup tray is forced against the manual feed pickup roller by the work of the pickup guide plate.
Only a sheet of paper is separated and moved into the machine by the work of the manual feed pickup roller and the separation pad.



F-8-27

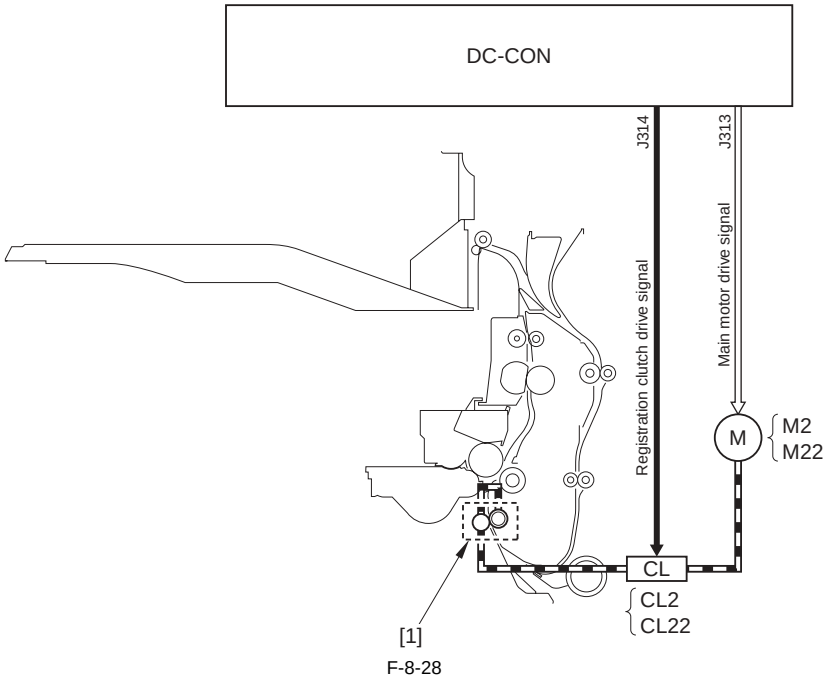
[1] Pickup guide plate
SL3: Manual feed pickup guide plate up/down solenoid
M2: Main motor (iR3245/3235/3230)
M22: Main motor (iR3225)
DC-CON: DC controller

8.6 Registration Unit

8.6.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The registration roller is driven by the main motor (M2/M22).
In between the registration roller and the main motor is the registration clutch (CL2/CL12), servicing to turn on and off the registration roller so that the paper will be matched in relation to the image on the drum at correct registration.



F-8-28

[1] registration roller
CL2: registration clutch(iR3245/3235/3230)
CL12: registration clutch (iR3225)
M2: Main motor (iR3245/3235/3230)
M22: Main motor (iR3225)
DC-CON: DC controller

8.6.2 Checking Horizontal Registration

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine does not have a mechanism to check horizontal registration.
The point of horizontal registration for the 2nd side (the point to start image writing) can be adjusted in the service mode.

Service Mode:
COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> ADJ-REFE

Adjustment of the point of horizontal registration for the 2nd side of small paper printed in double-sidedprinting mode

COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> ADJ-RE-L

Adjustment of the point of horizontal registration for the 2nd side of large paper printed in double-sided printing mode

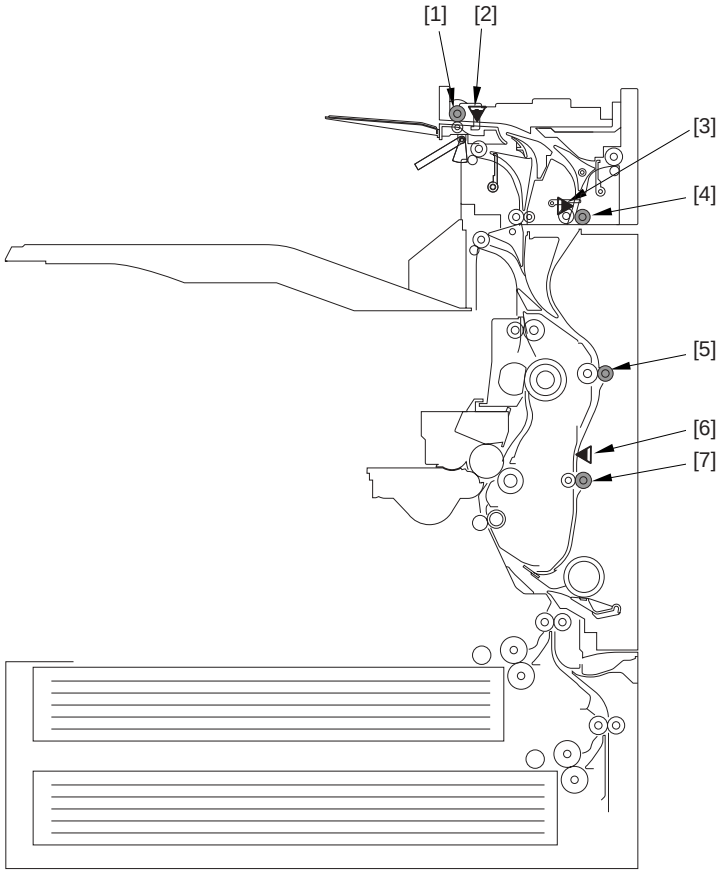
8.7 Duplex Feeding Unit

8.7.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A different drive source is used for the duplexing feeding roller 1 and 2 depending on the model.
iR3245/3235/3230: Duplexing feeding motor (M10)
iR3225: Main motor (M22) + Duplexing feeding clutch (CL4)

The duplexing reverse operation is performed by the work of the reversing roller.



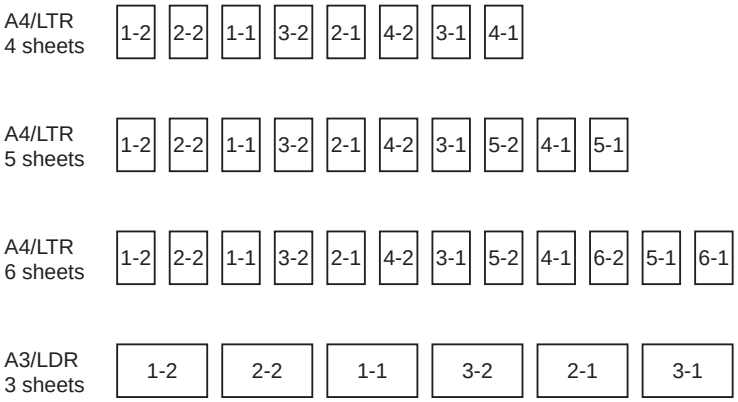
F-8-29

[1] Reversing roller
[2] Reversal sensor (PS4A)
[3] Duplexing inlet sensor (PS3A)
[4] Duplexing inlet roller
[5] Duplexing feeding roller 1
[6] Duplexing feed sensor (PS17)
[7] Duplexing feeding roller 2

8.7.2 Sequence of Image Formation

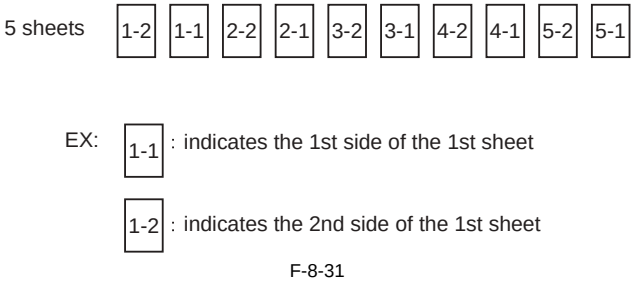
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Configuration with an Accessory Installed



F-8-30

However, in the case of delivery to tray 3 (outside), the machine uses single-sheet circulation.



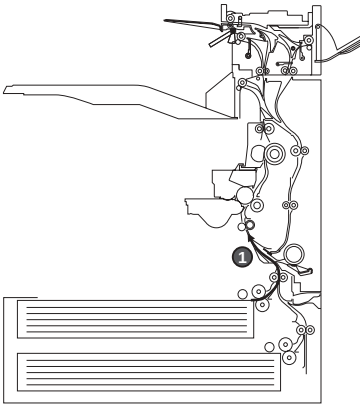
F-8-31

8.7.3 Flow of Paper

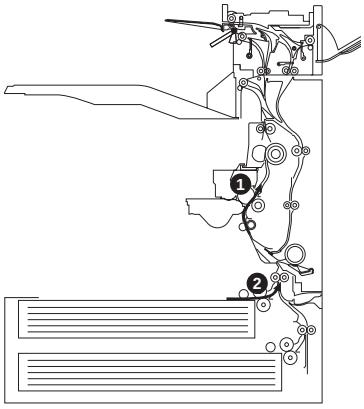
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A4/LTR, 5 Sheets, Delivery to Tray 1/2
A number in a circle indicates the 1st side, while a number in a square indicates the 2nd side.

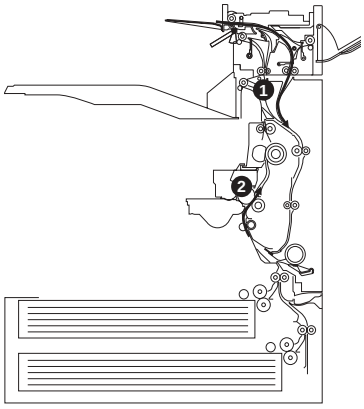
1)



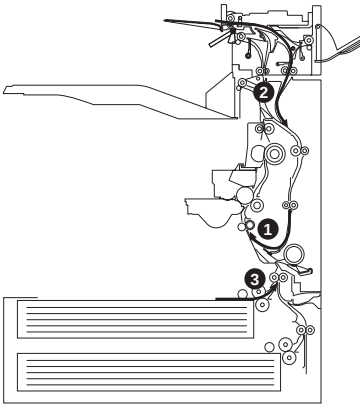
2)



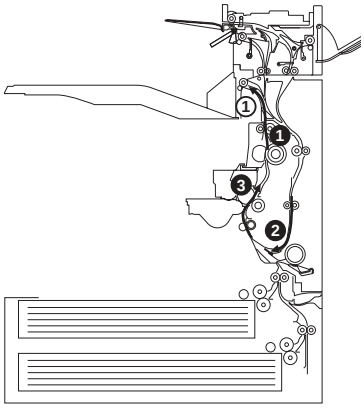
3)



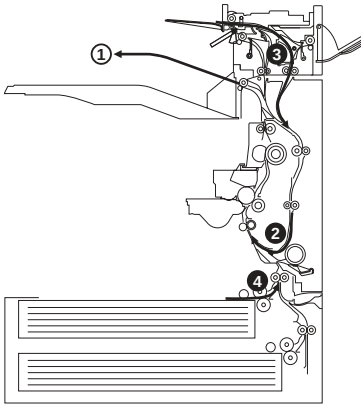
4)



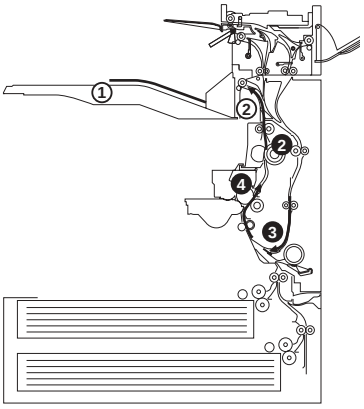
5)



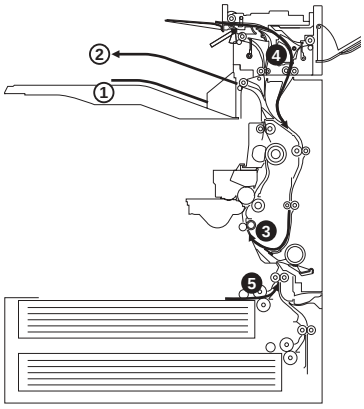
6)



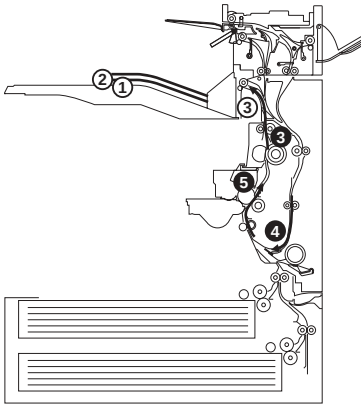
7)



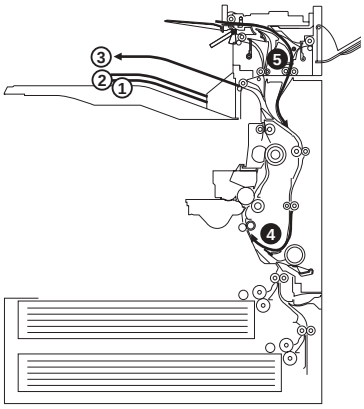
8)



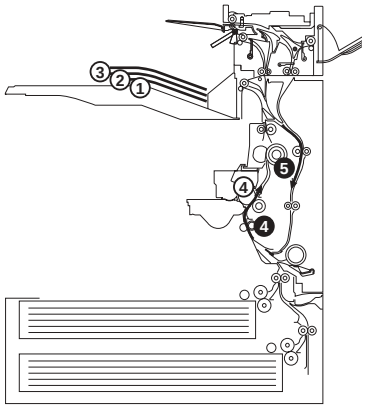
9)



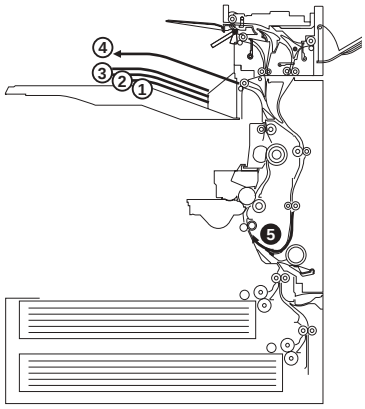
10)



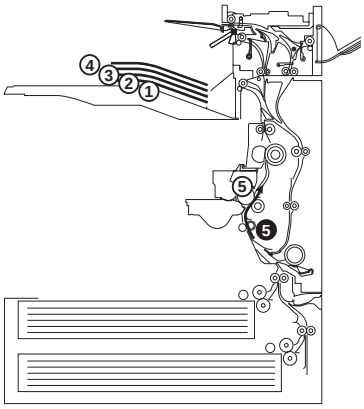
11)



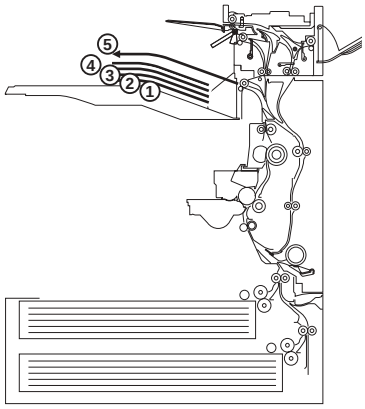
12)



13)



14)



8.8 Parts Replacement Procedure

8.8.1 Pick-up Unit 1

8.8.1.1 Before Removing the Pickup Unit 1

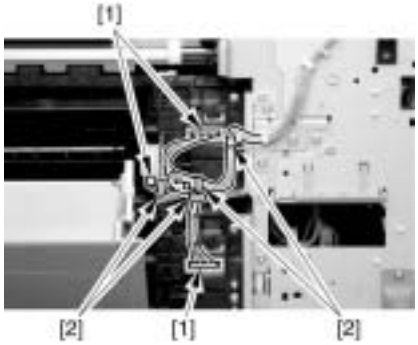
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]

8.8.1.2 Removing the Pickup Unit 1

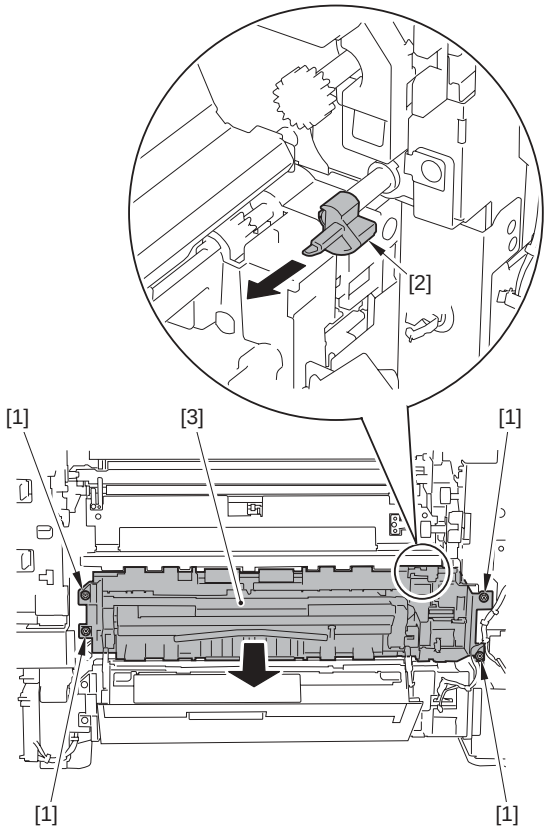
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove cassette 1, 2.
2) Disconnect the 3 connectors [1] and free the harness from the 4 wire saddles [2].



F-8-32

3) Remove pickup unit 1 [3].
- 5 screws [1]
- 1 cam [2]



F-8-33

8.8.2 Pick-up Unit 2

8.8.2.1 Before Removing the Pickup Unit 2

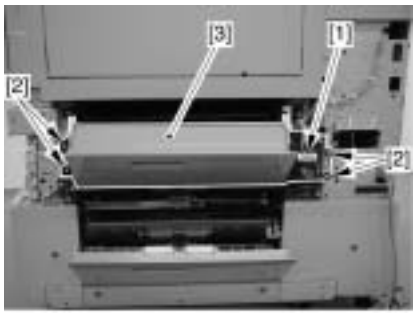
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]

8.8.2.2 Removing the Pickup Unit 2

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove cassette 1, 2.
2) Free the harness from the guide and remove pickup unit 2 [3].
- 1 connector [1]
- 4 screws [2]



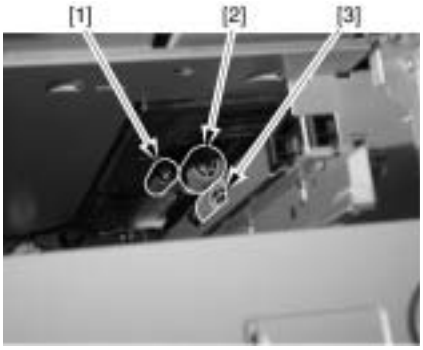
F-8-34

8.8.3 Pickup Roller

8.8.3.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/ Separation Roller

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the cassette.
2) Open the right cover (in the case of separation roller).
3) Hold the tab to remove the pickup roller [1]/feed roller [2]/separation roller [3].



F-8-35

Point to note when replacing the feed roller/separation roller
The color of the feed roller/separation roller (roller core) of this machine is black.

8.8.4 Sensor Mount

8.8.4.1 Before Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

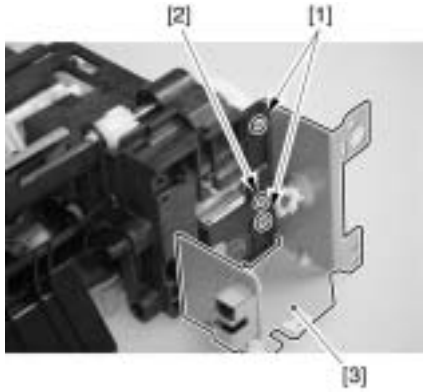
1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]
4) Remove pickup unit 1. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 1]
5) Remove pickup unit 2. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 2]

8.8.4.2 Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

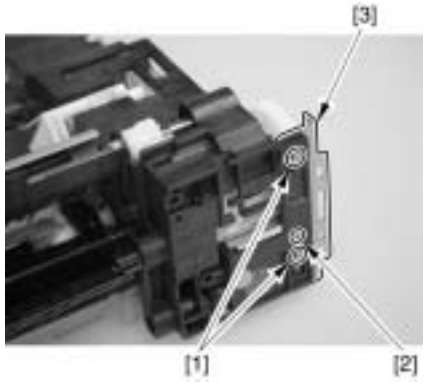
1) Remove the 2 TP screws [1] and the binding screw [2] at the rear of the pickup assembly to remove the bracket [3].

Pickup unit 1



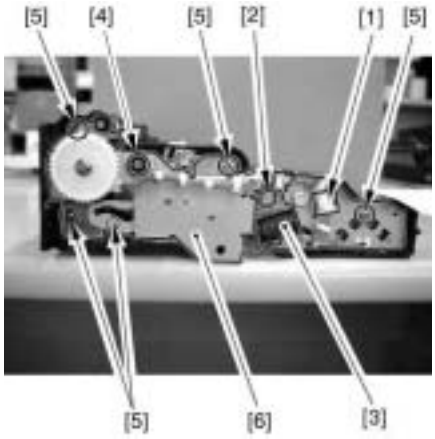
F-8-36

Pickup unit 2



F-8-37

2) Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the screw [2] to remove the cassette pickup solenoid [3].
3) Remove the bushing [4] and the 5 screws [5] to remove the sensor mounting plate [6].



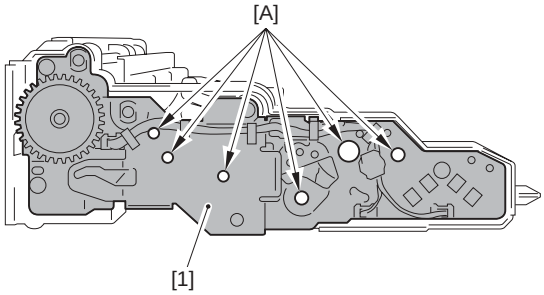
F-8-38

8.8.4.3 Attaching the Sensor Mounting Plate

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠ Be sure not to make the pickup unit facing downward when attaching the sensor mounting plate because the gears can fall.

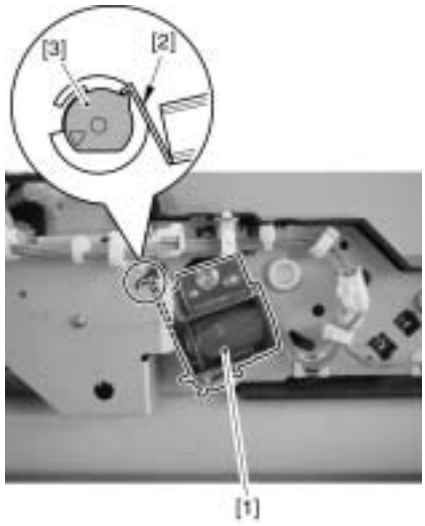
1) Fit the 6 points [A] shown in the figure into the holes of the sensor mounting plate [1], and then tighten with 5 screws to attach the sensor mounting plate [1].



F-8-39

2) Attach the cassette pickup solenoid [1].

> ⚠ Be sure to make the baffle [2] engaged with the cam gear [3].



F-8-40

Turn the gear to check that the movement is smooth.

8.8.5 Cassette Pick-up Motor 1

8.8.5.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 1

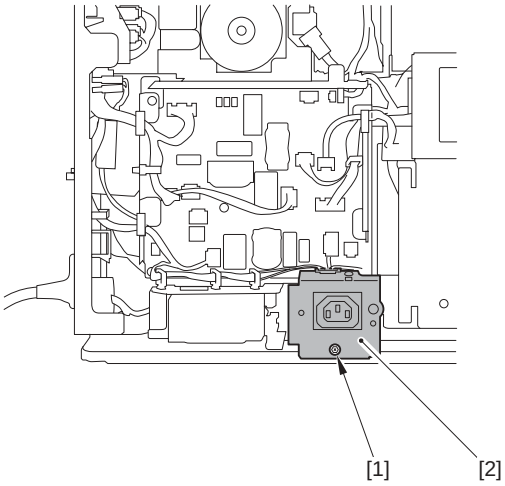
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]
3) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]

8.8.5.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 1

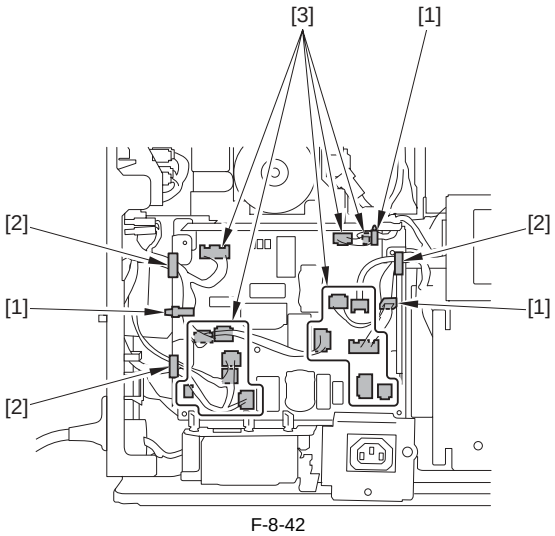
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the screw [1] to disconnect the pedestal connector [2].



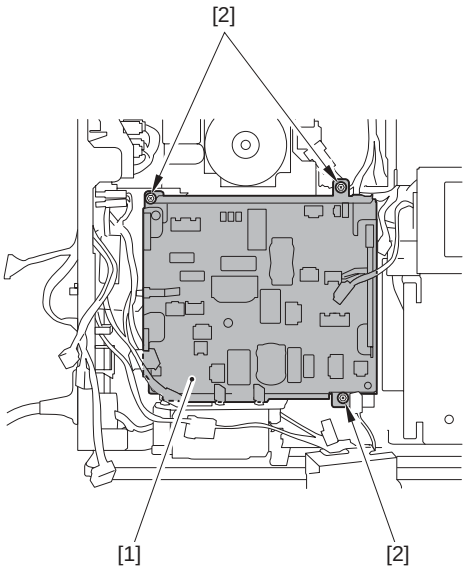
F-8-41

2) Free the harness from the 3 wire saddles [1] and the 3 edge saddles [1].
- 15 connectors [3]



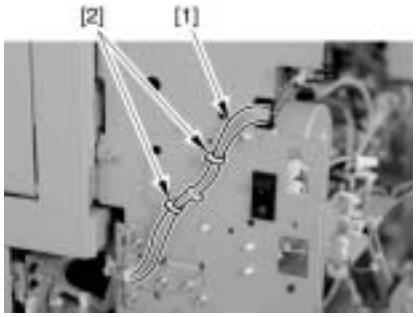
F-8-42

3) Detach the AC driver PCB mounting plate [2].
- 3 screws [1]



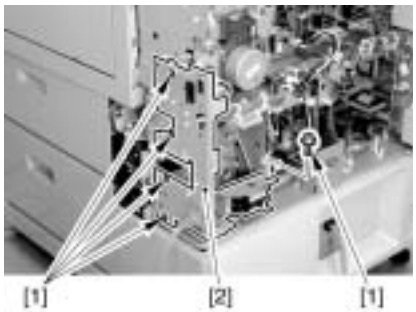
F-8-43

4) Free the harness [1] from the 2 wire saddles [2].



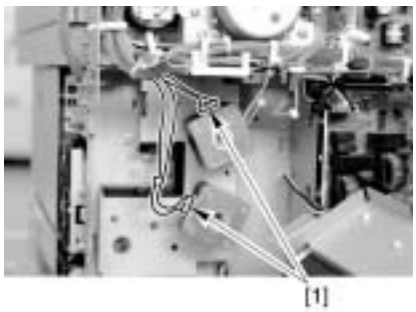
F-8-44

5) Remove the 5 screws [1] to detach the power supply cord plate [2].



F-8-45

6) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1].



F-8-46

7) Remove the 5 screws [1] and remove the pickup motor base [2].

F-8-47

8) Remove the 2 screws [1] to remove cassette pickup motor 1 [2].

F-8-48

8.8.6 Cassette Pick-up Motor 2

8.8.6.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 2

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]
3) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]

8.8.6.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 2

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

(Perform the same procedure from step 1 to 7 as in 'Removing Cassette Pick-up Motor 1'.) (page 8-32)Reference[Removing the Cassette Pickup Motor 1]
1) Remove the 2 screws to remove cassette pickup motor 2 [2].

F-8-49

8.8.7 Cassette Size Sensor

8.8.7.1 Before Removing the Cassette Size Sensor

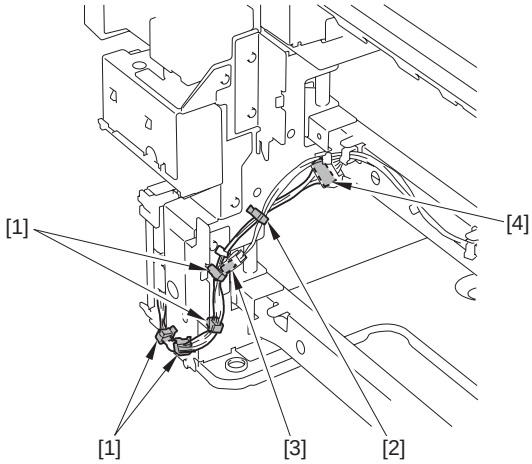
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]
4) Remove pickup unit 1. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 1]
5) Remove pickup unit 2. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 2]

8.8.7.2 Removing the Cassette Size Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

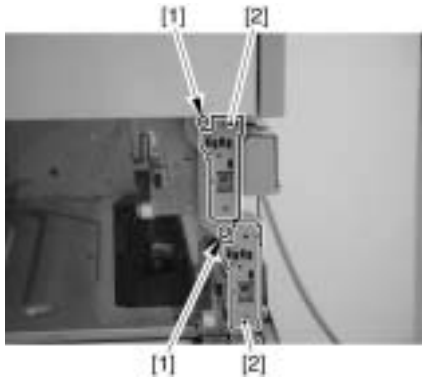
1) Free the harness from the wire saddle to disconnect the connector.
   - In the case of cassette size sensor 1: 4 wire saddles [1], 1 connector [3]
   - In the case of cassette size sensor 2: 4 wire saddles [1], 1 wire saddle [2], 1 connector [4]



F-8-50

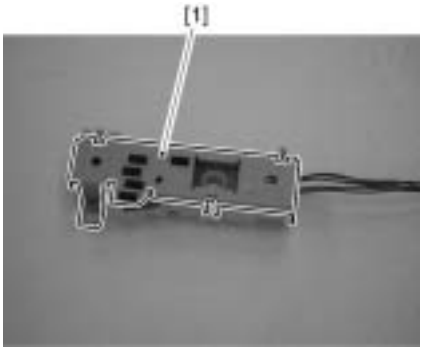
2) Remove the cassette size sensor base [2].
   - 1 screw each [1]

MEMO:
The base for cassette size sensor 2 can be removed by itself, but the base for cassette size sensor 1 has to be removed along with the base for cassette size sensor 2.



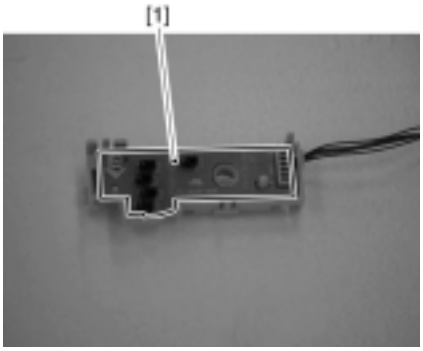
F-8-51

3) Detach the cover [1] from the base.



F-8-52

4) Remove the cassette size sensor [1] from the base.



F-8-53

8.8.8 Cassette Retry Paper Sensor

8.8.8.1 Before Removing the Cassette Retry Paper Sensor

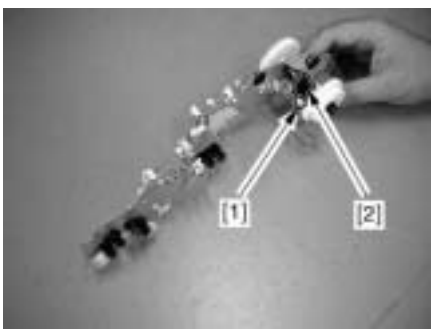
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]
4) Remove pickup unit 1. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 1]
5) Remove pickup unit 2. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 2]
6) Remove the sensor mounting plate. (page 8-31)Reference[Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate]

8.8.8.2 Removing the Cassette Retry Paper Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the cassette retry paper sensor [2].
- 1 connector [1]



F-8-54

8.8.9 Cassette Paper Sensor

8.8.9.1 Before Removing the Cassette Paper Sensor

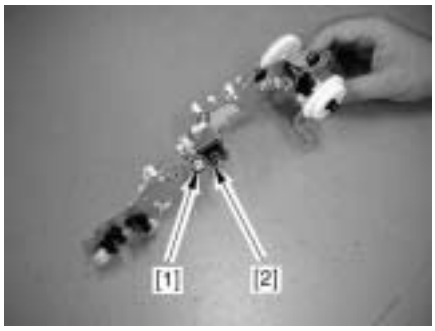
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]
4) Remove pickup unit 1. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 1]
5) Remove pickup unit 2. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 2]
6) Remove the sensor mounting plate. (page 8-31)Reference[Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate]

8.8.9.2 Removing the Cassette Paper Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the cassette paper sensor [2].
- 1 connector [1]



F-8-55

8.8.10 Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B)

8.8.10.1 Before Removing the Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B)

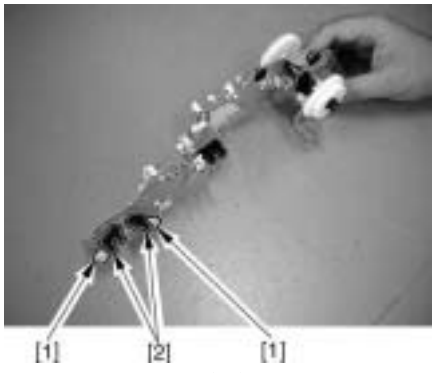
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]
4) Remove pickup unit 1. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 1]
5) Remove pickup unit 2. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 2]
6) Remove the sensor mounting plate. (page 8-31)Reference[Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate]

8.8.10.2 Removing the Cassette Paper Level Sensor (A/B)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the cassette paper level sensor (A/B) [2].
- 1 connector each [1]



F-8-56

8.8.11 Slide Resistor

8.8.11.1 Before Removing the Slide Resistor

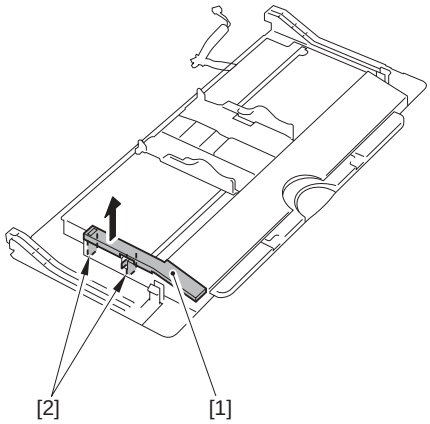
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover. (page 10-37)Reference[Removing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the manual feed unit. (page 8-36)Reference[Removing the Manual Feed Unit]
4) Remove the manual feed tray unit. (page 8-35)Reference[Removing the Manual Feed Tray Unit]

8.8.11.2 Removing the Slide Resistor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

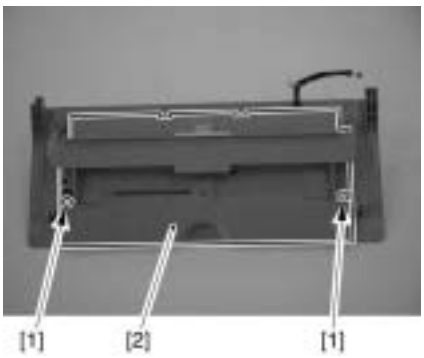
1) Release the 2 claws [1] to detach the cover [2].



F-8-57

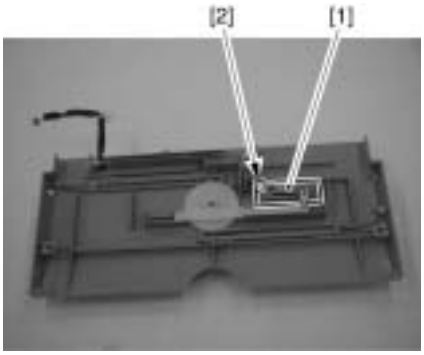
2) Detach the manual feed tray upper cover [2].
- 2 screws [1]

> ⚠ Be sure to mark the side registration position before detaching the manual feed tray upper cover.



F-8-58

3) Remove the slide resistor [1].
- 1 connector [2]



F-8-59

8.8.12 Cassette Pickup Solenoid

8.8.12.1 Before Removing the Cassette Pickup Solenoid

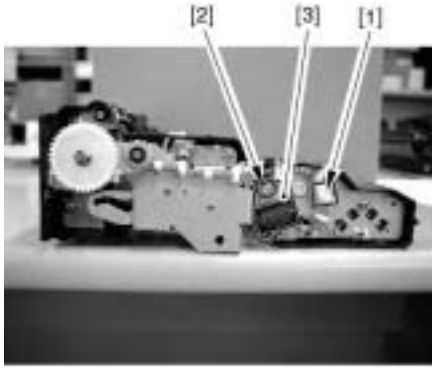
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]
4) Remove pickup unit 1. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 1]
5) Remove pickup unit 2. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 2]

8.8.12.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Solenoid

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the cassette pickup solenoid [3].
- 1 connector [1]
- 1 screw [2]



F-8-60

8.8.13 Manual Tray Assembly

8.8.13.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Tray Unit

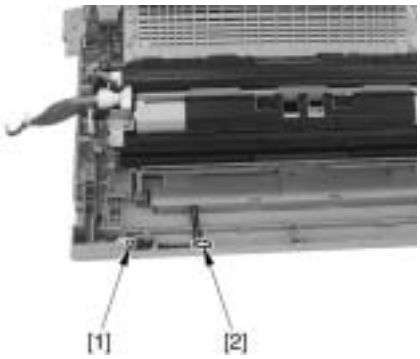
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover. (page 10-37)Reference[Removing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the manual feed unit. (page 8-36)Reference[Removing the Manual Feed Unit]

8.8.13.2 Removing the Manual Feed Tray Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Disconnect the connector [1].
2) Remove the tie-wrap [2].



F-8-61

3) Remove the manual feed tray unit [3].

F-8-62

8.8.13.3 When Replacing the Manual Feed Tray

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Resister the paper width basic value. (page 14-7)[Registration of Paper Width Basic Value for Manual Feed Tray]
2) Execute check and adjustment of the horizontal registration (left margin) on the first/second side of the image. (page 14-1)[Adjusting the Image Position]

8.8.14 Manual Feed Unit

8.8.14.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Unit

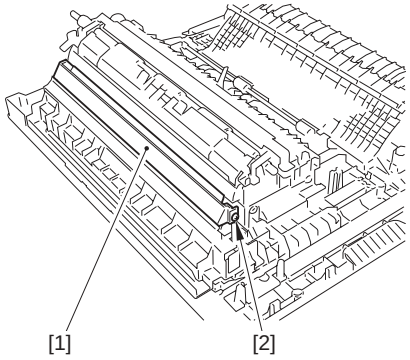
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover. (page 10-37)Reference[Removing the Right Cover]

8.8.14.2 Removing the Manual Feed Unit

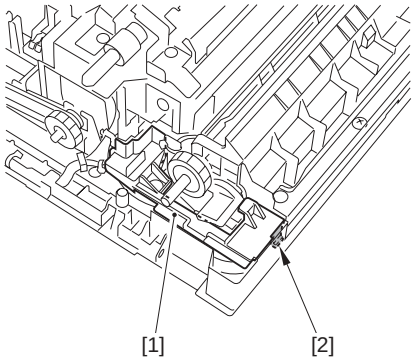
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the manual feed pickup guide [1].
- 1 screw [2]



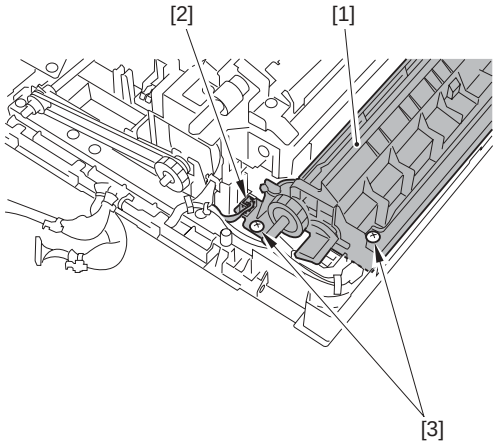
F-8-63

2) Detach the connector cover [1].
- 1 claw [2]

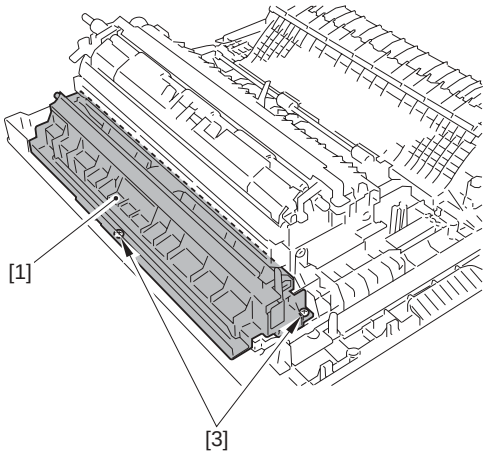


F-8-64

3) Remove the manual feed unit [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 4 screws [3]



F-8-65



F-8-66

8.8.15 Manual Pickup Roller

8.8.15.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Roller

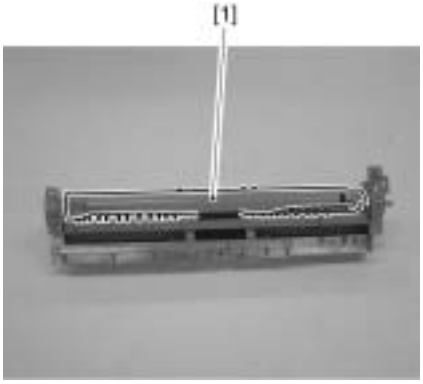
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover. (page 10-37)Reference[Removing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the manual feed unit. (page 8-36)Reference[Removing the Manual Feed Unit]

8.8.15.2 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Roller

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

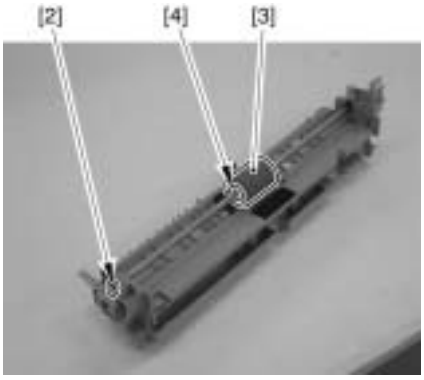
1) Detach the manual feed pickup upper cover [1] (snap stopper).



F-8-67

2) Remove the manual feed pickup roller [3] together with the shaft.
   - 1 bushing [2]
3) Remove the manual feed pickup roller [3] together with the shaft.
   - 1 plastic E-ring [4]

> ⚠ Do not drop the parallel pin when removing the manual feed pickup roller.



F-8-68

8.8.16 Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid

8.8.16.1 Before Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/ Down Solenoid

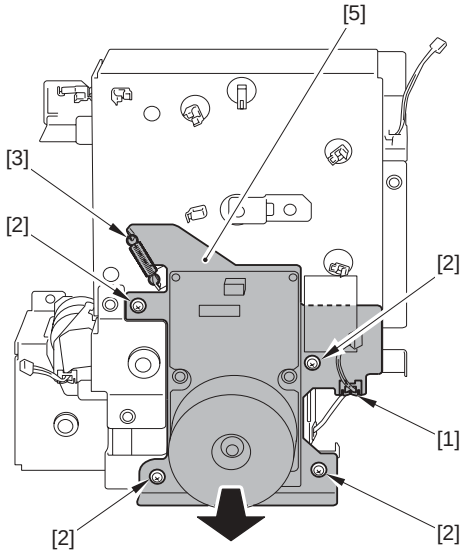
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]
3) Remove the main drive unit. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3245/3235/3230)] (page 10-22)Reference[Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3225)]

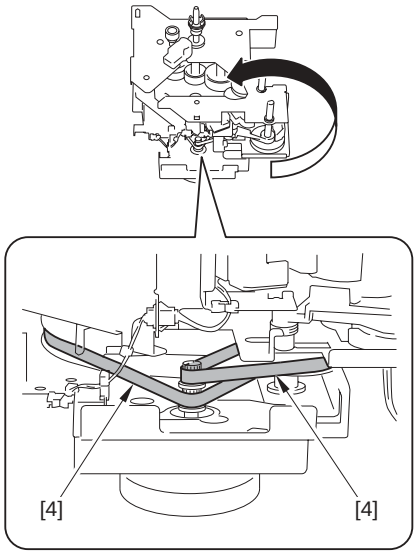
8.8.16.2 Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid (iR 3425/3235/3230)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the main motor mounting plate [5] (with the main motor).
   - 1 edge saddle [1] (removing the harness)
   - 4 screws [2]
   - 1 spring [3]
   - 2 timing belt [4]

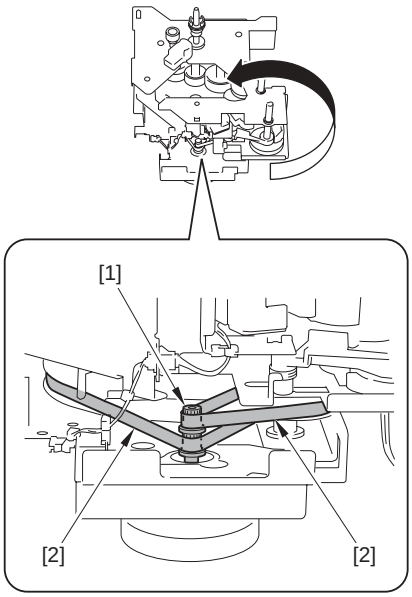


F-8-69



F-8-70

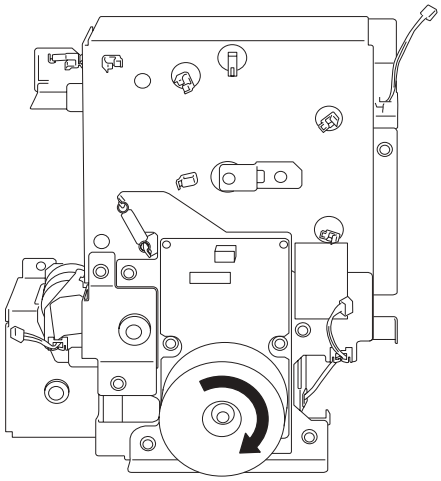
> ⚠ **Points to Note During the Work**
> Be sure that the 2 timing belts [2] are fitted to the shaft [1] of the main motor as shown.



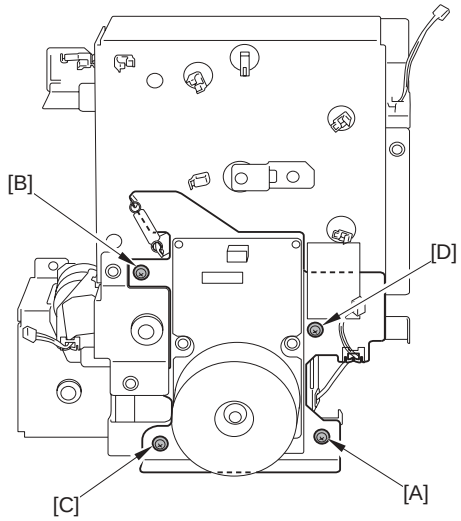
Adjusting the Tension of the Main Motor

1) Temporarily fix the main motor mounting plate in place to the main drive unit.

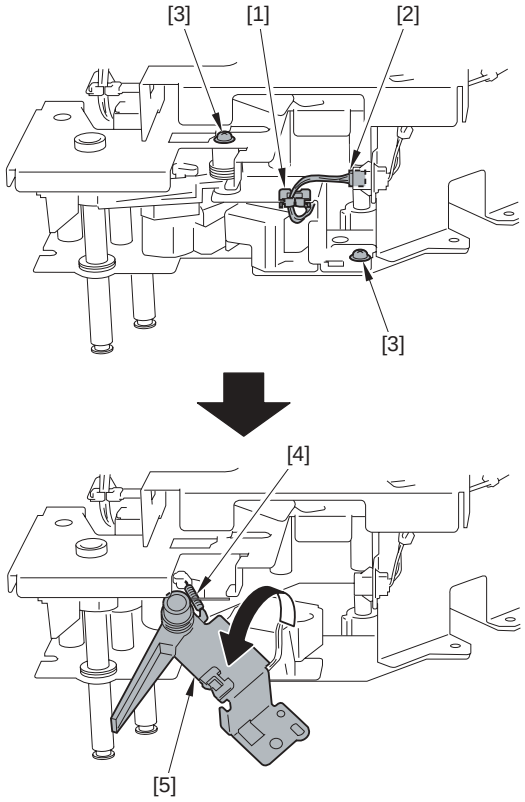
2) So that the motor gear and the teeth of the pulley mesh correctly, move the motor in the direction of the arrow.



3) Tighten the screws of the main motor mounting plate in the order indicated ([A] -> [B] -> [C] -> [D]).



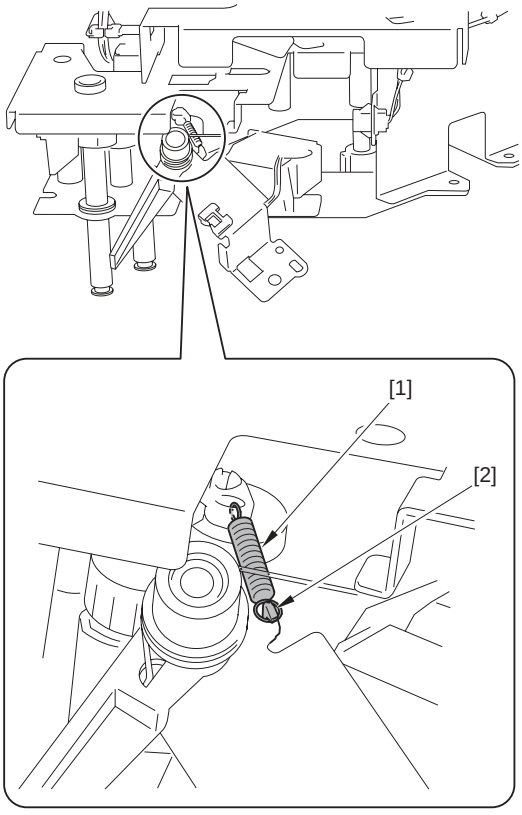
2) Remove the plate [5].
- 1 edge saddle [1] (removing the harness)
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]
- 1 spring [4]



F-8-71

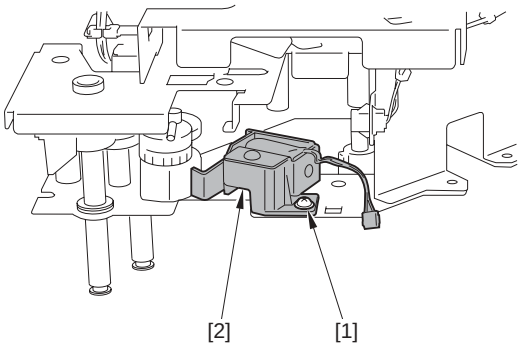
Points to Note When Installing the Plate

- Be sure to hook the spring [1] on the plate [2].



- Be sure to hook the spring [1] of the flapper on the end [2] of the unit.

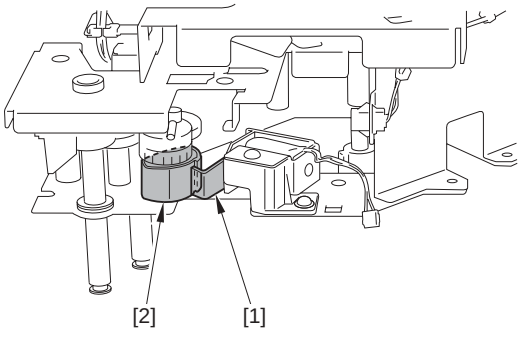
3) Removing the screw [1] and remove the manual feeder pad up/down solenoid [2].



F-8-72

Points to Note When Installing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid

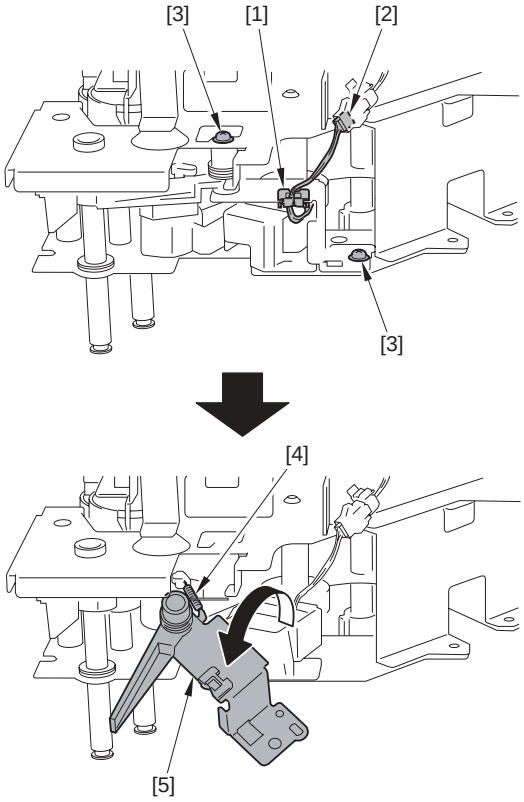
Be sure to hook the arm [1] of the manual feeder pad up/down solenoid on the protrusion [2] of the gear.



8.8.16.3 Removing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid (iR 3225)

iR3225 / iR3225N

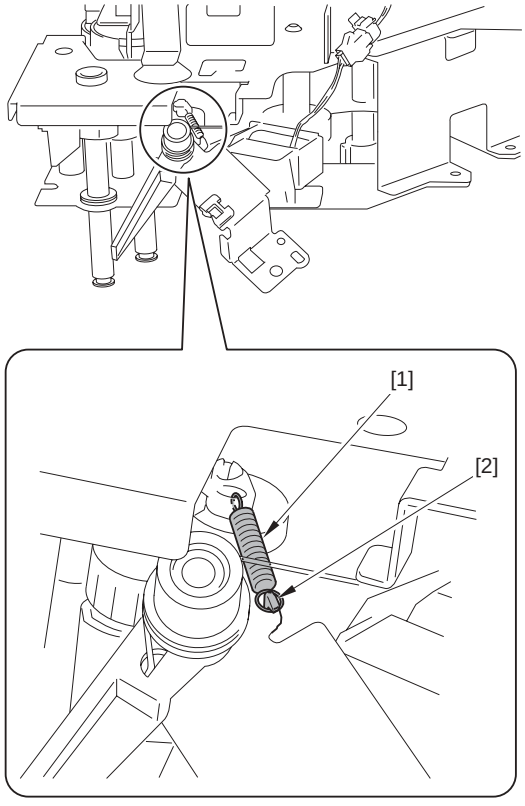
1) Remove the plate [5].
- 1 edge saddle [1] (removing the harness)
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]
- 1 spring [4]



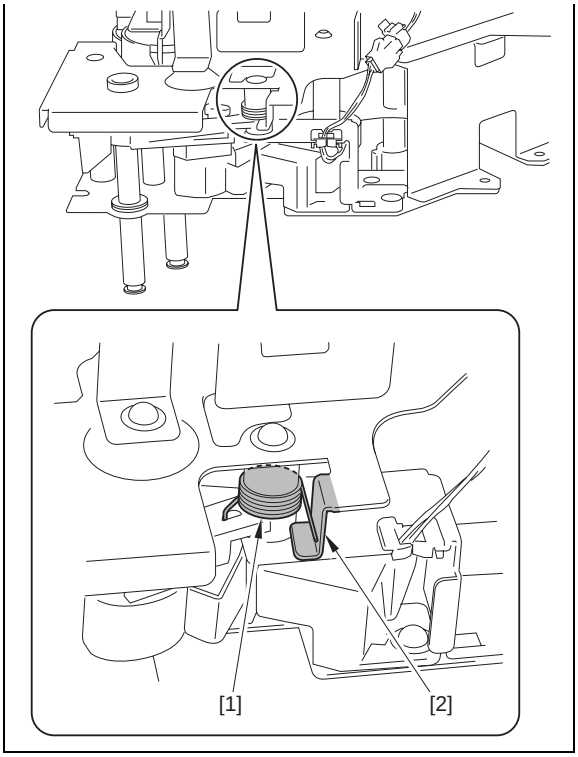
F-8-73

Points to Note When Installing the Plate

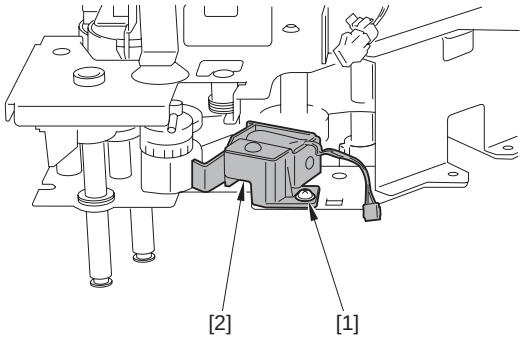
- Be sure to hook the spring [1] on the plate [2].



- Be sure to hook the spring [1] of the flapper on the end [2] of the unit.



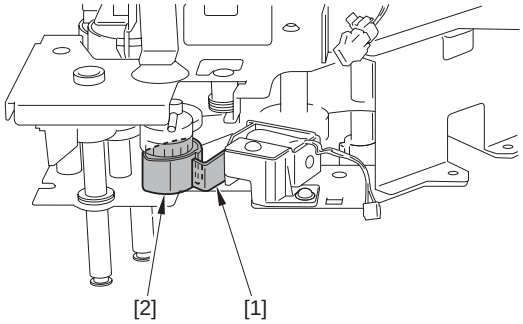
2) Removing the screw [1] and remove the manual feeder pad up/down solenoid [2].



F-8-74

⚠ Points to Note When Installing the Manual Feeder Pad Up/Down Solenoid

Be sure to hook the arm [1] of the manual feeder pad up/down solenoid on the protrusion [2] of the gear.



8.8.17 Manual Pick-up Clutch

8.8.17.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3245/3235/3230)

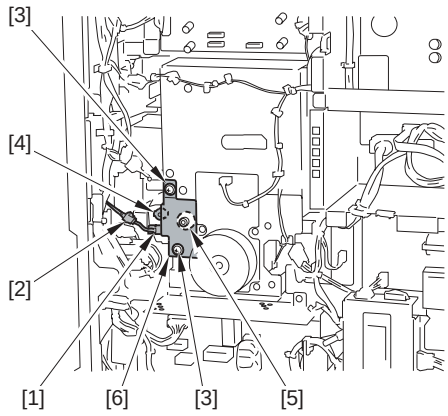
iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

8.8.17.2 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3245/3235/3230)

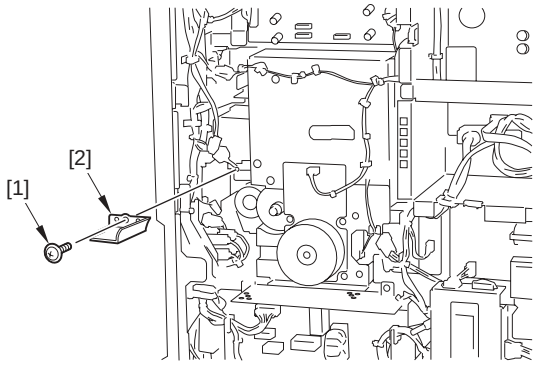
iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the fixing plate [6].
   - 1 edge saddle [1] (removing the harness)
   - 1 connector [2]
   - 2 screws [3]
   - 1 bushing [4]
   - 1 bear ring [5]



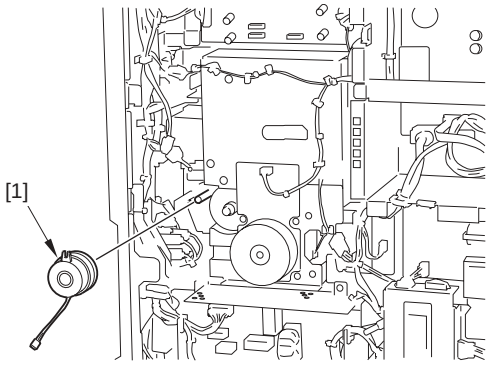
F-8-75

2) Remove the screw [1] and remove the cover [2].



F-8-76

3) Remove the manual feed pickup clutch [1].



F-8-77

8.8.17.3 Before Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3225)

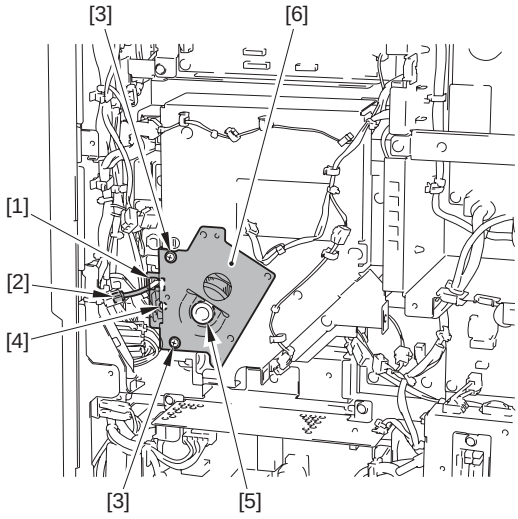
iR3225 / iR3225N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]
3) Remove the main motor. (page 10-35)Reference[Removing the Main Motor (iR 3225)]

8.8.17.4 Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Clutch (iR 3225)

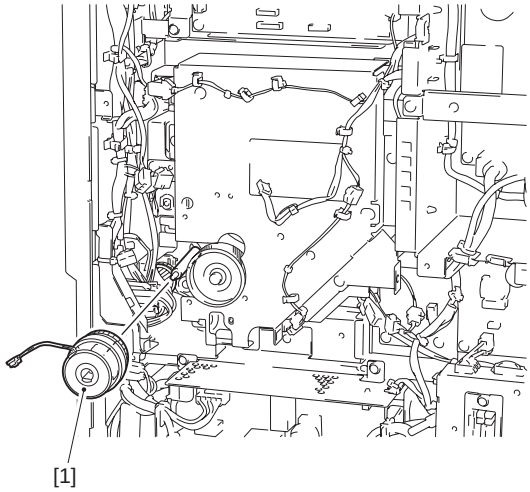
iR3225 / iR3225N

1) Remove the fixing plate [6].
- 1 edge saddle [1] (removing the harness)
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]
- 1 bushing [4]
- 1 bear ring [5]



F-8-78

2) Remove the manual feed pickup clutch [1].



F-8-79

8.8.18 Manual Separation Pad

8.8.18.1 Before Removing the Manual Feed Separation Pad

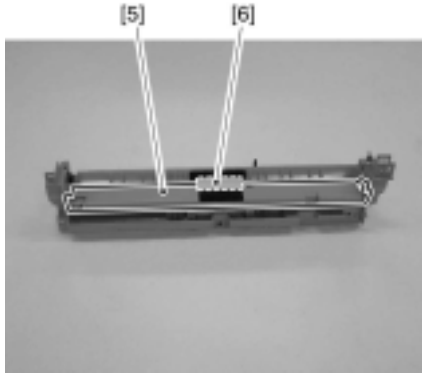
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover. (page 10-37)Reference[Removing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the manual feed unit. (page 8-36)Reference[Removing the Manual Feed Unit]
4) Remove the manual feed pickup roller. (page 8-36)Reference[Removing the Manual Feed Pickup Roller]

8.8.18.2 Removing the Manual Feed Separation Pad

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Detach the middle plate [5].
2) Remove the manual feed separation pad [6].



F-8-80

8.8.19 Registration Clutch

8.8.19.1 Before Removing the Registration Clutch

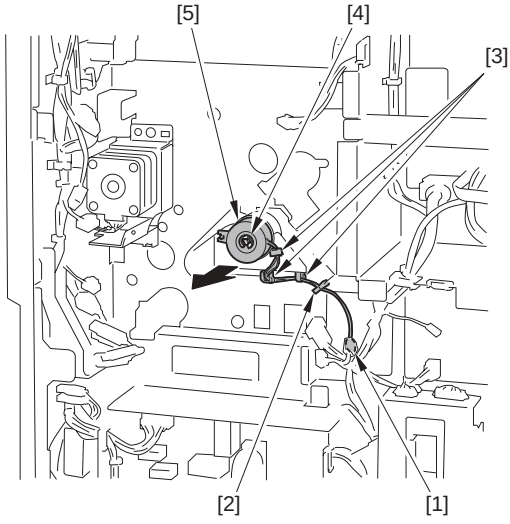
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]
3) Remove the main drive unit. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3245/3235/3230)] (page 10-22)Reference[Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3225)]

8.8.19.2 Removing the Registration Clutch

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the registration clutch [5].
- 3 wire saddles [1] (removing the harness)
- 1 edge saddle [2] (removing the harness)
- 1 connector [3]
- 1 E-ring [4]



F-8-81

8.8.20 3 Way Unit

8.8.20.1 Before Removing the 3 Way Unit

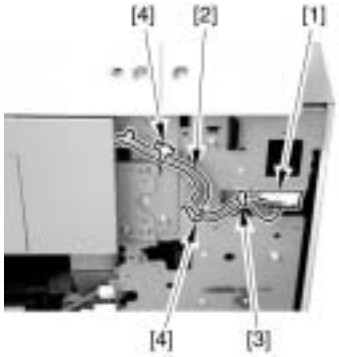
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]

8.8.20.2 Removing the 3 Way Unit

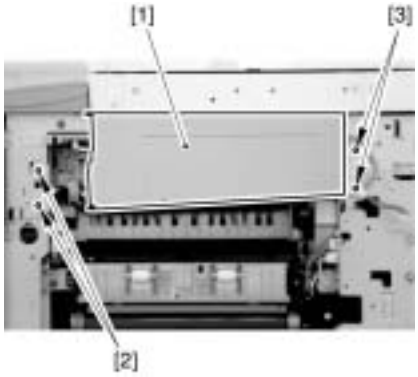
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Free the harness [2] from the 1 wire saddle [3].
   - 1 connector [1]
   - 2 reuse-bands [4]



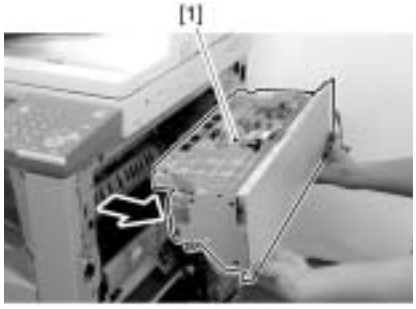
F-8-82

2) Open the 3 way unit [1] and remove the 2 screws [2].
3) Close the 3 way unit [1] and remove the 2 screws [3].



F-8-83

4) Remove the 3 way unit [1].



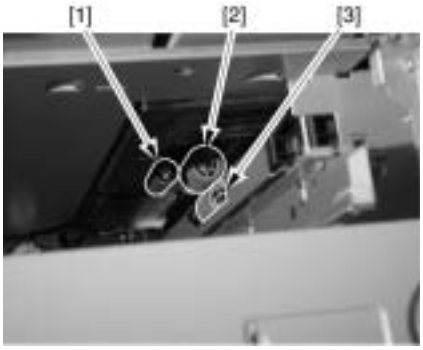
F-8-84

8.8.21 Feeding Roller

8.8.21.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/ Separation Roller

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the cassette.
2) Open the right cover (in the case of separation roller).
3) Hold the tab to remove the pickup roller [1]/feed roller [2]/separation roller [3].



F-8-85

Point to note when replacing the feed roller/separation roller
The color of the feed roller/separation roller (roller core) of this machine is black.

8.8.22 Vertical Path Roller

8.8.22.1 Before Removing the Vertical Path Roller

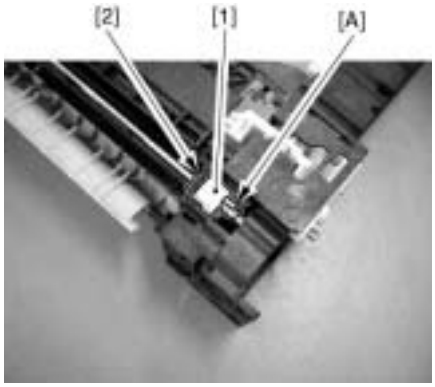
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the right cover (lower front). (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)]
4) Remove pickup unit 1. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 1]
5) Remove pickup unit 2. (page 8-30)Reference[Removing the Pickup Unit 2]
6) Remove the sensor mounting plate. (page 8-31)Reference[Removing the Sensor Mounting Plate]

8.8.22.2 Removing the Vertical Path Roller

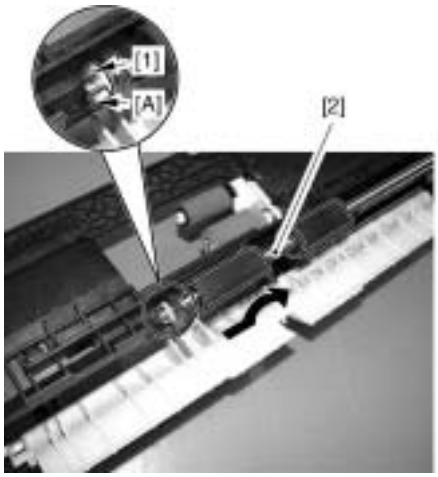
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Release the claw [A] at the rear side to remove the gear [1] and the bushing [2].



F-8-86

2) Release the claw [A] of the bushing at the front side to move it toward the rear, and then remove the vertical path roller [2] upward.



F-8-87

8.8.23 Duplex Feed Roller 2

8.8.23.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Roller 2

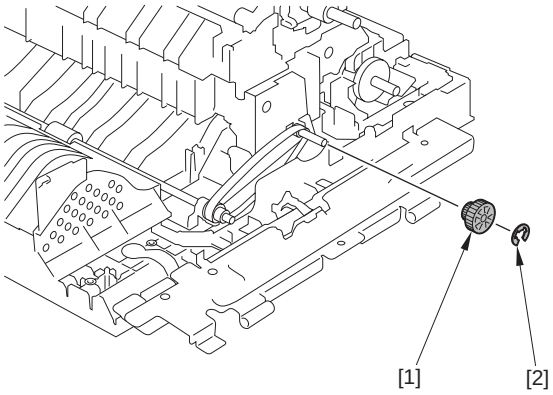
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover. (page 10-37)Reference[Removing the Right Cover]

8.8.23.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Roller 2

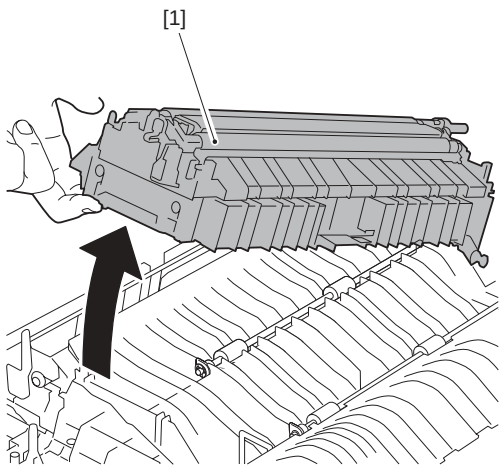
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the one-way gear [2].
- 1 E-ring [1]



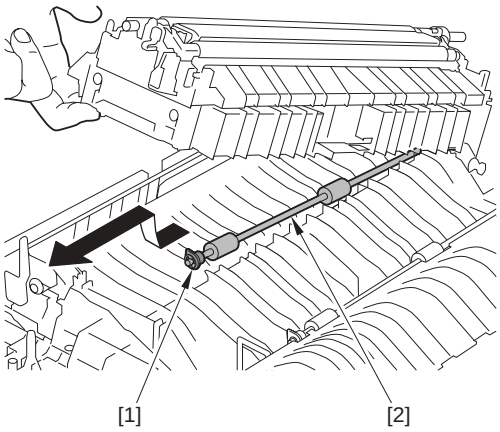
F-8-88

2) Lift the duplex feed unit [1] up.



F-8-89

3) Move the bushing [1] and the duplex feed roller 2 [2] in the direction of the arrow to remove.



F-8-90

8.8.24 Duplex Feed Motor

8.8.24.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230)

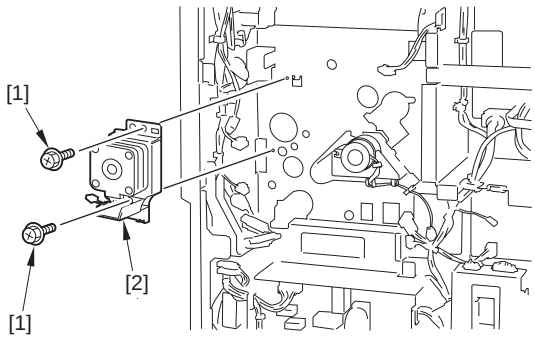
iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]
3) Remove the Main drive unit. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3245/3235/3230)]

8.8.24.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230)

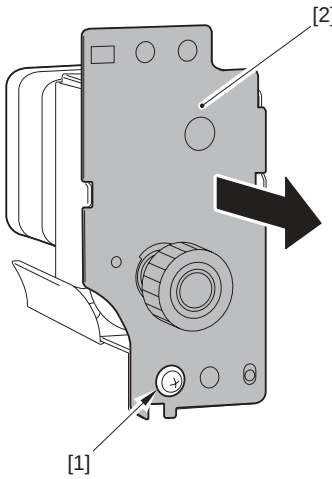
iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the duplex feed motor unit [2].



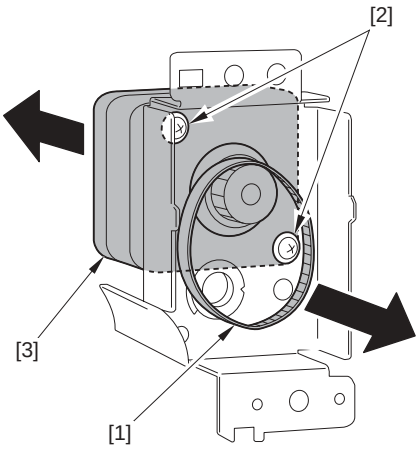
F-8-91

2) Remove the screw [1] and remove the plate [2].



F-8-92

3) Remove the duplex feed motor [3].
- 1 timing belt [1]
- 2 screws [2]



F-8-93

8.8.25 Duplex Feed Sensor

8.8.25.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Sensor

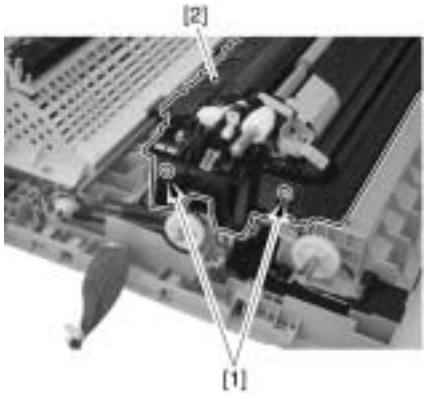
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Remove the right cover. (page 10-37)Reference[Removing the Right Cover]

8.8.25.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Sensor

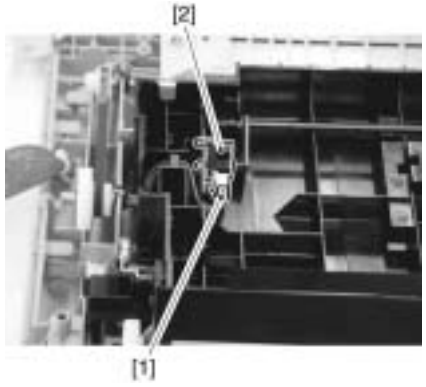
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 2 screws (with color) [1] to remove the transfer frame [2].



F-8-94

2) Disconnect the connector [1] to remove the duplex feed sensor [2].



F-8-95

8.8.26 Duplex Feed Clutch

8.8.26.1 Before Removing the Duplex Feed Clutch (iR 3225)

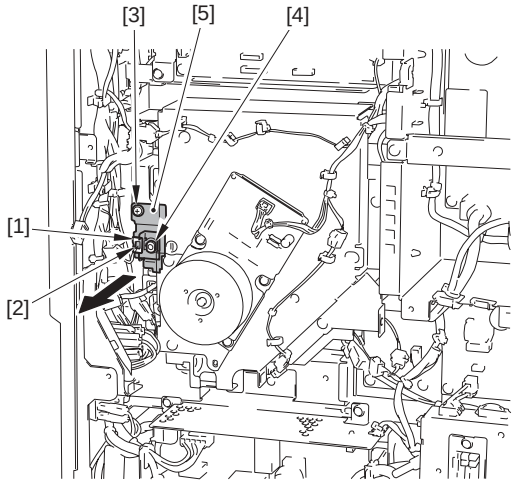
iR3225 / iR3225N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

8.8.26.2 Removing the Duplex Feed Clutch (iR 3225)

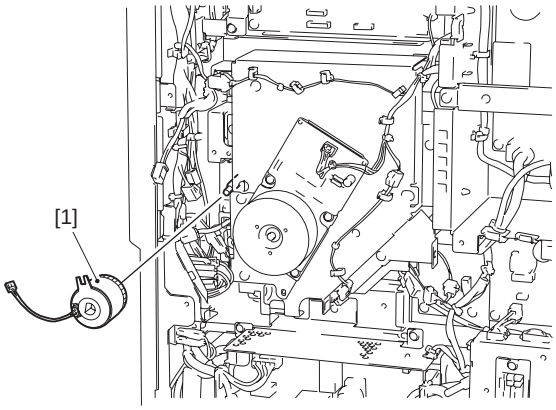
iR3225 / iR3225N

1) Remove the fixing plate [5].
- 1 edge saddle [1] (removing the harness)
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]
- 1 bushing [4]



F-8-96

2) Remove the duplex feed clutch [1].



F-8-97

8.8.27 Delivery Assembly 1

8.8.27.1 Before Removing the Delivery Unit 1

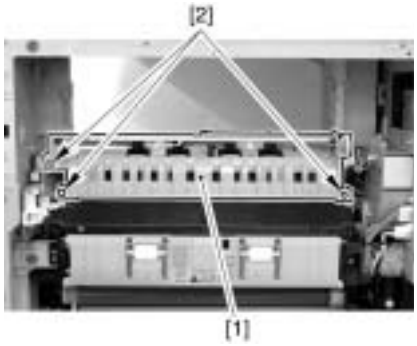
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
3) Remove the support cover. (page 10-15)Reference[Removing the Support Cover]
4) Remove the delivery tray rear cover. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray Rear Cover]
5) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
6) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
7) Remove the 3 way unit. (page 8-41)Reference[Removing the 3 Way Unit]

8.8.27.2 Removing the Delivery Unit 1

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 3 screws [2] (the left 2 screws are stepped screws) to remove the delivery Unit 1 [1].



F-8-98

8.8.28 Fixing/ Delivery Drive Assembly

8.8.28.1 Before Removing the Fixing/Delivery Drive Unit

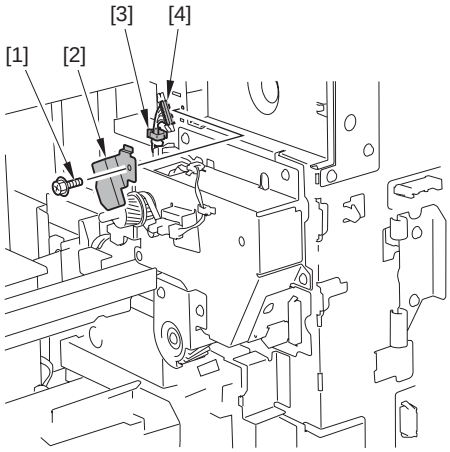
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
3) Remove the support cover. (page 10-15)Reference[Removing the Support Cover]
4) Remove the delivery tray rear cover. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray Rear Cover]
5) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
6) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
7) Remove the 3 way unit. (page 8-41)Reference[Removing the 3 Way Unit]
8) Remove the delivery unit 1. (page 8-45)Reference[Removing the Delivery Unit 1]
9) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]

8.8.28.2 Removing the Fixing/Delivery Drive Unit

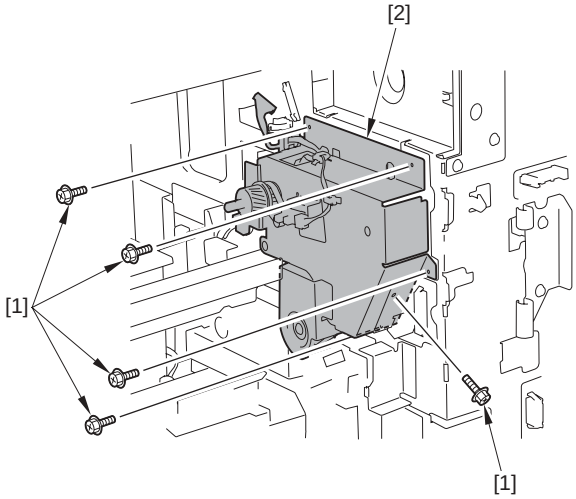
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the screw [1] to detach the connector protection plate [2].
2) Disconnect the harness connector [3] and free the harness from the wire saddle [4].



F-8-99

3) Remove the 5 screws [1] to remove fixing/delivery drive Unit 1 [2].



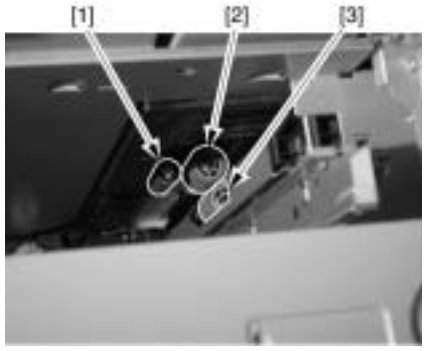
F-8-100

8.8.29 Separation Roller

8.8.29.1 Removing the Pickup Roller/Feed Roller/ Separation Roller

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the cassette.
2) Open the right cover (in the case of separation roller).
3) Hold the tab to remove the pickup roller [1]/feed roller [2]/separation roller [3].



F-8-101

Point to note when replacing the feed roller/separation roller
The color of the feed roller/separation roller (roller core) of this machine is black.

Chapter 9 Fixing System

Contents

9.1 Construction 9-1
9.1.1 Specifications, Control Mechanisms, and Functions 9-1
9.1.2 Major Components 9-1
9.2 Basic Sequence 9-2
9.2.1 Power-On Sequence 9-2
9.2.2 Down Sequence 9-2
9.3 Various Control Mechanisms 9-3
9.3.1 Controlling the Speed of the Fixing Film 9-3
9.3.1.1 Controlling the Fixing Film Speed in Response to Low Temperature 9-3
9.3.1.2 Controlling the Fixing Film Speed 9-3
9.3.2 Controlling the Fixing Film Temperature 9-3
9.3.2.1 Controlling the Power Supply in Response to Low Temperature 9-3
9.3.2.2 Controlling the Feeding in Response to Low Temperature 9-3
9.3.2.3 Controlling the Power Supply at Start-Up 9-4
9.3.2.4 Copying Temperature Control 9-4
9.3.2.5 Changing the Fixing Film Control Temperature 9-4
9.3.2.6 Temperature Control in Response to Automatic Double-Sided Copy 9-4
9.3.2.7 Temperature Control in Response to Change of Paper Size 9-4
9.3.3 Cleaning 9-5
9.3.3.1 Fixing Film Cleaning 9-5
9.3.4 Detecting the Passage of Paper 9-5
9.3.4.1 Detecting the Passage of Paper 9-5
9.4 Protective Functions 9-6
9.4.1 Protective Functions 9-6
9.4.2 Detecting an Error 9-7
9.5 Parts Replacement Procedure 9-8
9.5.1 Fixing Unit 9-8
9.5.1.1 Before Removing the Fixing Unit 9-8
9.5.1.2 Removing the Fixing Unit 9-8
9.5.2 Pressure Roller 9-8
9.5.2.1 Before Removing the Pressure Roller 9-8
9.5.2.2 Removing the Pressure Roller 9-8
9.5.3 Cleaning Roller 9-9
9.5.3.1 Before Removing the Cleaning Roller 9-9
9.5.3.2 Removing the Cleaning Roller 9-9
9.5.4 Fixing Film 9-10
9.5.4.1 Before Removing the Fixing Film Unit 9-10
9.5.4.2 Removing the Fixing Film Unit 9-10
9.5.5 Internal Delivery Sensor 9-12
9.5.5.1 Before Removing the Internal Delivery Sensor 9-12
9.5.5.2 Removing the Internal Delivery Sensor 9-12
9.5.6 Fixing Film Sensor 9-13
9.5.6.1 Before Removing the Fixing Film Sensor 9-13
9.5.6.2 Removing the Fixing Film Sensor 9-13
9.5.7 Fixing Inlet Guide 9-14
9.5.7.1 Before Removing the Fixing Inlet Guide 9-14
9.5.7.2 Removing the Fixing Inlet Guide 9-14

9.1 Construction

9.1.1 Specifications, Control Mechanisms, and Functions

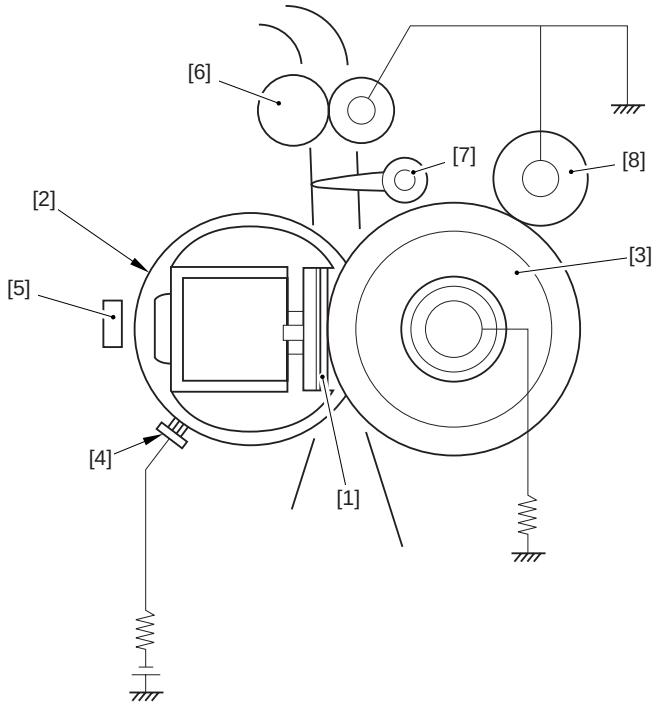
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-9-1

Item	Description
Fixing method	on-demand fixing (by fixing film + pressure roller)
Fixing heater	plate-type heater
Control temperature	no temperature control in the standby mode
Fixing drive control	by control of fixing film speed
Fixing temperature detection	by main thermistor
	by sub thermistor
Protective mechanism	by main/sub thermistor, Thermal switch
Cleaning method	by cleaning roller

9.1.2 Major Components

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-9-1

[1] Fixing heater
[2] Fixing film unit
[3] Pressure roller
[4] Power supply brush
[5] Film sensor
[6] Delivery roller
[7] Fixing outlet sensor flag
[8] Cleaning roller

9.2 Basic Sequence

9.2.1 Power-On Sequence

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If the thermistor detection temperature is less than 100 deg C when the power is turned on or the sleep mode is released, the control described below is performed.
1) Increases the speed of the fixing motor in phases (1/4 speed to 1/2 speed and then to normal speed).
2) Performs the start-up current control.
3) Performs the temperature control at 220 deg C for 10 sec.
4) Stops the fixing motor. When the fixing motor is stopped, the fixing temperature control is also stopped, and the machine enters the stand-by mode.

No operation is performed when the power is turned on or the sleep mode is released.

When the print preparation request is received during wait time, the control described below is performed.

1) Increases the speed of the fixing motor in phases (1/4 speed to 1/2 speed and then to normal speed).
2) Performs the start-up current control.
3) Starts measuring the time passed after the machine reaches the target temperature T deg C.
   T deg C = 200 deg C (iR3245/3235/3230) / 190 deg C (iR3225)
4) Starts feeding in the case of printing in plain paper mode.
   Starts feeding when 5 sec have passed after the machine reached the target temperature in the case of printing in special paper mode.

9.2.2 Down Sequence

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Down sequence is to prevent the machine from operating when the temperature of the end portion of the fixing film exceeds a specific temperature as when using small-size paper continuously. The details of the control are described below:
The sub thermistor detection temperature is 275 deg C or more. Reduces the number of sheets passed by increasing the paper interval.

Returns the number of sheets to the normal when the sub thermistor detection temperature is 265 deg C or less.

9.3 Various Control Mechanisms

9.3.1 Controlling the Speed of the Fixing Film

9.3.1.1 Controlling the Fixing Film Speed in Response to Low Temperature

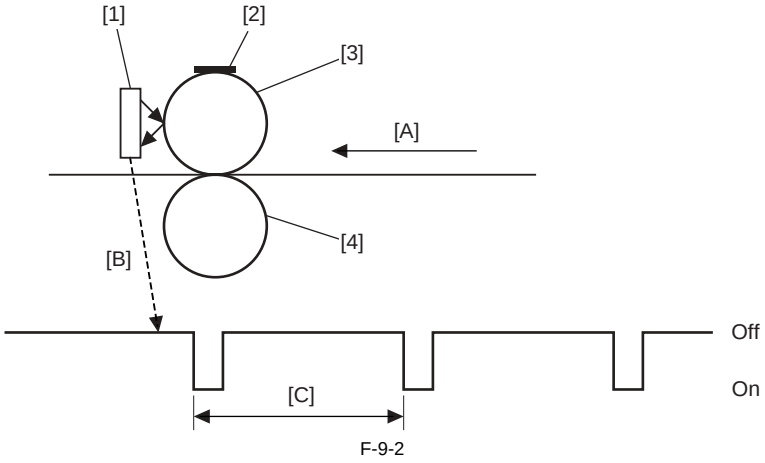
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

As in the morning, driving the fixing film in a low-temperature environment without warm-up could cause the film to become displaced. In consideration of this fact, the fixing motor (M3) is started up in phases (1/4 speed to 1/2 speed and then to normal speed).

9.3.1.2 Controlling the Fixing Film Speed

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The rotation cycle of the fixing film is monitored to control the fixing motor (M3) to a specific speed.
When the fixing film rotates and, as a result, the reflecting member positioned in the loop of the film approaches the speed sensor, the machine detects the rotation of the fixing film.



F-9-2

[1] Speed sensor
[2] Reflecting member
[3] Fixing film (driven by fixing motor)
[4] Pressure roller
[A] Paper feed direction
[B] Speed sensor output
[C] 1 rotation of fixing film

Timing of Control
The speed of fixing film rotation is monitored at all times after the fixing motor goes on and its speed reaches a specific value. The speed of the fixing motor is then controlled so that it remains at a specific level at all times.

9.3.2 Controlling the Fixing Film Temperature

9.3.2.1 Controlling the Power Supply in Response to Low Temperature

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

In a low temperature environment, sufficient torque may not be generated because the grease applied to the fixing film has not been softened, causing the fixing performance level to decrease.
In the mechanism of controlling the fixing film, the fixing heater (H1/H11, H2/H12) is supplied with power before the fixing film is driven so as to soften the grease.

If the temperature of the fixing film detected by the fixing thermistor (TH1, TH2) is lower than a specific level, the heater is supplied with power for a specific period of time before a normal start-up mechanism is initiated.
If the temperature of the fixing film detected by the thermistor is higher than a specific level, the normal start-up mechanism is initiated.

9.3.2.2 Controlling the Feeding in Response to Low Temperature

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

In a low temperature environment, the feeding timing is changed according to the temperature detected by the environment sensor (HU1) so as to enhance the fixing capability. The details are described below.
When the environment sensor detection temperature is 15 deg C or less, the feeding timing is delayed by 5000 msec.

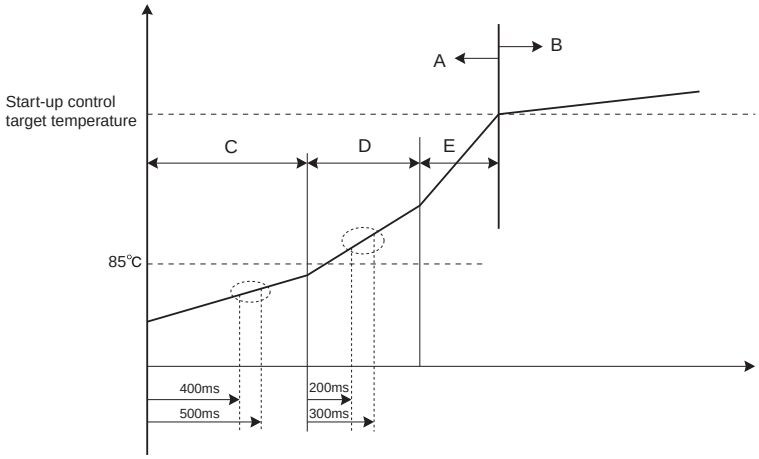
> ⚠
> In thick paper mode, the feeding timing is not changed even if the environment sensor detection temperature is 15 deg C or less.

9.3.2.3 Controlling the Power Supply at Start-Up

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The start-up power supply control is performed to the fixing heater (H1/H11, H2/H12) so as to raise the temperature of the fixing assembly to the required temperature for fixing in a short time.
In the fixing heater, the heater resistor value varies according when a temperature increases. For a quick and smooth temperature increase, it is necessary to adjust the input voltage and control the power.
Due to the foregoing mentioned conditions, in the mechanism of start-up power supply control, a power supply ratio of the fixing heater is corrected according to the temperature detected by the fixing thermistor and the volume of changes.

1) Starts 65% power supply.
2) Uses thermistor reading = T1 (deg C) occurring 400 msec after the start of 65% power supply.
3) Uses thermistor reading = T2 (deg C) occurring 500 msec after the start of 65% power supply.
4) Computes the difference between T2 and T1, refers to a power supply ratio table to compute a power supply ratio X (%), and uses the result.
5) Uses the thermistor reading = T3 (deg C) occurring 200 msec after the start of X (%) power supply.
6) Uses the thermistor reading = T4 (deg C) occurring 300 msec after the start of the X (%) power supply.
7) Computes the difference between T4 and T2, refers to a power supply ratio table, computes a power supply ratio Y (%), and uses the result.
8) Repeats step 5 through 7 until the start-up control target temperature is reached.
9) When the start-up control temperature is reached, shifts to copying temperature control.



F-9-3

A: start-up control
B: copying temperature control
C: 65 (%) power supply
D: X (%) power supply
E: Y (%) power supply

9.3.2.4 Copying Temperature Control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

This machine performs copying temperature control to control the temperature of the fixing heater (H1/H11, H2/H22) to an optimum level while paper is passing through the fixing film assembly.
When the temperature detected by the fixing thermistor (TH1, TH2) is higher than the target control temperature for a specific period of time (0.6 sec) or more, the machine decreases the power ratio. When lower, it increases the power ratio.

9.3.2.5 Changing the Fixing Film Control Temperature

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When a fixing failure occurs or creases appear, the fixing film control temperature can be changed in the service mode as shown below.

Service mode:
COPIER> OPTION> BODY> TEMP-CON (to switch the fixing temperature mode for heavy paper)
COPIER> OPTION> BODY> TEMPCON2 (to switch the fixing temperature mode)
0: OFF (default), 1: -10 deg C, 2: -6 deg C, 3: -3 deg C, 4: +3 deg C, 5: +6 deg C, 6: +10 deg C, 7: 15 deg C

9.3.2.6 Temperature Control in Response to Automatic Double-Sided Copy

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The second side of an automatic double-sided copy requires lower control temperature in comparison with the first side. For this reason, the control temperature is lowered for the second side of an automatic double-sided copy so as to prevent adverse effects such as rises in temperature.

9.3.2.7 Temperature Control in Response to Change of Paper Size

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine has a function to switch the paper size during continuous mode such as in rotation sort. When small-size paper is generated continuously, the temperature of the end portion of the fixing film rises. Immediately thereafter, if large-size paper is passed, high-temperature offset might occur at the end portion where the temperature is likely to have risen. To prevent high-temperature offset, the control temperature is changed when the paper size changes.

9.3.3 Cleaning

9.3.3.1 Fixing Film Cleaning

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Purpose
In the event of a jam or when wear on the fixing film advances, the fixing film is rotated idly for collection of toner from both the film and the pressure roller to the cleaning roller.

The timing of control is as follows:
1) If the reading of the cleaning counter has exceeded the interval (expressed in terms of the number of sheets), the machine starts cleaning with the fixing motor rotating at 1/2 speed.
The length, timing, and intervals of cleaning may be set in service mode: COPIER> OPTION> BODY> FIX-CLN.
Further, the cleaning counter reading is reset at the end of cleaning.

T-9-2

	0(Default)	1	2	3
Cleaning control temperature	0	225	225	225
Cleaning control time	0	60	60	60
Cleaning intervals	0	500	200	100

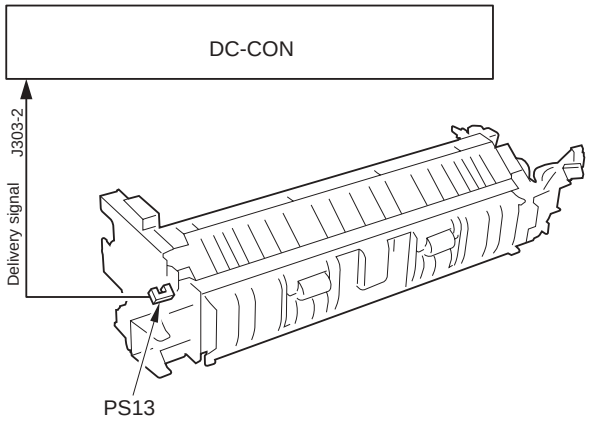
If a copy or print job arrives while cleaning is under way, the machine will not pick up paper until the ongoing cleaning ends.
If last rotation is under way in response to a rise in temperature at the film edge, the machine will hold cleaning until the end of the ongoing last rotation.

2) If a jam has been removed, the machine starts cleaning at time of recovery, at 220 deg C and for 10 sec.

9.3.4 Detecting the Passage of Paper

9.3.4.1 Detecting the Passage of Paper

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-9-4

DC-CON: DC Controller PCB
PS13: Fixing outlet sensor

When a delay jam of the fixing outlet sensor (PS13) occurs, the fixing motor (M3) is stopped immediately so as to prevent paper from wrapping around the fixing roller.
The pressure of the fixing film and the pressure roller is released when a jam occurs so that jammed paper can be taken out easily.

9.4 Protective Functions

9.4.1 Protective Functions

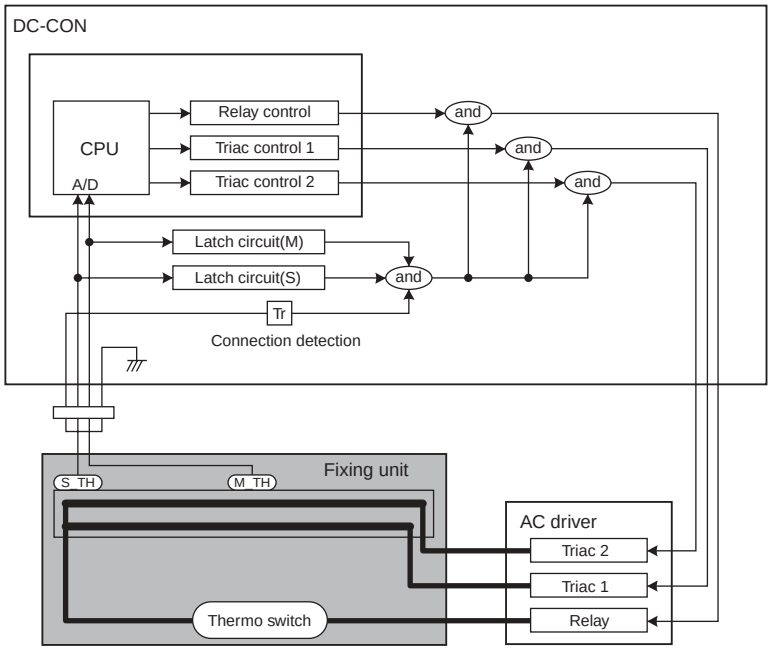
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

As part of its protective mechanism, the machine has a thermo switch (TP1), triacs, and a relay.
Protective measures according to location are described below:

When the thermistor is out of order
Software detects a failure, and the triac and the relay are turned off.
The thermo switch is turned off.

When the CPU goes out of control
The latch circuit detects the excessive temperature rise, and the relay is turned off.
The thermo switch is turned off.

When the triac short-circuits
Software detects failure, and the relay is turned off.
The latch circuit detects the excessive temperature rise, and the relay is turned off.
The thermo switch is turned off.



F-9-5

9.4.2 Detecting an Error

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-9-3

Error code	Detail code	Symptom	Description
E000	0001	The fixing temperature fails to increase.	When each of the following conditions is detected for 200 msec or more continuously, the machine assumes that an error has occurred.
			- A temperature of less than 30 deg C is detected by the fixing thermistor after 1 sec since the start of power supply.
			- A temperature of less than 70 deg C is detected by the fixing thermistor after 2 sec since the start of power supply.
			- A temperature of less than 120 deg C is detected by the fixing thermistor after 6 sec since the start of power supply.
E001	0000	The fixing main thermistor detects overheating.	The fixing thermistor detects 250 deg C or more for 200 msec or more continuously.
	0001	A hardware circuit detects overheating.	A hardware circuit detects overheating in relation to the fixing thermistor (main/sub).
	0002	The fixing sub thermistor detects overheating.	The fixing thermistor detects 295 deg C or more for 200 msec or more continuously.
E002	0000	The fixing temperature fails to reach a specific level.	In the course of start-up control, the fixing thermistor detects less than 115 deg C for 400 msec or more continuously after 1.3 sec since it detected 100 deg C. Or, the fixing thermistor detects less than 150 deg C for 400 msec or more continuously after 1.3 sec since it detected 140 deg C.
E003	0000	The fixing temperature has dropped to an abnormally low level.	In the course of normal temperature control, the fixing thermistor detects less than 140 deg C for 200 msec or more continuously.
E004	0000	Missing of the thermistor connector	Missing of the connector is detected for 30 msec continuously.
E007	0000	The fixing film rotates in an abnormal way.	The reading of the fixing main thermistor is in excess of 100 deg C with the fixing motor in a locked state and, in addition, the machine fails to detect the marker signal for 6 sec.
E014	0001	The machine detects a fixing motor error. (The motor is not locked.)	The locked status is not detected even when 2 sec elapses after the motor is turned on.
	0002	The machine detects a fixing motor error. (The motor is unlocked.)	The motor is unlocked for 500 msec continuously after the locked status is detected.

9.5 Parts Replacement Procedure

9.5.1 Fixing Unit

9.5.1.1 Before Removing the Fixing Unit

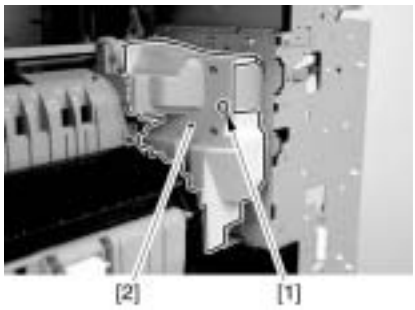
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]

9.5.1.2 Removing the Fixing Unit

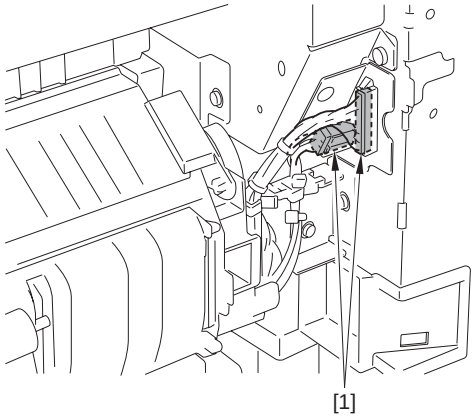
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the screw [1] to detach the harness cover [2].



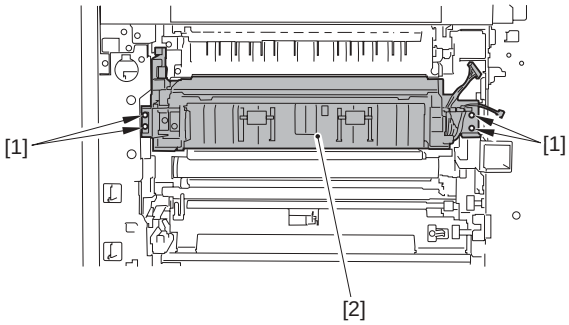
F-9-6

2) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1].



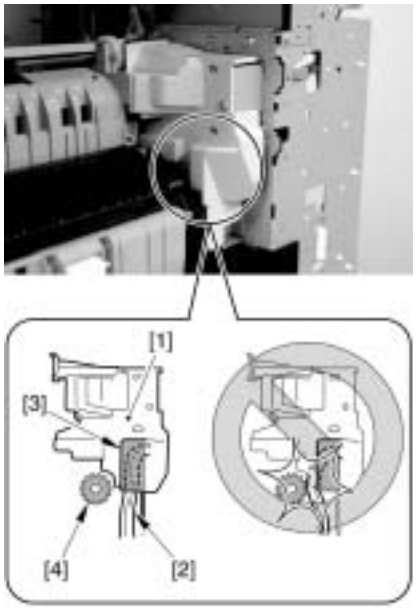
F-9-7

3) Remove the 4 screws [1] to remove the fixing unit [2].



F-9-8

⚠
- When attaching the harness cover [1], be sure to keep the harness [2] within the space [3] shown in the figure so that the harness [2] will not come into contact with the gear [4].



- Do not touch the screw [1]. Turning this screw will change the pressure of the fixing unit, which cannot be adjusted in the field, resulting in replacement of the fixing unit.

9.5.2 Pressure Roller

9.5.2.1 Before Removing the Pressure Roller

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]
4) Remove the fixing film unit. (page 9-10)Reference[Removing the Fixing Film Unit]
5) Remove the inlet guide. (page 9-14)Reference[Removing the Fixing Inlet Guide]

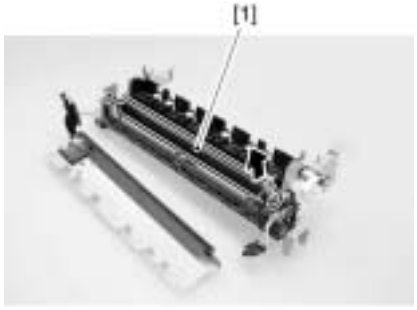
9.5.2.2 Removing the Pressure Roller

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the E-ring [1] to remove the drive gear [2].

F-9-9

2) Lift the front of the pressure roller [1].

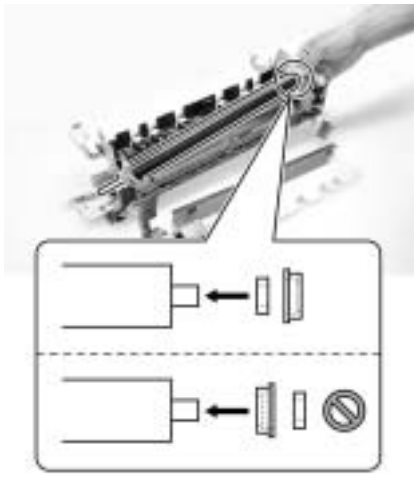


F-9-10

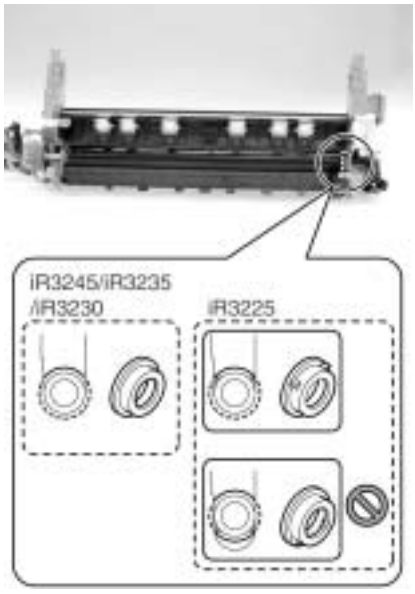
3) Push in the insulator bush at the rear in the direction of the arrow to release, then remove the pressure roller.

F-9-11

⚠
Pay attention to the position and the orientation of the insulating bush/ bearing.



⚠
The insulating bush may be of 2 different shapes: one for the iR3245 / iR3235 / iR3230 and the other for the iR3225. If the machine is an iR3225, be sure to pay attention to the direction of the protrusion of the insulating bush.



9.5.3 Cleaning Roller

9.5.3.1 Before Removing the Cleaning Roller

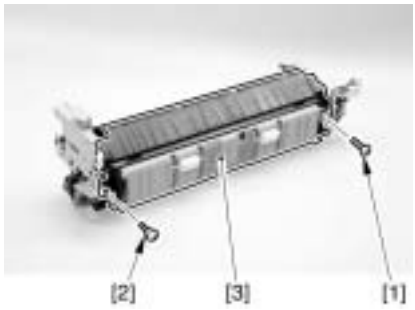
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]

9.5.3.2 Removing the Cleaning Roller

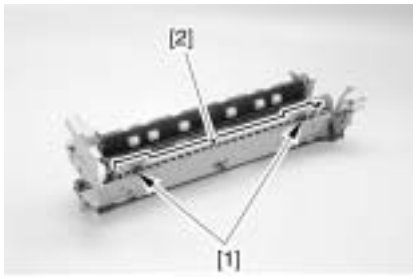
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the inside delivery cover unit [3].
   - 1 screw [1]
   - 1 stepped screw [2]



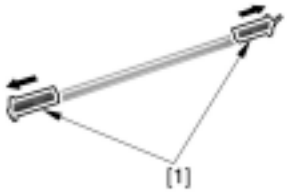
F-9-12

2) Remove the 2 screws (self-tapping) [1] and remove the cleaning roller [2] together with the cleaning roller holder.



F-9-13

3) Remove the cleaning holder [1].



F-9-14

The foregoing steps assume that the fixing unit has already been removed from the machine. The cleaning roller can be also removed while the fixing unit is attached to the machine by following the same steps above.

9.5.4 Fixing Film

9.5.4.1 Before Removing the Fixing Film Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]

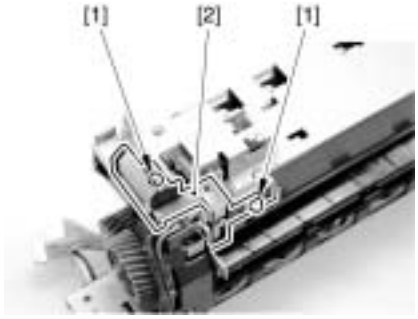
9.5.4.2 Removing the Fixing Film Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the inside delivery cover unit [3].
- 1 screw [1]
- 1 stepped screw [2]

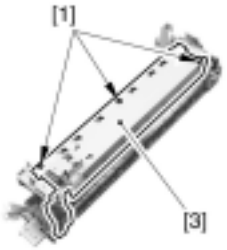
F-9-15

2) Remove the 2 screws [1] to detach the grounding plate [2].

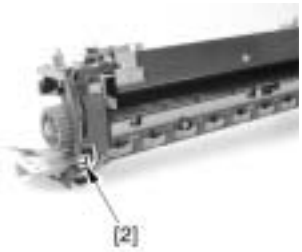


F-9-16

3) Detach the fixing film cover [3].
- 1 screw [1]
- 1 stepped screw [2]

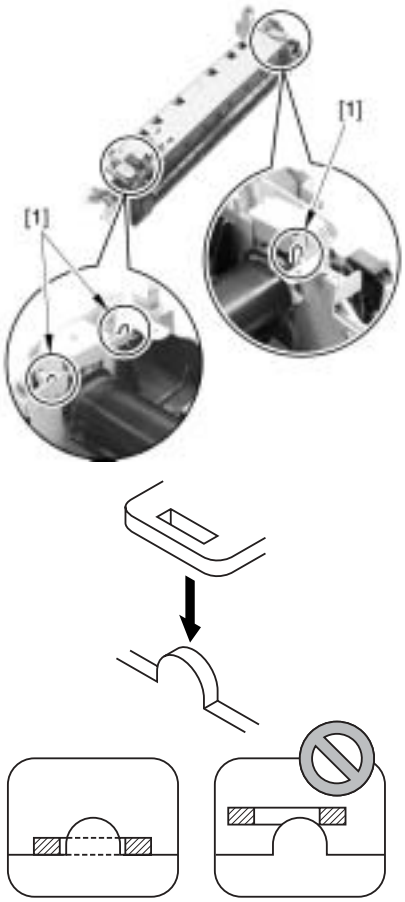


F-9-17

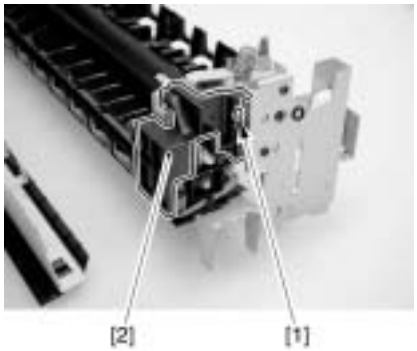


F-9-18

When attaching the fixing film cover unit, be sure to check that it does not run over the emboss [1], before tightening with the screw.

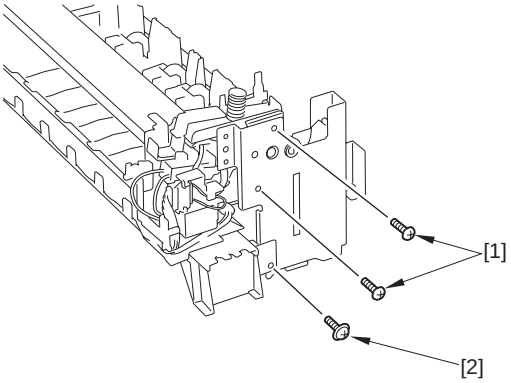


4) Remove the screw [1] to detach the left side plate [2].



F-9-19

5) Remove the 3 screws [1, 2].



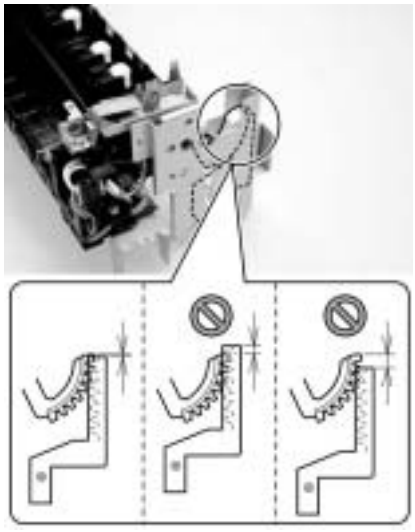
F-9-20

6) Slide the left side plate [1] in the direction of the arrow to remove.

F-9-21

F-9-22

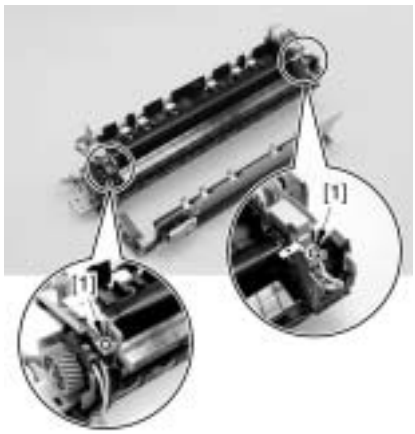
When attaching the left side plate, be sure to attach it while the locking lever is properly engaged with the teeth.



7) Turn the pressure gear [1] in the direction of the arrow to release the pressure roller.

F-9-23

8) Remove the 2 screws [1].



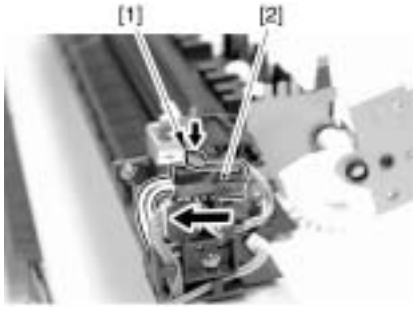
F-9-24

Do not touch the screw [1]. Turning this screw will change the pressure of the fixing assembly, which cannot be adjusted in the field, resulting in replacement of the fixing assembly.

9) Turn the pressure plate [1] in the direction of the arrow to release.

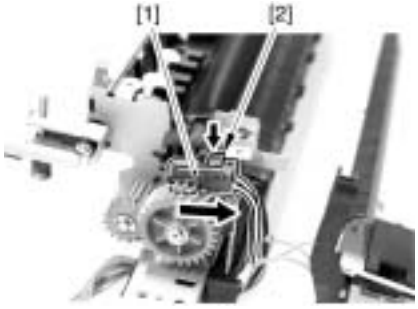
F-9-25

10) While pushing down the release lever (front) [1] with your finger, pull out the heater contact [2].



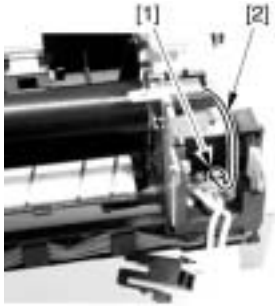
F-9-26

11) While pushing down the release lever (rear) [1] with your finger, pull out the heater contact [2].



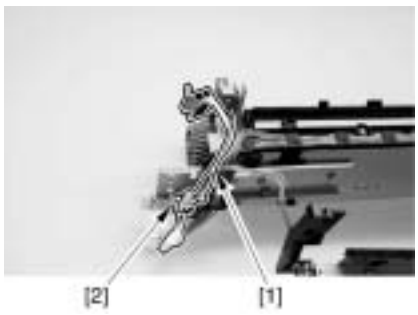
F-9-27

12) Remove the screw [1] to free the AC harness [2].



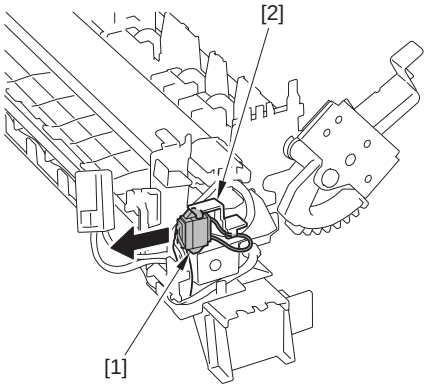
F-9-28

13) Free the AC harness [1] from the edge saddle [2].



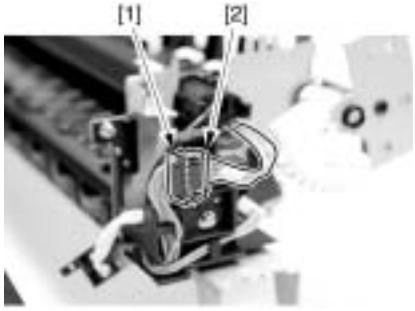
F-9-29

14) Disconnect the relay connector [1] of the signal cable from the connector holder [2].



F-9-30

15) Disconnect the connector [2] from the relay connector [1].



F-9-31

16) Remove the fixing film unit [1].

F-9-32

9.5.5 Internal Delivery Sensor

9.5.5.1 Before Removing the Internal Delivery Sensor

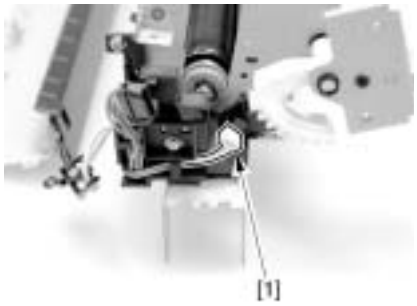
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]
4) Remove the fixing film unit. (page 9-10)Reference[Removing the Fixing Film Unit]

9.5.5.2 Removing the Internal Delivery Sensor

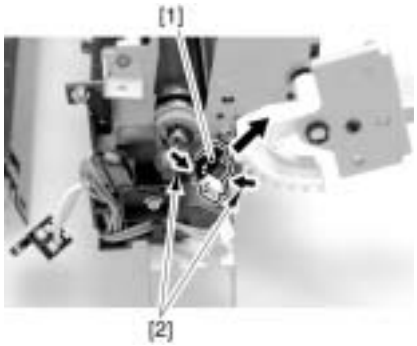
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Disconnect the connector [2] of the harness [1].



F-9-33

2) Remove the front latch [2] of the internal delivery sensor [1] to remove the internal delivery sensor.



F-9-34

9.5.6 Fixing Film Sensor

9.5.6.1 Before Removing the Fixing Film Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]

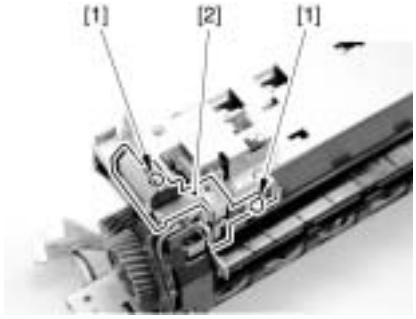
9.5.6.2 Removing the Fixing Film Sensor

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the internal delivery cover unit [3].
- 1 screw [1]
- 1 stepped screw [2]

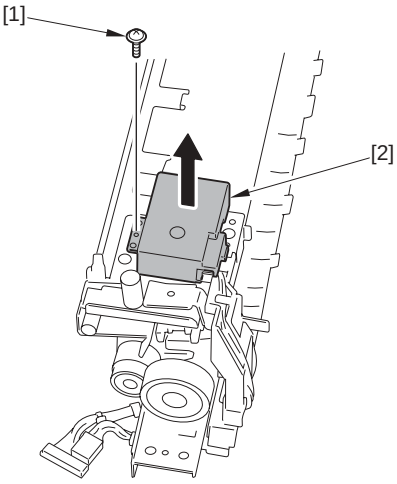
F-9-35

2) Remove the 2 screws [1] to detach the grounding plate [2].



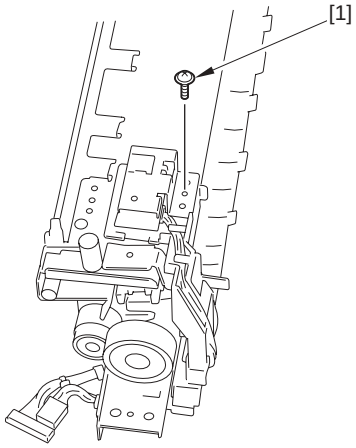
F-9-36

3) Remove the screw [1] to detach the sensor cover [2].



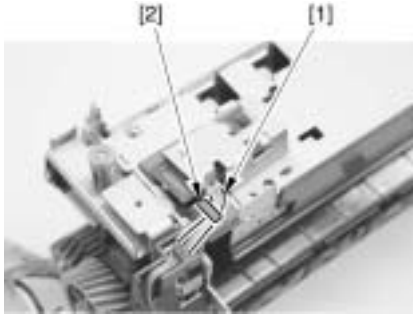
F-9-37

4) Remove the screw [1].



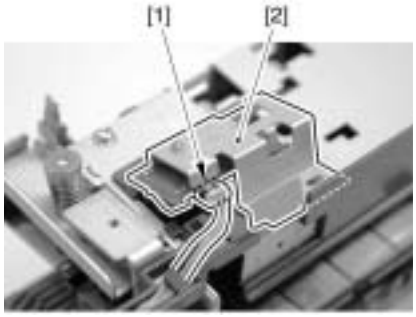
F-9-38

5) Free the harness [1] from the guide [2].



F-9-39

6) Disconnect the connector [1] to remove the fixing film sensor [2].



F-9-40

9.5.7 Fixing Inlet Guide

9.5.7.1 Before Removing the Fixing Inlet Guide

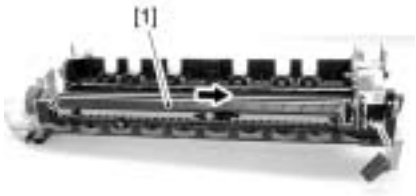
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
3) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]
4) Remove the fixing film unit. (page 9-10)Reference[Removing the Fixing Film Unit]

9.5.7.2 Removing the Fixing Inlet Guide

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Slide the inlet guide [1] in the direction of the arrow to remove.



F-9-41

Chapter 10 External and Controls

Contents

10.1 Control Panel....10-1
10.1.1 Overview....10-1
10.1.2 LCD Indication Processing....10-1
10.1.3 Adjusting the LCD Contrast....10-1
10.1.4 Adjusting Fax Sound Volume....10-1
10.1.5 Functions of the Control Panel CPU....10-2
10.2 Counters....10-3
10.2.1 Overview....10-3
10.2.2 Timing of Increasing the Count....10-3
10.3 Fans....10-4
10.3.1 Overview....10-4
10.3.2 2-speed control....10-5
10.3.3 Operation sequence....10-5
10.4 Power Supply System....10-6
10.4.1 Power Supply....10-6
10.4.1.1 Power Supply Route Inside the Printer....10-6
10.4.1.2 Power Supply Route in the Reader Unit....10-8
10.4.1.3 Timing of Supply to the Reader Unit....10-8
10.4.1.4 Connection to Options....10-9
10.4.1.5 Heater operating condition....10-9
10.4.2 Rated Output of the DC Power Supply PCB....10-9
10.4.2.1 Rated Output of the 24V Power Supply PCB....10-9
10.4.2.2 Rated Output of the 12V Power Supply PCB....10-10
10.4.2.3 Rated Output of the Option Power Supply PCB....10-10
10.4.2.4 Rated Output of the All-Night Power Supply PCB....10-10
10.4.3 Protection Function....10-10
10.4.3.1 Protective Functions....10-10
10.4.4 Backup Battery....10-10
10.4.4.1 Backup Battery....10-10
10.4.5 Energy-Saving Function....10-11
10.4.5.1 Overview....10-11
10.4.5.2 Power Supply State....10-11
10.4.5.3 SNMP Settings....10-12
10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure....10-14
10.5.1 External Covers....10-14
10.5.1.1 Delivery Tray....10-14
10.5.1.1.1 Removing the Delivery Tray....10-14
10.5.1.2 Delivery Tray Right Cover....10-14
10.5.1.2.1 Before Removing the Delivery Tray Right Cover....10-14
10.5.1.2.2 Removing the Delivery Tray Right Cover....10-14
10.5.1.3 Delivery Tray Rear Cover....10-14
10.5.1.3.1 Before Removing the Delivery Tray Rear Cover....10-14
10.5.1.3.2 Removing the Delivery Tray Rear Cover....10-14
10.5.1.4 Delivery Tray Rear Cover (Lower)....10-14
10.5.1.4.1 Before Removing the Delivery Tray Lower Rear Cover....10-14
10.5.1.4.2 Removing the Delivery Tray Lower Rear Cover....10-14
10.5.1.5 Support Cover....10-15
10.5.1.5.1 Before Removing the Support Cover....10-15
10.5.1.5.2 Removing the Support Cover....10-15
10.5.1.6 Support Cover (Right)....10-15
10.5.1.6.1 Before Removing the Support Right Cover....10-15
10.5.1.6.2 Removing the Support Right Cover....10-15
10.5.1.7 Right Cover (Lower Front)....10-16

10.5.1.7.1 Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front) ... 10-16
10.5.1.8 Right Cover (Rear) ... 10-16
10.5.1.8.1 Removing the Rear Right Cover ... 10-16
10.5.1.9 Inside Right Cover ... 10-16
10.5.1.9.1 Before Removing the Inside Right Cover ... 10-16
10.5.1.9.2 Removing the Inside Right Cover ... 10-16
10.5.1.10 Inside Bottom Cover ... 10-16
10.5.1.10.1 Before Removing the Inside Base Cover ... 10-16
10.5.1.10.2 Removing the Inside Base Cover ... 10-16
10.5.1.11 Front Cover Unit ... 10-17
10.5.1.11.1 Removing the Front Cover Unit ... 10-17
10.5.1.12 Rear Cover (Upper) ... 10-17
10.5.1.12.1 Removing the Upper Rear Cover ... 10-17
10.5.1.13 Rear Cover (Lower) ... 10-17
10.5.1.13.1 Removing the Lower Rear Cover ... 10-17
10.5.1.14 Left Cover ... 10-17
10.5.1.14.1 Removing the Left Cover ... 10-17
10.5.1.15 Left Cover (Lower) ... 10-18
10.5.1.15.1 Removing the Lower Left Cover ... 10-18
10.5.1.16 Left Cover (Rear) ... 10-18
10.5.1.16.1 Before Removing the Rear Left Cover ... 10-18
10.5.1.16.2 Removing the Rear Left Cover ... 10-18
10.5.1.17 Delivery Cover ... 10-18
10.5.1.17.1 Removing the Delivery Cover ... 10-18
10.5.1.18 Toner Supply Cover ... 10-18
10.5.1.18.1 Removing the Toner Container Cover ... 10-18
10.5.1.19 Reader Left Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.19.1 Removing the Reader Left Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.20 Reader Right Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.20.1 Removing the Reader Right Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.21 Reader Front Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.21.1 Removing the Reader Front Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.22 Reader Rear Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.22.1 Removing the Reader Rear Cover ... 10-19
10.5.1.23 FAX Unit Cover ... 10-20
10.5.1.23.1 Removing the FAX Unit Cover ... 10-20
10.5.1.24 Control Panel Inside Frame ... 10-20
10.5.1.24.1 Before Removing the Control Panel Inside Frame ... 10-20
10.5.1.24.2 Removing the Control Panel Inside Frame ... 10-20
10.5.1.25 Control Panel Lower Cover ... 10-21
10.5.1.25.1 Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover ... 10-21
10.5.2 Main Drive Assembly ... 10-21
10.5.2.1 Before Removing the Main Drive Unit ... 10-21
10.5.2.2 Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3245/3235/3230) ... 10-21
10.5.2.3 Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3225) ... 10-22
10.5.3 Power Supply Unit ... 10-24
10.5.3.1 Before Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB ... 10-24
10.5.3.2 Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB ... 10-24
10.5.3.3 Before Removing the 24V Power Supply PCB ... 10-25
10.5.3.4 Removing the 24V Power Supply PCB ... 10-25
10.5.4 Control Panel ... 10-25
10.5.4.1 Removing the Control Panel Unit ... 10-25
10.5.5 Control Panel LCD Unit ... 10-26
10.5.5.1 Before Removing the Control Panel LCD ... 10-26
10.5.5.2 Removing the Control Panel LCD ... 10-27
10.5.6 DC Controller PCB ... 10-27
10.5.6.1 Removing the DC Controller PCB ... 10-27
10.5.6.2 When Replacing DC Controller PCB ... 10-27
10.5.7 Control Panel Inverter PCB ... 10-28
10.5.7.1 Before Removing the Control Panel Inverter PCB ... 10-28
10.5.7.2 Removing the Control Panel Inverter PCB ... 10-28

10.5.8 Control Panel Key Switch PCB 10-28
10.5.8.1 Before Removing the Control Panel KEY PCB 10-28
10.5.8.2 Removing the Control Panel KEY PCB 10-28
10.5.9 Control Panel CPU PCB 10-28
10.5.9.1 Before Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB 10-28
10.5.9.2 Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB 10-29
10.5.10 Control Panel USB PCB 10-29
10.5.10.1 Before Removing the Control Panel USB PCB 10-29
10.5.10.2 Removing the Control Panel USB PCB 10-29
10.5.11 FAX Unit 10-29
10.5.11.1 Removing the Fax Unit 10-29
10.5.12 AC Driver PCB 10-30
10.5.12.1 Before Removing the AC Driver PCB 10-30
10.5.12.2 Removing the AC Driver PCB 10-30
10.5.13 All Night Power Supply PCB 10-30
10.5.13.1 Before Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB 10-30
10.5.13.2 Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB 10-30
10.5.14 Option Power Supply PCB 10-31
10.5.14.1 Before Removing the Option Power Supply PCB 10-31
10.5.14.2 Removing the Option Power Supply PCB 10-31
10.5.15 Relay PCB 10-31
10.5.15.1 Before Removing the Relay PCB 10-31
10.5.15.2 Removing the Relay PCB 10-31
10.5.16 High-Voltage PCB 10-31
10.5.16.1 Before Removing the High-Voltage Power Supply PCB 10-31
10.5.16.2 Removing the High-Voltage Power Supply PCB 10-32
10.5.17 Power Supply Cooling Fan 1 10-32
10.5.17.1 Before Removing the Power Supply Cooling Fan 10-32
10.5.17.2 Removing the Power Supply Cooling Fan 10-32
10.5.18 Exhaust Fan 10-33
10.5.18.1 Removing the Exhaust Fan 10-33
10.5.19 Fan Filter 10-33
10.5.19.1 Removing the Exhaust Fan Filter 10-33
10.5.20 Motor of Main Drive Assembly 10-34
10.5.20.1 Before Removing the Main Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) 10-34
10.5.20.2 Removing the Main Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230) 10-34
10.5.20.3 Before Removing the Main Motor (iR 3225) 10-35
10.5.20.4 Removing the Main Motor (iR 3225) 10-35
10.5.21 Fixing Driver Motor 10-35
10.5.21.1 Removing the Fixing Driver Motor 10-35
10.5.22 Right Door/Right Cover 10-36
10.5.22.1 Releasing the Right Cover 10-36
10.5.22.2 Removing the Right Cover 10-37
10.5.23 Circuit Breaker 10-39
10.5.23.1 Before Removing the Circuit Breaker 10-39
10.5.23.2 Removing the Circuit Breaker 10-39

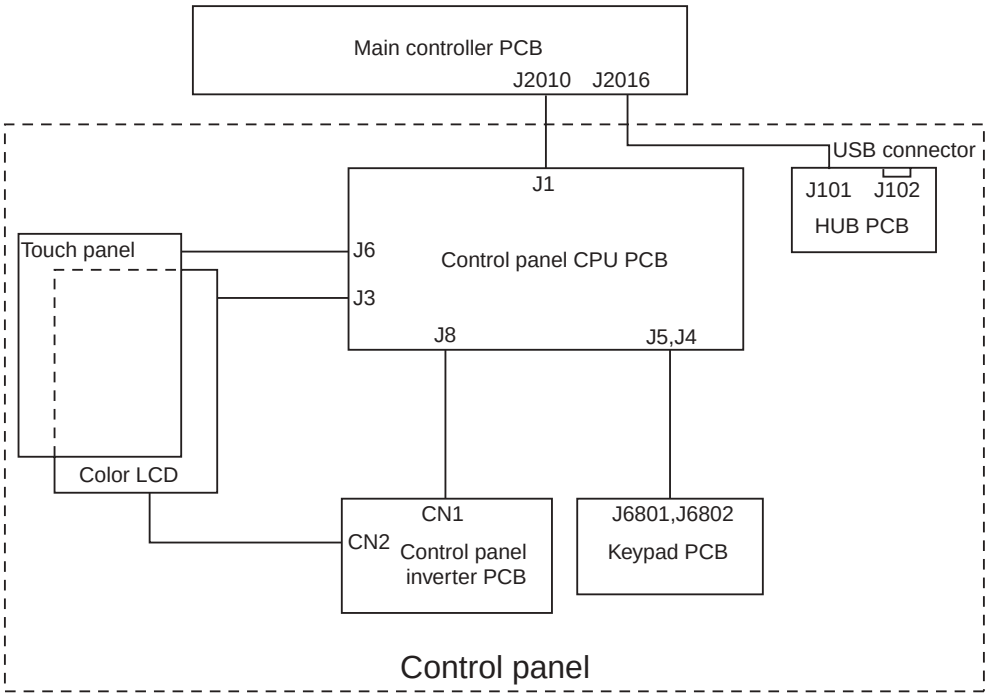
10.1 Control Panel

10.1.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The control panel for this equipment consists of the PCBs, LCD, and touch panel shown in the diagram and has main functions described below;

- LCD indication
- Adjusting the LCD contrast
- Adjusting fax sound volume
- USB connection function (USB connector (device) equipped)
- Input with the touch switch
- Input with the Hard key



F-10-1

10.1.2 LCD Indication Processing

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The CPU on the main controller PCB transmits the data (display information) to the control panel CPU PCB according to the program.
This data is transmitted to the color LCD via the control panel CPU PCB.

10.1.3 Adjusting the LCD Contrast

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

For this equipment, the density adjustment volume (VR6801) key is provided on the keypad PCB to allow users to adjust the LCD contrast.

10.1.4 Adjusting Fax Sound Volume

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

For this equipment, the fax sound volume adjustment key is provided on the keypad PCB to adjust the sounds of alarm and communication for fax transmission/ reception.

10.1.5 Functions of the Control Panel CPU

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Monitoring key input:
  Transmits input with keypad and function key to the CPU on the main controller PCB.
- Monitoring input with the touch panel
  Transmits key inputs with the touch panel to the CPU on the main controller PCB.
- Buzzer control
- Control panel LED lighting control

MEMO:
The main controller drives the color LCD and the control panel CPU PCB relays the drive signal.

10.2 Counters

10.2.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine is equipped with counters that keep track of printouts according to the type of printer unit. The counters are indicated in response to a press on the Check key on the control panel. The following shows the functions of the counter as set at time of shipment from the factory.

T-10-1

Machine model	Counter number (in service mode)/item					
	Counter 1	Counter 2	Counter 3	Counter 4	Counter 5	Counter 6
100V JP *1 ***	total 1	not indicated **	not indicated **	not indicated **	not indicated **	not indicated **
	101	000	000	000	000	000
100V JP *1 ****	total 2	copy (total 2)	total A2	not indicated **	not indicated **	not indicated **
	102	202	127	000	000	000
120V TW *2	total 1	total (large)	copy (total 1)	copy (large)	not indicated **	not indicated **
	101	103	201	203	000	000
120V UL *3 ***	total 1	total (large)	copy (total 1)	copy (large)	not indicated **	not indicated **
	101	103	201	203	000	000
120V UL *3 ****	total 2	copy (total 2)	not indicated **	not indicated **	not indicated **	not indicated **
	102	202	000	000	000	000
230V *4	total 1	total (large)	copy (total 1)	copy (large)	not indicated **	not indicated **
	101	103	201	203	000	000
240V EUR *5	total (W/B /large)	total (W/B /small)	scan (total 1)	print (total 1)	not indicated **	not indicated **
	112	113	501	301	000	000
240V CA *6	total 1	total (large)	copy (total 1)	copy (large)	not indicated **	not indicated **
	101	103	201	203	000	000

<Guide to Symbols>
large: large-sized paper (in feed direction, 364 mm or longer; count x 1)
small: small-sized paper (in feed direction, 364 mm or less).
total: all (C + P); count x 1.
double-sided: in auto double-side copying count x 1; feed.
- The 3-digit symbol in the Counter column indicates the setting in the following service does item:
1 through 6 under COUNTER > OPTION > USER > COUNTER.
- Counters 2 through 6 may be changed in the following service mode item:
COPIER > OPTION > USER.

*1 :F15-2011/ 2013/ 2111/ 2113/ 2313/ 2311
*2 :F15-2001/ 2101/ 2201/ 2301
*3 :F15-2031/ 2035/ 2131/ 2135/ 2231/ 2331
*4 :F15-2041/ 2141/ 2241/ 2341
*5 :F15-2091/ 2094/ 2191/ 2194/ 2391/ 2394
*6 :F15-2061/ 2161/ 2261/ 2361
** : by default, not indicated; may be changed in service mode.
*** : '0' is set for the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>USE>CNT-SW.
**** : '1' is set for the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>USE>CNT-SW.

Select a country code in CONFIG among the fixed numbers of country code (30 countries).
Change the country code in CONFIG by executing the following item; COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CONFIG.

10.2.2 Timing of Increasing the Count

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The timing at which the count is increased differs depending on the printing mode (single-sided or double-sided), target of delivery, and type of accessory:

1. Singe-Sided Printing, 2nd Side of a Double-Sided Print
In single-side printing or for the 2nd side of a double-sided print, the count is increased when the trailing edge of the sheet is discharged outside the machine in relation to the output of the following sensors:

T-10-2

Condition	Target of delivery	Sensor
Finisher absent	Tray 1	Delivery sensor (PS14)
	Tray 2	No. 2 delivery sensor (PS1A)
	Tray 3	No. 3 delivery sensor (PS5A)
Finisher present	Finisher	Delivery sensor of the finisher

2. 1st Side of a Double-Sided Print
When the double-sided print feed sensor (PS17) goes on, the machine will assume that printing on the 1st side has been completed, thereby increasing the count.

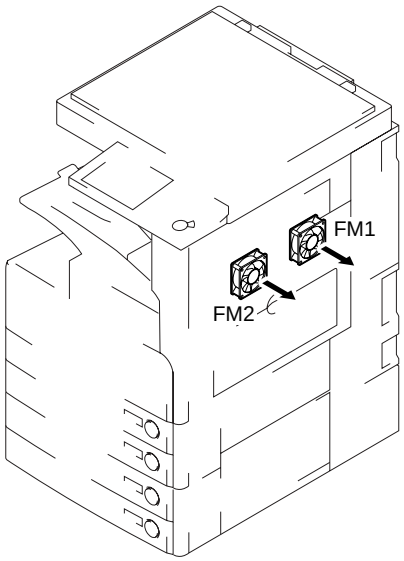
10.3 Fans

10.3.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-10-3

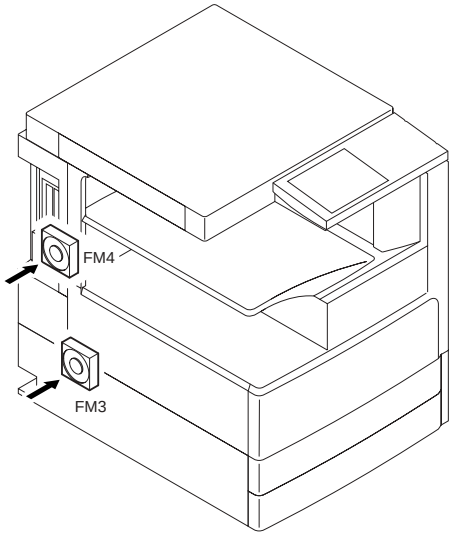
Symbol	Name	Filter	2-speed control	Functions etc
FM1	Heat discharge fan (rear)	Yes	Yes	Cooling the fixing assembly
FM2	Heat discharge fan (front)	Yes	Yes	Cooling the fixing assembly



F-10-2

T-10-4

Symbol	Name	Filter	2-speed control	Functions etc
FM3	power supply cooling fan	No	Yes	Cooling the main power supply
FM4	Main controller cooling fan	No	No	Cooling the main controller PCB

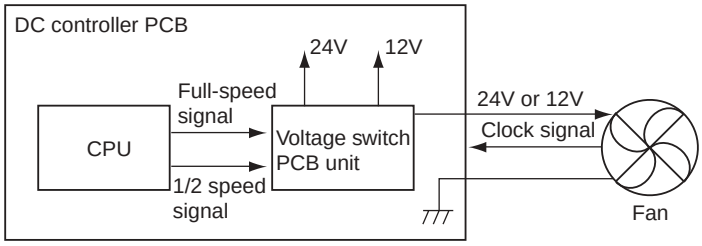


F-10-3

10.3.2 2-speed control

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

There are 2 types of speed to control the heat exhaust fan (rear) (FM1) and heat exhaust fan (front) (FM2).
Voltage switch PCB unit of each fan switches the voltage to change the speed of rotation.



F-10-4

Power supply cooling fan (FM3) drives at full-speed at paper feed and at 1/2 speed in other situations.

10.3.3 Operation sequence

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1. In standby, sleep mode
In standby, sleep modes, the heat exhaust fan (front/rear) (FM2/1) and power supply cooling fan (FM3) do not drive.

2. In printing
In printing, the heat exhaust fan (front/rear) (FM2/1) drives at full speed or 1/2 speed depending on 1-sided/2sided print and temperature detected by environment sensor (HU1).

- In 2-sided print

T-10-5

Temperature by environment sensor (HU1)	Full/ 1/2 speed
25 deg C or more	Full-speed
below 25 deg C	1/2-speed

- In 1-sided print

T-10-6

Temperature by environment sensor (HU1)	Full/ 1/2 speed
30 deg C or more	Full-speed
below 30 deg C	1/2-speed

Note 1: If there is 1 job of 1-sided print or more during continuous print, the machine uses control for 2-sided print.
Note 2: Printing operation continues until the rotation of fixing motor (M3) stops.

Power supply cooling fan (FM3) drives at full-speed at paper feed and at 1/2 speed in other situations.

10.4 Power Supply System

10.4.1 Power Supply

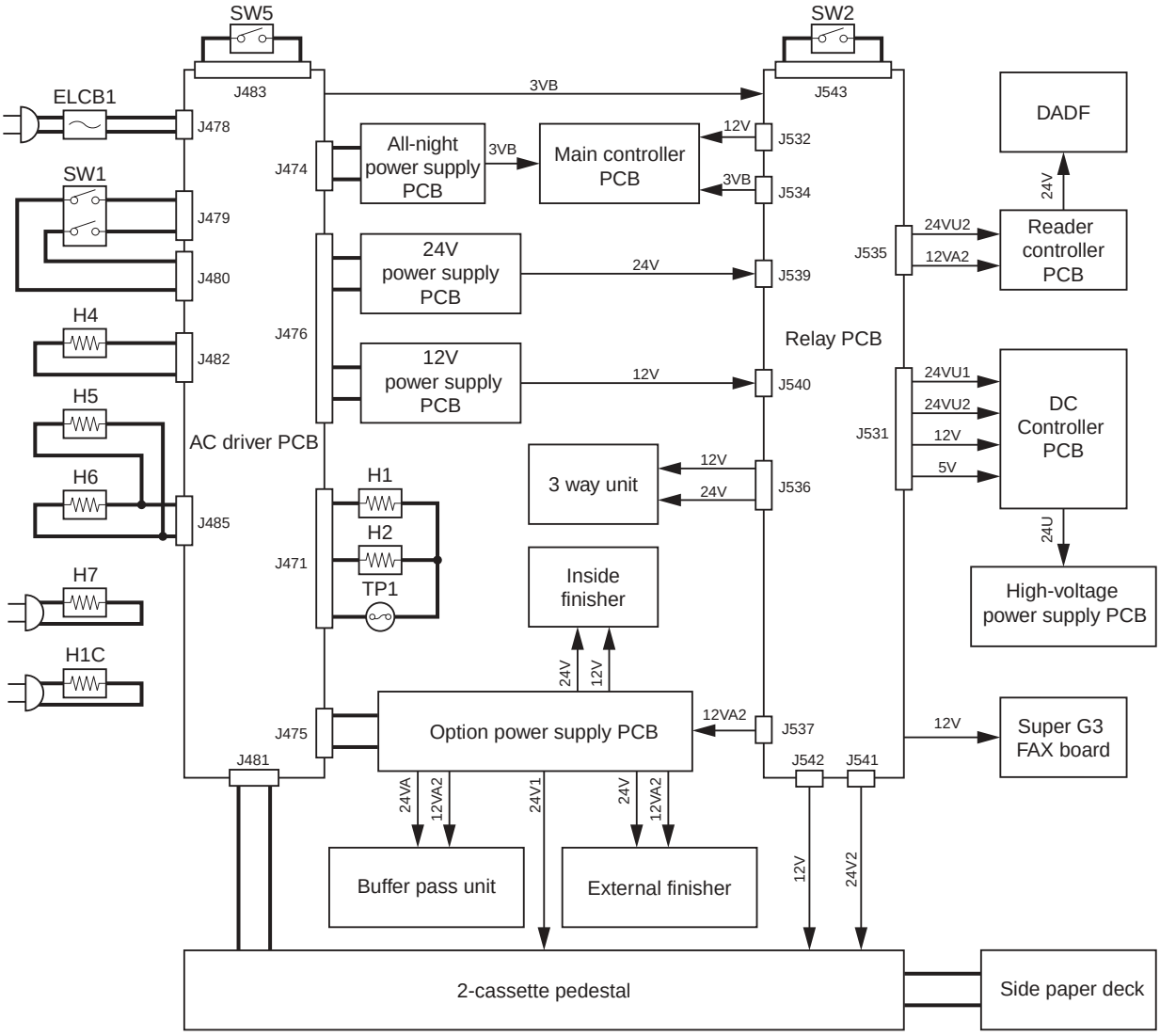
10.4.1.1 Power Supply Route Inside the Printer

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The 24V power supply PCB and the 12V power supply PCB provide the DC power supply for this equipment.
The relay PCB and the option power supply PCB provide the DC power supply for options.

T-10-7

Name	Functions	Remarks
AC driver PCB	Provides AC power supply for the 24V power supply PCB, 12V power supply PCB, all-night power supply PCB, option power supply PCB. Fixing drive	
All-night power supply PCB	Generates all-night power supply (3VB). Provides power supply to the main controller PCB	
24V power supply PCB	Generates 24V DC power supply. Provides DC power supply to the relay PCB	
12V power supply PCB	Generates 12V DC power supply. Provides DC power supply to the relay PCB	
Relay PCB	Provides DC power supply for the main controller PCB, reader controller PCB, DC controller PCB, Super G3 FAX board, 2-cassette pedestal, and 3 Way Unit	
	Generates 5V DC power supply. Provides DC power supply to the DC controller PCB	
Option power supply PCB	Provides DC power supply for the inside finisher, 2-cassette pedestal, side paper deck, buffer pass unit, and external finisher	
Reader controller PCB	Provides 24V DC power supply for the DADF	
	Generates DC power supply (5V, 3.3V)	
DC controller PCB	Provides 24U DC power supply for the high-voltage power supply PCB	
Leakage breaker	Cuts power supply in an abnormal situation	
Main power switch	Turns on/off AC power supply for the AC driver PCB	
Interlock switch	Turns on/off 24VUI for the DC controller PCB	
High-voltage power supply PCB	Generates varied levels of high voltage	



F-10-5

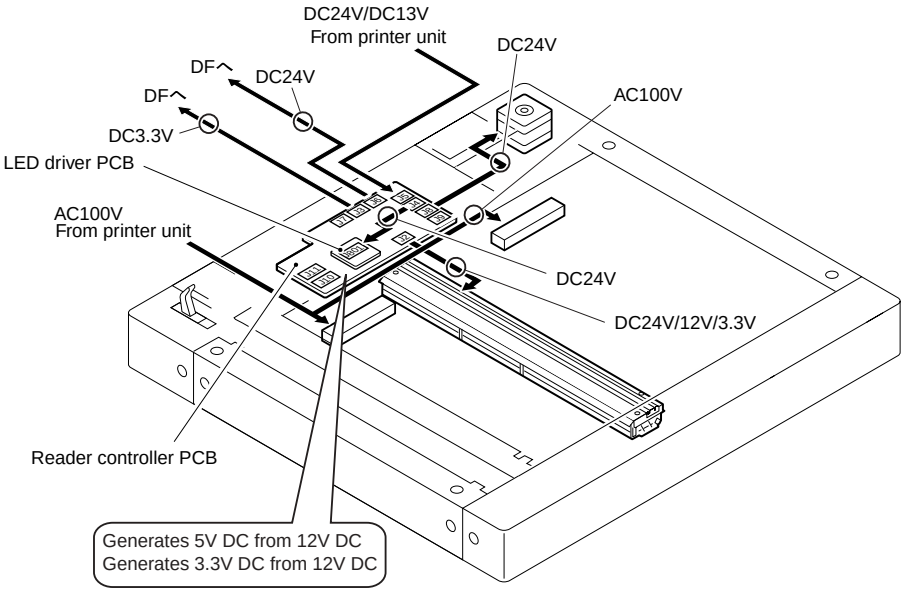
ELCB1 : Leakage breaker
H1/H11 : Fixing main heater
H2/H12 : Fixing sub heater
H4 : Cassette heater
H5, H6 : Reader heater
H7 : Deck heater
H1C : Cassette pedestal heater

SW1 : Main power switch
SW2 : Interlock switch
SW5 : Environment heater switch
TP1 : Fixing thermal switch

10.4.1.2 Power Supply Route in the Reader Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

In the reader controller PCB, 24V DC power which is supplied from the printer unit is used to drive motors and to turn on the LED of the CCD unit (generated by the LED driver PCB). 12V DC power is also supplied from the printer unit, and the following DC voltages are generated.
-5V DC: Document size detection sensor
-3.3V DC: IC drive/copyboard cover open/close sensor, CCD unit HP sensor
Furthermore, 1.8V DC power is generated from 3.3V DC power, and is used for ASIC drive.

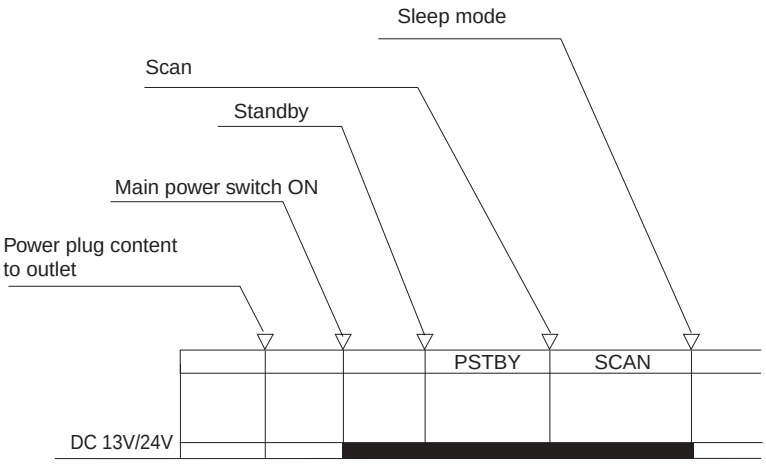


F-10-6

10.4.1.3 Timing of Supply to the Reader Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

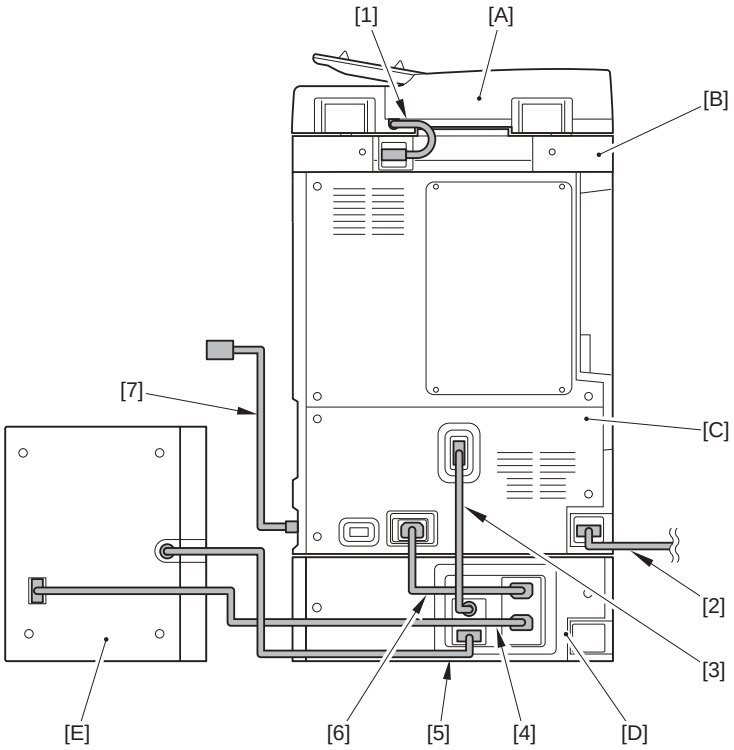
The reader unit is supplied with 24 VDC/1.3 VDC by the printer unit at such times as described below.



F-10-7

10.4.1.4 Connection to Options

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-10-8

[1] DADF I/F cable
[2] Finisher-AE1/Saddle Finisher-AE2 I/F cable
[3] Cassette pedestal I/F cable
[4] Side paper deck AC cable
[5] Side paper deck I/F cable
[6] Pickup AC cable
[7] AC input

[A] DADF-U1
[B] Reader part
[C] Printer part
[D] 2-Cassette Pedestal-Y3
[E] Paper Deck-Q1

10.4.1.5 Heater operating condition

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-10-8

		Cassette heater	Reader heater
Turning on the environment heater switch	Standby mode	ON	OFF
	Printing	ON	OFF
	Turning off the main power switch	ON	ON
	Sleep 3 mode	ON	ON

10.4.2 Rated Output of the DC Power Supply PCB

10.4.2.1 Rated Output of the 24V Power Supply PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-10-9

Name of output	24VA
All night/non-all night	Non-all night
Rated output	24.5 V
Tolerance	-/+ 5 %

10.4.2.2 Rated Output of the 12V Power Supply PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-10-10

Name of output	12VA
All night/non-all night	Non-all night
Rated output	12.3 V
Tolerance	-/+ 4 %

10.4.2.3 Rated Output of the Option Power Supply PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-10-11

Name of output	24VA
All night/non-all night	Non-all night
Rated output	24.0 V
Tolerance	+5 %, -4 % (For 0.1 to 6.5 A)
	+8 %, -6 % (For 0 to 12A)

10.4.2.4 Rated Output of the All-Night Power Supply PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-10-12

Name of output	3VB
All night/non-all night	All night
Rated output	3.4 V
Tolerance	-/+ 3 %

10.4.3 Protection Function

10.4.3.1 Protective Functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The DC power supply PCB and the power supply PCB for each option in this equipment have protective functions against overcurrent and overvoltage which cuts automatically the output voltage to prevent malfunction of the power supply circuit when a fault such as short circuit occurred on a load causes overcurrent or abnormal voltage.
When an abnormality occurs in 3VB (all-night power supply), all power supplies are cut.
When an abnormality occurs in other power supplies than the above, all power supplies but 3VB (all-night power supply) are cut.

If an abnormality occurs in 3VB (all-night power supply), turn off the main power switch of the printer assembly, eliminate causes for activation of the protective circuit, and then replace the all-night power supply PCB (because the fuse of the all-night power supply PCB has burned out.)
For other cases than that, turn off the main power switch of the printer assembly, eliminate causes for activation of the protective circuit, leave it for approx. 3 min or more, and then turn on the power again to reset the protective circuit.

10.4.4 Backup Battery

10.4.4.1 Backup Battery

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The main controller PCB for this equipment contains a lithium battery as a backup battery for various data in case that a blackout occurs or the power plug is disconnected.
The DC controller PCB does not contain a battery.

T-10-13

Type of battery	Lithium battery (3V, 1000mAh)
Life of battery	Approx. 8.8 years (in the state that a power plug is disconnected)
Replacement of battery	A battery should not be replaced in a field where service tasks are performed.

Incorrect replacement of a battery may cause an explosion.
Do not use other batteries than those specified by a manufacturer (same type or equivalent).
Be sure to dispose a replaced battery according to the instruction by the manufacturer.

10.4.5 Energy-Saving Function

10.4.5.1 Overview

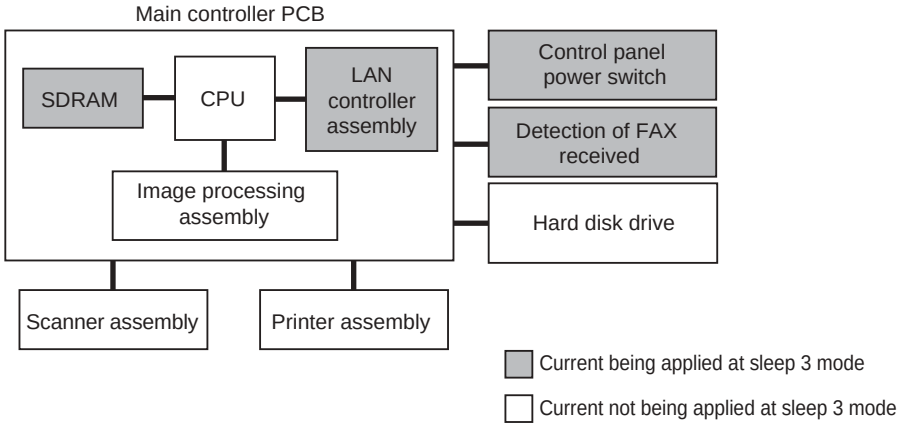
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1. Standby mode
The mode during operations or when an operation is ready to start. All power supplies are provided.

2. Sleep mode
2-1. Sleep 1
The state that the light of the control panel is turned off and the laser scanner motor (M1) does not rotate by pushing the control panel key. The power supply state is the same as for standby mode.

2-2. Sleep 3
Only 3 VB for the all-night power supply PCB is being provided.
When either of the following jobs occurs, sleep 3 mode is turned into standby mode.
- Print job
- Holding down the control panel power switch
- Receiving FAX

The diagram below shows the range that current is applied to at sleep 3 mode.



F-10-9

3. AC off mode
The state that the main power switch is turned off. All power supplies and heater control are turned off.

10.4.5.2 Power Supply State

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-10-14

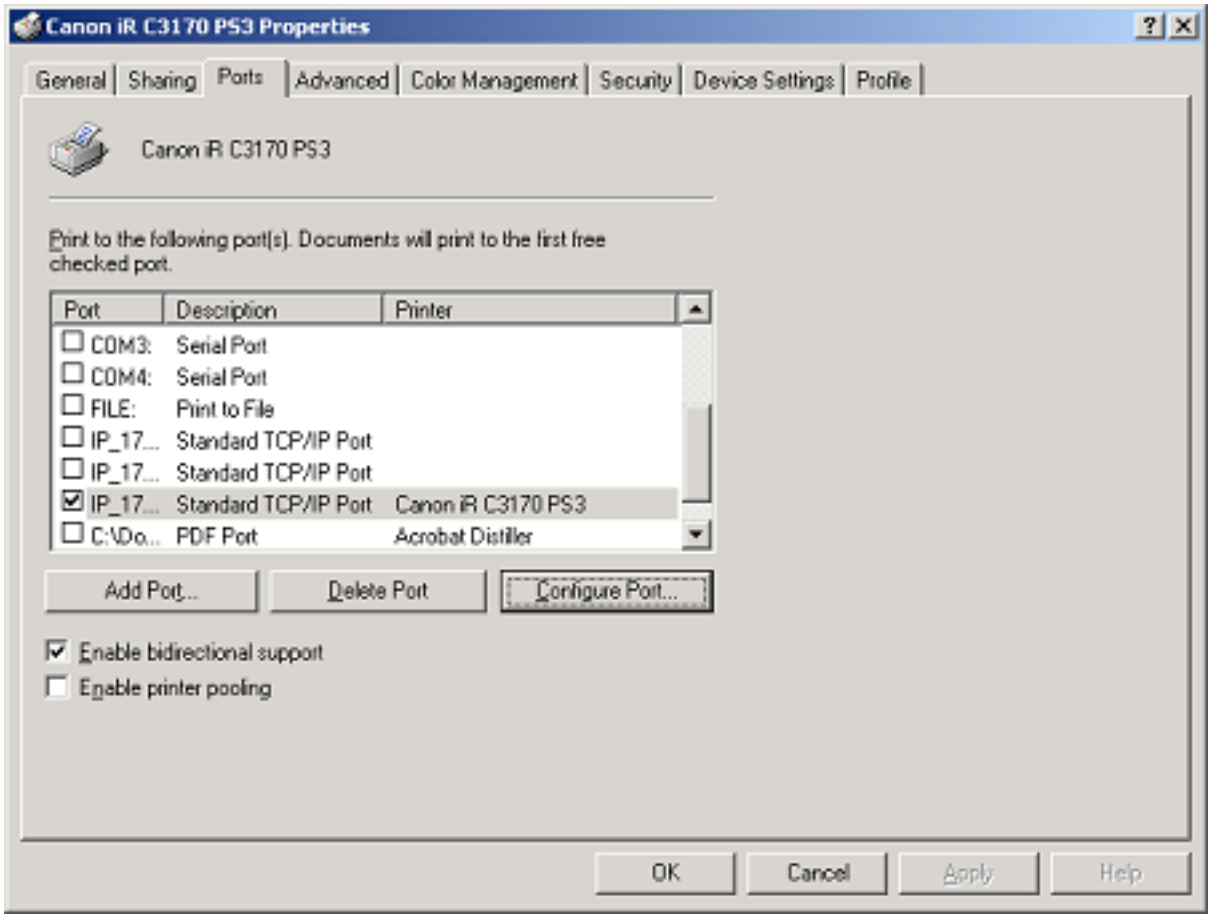
			Standby mode	Sleep mode		AC off mode
				1	3	
Reader part	Non-all night	12VA2	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
	Non-all night	24VU2	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
DC controller PCB	Non-all night	5V	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
	Non-all night	12V	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
	Non-all night	24VU1	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
	Non-all night	24VU2	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
Main controller PCB	Non-all night	3VA	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
	All night	3VB	ON	ON	ON	OFF
	Non-all night	12V	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
Fax	Non-all night	12V	ON	ON	OFF	OFF

10.4.5.3 SNMP Settings

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

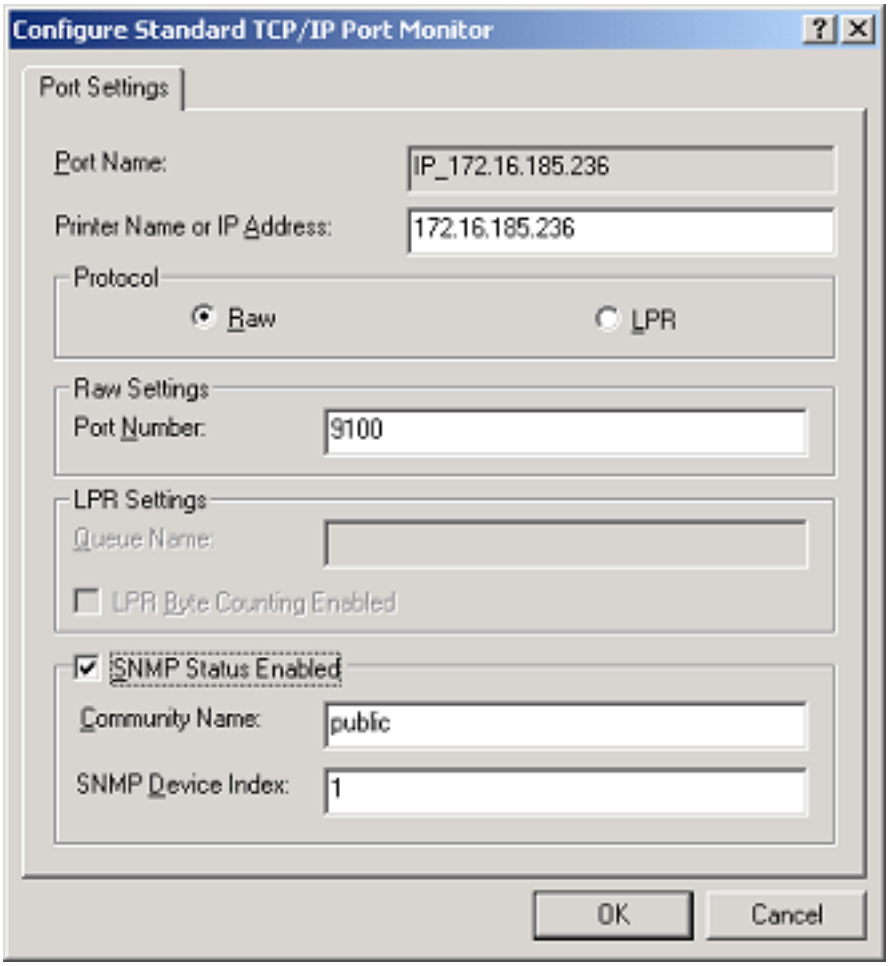
In the case that this equipment is used as a Windows printer, Windows gets periodically the status of this equipment when 'Use SNMP' is set; and therefore, this equipment cannot go into a complete sleep state.
To avoid this state, disable the status of SNMP on property of the Windows printer.

- How to disable the status
1) Select the following item; Property of printer > 'Configure Port...' on Port tab.



F-10-10

2) Uncheck 'SNMP Status Enabled'.



F-10-11

10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure

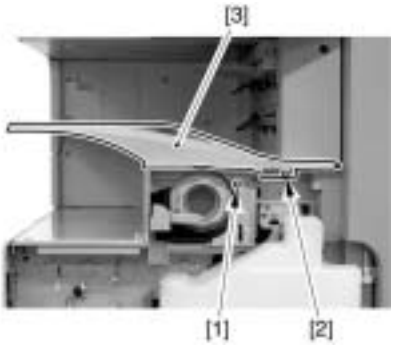
10.5.1 External Covers

10.5.1.1 Delivery Tray

10.5.1.1.1 Removing the Delivery Tray

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Loosen the screw [1].
3) Remove the screw [2].
4) Remove the delivery tray [3].



F-10-12

10.5.1.2 Delivery Tray Right Cover

10.5.1.2.1 Before Removing the Delivery Tray Right Cover

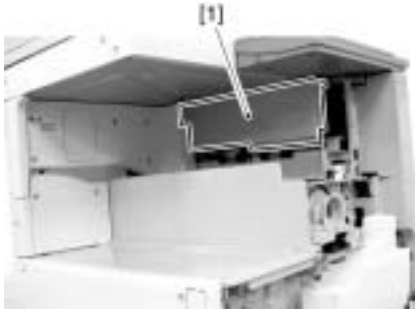
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
3) Remove the support cover. (page 10-15)Reference[Removing the Support Cover]

10.5.1.2.2 Removing the Delivery Tray Right Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the delivery tray right cover [1].



F-10-13

10.5.1.3 Delivery Tray Rear Cover

10.5.1.3.1 Before Removing the Delivery Tray Rear Cover

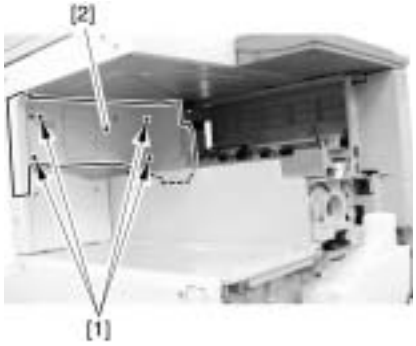
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
3) Remove the support cover. (page 10-15)Reference[Removing the Support Cover]
4) Remove the delivery tray right cover. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray Right Cover]

10.5.1.3.2 Removing the Delivery Tray Rear Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 4 screws [1] and remove the delivery tray rear cover [2].



F-10-14

10.5.1.4 Delivery Tray Rear Cover (Lower)

10.5.1.4.1 Before Removing the Delivery Tray Lower Rear Cover

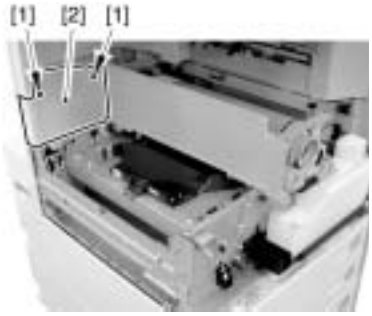
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
3) Remove the support cover. (page 10-15)Reference[Removing the Support Cover]
4) Remove the delivery tray right cover. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray Right Cover]
5) Remove the delivery tray rear cover. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray Rear Cover]
6) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
7) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]

10.5.1.4.2 Removing the Delivery Tray Lower Rear Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 2 screws [1] and the delivery tray lower rear cover [2].



F-10-15

10.5.1.5 Support Cover

10.5.1.5.1 Before Removing the Support Cover

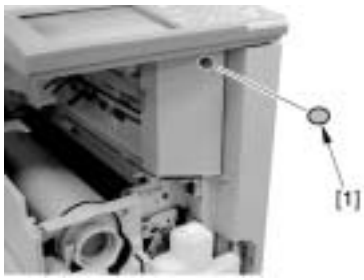
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]

10.5.1.5.2 Removing the Support Cover

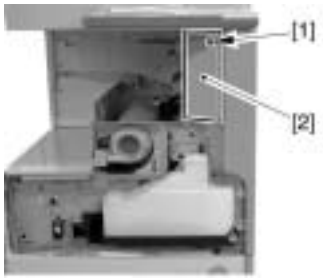
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the face plate [1].



F-10-16

2) Remove the screw [1] and the support cover [2].



F-10-17

10.5.1.6 Support Cover (Right)

10.5.1.6.1 Before Removing the Support Right Cover

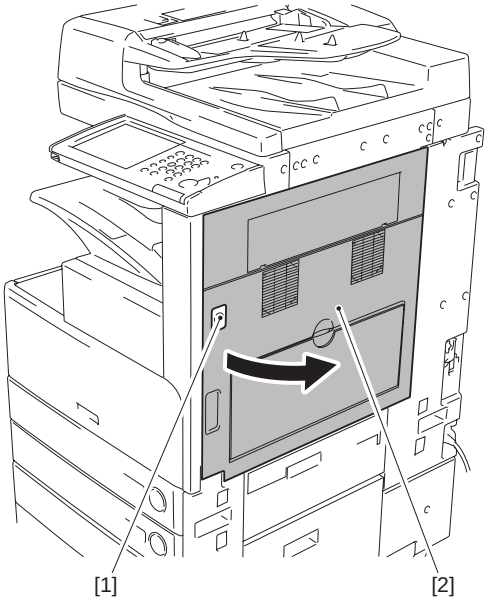
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
3) Remove the support cover. (page 10-15)Reference[Removing the Support Cover]

10.5.1.6.2 Removing the Support Right Cover

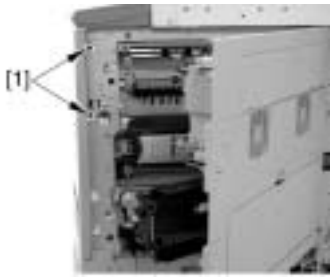
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].

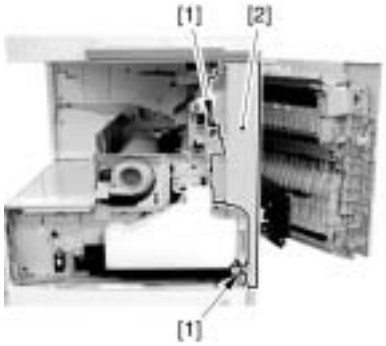


F-10-18

2) Remove the 4 screws [1] and the support right cover [2].



F-10-19



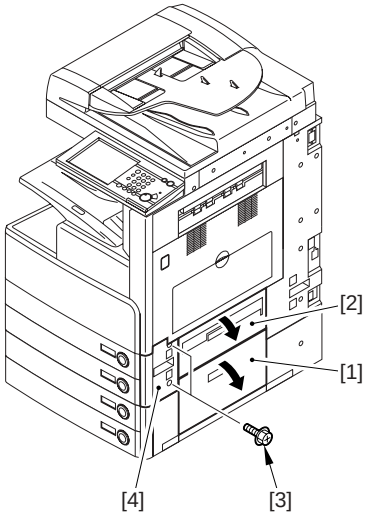
F-10-20

10.5.1.7 Right Cover (Lower Front)

10.5.1.7.1 Removing the Right Cover (Lower Front)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the cassette lower right cover [1] (in the case that the 2-cassette pedestal is installed).
2) Open the cassette upper right cover [2].
3) Remove the 2 screws [3] and the right cover (lower front) [4].



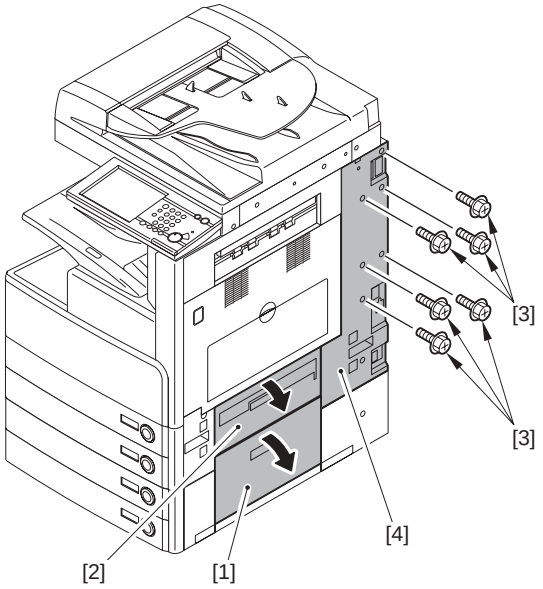
F-10-21

10.5.1.8 Right Cover (Rear)

10.5.1.8.1 Removing the Rear Right Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the cassette lower right cover [1] (in the case that the 2-cassette pedestal is installed).
2) Open the cassette upper right cover [2].
3) Remove the 6 screws [3] and the rear right cover [4].



F-10-22

10.5.1.9 Inside Right Cover

10.5.1.9.1 Before Removing the Inside Right Cover

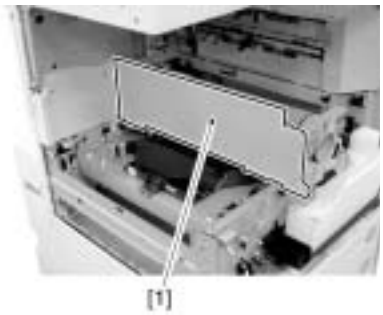
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
3) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
4) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]

10.5.1.9.2 Removing the Inside Right Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the inside right cover [1].



F-10-23

10.5.1.10 Inside Bottom Cover

10.5.1.10.1 Before Removing the Inside Base Cover

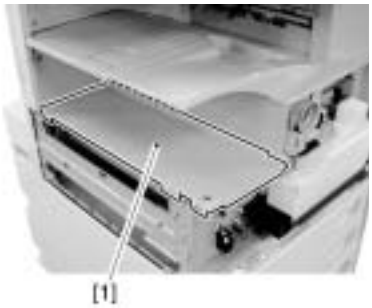
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]

10.5.1.10.2 Removing the Inside Base Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the inside base cover [1].



F-10-24

10.5.1.11 Front Cover Unit

10.5.1.11.1 Removing the Front Cover Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the front cover [1].

F-10-25

2) Remove the rubber face cover [1].
3) Remove the binding screw [2].
4) Remove the RS tightening screw [3].
5) Remove the front cover unit [4] in the direction of the arrows 1) to 3) in this order.

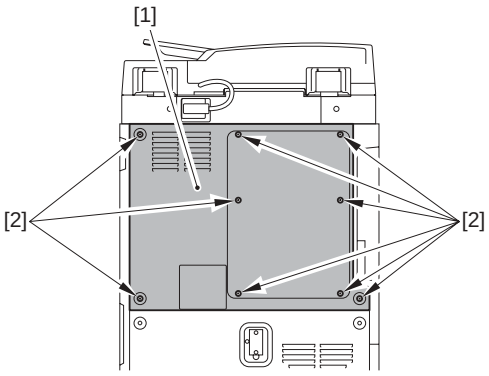
F-10-26

10.5.1.12 Rear Cover (Upper)

10.5.1.12.1 Removing the Upper Rear Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover [2].
   - 9 screws [1]



F-10-27

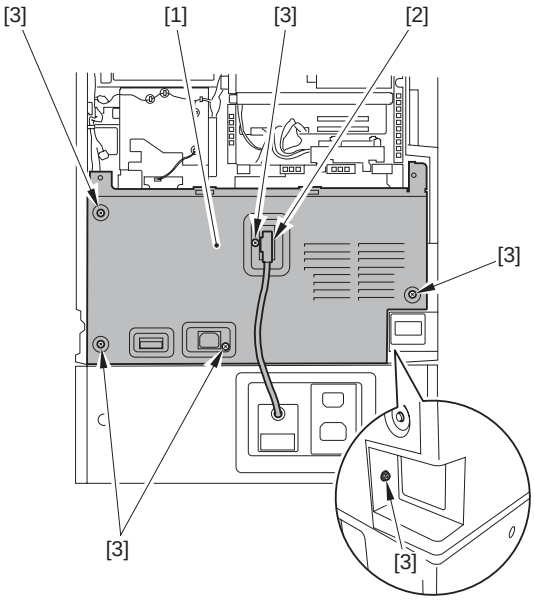
10.5.1.13 Rear Cover (Lower)

10.5.1.13.1 Removing the Lower Rear Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]

2) Remove the lower rear cover [3].
   - 1 pedestal connector [1]
   - 5 screws [2]



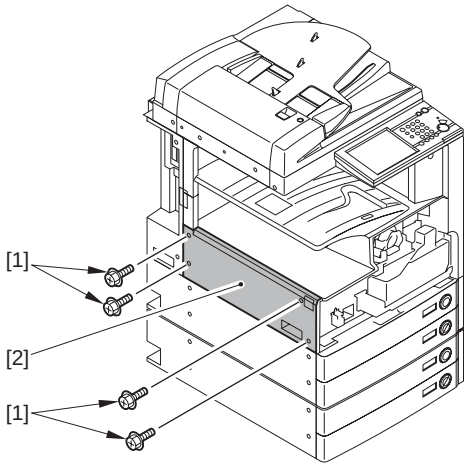
F-10-28

10.5.1.14 Left Cover

10.5.1.14.1 Removing the Left Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit.
2) Remove the 4 screws [1] and the left cover [2].



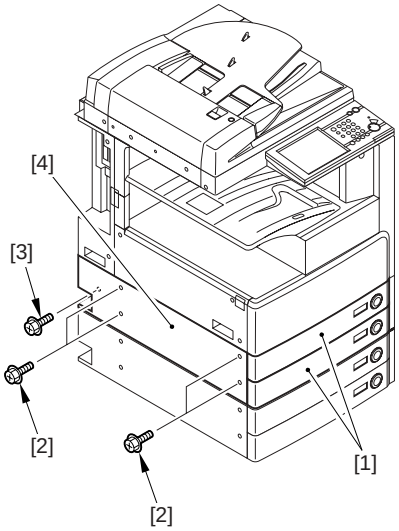
F-10-29

10.5.1.15 Left Cover (Lower)

10.5.1.15.1 Removing the Lower Left Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Pull out the cassettes 1 and 2 [1].
2) Remove the lower left cover [4].
   - 4 screws [2]
   - 1 screw [3]



F-10-30

10.5.1.16 Left Cover (Rear)

10.5.1.16.1 Before Removing the Rear Left Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.1.16.2 Removing the Rear Left Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 2 screws [1] and the rear left cover [2].

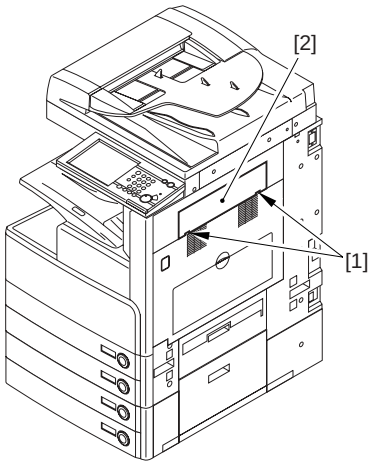
F-10-31

10.5.1.17 Delivery Cover

10.5.1.17.1 Removing the Delivery Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Free the 2 claws [1] with a flat-blade screwdriver and remove the delivery cover [1].



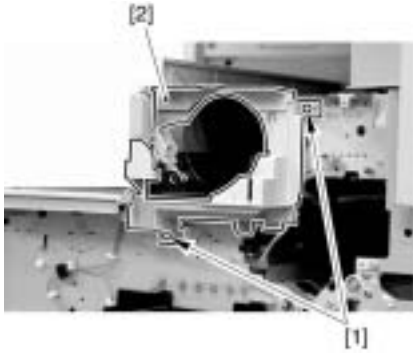
F-10-32

10.5.1.18 Toner Supply Cover

10.5.1.18.1 Removing the Toner Container Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
2) Remove the 2 screws [1] and the toner container cover [2].



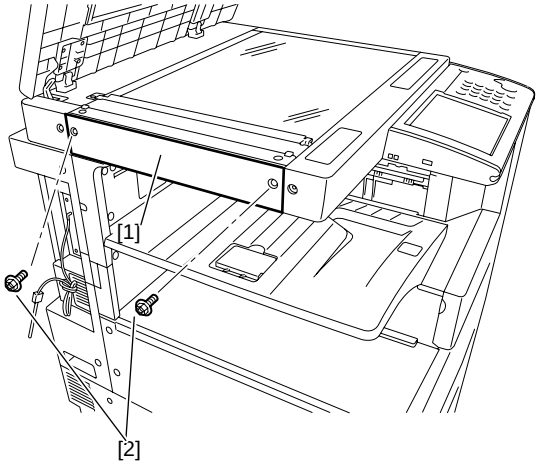
F-10-33

10.5.1.19 Reader Left Cover

10.5.1.19.1 Removing the Reader Left Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the reader left cover [1].
   - 2 screws [2]



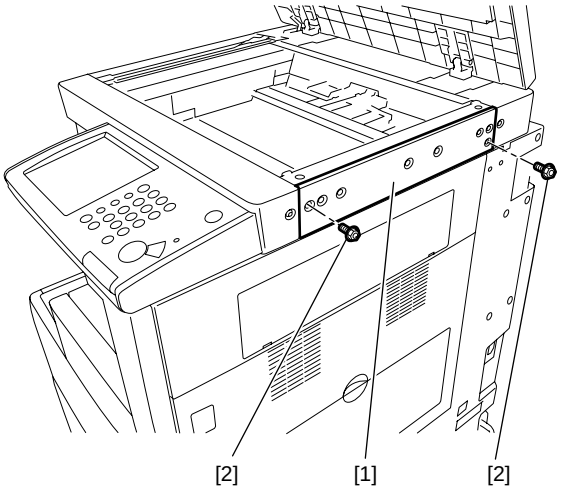
F-10-34

10.5.1.20 Reader Right Cover

10.5.1.20.1 Removing the Reader Right Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the reader right cover [1].
   - 2 screws [2]



F-10-35

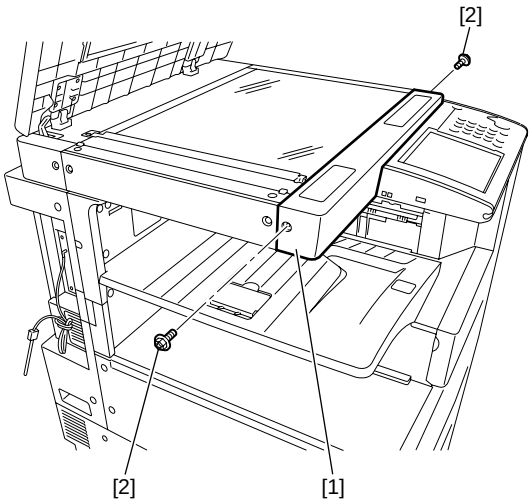
10.5.1.21 Reader Front Cover

10.5.1.21.1 Removing the Reader Front Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the platen board cover or the ADF.
2) Remove the reader right cover.
3) Remove the reader left cover.3) Remove the reader left cover.

4) Remove the reader front cover [1].
   - 2 screws [2]



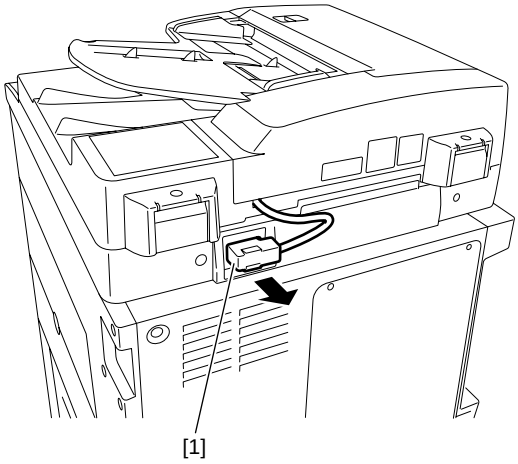
F-10-36

10.5.1.22 Reader Rear Cover

10.5.1.22.1 Removing the Reader Rear Cover

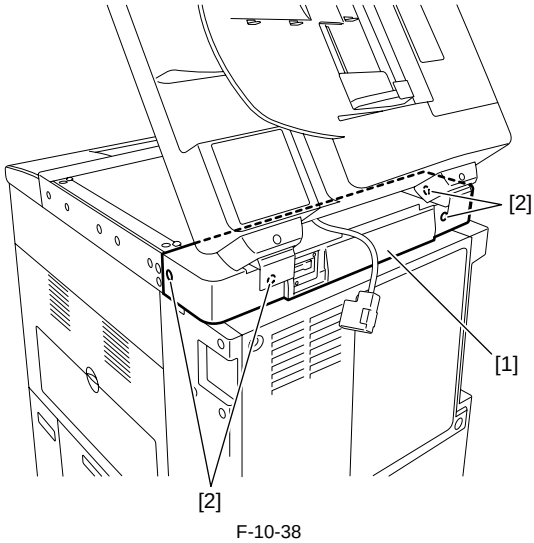
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the ADF communication cable (only for machine with ADF installed).



F-10-37

2) Open the platen board cover or the ADF.
3) Remove the reader rear cover [1].
   - 4 screws [2]



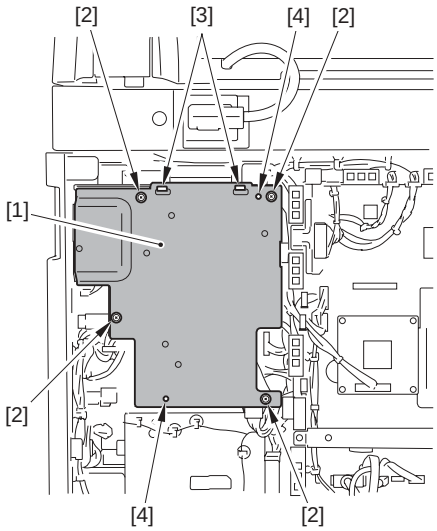
F-10-38

10.5.1.23 FAX Unit Cover

10.5.1.23.1 Removing the FAX Unit Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover [1]. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the FAX unit for 2 lines or the FAX unit for 2/3 lines as needed. For details, refer to the parts replacement procedure 'Removing the Fax Unit' in the service manual for the Super G3 2nd/3rd Line FAX Board-AC1 or that for the Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board-AC1.
3) Remove the FAX unit cover [1].
   - 4 screws [2]



F-10-39

Points to Note At Installing
Be sure to hook the FAX unit cover [1] on the 2 claws [3], fit the 2 locations of emboss [4], and then tighten the screws.

10.5.1.24 Control Panel Inside Frame

10.5.1.24.1 Before Removing the Control Panel Inside Frame

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

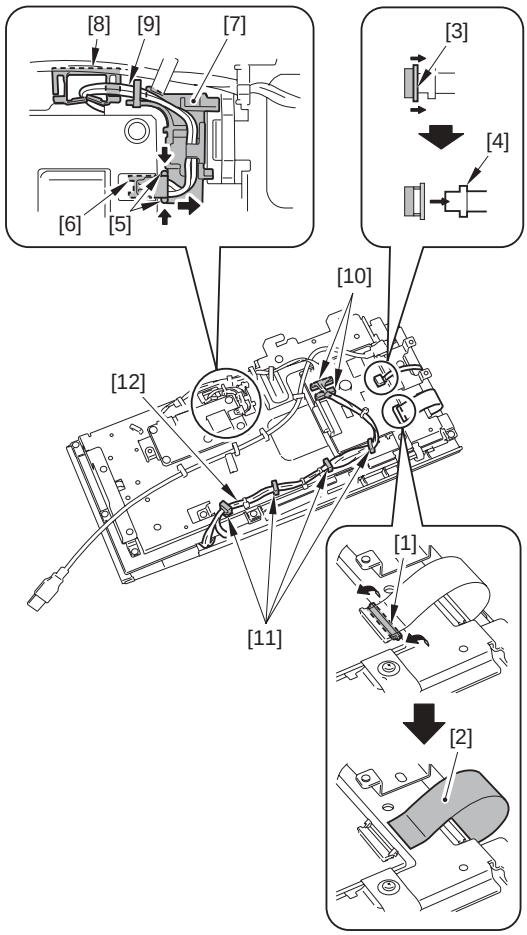
1) Remove the control panel unit. (page 10-25)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Unit]
2) Remove the control panel lower cover. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover]
3) Remove the control panel USB PCB. (Only for the machine equipped with the control panel USB port.) (page 10-29)Reference[Removing the Control Panel USB PCB]

10.5.1.24.2 Removing the Control Panel Inside Frame

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

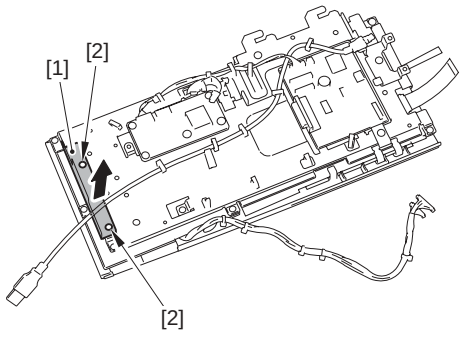
1) Remove the following parts.
   - 2 flat cables [2, 4]
   - 1 connector [6] (removing it while pressing the edges [5] in the direction shown by the arrows)
   - 1 guide [7] (removing the harness [9])
   - 1 edge saddle [8] (removing the harness [9])
   - 2 connectors [10]
   - 4 wire saddle [11] (removing the harness [12])

Be sure to remove the stoppers [1, 3] to the direction of the arrow. The 2 stoppers [1, 3] are moved to the different directions, respectively.



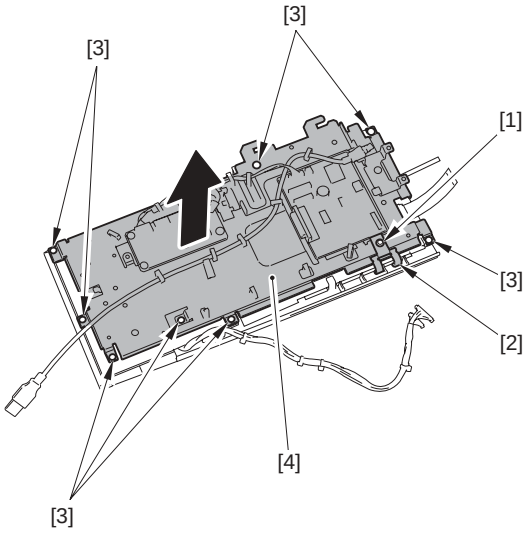
F-10-40

2) Remove the 2 screws [2] and remove the plate [1].



F-10-41

3) Remove the control panel inside frame [4].
- 9 screws [1, 3]
- 1 ground [2]



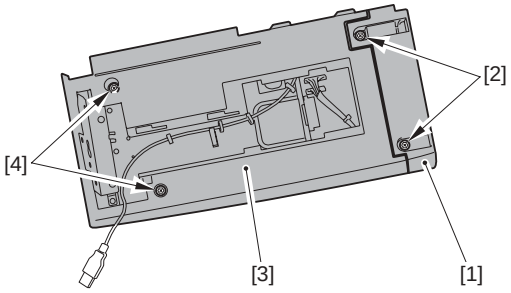
F-10-42

10.5.1.25 Control Panel Lower Cover

10.5.1.25.1 Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the control panel unit. (page 10-25)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Unit]
2) Remove the control panel left cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
3) Remove the control panel lower cover [3].
- 2 screws [4]



F-10-43

10.5.2 Main Drive Assembly

10.5.2.1 Before Removing the Main Drive Unit

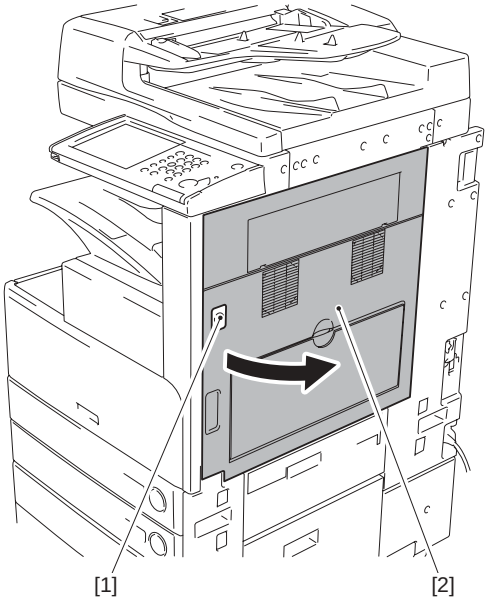
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.2.2 Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3245/3235/ 3230)

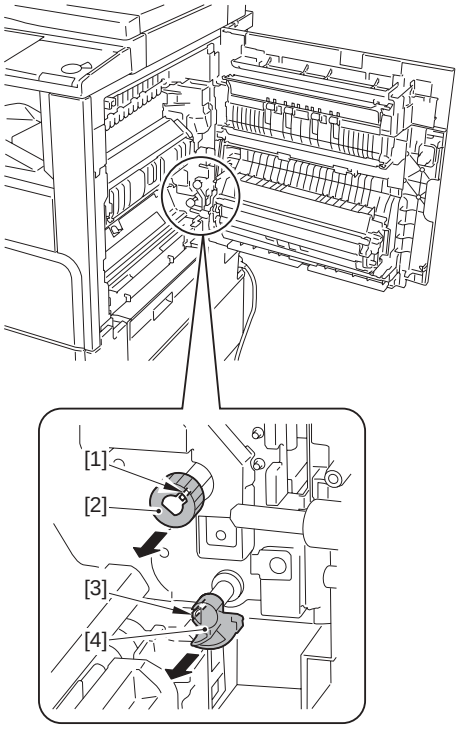
iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



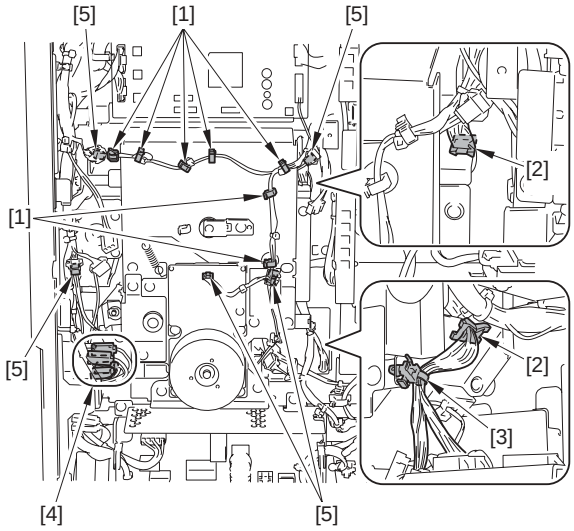
F-10-44

2) Remove the gear [2] and the cam [4] (releasing the claws [1, 3]).



F-10-45

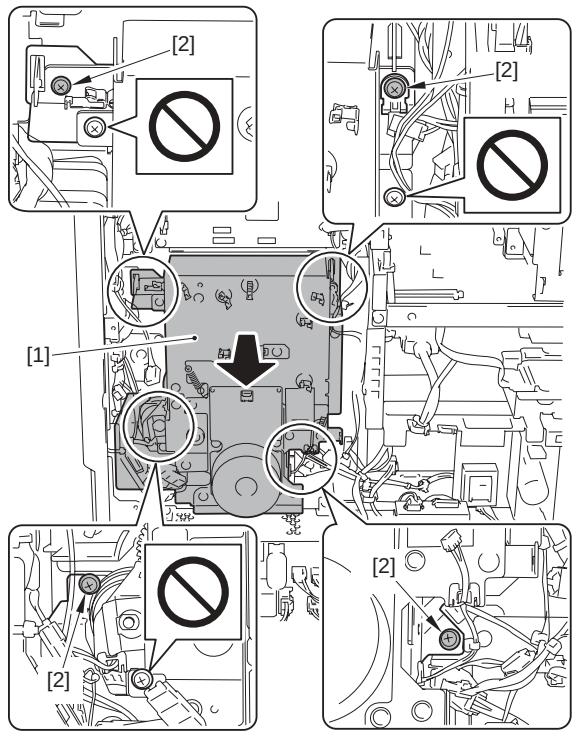
3) Remove the following parts.
- 7 wire saddles [1] (removing the harness)
- 2 edge saddles [2] (removing the harness)
- 1 reuse band [3]
- 4 fastons [4]
- 5 connectors [5]



F-10-46

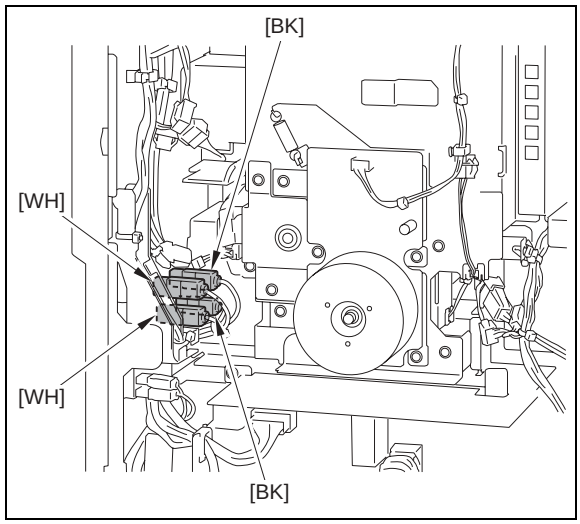
4) Remove the 4 screws [2] and remove the main drive unit [1].

> ⚠ Do not touch the screws that are glued in place.



F-10-47

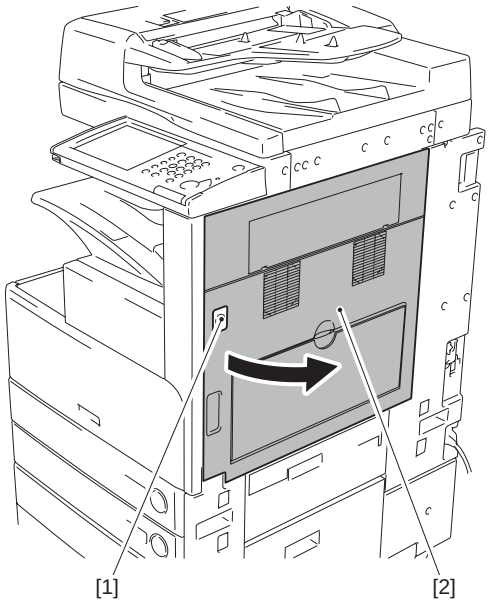
> ⚠ **Points to Note At Installation**
> Be sure to fit the fastons of the appropriate colors and install them as shown in the following figure.



10.5.2.3 Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3225)

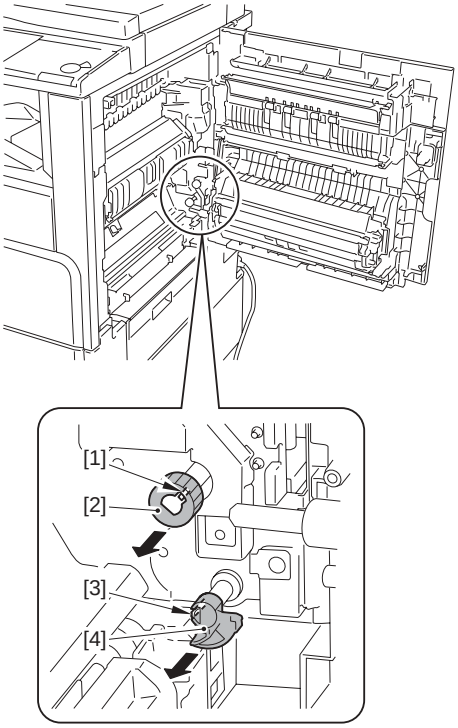
iR3225 / iR3225N

1) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



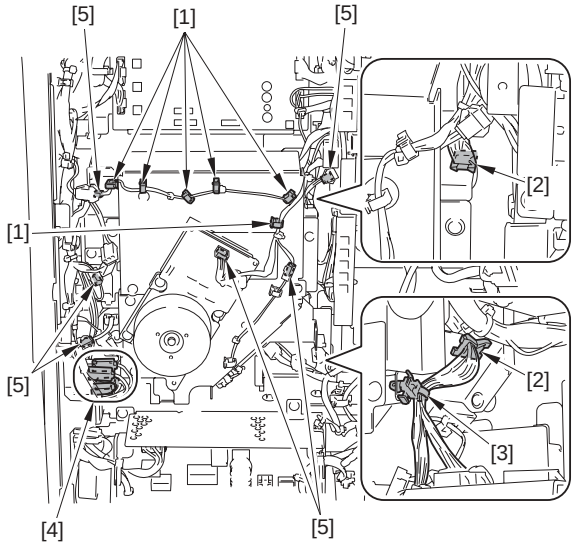
F-10-48

2) Remove the gear [2] and the cam [4] (releasing the claws [1, 3]).



F-10-49

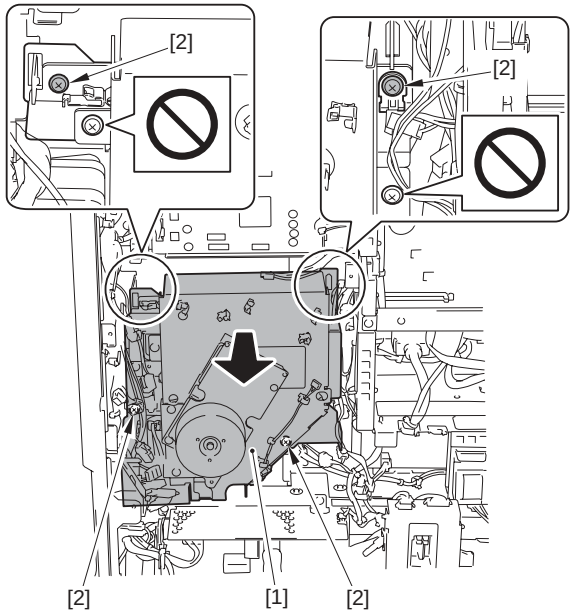
3) Remove the following parts.
- 6 wire saddles [1] (removing the harness)
- 2 edge saddles [2] (removing the harness)
- 1 reuse band [3]
- 4 fastons [4]
- 6 connectors [5]



F-10-50

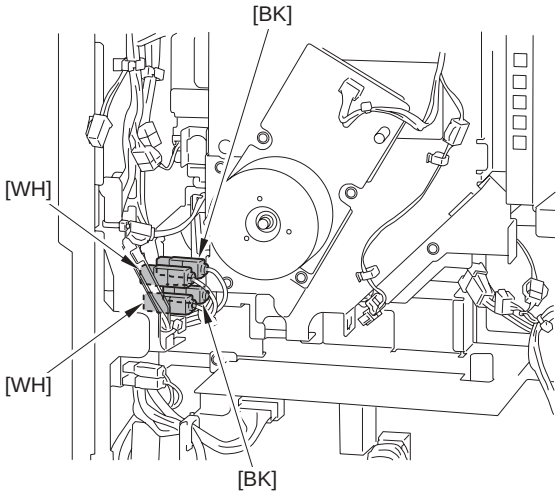
4) Remove the 4 screws [2] and remove the main drive unit [1].

⚠
Do not touch the screws that are glued in place.



F-10-51

⚠ **Points to Note At Installation**
Be sure to fit the fastons of the appropriate colors and install them as shown in the following figure.



10.5.3 Power Supply Unit

10.5.3.1 Before Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB

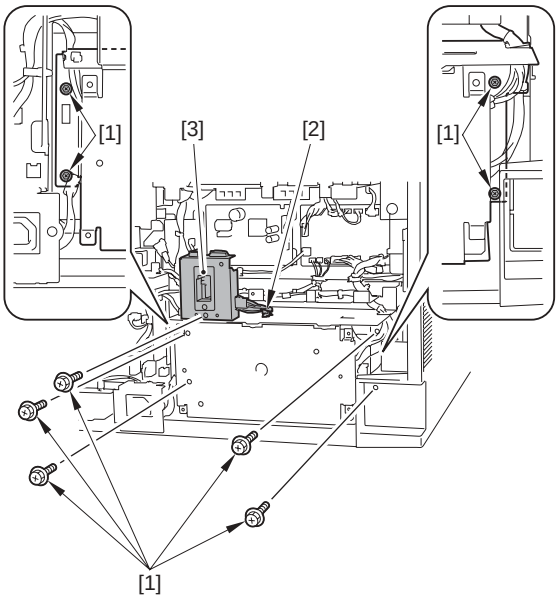
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.3.2 Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB

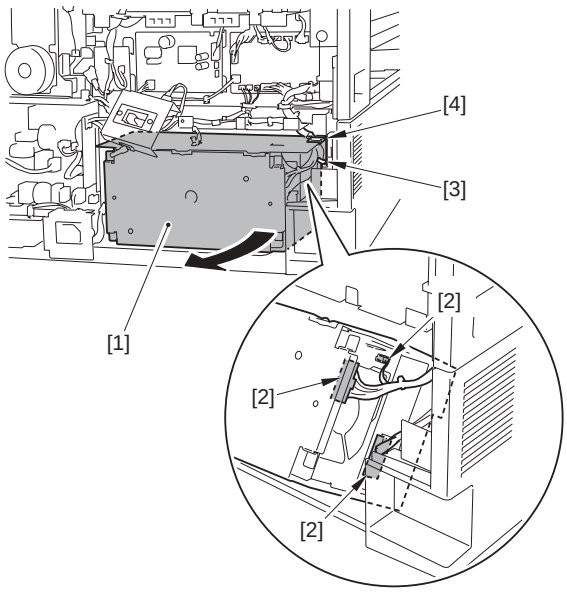
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the following parts.
   - 5 screws [1]
   - 1 wire saddle [2] (removing the harness)
   - connector base [3]



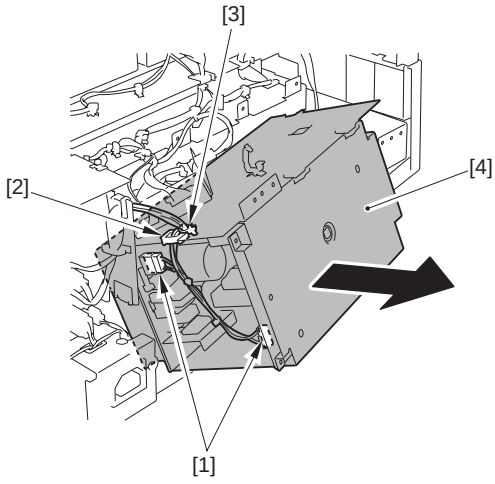
F-10-52

2) Pull out the DC power unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
3) Remove the following parts.
   - 3 connectors [2]
   - 1 wire saddle [3]
   - 1 edge saddle [4]



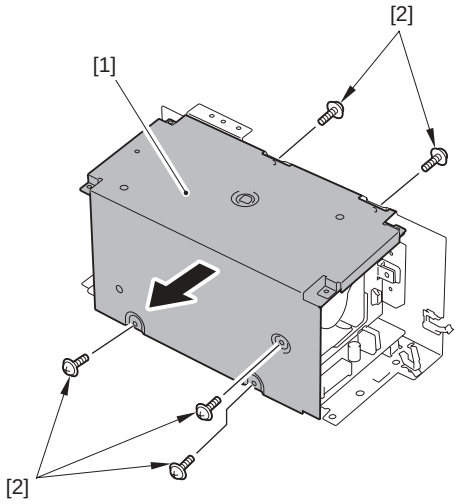
F-10-53

4) Remove the DC power unit [4].
   - 2 connectors [1]
   - 1 edge saddle [2]
   - 1 reuse band [3]



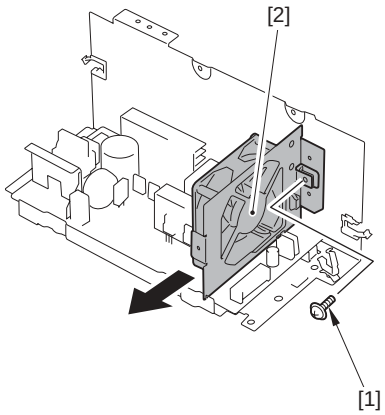
F-10-54

5) Remove the 5 screws [2] and separate the DC power unit [1] into two parts.



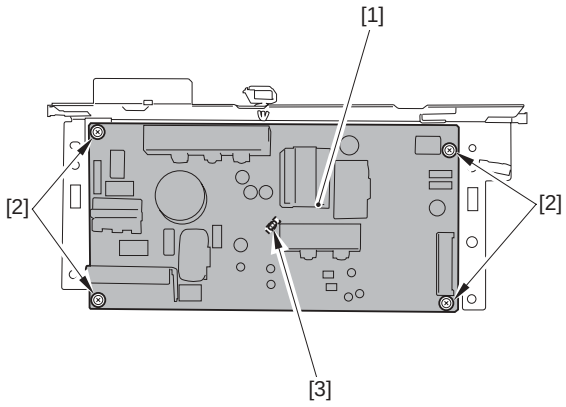
F-10-55

6) Remove the screw [1] and remove the power supply cooling fan mounting plate [2].



F-10-56

7) Remove the 12V power supply PCB [1].
- 4 screws [2]
- 1 PCB support [3]



F-10-57

10.5.3.3 Before Removing the 24V Power Supply PCB

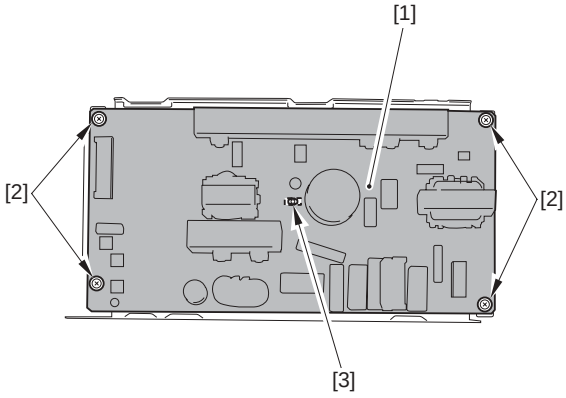
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.3.4 Removing the 24V Power Supply PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

(Perform the same procedure from step 1 to 5 as in 'Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB'.) (page 10-24)Reference[Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB]
1) Remove the 24V power supply PCB [1].
- 4 screws [2]
- 1 PCB support [3]



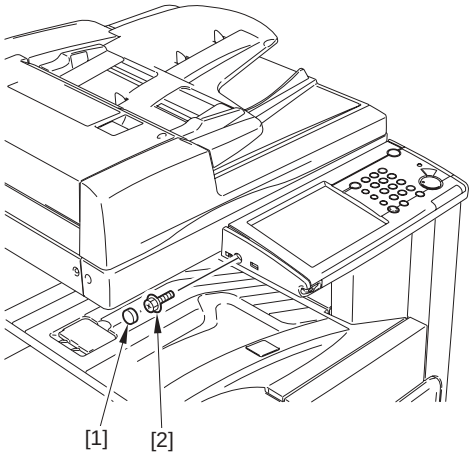
F-10-58

10.5.4 Control Panel

10.5.4.1 Removing the Control Panel Unit

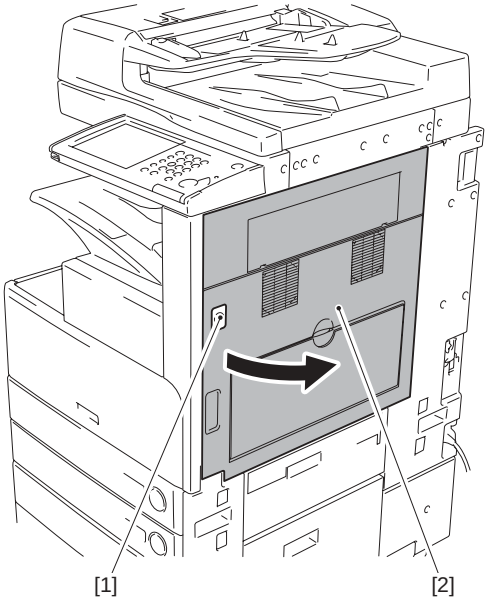
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the rubber cap [1], and remove the screw [2].



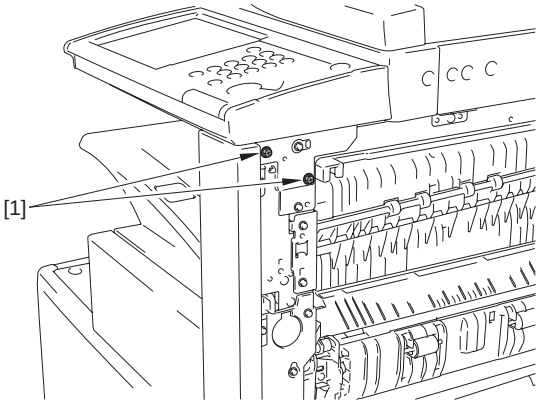
F-10-59

2) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



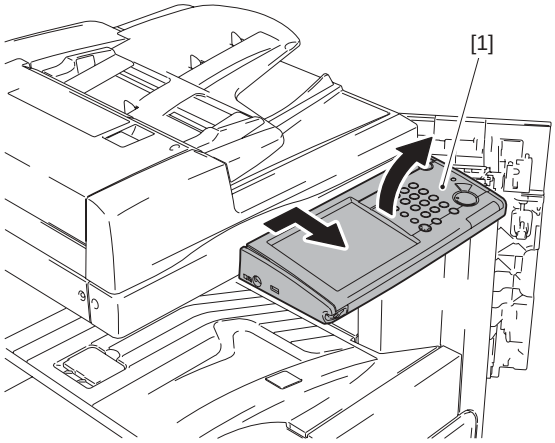
F-10-60

3) Remove the 2 screws [1].



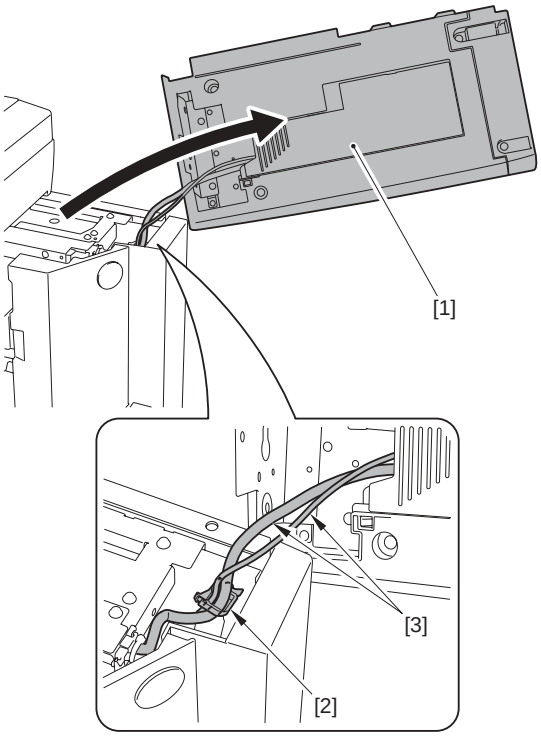
F-10-61

4) Slide the control panel unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.



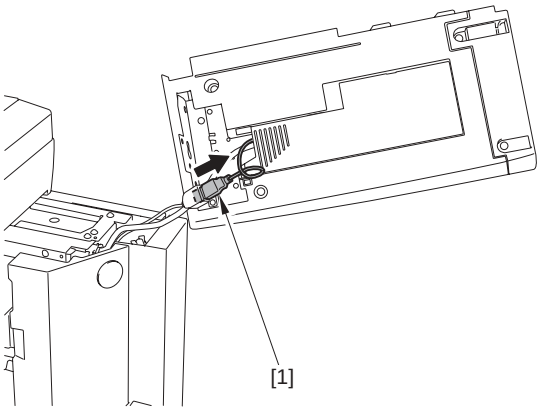
F-10-62

5) Reverse the control panel unit [1].
6) Free the harness [3] from the wire saddle [2].



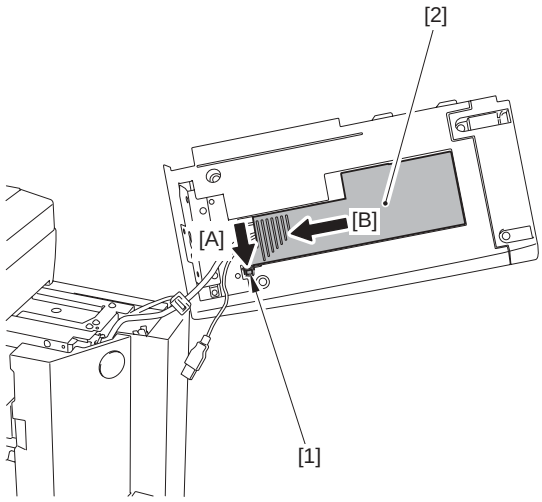
F-10-63

7) Remove the USB relay connector [1].



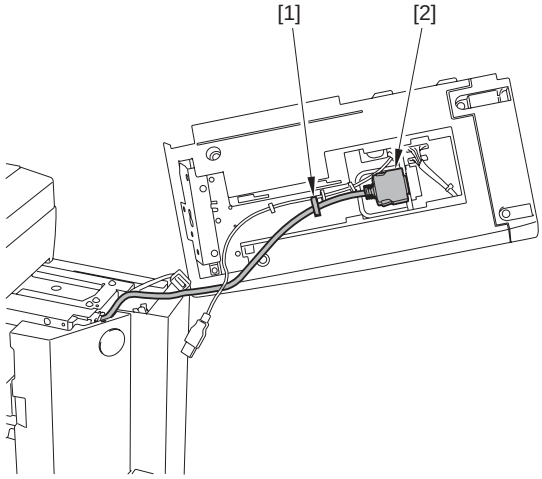
F-10-64

8) Free the claw [1] in the direction [A], and remove the control panel connector cover [2] in the direction [B].



F-10-65

9) Remove the control panel unit.
- 1 wire saddle [1] (removing the harness)
- 1 connector [2]



F-10-66

10.5.5 Control Panel LCD Unit

10.5.5.1 Before Removing the Control Panel LCD

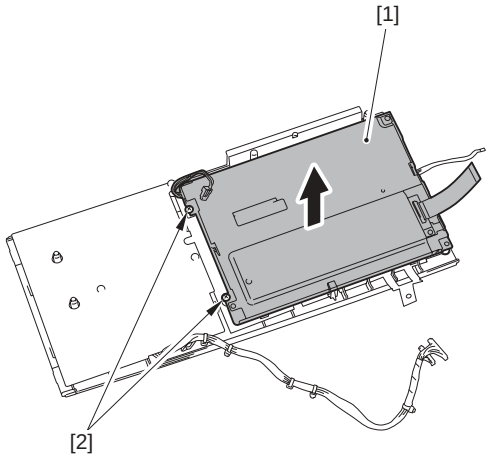
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the control panel unit. (page 10-25)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Unit]
2) Remove the control panel lower cover. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover]
3) Remove the control panel USB PCB. (Only for the machine equipped with the control panel USB port.) (page 10-29)Reference[Removing the Control Panel USB PCB]
4) Remove the control panel inside frame. (page 10-20)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Inside Frame]

10.5.5.2 Removing the Control Panel LCD

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 2 screws [2] and remove the control panel LCD [1].



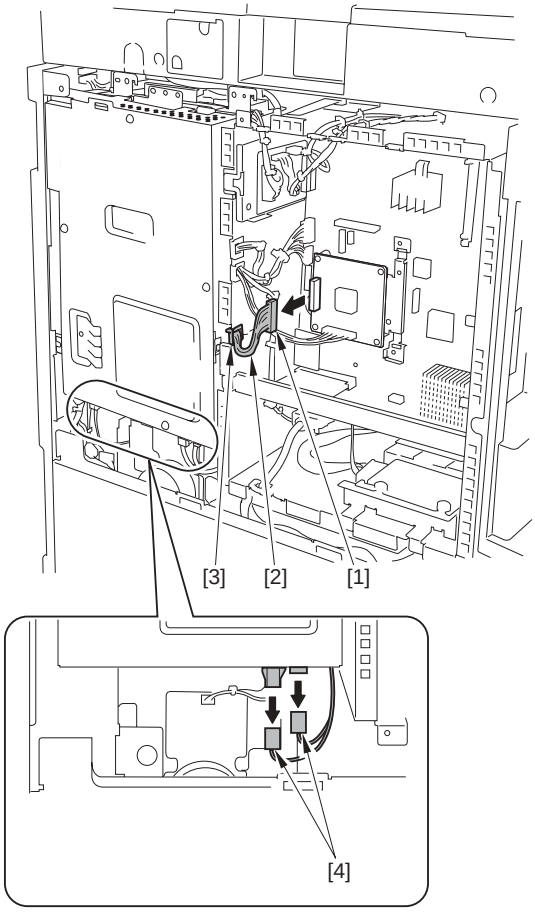
F-10-67

10.5.6 DC Controller PCB

10.5.6.1 Removing the DC Controller PCB

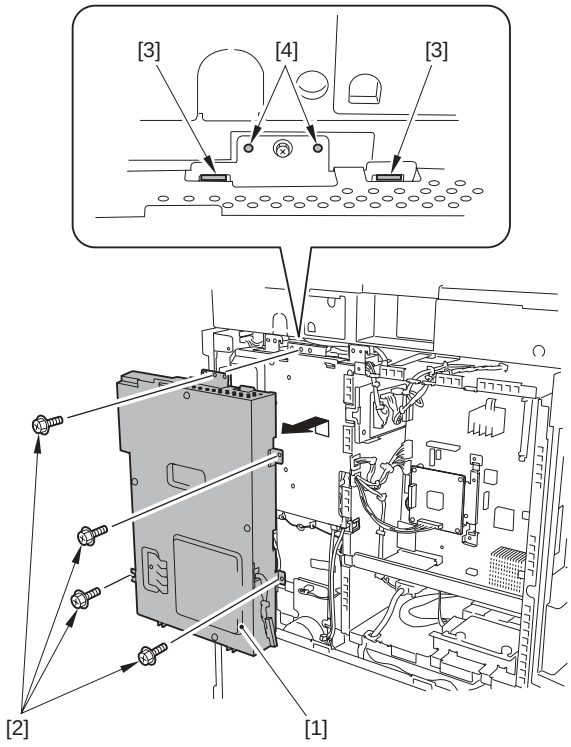
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the FAX unit for 2 lines or the FAX unit for 2/3 lines with the cable as needed.
2-1) Disconnect the connector [1] and free the cable [2] from the edge saddle [3].
2-2) Disconnect the 2 connectors [4].



F-10-68

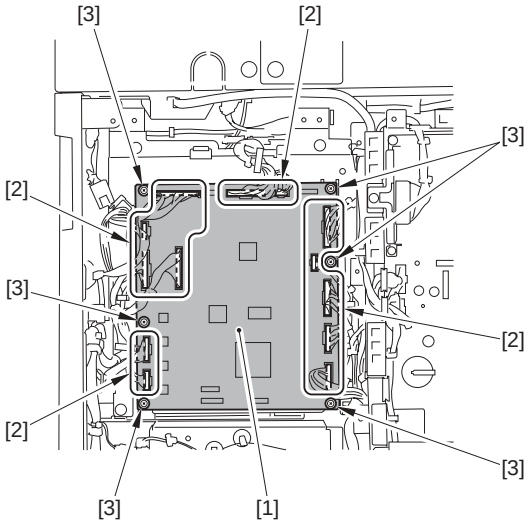
2-3) Remove the FAX unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 4 screws (RS tightening; M3X8.5) [2]



F-10-69

Points to Note At Mounting
Be sure to hook the FAX unit [1] on the 2 claws [3], fit the 2 locations of emboss [4], and then tighten the screws.

3) Remove the FAX unit with the cable as needed. (page 10-29)Reference[Removing the Fax Unit]
4) Remove the DC controller PCB [4].
- 13 connectors [1]
- 6 screws [2]



F-10-70

10.5.6.2 When Replacing DC Controller PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Points to note when turning OFF the main power
To protect HDD, make sure to execute the shutdown sequence before turning OFF the main power switch.

Before replacement/RAM clear:
- Printout the setting value list in service mode.

COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT

After replacement/RAM clear:
1) Execute DC controller setting value/counter clear.
COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> DC-CON (RAM clear of DC controller PCB)
COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> CNT-DCON (counter clear for service of DC controller PCB)
2) Turn OFF/ON the power. (Turning OFF/ON the power executes RAM clear).
3) If it was not available to upload the backup data due to DC controller brokerage etc. before replacement, enter the values described on the service label for each service mode item. However, the values on the service label may not be the latest, thus check the service mode items list (P-PRINT) printed in the previous step and enter the values on it.
4) Turn OFF/ON the power (turning OFF/ON the power activates the entered values of the each service mode items.).
5) Execute APVC correction.
COPIER> FUNCTION> DPC> D-GAMMA
6) Execute auto gradation correction control (additional function mode).
Additional functions> Adjustment/cleaning> Auto gradation correction
7) Enter the latest values into the each field on the service label.

10.5.7 Control Panel Inverter PCB

10.5.7.1 Before Removing the Control Panel Inverter PCB

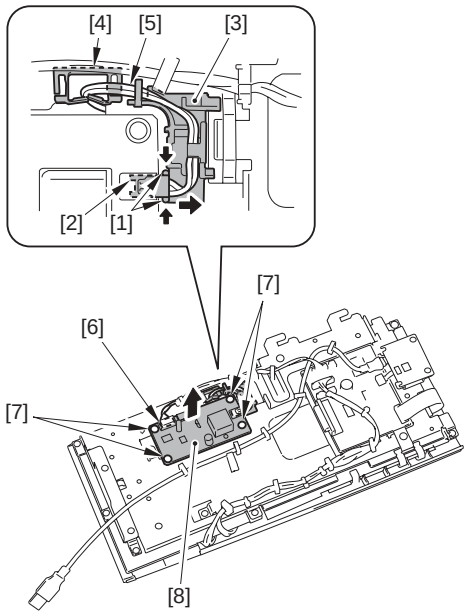
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the control panel unit. (page 10-25)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Unit]
2) Remove the control panel lower cover. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover]

10.5.7.2 Removing the Control Panel Inverter PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the control panel inverter PCB [8].
- 1 connector [2] (removing it while pressing the edges [1] in the direction shown by the arrows)
- 1 guide [3] (removing the harness [5])
- 1 edge saddle [4] (removing the harness [5])
- 1 connector [6]
- 4 screws [7]



F-10-71

10.5.8 Control Panel Key Switch PCB

10.5.8.1 Before Removing the Control Panel KEY PCB

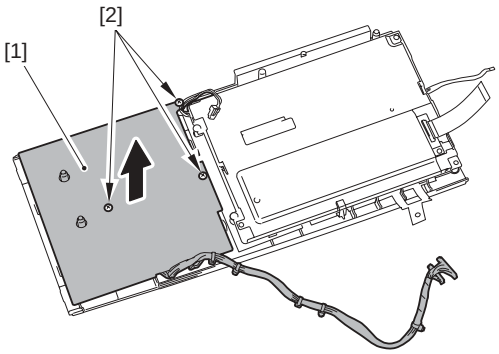
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the control panel unit. (page 10-25)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Unit]
2) Remove the control panel lower cover. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover]
3) Remove the control panel USB PCB. (Only for the machine equipped with the control panel USB port.) (page 10-29)Reference[Removing the Control Panel USB PCB]
4) Remove the control panel inside frame. (page 10-20)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Inside Frame]

10.5.8.2 Removing the Control Panel KEY PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 3 screws [2] and remove the control panel KEY PCB [1].



F-10-72

10.5.9 Control Panel CPU PCB

10.5.9.1 Before Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

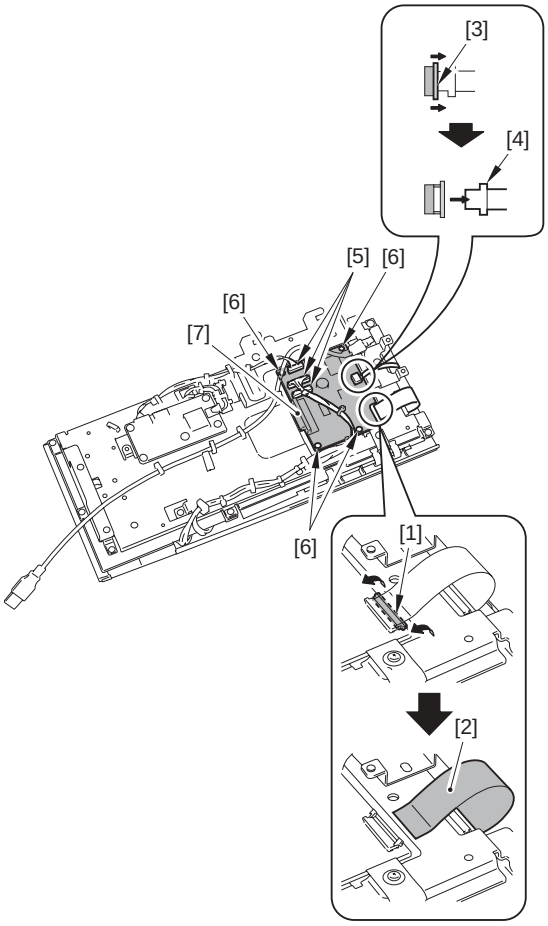
1) Remove the control panel unit. (page 10-25)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Unit]
2) Remove the control panel lower cover. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover]
3) Remove the control panel USB PCB. (Only for the machine equipped with the control panel USB port.) (page 10-29)Reference[Removing the Control Panel USB PCB]

10.5.9.2 Removing the Control Panel CPU PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the control panel CPU PCB [7].
   - 2 flat cables [2, 4]
   - 3 connectors [5]
   - 4 screws [6]

> ⚠
> Be sure to remove the stoppers [1, 3] to the direction of the arrow. The 2 stoppers [1, 3] are moved to the different directions, respectively.



F-10-73

10.5.10 Control Panel USB PCB

10.5.10.1 Before Removing the Control Panel USB PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

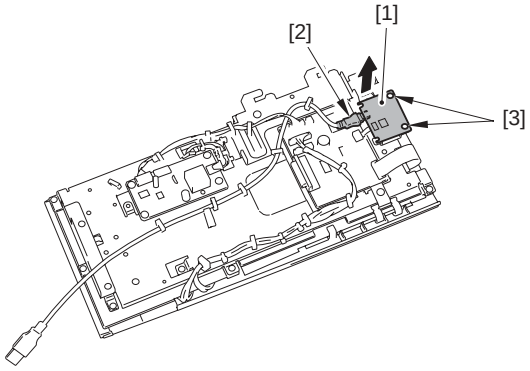
1) Remove the control panel unit. (page 10-25)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Unit]
2) Remove the control panel lower cover. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Control Panel Lower Cover]

10.5.10.2 Removing the Control Panel USB PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> **MEMO:**
> The control panel USB PCB is installed only on the machine equipped with the control panel USB port.

1) Remove the control panel USB PCB [1].
   - 1 USB connector [2]
   - 2 screws [3]



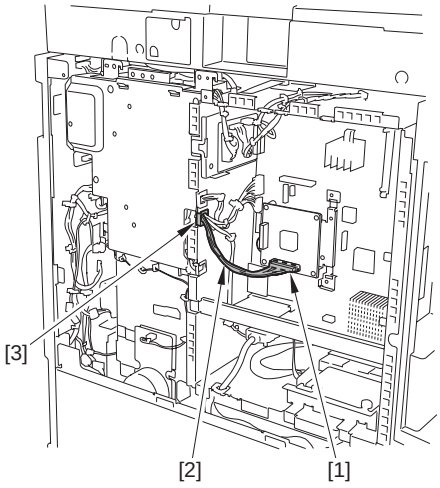
F-10-74

10.5.11 FAX Unit

10.5.11.1 Removing the Fax Unit

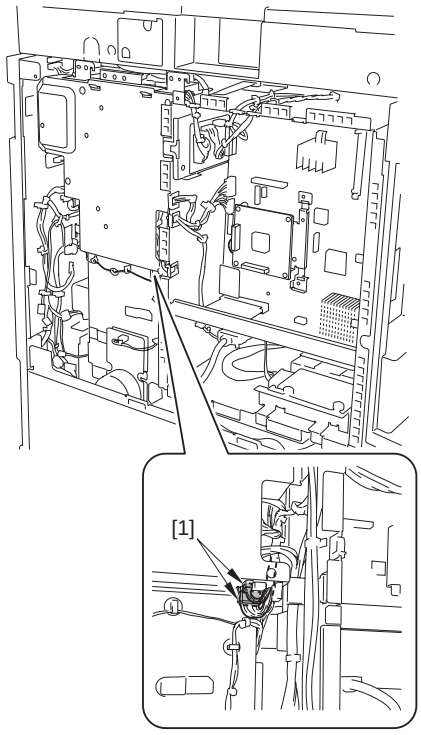
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the FAX unit for 2 lines or the FAX unit for 2/3 lines with the cable as needed.
   For details, refer to the parts replacement procedure 'Removing the Fax Unit' in the service manual for the Super G3 2nd/3rd Line FAX Board-AC1 or that for the Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board-AC1.
3) Disconnect the connector [1] and free the cable [2] from the edge saddle [3].



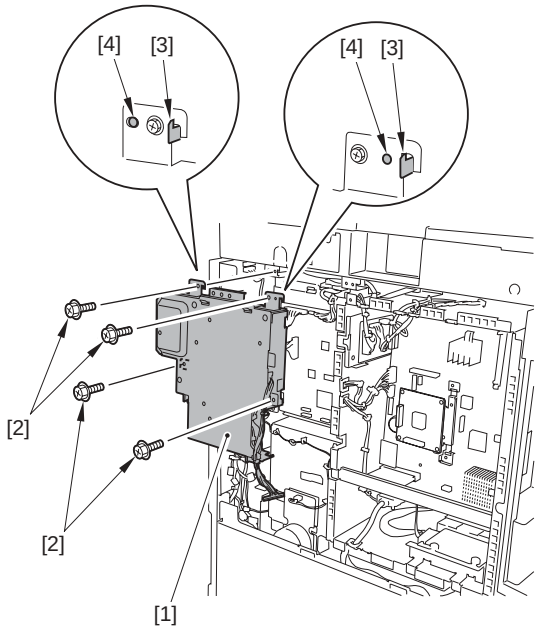
F-10-75

4) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1].



F-10-76

5) Remove the FAX unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 4 screws (RS tightening; M3X8.5) [2]



F-10-77

Points to Note At Mounting
Be sure to hook the FAX unit [1] on the 2 claws [3], fit the 2 locations of emboss [4], and then tighten the screws.

10.5.12 AC Driver PCB

10.5.12.1 Before Removing the AC Driver PCB

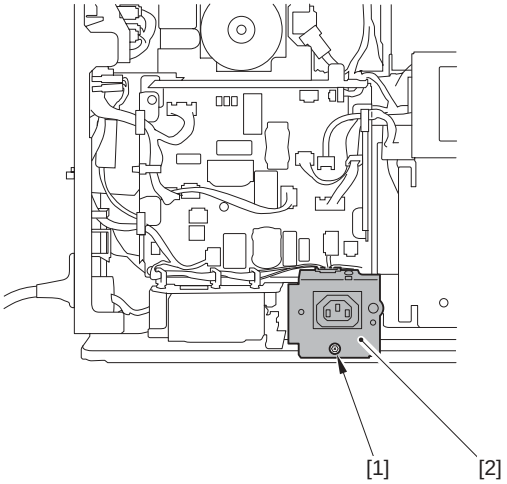
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.12.2 Removing the AC Driver PCB

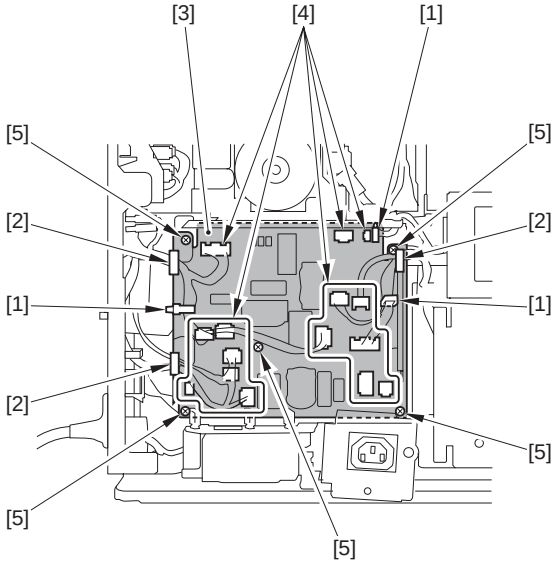
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the screw [1] and the Environment heater outlet [2].



F-10-78

2) Remove the AC driver PCB [3].
- 3 wire saddles [1] (removing the harness)
- 3 edge saddles [2] (removing the harness)
- 15 connectors [4]
- 5 screws (w/washer) [5]



F-10-79

10.5.13 All Night Power Supply PCB

10.5.13.1 Before Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB

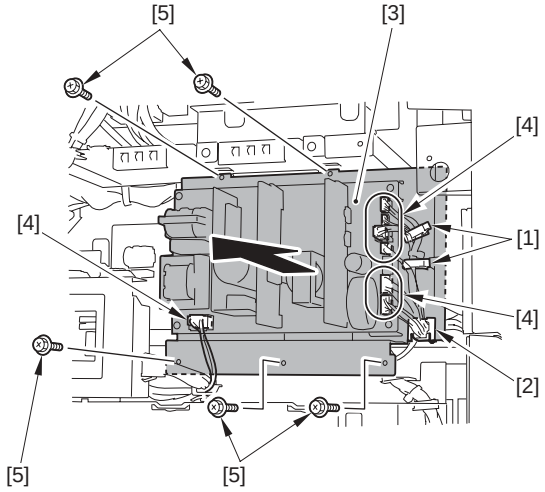
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.13.2 Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB

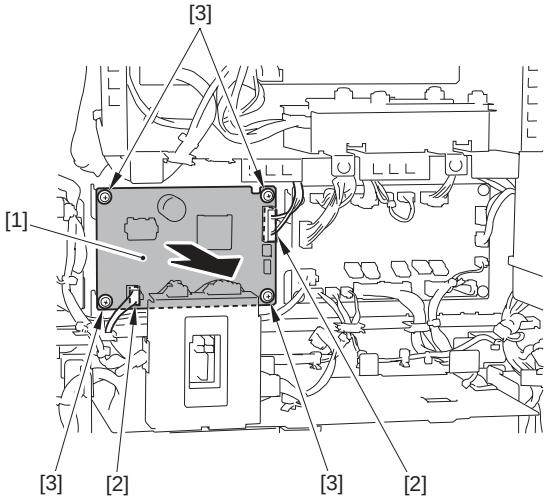
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the option power supply PCB mounting plate [3].
   - 2 wire saddles [1] (removing the harness)
   - 1 edge saddles [2] (removing the harness)
   - 7 connectors [4]
   - 5 screws [5]



F-10-80

2) Remove the all-night power supply PCB [1].
   - 2 connectors [2]
   - 4 screws [3]



F-10-81

10.5.14 Option Power Supply PCB

10.5.14.1 Before Removing the Option Power Supply PCB

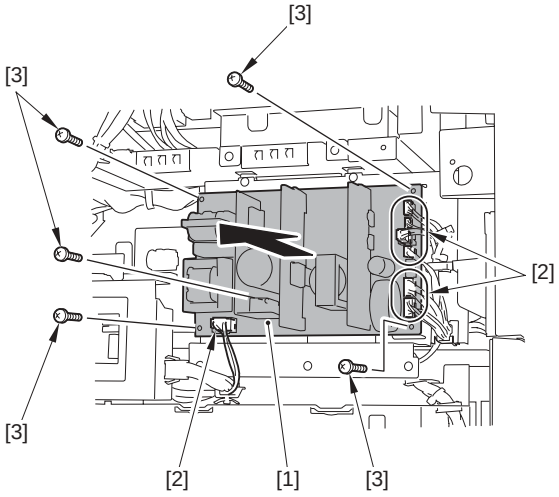
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.14.2 Removing the Option Power Supply PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the option power supply PCB [1].
   - 7 connectors [2]
   - 5 screws [3]



F-10-82

10.5.15 Relay PCB

10.5.15.1 Before Removing the Relay PCB

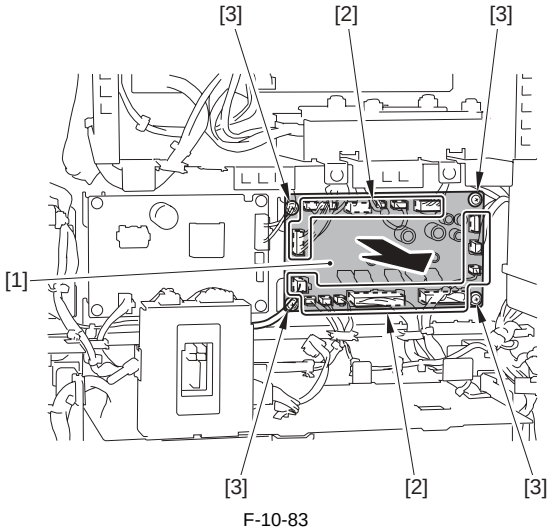
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.15.2 Removing the Relay PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

(Perform the same procedure from step 1 as in 'Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB'.) (page 10-30)Reference[Removing the All-Night Power Supply PCB]
1) Remove the relay PCB [1].
   - 15 connectors [2]
   - 4 screws [3]



F-10-83

10.5.16 High-Voltage PCB

10.5.16.1 Before Removing the High-Voltage Power Supply PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

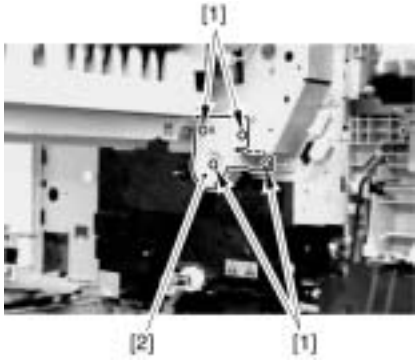
1) Remove the toner container.
2) Remove the front cover unit. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Front Cover Unit]
3) Remove the waste toner container. (page 7-24)Reference[Removing the Waste Toner Container]
4) Remove the toner container cover. (page 10-18)Reference[Removing

the Toner Container Cover]
5) Remove the delivery tray. (page 10-14)Reference[Removing the Delivery Tray]
6) Remove the left cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Left Cover]
7) Remove the inside base cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Base Cover]
8) Remove the inside right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Inside Right Cover]
9) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Drum Unit]
10) Remove the developing assembly. (page 7-21)Reference[Removing the Developing Assembly]
11) Remove the pre-exposure lamp. (page 7-18)Reference[Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp]
12) Remove the laser scanner unit. (page 6-8)Reference[Removing the Laser Unit]
13) Remove the hopper unit. (page 7-19)Reference[Removing the Hopper Unit]
14) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
15) Release the right cover. (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]
16) Remove the fixing unit. (page 9-8)Reference[Removing the Fixing Unit]

10.5.16.2 Removing the High-Voltage Power Supply PCB

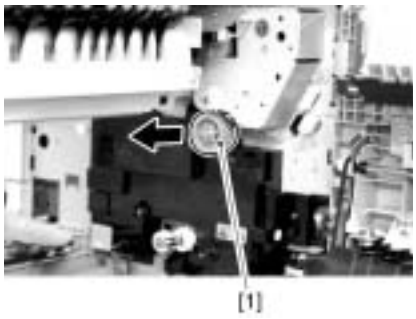
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 4 screws [1] and the gear cover [2].



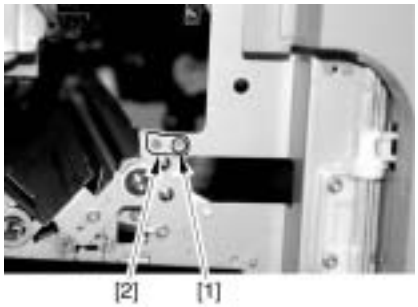
F-10-84

2) Remove the gear [1].



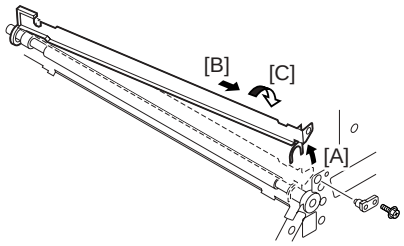
F-10-85

3) Remove the screw [1] and the fixing member [2].



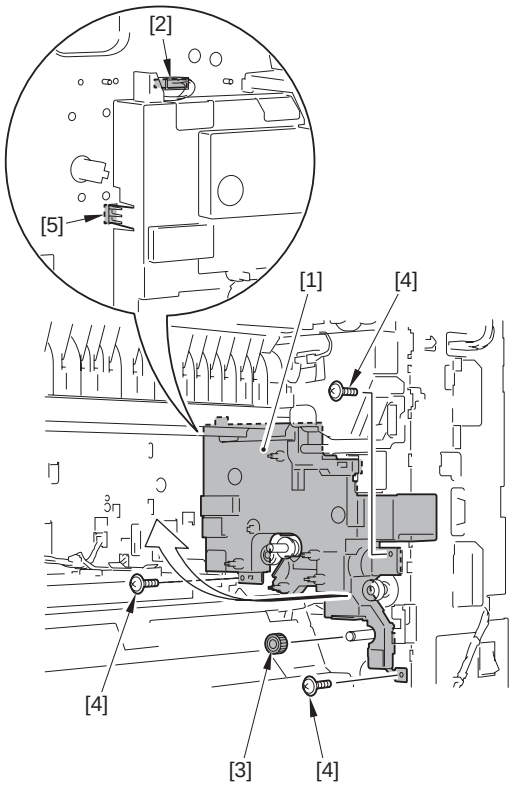
F-10-86

4) Remove the guide [1] in the direction of the arrows [A], [B], and [C] in this order.



F-10-87

5) Remove the high-voltage power supply PCB [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 gear [3]
- 3 screws [4]
- 1 claw [5]



F-10-88

10.5.17 Power Supply Cooling Fan 1

10.5.17.1 Before Removing the Power Supply Cooling Fan

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

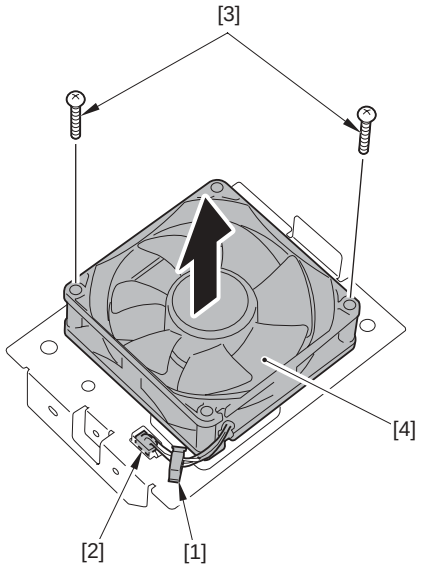
1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.17.2 Removing the Power Supply Cooling Fan

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

(Perform the same procedure from step 1 to 6 as in 'Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB'.) (page 10-24)Reference[Removing the 12V Power Supply PCB]

1) Remove the power supply cooling fan [4].
- 1 wire saddle [1]
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]



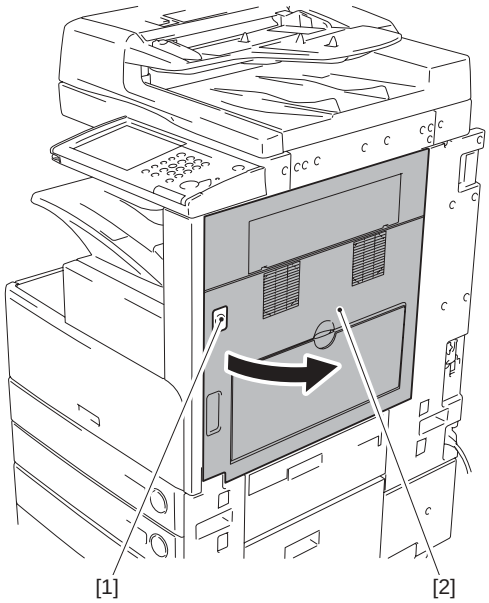
F-10-89

10.5.18 Exhaust Fan

10.5.18.1 Removing the Exhaust Fan

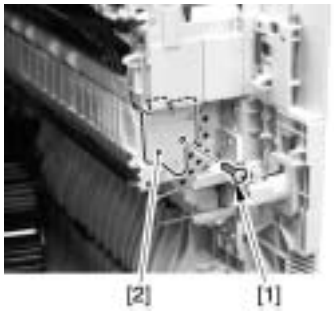
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



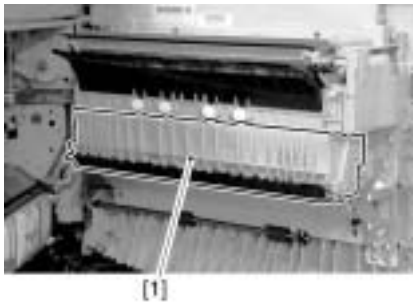
F-10-90

2) Remove the screw [1] and the fixing plate [2].



F-10-91

3) Remove the feeder guide [1].

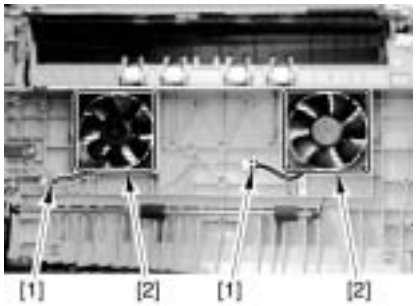


F-10-92

4) Remove the 6 screws [1] and the feeder guide (lower) [2].

F-10-93

5) Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the exhaust fan [2].



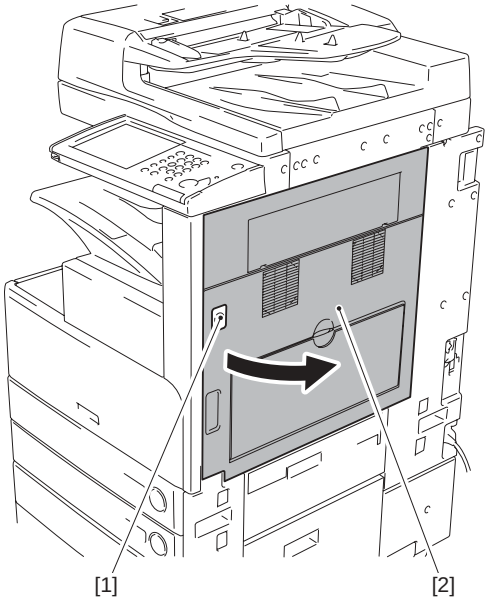
F-10-94

10.5.19 Fan Filter

10.5.19.1 Removing the Exhaust Fan Filter

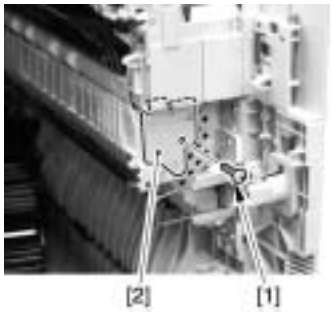
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



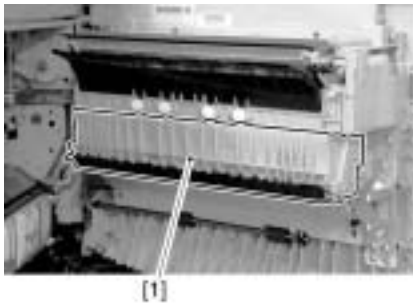
F-10-95

2) Remove the screw [1] and the fixing plate [2].



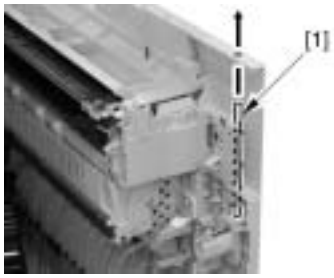
F-10-96

3) Remove the feeder guide [1].



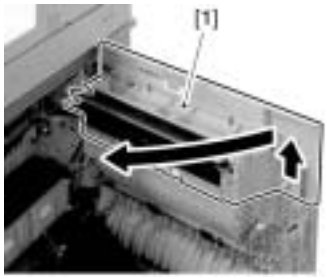
F-10-97

4) Remove the pin [1].



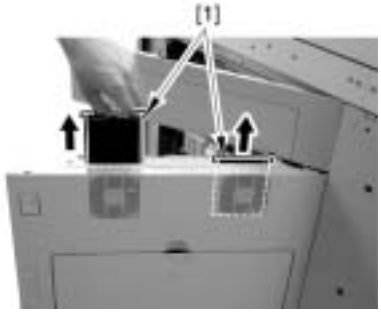
F-10-98

5) Separate the 3 way unit [1] from the right cover.



F-10-99

6) Pull out the exhaust fan filter [1].



F-10-100

10.5.20 Motor of Main Drive Assembly

10.5.20.1 Before Removing the Main Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230)

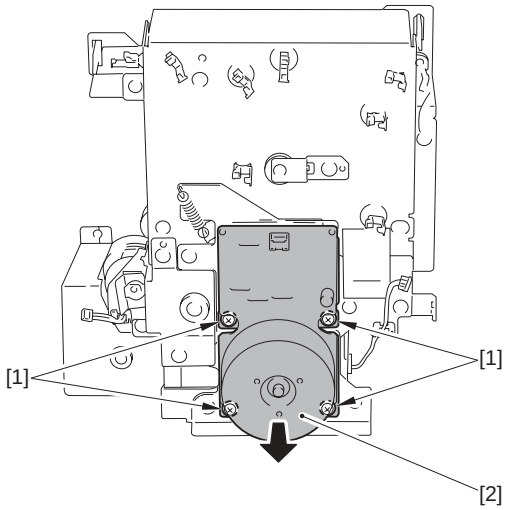
iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]
3) Remove the Main drive unit. (page 10-21)Reference[Removing the Main Drive Unit (iR 3245/3235/3230)]

10.5.20.2 Removing the Main Motor (iR 3245/3235/3230)

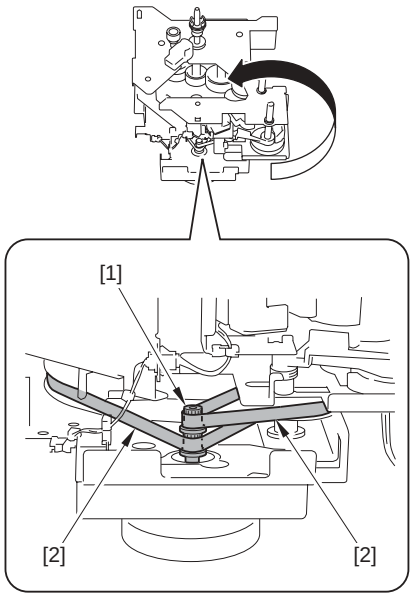
iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 4 screws [1], and remove the main motor [2].



F-10-101

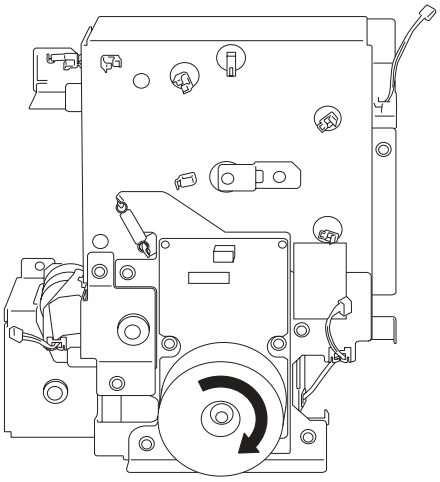
Points to Note During the Work
Be sure that the 2 timing belts [2] are fitted to the shaft [1] of the main motor as shown.



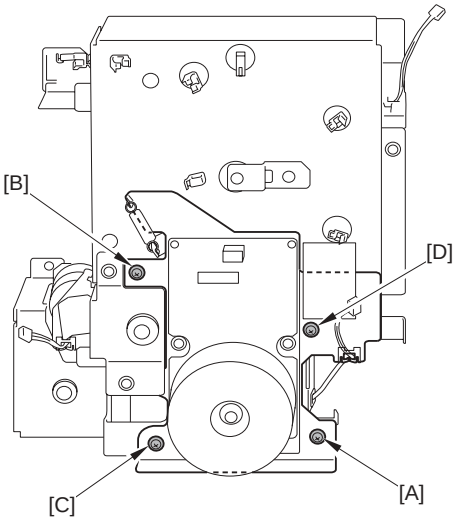
Adjusting the Tension of the Main Motor

1) Temporarily fix the main motor mounting plate in place to the main drive unit.

2) So that the motor gear and the teeth of the pulley mesh correctly, move the motor in the direction of the arrow.



3) Tighten the screws of the main motor mounting plate in the order indicated ([A] -> [B] -> [C] -> [D]).



10.5.20.3 Before Removing the Main Motor (iR 3225)

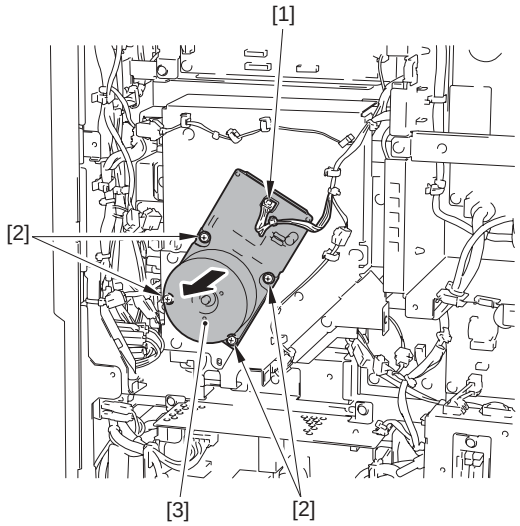
iR3225 / iR3225N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.20.4 Removing the Main Motor (iR 3225)

iR3225 / iR3225N

1) Remove the main motor [3].
- 1 connector [1]
- 4 screws [2]



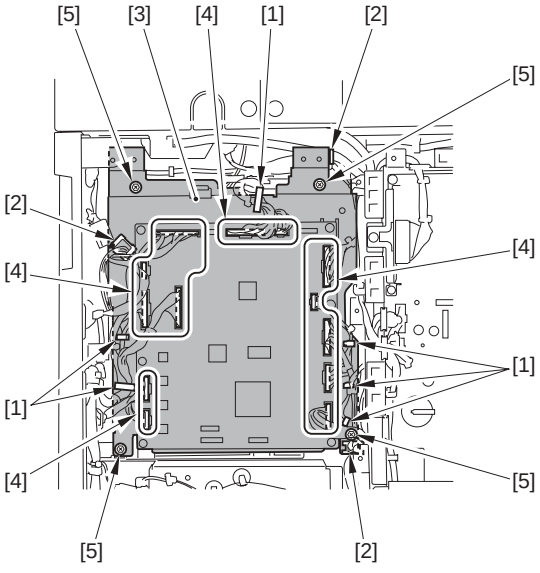
F-10-102

10.5.21 Fixing Driver Motor

10.5.21.1 Removing the Fixing Driver Motor

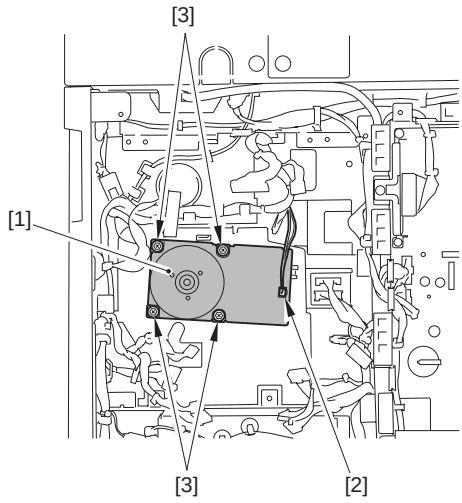
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

(Perform the same procedure from step 1 to 2 as in 'Removing the DC Controller PCB'.) (page 10-27)Reference[Removing the DC Controller PCB]
1) Remove the DC controller PCB mounting plate [3].
- 6 wire saddles [1] (removing the harness)
- 3 edge saddles [2] (removing the harness)
- 13 connectors [4]
- 4 screws [5]



F-10-103

2) Remove the fixing driver motor [1].
- 1 connectors [2]
- 4 screws [3]



F-10-104

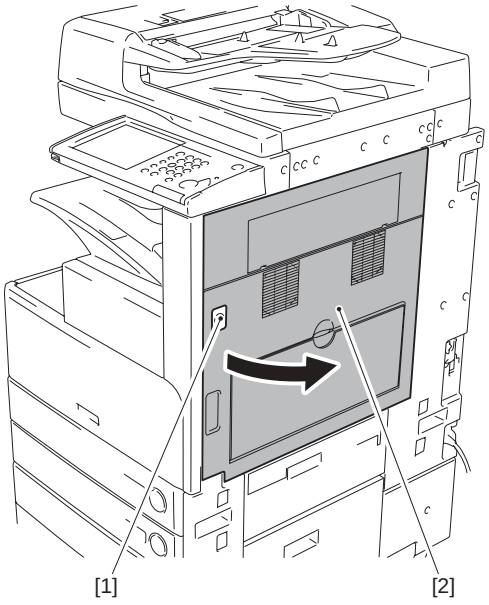
10.5.22 Right Door/Right Cover

10.5.22.1 Releasing the Right Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

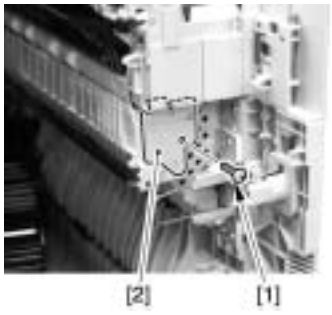
MEMO:
In this equipment, the inside parts can be removed with the double hinge of the right cover released, without the right cover removed.

1) Remove the rear right cover. (page 10-16)Reference[Removing the Rear Right Cover]
2) Press the release button [1] and open the right cover [2].



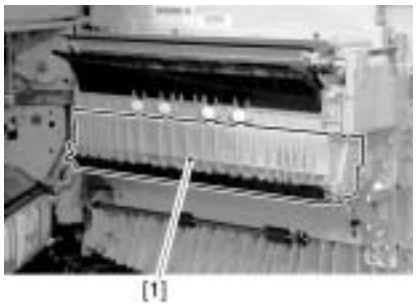
F-10-105

3) Remove the screw [1] and the fixing plate [2].



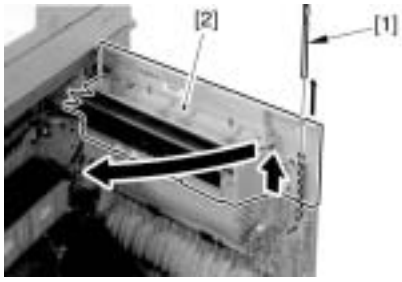
F-10-106

4) Remove the feeder guide [1].



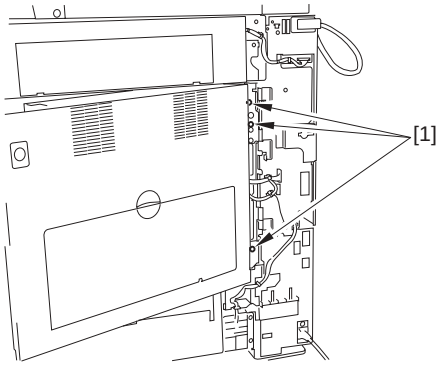
F-10-107

5) Remove the connecting shaft [1] and release the 3 way unit [2] from the right cover.



F-10-108

6) Remove the 3 screws [1] and release the double hinge of the right cover.

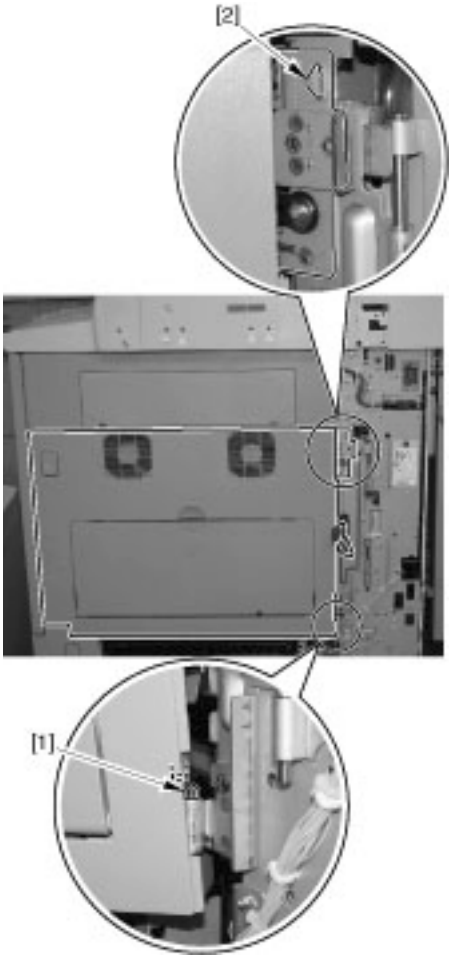


F-10-109

How to Install the Right Cover

1) Fit the hinge [1] at the lower part of the right cover in the boss.

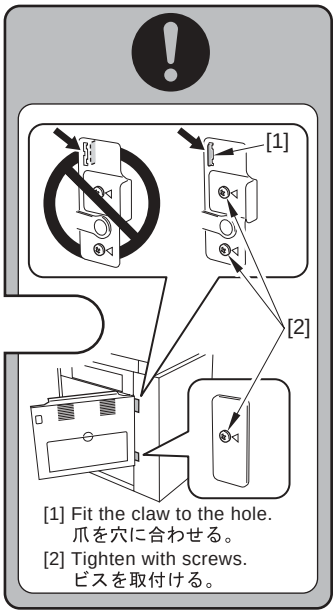
2) Hook the hinge [2] at the upper part of the right cover on the hook at the end plate of the host machine.



Points to Note When Installing the Right Cover

Be sure to fit the claws (protrusion) at the end plate of the host machine in the corresponding holes of the hinges and then tighten the screws.
If not, the right cover may not correctly close.

The double hinge is employed for the right cover of the equipment. Accordingly, cautions must be taken when installing the right cover; and therefore, the following caution label is affixed to the end plate of the host machine.

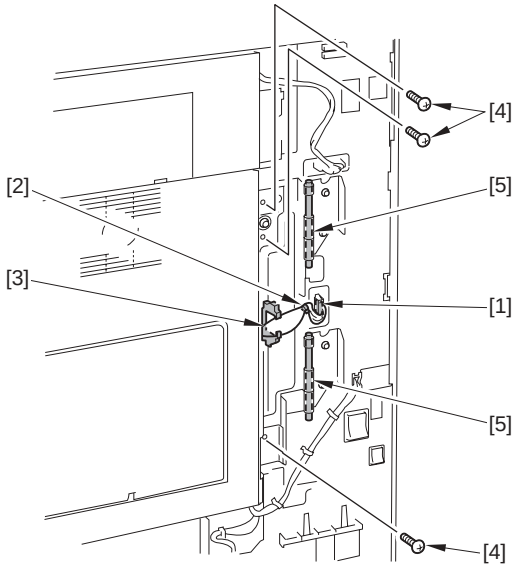


10.5.22.2 Removing the Right Cover

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

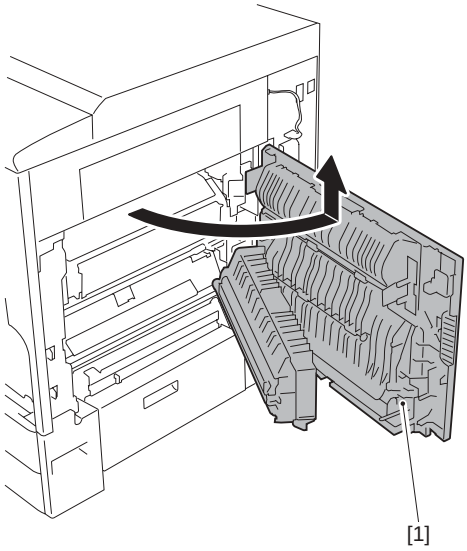
(Perform the same procedure from step 1 to 5 as in 'Releasing the Right Cover'.) (page 10-36)Reference[Releasing the Right Cover]

1) Remove the 2 shafts [5].
- 1 connector [1]
- 1 reuse band [2]
- 1 wire saddles [3]
- 3 screws [4]



F-10-110

2) While releasing the hinge, remove the right cover [1].

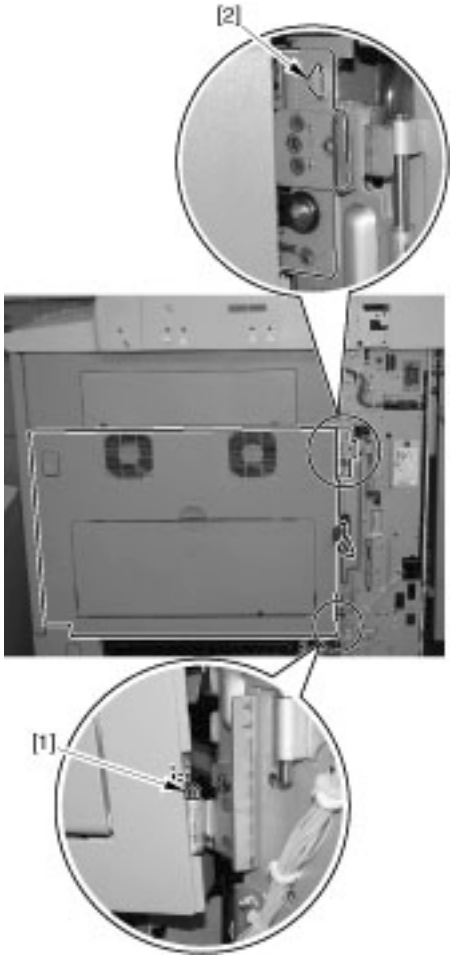


F-10-111

How to Install the Right Cover

1) Fit the hinge [1] at the lower part of the right cover in the boss.

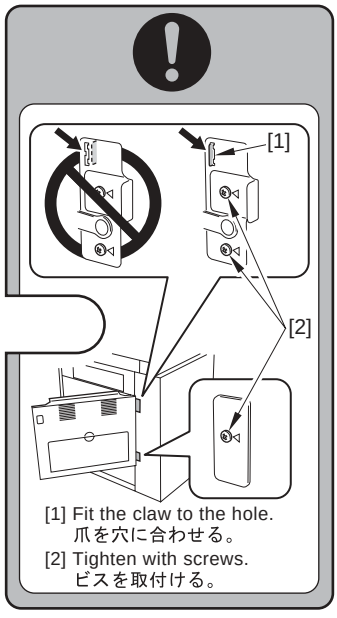
2) Hook the hinge [2] at the upper part of the right cover on the hook at the end plate of the host machine.



⚠ Points to Note When Installing the Right Cover

Be sure to fit the claws (protrusion) at the end plate of the host machine in the corresponding holes of the hinges and then tighten the screws.
If not, the right cover may not correctly close.

The double hinge is employed for the right cover of the equipment. Accordingly, cautions must be taken when installing the right cover; and therefore, the following caution label is affixed to the end plate of the host machine.



10.5.23 Circuit Breaker

10.5.23.1 Before Removing the Circuit Breaker

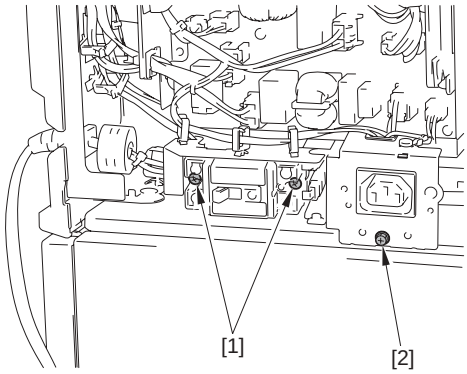
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the upper rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Upper Rear Cover]
2) Remove the lower rear cover. (page 10-17)Reference[Removing the Lower Rear Cover]

10.5.23.2 Removing the Circuit Breaker

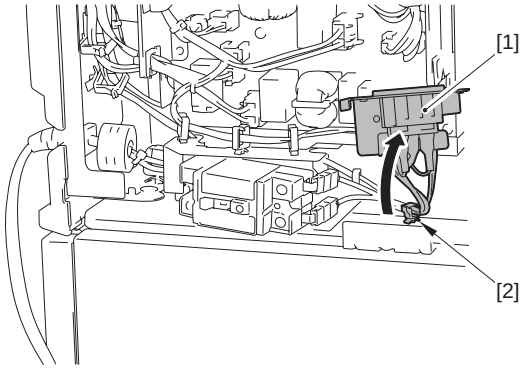
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the 3 screws [1, 2].



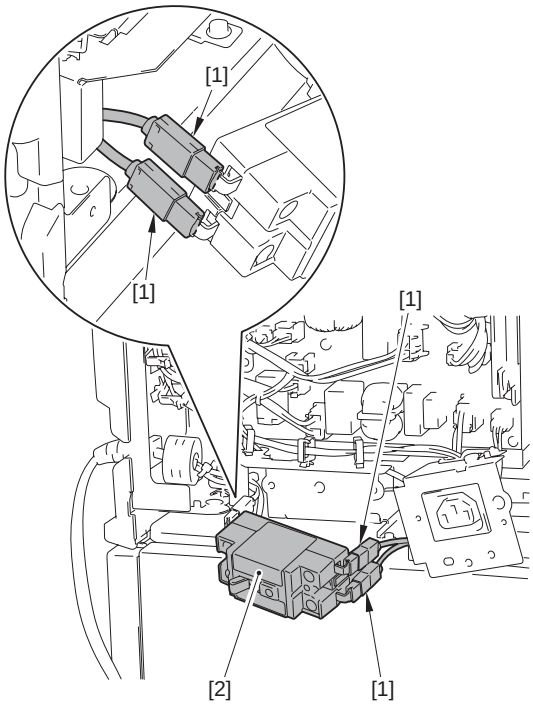
F-10-112

2) Slide the pedestal connector [1] and free the harness from the wire saddle [2].



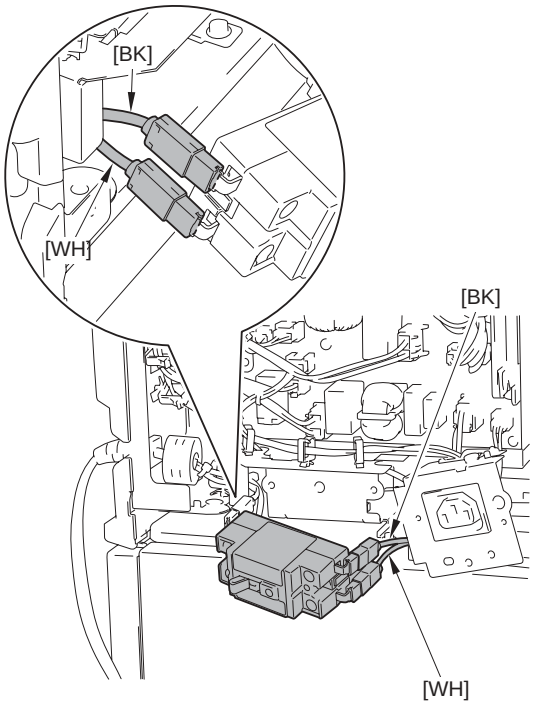
F-10-113

2) Remove the 4 fastons [1] and the circuit breaker [2].



F-10-114

Points to Note At Installation
Be sure to fit the fastons of the appropriate colors and install them as shown in the following figure.



Chapter 11 MEAP

Contents

11.1 MEAP 11-1
11.1.1 Overview 11-1
11.1.2 Changes 11-1
11.1.3 Checking the Operating Environment 11-1
11.1.4 Setting Up the Network 11-4
11.1.5 Login to SMS 11-6
11.1.6 Setting the method to login to SMS 11-8
11.1.7 Checking Application List 11-12
11.1.8 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application 11-12
11.1.9 Checking the Platform Information 11-13
11.1.10 MEAP Specifications 11-14
11.1.11 MFID 11-16
11.1.12 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS 11-18
11.1.13 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application 11-19
11.1.14 Reference (Application System Information) 11-20
11.1.15 Installing an Application 11-21
11.1.16 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager 11-23
11.1.17 Adding a License File 11-24
11.1.18 Disabling a License File (suspending a license) 11-26
11.1.19 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File 11-27
11.1.20 Reusable license 11-29
11.1.21 License for forwarding 11-29
11.1.22 Uninstalling an Application 11-32
11.1.23 Login Service 11-33
11.1.24 Changing Login Services 11-38
11.1.25 Initializing the Password 11-39
11.1.26 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool) 11-40
11.1.27 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive 11-40
11.1.28 MEAP Safe Mode 11-41
11.1.29 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2) 11-42
11.1.30 USB keyboard support 11-44
11.1.31 USB memory related functions(supported outside of Japan and Europe) 11-45
11.1.32 Reference material 11-47
11.1.33 Option for exclusive individual measure 11-48

11.1 MEAP

11.1.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

This chapter describes MEAP-device-specific information and field service work that may be required in the course of MEAP troubleshooting.

11.1.2 Changes

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

■ Changes to configuration of login application

Changes have been made to the configuration of the login application since the iR3245 series. Details of the changes are as follows.

-The Simple Device Login (SDL) and earlier Single Sign On (SSO) features have been merged into the Single Sign On-H (SSO-H) feature.
-Security Agent, which was required at the time of domain authorization, is no longer required.
-Pre-installed login applications for the iR device are now Default Authentication (DA) and SSO-H only.
-SDL has been discontinued. (The same login service as SDL can be operated by SSO and SSO-H local device authentication.)

In accordance with the changes described above, the pre-install applications and those provided on the accessory CD are as follows

T-11-1

	Other than iR3245	**iR3245**
Pre-install	Default Authentication (default) Simple Device Login Single Sign On	Default Authentication (default) Single Sign On-H
Accessory CD	Default Authentication Simple Device Login Single Sign On and Security Agent	Default Authentication Single Sign On-H Single Sign On and Security Agent

■ USB device support

USB device keyboard support
When a USB keyboard is connected, characters can be entered from the displayed software keyboard window. For details of specifications and supported devices, etc., refer to 'USB keyboard support' in this manual.

USB memory support
USB memory functionality is now supported, where scanned data can be converted into an image file (PDF, TIFF, JPEG) and stored on USB memory and printed out from USB memory, etc. For details, refer to 'USB Memory related functions' in this manual.

■ MFID support

In previous devices, in order to judge whether a MEAP application could be run, it was necessary to declare the Device Specification ID (DID) on the MEAP application side. This meant that, when a new model was released, even in cases where the MEAP application did not require any revision, until the MEAP application could support the new model's DID it could not be installed into that device. In order to address this problem, Mandatory Function ID (MFID) is now supported. MFID is not device dependent and declares the functions required by the MEAP application on a function by function basis. This means that, even for devices that have just newly been released, as long as the MFID declared by the MEAP application are supported, existing MEAP applications can be installed into the device without any alterations made to them. For details, refer to 'MFID' in this manual.

11.1.3 Checking the Operating Environment

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

This section lists the requirements on the operating environment for the maintenance.

MEMO:
- Cookies must be enabled for each session.
- Java Script must be enabled in all environments.
- The required web server functions for each server are built into the MEAP device, so there is no need to configure them separately.

For the following operations in the combined environment of Windows XP and Internet Explorer6, Java2 Runtime Environment Standard Edition 1.3.1 or later is required.
- User registration / edit in SSO/SSO-H local device
- Use of SSO remote login in SSO/SSO-H

■ SMS

The following system environments are required in order to enable SMS access.

T-11-2

Operating System	**Supported browser**
Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 7

Operating System	Supported browser
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
Mac OS X 10.3	Safari 1.3.2
Mac OS X 10.4	Safari 2.0.4

■ **Domain authentication management**

In order to use domain authentication in SSO-H, the following sytem environments are required.

- The following Windows servers are installed under Active Directory, and DNS server for name resolution.
  - Microsoft Windows 2000 Server SP4
  - Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP1
  - Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2
- Windows 2000/2003 Domain Name System (DNS) access privileges
- Domain controller access privileges

T-11-3

System environments for administrator and ordinary user

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Mac OS X v10.3	Safari 1.3.2	Sun Java Runtime Environment 5.0
Mac OS X v10.4	Safari 2.0.4	

T-11-4

System environments for administrator and ordinary user (when using IPv6 communication)

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	

T-11-5

Network ports used

Port No.	Application
53	Communication with DNS server (fixed)
88	Kerberos authentication with KDC (Key Distribution Center)
389	Communication with directory service using LDAP (default is 389, may be changed to any port on LDAP service side)

Local Device Authentication Management

For user registration / edit in SSO-H(with Local Authentication), following system requirements must be satisfied.

T-11-6

System environments for administrator and ordinary user

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Mac OS X v10.3	Safari 1.3.2	Sun Java Runtime Environment 5.0
Mac OS X v10.4	Safari 2.0.4	

T-11-7

System environments for administrator and ordinary user (when using IPv6 communication)

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	

MEMO:
- When using a computer with the following OS installed as the client computer, Java Runtime Environment needs to be installed separately.
  - Windows 2000 Professional (Service Pack 4)
  - Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1a or later)
  - Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2
- Refer to the Sun Microsystems homepage for details on how to acquire Java Runtime Environment.

■ **SSO domain authentication environment**

When carrying out domain authentication with the conventional SSO (configured using Security Agent), the Windows server that installs Security Agent (SA) is assured for operation with the following system environments.

T-11-8

Hardware	Memory	256MB or more
	Hard disk	Empty capacity of 15MB or more
	CPU	Processor more than Intel Celeron 800 MHz corresponding
Software	OS	Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP4 Microsoft Windows 2000 Server SP4 Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP1 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2
Corresponding Active Directory		Microsoft Windows 2000 Server SP4 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP1 * Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 *

* Construction of SSO domain environment by using Active Directory of Microsoft Windows Server 2003 needs SA of version 2.0.1 or newer, SSO Login application of version 3.0.0 or newer.

Combination list of the versions of SSO Login application of MEAP device and SA

T-11-9

Product Name of MEAP Device			Version of SSO Login Application	Version of SA							
US	EU	AO		V1.1.0	V1.2.0	V1.3.0	V1.3.1	V2.0.0	V2.0.1	V3.0.1	V3.1.0
iR5020/ iR5020i/ iR6020/ iR6020i	iR5020N/ iR5020i/ iR6020N/ iR6020i	iR5020i/ iR6020i	V1.1.0	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR2220i/ iR2220N/ iR3320i/ iR3320N	iR2220i/ iR2220N/ iR3320i/ iR3320N	iR2220i/ iR3320i	V1.1.0	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR C3220/ iR C2620	iR C3220/ iR C2620	iR C3220/ iR C2620	V1.1.1	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR 2270/ iR 2870/ iR 3035/ iR 3045	iR 2270 / iR 2870/ iR 3035/ iR 3045	iR 2270 /2870/3035/3045	V1.1.2	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
			V2.2.7	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	V1.1.3	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
			V2.2.7	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
iR 5570/ iR 6570	iR 5570 / 6570	iR 5570 / 6570	V2.0.0, V2.2.9	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
iR C3170U/ iR C3170i	iR 3170C/ iR 3170Ci/ iR C2570/ iR C2570i	iR C3170/ iR C3170i/ iR C2570/ iR C2570i	V2.2.6	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
iR C5870U/ iR C6870U	iR 5870C/ iR 5870Ci/ iR 6870C/ iR 6870Ci	iR C5870/ iR C5870i/ iR C6870/ iR C6870i	V2.4.0	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095 Printer/ iR7105	iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095 P/ iR7105	iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095P/ iR7105	V2.5.0	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
			V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C

Product Name of MEAP Device			Version of SSO Login Application	Version of SA							
US	EU	AO		V1.1.0	V1.2.0	V1.3.0	V1.3.1	V2.0.0	V2.0.1	V3.0.1	V3.1.0
iR C5180i/ iR C4580i/ iR C4080i	iR C4080/ iR C4080N/ iR C4580/ iR C4580N/ iR C5180/ iR C5180N	iR C4080/ iR C4080N/ iR C4580/ iR C4580N/ iR C5180/ iR C5180N	V3.0.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
			V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
imagePRESS C1	imagePRESS C1	imagePRESS C1	V3.1.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
			V3.9.1	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR C2880/ iR C3380	iR C2880 / C3380	iR C2880 / C3380	V3.2.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	V3.4.1	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	V3.5.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR C5185	iR C5185	iR C5185	V3.6.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
			V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C7000VP	V3.8.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
-	iR 3180C/ iR3180Ci	iR C3180i / iR C2580i	V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR 5050	-	-	V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR C5058/ C5068/ C6880i	iR C5880/ C5880i/ C6880/ C6880i	iR C5880/ C6880/ C6880i	V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
-	CLC5151/ CLC4040	-	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR C3480/ C3080/ C2550	iR C3580/ C3080/ C2380	iR C3580/ C3080/ C2550	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C
iR 3225/ iR 3230/ iR 3235/ iR 3245	iR 3225/iR 3235/ iR 3245	iR 3225/ iR 3230/ iR 3235/ iR 3245	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C

A = SSO basic function support
B = SSO basic function + Multi domain function + LLS cache function support
C = SSO basic function + Multi domain function + LLS cache function support + Server 2003 Active Directory support

MEMO:
- It must improve in the version of SSO Login application and version of SA when you want to use the function B or C.
- The right of access to the domain controller and the right of access to the Windows 2003 DNS are necessary, when the domain authentication is used with SSO.

Important information when using conventional SSO
- The device using SSO authentication and the Windows server on which Security Agent is installed must exists in the same domain.
- In the case that Security Agent has been installed in Windows XP Professional SP2, Windows Server 2003 SP1/Server 2003 R2 and Windows Firewall is set enabled, Security Agent (SA.exe) needs to be added as an exceptional program of Windows Firewall. If not being designated a directory of installation, SA.exe is stored in the following directory. C:\Program Files\Canon\SSOPackage\SecurityAgent
- In the case that Active Directory has been constructed in Windows Server 2003 SP1/Server 2003 R2 and Windows Firewall is set enabled, TCP port '5678' used by Security Agent needs to be added in Windows Firewall.

Browser
The following combinations of operations are guaranteed for the access from Web browser to MEAP device.

T-11-10

OS	Supported Browser
Microsoft Windows 98SE Microsoft Windows NT Workstation 4.0 SP6a	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows ME	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP3, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1,
Microsoft Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
Microsoft Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7

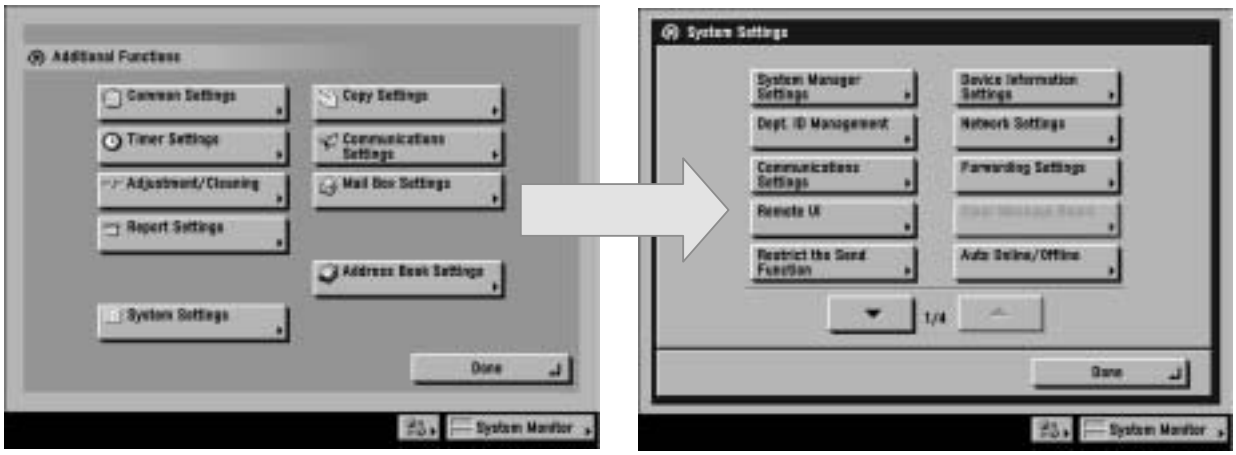
11.1.4 Setting Up the Network

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

To allow a MEAP device to accept accesses through the network, for example you operate a device with SMS, the On option must be selected on Use HTTP screen. The option is selected by default. The setting can be changed on the control panel of the MEAP device.

1) Make the following selections: [Additional Functions] button > [System Settings] button> (Down-arrow) button.

MEMO:
If the System manager ID and system password have already been assigned, ID Entry dialog appears after System Settings button is pressed. Enter the system manager ID and the password, and click ID key to go into System Management Mode.



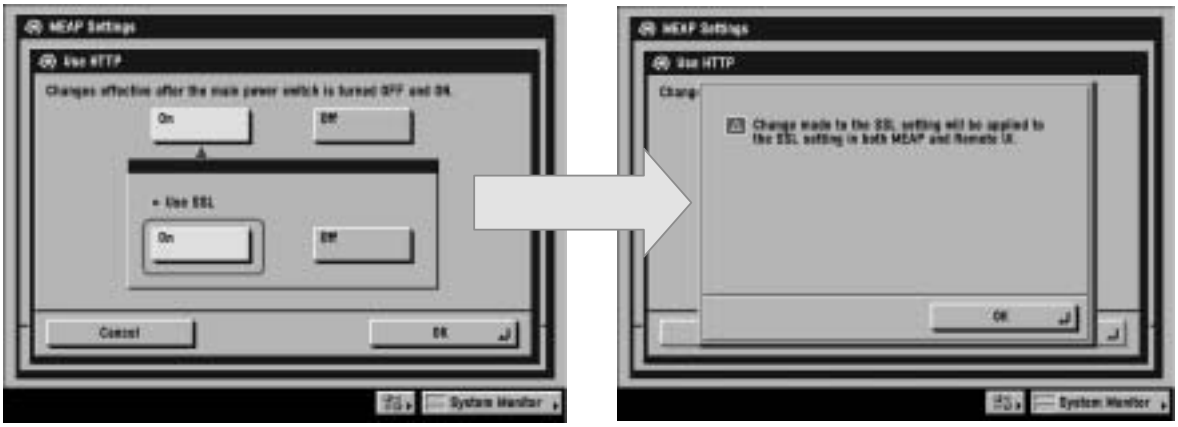
F-11-1

2) Make the following selections: [MEAP Settings] button > [Use HTTP] button> [On] button > [OK] button .

F-11-2

MEMO:
When using SSL, set [Use SSL] ON.
(This setting is also applied to the SSL setting of RUI. Same is true in the case of setting SSL ON on the side of RUI.)

Setting [Use SSL] ON displays the message dialogue 'Changes effective after the main power switch is turned OFF and ON' . Press [OK].



3) Press Done button as many times as necessary until the Basic screen appears.

4) Turn off the device's main power; wait for 10 sec, and then turn the power back on.

- The setting [Use HTTP] is not actually enabled/disabled until you have turned off and then on the device's main power switch.
- You cannot make a connection through a proxy server. If a proxy server is in use, enter the IP address of the MEAP device in the Exceptions field for the browser. Open Internet Options dialog of Internet Explorer and select Connections tab, LAN Settings button, Use a proxy server option, and Advanced button of Proxy server group. Proxy Settings dialog will opens. The Exceptions field is in the dialog. As network settings vary among environments, consult the network administrator.
- If Cookie and JavaScript are not enabled in the Web browser, you will not be able to use SMS.
- To type text using the Web browser, use the characters compatible with the MEAP device's touch panel display. The MEAP device may not properly recognize some characters.
- When [se SSL] is made available, it is necessary to set the key and the certificate necessary for the SSL communication. Set the key and the certificate by SSL with [Certificate Settings] that exists in [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] on the iR device.

11.1.5 Login to SMS

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

SMS login may be done by entering a password for authentication, or by authentication via the Remote Login Service (RLS) login window (RLS authentication). Settings can be changed to allow either only one of these methods or both of them.

F-11-3

SMS login window (password authentication) RLS login window (user name/ password authentication)

T-11-11

Login method	Authentication method	Authentication service name	Users who may log in
Password authentication	Password authentication	SMS Installer Service(Password Authentication)	Users who know the SMS login password
RLS login	SSO-H/SSO(SDL also possible)	SMS Installer Service(Remote Login Service Authentication)	Users registered as administrators with SSO-H/ SSO

MEMO:
If Default Authentication is selected as the device authentication method, 'RLS Authentication' is not selectable as SMS Login method. Also, if 'RLS Authentication' is selected, the device authentication method (Default Authentication, SDL, SSO) cannot be changed.

■ Login by Password Authentication
In the SMS login window, enter the password for authentication. Only one password can be registered with SMS. The login procedures are as follows.

1) Access SMS from the browser of a PC on the same network as the MEAP device. The URL is as follows.
URL: http://<MEAP Device IP address>:8000/sms/
Ex.) http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/

MEMO:
- The default password is "MeapSmsLogin." (The password is case-sensitive.)
- When you want to change the display original language, change in the box in the right of the screen. This setting is not affect by the setting of the language of the device.

F-11-4

2) If the wrong password is entered, the following window is displayed. The user's system administrator may have changed the password, so confirm the password with the system administrator. Note that there is no special password for service.

F-11-5

■ **Login by RLS Authentication**

Login without using the SMS login window but by entering the user ID and password for authentication in the RLS (Remote Login Service) window. The user information (user name and password) used is the information for domain authentication or local device authentication. The login procedures are as follows.

1) Access SMS by RLS Authentication from the PC browser on the same network as the MEAP device.
URL: http://<IP address of MEAP device>:8000/sms/rls/
Ex.) http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/rls

MEMO:
- When the device authentication method used is domain authentication, enter the user name, password and login destination registered with Active Directory and then click 'Log In'.
- If the authentication method used is local device authentication, enter the user name, password and login destination registered in the device and click 'Log In'.
- When using SDL as the login service, enter the user information registered in the device, as per local device authentication.
- Only the following users may us SMS via RLS.
  - In the case of domain authentication, users belonging to the Canon Peripheral Admins Group.
  - In the case of local device authentication, users registered with Administrator privileges.

In the case the device authentication method is SSO

F-11-6

11.1.6 Setting the method to login to SMS

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The SMS login method settings are done by setting the login Start/ Stop via the other login method. In other words, the password authentication Start/ Stop setting is done by first logging in with RLD authentication, and the RLS authentication Start/ Stop setting is done by first logging in with password authentication. The Start/ Stop combinations of the two login methods are as follows.

T-11-12

	Start RLS Authentication	**Stop RLS Authentication**
Start Password Authentication	Login available with either method	Login available only with
Stop Password Authentication	Login available only with RLS Authentication	Setting unavailable

If only login via RLS is programmed, login may be disabled for the following reasons.
- authentication server is down
- network problem, no communication with authentication server

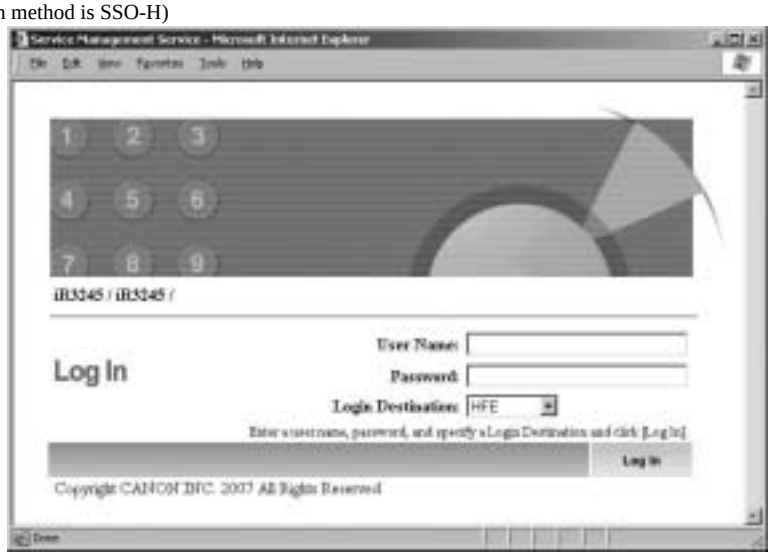
In the event of either of these cases, try the following.
1. If local device authentication is active, try logging in with local device authentication.
2. If only domain authentication is active, launch in MEAP safe mode from the device service mode.

After launching in MEAP safe mode, the Default Authentication will become active, and you will be able to login to SMS with password authentication.
After logging into SMS, set the password authentication login to ON (active) and restore the device from MEAP safe mode to normal mode. Until the problem blocking authentication is resolved, log into SMS with password authentication.

■ **Setting for login by Password Authentication**
The procedures for changing the password authentication Start/ stop settings are as follows.

1) Access SMS by RLS Authentication from the PC browser on the same network as the MEAP device.
URL: http://<IP address of MEAP device>:8000/sms/rls/
Ex.) http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/rls

Login screen (In case authentication method is SSO-H)



F-11-7

2) Select [System Management] tab > [Utility] tab > [Application Management Function] tab.

F-11-8

3) Enter a check mark against the SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) radio button and click on either Start or Stop. Check that the status has changed accordingly.

F-11-9

4) Logout once and login again to check to see that the setting is applied properly.
When password authentication has been set to Start, the password entry window will now be displayed. If password authentication has been set to Stop, when an attempt is made to log in, the error message shown below will be displayed and login will not be possible.

Login error screen

F-11-10

Password authentication started　　Password authentication stopped

■ Setting for login by RLS Authentication

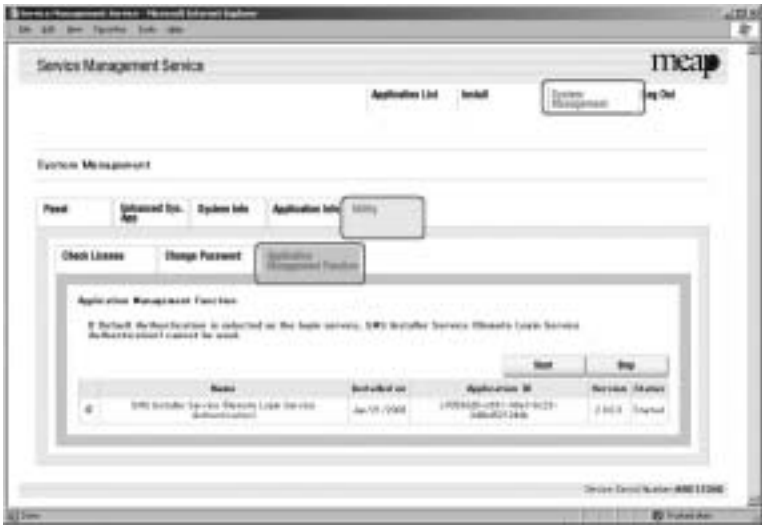
The procedures for changing the RLS authentication Start/ Stop settings are as follows.

1) In order to make a setting for Login by RLS Authentication, you need to Login by Password Authentication.
URL: http://<IP address of MEAP device>:8000/sms/rls/
Ex.) http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/rls

Login screen by Password Authentication

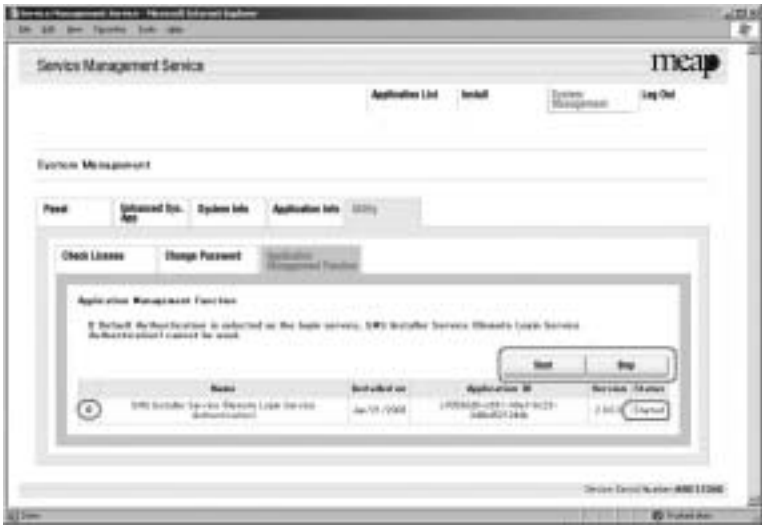
F-11-11

2) Select [System Management] tab > [Utility] tab > [Application Management Function] tab.



F-11-12

3) Enter a check mark against the SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication) radio button and click on either Start or Stop. Check that the status has changed accordingly.



F-11-13

4) Log out and then log in again and access via the RLS authentication login window.
When RLS authentication has been set to Start, the RLS entry window will now be displayed. If RLS authentication has been set to Stop, when an attempt is made to log in, the error message shown below will be displayed and login will not be possible.

F-11-14

RLS authentication started

RLS authentication stopped

11.1.7 Checking Application List

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The page of **Application List** is designed to show resources arranged according to applications. The page gives you a good idea of how much of the device's memory is being used by the applications (both in absolute and relative terms) as well as how much memory still remains. Check this page before adding an application.

The information is collected from the manifest (headers) - in other words, the size of a resource represents the size as it is declared by the application in question, not necessarily the size of resources actually used by the application. The items of information include the following:
- hard disk
- memory
- thread
- socket
- file descriptor

You will not be able to install an application if the size of the remaining memory falls short of the size declared by the application. Moreover, the specifications have been designed so that an application will not be able to start up if there is a shortage of memory for any of the foregoing items (i.e., memory, thread, socket, file descriptor). To find out if there is enough memory, go through the following steps:

1) Log in to SMS.

2) Click Application List tab.

3) Check the displayed information:

a. Information on Applications
- Name (of the application)
- Installation (date)
- Application ID
- Status
- License
- Resources Used

b. Resource Information
- Amount Used
- Remaining
- Percent Used

F-11-15

11.1.8 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

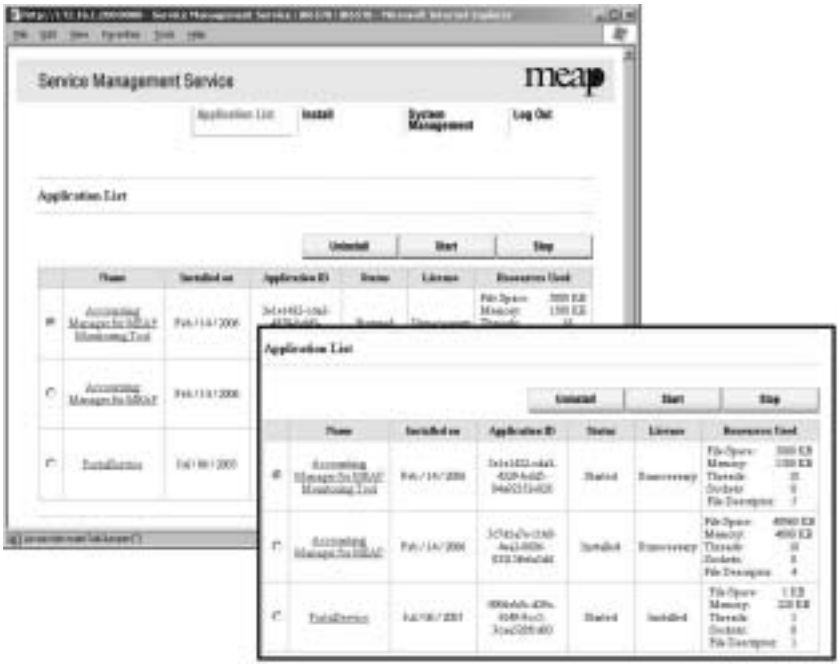
1) Log in to the SMS. (Refer to 'Login to SMS' in this manual.)

2) Click [Application List]. (If the Application List is already being displayed, this operation is not necessary.)

3) Click the radio button of the MEAP application in question, and click [Start] or [Stop].

F-11-16

4) Check to see that the status of the MEAP application in question is either "Started" or "Stopped."



F-11-17

11.1.9 Checking the Platform Information

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

You can check the versions of MEAP Contents, MEAP Specifications, and Java Virtual Machine of the device.

> ⚠
> Some applications may not be installed to some MEAP devices of specific specifications. (See 'MEAP Specifications').

1) Log in to SMS.

2) Click [System Management] > [System Info] tab.

F-11-18

MEMO:
iR3245 was made MFID enabled, so MFID information was added to the platform information. (For details, see 'MFID' in this manual.)

11.1.10 MEAP Specifications

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

What is MEAP Specifications (MEAP Spec Version)?
MEAP Specifications is one of the information required to judge whether MEAP applications can be operated or not. With MEAP Specifications, you can prevent an application that uses a specific function of device from being installed onto the device that does not have the function.

About Name
MEAP Specification is shown as 'MEAP Specifications' in the screen to check the version on the side of device that supports MEAP (counter confirmation button) and MEAP platform (SMS). On the other hand, in the manifest file of MEAP application, it is shown as 'MeapSpecVersion' (described in the same way in the SDK document)
(Note) 'MEAP Specifications' hereafter in this document.

Mechanism
MEAP platform judges whether MEAP applications can be operated on it using on the 2 information below:
- Device Specification ID
- MEAP Specifications

Device Specification ID shows information such as the original functions of MFP (including print, scan, and copy), and one that differs by model such as maximum copy number, thus each model has a different ID. (It is easy to determine the IDs for this reason.) MEAP application declares 1 or more Device Specification ID required for its execution. Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the models declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in (using) SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of Device Specification ID is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the ID declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

Meanwhile, MEAP Specifications shows other information than defined by Device Specification ID above, including network and security. Thus each model does not always have the same version.

MEAP application declares 1 or more MEAP Specifications required for its execution. Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the environments declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of MEAP Specifications is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the version declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

MEAP Spec Version for each model

T-11-13

Product Name	USA	EUR	OCE	SPL	KOR	CCNTW	Initial MEAPSpecVer	MEAPSpecVer after Firmware Upgrade
iR 6020	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		1	1. 2 (System v54.xx later)
iR 5020	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR 3320	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		1	1. 2 (System v33.xx later)
iR 2220	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR C3220	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		1, 2, 3	
iR C2620	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR 2870	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5	5, 6, 7 (System v30.xx later)
iR 4570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 2270	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR 3570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR85+	Y	Y	-	-	-		5	5, 6, 7 (System v10.xx later)
iR 8070	Y	Y	Y	-	-			5, 6, 7, 17(System v15.XX later)
iR 105+	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 9070	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR 6570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6	5, 6, 7, 9 (System v20.xx later)
iR 5570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			5, 6, 7, 9, 17(System v38.XX later)
iR 5070	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR C3170	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7	
iR C2570	-	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 7105	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v51.xx later)
iR 7095	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 7086	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR 7095P	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR C6870	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7	
iR C5870	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR C5180	Y	-	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v52.xx later)
CLC5151	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4580	Y	-	Y	Y	Y			
CLC4040	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4080	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
imagePRESS C1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11	
iR C3380	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18(System v50.xx later)
iR C2880	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 3025	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 3045	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 3035	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 3030	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 5075	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v20.xx later)
iR 5065	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 5055	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C5185	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15	
iR C5180	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v50.xx later)
CLC5151	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4580 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
CLC4040 (Ver.up)	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4080 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR C3380 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18(System v50.xx later)
iR C2880 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
imagePRESS C7000 VP	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
imagePRESS C6000	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
imagePRESS C6000 VP	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR 5075 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v20.xx later)
iR5065 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y		
iR5055 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y		
iR5050	Y	-	-	-	-		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	

Product Name	USA	EUR	OCE	SPL	KOR	CCNTW	Initial MEAPSpecVer	MEAPSpecVer after Firmware Upgrade
iR 7105 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v51.xx later)
iR 7095 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 7086 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR 7095P (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR C3180	-	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	
iR C2580	-	-	-	-	Y			
iR C6880	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	
iR C5068	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR C5880	-	Y	Y	-	-			
iR C5058	Y	-	-	-	-			
imagePRESS C1(Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18(System v40.xx later)
iR C5185(Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18,19	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17,18,19(System v75.xx later)
iR C5180(Ver.up)	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		
CLC5151(Ver.up)	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4580 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
CLC4040 (Ver.up)	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4080 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR C3380 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18,19	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17,18,19(System v76.xx later)
iR C2880 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C3580	-	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C3480	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR C3080	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C2550	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C2380	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR3245	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18,19	
iR3235	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR3230	Y	-	Y	-	Y	Y		
iR3225	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y		

* Due to the change in I/F specifications, these models support '5' only.

T-11-14

MEAP Spec Version

MEAP Spec Version	Description
1	MEAP basic function
2	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and SSL/TSL + Proxy
3	[Reserved]
5	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and CPCA V2 + ERS (Error Recovery Service) + New SSL/TSL
6	[Reserved]
7	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and Compact PDF + OCR PDF(Text Searchable) + USB-Host(Buffering of Interrupt Transfer)
9	[Reserved]
10	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and USB-Host(Exception + ClearFeature + SetFeature + HotPlug) + WINS address acquisition using MIBAgent + TimerService + SSL client authentication
11	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and AMS
13	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and J2ME1.1 Support + Encrypted PDF + Trace and smooth PDF + CTK2.0
14	Device signature PDF
15	IMI + ERS (API addition for IMI)
17	Acquiring images of JBIG format
18	Parsing XML documents (XML parser)
19	Enhancement of IMI function (IMI Version1.2 series)
27	Symbols that can be used with MibAgent added. (symbols for IPv6 address acquisition)
29	IMI API added (IMI version 1.2.1 enabled)

11.1.11 MFID

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

What is MFID?
In earlier MEAP applications, operation was clearly limited to those models whose Device Specification ID (DID) had been declared. However, this method means that, when a new model is launched, MEAP applications cannot be installed until the DID declaration described above is added.
In order to address this problem, the platforms (MEAP) are classified according to the functions provided by the MEAP applications and MEAP Function ID (MFID) allocated to the functions.
The device declares the MFID that correspond to the functions that are mounted in it, and the MEAP application declares the platform functions that it needs in order to operate to the MEAP application manifest file, in an MFID Boolean expression (OC: Operation Condition).

This means that existing MEAP applications can now be installed into new models without being altered.
MFID display sample

F-11-19

T-11-15

MFID definitions

MFID	Overview	Correspondence situation of iR3245 series
MB10	MEAP basic functions (Java VM, OSGi, etc.)	A
UIM10	UI functions (VGA size)	A
LO10	Login function	A
IMB10	Imaging functions (BW printer)	A
PR10	IMI (printer functions)	A
SC10	IMI (scanner functions)	A
SD10	IMI (Send functions)	A
FAX10	IMI (FAX functions)	A
DEV10	IMI (basic functions)	A

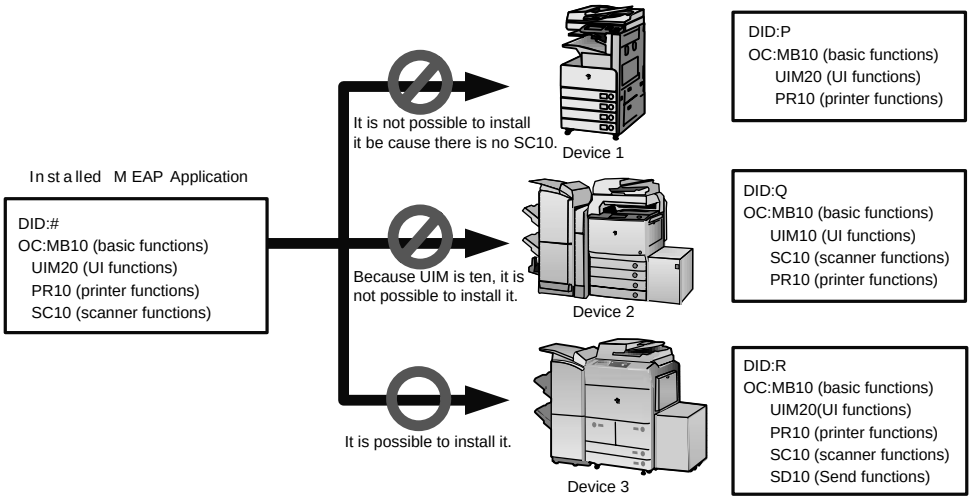
A:Available N/A:Not available

MEMO:
Applications using API other than those defined cannot use MFID.

Supported devices
Devices supported by MFID are as follows.

1) Colour devices
None

2)BW devices
iR3235



F-11-20

11.1.12 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Log in to SMS.

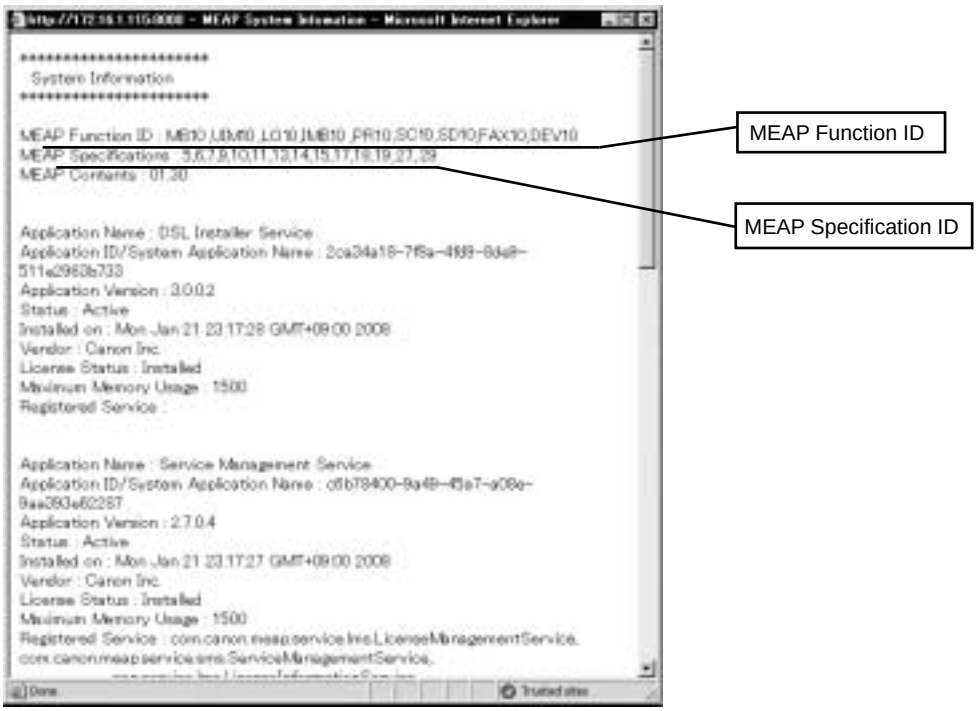
2) Click [System Management] tab.

3) On System Management screen, click [System Info] tab.

4) Click [Details] button.

F-11-21

5) When the following status information of MEAP applications (including the system application) appears in a different window, copy and paste all information to create an attachment (text information) for preparing a problem report. You can also use this function whenever you want to check the status of any particular application.



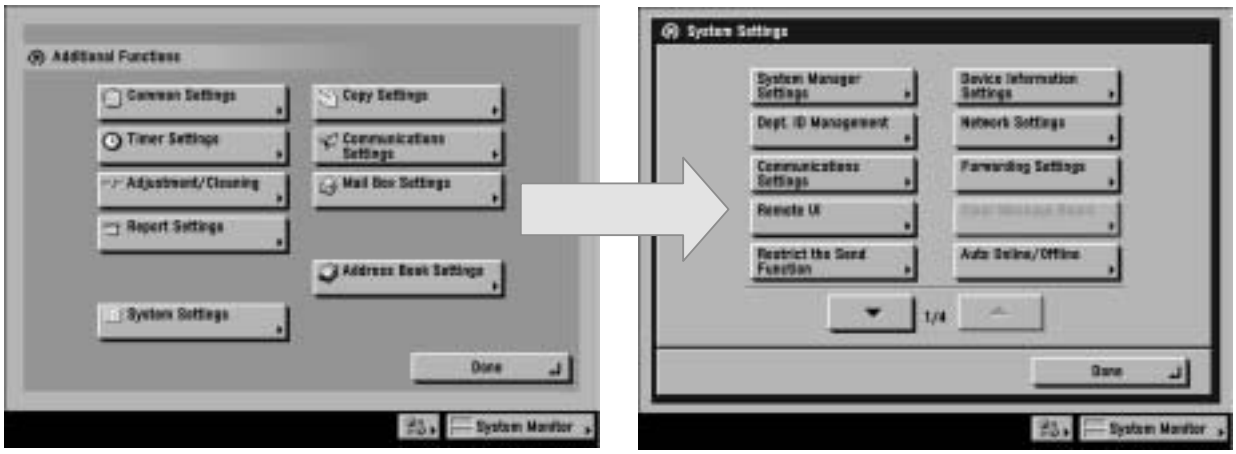
F-11-22

11.1.13 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Make the following selections: [Additional Functions] button > [System Settings] button> the **down-arrow** button.

MEMO:
If the System manager ID and system password have already been assigned, ID Entry dialog appears after System Settings button is pressed. Enter the system manager ID and the password, and click ID key.



F-11-23

2) Make the following selections: [MEAP Settings] button > [Print System Information] button > [Yes] button.

F-11-24

3) Press [Done] button as many times as necessary until the Basic screen appears.

4) Turn off the MEAP device's main power; wait for 10 sec, and then turn the power back on.

The previous version of printing function for MEAP application status information (system information) was depended on PDL. However, current version of function is not dependent on PDL. So even device for which PDL is not available can print it. (Since iRC3220)

11.1.14 Reference (Application System Information)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

You can check all applications installed to the device at a glance with the MEAP application status information and, thus, it is important for you to provide it when you are reporting a problem.
The following items of information will be indicated or printed for individual applications:

MEMO:
The system information shown on the screen and the system information printed in the MEAP device's user mode are exactly the same.

T-11-16

Application System Information

```
Application Name: C-Cabinet Gateway for MEAP
Application ID/System Application Name: 03a46668-63e4-4636-9cbb-492b6cef05d5
Application Version: 1.0.0
Status: Resolved
Installed on: Tue Oct 21 14:00:11 GMT+09:00 2003
Vendor : Canon Inc.
License Status : Installed
Maximum Memory Usage : 1024
Registered Service :
```

Application Name
It is the name (bundle-name) declared in a statement within the application program. It may not necessarily be identical to the name of the program.

Application ID/System Application Name
In the case of a system application, it will be the file name. If a general application, it is the application ID (application-ID) declared in a statement within the application program. Within the device, the applications are set apart by means of their application IDs.

Application Version
It is the version of the application (bundle-version) declared in a statement within the application program.

Status
It indicates the status of the application in question; specifically,
Installed: the application has been installed.
Active: the application is being in use.
Resolved: the application is at rest.

Installed On
It indicates the date on which the application was installed.

Vendor
It is the name of the vendor that developed the application, and is the name (bundle-vendor) declared in a statement within the application program.

License Status
It indicates the status of the license; specifically,
None: no license is needed.
Not Installed: no license has been installed.
Installed: the appropriate license has been installed.
Invalid: the license has been invalidated.
Overlimt: the license has been used beyond its permitted limit.

License Expires After
It indicates the date after which the license expires. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

License Upper Limit
It indicates the limit imposed on individual counter readings. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

Counter Value
It is the current counter reading of a specific counter. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

Maximum Memory Usage
It indicates the maximum amount of memory that the application uses. It is the amount (maximum memory usage) declared in a statement within the application program, and is expressed in kilobytes.

Registered Service
It is a list of services that have been registered by the application with the MEAP framework. Some services may not have printable data.

11.1.15 Installing an Application

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- To install an application, the user needs to use the following URL when accessing the license control system to obtain a license file. In doing so, he/she needs to register the license access number of the application and the serial number of the device.
http://www.canon.com/meap/
-Maximum 20 applications can be installed (In iR5160/iR6060/iR2250/iR2850/iR3350, one is the portal service already installed at the time of shipment from the factory)
-The following are the resource amounts assured for each device in the operation of one MEAP application. These values are for reference purpose only, therefore the unused resource of SMS needs to be checked at the time of installation of MEAP application.
The displayed values of SMS resource may be larger than the followings since the actual values vary according to the log-in service (authentication function) selected by users and the configuration (future models).

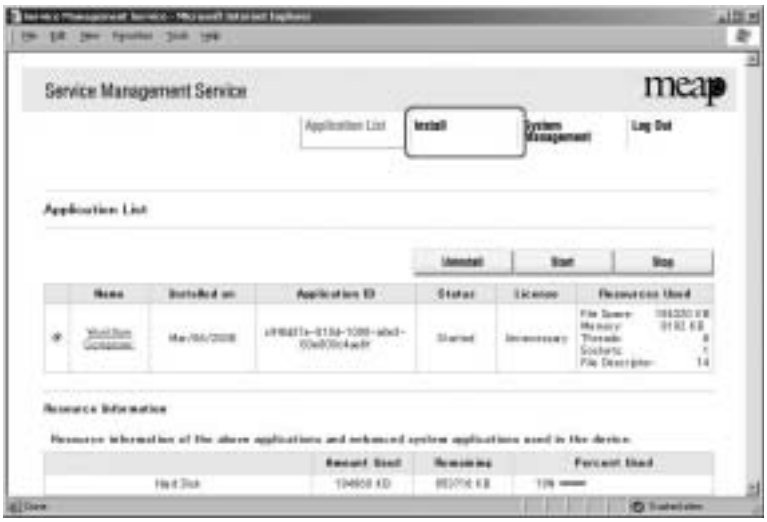
T-11-17

Product Name		HDD	Memory	Thread	Socket	File Description
iR5160/iR6060/iR2250/iR2850/iR3350		300MB	20MB	128	48	42
iRC2620/iRC3220		400MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR2270/iR2870/iR3570/iR4570/iR8570/iR7270/iR6570/iR5570		400MB	20MB	128	48	42
iRC3170/iRC2570		400MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR 3180C/3180Ci, iR C3180i,iR C2580i		1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iR7086/iR7095/iR7095P/iR7095Printer/ iR7105	Initial MEAP Spec Ver	400MB	20MB	128	48	42
	Change Information	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iRC4080/iRC4580/iRC5180	Initial MEAP Spec Ver	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
	Change Information	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
imagePRESS C1	Initial MEAP Spec Ver	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
	Change Information	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iRC2880/iRC3380		1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR3025/iR3035/iR3045		400MB	20/30MB*1	128	48	42
iR 5050		1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iR5055/iR5065/iR5075		1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR C5185		1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
imagePRESS C7000VP		1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR C5058/ iR C5068/ iR C5880/ iR C5880i/ iR C6880/ iR C6880i		1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
CLC5151/ CLC4040		1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iR C2380/ iR C2550/ iR C3080/ iR C3480/ iR C3580		1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iR3245 /iR3235 /iR3230 /iR3225		1024MB	32/64MB*2	128	128	128

*1 20MB for 512MB model, 30MB for 768MB model.
*2 Memory is normally 32MB, increasing to 64MB with memory extension.
- As for memory, check the available resource when starting up the application. For other resources other than memory, check them when installing.
- Some applications call for a specific set of conditions for installation. For details, see the User's Guide that comes with the individual applications.

1) Long on to SMS.

2) Click [Install] tab.

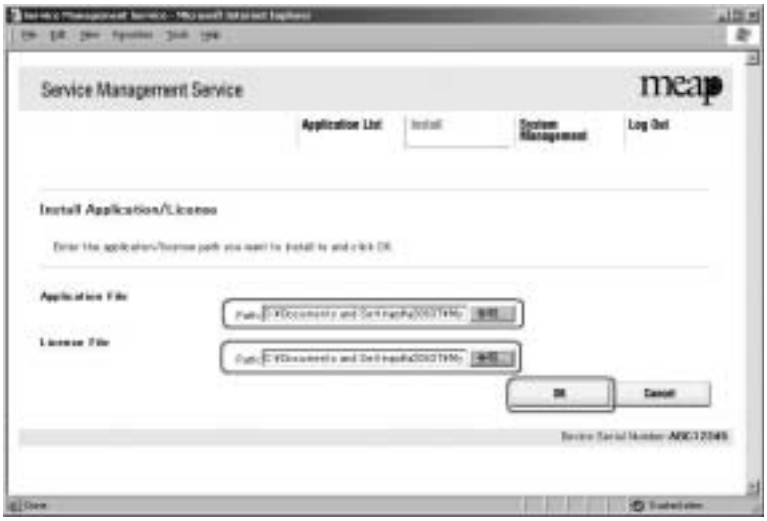


F-11-25

3) Check that **Install Application/License** page appears.

4) Click [Browse] button, and select the application file and the license file of the application; then, click [OK] button.

MEMO:
Application File: identified by the extension "jar".
License File: identified by the extension "lic".



F-11-26

5) See the message "Installing...Please wait a moment."

F-11-27

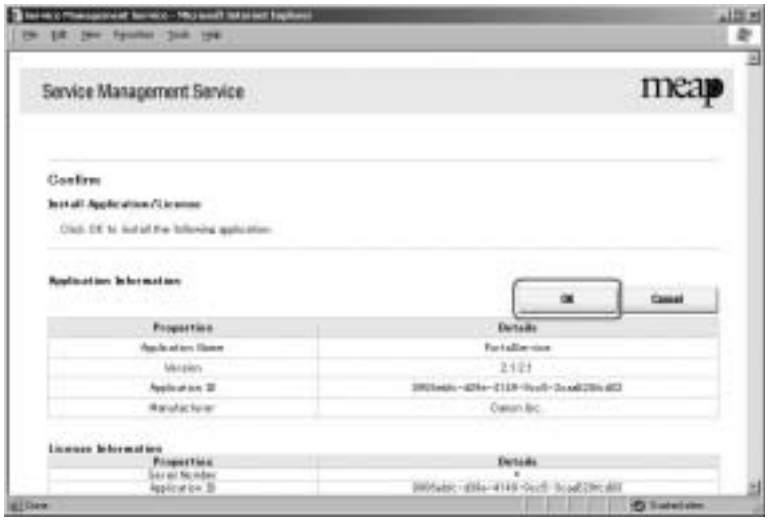
- You cannot install only the license.

- You will not be able to install the application without using the appropriate license. Be sure to select its license file.

- If you are adding a license to an existing application, see 1.3.10 Adding a License File.

- If you are updating an existing application, stop the application; then, install the new application or its license file. You will not be able to update an application while it is running.

6) Check the contents of the **Confirm** page; then, click [OK] button.



F-11-28

7) Some applications show a screen to indicate the terms of agreement. Read the terms, and click [OK].

8) Check the message "Installing...Please wait a moment." appears, beginning the installation.

9) Check **Application List** page appears when the installation is completed.

To use the application that you have just installed, you must make sure that the application status is Started.

11.1.16 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Outline
MEAP Enterprise Service Manager is the PC application utility to perform batch installation, unistallation and management of MEAP application and license files required for installation of applications, on several MEAP-available devices on network.

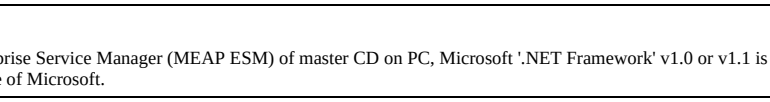
The main targets are system administrators in big companies and CANON service engineers (end users of devices do not use).
It is used when customized applications delivered to a certain company needs to be managed collectively.
Previous SMS can manage only one device at a time. This utility reduces the management cost of devices and TCO.

Major functions
Discovery of devices available for MEAP
Discovery of devices available for MEAP on network
Storage of the serial number list of discovered device
Installation of application and license file
Management of application (starting / stopping)
Uninstallation of application
Others

System configuration
MEAP Enterprise Service Manager (MEAP ESM) functions in combination with DIS (DSL Installer Service) installed on the MEAP platform side of the device.
This system can be used only for MEAP-available device with appropriate DIS installed.

(*) When using this system on the firmware for version upgrading on October 2003 or older, version upgrading of the system software on the field device is necessary.

The versions available for ESM are as follows:
iR5160 / iR6020: System v54.02 or newer, MEAP Contents v53.07 or newer
iR2220 / iR3320: System v33.01 or newer, MEAP Contents v33.02 or newer
Other products: Available from the initial version

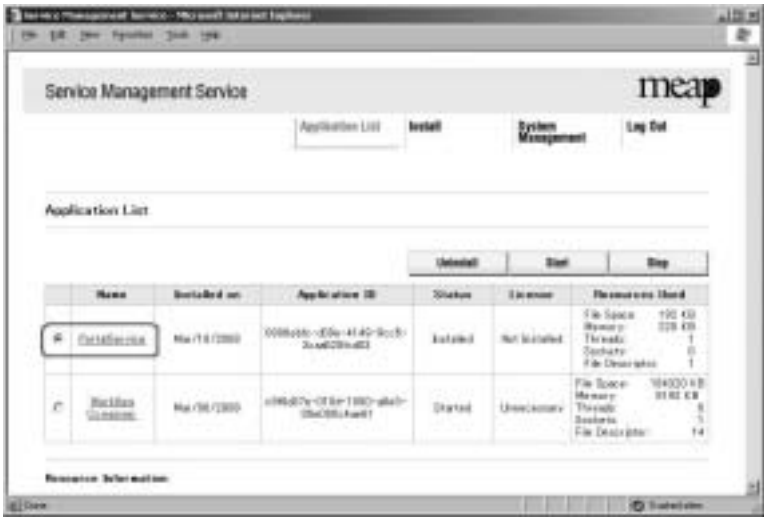

When installing MEAP Enterprise Service Manager (MEAP ESM) of master CD on PC, Microsoft '.NET Framework' v1.0 or v1.1 is necessary. The user should download it from the Web site of Microsoft.

11.1.17 Adding a License File

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Log on to SMS.

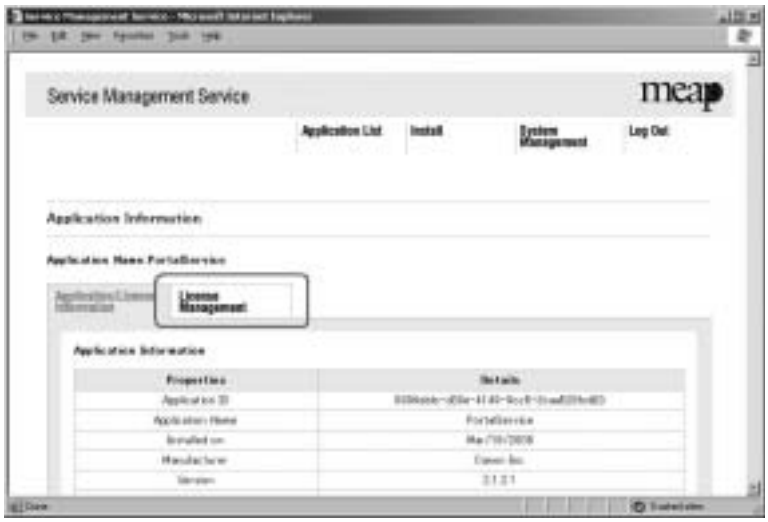
2) On **Application List**, click the name of the application to which you want to add a license file.



F-11-29

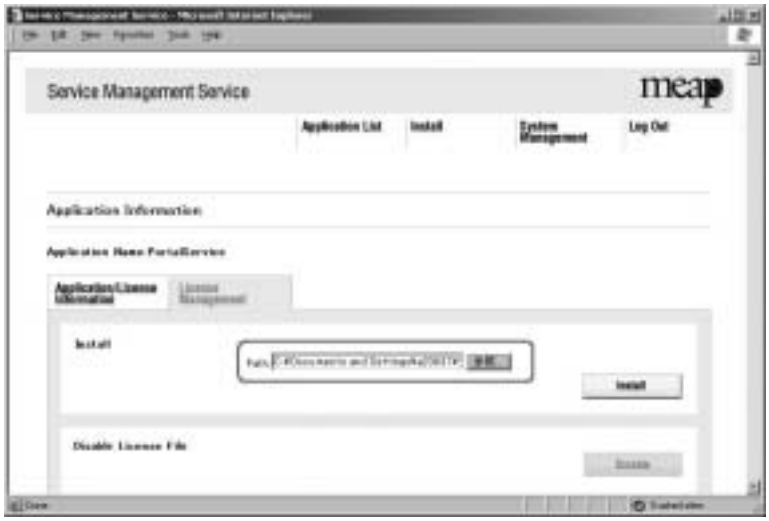
3) Check **Application Information** appears.

4) On Application Information page, click [License Management] button.



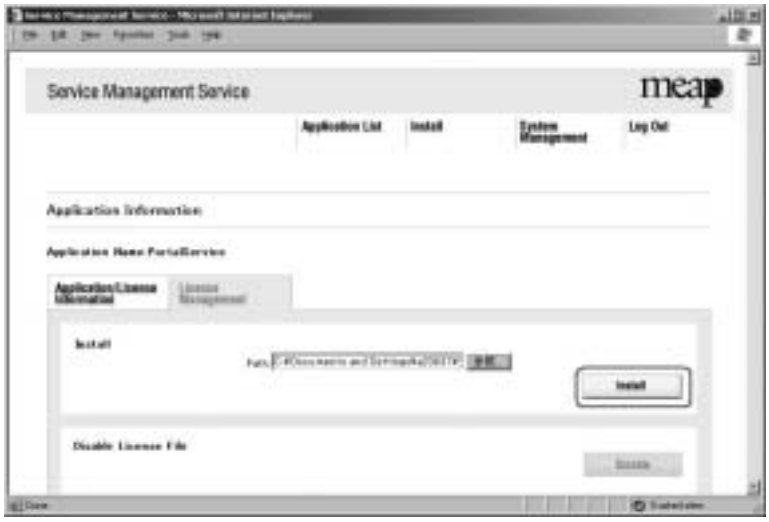
F-11-30

5) Click [Browse] button, and select the license file you want to install.



F-11-31

6) Click [Install] button.



F-11-32

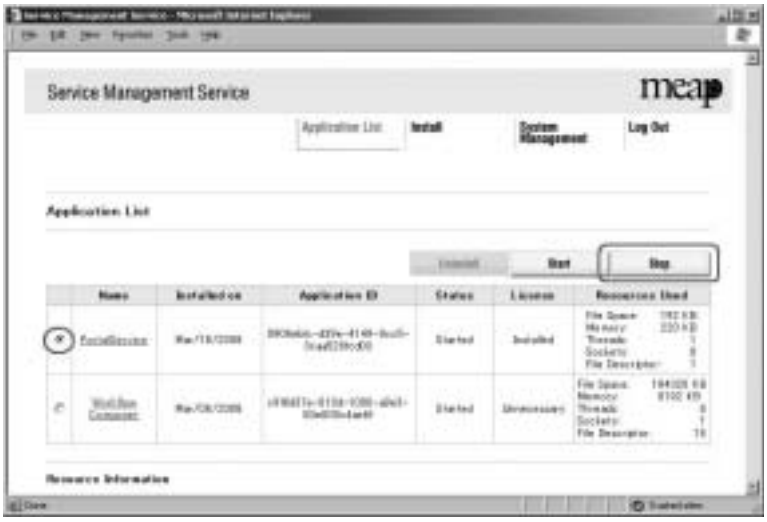
7) Check the content of the confirmation page, and click [OK] button.

11.1.18 Disabling a License File (suspending a license)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

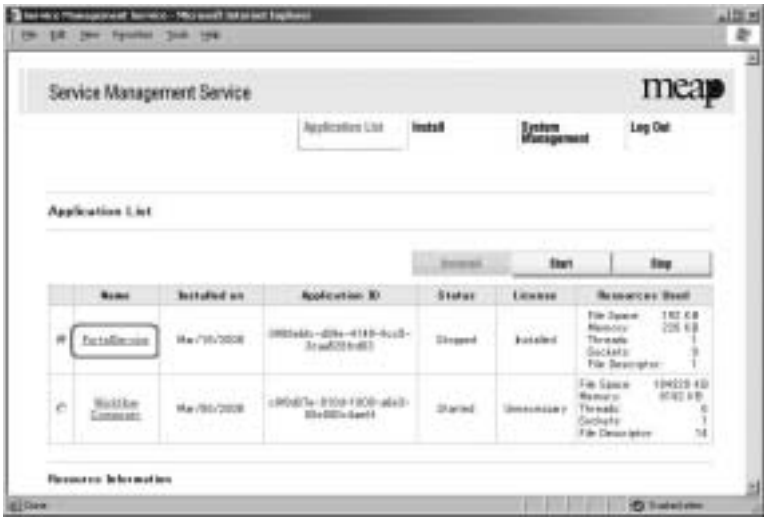
- To invalidate (or suspend) a license, you must first stop the application in question.
- Once suspended, the status of the license will be 'Not Installed', and its application will no longer be available for use.
- You can later restore a suspended license file as long as you are doing so on the same iR, the device with the same device serial number.
- When replacing the device due to lease up or trouble, use the license for forwarding (See 'License for forwarding').

1) Stop the application you want to uninstall on **Application List** page.



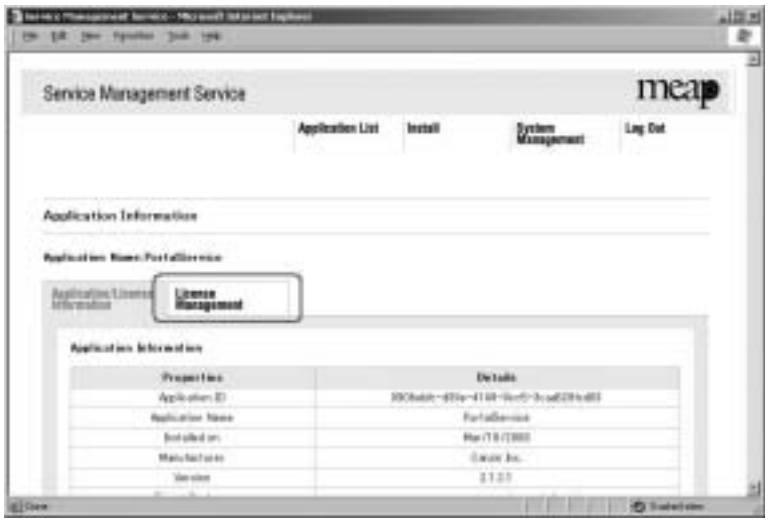
F-11-33

2) Click the name of the application that you want to disable.



F-11-34

3) **Application Information** page appears. On **Application Information** page, click [License Management] button.



F-11-35

4) Click [Disable] button.

F-11-36

5) Click [OK].

11.1.19 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

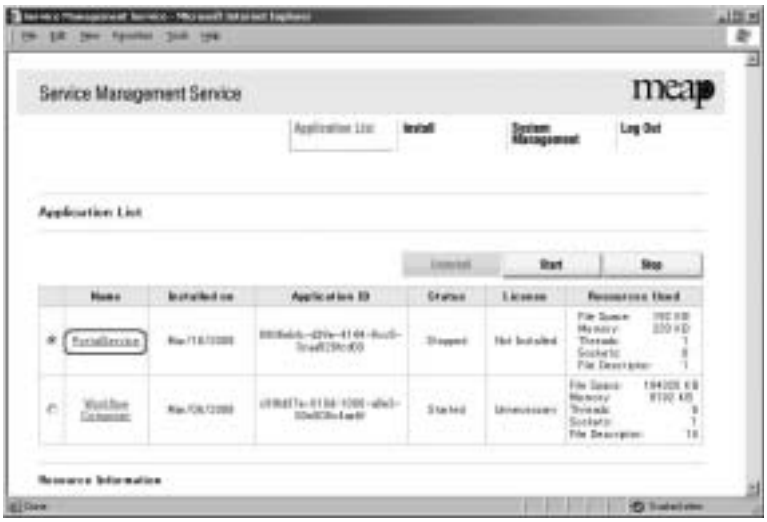
You must remove the invalidated license file before uninstalling an application. If re-installation is a possibility, you may download the license file to a PC for storage. To download or delete a license file, first disable it.

⚠
- Once you have removed an invalidated license file, you will no longer be able to download it form the MEAP device.

1) Login to SMS.

2) **Application List** page appears.

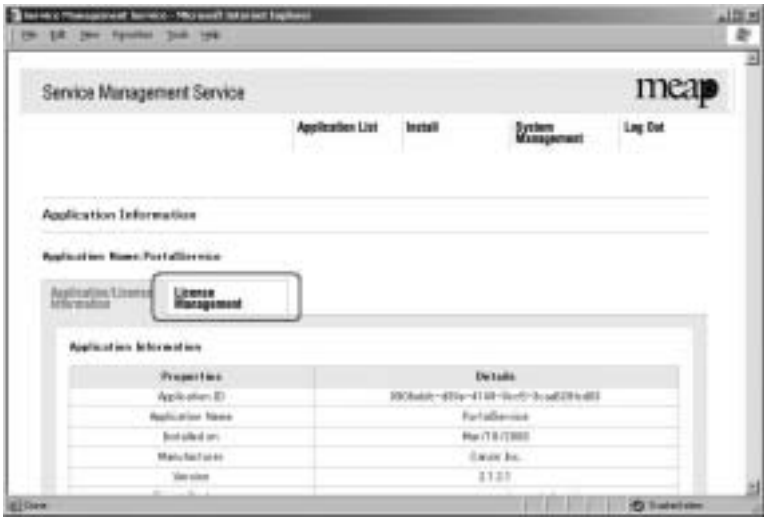
3) On **Application List page**, click the name of the application you want.



F-11-37

4) Check Application Information page appears.

5) On **Application Information** page, click [License Management] tab.



F-11-38

6) **License Management** page appears. To download, click [Download] button.

F-11-39

7) When you have selected [Download] button, specify where you want to store the file by following the instructions on the screen.

8) To delete, click [Delete] button.

F-11-40

9) Check the **confirm** page appears.

10) Click [OK] button.

- Without the license file, an application cannot be reinstalled even to the MEAP device that the application had been installed last time. Download and save the license file before deleting the application.

11.1.20 Reusable license

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Reinstallation was not able to perform for all license files. When reinstalling, Disable License file should be downloaded (see 'Disabling a License File' and 'Downloading / Removing an Invalidated License File' in this manual) or a license for reinstallation should be obtained from LMS, before reinstallation.
This specification aims to prevent misuse of applications.
To increase convenience of users, only application with unlimited validity date and application counter (e.g. Portal Service, SDL, SSO) has been made to be able to install as many times as needed by the same license file. This kind of license is called 'Reusable license'.

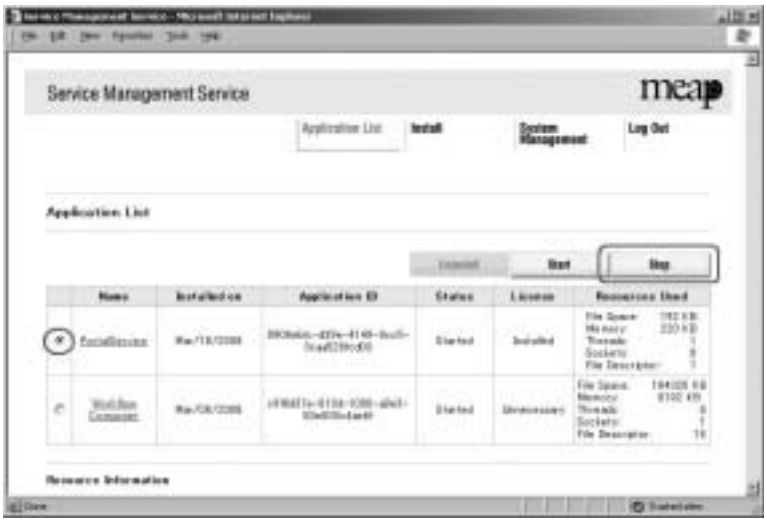
MEMO:
For devices for System version of 33.01, 54.02 (iR 2220 series / iR5020 series) or older, version upgrading is required. It is already installed in the model with iR C3220 or newer.

11.1.21 License for forwarding

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When the device is replaced due to lease up or trouble, it is possible to continue using the current license information of MEAP application by forwarding it to a new device. The license is forwarded by CE because the hidden page of SMS is used.

1) Log in to SMS, stop the application to be forwarded (see 'Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application' in this manual).

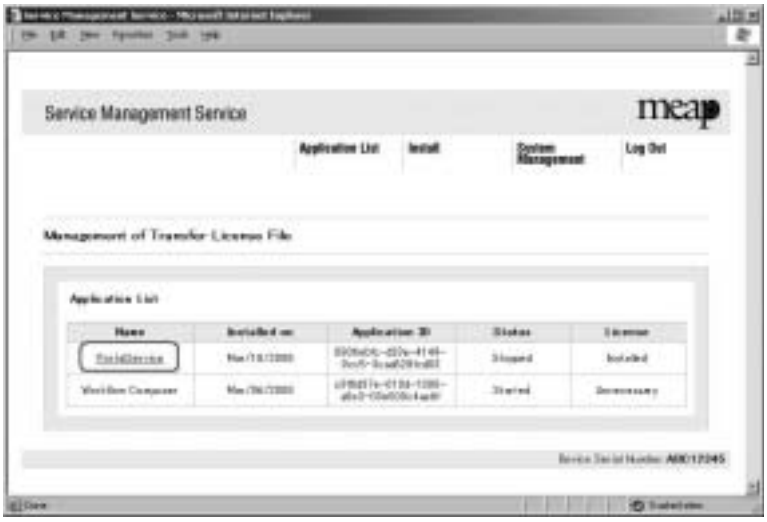


F-11-41

2) Move to the download page of license forwarded for the device as sender (http:// IP address of device: 8000/sms/ForwardLicense).

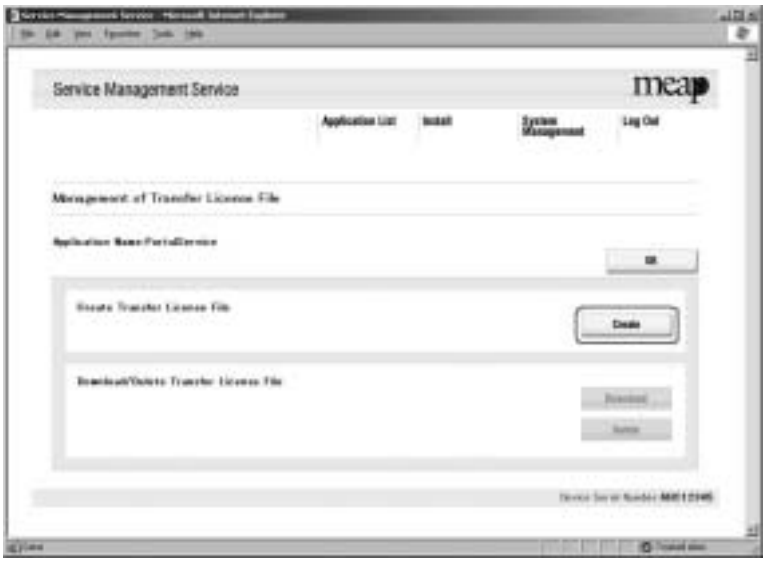
F-11-42

3) Specify the application to be forwarded.



F-11-43

4) Click [Create] at Create Transfer License File.

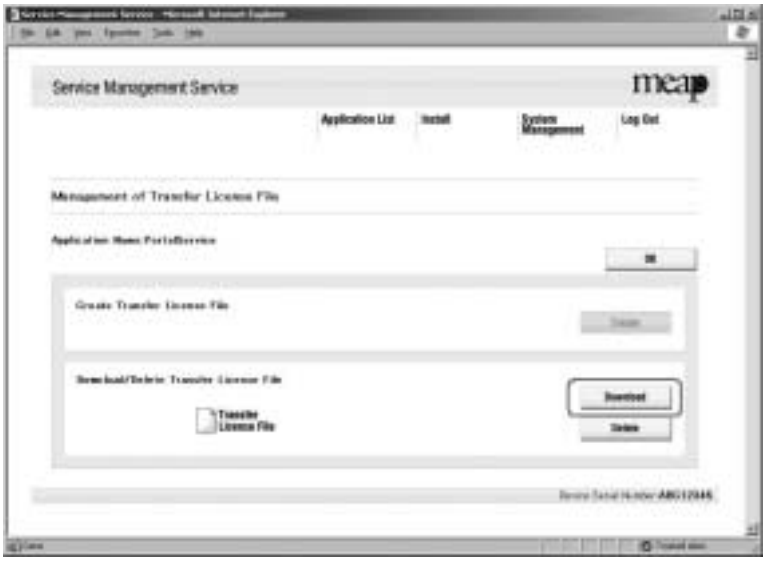


F-11-44

5) The window to confirm whether to create a transfer licence will be displayed. Click [OK].

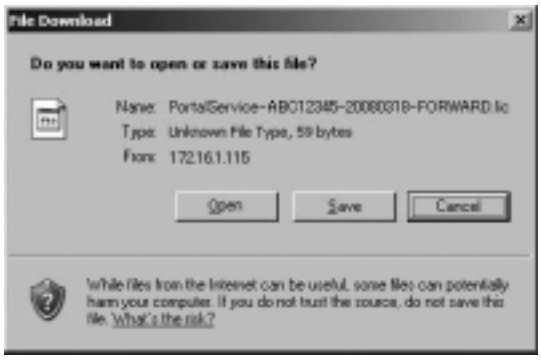
F-11-45

6) Icon of license file for forwarding is displayed in the box of license file downloading. Click [Download].



F-11-46

7) The dialogue [Open] is displayed. Click [Save].



F-11-47

8) Specify the download destination, click [Save].

F-11-48

9) After downloading the license file for forwarding, click [Delete] to display the confirmation screen and click [OK] to delete the file (in consideration of breakage of license for forwarding, deleting disabled license can be executed after all steps have been completed).

F-11-49

10) Log out of SMS.
11) Ask the sales company to issue a license for forwarding.

MEMO:
When requesting issuance of license for forwarding, inform the sales company of the name of product name and serial No. of the device as sender, and of the name of product name and serial No. of the forwarding destination.

12) Install application using the license for forwarding issued by the sales company.

11.1.22 Uninstalling an Application

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- The status of the license must be 'Not Installed' or 'Unnecessary' for its application to be uninstalled. As necessary, go to License File Management page, and disable the license file before starting to remove it.
- Dimmed [Uninstall] button shows that the selected application cannot be removed.
- A license file may be invalidated only when its application is not active.
- If the application you are uninstalling is associated with another application, a message will appear to indicate that the package exported by the application will no loner be available. Uninstalling such an application may also disable its associated applications.

1) Log on to SMS, and click [Application List] tab.

2) Check [Application List] page appears.

3) On the application list, select the radio button of the application you want to uninstall, and click [Uninstall] button.

F-11-50

4) Check the screen to make sure that what is shown is the application you want to uninstall; then, click [OK] button.
In response, the system runs an uninstall sessions.

11.1.23 Login Service

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The login service is used to authenticate the user when a MEAP device is booted up. Login service changes and install/ uninstall are carried out from the 'System Management' page.
The pre-install applications and those provided on the accessory CD are as follows. Default Authentication is used as the default at the time of shipment from the factory.

T-11-18

	Other than iR3245	**iR3245**	**Remarks**
Pre-install	Default Authentication(default) Simple Device Login Single Sign On	Default Authentication (default) Single Sign On-H	
Accessory CD	Default Authentication Simple Device Login Single Sign On and Security Agent	Default Authentication Single Sign On-H Single Sign On and Security Agent	

- When the login service is set to SSO-H, Department ID management needs to be [OFF] before changes can be made. To use SSO-H local device authentication and Department ID management at the same time, after allocation of the department ID to the Administrator, switch the authentication method to local device authentication and then turn Department ID management ON.
- To use Department ID management in domain authentication, the option imageWARE accounting manager is required.
- When the setting is SSO-H, the card reader for the option controller card cannot be used.
- When using SSO-H, the clock settings of the server managing the Active Directory and the MEAP device (and the PC used to log in), must be matched. If there is a time difference of greater than five minutes in the clock settings, an error will be generated when login is attempted.
- When the setting is SSO-H, start up takes a little longer when compared to Default Authentication (because of the time required for object initialization).
- To use the SEND function when the setting is for SSO-H, when sending email, mail addresses need to be programmed against each user. If they are not, email cannot be sent. Note, however, that when sending i-Fax, the mail addresses set in the device are used.

Important information when using conventional SSO and SDL
- When the login method setting is for SDL, the information registered in SDL must match the Department ID management user information (department ID and password).
- When the login method setting is for SDL and SSO, Department ID management needs to be [OFF] before making any changes. To use SDL and Department ID management together, switch the login service to SDL and then turn the Department ID management ON.
- To run Department ID management when the setting is for SSO, the options Net Spot Accountant / imageWARE Accounting Manager are required.
- When the setting is SSO, the option card reader cannot be used.
- When using SSO, the clock settings of the server managing the Active Directory and the MEAP device (and the PC used to log in), must be matched. If there is a time difference of greater than 30 minutes in the clock settings, an error will be generated when login is attempted with SSO.
- When the setting is for SDL or SSO, startup may take a little longer.
...To use the SEND function when the setting is for SDL and SSO, when sending email, mail addresses need to be programmed against each user. If they are not, email cannot be sent. Note, however, that when sending i-Fax, the mail addresses set in the device are used.

■ Default Authentication overview

Default Authentication is the login service that is selected when Department ID management is being used, or when no authentication function has been set. When Department ID management has been set [ON] in the MEAP device user mode, by entering a seven digit department ID for each department, and a password number for each department ID, access to the MEAP device can be restricted to those users who enter the code numbers. The department ID and password number can be entered using the MEAP device touch panel display and Remote UI.

■ SSO-H (Single Sign-On-H) overview

This is a merger of the existing SDL and SSO login services and has the following features.
- Both the domain authentication and local device authentication login services can be used.
- There is no need to have a separate SA server.
- Login is not via SA, so SSO-H refers directly to DNS for authentication.
- Kerberos and NTML protocols are supported.
- The following three authentication methods may be selected from.
  Domain authentication
  Local device authentication
  Domain authentication + local authentication

- The system configuration is different from previous SSO, so individual management is required.
- If MEAP is supported, installation into devices prior to SSO-H release is possible.
- Data porting of user information that was being used with the earlier SSO local device authentication and SDL can be done by exporting/ importing. However, application settings information cannot be ported.

■ SSO overview

This is a login service that can be operated on the Active Directory environment network domain and on iR devices. The following user authentication methods can be selected from.
  Domain authentication
  Local device authentication
  Domain authentication + local device authentication

SSO was pre-installed in earlier released devices, but from iR3245 onward it will only be provided with the Administrator's CD.

■ Authentication methods

Both SSO-H and SSO can use multiple authentication methods, and the user can toggle between them from a Web browser. (Refer to the MEAP Authentication System Settings Guide 'User Authentication Method Settings'.)

The factory shipment setting is 'Domain authentication + local device authentication'. In order to provide increased security, as soon as SSO is used, it is recommended that the administrator's user name and password in local device authentication be changed from the factory shipment settings as soon as possible.

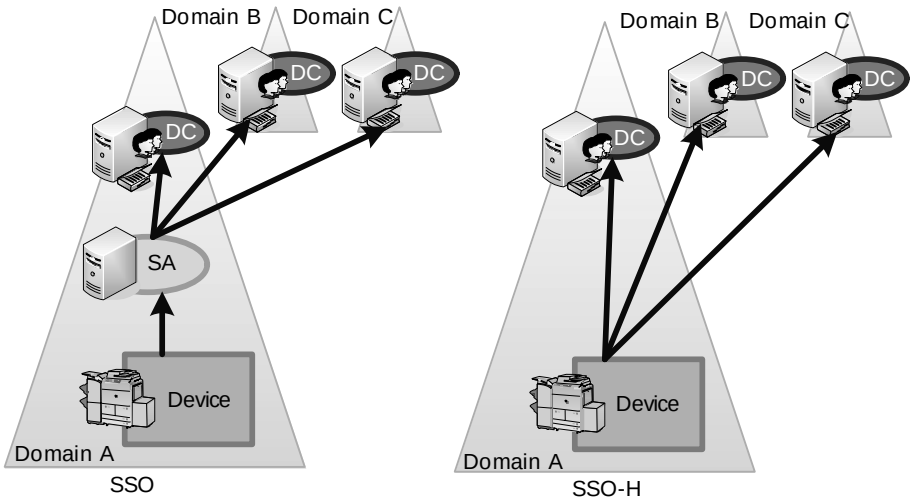
Domain authentication
This is a form of user authentication which operates in collaboration with the domain controller on the Active Directory environment network and, as soon as the iR device is logged into, carries out authentication of the domain on the network. In addition to users belonging to the domain that includes the iR device, users belonging to domains that have a reliable relationship with the domain (multi-domain) can also be authenticated. The domain name of the login destination can be selected by the users themselves upon login.

The function makes use of options Net Spot Accountant/ iW Accounting Manager/ iW EMC Accounting MAnagement Plig-in to enable analysis and management of the iR device usage status.

Depending on the login service, different protocols are used.
- SSO-H
  - Kerberos:LLS/RLS/ILS
  - NTLMV2:WLS(Web Service Login Service. WLS can only be used in collaboration with iW AMS Ver2 AMS printer driver add-in and iWEMC user management plug-in.)
- SSO
  - NMTLM only

User information acquisition is done by LADP, so the Active Directory LDAP port needs to be made accessible.
If LDAP connection fails, the authentication will end in error.
No. of supported domains: 200 (unchanged from SSO)
Site access supported.

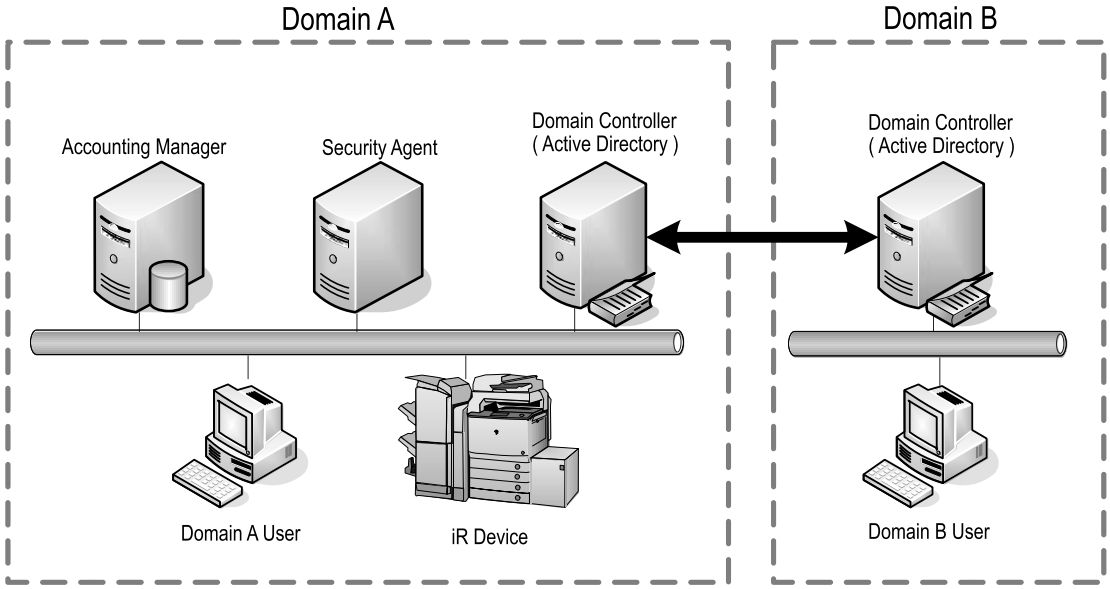
Differences from conventional SSO



F-11-51

Local device authentication
This is an authentication method that is used for single iR devices. The authenticating users are registered in the iR device's database. User management is performed on the Web application provided by the device, or from the imageWARE Enterprise Management Console/ iW Management Console. The login destination is 'This device'.

Domain authentication + local device authentication
This is a user authentication method that provides both domain authentication and local device authentication functionalities. Principally, domain users who are registered/ managed by the Active Directory are authenticated by domain authentication, and local device authentication can be used when it is necessary to authenticate a temporary user that cannot be added to the Active Directory. Also, should there be any kind of a problem with the domain controller or Security Agent (SSO only), local device authentication can be used in emergency situations, while waiting for normal status to be restored.
In the figure shown below, users belonging to Domain A, which includes the iR device, and users belonging to Domain B, which has a reliable relationship with Domain A, can be authenticated, and users registered with the iR device itself can also be registered. The login destination (domain name or [This device]) is selected by the user upon login.



F-11-52

- To run domain authentication and Department ID management at the same time, the options Net Spot Accountant, iW Accounting Manager or iW EMC Accounting Management Plug-in are required. If domain authentication is selected as the authentication method without linkage to these systems, login will be disabled and Department ID management will not come ON. If Department ID management cannot be turned ON when using domain authentication and login is disabled, switch the login service to Default Authentication and turn Department ID management OFF.
- When SSO is linked to Net Spot Accountant, iW Accounting Manager or iW EMC Accounting Management Plug-in, and is to be used with Department ID management turned ON, users belonging to the Domain Admin group need to be allocated to the Security Agent service account.
- In order to link local device authentication and Department ID management and manage print pages and scan pages per department ID, Department ID management must be set ON.

To run local device authentication and Department ID management at the same time, the information registered in local device authentication must match the Department ID management user information (department ID and password).

- User information registered in SDL and that registered in local device authentication are managed separately in the iR device. User information registered in one is not reflected in the other.
- In local device authentication the card reader for the option control card cannot be used. To use the card reader for the option control card, set SDL.
- Security Agent is only required when using the conventional SSO.
- To use the conventional SSO and Security Agent, they must be installed in the computer belonging to the domain that includes the iR device.
- The Security Agent installer is included in the MEAP Administrator CD-ROM.

Linkage with Department ID management when using SSO-H
SSO-H has collaborative linkage with imageWARE access management, imageWARE Accounting Manager and Net Spot Accounting.
Only when used with 'Local device authentication', can department ID/ passwords be allocated to users.
In the event that these are allocated, authentication can be performed even when the main unit's department management is ON.
Department ID and department passwords are not allocated to domain users.
When the main unit's department management function is ON, domain users cannot be authenticated.

MEMO:
With SSO, linkage with iWAM/ iWAM account summary manager was assumed and department management linkage was enabled even in domain authentication, but with SSO-H, this is now unsupported.

System administrator linkage (automatic allocation of ID to administrator)
[Restriction] With SSO, there was a function where ID programmed on SA would be allocated to domain authentication administrators (Canon Peripheral Admins Group users) on SA, and system administrators automatically authenticated, but with SSO-H this is now unsupported.

■ Site internal access mode
With SSO-H, access to Active Directory within site can be prioritized or restricted, so there is a setting called 'Site internal access mode'. Sites programmed in Active Directory comprise multiple subnets. In this mode, SSO-H uses site information to access the same site as the device, or the subnet Active Directory.
- The SSO-H default setting is with the site internal access mode OFF.
- Access Active Directory within same site only.
- If there is no Active Directory within the same site, or if connection fails, there will be an authentication error.
- Access another site if Active Directory within the same site cannot be located.
- If there is no Active Directory within the same site, or if connection fails, an Active Directory external to the site will be accessed.
- If all attempts to access Active Directory fail, there will be an authentication error.

The operating specifications of the site internal access mode are as described below.
When first logging in to the login service after booting iR, the domain controller (DC) is obtained from the site list.
However, upon the first login, even if the site functionality is active, connection to DC is random. (This is because, if connection to DC should fail, the site to which the device belongs cannot be ascertained.)
If the device IP address or the domain name are changed, the site settings are acquired once more.

In this mode, at the first login (first authentication of domain to which the device belongs) LDAP-Bind is performed directly to DC and site information acquired by LDAP from DC.
From the acquired site list, the site to which the device subnet belongs is extracted and this becomes the site to which device belongs.
Active Directory address is acquired (retrieved from DNS)

The Active Directory subnet is assumed to be the same subnet as the device subnet.
In the Active Directory addresses, the Active Directories of the same site are listed.
Active Directories of the same subnet as the device are listed first.
If there is no Active Directory with the same subnet as the device, Active Directories belonging to different subnets than the device are listed.
The Active Directories within the same site are accessed in order. Note, however, that where there are multiple Active Directories within the same site, access to those Active Directories will be in the order in which the address list was obtained.
If there is no Active Directory within the same site, if access outside of the site is programmed, Active Directories outside of the site will be accessed in the order in which the address list was obtained.

Settings for site internal access mode
Switching between site internal access mode/ non site internal access mode, as well as detailed mode settings, are done via DMS or iWEMC.
Site internal access mode settings window (DMS)
Site list acquisition
After booting up, upon the first login by LLS or ILS/ RLS, the site list is obtained from the Active Directory. In order to obtain the site list from the Active Directory, Active Directory needs to be accessed in LDAP, so SASL-Kerberos-Bind is used by the login user account. If authentication by Active Directory should fail, an authentication error will be generated and the site list will be acquired again from Active Directory upon the next login.

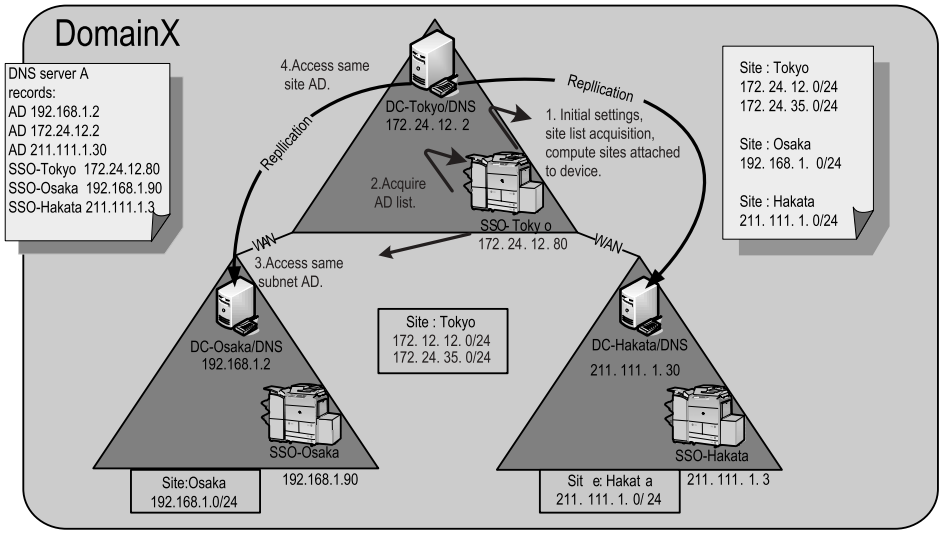
In SSO-H, the Active Directory to be accessed when acquiring the site list cannot be specified. In other words, if there is no site list, which site's Active Directory is accessed depends upon the order of the Active Directory addresses returned by DNS. Therefore, when acquiring the site list, LDAP may access the Active Directory of a different site. Therefore, in such cases, it is sometimes necessary to access across sites or subnets, which means that LDAP protocol needs to have continuity across sites (subnets) (normally, LDAP is port No. 389). Further, if connection with Active Directory fails when acquiring site information, another

Active Directory will be accessed.
Site information, once it has been acquired, is cached within the device. The life settings of the cache can be set so that site information in the cache is updated upon the first login after the device boots up, or so that the cache is not updated once acquired.

Settings for site internal access mode
Switching between site internal access mode/ non site internal access mode, as well as detailed mode settings, are done via DMS or iWEMC.
Site internal access mode settings window (DMS)
Site internal access mode settings window (DMS)

F-11-53

Site internal access mode process diagram



F-11-54

1) SSO-Tokyo acquires site lists from Active Directories.
Note, however, that the Active Directories accessed in order to acquire site lists are in the order in which they were returned by DNS, so there is no guarantee that the same Active Directory will be accessed as in the initial settings (upon device settings or changes to NW settings, etc.).
[Site subnet list]
Site: Tokyo: = 172.24.12.0/24, 172.24.35.0/24
Site: Osaka: = 192.168.1.0/24
Site: Hakata: = 211.111.1.0/24
As a result, since SSO-Tokyo is 172.24.12.80, the subnet is 172.24.12.0/24, and is judged as belonging to site Tokyo.

2) The DNS server obtains its Active Directory list from the primary or secondary DNS, as set in the device.
[Active Directory]
172.24.12.2, 172.24.35.2, 192.168.1.2, 211.111.1.30

3) Of the Active Directories in 2), above, the ones that belong to the same site (Tokyo) are 172.24.12.2 and 172.24.35.2.
Of these, the Active Directory that is the same subnet as SS-Tokyo is 172.24.12.2. Therefore, this one will be accessed.

4) If access fails at step 3), above, the other Active Directory of the same site, 172.24.35.2, will be accessed.

5) If access fails at step 4), above, also, SSO-Osaka and SSO-Hakata will be accessed (the order will depend on the order of the Active Directories in DNS). Note, however, that this is an optional operation.

Logging into other domains at multi-domain
At multi-domain, if another domain is logged into, based on the site/ subnet information retrieved in the home domain, the Active Directories of the login destination domain/ KDC address list are computed. In the event that the domain controller IP addresses of other domains are outside of the site access range, and only the domain controller within the site is programmed for access, an error message will be displayed to the effect that the site information is incorrect.

■ Environment confirmation

Refer to 'Environment confirmation' in this manual for details on the system requirements when using login services.

T-11-19

Login service	SSO-H	SSO-K*1	SSOV3	SDL*1
Local device users upper limit	5000	1000	1000	1000
No. of domains	200	10	200	-
Operating devices	Up till latest model	Till before iR 3245series	Up till latest model	Till before iR 3245series
IpV6	Available, but authentication not performed in IPv6	N/A	Available	N/A

Login service	SSO-H	SSO-K*1	SSOV3		SDL*1
Memory (KB)/ threads	3584/33	2800/33	2800/33		2300/33
Supported AD	Windows 2000 Server/ Windows Server 2003	Windows 2000 Server/ Windows Server 2003	Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003		-
Authentication method	NTLM Kerberos Local Device Authentication	Kerberos	NTLM	Local	-
Server	AD/KDC	(included in AD)	SA/AD		-
Key	DES		-		-
Department ID management linkage	Local authentication only available		However, domain requires NSA.		-
Site access	Available		Available		-
iW AMS	V2.0		V1.1		-

*1: Not supported, since merged with SSO-H in devices from iR3245 series onward.

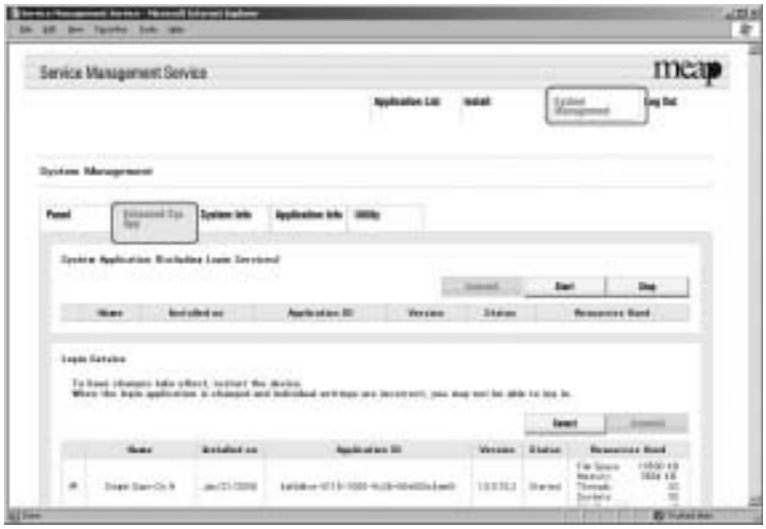
SSO/SDL handling
SSO Ver3.x
Excluded from pre-installation, but included in Administrator's CD (SA also included).
SSO included in the Administrator's CD from iR3245 onward has AMS functionality deleted and is provided as a non AMS enabled login application.
SDL
Not included in Administrator's CD.
Post TIWANAKU devices not supported.
Functionality merged with SSO-H, so will not be released stand alone in future.

11.1.24 Changing Login Services

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Steps to Change Login Services

1) Make the following selections: [System Management] > [Enhanced Sys. App].



F-11-55

2) A page will appear showing the various selections you can make for the login service. Select the radio button of the login service mode you want to use; then, click [Select] button.

F-11-56

3) When login service application you have selected turns to **Start after Restart**, turn off the device's main power, and turn it back on after 10 seconds.

F-11-57

11.1.25 Initializing the Password

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Get the switch license for initializing the password.
Request the support of the regional headquarters of the Canon for switch license for initializing the password presenting the device serial number.

2) Click [Login] button leaving **Password** field blank or entering incorrect password. The Return to install Password Settings area appears. Click [Browse..] button and select the switch license file prepared in advance.

F-11-58

3) When you click [Initialize] button, the confirmation message appears. Click [OK] button. Then Login page opens. Enter the default password 'MeapSmsLogin' to log in. The password is case-sensitive.

If you click [Cancel] button, the Login page opens without initializing the password.

11.1.26 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

With previous devices, the area of HDD where MEAP application resides can be backed up to PC when formatting HDD.

However, HDD format with SST cannot be performed with this device due to specification reasons. Backup operation of MEAP application area with SST can be done but cannot be used for the foregoing purpose.

⚠
If restoring the backup data without formatting HDD, the data such as setting information may not be consistent. Thus, do not backup the MEAP application area.

11.1.27 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If you must replace the hard disk drive because of a fault, all MEAP application files stored on it will also be lost, requiring you to re-install the applications and their license files in addition to performing the normal work associated with the replacement of the hard disk.

Like other counter information, MEAP counter information will remain after replacement. Reinstallation of MEAP applications calls for special license files designed to continue with the current counter readings, thus enabling the use of the applications until the date of their expiration. These special licenses are service tools, and are not offered to general users.

If you cannot make a backup of the license files as hard disk suffers a fault, contact the support staff of the regional headquarters of Canon telling the device serial number and the names of MEAP applications installed to the device to obtain the necessary special license files.

In the support departments of regional headquarters of Canon, all license files of the applications that have been issued are filed according to device serial numbers, enabling you to obtain a series of license files through a single screen as long as you can identify the serial number of the device in question.

The following shows the steps to follow after you have obtained a special license from the support staff of the regional headquarters of Canon.

1) Copy a set of obtained special license files to a laptop for service operation.
Register a set of System files of a target product to SST (System Support Tool). (Make sure the compatibility of the each file version.)

2) Prepare the required service parts of the HDD unit and replace the HDD unit on user's site.
The service part HDD is equipped with the minimum required firmware to start the system; thus, turn the power on to make sure that it starts properly (restart may be required during a service operation.).
While pressing [2] and [8] numerical keys simultaneously on the control panel, turn on the main power so that the machine restarts in safe mode. (IP address "172.16.1.100" will be automatically specified, thus it is recommended to download via high-speed network.)

3) Using SST, install a set of System files in the version that was used before HDD failure.

4) When the device has started normally, obtain the jar files of the MEAP applications from the user, and install them using the license files of the applications in the same way as you would when installing them for the first time.

5) As necessary, make login service selections and import user information.

MEMO:
When you replace the HDD without uninstalling MEAP applications, make sure to reinstall the previously installed applications. Unless reinstalling them, MEAP counter will not be released and the message "The number of applications that can be installed has exceeded the limit. Try to install this application after uninstalling other applications." is displayed so that the installation of new applications may not be accepted.
If you want to install new applications in this case, once reinstall the applications installed before formatting and uninstall unnecessary applications.

11.1.28 MEAP Safe Mode

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Use safe mode if you need to start up the system without worrying about extra applications. It will start up only those system software files (including SMS) that normally start up as default files while preventing MEAP applications and the like from starting up.

When you have made changes and turned off and then on the device, the control panel will indicate 'MPSF' in its lower right corner. The MEAP applications that may have been active before you shut down the equipment will not start up on their own. Make use of safe mode when restoring the system software as when MEAP applications or services cause a fault as the result of a conflict or wrong sequence of registration/use. You can access to SMS in this condition so that you can take necessary measures, for example, you can stop application that may cause the trouble.

If default authentication has been selected, the mode of authentication remains valid; otherwise, the message "The login service must be set again with SMS" appears. Change the login service as necessary.

Starting in Safe Mode
1) Start the device in service mode: click [Ad Func] key, press 2 and 8 buttons at the same time, and then click [Ad Func] key once again so that the service mode screen appears.

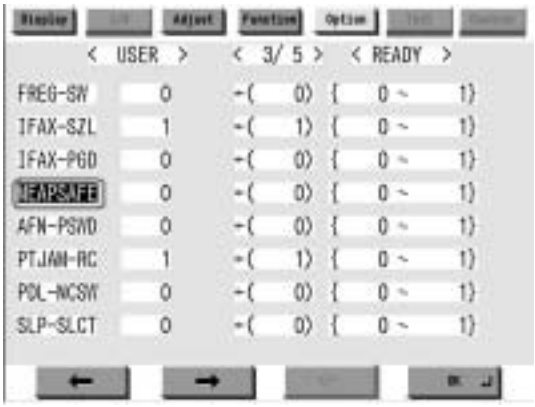
2) Press [COPIER] button.

3) Press [OPTION] button.

4) Press [USER].

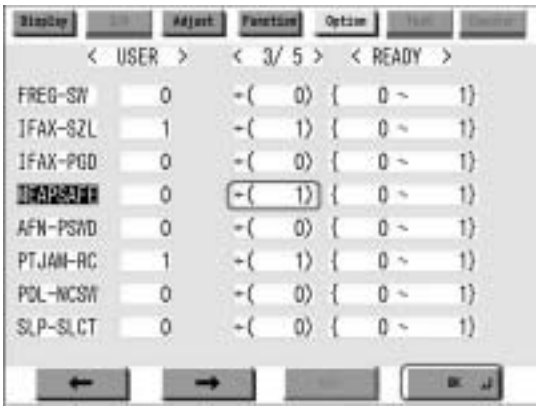
5) Press the right-arrow button.

6) Press [MEAPSAFE].



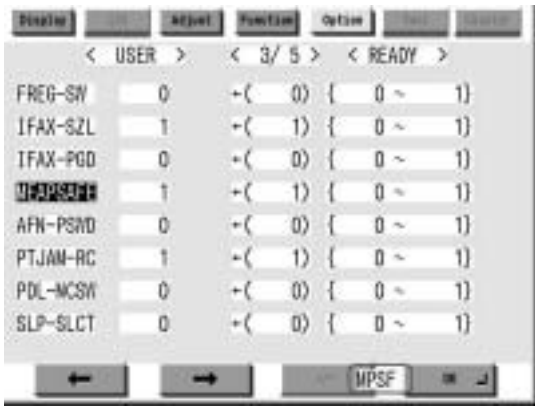
F-11-59

7) Press the 1 key on the control panel keypad to change the setting to '1'; then, click [OK] button.



F-11-60

8) Check that the notation 'MPSF' has appeared in the lower right corner of the screen; then, turn off and then on the main power.



F-11-61

If you want to end safe mode, repeat the steps but change '1' to '0' in step -7 and turn off and then on the main power.

11.1.29 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

For the ports in which the MEAP application uses, the default is 8000 for the port on HTTP server, and 8443 for the port on HTTPS server. In the case that these ports have already used by the customer who is to introduce this application, the MEAP application cannot use the HTTP (or HTTPS) server(s).
By changing the following ports to use, however, the MEAP application can be used as well as the existing system.

HTTP server
Setting value is 0 through 65535 [the value at factory shipment/after clearing RAM: 8000]

MEMO:
-Do not use port number"8080" when PS print server unit is connected.
-If the port is used, you can not see the page for RUI of the device with MEAP authentication application.
(port "8080" is reserved for redirecting from PS print server unit to device.)

HTTPS server
Setting value is 0 through 65535 [the value at factory shipment/after clearing RAM: 8443]

MEMO:
-As for port on HTTPS server, it only applies to the device that supports SSL function.
-Make sure not to use 1 through 1023 other than 80 (HTTP) as a port for MEAP. Because the ports in this range are used by general servers, there is a possibility that the ports in this range will be duplicated in the future.

<Setting Procedure of Port on HTTP server>

1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).

2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.

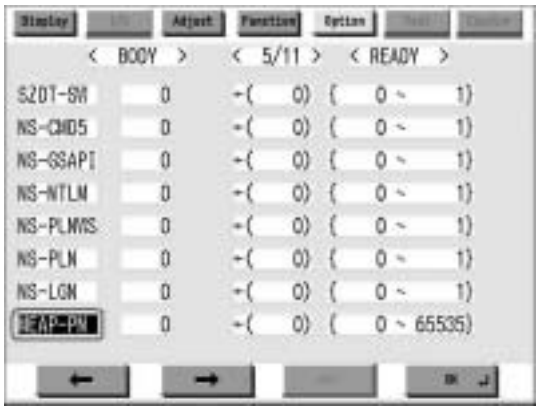
3) Press [COPIER] button.

4) Press [Option] button.

5) Press [BODY] button.

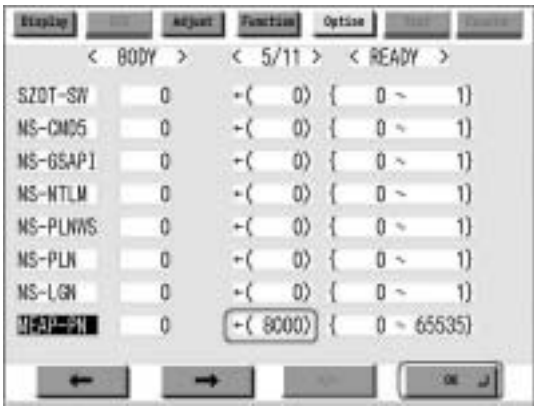
6) Press ← or → button.

7) Press [MEAP-PN] button.



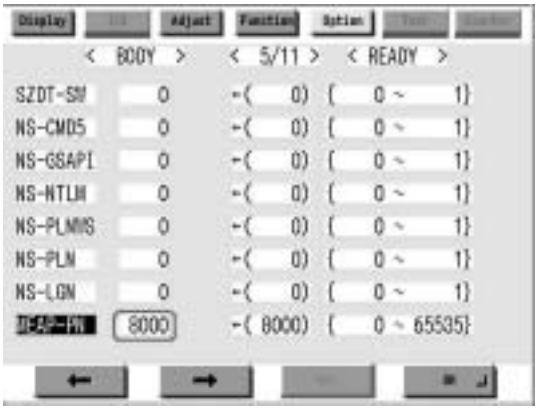
F-11-62

8) Press the port number to specify on the control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-11-63

9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.



F-11-64

<Setting Procedure of port on HTTPS server>

1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).

2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.

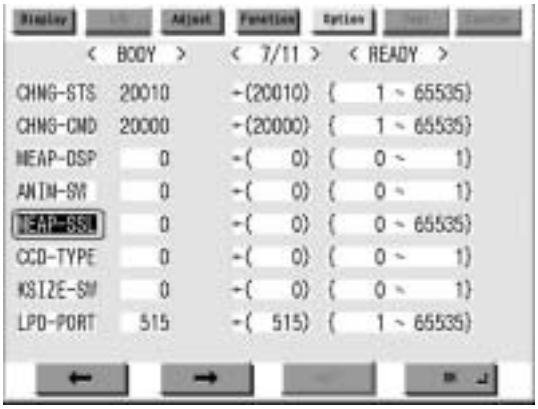
3) Press [COPIER] button.

4) Press [Option] button.

5) Press [BODY] button.

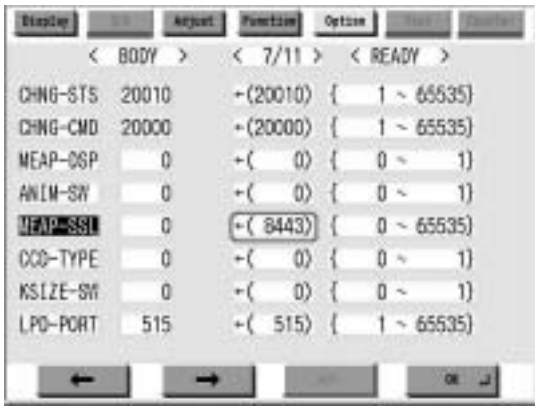
6) Press ← or → button.

7) Press [MEAP-SSL] button.



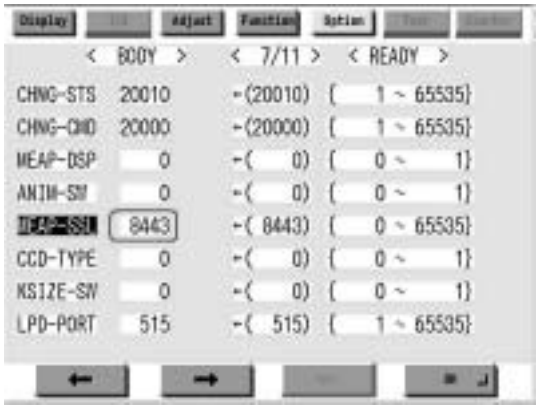
F-11-65

8) Press the port number to specify on the control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-11-66

9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.



F-11-67

11.1.30 USB keyboard support

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Overview
Characters that could be entered on the software keyboard displayed on the conventional control panel can be entered using a USB connected keyboard.
- When the software keyboard window is displayed, characters can be entered from the USB keyboard (in-line entry not possible).
- When the software keyboard window is not displayed, entered characters will not be remembered.
- Only characters that can be displayed on the software keyboard will be accepted from the USB keyboard (entries that cannot be displayed on the software keyboard, such as Function key input, etc., will be ignored).
- Even if characters are entered from the USB keyboard, the software keyboard window will not change (the corresponding key does not invert or change colour).
- Input from the USB keyboard can be accepted at the same time as input from the software keyboard or numeric keys.
- The USB keyboard can be plugged in or unplugged at any time (plug and play).
- In some localities, extant USB keyboards being used by MEAP applications cannot be used at the same time as newly supported native (main unit functionality) USB keyboards. In the system administration settings, it is necessary to select either the MEAP application keyboard or the native keyboard.
- When using a USB keyboard with native functionality, it is necessary to make changes to the operating mode settings in user mode. In such cases, MEAP applications that use the conventional MEAP USB drivers described above cannot use USB keyboards.
- As regards MEAP applications that can use MEAP standard software keyboards, the USB keyboard can be used along with native functionality.
* The SSO, SSO-K and SDL Login applications provided by Canon Inc. use software keyboards, so they are able to use USB keyboards.

MEMO:
The factory shipment default prioritizes compatibility with devices in the field, so the setting is to enable the use of MEAP application keyboards. Therefore, in order to use native (main unit functionality) USB keyboards, [Use MEAP driver for USB input device] under [System management settings (initial settings/ registration)] needs to be set to OFF (factory shipment setting is ON).
Operations change as described below in accordance with ON/ OFF settings.
ON: when using MEAP application keyboard (factory shipment default)
OFF: when using native (main unit functionality) keyboard

USB keyboard

T-11-20

Operating mode settings [Use MEAP driver as USB input device]	Conventional USB keyboard enabled MEAP application	Software keyboard application (Native/ MEAP)	Class driver
ON (*default) MEAP driver mode (conventional compatibility mode)	Can use USB keyboard. Only works with applications that support the conventional MEAP drivers.	Cannot use USB keyboards. (Device cannot be detected.)	Loads conventional MEAP drivers.
OFF * Native driver mode	Cannot use USB keyboards. (Device cannot be detected.)	Can use USB keyboards. Via software keyboards only.	Loads native KBD drivers.

MEMO:
As the driver loaded for the USB device does not toggle dynamically, when any settings changes are made, power must be turned OFF/ ON.
*NB: In the iR3245 models for Europe and Japan, these settings are not displayed. (The display of these settings can be turned on and off in service mode.)

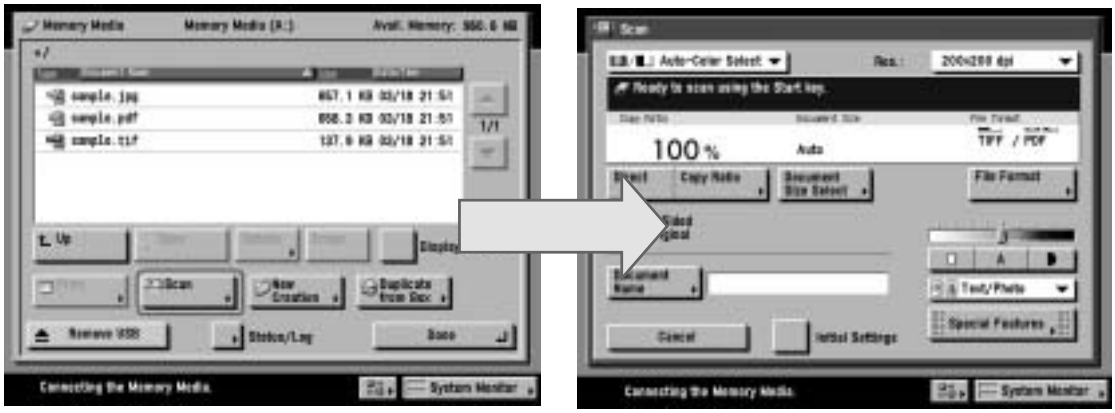
11.1.31 USB memory related functions(supported outside of Japan and Europe)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Common spec.
- The file formats supported by the USB memory linkage function are PDF, TIFF and JPEG.. (Saving in XPS format is not supported.)
- When saving an image to USB memory, time stamps and user signatures cannot be added.
- Operation from remote UI and image preview are not supported.
- The only supported USB memory is that which conforms to USB compliance tests.
- USB memory with security settings (passwords, etc.) are not supported.
- USB memory connected via extension cables or USB hubs are not supported.
- While USB memory is connected, the device cannot enter deep sleep.
- While the device is in deep sleep, USB memory cannot be connected.
- The maximum number of files (including folders) that can be displayed in a USB memory is 1,000.
- Non USB memory devices are not supported.
- The default setting permits the use of USB memory.

⚠
- If a USB memory device is connected while the device is in deep sleep, the unit will not be able to detect the USB memory, so the USB removal button will not be displayed (it will be grayed out). Therefore, the USB memory should be removed, then, after touching the control panel and activating the display, reconnect the USB memory.
- When a MEAP application, etc., is being used, the settings are sometimes not changed. In that case, the following statuses (factory settings) need to be changed in user mode.
[User mode]>[System administrator settings]>[USB settings]>[Use USB host]: ON
(factory shipment default: ON)
[User mode]>[System administrator settings]>[USB settings]>[Use MEAP driver as USB external memory device]:[OFF]
(factory shipment default: OFF)

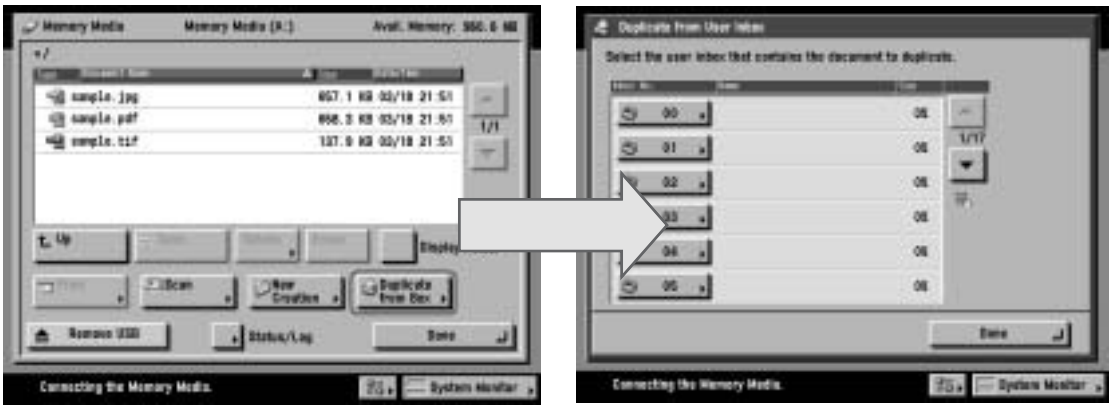
Scan to USB memory (supported outside of Japan and Europe)
Scanned documents can be saved directly to USB.



F-11-68

⚠
Until a scan job has been completely written into the USB memory, the next scan operation cannot be carried out. In particular, even if a document has been scanned in, it takes time to write in searchable PDF, etc., so subsequent scanning operations cannot start till the current job has been completely written in.

Box To USB memory (supported outside of Japan and Europe)
Image data stored in box saved to USB memory.

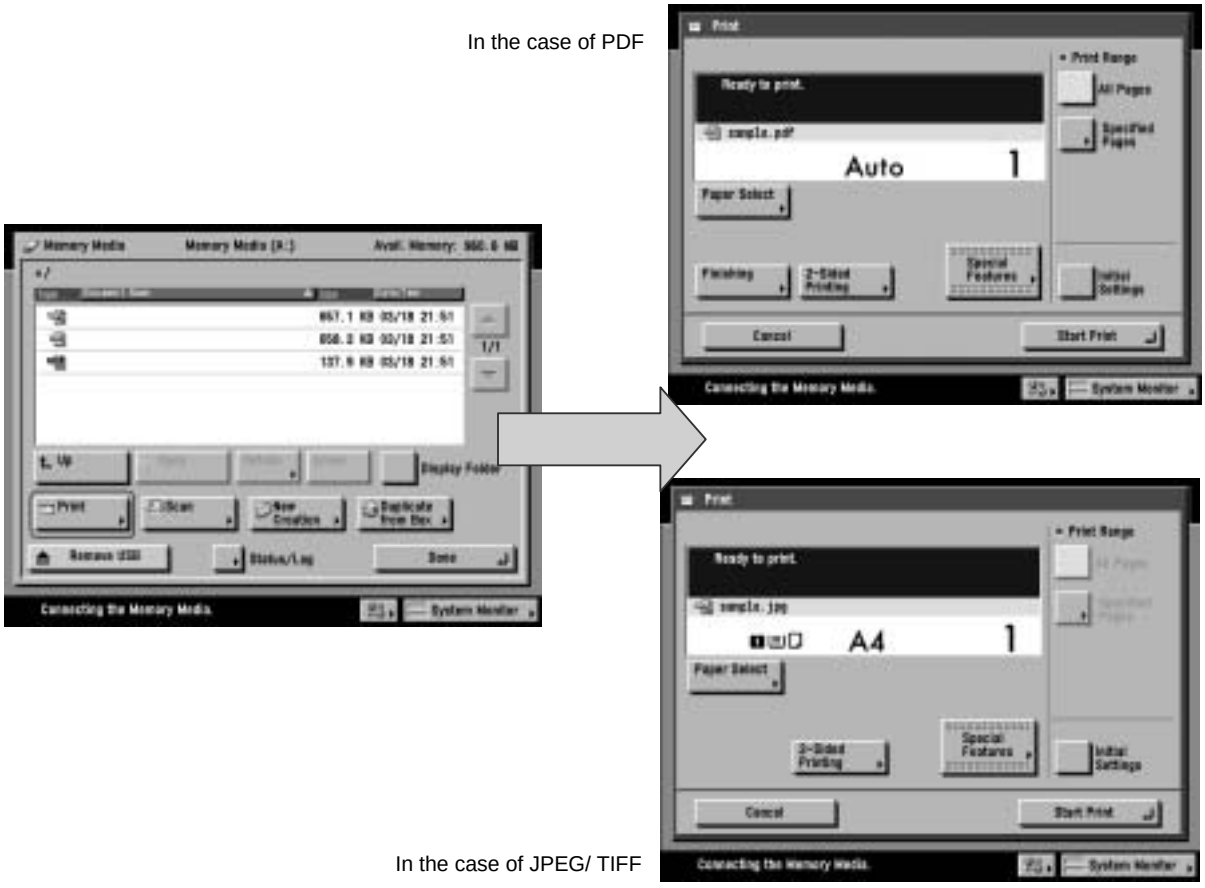


F-11-69

USB memory To Print: Print PDF/TIFF/JPEG. (supported outside of Japan and Europe)
Links with PDF direct print option to print out image data stored in USB memory.
- Maximum printable size is 2GB.
- Settings for enlarged/ reduced printing and N-up printing available.

The following functions and settings cannot be used.
- Multiple document printing, split binding and cover insert functions
- Editing functions such as coupled printing and page deletion, etc.
- Preview
- Free size paper printing

Further, to use these functions, PDF Direct Print or PS Print Kit need to be installed in the main unit.



F-11-70

Sort function: Sort file lists into USB
The file lists displayed on the control panel can be sorted and displayed by file names and dates.

USB memory support and operating mode settings

T-11-21

Operating mode settings: [Use MEAP driver as USB storage device]	Conventional USB memory enabled MEAP application	Native USB memory function	Class driver
ON * MEAP driver mode(conventionally compatible mode)	USB memory can be used. Can be used only via conventional MEAP USB driver.	USB memory cannot be used.(Device cannot be detected.)	Loads conventional MEAP USB class driver.
OFF (*default) Native driver mode	USB memory cannot be used.(Device cannot be detected.)	USB memory can be used.	Loads mass storage class driver.

MEMO:
- The driver loaded for the USB device does not toggle dynamically, so once any settings have been changed, the power needs to be switched OFF/ ON.
*NB: In the Japan and Europe models of iR3245, the default value is ON, so this setting is not displayed. (The display of this setting can be switched ON/ OFF in service mode.)

11.1.32 Reference material

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

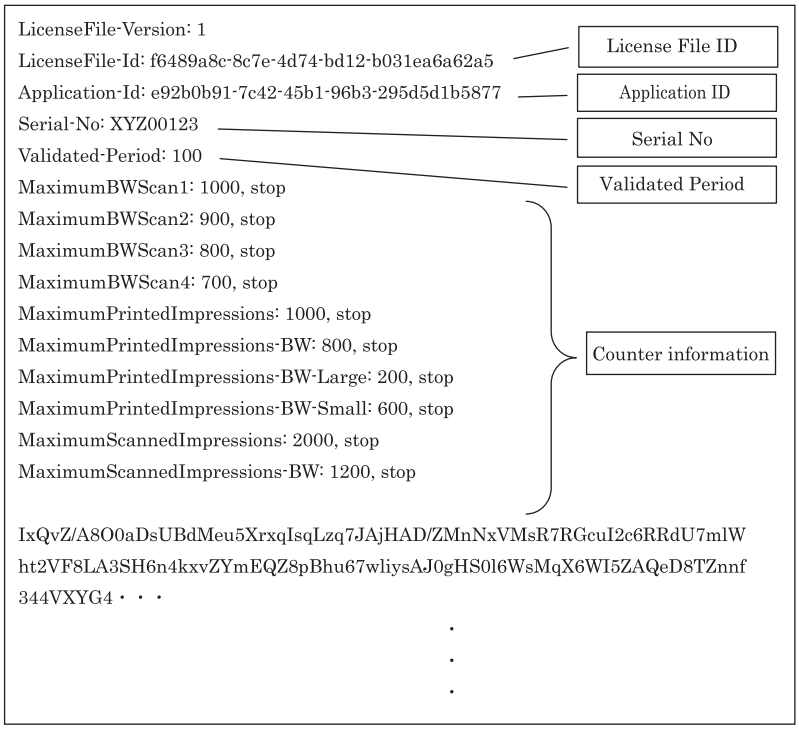
Glossary

T-11-22

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
Applet	Applet Type Application. A Type of MEAP application that is designed to display user interface on device control panel.
Application	A software unit that provides a solution to users.
Application ID	A unique identifier assigned to each application. Used for indicating memory usage of the application in the MEAP system.
ASP	Application Service Provider. A business to provide the application service on Internet.
AVS	Applet Viewer Service. One of the MEAP system services that shows the user interface of the current applet type service on the console.
Code Sign	To attach Digital Signature to software code. MEAP has the mechanism to reject MEAP application without Code Sign for security reason.
CPCA	Common Peripheral Controlling Architecture. CPCA defines an object model of peripheral deices. A client can control a device by creating or modifying objects in the device.
CPCA Java CL	CPCA Java Class Library. A Java class library, which is used to control a device.
Default Authentication - Department ID Management	The login service used when the department ID control is used but other authentication controls are not used. When the Department ID control is turned on, the login dialog prompts the users to enter the department ID and password. The dialog appears the initial screen of both the control panel on the MEAP device and Remote UI
Device Specification ID	ID assigned for each device model. It shows the usage of functions that are equipped by MFP, as well as CPCA API specification and version numbers that is necessary for acquiring the values such as maximum number of copies, etc.
DIS	Dynamic Service Loading Installer Service. Receives data from the DSL on the MEAP platform. Enables an application to install to two or more devices.
DSL	Dynamic Service Loading. While the SMS installs a license file and application to one device, the DSL can install them to two or more devices. It consists of MEAP ESM and the DIS.
Esplet	Esplet Type Application. A type of MEAP application that does not have a user interface on the device console or on the web browser. The term of "Esplet" is a coinage by Canon inspired from Applet, Servlet, and "Espresso".
File descriptor	With a file descriptor, an OS identifies the files that a program accesses. The file descriptor includes information such as file name and size as well as the identifier. An OS determines files to operate with the identifier.
iR Native Application	The functionalities that existing imageRUNNER has such as Copy, Universal Send and Mailbox.
ISV	Independent Software Vender. Software manufacturer who develops and/or sells applications and tools but does not entire computer systems. Refers application developer in this document.
J2ME	Java 2 Platform Micro Edition. One of Java Platforms licensed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. It is applied for MEAP. Other devices such as cellular phones and PDA.
Java	A programming language developed by Sun Microsystems, in the U. S. A. Low dependent on models and OSes and runs on various platforms. Taking advantage of this feature, many applications that runs on web servers uses Java. The MEAP platform uses J2ME - a type of Java.
Java Script	A script language developed by Netscape Communications, in the U.S. A., runs on web browsers such as Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer. Allows web designers to create interactive pages with HTML files such as animated buttons and display of timetables.
Java VM	JAVA Virtual Machine. The Java byte code interpreter. The Virtual Machine acts as an interpreter for processing the byte code using the native instruction set.
License Access Number	A number issued for accessing license file. The Licensing server requires entries of application ID, expiration date/times information, and the number of access numbers, to issue license access numbers.
License File	A software manufacture of a MEAP application provides the users with the license files. Specifies the terms of agreement that a user concludes with the manufacturer. Required for installing a MEAP application.
Login Service	Manages user information of MEAP device. Authenticates users with user names and passwords. Three login services are available for MEAP device - Default Authentication, which provides department ID control, SDL (Simple Device Login) and SSO (Single Sign-On).
MEAP	Multifunctional Embedded Application Platform. Provides an environment for executing application programs on a peripheral device. Uses the Java platform (J2ME - Java 2 platform Micro Edition) to run Java application for MEAP.
MEAP AMS	MEAP Application Management System. The license issuing server that issues "License File" necessary for MEAP applications to be installed onto MEAP device. Also used for issuing the "License Access Number".
MEAP Application	Runs on MEAP platform. Consists of application files (*.jar) and the license file (*.lic).

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
MEAP Contents	Required to install an MEAP application to a MEAP device.
MEAP ESM	MEAP Enterprise Service Manager. One of software programs composing the DSL, to be installed on a PC in a Windows environment. Works as the interface with the DSL.
MEAP Specifications	MEAP Spec Version, the term used for the SDK. The version number that shows the APIs of the MEAP platform other than CPCA, such as network and security. The version number is not assigned for each device model.
MEAP device	imageRUNNER (iR) device that has MEAP Platform incorporated.
MFP	Multi Function Peripheral. Peripheral device that supports more than one function, such as digital copier, printer, scanner, and fax.
OSGi	Open Service Gateway Initiative. See "**http://www.osgi.org/**".
Portal Service	The service displayed on a Web browser by inputting the address "**http://<device IP address>:8000/**" or "**http://<device IP address>/**" A portal to access a MEAP device from a Web browser.
Proxy Server	Provides functions to store data fetched from remote servers. When a user request to display a web page that has been displayed and stored in the proxy, the proxy server read the stored data but does not access the remote server where the original page is present, for efficient access services. When a proxy server receives a URL from a PC, it searches the file in the cache and sends it to the PC if the requested file is found. If the requested file is not stored in the cache, it accesses the remote server of the URL to acquire the file and, at the same time, stores the acquired file in the cache so that the proxy server can quickly send the file at the next request.

Detail of License File



F-11-71

11.1.33 Option for exclusive individual measure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

-Display Setting of Copy Tab
Make a setting as to whether to display/hide the copy screen (copy tab) on the control panel. This is the specification for users who want to customize hiding it on control panel.

Default value
1: display

Setting range, item
0: hide 1: display

Setting Procedure
1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).

2) Press [COPIER] button.

3) Press [Option] button.

4) Press [BODY] button.

5) Press ← or → (arrow) button.

6) Press [UI-COPY] button.

7) Press either 0 (hide) or 1 (display) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.

8) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

-Error at starting up the MEAP application/Setting to hide JAM screen (level 2)
In the case that operation is restricted by MEAP application, hide the warning screen of error/JAM (such as JAM screen, door opening, no-toner). In the case that these errors occur, there will be a display indicating 'call the service personnel' etc.

MEMO:
Part of the warning screens is displayed if shifting to the device screen.
- As for the screens for jam and no-toner, the warning screen (animation) can be displayed by pressing the followings: [Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]
- As for the screen for door opening, the warning screen cannot be displayed because there is no display for [[Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]

Default value
1: No activation of warning display

Setting range, item
0: display warning screen 1: hide warning screen

Setting Procedure
1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).

2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.

3) Press [COPIER] button.

4) Press [Option] button.

5) Press [BODY] button.

6) Press ← or → button.

7) Press [ANIM-SW] button.

8) Press either 0 (display warning screen) or 1 (hide warning screen) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.

9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

-Setting of Screen Transition from MEAP Screen to the Standard Screen
In the case that the operation is restricted by MEAP application, make a setting to hide Native applications such as Copy/Send/Box. With this setting, disable screen transition with => key.

Default value
0: OFF (transit to Native screen)

Setting range, item
0: OFF (transit to Native screen) 1: ON (No-transition to Native screen)

Setting Procedure
1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then, by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).

2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.

3) Press [COPIER] button.

4) Press [Option] button.

5) Press [BODY] button.

6) Press ← (arrow) button.

7) Press [ANIM-DSP] button.

8) Press either 0 (transit to Native screen) or 1 (no-transition to Native screen) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.

9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

Chapter 12 e-maintenance/imageWARE Remote

Contents

12.1 e-maintenance/imageWARE Remote 12-1
12.1.1 Overview 12-1
12.1.2 Settings procedures 12-1
12.1.3 Troubleshooting guide 12-4
12.1.4 Service cautions 12-7

12.1 e-maintenance/imageWARE Remote

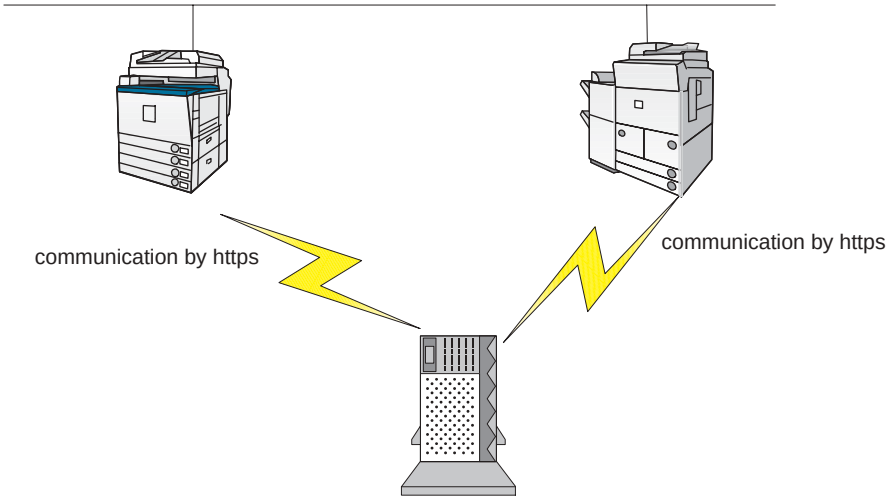
12.1.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote system allows a customer's device information and status to be monitored via the Internet on a server called UGW (Universal Gateway Server).

The following device information/ statuses can be monitored.
-tariff counters
-service mode counters
-parts specific counters
-mode specific counters
-ROM versions
-service call errors
-jam statuses
-consumables management statuses

Further, as the above is all customer information, https protocol is used for communication between UGW and the device, providing enhanced security.



F-12-1

12.1.2 Settings procedures

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

To monitor an iR device with e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote, the following settings are required.
(1) Advance confirmation
Confirm with the UGW administrator that the device to be monitored with e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote is registered in UGW.

(2) Advance preparations
Interview the user's system administrator in advance to find out the following information about the network.

Information item 1
IP address setting method
  Automatic setting (DHCP, RARP, BOOTP)
  Manual setting IP address, subnet mask and gateway address to be set

Information item 2
Is there a DNS server in use?
  If there is a DNS server in use, find out the following.
  Primary DNS server address
  Secondary DNS server address

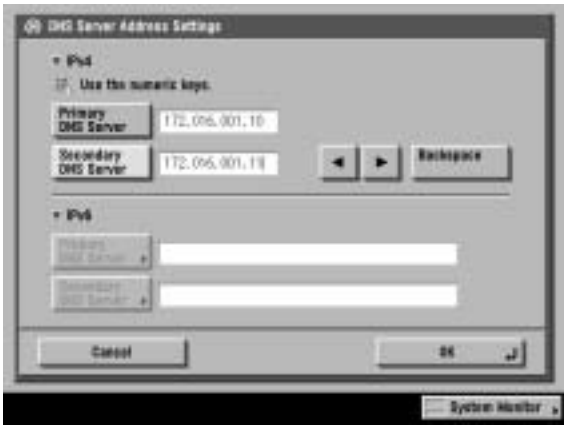
Information item 3
Is there a proxy server?
  If there is a proxy server in use, find out the following.
  Proxy server address

Information item 4
Is proxy server authentication required?
  If proxy server authentication is required, find out the following.
  User name and password required for proxy authentication
  Port No. for proxy server

(3) Network related settings
Based on the results of the information obtained in (2) Advance preparations, make the iR device network related settings in accordance with the following procedures.
a. Additional Functions>System administration settings>Network settings>TCP/ IP settings>IPv4 settings>IP address settings.
b. Set the IP address, based on the information obtained under (2) Advance preparations, Information item 1, described above.
 For automatic acquisition, select from [DHCP], [RARP], [BOOTP].
 For manual setting, set the IP address, subnet mask and gateway address.

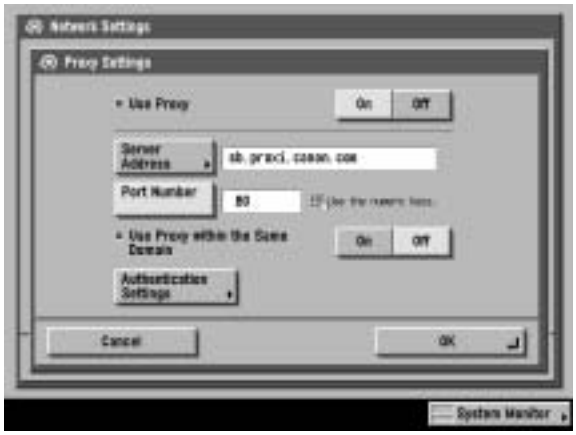
F-12-2

c. Press [OK].
d. Press [Close].
e. Additional Functions>System administration settings>Network settings>TCP/ IP settings>DNS settings>DNS server address settings.
f. Set the IP address, based on the information obtained under (2) Advance preparations, Information item 2, described above.



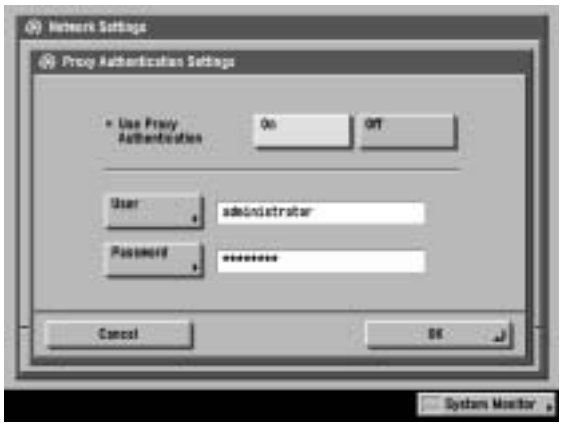
F-12-3

g. Press [OK].
h. Press [Close].
i. Additional Functions/ Registration>System administration settings>Network settings>TCP/ IP settings>Proxy settings.
j. Set the proxy server, based on the information obtained under (2) Advance preparations, Information item 3, described above.
Set Use Proxy to [On].
Enter the server address and port Number.



F-12-4

k. If proxy server authentication is required, press [Authentication Settings].
l. Set the following items, based on the information obtained under (2) Advance preparations, Information item 4, described above.
Set Use Proxy Authentication to [On].
Set User name.
Set Password.



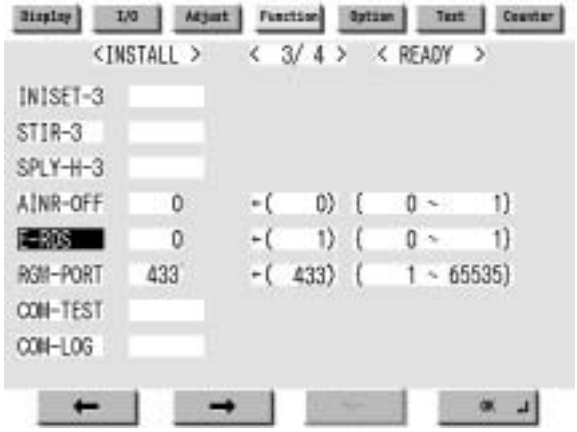
F-12-5

m. Press [OK].
n. Press [OK].
o. Press [Close].
p. Press the Reset key to quit the Additional Functions.
q. Turn the device OFF/ ON.

(4) e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote settings
a. Select Service mode>COPIER>Function>Clear>ERDS-DAT, and then press [OK].

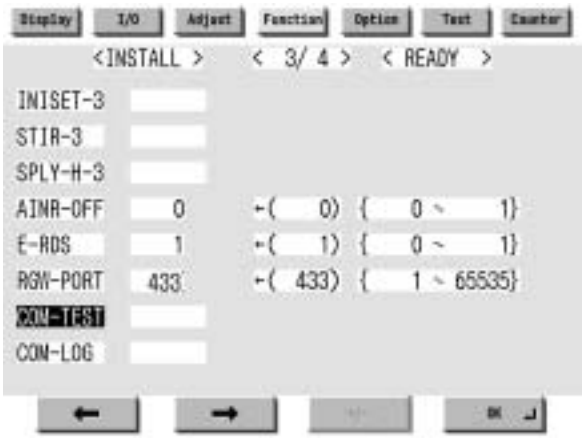
F-12-6

b. Select Service mode>COPIER>Function>INSTALL>E-RDS, enter [1] and press [OK]. This turns ON the function that enables communication with UGW.



F-12-7

c. Select Service mode>COPIER>Function>INSTALL>COM-TEST and press [OK]. This initiates the communication test between the device and UGW. If the communication is successful, OK is displayed. If NG (FAIL) appears, refer to the troubleshooting guide and repeat until OK is displayed.



F-12-8

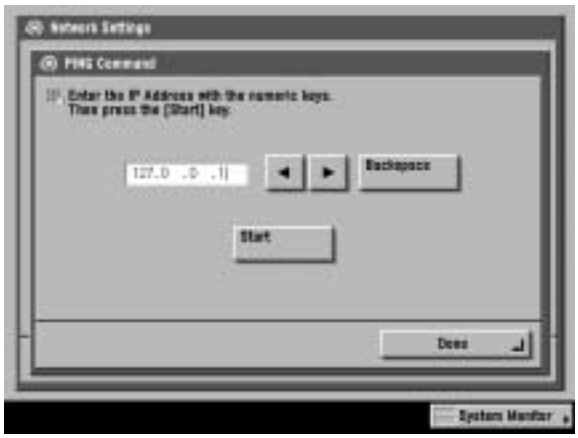
12.1.3 Troubleshooting guide

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If the communication test with UGW results in FAIL, follow the troubleshooting steps described below.

(1) Initial procedures
1) Check connection
Is the status indicator LED for the HUB port to which the main unit is connected ON?
YES: Proceed to Step 2).
NO: Check that the network cable is properly connected.

2) Loop back address confirmation
a) Additional Functions/ Registration>System administration settings>Network settings>TCP/ IP settings>IPv4 settings>PING command. Input 127.0.0.1, and press the Start button.



F-12-9

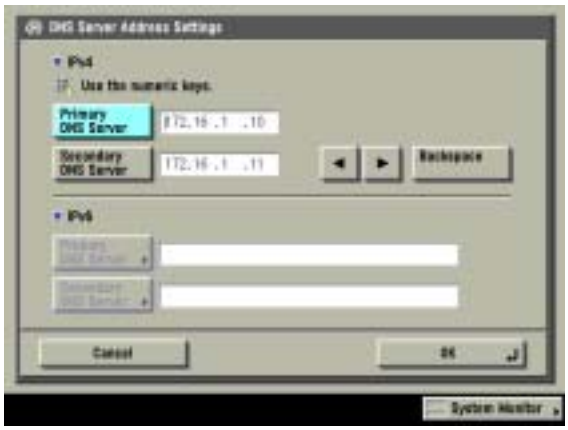
Is the response from the host displayed?

YES: Proceed to Step 3).
NO: There is a possibility that the main unit's network settings are wrong. Check the details of the IPv4 settings once more.

3) Confirmation from a another PC connected to same network.
a) Request the user to ping the main unit from a PC connected to same network.

Does the main unit respond?
YES: Proceed to Step 4).
NO: Confirm the details of the main unit's IP address and subnet mask settings.

4) Confirm DNS connection
a) Additional Functions>System administration settings>Network settings>TCP/ IP settings>DNS settings>DNS Server Address Settings, and note down both the primary and secondary DNS server addresses.



F-12-10

b) Press Cancel.
c) Additional Functions/ Registration>System administration settings>Network settings>TCP/ IP settings>IPv4 settings>PING command. Input the primary DNS server noted down in step a) as the IP address, and then press Start.

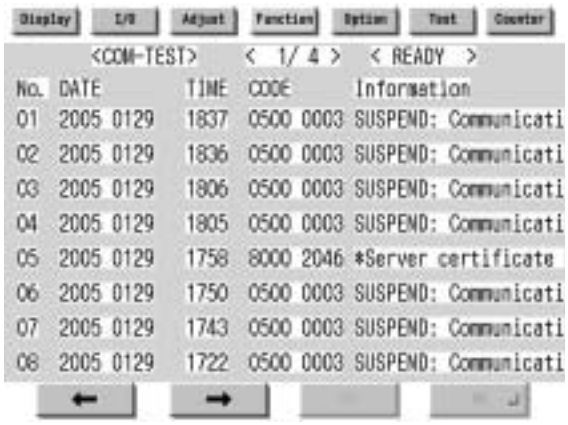
Is the response from the host displayed?

YES: Proceed to step Troubleshooting using communication log.
NO: Input the secondary DNS server noted down in step a) as the IP address, and then press Start.

Is the response from the host displayed?

YES: Proceed to Troubleshooting using communication log.
NO: There is a possibility that the DNS server address is wrong. Reconfirm the address with the user's system administrator.

(2) Troubleshooting using communication log
Enter Service mode>Function>INSTALL>COM-LOG and the following communication log will be displayed.



F-12-11

In the log, text strings that start with * are communication test (COM-TEST) error logs. (See line 5 in the illustration above.)
Pressing on a line that begins with an * will display further details, as per the illustration below.)

F-12-12

A detailed description of the error appears below 'Information'. Press the OK button to return to the log. Details of the errors and their remedies are as described below.

T-12-1

	Error text string	Error description	Cause	Remedy
1	SUSPEND: Communication test not performed	E-RDS is ON, but the communication test has not completed.	E-RDS has been booted up (device reboot) while E-RDS was ON but the communication test had not yet been performed.	Service mode>Function>INSTALL>COM-TEST
2	Event Registration has failed.	Event waiting error	Processing (event processing) within the device has failed.	Turn the device OFF/ ON. If the error occurs again even after OFF/ ON, replace the device system software. (Upgrade)
3	URL scheme error (not https)	URL scheme error	The header of the URL of the registered UGW is not in https format.	Check that the value of Service mode>Function>Install>RGW-ADR is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010.
4	Server connection error	UGW connection error	Displayed in the event of a TCP/IP communication fault. Also displayed when an attempt is made at communication with the device IP address not set.	Check the network connection, as per the initial procedures.
5	URL server specified is illegal	UGW server specification URL error	A URL different to that specified by the UGW has been set.	Check that the value of Service mode>Function>Install>RGW-ADR is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010.
6	Proxy connection error	Proxy connection error	Cannot connect to proxy server.	Check proxy server address and re-enter if necessary.
7	Proxy authentication error	Proxy authentication error	Proxy authentication error failed.	Check the user name and password required in order to login to the proxy, and re-enter if necessary.
8	Server certificate error	Server certificate error	-No route certificate installed in device. -Certificate other than that initially registered in the user's operating environment is being used, but has not been registered with the device.	Install latest device system software. (Upgrade)
9	Server certificate expired	Server certificate expired	-The route certificate registered with the device has expired. -Certificate other than that initially registered in the user's operating environment is being used, but has not been registered with the device. -The device time and date is outside of the certificated period.	Check that the device time and date are correctly set. If the device time and date are correct, upgrade to the latest system software.
10	Unknown error	Unknown error	Some other kind of communication error has occurred.	Try again after a period of time. If the same error occurs again, check the UGW status with the UGW administrator.
11	SOAP Fault	SOAP communication error	SOAP communication error has occurred.	Check that the value of Service mode> Function >Install> RGW-PORT is 433.
12	Server response error (NULL)	UGW response error(https communication error)	Displayed when communication with UGW has been successful, but an error of some sort has prevented UGW from responding. When (Null) is displayed at the end of the message, this indicates that there has been an error in the HTTPS communication method.	Try again after a period of time. If the same error occurs again, check the UGW status with the UGW administrator.
13	Server response error(Hexadecimal)	UGW response error(UGW error)	Displayed when communication with UGW has been successful, but an error of some sort has prevented UGW from responding.(Hexadecimal) displayed at the end of the message is an error code returned by UGW. In the case of this kind of error only, [Server detailed error] is displayed at the end of the error information.	Try again after a period of time.
14	Device internal error	Device internal error	An internal error, such as memory unavailable, etc., has occurred during a device internal error phase.	Switch the device OFF/ ON. Or, replace the device system software. (Upgrade)
15	Server schedule is invalid	Schedule transmission settings are in correct.	During the communication test, there has been some kind of error in the schedule values passed from UGW.	When the error occurs, report the details to the support department. Then, after the UGW side has responded, try the communication test again.
16	Server response time out	UGW response time out	Due to network congestion, etc., the response from UGW does not come within the specified time. (HTTPS level time out)	If this error occurs when the communication test is being run, wait some time and run the test again.
17	Service not found	Service not found (incorrect path)	There is a mistake in the UGW URL, and UGW cannot be accessed.	Check that the value of Service mode > Function > Install > RGW-ADR is https:// a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010.
18	E-RDS switch is set OFF	E-RDS is invalid.	A communication test has been attempted with the E-RDS operation switch still OFF.	Set Service mode> Function >Install>E-RDS to 1, and then run Service mode> Function>Install> COM-TEST.
19	Server schedule does not exist	There is no schedule for the connected device.	Blank schedule data have been received from UGW.	Check the device settings status with the UGW administrator.
20	Network is not ready, try later	Network not ready	Communication attempted without confirming network connection, just after booting up a device in which the network preparations are not ready. (Network connection not established within 60 seconds of device boot up.)	Check the network connection, as per the troubleshooting initial procedures. Run Service mode>Function> Install<COM-TEST about 60 seconds after turn on the device.
21	URL error	URL settings error	Non-URL text string entered in URL field.	Check that the value of Service mode>Function>Install>RGW-ADR is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010.
22	Proxy address resolution error	Proxy address resolution error	Cannot connect to proxy server.	Check that the proxy server name is correct. If the proxy server name is correct, check the DNS connection, as per the troubleshooting initial procedures.

	Error text string	Error description	Cause	Remedy
23	Server certificate verification error	Server certificate verification error (URL check)	The server URL and the server certificate URL are not correct.	Check that the value of Service mode>Function>Install>RGW-ADR is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010.
24	Server address resolution error	UGW server address resolution error	The UGW server name has not been resolved.	Check that the value of Service mode>Function >Install>RGW-ADR is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/ agentif010.If the value is correct, check the DNS connection, as per the troubleshooting initial procedures.

12.1.4 Service cautions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

After performing the following service actions, it is necessary to perform Service mode>COPIER>Function>Clear>ERDS-DAT and Service mode>COPIER>Function >INSTALL>COM-TEST. Failure to do so will result in abnormality of the UGW counter transmission.
- System upgrade
- HDD format and system installation
- COPIER>Function>Clear>MN-CONT

Also, after replacing the main controller board, all settings must be reprogrammed.

The following settings in service mode must not be change unless there are specific instructions to do so. Changing these values will cause error in communication with UGW.

Service mode>COPIER>Function>INSTALL>RGW-PORT
Default: 433

Service mode>COPIER>Function>INSTALL>RGW-ADR
Default: https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010

Chapter 13 Maintenance and Inspection

Contents

13.1 Periodically Replaced Parts 13-1
13.1.1 Overview 13-1
13.1.2 Periodically Replaced Parts 13-1
13.2 Durables and Consumables 13-1
13.2.1 Overview 13-1
13.2.2 ADF 13-1
13.2.3 Reader 13-1
13.2.4 Printer Unit 13-2
13.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure 13-3
13.3.1 Scheduled Servicing for Reader Unit 13-3
13.3.2 Scheduled Servicing for the Printer Unit 13-4
13.4 Cleaning 13-7
13.4.1 Cleaning Fixing Entrance Guide 13-7
13.4.2 Cleaning the Mirror inside CCD Unit 13-8
13.4.3 Cleaning Film Bias Static Eliminator 13-11

13.1 Periodically Replaced Parts

13.1.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine has parts that must be replaced on a periodical basis to ensure a specific level of functional performance. (The loss of the function of any of these parts will significantly affect the machine performance, regardless of the presence/absence of external changes or damage.)
If possible, schedule the replacement so that it coincides with a scheduled service visit.

The timing of replacement may vary depending on the site environment or user habit.

Checking the Timing of Replacement
Use the following service mode item to check the timing of replacement:
COPIER> COUNTER> PRDC-1

13.1.2 Periodically Replaced Parts

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

This machine does not have parts that require periodical replacement.

13.2 Durables and Consumables

13.2.1 Overview

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine has parts that may require replacement once or more during the period of product warranty because of wear or damage. Replace them as needed by referring to their indicated estimated lives.
Checking the Timing of Replacement
Use the following service mode item to check the timing of replacement:

- Host machine
  COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1
- Option
  COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-2

The value is the mean value collected from the results of evaluation. The parts number may change because of changes in design.

13.2.2 ADF

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-13-1

As of Apr. 2008

Ref.	Parts name	Parts No.	Q'ty	Life	Remarks
1	Pickup roller	FM3-6892	1	80000 sheets	The number of document sheets that have been fed can be checked in the service mode of the host machine.
2	Separation pad	FL2-9942	1	80000 sheets	
3	Feed guide (dust collection tape)	FL2-9935	1	40000 sheets	
4	Stamp	FB5-9410	1	7000 sheets	Replace it when the stamp image becomes faint.

The value is the mean value collected from the results of evaluation. The parts number may change because of changes in design.

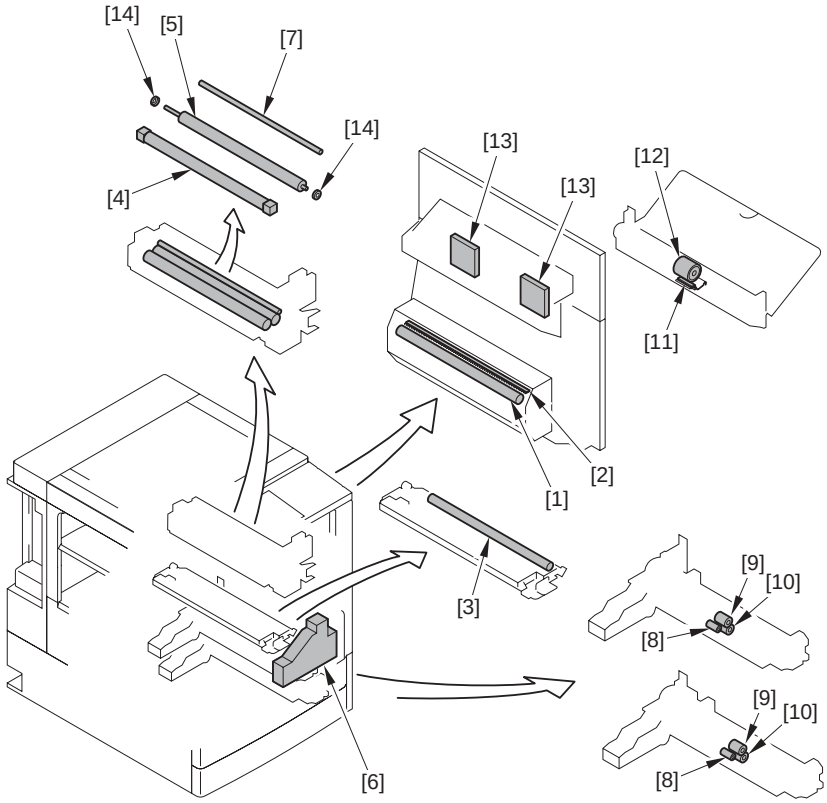
13.2.3 Reader

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The reader unit does not have parts that are classified as durables.

13.2.4 Printer Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-13-1

T-13-2

As of Jun. 2008

Ref.	Parts name	Parts No.	Q'ty	Life	Remarks
[1]	Transfer roller	FC5-1121	1	150,000 prints	
[2]	Static eliminator holder	FL2-0247	1	150,000 prints	
[3]	Developing cylinder	FL2-0376	1	480,000 prints	
[4]	Fixing film unit	FM3-6166	1	240,000 prints	iR3245/3235, 100V
		FM3-7070		240,000 prints	iR3245/3235, 120V
				150,000 prints	iR3230, 120V
		FM3-7071		240,000 prints	iR3245/3235, 230V
				150,000 prints	iR3230, 230V
		FM3-7062		150,000 prints	iR3225, 100V
		FM3-7068			iR3225, 120V
		FM3-7069			iR3225, 230V
[5]	Pressure roller	FC5-7207-010	1	240,000 prints	iR3245/3235
				150,000 prints	iR3230
		FC7-0242		150,000 prints	iR3225
[6]	Waste toner box	FM2-0303	1	85,000 prints	iR3245/3235
				75,000 prints	iR3225/3230
[7]	Fixing heat discharge roller	FB5-4931	1	240,000 prints	iR3245/3235
				150,000 prints	iR3225/3230
[8]	Pickup roller	FB6-3405	2	120,000 prints	No. of actual use
[9]	Feed roller	FC6-7083	2	120,000 prints	No. of actual use
[10]	Separation roller	FC6-6661	2	120,000 prints	No. of actual use
[11]	Manual feed separation pad	FC7-9481	1	240,000 prints	No. of actual use
[12]	Manual feed pickup roller	FB1-8581	1	240,000 prints	No. of actual use
[13]	Heat discharge fan filter	FM3-9441	2	240,000 prints	iR3245/3235
				150,000 prints	iR3225/3230
[14]	Pressure roller bushing	RS5-1446	2	300,000 prints	iR3225 only

The value is the mean value collected from the results of evaluation. The parts number may change because of changes in design.

13.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure

13.3.1 Scheduled Servicing for Reader Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- As a rule, perform scheduled servicing every 120,000 prints.
- Before setting out on a scheduled visit, check with the Service Book, and take parts for which replacement is expected.
- If the power plug is exposed to dust, humidity, or oily smoke, the resulting buildup can prove to be a fire hazard. (The buildup of dust, for instance, can absorb moisture and suffer insulating failure.)
  Be sure to disconnect the power plug on a periodical basis, and remove any buildup of dust and dirt with a dry cloth.

Work Procedure
1) Report to the person in change, and have an understanding of the situation.
2) Record the counter reading, and check the faulty prints.
3) Check the following items, and adjust or clean the parts as needed.

T-13-3

Item		
Test copy	image density	
	background (for soiling)	
	characters (for clarity)	
	margin	
	fixing	misregistration, soiled back
	margin (single-sided)	leading edge: 2.5±1.5 mm
		left: 2.5±1.5 mm
	margin (double-sided)	leading edge: 2.5±2.0 mm
		left edge: 2.5±2.0 mm
Laser exposure system	dust-blocking glass (cleaning)	
Feeding system	toner/feed guide	
	fixing inlet guide	
Developing system	developing butting spacer	

4) Check the waste toner collection case.
   If the case is half full or more, empty it in an appropriate bag for collection. Or, replace the waste toner collection case.

- When disposing of the waste toner, be sure to follow all applicable regulations of the local government.
- Do not dispose of waste toner in fire. (Doing so can cause an explosion.)

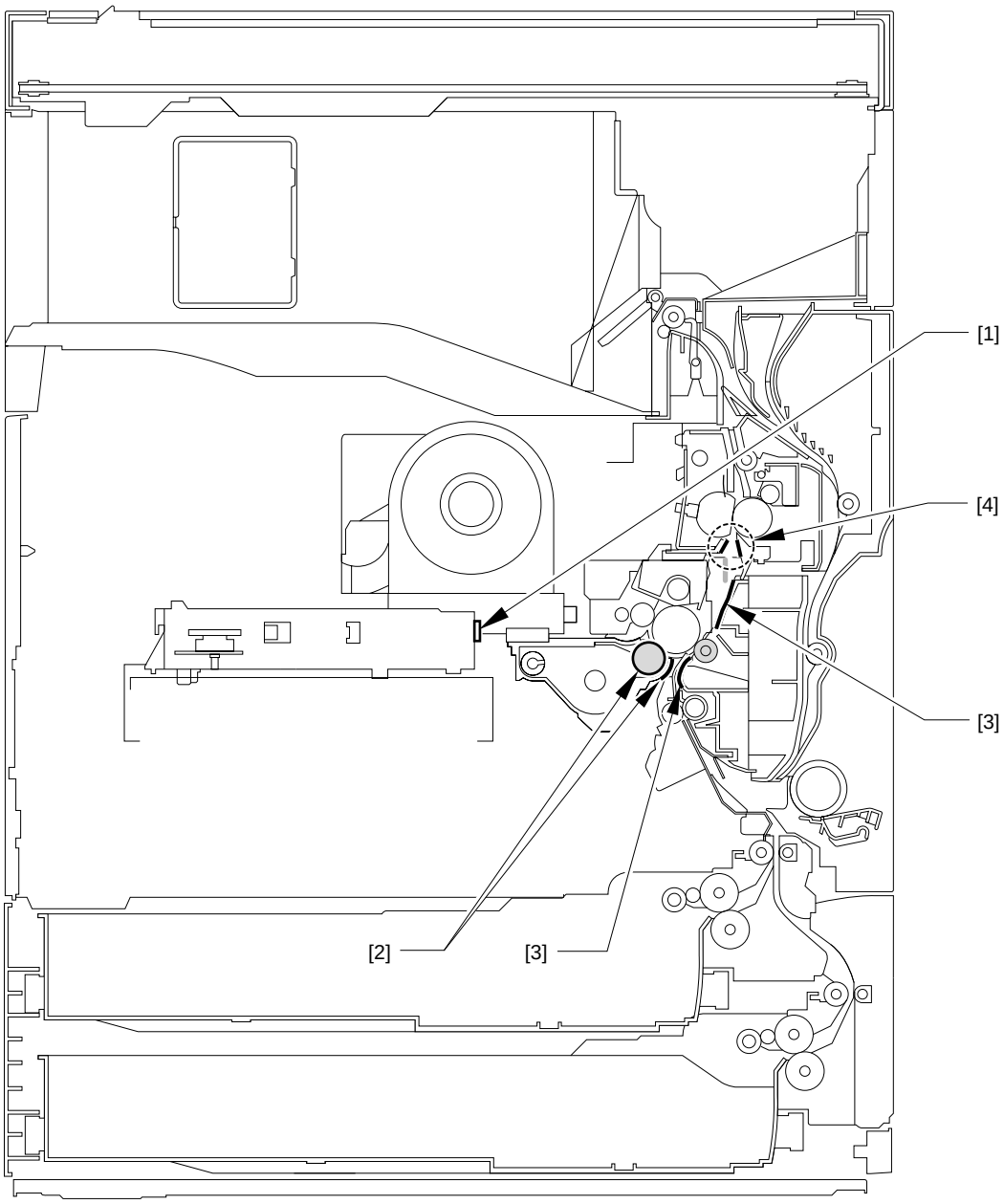
5) Clean the copyboard glass and the reading glass.
6) Make test copies.
7) Make sample copies.
8) Check the operation of the leakage breaker.
   Turn OFF the main power switch after shutdown sequence. Then, press the test switch of the leakage breaker to check that the leakage breaker works normally.
   If the leakage breaker lever shifts to OFF and power is blocked, it is normal.
   If the leakage breaker lever does not work normally, replace the leakage breaker and check again.

   To restore the power after operation check
   8-1) Make sure that the main power switch is OFF.
   8-2) Turn the leakage lever ON.
   8-3) Turn ON the main power switch.
9) Put the sample copies in order, and clean up the area around the machine.
10) Record the latest counter readings.
11) Fill out the form in the Service Book, and report to the person in charge.

13.3.2 Scheduled Servicing for the Printer Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

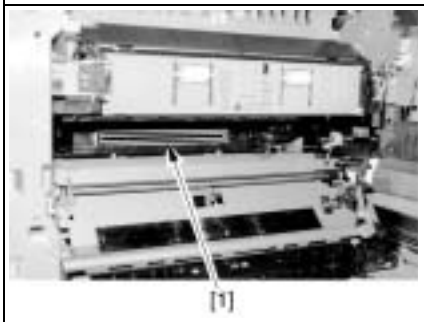
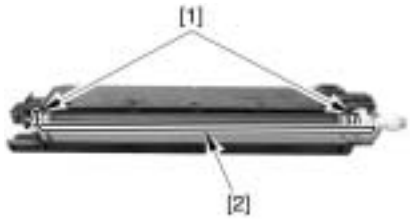
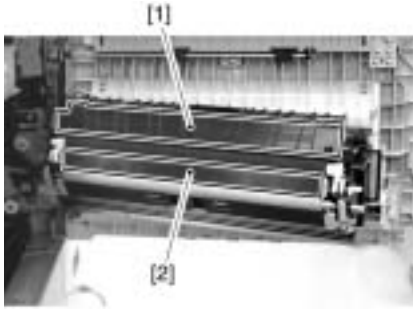
⚠
Do not use solvents or oils other than those indicated.

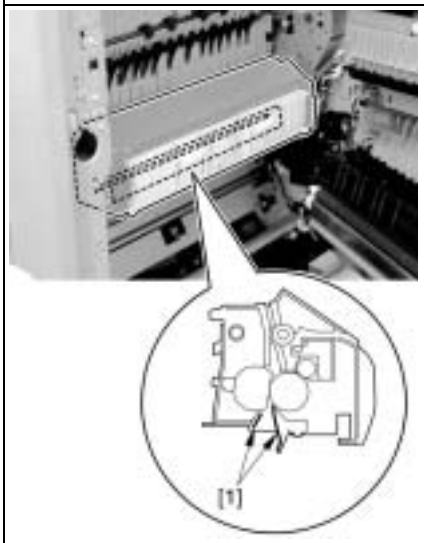


F-13-2

[1]Dust-blocking glass (clean)
[2]Photosensitive drum butting spacer/feed guide (clean)
[3]Transfer/feed guide (clean)
[4]Fixing inlet guide (clean)

T-13-4

Location		Task	Interval	Remarks
Laser scanner assembly	Dust-blocking glass  [1] Dust-blocking glass <Access method> Open the right cover.	Clean	120,000 prints	Wipe with dry cloth. If dirt cannot come off, wipe it with alcohol and wipe with dry cloth. Make sure to wipe it in the same direction.
Developing assembly	Photosensitive drum butting spacer/feed guide  [1] Photosensitive drum butting spacer [2] Feed guide <Access method> Remove the drum unit and the developing assembly.	Clean	120,000 prints	Wipe with dry cloth.
Transfer assembly	Feed/transfer guide  [1] Feed guide [2] Transfer guide <Access method> Open the right cover.	Clean	120,000 prints	Wipe with dry cloth.

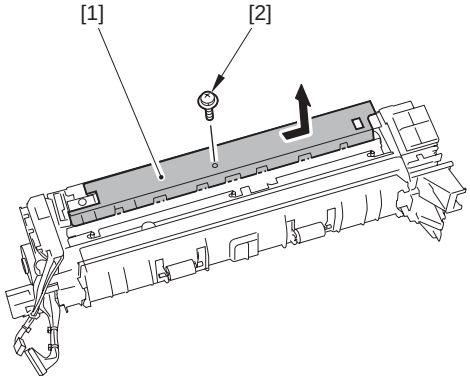
Location		Task	Interval	Remarks
Fixing assembly	Fixing inlet guide  [1] Fixing inlet guide <Access method> Remove the fixing unit. (page 13-7)[Cleaning Fixing Entrance Guide]	Clean	120,000 prints	Wipe with dry cloth. If dirt cannot come off, wipe it with alcohol. (page 13-7)[Cleaning Fixing Entrance Guide]

13.4 Cleaning

13.4.1 Cleaning Fixing Entrance Guide

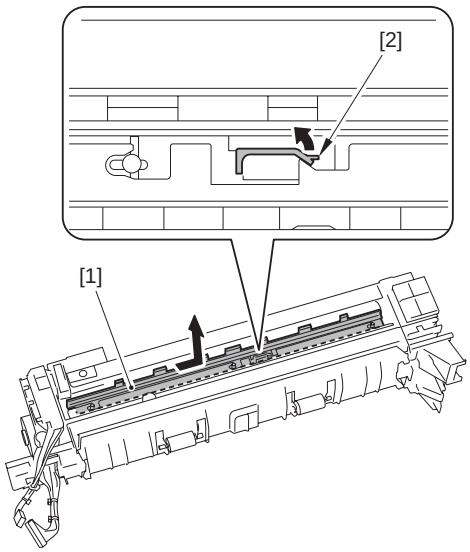
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the fixing assembly.
2) Remove the fixing entrance guide (upper) [1] in the direction of the arrow.
   - 1 screw with washer [2]



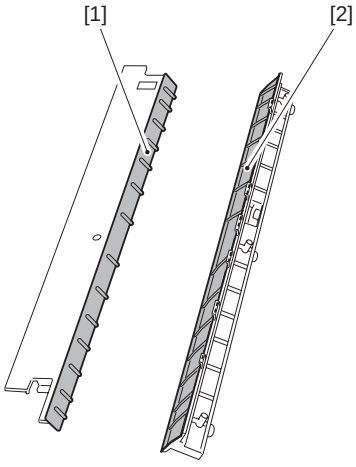
F-13-3

3) While pushing up the claw [2], remove the fixing entrance guide (lower) [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-13-4

4) Wipe the fixing entrance guide (upper) [1] and the fixing entrance guide (lower) [2] with a dry lint free paper or with it moistened with alcohol to remove the sticking toner.



F-13-5

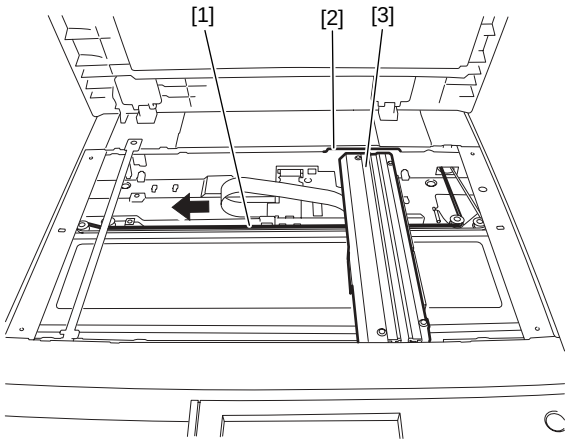
13.4.2 Cleaning the Mirror inside CCD Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

MEMO:
Cleaning of the mirror inside the CCD unit is not usually necessary. However, if white streaks, etc. appear on the image, cleaning can be performed on the mirror.

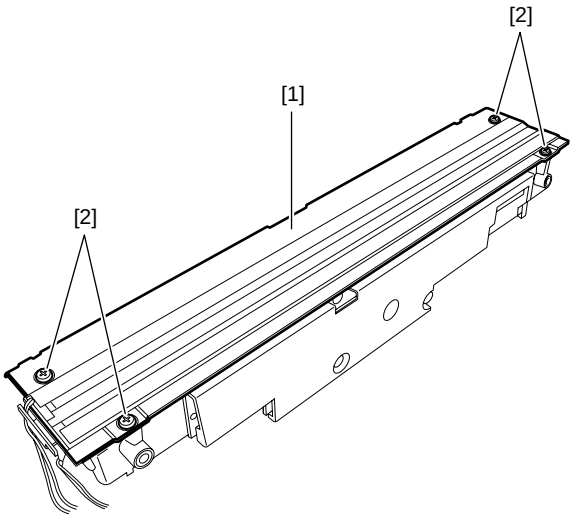
1) Open the copyboard or ADF.
2) Remove the copyboard glass.
3) Move the belt [1] to the direction indicated by the arrow, and place the CCD unit at the position [2] in the groove [3] of the frame.

⚠
Do not touch the LED on the CCD unit.



F-13-6

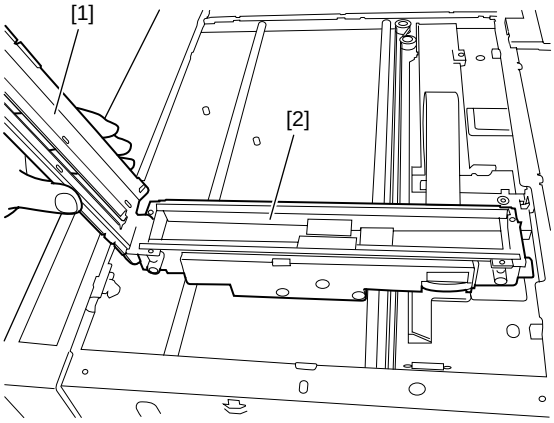
4) Open the CCD cover [1] of the CCD unit.
-4 screws [2]



F-13-7

5) Clean the mirror [2] with lint-free paper.

When cleaning the mirror, be sure to hold the CCD cover [1] by hand (so as not to damage the harness).

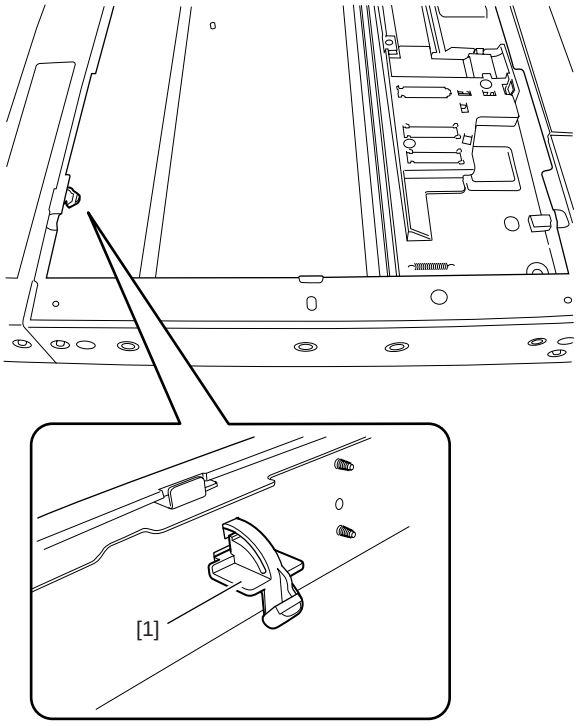


F-13-8

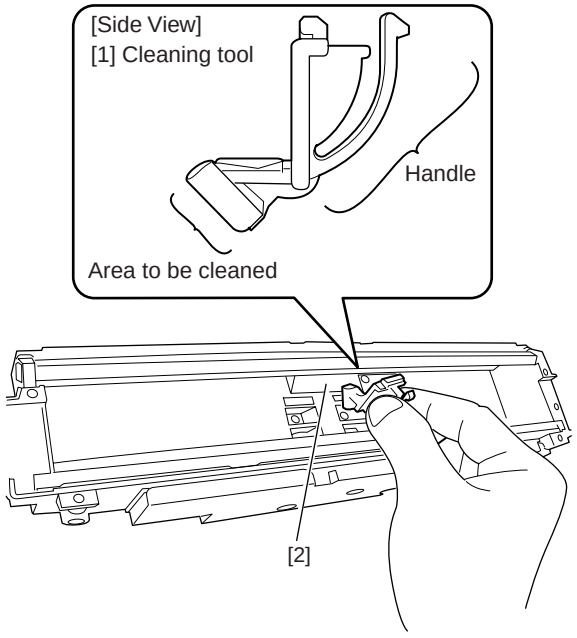
MEMO: When cleaning the mirror No. 5

Only when soil is attached to the mirror No. 5 inside the CCD unit, dry-clean the mirror with a special cleaning tool.

1) Remove the cleaning tool [1] inside the reader unit.



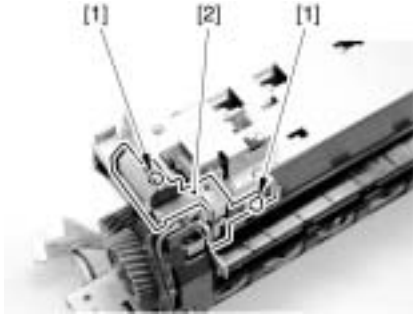
2) Dry-clean the mirror No. 5 [2] with the cleaning tool [1].



13.4.3 Cleaning Film Bias Static Eliminator

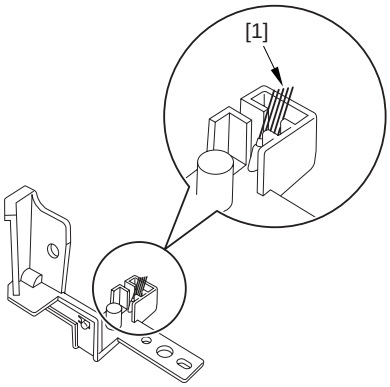
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Remove the fixing unit.
2) Remove the grounding plate [2].
   - 2 screws [1]



F-13-9

3) Clean the film bias static eliminator [1] on the back of the grounding plate to remove the toner lump.



F-13-10

Chapter 14 Standards and Adjustments

Contents

14.1 Image Adjustments 14-1
14.1.1 Standards for Image Position 14-1
14.1.2 Adjusting the Image Position 14-1
14.1.3 Left End Margin Adjustment (each pickup position basis) 14-2
14.2 Scanning System 14-4
14.2.1 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB or Initializing the RAM 14-4
14.2.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit 14-4
14.2.3 When Replacing the Copyboard Glass 14-4
14.2.4 When Replacing the ADF Scanning Glass 14-4
14.3 Laser Exposure System 14-6
14.3.1 After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit 14-6
14.4 Image Formation System 14-6
14.4.1 After Replacing Developing Assembly/Developing Cylinder 14-6
14.4.2 After Replacing Drum Unit 14-6
14.5 Electrical Components 14-6
14.5.1 After Replacing the Hard Disk 14-6
14.5.2 After Replacing the Main Controller 14-6
14.5.3 When Replacing DC Controller PCB 14-7
14.6 Pickup/Feeding System 14-7
14.6.1 When Replacing the Cassette 14-7
14.6.2 When Replacing the Duplex Unit 14-7
14.6.3 When Replacing the Manual Feed Tray 14-7
14.6.4 Registration of Paper Width Basic Value for Manual Feed Tray 14-7

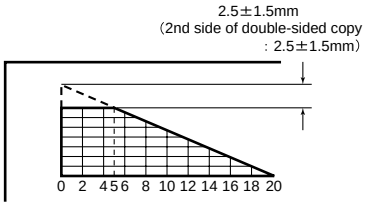
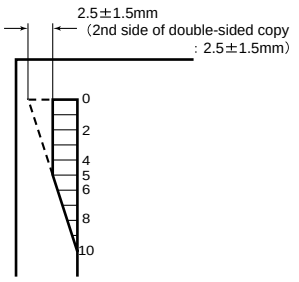
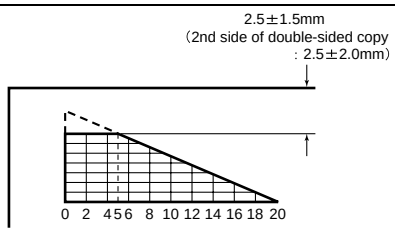
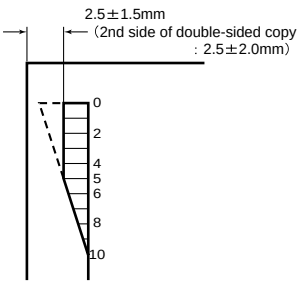
14.1 Image Adjustments

14.1.1 Standards for Image Position

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A print made at a magnification of 100% must meet the following standards for image margin/non-image width:

T-14-1

Leading Edge Non-Image Width	
Left Non-Image Width	
Margin Along the Leading Edge	
Left Image Margin	

14.1.2 Adjusting the Image Position

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

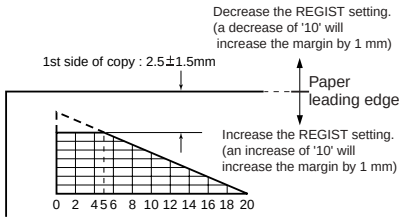
Copy 10 sheets from each pickup position to check that the image margin and non-image area is within the standard.

- Each cassette
- Pickup tray
- Side paper deck

If it is not within the standard, go through the following procedures to adjust it.

> ⚠ If changing the value of service mode item in this adjustment, enter the changed value in the service label.

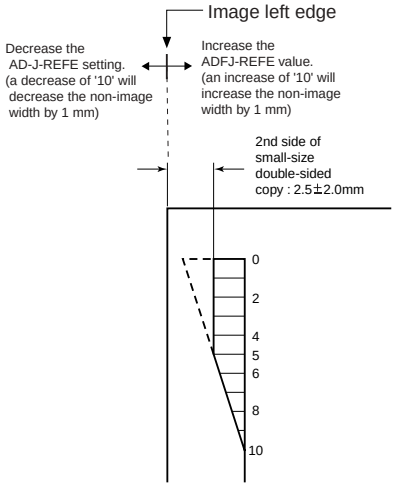
1. Adjusting the Leading Edge Image Margin
Use service mode to make adjustments:
COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> REGIST



F-14-1

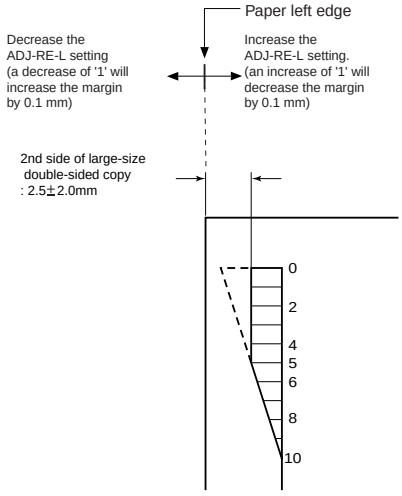
2. Adjusting the Left Image (1st side)
Mechanical Horizontal Registration Adjustment
The adjustment method varies depending on the pickup position. (page 14-2)[Left End Margin Adjustment (each pickup position basis)]

3. Adding the Left Image Margin (2nd side)
Small Size
Use service mode to make adjustments:
COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> ADJ-REFE



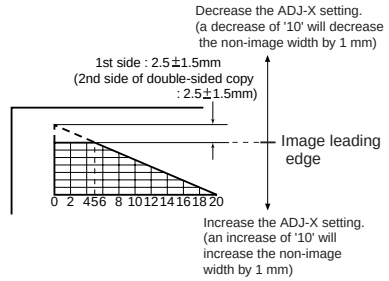
F-14-2

Large Size
Use service mode to make adjustments:
COPIER> ADJUST> FEED-ADJ> ADJ-RE-L



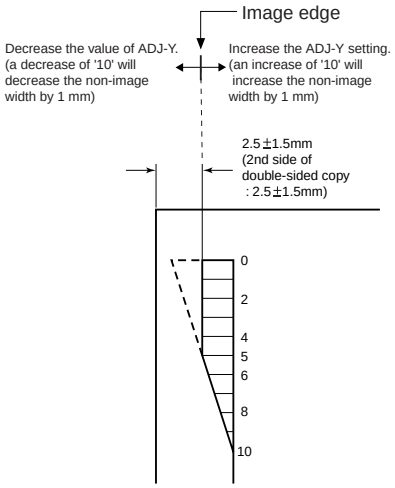
F-14-3

4. Adjusting the Leading Edge Non-Image Width
Use service mode to make adjustments:
COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> ADJ-X



F-14-4

5. Adjusting the Left Non-Image Width
Use service mode to make adjustments:
COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> ADJ-Y

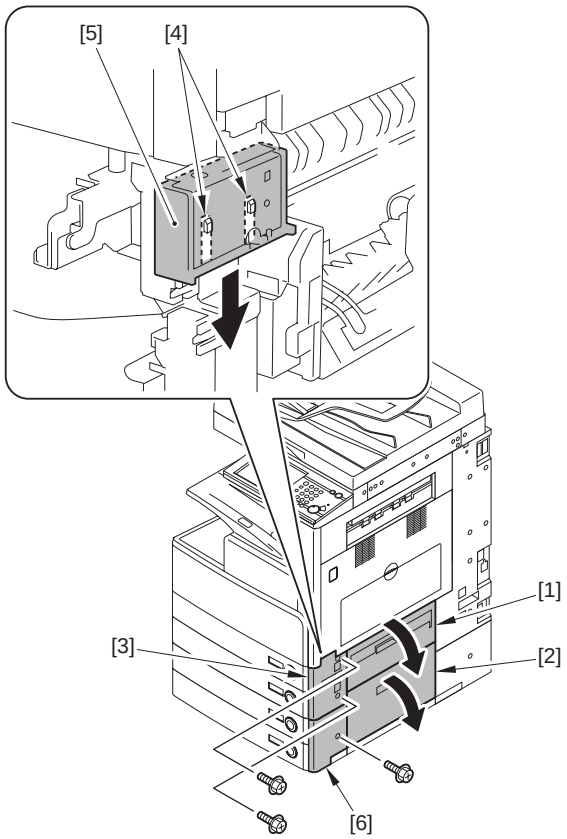


F-14-5

14.1.3 Left End Margin Adjustment (each pickup position basis)

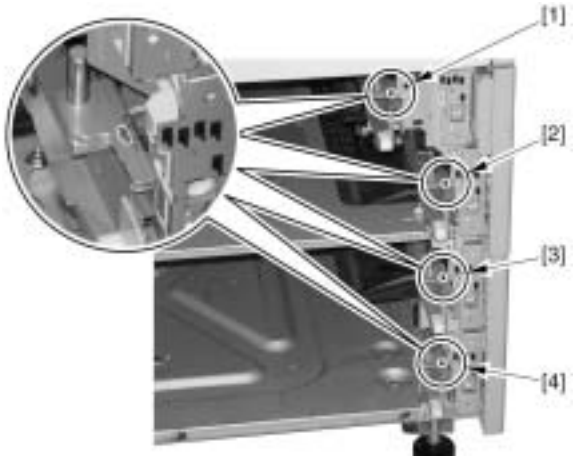
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A. In case of cassette pickup (cassette 1 to 4)
Cassette 3, 4 applies when the cassette pedestal (option) is installed.
1) Pull out the corresponding cassette for adjustment.
2) Remove the cover. Corresponding cover is dependent on the cassette level.
In case of cassette 1:
2-1) Open the cassette upper right cover [1] and the cassette lower right cover [2], then remove the right cover (lower front) [3].
- 2 screws
2-2) Remove the grip [5].
- 2 craws [4]
In case of cassette 2:
2-1) Open the cassette upper right cover [1] and the cassette lower right cover [2], then remove the right cover (lower front) [3].
- 2 screws
In case of cassette 3, 4:
2-1) Remove the pedestal front right cover [6].
- 1 screw



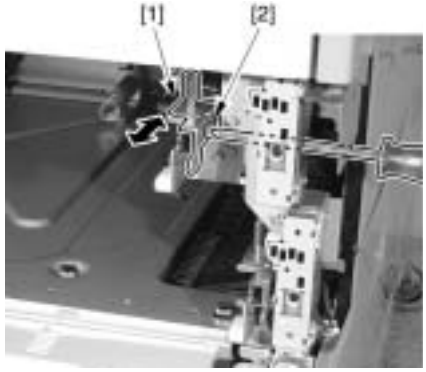
F-14-6

3) Check the scale position of the adjustment plate.
[1] For cassette 1
[2] For cassette 2
[3] For cassette 3
[4] For cassette 4



F-14-7

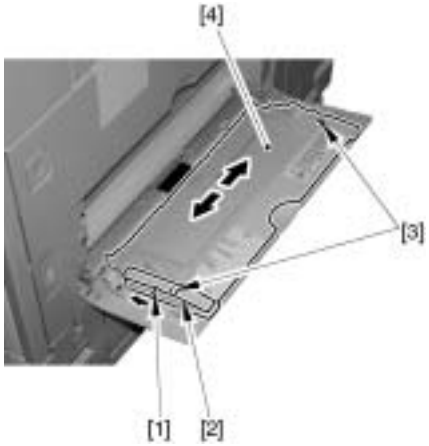
4) Loosen the screw [2] on the adjustment plate [1]. (Figure shows the cassette 1.)
5) Move the adjustment plate [1] toward front or back and tighten the screw [2].
If moving the plate toward front by 1 scale: Left image margin decreases by 1mm.
If moving the plate toward back by 1 scale: Left image margin increases by 1mm.



F-14-8

6) Make a print from the adjusted pickup cassette and check that the left margin is within the standard.

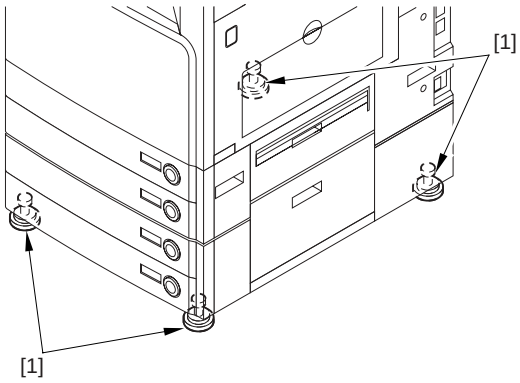
B. In case of manual feed tray pickup
1) Open the manual feed tray.
2) Move the tab [1] in the direction of the arrow and remove the side guide plate stopper [2].
3) Loosen the 2 screws [3] on the manual feed tray upper cover.
4) Move the manual feed tray upper cover [4] toward front or back and tighten the 2 screws [3].
If moving the plate toward front: Image left margin decreases.
If moving the plate toward back: Image left margin increases.



F-14-9

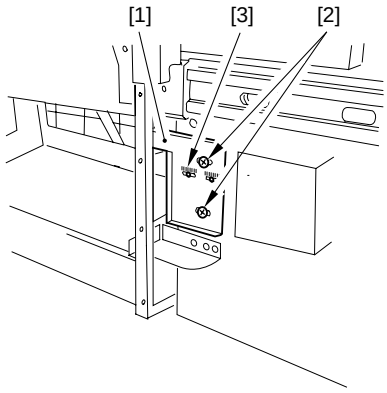
5) Make a print from the manual feed tray and check that the left margin is within the standard.

C. In case of paper deck pickup
1) Make sure that the 4 pedestal adjusters contact to the floor.



F-14-10

2) Pull out the paper deck storage.
3) Disengage the paper deck from the host machine.
4) Adjust the position of the latch holding plate [1] on the deck open solenoid by loosening the 2 screws [2].
Use the latch holding plate scale [3] for the reference of adjustment.



F-14-11

5) Make a print from the paper deck and check that the left margin is within the standard.

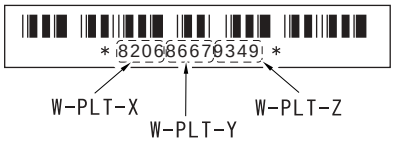
14.2 Scanning System

14.2.1 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB or Initializing the RAM

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠ Be sure to output the latest P-PRINT before replacing the reader controller PCB.
> -In the case of executing RAM clear (initialization) for the reader controller without replacing the PCB, use SST to upload the backup data of R-CON, and download it after initializing the RAM so that you do not need to perform the following

1.Reader Unit-Related Adjustments
1)Use SST to download the latest system software (R-CON)
2)Select the following in Service Mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > R-CON.
Then, select OK to initialize the RAM; thereafter, turn off and then on the main power.
3)Enter the following values in Service Mode:
a. Values indicated on the service label (found inside the reader left cover)
a-1. CCD read position adjustment (for fixed reading)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X
a-2. Main (horizontal) scanning direction position adjustment (fixed reading)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y
a-3. Shading position adjustment (fixed reading)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-S
a-4. Main (horizontal) scanning direction MTF
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M1/M2/M3/M4/M5/M6/M7/M8/M9
Then, confirm the setting by selecting the following:
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > CCD-CHNG
a-5. Copyboard sub (vertical) scanning direction magnification ratio adjustment
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X-MAG
a-6. PASCAL offset (black) adjustment
COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL > OFST-P-K
a-7. 100% color displacement correction value
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100-RG/100-GB
a-8. 50% color displacement correction value
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50-RG/50-GB
b.Entering the data of the standard white plate
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>W-PLT-X/Y/Z



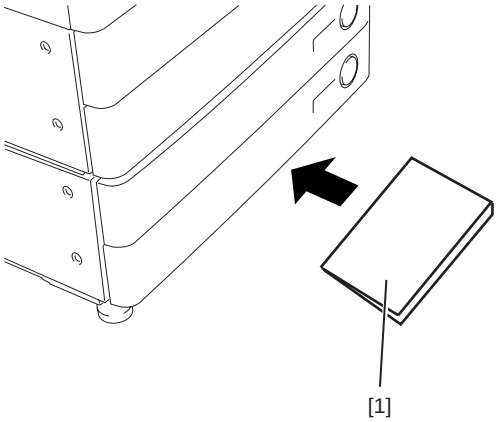
F-14-12

2.ADF-Related Adjustments

> ⚠ This machine stores ADF-related service data in the reader controller RAM. Thus, if you have replaced the reader controller or initialized the RAM, you will also have to make ADF-related adjustments.

1)Enter P-PRINT value you have previously printed out in Service Mode.
a. Main (horizontal) scanning direction position adjustment (for stream reading)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-DF
b. Trail edge registration adjustment
FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST
c. Magnification ratio adjustment
FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED
2)Make adjustments using the following items:
a. Tray width adjustment
FEEDER > FUNCTION > TRY-A4
FEEDER > FUNCTION > TRY-A5R
FEEDER > FUNCTION > TRY-LTR
FEEDER > FUNCTION > TRY-LTRR
b. CCD read position adjustment (stream reading)
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS
c. White level adjustment
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1 (B/W)
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2 (B/W)
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL3 (Color)
COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL4 (Color)

When you have made all the foregoing adjustments, put the P-PRINT [1] (you have printed out) in the service book case, and dispose of the previous printout (P-PRINT).

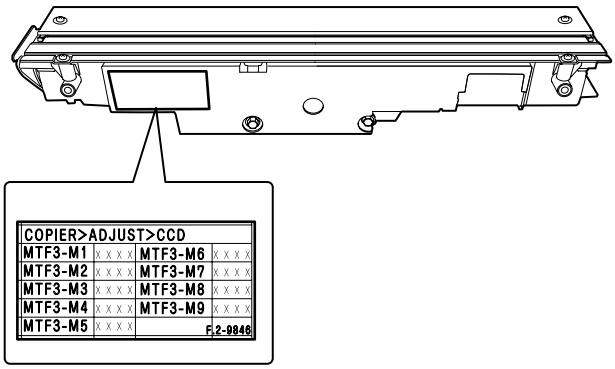


F-14-13

14.2.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Go through the following procedure after replacing the CCD unit.
1)Enter the value on the label attached to the CCD unit in Service Mode (following 2 items).



F-14-14

-COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M1/M2/M3/M4/M5/M6/M7/M8/M9
Then, confirm the setting by selecting the following:
-COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > CCD-CHNG
2)Note down the above correction values on the service label inside the host machine's left cover.
3)Execute the following in Service Mode:
-ADF whit level adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/WLVL2/WLVL3/WLVL4)

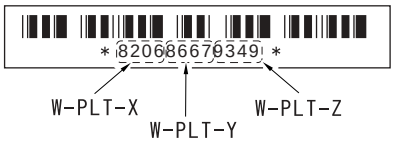
14.2.3 When Replacing the Copyboard Glass

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Execute the following in Service Mode:

> ⚠ Be sure to execute white plate data adjustment before the ADF white level adjustment.

-Enter the numeric figure on the copyboard glass (see the figure below) by selecting the following in Service Mode:
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X/Y/Z
Enter the standard white plate data



F-14-15

-ADF white level adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/2/3/4)

14.2.4 When Replacing the ADF Scanning Glass

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Execute the following in Service Mode:
- ADF white level adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/2/3/4)

14.3 Laser Exposure System

14.3.1 After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

When replacing the laser unit, enter the values recorded on the label on the laser scanner unit to be replaced for the following in service mode.

Difference in magnification between the lasers
[1] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ1-K
[2] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ2-K
[3] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ3-K

Difference in phase between the lasers
[4] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ4-K
[5] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ5-K
[6] COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LDADJ6-K

14.4 Image Formation System

14.4.1 After Replacing Developing Assembly/Developing Cylinder

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Execute toner stirring.
COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> STIR-K
2) Clear the counter of consumables.
COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> DVG-CYL
3) Execute auto gradation correction (additional function mode)
Additional functions> Adjustment/cleaning> Auto gradation correction

⚠
A test copy that is made right after the toner has been stirred can be soiled on its back with a small amount of stray toner. The symptom will likely disappear when 3 or so copies are made.

14.4.2 After Replacing Drum Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Execute APVC correction
COPIER> FUNCTION> DPC> D-GAMMA

MEMO:
After the paper is picked up from the cassette 1, blank paper is delivered and APVC correction finishes automatically. (Paper size inside cassette does not matter.)

14.5 Electrical Components

14.5.1 After Replacing the Hard Disk

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Replace it to the HDD with service setting, and turn on the power of the host machine.
The machine starts writing the system software on each area of HDD and the writing progress is displayed on a control panel.

2) When writing is complete, follow the instruction to shutdown.
3) After replacing with the HDD set as Service Parts, start the host machine in safe mode (by pressing the 2 + 8 keys to turn on the main power switch).

MEMO:
The HDD set as Service Parts contains only the system software to start the host machine. When replacing with the HDD set as Service Parts, be sure to start the host machine in safe mode (by pressing the 2 + 8 keys to turn on the main power switch) and install all system software that have been installed on the previous HDD.

4) Downloading the system software
Download the system software that has been installed on the HDD before the replacement using SST (SYSTEM/LANGUAGE/RUI/MEAPCONT/TTS/ASR/TSTAMP/BROWSER/HELP/MEDIA/WebDAV/SDICT/KEY).
It may take approx. 5 min to start the host machine after downloading.
5) Follow the message on a control panel and press [Reset] to perform the down sequence.
6) Turn ON the main power.
7) Execute the following item in service mode;
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CA-KEY (level 2)
8) Execute shutdown and turn off/on the main power switch. (The main power switch is automatically turned off when the shutdown process is executed.)

MEMO:
Execution of the following may delete the keys/certificates used for encrypted communications and the CA certificates used for authentication of external server certificates:
- replacement of the HDD
- replacement of the main controller PCB/initialization of the RAM
If a key/certificate for encrypted communications has been deleted, the control panel screen will indicate a message to the effect that the key has been corrupted: however, the key/certificate/CA certificate installed at time of shipment from the factory may be
brought back by executing the following:
COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>CA-KEY. If doing so has failed, use the SST to install the key/certificate/CA certificate, and execute CA-KEY once again.

⚠ **Points to Note When Executing Service Mode Item CA-KEY**
If the user has generated/added a key/certificate/CA certificate on his/her own, executing CA-KEY will also delete these files. Inform the user of this, and ask him/her to re-install them as necessary after the execution of CA-KEY.

14.5.2 After Replacing the Main Controller

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

⚠ Before Starting the Work (backing up the data)
If possible, perform the following:
- Using the SST, download the data stored in the RAM of the main controller.
- Print out the user mode/service mode data.

1) When replacing the main controller PCB, transfer the following parts from the old PCB to the new PCB.
For the replacement procedure, see the description in Disassembly/Assembly.

[1] HDD
[2] Image memory (SDRAM)
[3] Memory PCB
[4] Plate

2) Turn on the power supply. If backing up the SRAM data on the old PCB is completed (downloading using SST is successful), upload the SRAM data.
3) Execute the following item in service mode;
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CA-KEY (level 2)
4) Turn off/on the power supply.

MEMO:
Execution of the following may delete the keys/certificates used for encrypted communications and the CA certificates used for authentication of external server certificates:
- replacement of the HDD
- replacement of the main controller PCB/initialization of the RAM
If a key/certificate for encrypted communications has been deleted, the control panel screen will indicate a message to the effect that the key has been corrupted: however, the key/certificate/CA certificate installed at time of shipment from the factory may be
brought back by executing the following:
COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>CA-KEY. If doing so has failed, use the SST to install the key/certificate/CA certificate, and execute CA-KEY once again.

⚠ **Points to Note When Executing Service Mode Item CA-KEY**
If the user has generated/added a key/certificate/CA certificate on his/her own, executing CA-KEY will also delete these files. Inform the user of this, and ask him/her to re-install them as necessary after the execution of CA-KEY.

14.5.3 When Replacing DC Controller PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> **Points to note when turning OFF the main power**
> To protect HDD, make sure to execute the shutdown sequence before turning OFF the main power switch.

Before replacement/RAM clear:
- Printout the setting value list in service mode.
  COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT

After replacement/RAM clear:
1) Execute DC controller setting value/counter clear.
   COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> DC-CON (RAM clear of DC controller PCB)
   COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> CNT-DCON (counter clear for service of DC controller PCB)
2) Turn OFF/ON the power. (Turning OFF/ON the power executes RAM clear).
3) If it was not available to upload the backup data due to DC controller brokerage etc. before replacement, enter the values described on the service label for each service mode item. However, the values on the service label may not be the latest, thus check the service mode items list (P-PRINT) printed in the previous step and enter the values on it.
4) Turn OFF/ON the power (turning OFF/ON the power activates the entered values of the each service mode items.).
5) Execute APVC correction.
   COPIER> FUNCTION> DPC> D-GAMMA
6) Execute auto gradation correction control (additional function mode).
   Additional functions> Adjustment/cleaning> Auto gradation correction
7) Enter the latest values into the each field on the service label.

14.6 Pickup/Feeding System

14.6.1 When Replacing the Cassette

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Execute check and adjustment of the horizontal registration (left margin) on the first/second side of the image. (page 14-1)[Adjusting the Image Position]

14.6.2 When Replacing the Duplex Unit

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Execute check and adjustment of the horizontal registration (left margin) on the second side of the image. (page 14-1)[Adjusting the Image Position]

14.6.3 When Replacing the Manual Feed Tray

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Resister the paper width basic value. (page 14-7)[Registration of Paper Width Basic Value for Manual Feed Tray]
2) Execute check and adjustment of the horizontal registration (left margin) on the first/second side of the image. (page 14-1)[Adjusting the Image Position]

14.6.4 Registration of Paper Width Basic Value for Manual Feed Tray

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Open the manual feed tray.
2) Load A4 paper in the manual feed tray in the horizontal direction and slide the manual feed tray width guide to align it with the loaded paper.
3) Select the following service mode item and highlight it, and then press OK.
   COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> MF-A4R
4) Go through the same procedures of paper width basic value registration for A6R and A4 as well.
   COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> MF-A6R
   COPIER> FUNCTION> CST> MF-A4

Chapter 15 Correcting Faulty Images

Contents

15.1 Making Initial Checks 15-1
15.1.1 Installation Procedure 15-1
15.1.2 Checking Paper 15-1
15.1.3 Checking Paper Set 15-1
15.1.4 Checking Consumables 15-1
15.1.5 Checking Periodical Service Item 15-1
15.1.6 Checking Each Unit/Each Function System 15-2
15.1.7 Others 15-2
15.2 Outline of Electrical Components 15-3
15.2.1 Clutch/Solenoid 15-3
15.2.1.1 Clutches and Solenoids (Reader) 15-3
15.2.1.2 Clutches and Solenoids (Printer) 15-3
15.2.2 Motor 15-4
15.2.2.1 Motors (Reader) 15-4
15.2.2.2 Motors (Printer) 15-4
15.2.3 Fan 15-5
15.2.3.1 Fans (Reader) 15-5
15.2.3.2 Fans (Printer) 15-5
15.2.4 Sensor 15-6
15.2.4.1 Sensors (Reader) 15-6
15.2.4.2 Sensors (Printer) 15-6
15.2.5 Switch 15-8
15.2.5.1 Switches (Reader) 15-8
15.2.5.2 Switches (Printer) 15-8
15.2.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others 15-8
15.2.6.1 Lamps, Heaters, and Others (Reader) 15-8
15.2.6.2 Lamps, Heaters, and Others (Printer) 15-9
15.2.7 PCBs 15-10
15.2.7.1 PCBs (Reader) 15-10
15.2.7.2 PCBs (Printer) 15-10
15.2.8 Connectors 15-12
15.2.8.1 Connectors (1/6) 15-12
15.2.8.2 Connectors (2/6) 15-14
15.2.8.3 Connectors (3/6) 15-16
15.2.8.4 Connectors (4/6) 15-18
15.2.8.5 Connectors (5/6) 15-20
15.2.8.6 Connectors (6/6) 15-22
15.2.9 Variable Resistors (VR), Light-Emitting Diodes (LED), and Check Pins by PCB 15-24
15.2.9.1 Variable Resistors (VR), Light-Emitting Diodes, and Check Pins by PCB 15-24
15.2.9.2 Points to Note About the Leakage Breaker 15-24

15.1 Making Initial Checks

15.1.1 Installation Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Make sure that the power voltage is kept within the standard voltage -/+ 10%.
- Install it away from heat and moisture (water faucet, water heater, humidifier etc), cold and dusty place or fire etc.
- Install the machine away from the place where ammonia gas is generated.
- Install the machine away from direct sunlight. If there is no alternative, tell customers to put curtain etc to prevent it.
- Install the machine in the well-ventilated place and in a horizontal position.
- Make sure that the power plug is properly plugged into outlet. Moreover, do not unplug it during nighttime.

15.1.2 Checking Paper

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Check that Canon recommended paper is used.
- Check that the paper does not absorb the moisture. Pick out the paper from a new bulk and make a print with it.

15.1.3 Checking Paper Set

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Check that the paper is properly set into the cassette and manual feed tray within the standard amount.
- When transparency paper is used, make sure that the paper is set in the manual feed tray in the proper direction.

15.1.4 Checking Consumables

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Check the consumable list and the consumable counter (COUNTER> DRBL-1, DRBL-2) and if any part reaches its life, replace it.

15.1.5 Checking Periodical Service Item

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Check the periodical service list and if any part reaches its maintenance timing, execute its maintenance operation.

15.1.6 Checking Each Unit/Each Function System

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Reader
- Check that there is no cut, dirt or any foreign particle on the scanner system parts.
- Check that the CCD unit moves smoothly and there is no dirt on the rail.
- Check that the lump light does not blink.
- Check that there is no dew condensation found on the scanning system parts.

Image formation system
- Check that the drum unit and developing assembly are properly installed.
- Check that there is no cut and dirt on the photosensitive drum.
- Check that the transfer roller is not worn and deformed and has no cut/dirt.

Fixing system
- Check that the fixing film and pressure roller is not worn and deformed and has no cut/dirt.
- Check that the fixing thermistor wire is not cut.
- Check that there is electrical conductivity among thermoswitch.

Pickup feed system
- Check that there is no foreign particle such as paper dust etc.
- Check that the pickup/feed/separation roller does not accumulate the paper dust. Check that these rollers are not worn and deformed and have no cut/dirt.
- Check that the registration roller/paper path roller is not worn and deformed and has no cut/dirt.
- Check that the feed guide is not worn and deformed and has no cut/dirt.
- Check that there is no edge fold/curl/wave/moisture absorption occurred on the paper.
- Check if using Canon recommended paper/transparency makes it better or not.

Drive system
- Check that the drive system does not get heavy load.
- Check that the gear is not worn and not get chipped.

- Cassette
- Check that the cassette is installed properly and the paper size is configured properly. Check if the symptom appears or not after replacing the cassette with the cassette that works normally.
- Check that the cassette middle plate moves smoothly and is not deformed.
- Check that the cassette side guide plate/ trailing edge guide plate is properly set.
- Check that the cassette heater switch is ON (When the cassette heater is installed.).

General
- Check that the sensor/clutch/motor/solenoid works properly (Make sure to check the power source and signal transmission route with the general circuit diagram.).
- Check that the leakage breaker/circuit breaker works normally.
- Check that there is no wire wedged/screw loosened.
- Check that all the external covers are installed.
- Check that the main power switch/control panel power switch is ON.
- Check that the wiring of power cable/signal cable to each option is properly installed.
- Check that the cover switch works normally.
- Check that the fuse on each PCB does not burn out.
- Check that there is no error in customer's usage method.

15.1.7 Others

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

If moving the machine from the cold place such as storage etc to a warm place abruptly, dew condensation is generated inside machine and it may cause various troubles.
a. E100 occurs due to dew condensation on BD sensor.
b. Low image density in the vertical scanning direction due to dew condensation on the dust-proof glass.
c. Low image density due to dew condensation on the reader CCD and copyboard glass.
d. Paper feed failure due to dew condensation on the pickup, feed guide.

If the symptom d appears, wipe the pickup/feed unit with dry cloth.
Moreover, if storing the toner container/developing assembly/drum unit in the cold place and unpacking them abruptly in warm place, dew condensation may be generated. To prevent dew condensation, place them in warm place sufficiently (for 1 to 2 hours) before unpacking.

15.2 Outline of Electrical Components

15.2.1 Clutch/Solenoid

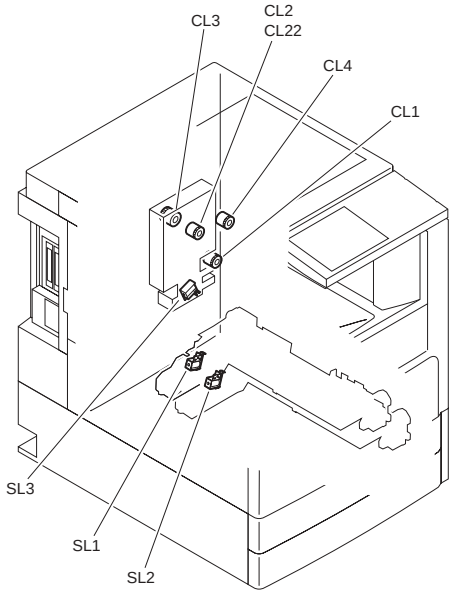
15.2.1.1 Clutches and Solenoids (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The reader unit does not have a clutch or solenoid.

15.2.1.2 Clutches and Solenoids (Printer)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-1

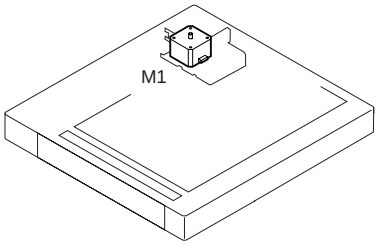
T-15-1

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Destination	I/O	Code	Remarks
CL1	manual feed pickup clutch	drives the manual feed pickup roller	FK2-6306	CL>1	DCON: J310	-		
CL2	registration clutch	drives the registration roller	FK2-0361	CL>2	DCON: J303	-		iR3245/3235/3230
CL3	developing cylinder clutch	drives the developing cylinder	FK2-6305	CL>3	DCON: J303	-		
CL4	duplex feed clutch	drives the duplex roller 1/2	FH6-5005	CL>4	DCON: J310	-		iR3225 only
CL22	registration clutch	drives the registration roller	FH6-5075	CL>2	DCON: J1303	-		iR3225
SL1	cassette 1 pickup solenoid	drives the cassette 1 pickup roller	FK2-0408	SL>1	DCON: J308	-		
SL2	cassette 2 pickup solenoid	drives the cassette 2 pickup roller	FK2-0408	SL>2	DCON: J308	-		
SL3	manual feeder pad up/down solenoid	Manual feed pickup unit pad up/down	FK2-2070	SL>3	DCON: J303	-		

15.2.2 Motor

15.2.2.1 Motors (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



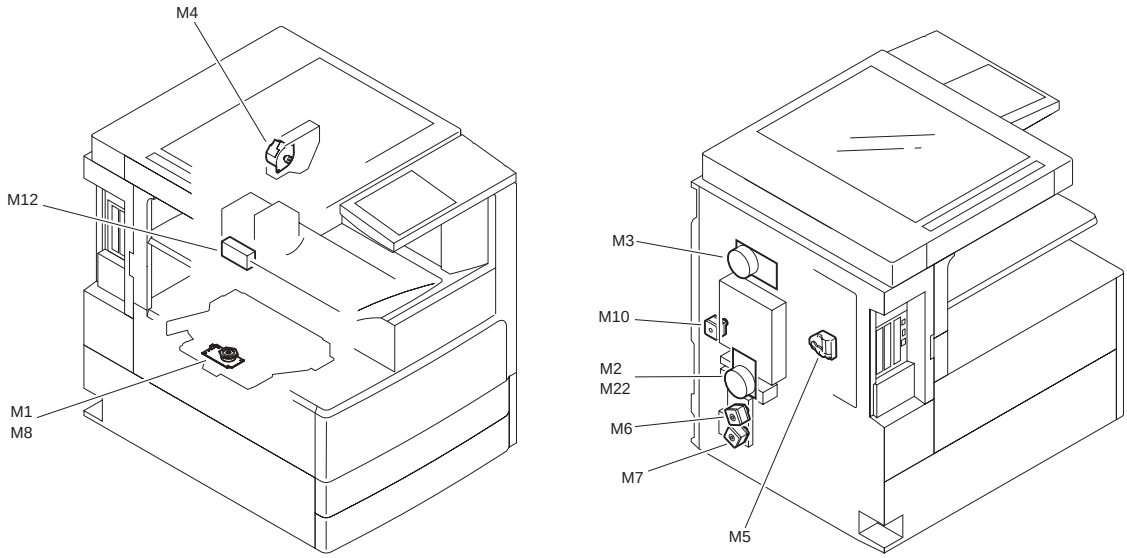
F-15-2

T-15-2

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	Reader controller PCB
M1	Scanner motor	drives the carriage	FK2-6919	J8

15.2.2.2 Motors (Printer)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-3

T-15-3

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Destination	I/O	Code	Remarks
M1	laser scanner motor	drives the laser scanner mirror	laser scanner unit: FM3-5041	MTR>1	DCON: J304	-	E110	iR3245/3235/3230
M2	main motor	drives the major components of the printer unit	FK2-6299	MTR>2	DCON: J304	P007-10: ON	E010	iR3245/3235/3230
M3	fixing motor	drives the fixing assembly	FK2-6301	MTR>3	DCON: J307	-	E014	
M4	No.1 delivery motor	drives the delivery roller 1	FK2-0365	MTR>4	DCON: J307	-		
M5	toner container motor	drives the toner container	FK2-6316	MTR>5	DCON: J312	P007-31: ON		
M6	cassette 1 pickup motor	drives the pickup unit 1	FM2-0338	MTR>6	DCON: J310	-		
M7	cassette 2 pickup motor	drives the pickup unit 2	FM2-0338	MTR>7	DCON: J310	-		
M8	laser scanner motor	drives the laser scanner mirror	laser scanner unit: FM3-5464	-	DCON: J1304	-	E110	iR3225
M10	duplex feed motor	drives the duplex roller 1/2	FL2-3266	MTR>8	DCON: J310	-		iR3245/3235/3230 only
M12	hopper motor	drives the hopper	FK2-0379	MTR>9	DCON: J312	P007-41: ON		
M22	main motor	drives the major components of the printer unit	FK2-6300	-	DCON: J1304	-	E010	iR3225

15.2.3 Fan

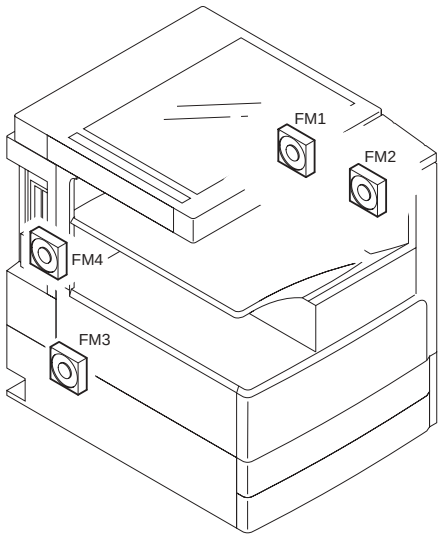
15.2.3.1 Fans (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The reader unit does not have a fan.

15.2.3.2 Fans (Printer)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-4

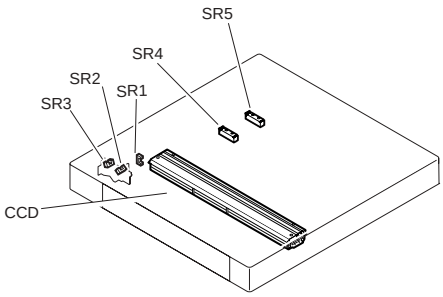
T-15-4

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Destination	I/O	Code	Remarks
FM1	heat discharge fan (rear)	discharges heat from the fixing unit	FK2-0360	FAN>1	DCON: J309	-	E805	
FM2	heat discharge fan (front)	discharges heat from the fixing unit	FK2-0360	FAN>2	DCON: J309	P014-41: ON	E805	
FM3	power supply cooling fan	Cools the 12V/24V power supply	FK2-0360	FAN>3	DCON: J304 relay PCB: J546, J533	P014-71: ON		
FM4	main controller cooling fan	Cools the main controller	FK2-6691	FAN>4	DCON: J2043	-		

15.2.4 Sensor

15.2.4.1 Sensors (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



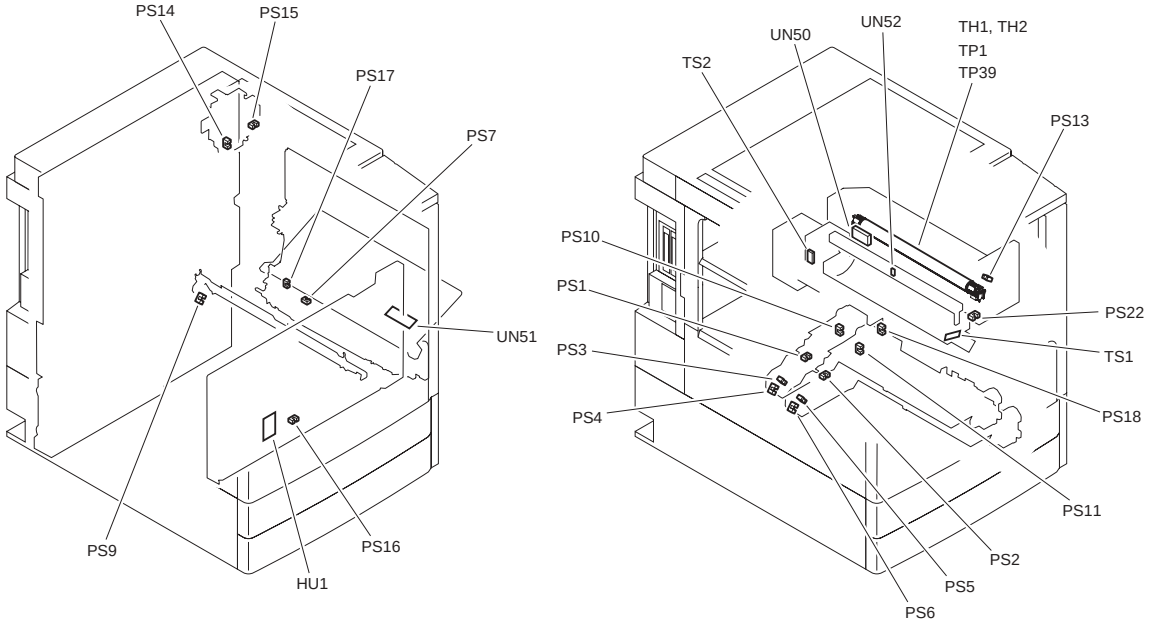
F-15-5

T-15-5

Notation	Name	Notation	Parts No_	Reader controller PCB
SR1	CCDHP sensor	detects the CCD home position	WG8-5776	J10
SR2	copyboard cover open/closed sensor (rear)	detects the state (open/closed) of the copyboard cover	WG8-5776	J10
SR3	copyboard cover open/closed sensor (front)	detects the state (open/closed) of the copyboard cover	WG8-5776	J10
SR4	original sensor 0	detects original size (AB,A,AB/Inch)	FH7-7569	J9
SR5	original sensor 1	detects original size (Inch/A, Inch/AB)	FH7-7569	J9

15.2.4.2 Sensors (Printer)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-6

T-15-6

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	Destination	I/O	Code	Remarks
PS1	cassette 1 paper sensor	detects the presence/absence of cassette 1	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P008-7 1: paper absent	-	
PS2	cassette 2 paper sensor	detects the presence/absence of cassette 2	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P008-15 1: paper absent	-	
PS3	cassette 1 paper level sensor A	detects paper level A in cassette 1	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P008-6 1: level about 50% or less	-	
PS4	cassette 1 paper level sensor B	detects paper level B in cassette 1	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P008-5 1: level about 50 sheets or less	-	
PS5	cassette 2 paper level sensor A	detects paper level A in cassette 2	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P008-14 1: level about 50% or less	-	
PS6	cassette 2 paper level sensor B	detects paper level B in cassette 2	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P008-13 1: level about 50 sheets or less	-	
PS7	manual feeder paper sensor	detects paper in the manual feeder	FK2-0149	DCON: J309	P016-1 0: paper present	-	
PS9	pre-registration sensor	detects paper before registration	WG8-5783	DCON: J303	P015-12 1: detected	xx05	
PS10	cassette 1 retry sensor	detects pickup retry in cassette 1	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P015-10 1: detected	xx01	
PS11	cassette 2 retry sensor	detects pickup retry in cassette 2	WG8-5823	DCON: J308	P015-11 1: detected	xx02	
PS13	fixing outlet sensor	detects paper at the fixing outlet	WG8-5823	DCON: J306	P015-13 1: detected	xx07	
PS14	No. 1 delivery sensor	detects delivery	WG8-5783	DCON: J307	P015-15 1: detected	xx08	
PS15	No. 1 delivery full sensor	detects a delivery full condition	WG8-5783	DCON: J307	P016-0 0: full	-	
PS16	waste toner sensor	detects a waste toner full condition	WG8-5823	DCON: J312	P016-8 0: full	E019	
PS17	duplex feed sensor	detects duplex feed	WG8-5783	DCON: J309	P015-14 1: detected	xx0D	
PS18	feed cover sensor	detects the feed cover state	WG8-5823	DCON: J310	P016-10 0: open	-	
PS22	front cover sensor	detects the state (open/closed) of the front cover	WG8-5823	DCON: J312	P016-9 0: open	-	
HU1	environment sensor	detects the machine inside temperature	WP2-5264	DCON: J312	-	-	
TS1	developing assembly toner sensor	detects the toner inside the developing assembly	FK2-0358	DCON: J312	P015-3 0: Absent	E020, E024	
TS2	sub hopper toner sensor	detects the tone inside the sub hopper	FK2-0358	DCON: J312	P016-14 0: Absent	E025	
TH1	fixing main thermistor	detects the temperature of the fixing heater	fixing film unit: <iR3245/3235/3230> FM3-6166 (100V) FM3-7070 (120V) FM3-7071 (230V) <iR3225> FM3-7062 (100V) FM3-7068 (120V) FM3-7069 (230V)	DCON: J306	-	E000-E003	
TH2	fixing sub thermistor				-		
TP1	fixing thermoswitch switch	cuts off the power to the heater in response to overheating		AC driver: J471	-	-	iR3245/3235/3230
TP39	fixing thermoswitch switch	cuts off the power to the heater in response to overheating		AC driver: J2953			iR3225
UN50	fixing film speed sensor	detects the speed of the fixing film	FM2-2769	DCON: J306	-	E007	
UN51	manual feeder paper size sensor	detects the size of papers on the manual feed tray	FM2-2768	DCON: J309	-	-	
UN52	drum thermistor	detects the temperature of the drum	FM2-2776	DCON: J312	-	-	

15.2.5 Switch

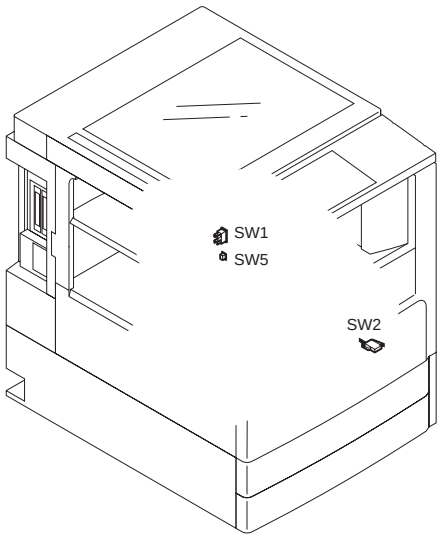
15.2.5.1 Switches (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The reader unit does not have a switch.

15.2.5.2 Switches (Printer)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-7

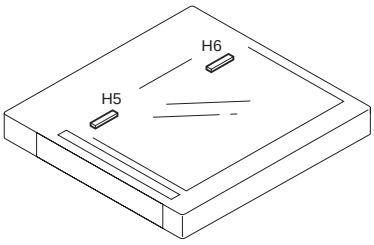
T-15-7

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	Destination	I/O	Code	Remarks
SW1	main power switch	turns on/off the main power switch	FK2-2509	AC driver: J479, J480	-	-	
SW2	interlock switch	checks the right cover	FK2-0384	relay PCB: J543	P016-11 1: open	-	
SW5	environment heater switch	turns on/off the environment heater	FM3-7052	AC driver: J843	-	-	

15.2.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others

15.2.6.1 Lamps, Heaters, and Others (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



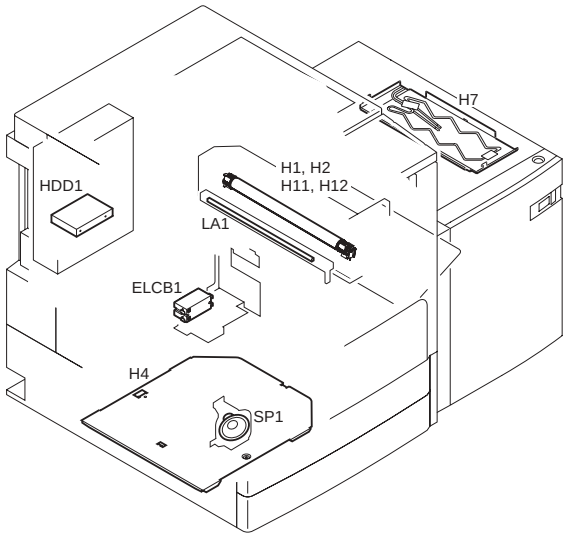
F-15-8

T-15-8

Notation	Name	Parts No.	Description
H5	reader heater (left)	FK2-0226(100V) FH7-4668(230V)	- option - prevents condensation on the reading glass
H6	reader heater (right)	FK2-0226(100V) FH7-4668(230V)	- option - prevents condensation on the copyboard glass

15.2.6.2 Lamps, Heaters, and Others (Printer)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-9

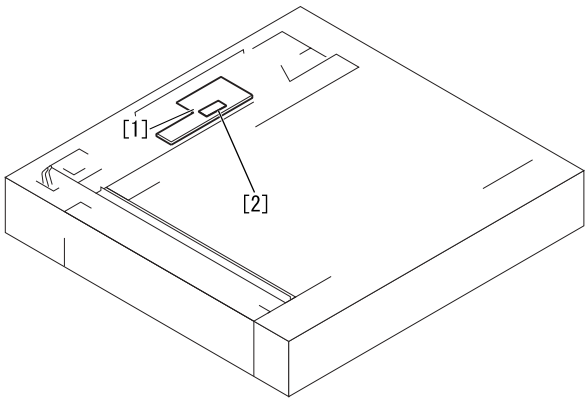
T-15-9

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	Destination	I/O	Code	Remarks
H1	fixing main heater	fixing main heater	fixing film unit: FM3-6166 (100V) FM3-7070 (120V) FM3-7071 (230V)	AC driver: J471	-	-	iR3245/3235/3230
H2	fixing sub heater	fixing sub heater					
H4	cassette heater	Prevents absorption of moisture by paper inside the cassette	FK2-5794 (100V) FK2-5795 (120V) FM3-3772 (230V)	AC driver: J482	-	-	For 230V: Service Parts
H7	deck heater	Prevents absorption of moisture by paper inside the side deck	FG6-9650 (100V) FG6-9651 (230V)	AC driver: J481	-	-	For 230V: Service Parts
H11	fixing main heater	fixing main heater	fixing film unit: FM3-7062 (100V) FM3-7068 (120V) FM3-7069 (230V)	AC driver: J2953	-	-	iR3225
H12	fixing sub heater	fixing sub heater					
ELCB1	leakage breaker	leakage breaker	FH7-7626 (100V/120V) FH7-7625 (230V)	AC driver: J478	-	-	
LA1	pre-exposure lamp	Removes residual charge from the drum	FK2-6326	DCON: J312	P007-51: Activation	-	
HDD1	hard disk	Program, Image storage	FM3-4403 (100V) FM3-5634 (120V/230V)	main controller: J2024	-	E602	
SP1	speaker	speaker	FK2-0428	G3 FAX PCB: J2106	-	-	G3FAX (for one line)

15.2.7 PCBs

15.2.7.1 PCBs (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



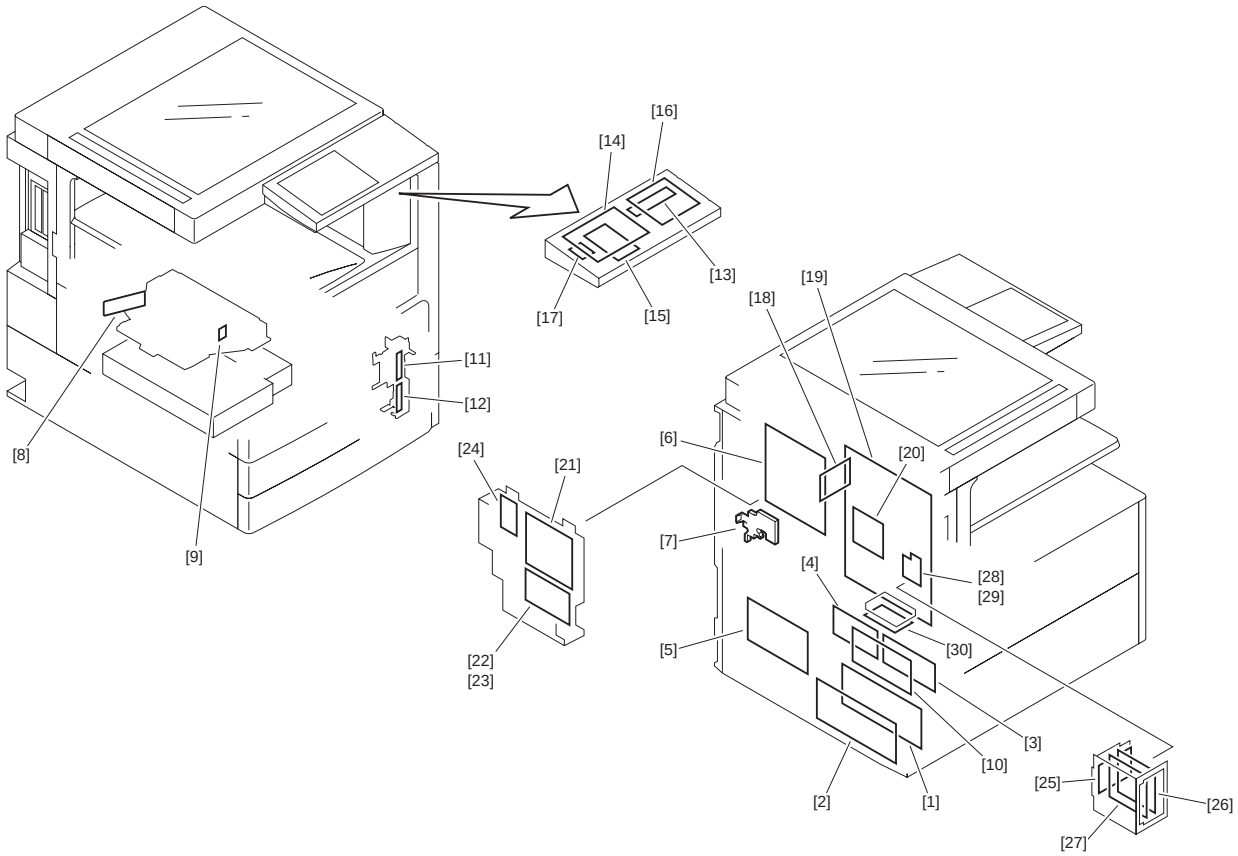
F-15-10

T-15-10

No.	Name	Part No.	Description
[1]	reader controller PCB	FM3-6954	controls the reader unit/ADF
[2]	LED driver PCB	FM3-7131	controls the CCD

15.2.7.2 PCBs (Printer)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-11

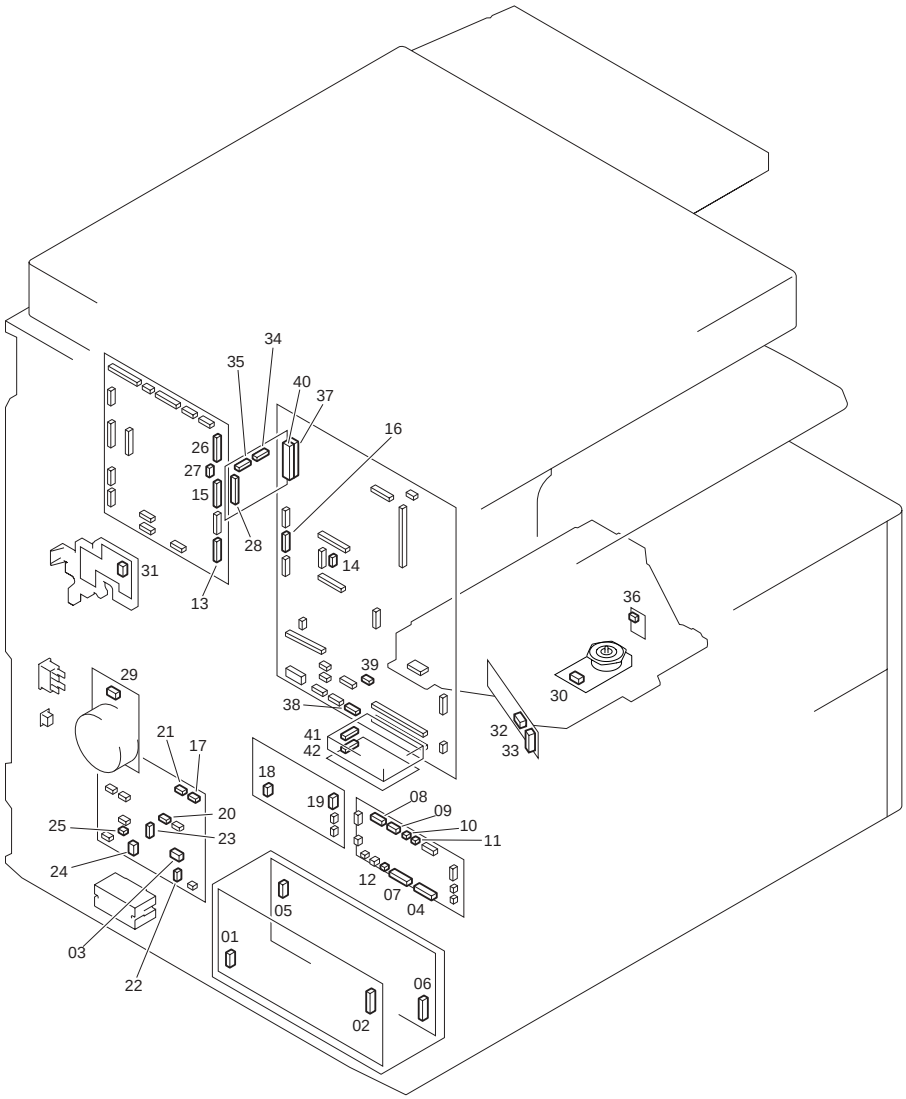
T-15-11

Ref.	Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	Remarks
[1]	UN1	24V power supply PCB	DC24V generation	FK2-6317	
[2]	UN2	12V power supply PCB	DC12V generation	FK2-6319	
[3]	UN3	relay PCB		FM3-5050	
[4]	UN4	all-night power supply PCB		FK2-0340	100V/120V
				FK2-0341	200V
[5]	UN6	AC driver PCB		FM3-5046	100V
				FM3-5084	120V
				FM3-5085	230V
[6]	UN7	DC controller PCB	Printer engine, pickup/delivery options control	FM3-5051	iR3245/3235/3230
	UN17			FM3-5052	iR3225
[7]	UN8	high-voltage power supply PCB	High voltage generation at image formation	FM3-4389	
[8]	UN10	laser driver PCB	Laser drive	Laser scanner unit: FM3-5041	iR3245/3235/3230
				Laser scanner unit: FM3-5464	iR3225
[9]	UN11	BD PCB	BD signal detection	Laser scanner unit: FM3-5041	iR3245/3235/3230
				Laser scanner unit: FM3-5464	iR3225
[10]	UN12	option power supply PCB	Power supply to pickup/delivery options	FK2-6297	100V/120V
				FK2-6298	230V
[11]	UN18	cassette 1 size detection PCB	Paper size detection for cassette 1	FM2-2770	
[12]	UN19	cassette 2 size detection PCB	Paper size detection for cassette 2	FM2-2770	
[13]	-	Control panel inverter PCB		FM3-5745	
[14]	-	Control panel LCD		FL3-0489	
[15]	-	Control panel CPU PCB		FM3-9216	
[16]	-	Control panel KEY PCB		FM4-0074	
[17]	-	Control panel USB PCB	USB host interface	FM3-5743	120V/230V only
[18]	UN40	image PCB		FM3-7395	
[19]	UN29	main controller PCB	Entire system control	Refer to the Parts Catalog	
[20]	UN59	FAX expansion PCB		FM3-5617	
[21]	UN22	G3 FAX PCB	Data encode/composition, phone line control	FM3-5586	
[22]	UN5	off-hook detect PCB	Phone off hook detection	FM3-2163	G3FAX (for one line), 120V/230V
[23]	UN23	pseudo-CI PCB	Pseudo CI signal generation	FM3-5580	G3FAX (for one line), 100V only
[24]	UN28	modular PCB	Phone line interface	FM3-5587	G3FAX (for one line), 100V
				FM3-5588	G3FAX (for one line), 120V
				FM3-5589	G3FAX (for one line), 230V
[25]	UN60	PCI bus expansion PCB	PCI option connection	FM3-5616	Option
[26]	UN62	IPSec PCB		FM3-5619	Option
[27]	UN33	voice guidance PCB	Voice synthesis	FM3-5620	Option
[28]	UN34	voice operation PCB	Voice recognition	FM3-5621	Option
[29]	UN35	encryption PCB	HDD data encryption	FM3-5622	Option

15.2.8 Connectors

15.2.8.1 Connectors (1/6)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



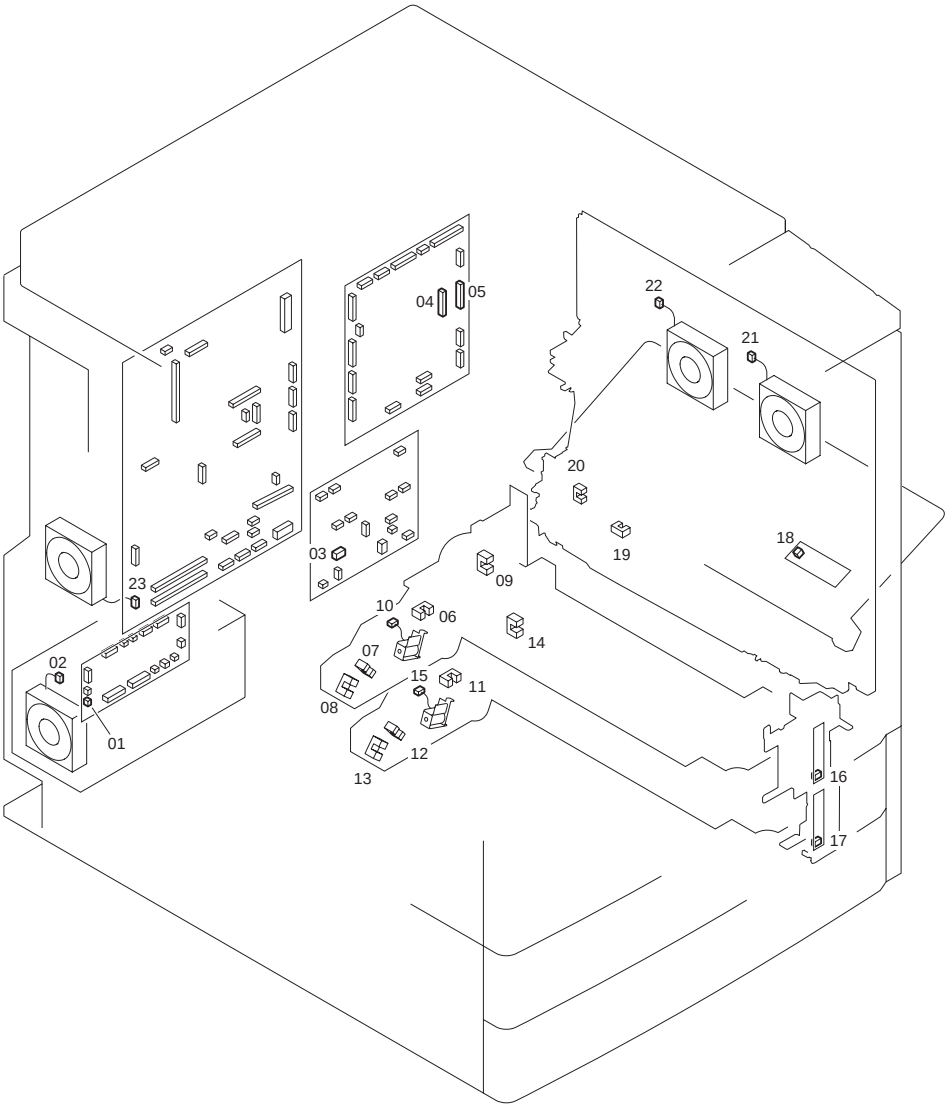
F-15-12

T-15-12

Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Relay connector			Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Remarks
01	UN1	J101	24V power supply PCB				03	UN6	J476	AC driver PCB	
02	UN1	J201	24V power supply PCB				04	UN3	J539	relay PCB	
05	UN2	J1011	12V power supply PCB				03	UN6	J476	AC driver PCB	
06	UN2	J2011	12V power supply PCB				07	UN3	J540	relay PCB	
08	UN3	J531	relay PCB				13	UN7	J302	DC controller PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
08	UN3	J1531	relay PCB				13	UN17	J1302	DC controller PCB	iR3225
09	UN3	J532	relay PCB				14	UN29	J2006	main controller PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
09	UN3	J1532	relay PCB				14	UN29	J12006	main controller PCB	iR3225
10	UN3	J533	relay PCB				15	UN7	J304	DC controller PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
10	UN3	J1533	relay PCB				15	UN17	J1304	DC controller PCB	iR3225
11	UN3	J534	relay PCB				16	UN29	J2003	main controller PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
11	UN3	J1534	relay PCB				16	UN29	J12003	main controller PCB	iR3225
12	UN3	J538	relay PCB				17	UN6	J473	AC driver PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
12	UN3	J1538	relay PCB				17	UN6	J1473	AC driver PCB	iR3225
18	UN4	J681	all-night power supply PCB				20	UN6	J474	AC driver PCB	
19	UN4	J691	all-night power supply PCB				14	UN29	J2006	main controller PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
19	UN4	J691	all-night power supply PCB				14	UN29	J12006	main controller PCB	iR3225
21	UN6	J472	AC driver PCB				15	UN7	J304	DC controller PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
21	UN6	J1472	AC driver PCB				15	UN17	J1304	DC controller PCB	iR3225
22	UN6	J478	AC driver PCB				-	ELCB1	-	leakage breaker	
23	UN6	J479	AC driver PCB				-	SW1	-	main power switch	
24	UN6	J480	AC driver PCB				-	SW1	-	main power switch	
25	UN6	J483	AC driver PCB				-	SW5	-	environment heater switch	
26	UN7	J301	DC controller PCB				28	UN40	J464	image PCB	
15	UN7	J304	DC controller PCB				29	M2	J3412	main motor	iR3245/3235/3230
15	UN17	J1304	DC controller PCB				29	M22	J13412	main motor	iR3225
15	UN7	J304	DC controller PCB		J3503		30	M1	J602	laser scanner motor	iR3245/3235/3230
15	UN17	J1304	DC controller PCB		J13410		30	M8	J3411	laser scanner motor	iR3225
27	UN7	J305	DC controller PCB		J3004		31	UN8	J404	high-voltage power supply PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
27	UN17	J1305	DC controller PCB		J13004		31	UN8	J404	high-voltage power supply PCB	iR3225
33	UN10	J3182	laser driver PCB				34	UN40	J461	image PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
33	UN10	J3183	laser driver PCB				35	UN10	J462	image PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
36	UN11	J603	BD PCB		J3502		34	UN40	J461	image PCB	iR3245/3235/3230
37	UN29	J2005	main controller PCB	J2103		J2104	40	UN10	J463	image PCB	
38	UN29	J2024	main controller PCB				41	HDD1	J3021	hard disk	
39	UN29	J2026	main controller PCB				42	UN35	J1000	encryption PCB	

15.2.8.2 Connectors (2/6)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



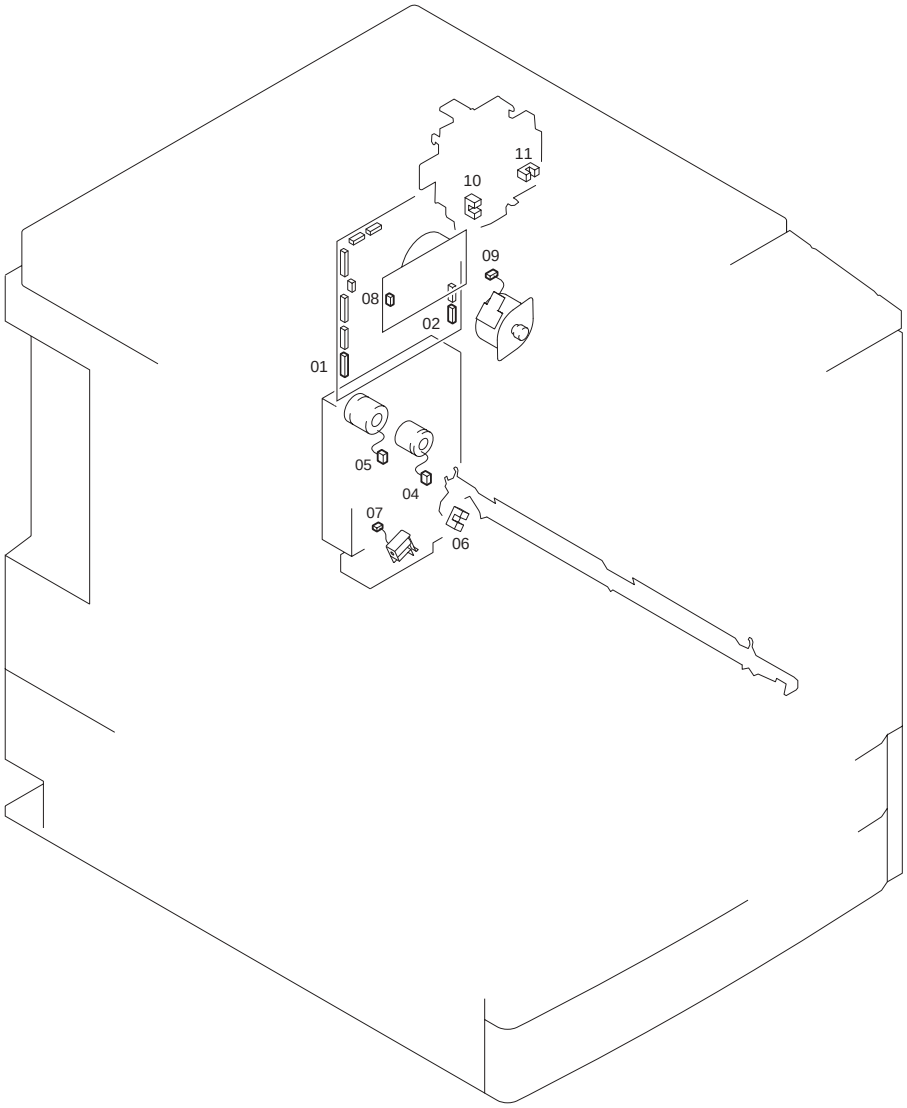
F-15-13

T-15-13

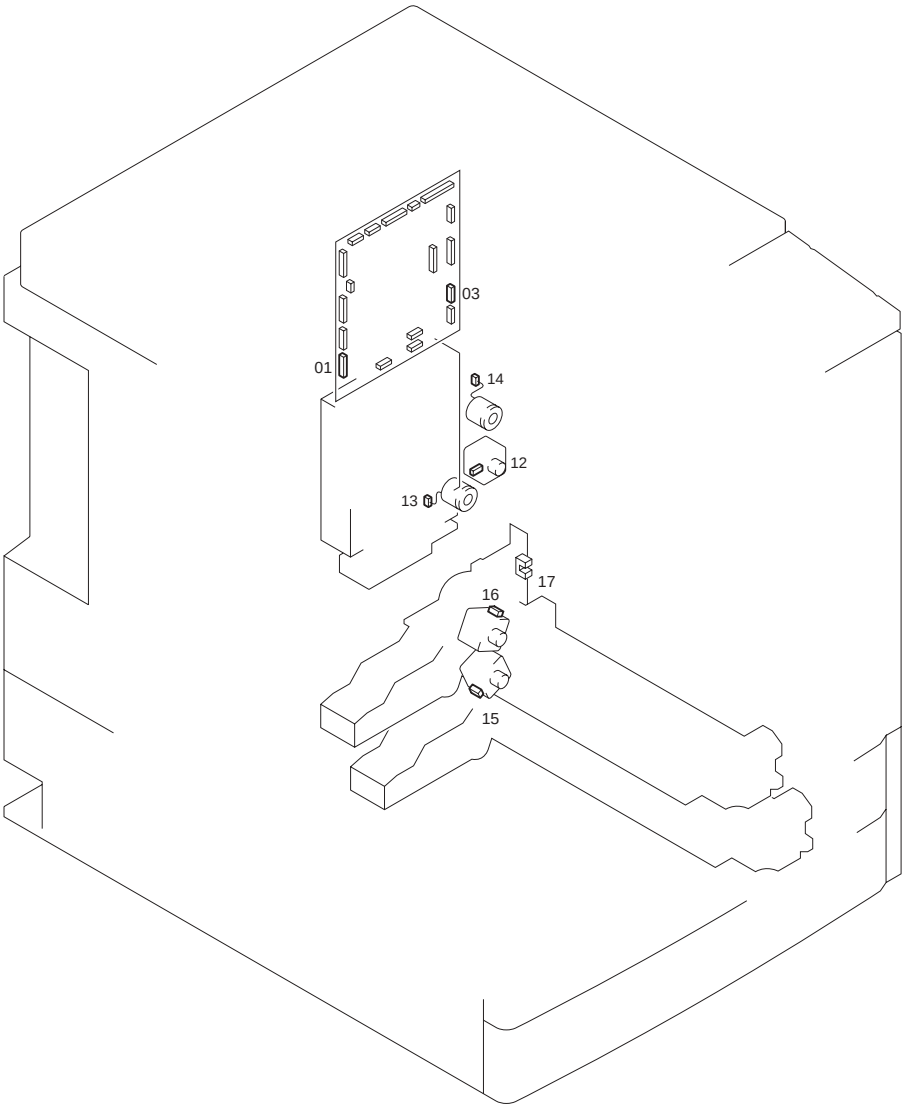
Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Relay connector			Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Remarks
01	UN3	J546	relay PCB				02	FM3	J3011	power supply cooling fan	
03	UN6	J486	AC driver PCB				04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3131		06	PS1	J3111	cassette 1 paper sensor	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3131		07	PS3	J3112	cassette 1 paper level sensor A	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3131		08	PS4	J3113	cassette 1 paper level sensor B	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3131		09	PS10	J3114	cassette 1 retry sensor	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3131		10	SL1	J3115	cassette 1 pickup solenoid	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3133		11	PS2	J3118	cassette 2 paper sensor	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3133		12	PS5	J3119	cassette 2 paper level sensor A	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3133		13	PS6	J3120	cassette 2 paper level sensor B	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3133		14	PS11	J3121	cassette 2 retry sensor	
05	UN7	J308	DC controller PCB		J3133		15	SL2	J3122	cassette 2 pickup solenoid	
04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB	J3135		J3128	16	UN18	J3128	cassette 1 size detection PCB	
04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB	J3135		J3127	17	UN19	J3129	cassette 2 size detection PCB	
04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB	J3308		J3303	18	UN51	J3304	manual feeder paper size sensor	
04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB	J3308		J3302	19	PS7	J3301	manual feeder paper sensor	
04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB		J3308		20	PS17	J3305	duplex feed sensor	
04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB		J3308		21	FM2	J3310	heat discharge fan (front)	
04	UN7	J309	DC controller PCB		J3308		22	FM1	J3309	heat discharge fan (rear)	
23	UN29	J2043	main controller PCB				23	FM4	J2043	main controller cooling fan	

15.2.8.3 Connectors (3/6)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-14



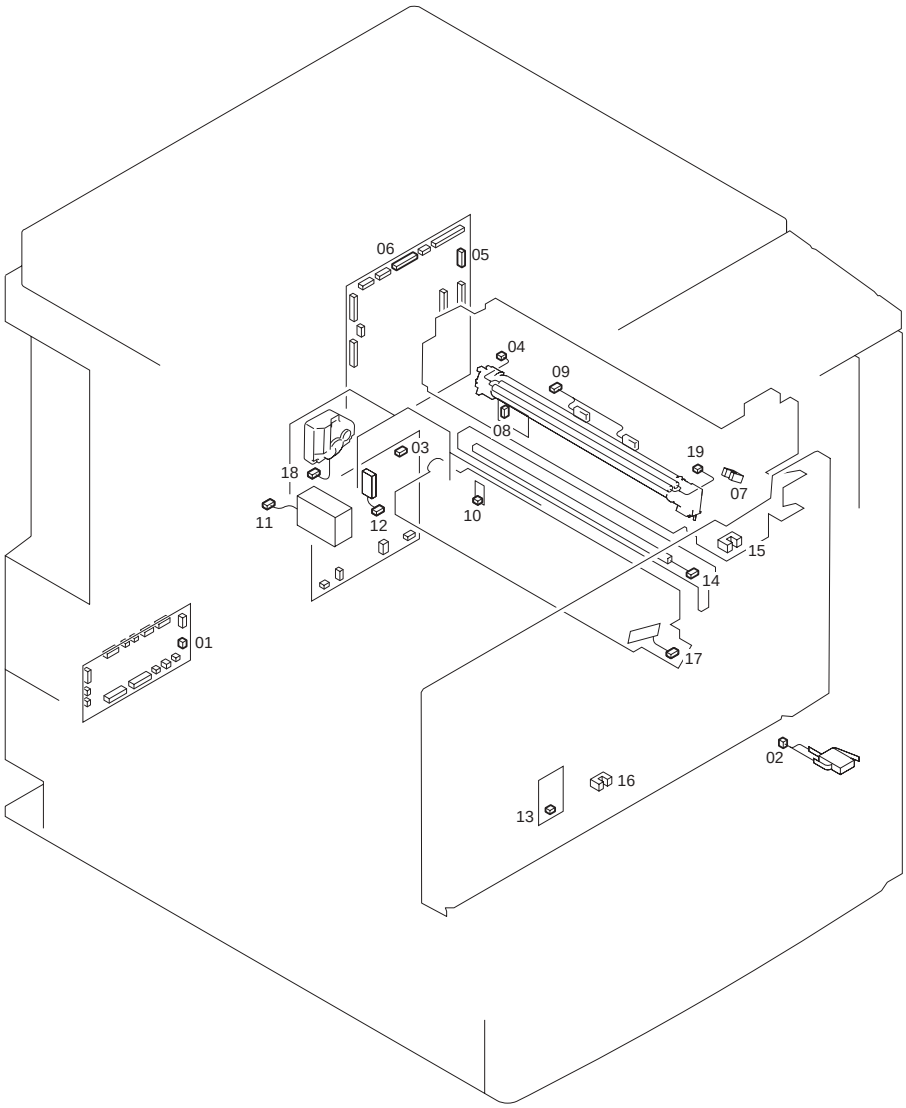
F-15-15

T-15-14

Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Relay connector			Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Remarks
01	UN7	J303	DC controller PCB		J3605		15	CL2	J3602	registration clutch	iR3245/3235/3230
01	UN17	J1303	DC controller PCB				15	CL22	J3650	registration clutch	iR3225
02	UN7	J303	DC controller PCB				16	CL3	J3603	developing cylinder clutch	iR3245/3235/3230
02	UN17	J1303	DC controller PCB				16	CL3	J13603	developing cylinder clutch	iR3225
03	UN7	J303	DC controller PCB		J3001		17	PS9	J3004	pre-registration sensor	iR3245/3235/3230
03	UN17	J1303	DC controller PCB		J13001		17	PS9	J3004	pre-registration sensor	iR3225
04	UN7	J303	DC controller PCB		J3609		18	SL3	J4999	manual feeder pad up/ down solenoid	iR3245/3235/3230
04	UN17	J1303	DC controller PCB		J13609		18	SL3	J4999	manual feeder pad up/ down solenoid	iR3225
05	UN7	J307	DC controller PCB				19	M3	J1009	fixing motor	
06	UN7	J307	DC controller PCB		J3704		20	M4	J3701	No.1 delivery motor	
07	UN7	J307	DC controller PCB		J3704		21	PS14	J3702	No. 1 delivery sensor	
08	UN7	J307	DC controller PCB		J3704		22	PS15	J3703	No. 1 delivery full sensor	
09	UN7	J310	DC controller PCB		J3060		23	M10	J3611	duplex feed motor	
10	UN7	J310	DC controller PCB		J3601		24	CL1	J3606	manual feed pickup clutch	
11	UN7	J310	DC controller PCB		J3604		25	CL4	J3610	duplex feed clutch	
12	UN7	J310	DC controller PCB				26	M7	J3136	cassette 2 pickup motor	
13	UN7	J310	DC controller PCB				27	M6	J3137	cassette 1 pickup motor	
14	UN7	J310	DC controller PCB				28	PS18	J3134	feed cover sensor	

15.2.8.4 Connectors (4/6)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



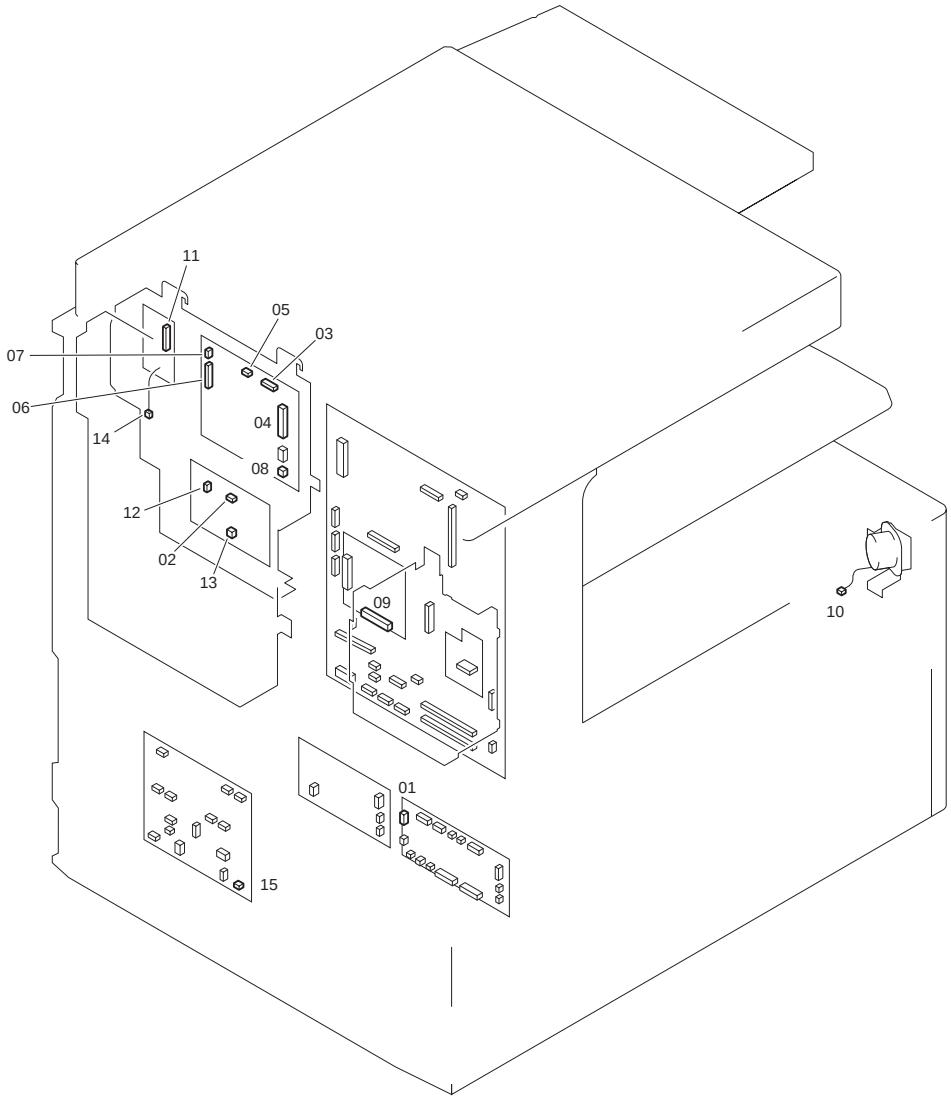
F-15-16

T-15-15

Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Relay connector			Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Remarks
01	UN3	J543	relay PCB				02	SW2	J2111	interlock switch	
03	UN6	J471	AC driver PCB		J1001		04	H1	J1003	fixing main heater	iR3245/3235/3230
03	UN6	J2953	AC driver PCB		J2952		04	H11	J2951	fixing main heater	iR3225
03	UN6	J471	AC driver PCB		J1001		04	H2	J1003	fixing sub heater	iR3245/3235/3230
03	UN6	J2953	AC driver PCB		J2952		04	H12	J2951	fixing sub heater	iR3225
05	UN7	J306	DC controller PCB		J1010		07	PS13	J1007	fixing outlet sensor	
05	UN7	J306	DC controller PCB		J1010		08	UN50	J1008	fixing film speed sensor	
05	UN7	J306	DC controller PCB		J1010		09	TH1	J1005	fixing main thermistor	
05	UN7	J306	DC controller PCB		J1010		09	TH2	J1005	fixing sub thermistor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB		J3407		10	UN52	J1091	drum thermistor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB		J3407		11	M12	J3205	hopper motor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB		J3407		12	TS2	J3201	sub hopper toner sensor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB		J3407		13	HU1	J3012	environment sensor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB	J3407		J3402	14	LA1	J3408	pre-exposure lamp	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB		J3407		15	PS22	J3403	front cover sensor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB		J3407		16	PS16	J3404	waste toner sensor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB		J3407		17	TS1	J3405	developing assembly toner sensor	
06	UN7	J312	DC controller PCB				18	M5	J3401	toner container motor	
19	H1	J1004	fixing main heater				-	TP1	-	fixing thermoswitch switch	iR3245/3235/3230
19	H11	J2950	fixing main heater				-	TP39	-	fixing thermoswitch switch	iR3225
19	H2	J1004	fixing main heater				-	TP1	-	fixing thermoswitch switch	iR3245/3235/3230
19	H12	J2950	fixing main heater				-	TP39	-	fixing thermoswitch switch	iR3225

15.2.8.5 Connectors (5/6)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



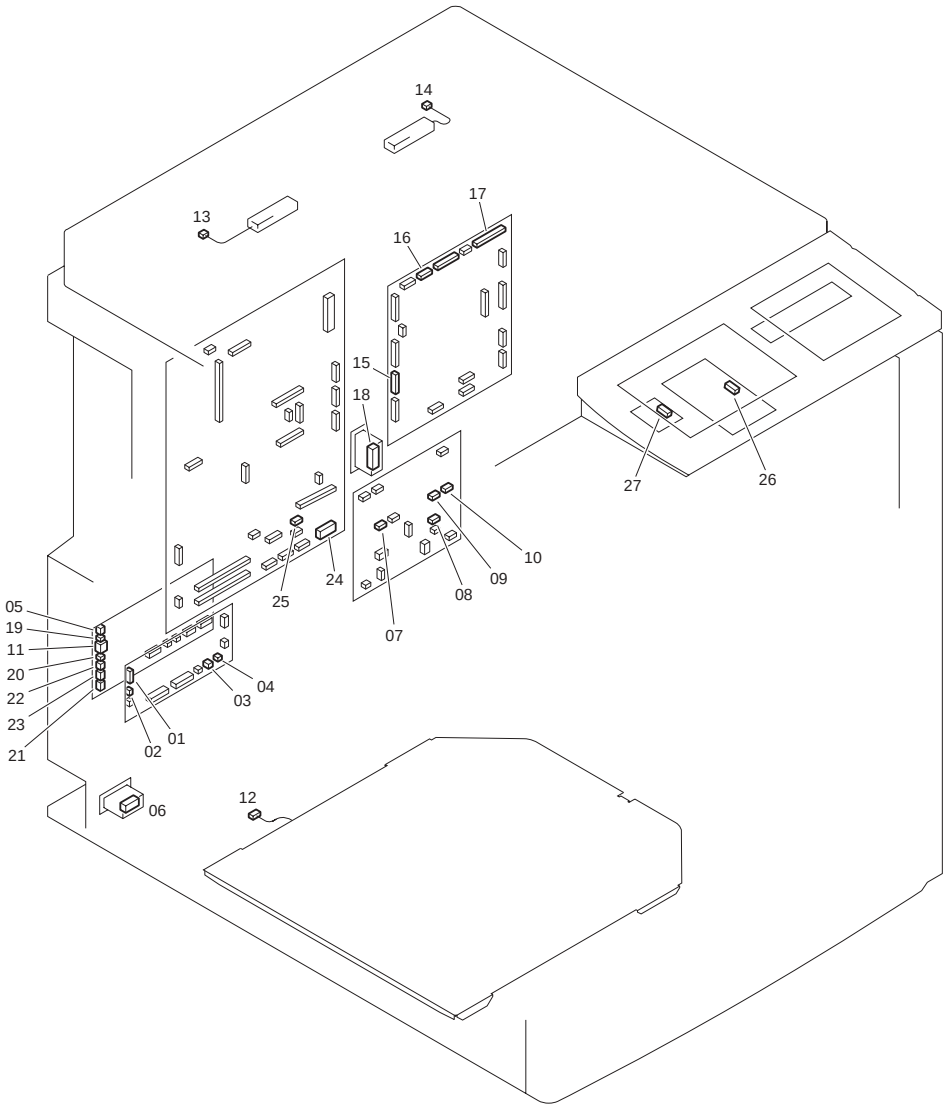
F-15-17

T-15-16

Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Relay connector			Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Remarks
01	UN3	J545	relay PCB		J2118		02	UN5	J2102	off-hook detect PCB	G3FAX (1 line)/ iR3245/3235/3230
01	UN3	J1545	relay PCB		J12118		02	UN5	J1202	off-hook detect PCB	G3FAX (1 line)/ iR3225
01	UN3	J545	relay PCB		J2118		02	UN23	J2102	pseudo-CI PCB	G3FAX (1 line)/ iR3245/3235/3230
01	UN3	J1545	relay PCB		J12118		02	UN23	J1202	pseudo-CI PCB	G3FAX (1 line)/ iR3225
01	UN3	J545	relay PCB		J2118		03	UN22	J222	G3 FAX PCB	G3FAX (1 line)/ iR3245/3235/3230
01	UN3	J1545	relay PCB		J12118		03	UN22	J222	G3 FAX PCB	G3FAX (1 line)/ iR3225
04	UN22	J2105	G3 FAX PCB				09	UN59	J2101	FAX expansion PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
05	UN22	J2106	G3 FAX PCB	J2121		J3911	10	SP1	J3018	speaker	G3FAX (1 line)
06	UN22	J31	G3 FAX PCB				11	UN54	J911	modular PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
06	UN22	J31	G3 FAX PCB				11	UN55	J911	modular PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
06	UN22	J31	G3 FAX PCB				11	UN56	J911	modular PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
07	UN22	J41	G3 FAX PCB				12	UN5	J3	off-hook detect PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
07	UN22	J41	G3 FAX PCB				12	UN23	J3	pseudo-CI PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
08	UN22	J51	G3 FAX PCB				13	UN5	J1	off-hook detect PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
08	UN22	J51	G3 FAX PCB				13	UN23	J1	pseudo-CI PCB	G3FAX (1 line)
14	UN54	J3010	modular PCB				15	UN6	J477	AC driver PCB	G3FAX (1 line)

15.2.8.6 Connectors (6/6)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-15-18

T-15-17

Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Relay connector			Key No.	Electric symbol	J No.	Electric parts name	Remarks
01	UN3	J536	relay PCB				-	OPT	J3904	cassette feeding unit	
02	UN3	J537	relay PCB				05	UN12	J647	option power supply PCB	
03	UN3	J541	relay PCB		J3053		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3245/3235/3230
03	UN3	J1541	relay PCB		J13053		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3225
04	UN3	J542	relay PCB		J3910		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3245/3235/3230
04	UN3	J1542	relay PCB		J13910		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3225
07	UN6	J475	AC driver PCB				11	UN12	J640	option power supply PCB	
08	UN6	J481	AC driver PCB				-	DLT1	J481	power outlet	
09	UN6	J482	AC driver PCB				12	H4	J106	cassette heater	
10	UN6	J485	AC driver PCB		J108		13	H5	J1080	reader heater	
10	UN6	J485	AC driver PCB				14	H6	-	reader heater	
15	UN7	J303	DC controller PCB		J3908		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3245/3235/3230
15	UN7	J1303	DC controller PCB		J13608		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3225
15	UN7	J303	DC controller PCB		J3907		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3245/3235/3230
15	UN7	J1303	DC controller PCB		J13907		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3225
16	UN7	J311	DC controller PCB		J3052		18	OPT	J3061	external finisher	
16	UN7	J311	DC controller PCB		J3902		-	OPT	J3905	inbody finisher	
17	UN7	J313	DC controller PCB				-	OPT	J3903	buffer path unit	
17	UN7	J313	DC controller PCB				-	OPT	J3904	cassette feeding unit	
19	UN12	J641	option power supply PCB		J3502		18	OPT	J3061	external finisher	
20	UN12	J642	option power supply PCB		J3058		18	OPT	J3061	external finisher	
21	UN12	J643	option power supply PCB		J3053		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3245/3235/3230
21	UN12	J1643	option power supply PCB		J13053		06	OPT	J3062	paper deck, cassette feeding unit	iR3225
22	UN12	J644	option power supply PCB		J3901		-	OPT	J3906	inbody finisher	
23	UN12	J645	option power supply PCB				-	OPT	J3903	buffer path unit	
24	UN29	J2010	main controller PCB				26	-	J1	control panel USB PCB	
25	UN29	J2016	main controller PCB				27	-	J102	control panel CPU PCB	
-	-	-	-		J3088		18	OPT	J3061	external finisher	

15.2.9 Variable Resistors (VR), Light-Emitting Diodes (LED), and Check Pins by PCB

15.2.9.1 Variable Resistors (VR), Light-Emitting Diodes, and Check Pins by PCB

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Of the variable resistors (VR), light-emitting diodes (LED), and check pins found in the machine, those that are needed when servicing the machine in the field are discussed.

- Some LEDs carry current and emit light when they are off; this is a normal condition, and must be kept in mind.
- Take note of the following:

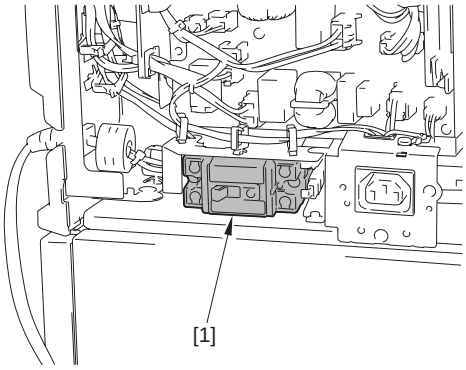
: VR that may be used in the field.

: VR that must not be used in the field.

15.2.9.2 Points to Note About the Leakage Breaker

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Points to Note When Checking the Output of a PCB
Normally, an AC voltage is applied to the terminal of the leakage breaker [1].
Take care not to touch it when making a check.



Chapter 16 Self Diagnosis

Contents

16.1 Error Code Details 16-1
16.1.1 E000 to E197 (DC Controller) 16-1
16.1.2 E202 to E248, E280 (Reader) 16-3
16.1.3 E261 to E315 (DC Controller, Main Controller) 16-3
16.1.4 E400, E413, E490 (ADF) 16-4
16.1.5 E500 to E5F9 (Finisher) 16-5
16.1.6 E602 (Error in HDD/encryption board) 16-7
16.1.7 Detail in E602 16-8
16.1.8 E604 to E748 (Main Controller, DC Controller) 16-10
16.1.9 E804 to E805 (DC Controller Control Fan) 16-13
16.2 Error Code (SEND) 16-14
16.2.1 Self-Diagnostic Display 16-14
16.2.2 List of Error Codes without Messages 16-15
16.3 Jam Code 16-21
16.3.1 Jam codes (printer unit) 16-21
16.3.2 Jam Code (ADF) 16-21
16.3.3 Jam codes (Finisher) 16-22
16.4 Alarm Code 16-22
16.4.1 Alarm Code 16-22

16.1 Error Code Details

16.1.1 E000 to E197 (DC Controller)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-1

Code	Cause	Remedy
E000	The temperature of the fixing assembly is abnormally high.	
0001	While startup control is under way, the reading of the main thermistor is less than 30 deg C continuously for 200 msec or more 1 sec after the start of power supply. While startup control is under way, the reading of the main thermistor is less than 70 deg C continuously for 200 msec or more 2 sec after the start of power supply. While startup control is under way, the reading of the main thermistor is less than 120 deg C continuously for 200 msec 6 sec after the start of power supply. The startup control does not end 30 sec after the start of power supply.	Reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR. Replace the main thermistor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E001	The temperature of the fixing assembly is abnormally high.	
0000	The reading of the main thermistor is 250 deg C or more continuously for 200 msec.	Reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR. Replace the main thermistor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0001	The hardware circuit detects overheating of the main or sub thermistor for 200 msec.	Reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0002	The reading of the sub thermistor is 295 deg C or more continuously for 200 msec.	Reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR. Replace the sub thermistor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E002	The rise in temperature of the fixing assembly is faulty.	
0000	While startup control is under way, the reading of the main thermistor is less than 115 deg C continuously for 400 msec 1.3 sec after it has indicated 100 deg C. While startup control is under way, the reading of the main thermistor is less than 150 deg C continuously for 400 msec 1.3 sec after it has indicated 140 deg C.	Reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR. Replace the main thermistor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E003	The fixing temperature is too low after a standby state.	
0000	While regular temperature control is under way, the reading of the main thermistor is less than 140 deg C continuously for 400 msec or more.	Reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR. Replace the main thermistor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E004	Failure in main/sub thermistor	
0000	When disconnection is detected with connector of the main/sub thermistor for 30 sec continuously while DC controller is working.	Clear the error in Service Mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. Replace the main thermistor (film unit). Replace DC controller PCB.
E007	The rotation of the fixing film is faulty.	
0000	While the fixing motor is rotating, the marker signal is not detected for 6 sec with the reading of the main thermistor indicating 100 deg C or more.	Reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR. Replace the main thermistor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E010	The rotation of the main motor is faulty.	
0001	Detection is executed every 100 msec after the start of motor rotation; however, the drive detection signal is absent for 2 sec.	Replace the main motor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0002	During motor rotation, detection is executed every 100 msec; however, the drive signal is absent 5 times in sequence.	Replace the main motor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E014	The rotation of the fixing motor is faulty.	
0001	Detection is executed every 100 msec after the start of motor rotation; however, the drive detection signal is absent for 2 sec.	Replace the fixing motor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0002	During motor rotation, detection is executed every 100 msec; however, the drive signal is absent 5 times in sequence.	Replace the fixing motor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E019	The waste toner case is full, or the waste toner case full sensor is faulty.	
0000	When the waste toner case is identified as being full for 2000 prints continuously, an alert is issued; thereafter, the case is identified as being full continuously for 100 prints.	Replace the waste toner sensor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E020	The path between the sub hopper and the developing assembly is clogged with toner.	
0000	The developing assembly toner sensor detects the absence of toner, while the sub hopper toner sensor detects the presence of toner. With the developing clutch turned on, the hopper feedscrew motor is rotated for 1 sec intermittently 194 times; still, the developing assembly toner sensor does not detect the presence of toner.	Replace the developing assembly toner sensor. Replace the sub hopper toner sensor. Replace the DC control PCB.
E024	The developing assembly connector is disconnected/Disconnection of Toner sensor.	
0000	The developing assembly toner sensor connection detection signal is absent for 100 msec 10 times in sequence.	Replace the developing assembly toner sensor. Connect the connector. Replace the DC controller PCB.

Code	Cause	Remedy
0001	Disconnection of the wire used for detecting the connection of the toner level sensor is found. -iR 3225 When the disconnection of the wire used for detecting the connection of the toner level sensor has been detected for 7.5 min without interruption (12.5 min in the manual /envelop cassette feeding). -iR 3245/3235/3230 When the disconnection of the wire used for detecting the connection of the toner level sensor has been detected for 12.5 min without interruption.	Correct the cable. Replace the sensor.
E025	The hopper motor or the bottle motor is faulty.	
0000	The sub hopper toner sensor connection detection signal is absent for 100 msec 10 times in sequence.	Replace the sub hopper toner sensor. Connect the connector. Replace the detection PCB.
0001	While the hopper motor is rotating, the motor error lock signal is detected continuously 4 times every 56 msec. Or, while the bottle motor is rotating, the motor error lock signal is detected 22 times in sequence every 10 msec.	Replace the hopper motor. Replace the bottle motor. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E032	The eM controller counter malfunctions.	
0001	An open circuit is detected for the count pulse signal.	Turn off the main power, and check the cable for an open circuit; then, turn the main power back on.
E064	The voltage of the power supply is faulty (high-voltage error).	
0001	The value read from the EEPORM is outside a specific range.	Turn off and then back on the main power. Replace the EEPROM.
0002	While output is being generated, the AD value of the primary DC voltage is 230 (DEC) or more for 100 msec 2 times in sequence. (However, after output, it is not detected for 100 msec.)	Replace the high-voltage power supply. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0003	While output is being generated, the AD value of the developing DC voltage is 224 (DEC) or more for 10 msec 2 times in sequence. (However, after output, it is not detected for 100 msec.)	Replace the high-voltage power supply. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0004	While output is being generated, the AD value of the transfer output current is 205 (DEC) or more for 100 msec 2 times in sequence. (However, after output, it is not detected for 100 msec.)	Replace the high-voltage power supply. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0005	While output is being generated, the AD value of the transfer output voltage is 0 (DEC) for 100 msec 2 times in sequence. (However, after output, it is not detected for 100 msec.)	Replace the high-voltage power supply. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E110	The scanner motor is faulty.	
0001	The scanner motor speed lock signal does not indicate a locked state a specific period of time after the scanner motor has been started.	Replace the laser unit. Replace the DC controller PCB. Check the wiring.
0002	The speed lock signal indicates a deviation 10 times in sequence at intervals of 100 msec after the signal has indicated a locked state.	Replace the laser unit. Replace the DC controller PCB. Check the wiring.
0003	With the image clock switched over, the scanner motor speed lock signal does not indicate a locked state 6.5 sec after a switchover is made from low to normal speed or 8 sec after a switchover is made from normal to low speed.	Replace the laser unit. Replace the DC controller PCB. Check the wiring.
E191	There is an error in the communication with the high-voltage power supply.	
0000	The data transmission/reception does not end normally 500 msec after the most recent transmission/reception of data ended normally.	Replace the high-voltage power supply. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E197	Error in communication of laser driver PCB	
0000	Communication error 1 with image PCB	- Check routing (wiring) - Replace the laser unit - Replace DC controller PCB
0001	Communication error 2 with image PCB	- Check routing (wiring) - Replace the laser unit - Replace DC controller PCB
0003	Disconnection of laser harness	- Check routing (wiring) - Replace the laser unit - Replace DC controller PCB

16.1.2 E202 to E248, E280 (Reader)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-2

Code	Cause/Detection Details	Measures
E202	There is an error in the detection of the CCD home position.	
0001	The attempt to detect the home position fails when the CCD is moved forward.	Disconnect and then connect the harness connector. Replace the optical HP sensor, optical motor, and reader controller PCB.
0002	The attempt to detect the home position fails when the CCD is moved back.	Disconnect and then connect the harness connector. Replace the optical HP sensor, optical motor, and reader controller PCB.
E225	The light intensity of the CCD is faulty.	Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable. Replace the flexible cable, CCD unit, and reader controller PCB.
E227	The reader unit power supply (24V) is faulty.	
0001	At time of power-on, the 24V port is off.	Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. Replace the power supply.
0002	At the start of a job, the 24V port is off.	Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. Replace the power supply.
0003	At the end of a job, the 24V port is off.	Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. Replace the power supply.
0004	When a load is being driven, the 24V port is off.	Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. Replace the power supply.
E248	EEPROM error	
0001	An error has occurred at power-on.	Replace the reader controller PCB.
0002	An error has occurred during write operation.	Replace the reader controller PCB.
0003	An error has occurred during read operation following write operation.	Replace the reader controller PCB.
E280	Reading unit communication error	
0001	Reception status error	Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable. Replace the flexible cable
0002	Reception interrupt error	Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable. Replace the flexible cable
0003	Insufficient insertion of the reading unit connector	Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable. Replace the flexible cable

16.1.3 E261 to E315 (DC Controller, Main Controller)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-3

Code	Cause	Remedy
E261	The zero-cross signal is faulty.	
0000	When the relay is on, the zero-cross signal is not detected for 500 msec or more.	Replace the AC driver PCB. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E315	There is an error in image data.	
0007	There is an error in JBIG encoding.	Turn off and then back on the power.
000d	There is an error in JBIG decoding.	Turn off and then back on the power.
000e	Error in decoding of software	Replace the main controller PCB
0025	Error in ROTU hardware	Replace SDRAM. Replace HDD. Replace the main controller PCB.
0027	Error in ROTU timeout	Replace SDRAM. Replace HDD. Replace the main controller PCB.
0033	Error in MemFill hardware	Replace the main controller PCB.
0035	Error in MemFill timeout	Replace the main controller PCB.
0100	Error in PrcOverRun	Replace the main controller PCB.
0500	Error in device timeout [location to be detected] image process module (SCIO) [Detection timing] when there is no interruption 2 min after the operation has been started	Check connection with DDI-S cable(RCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0501	Device: abnormal termination error [location to be detected] image process module (SCIO) [Detection timing] When abnormal interruption is detected after the operation has been started.	Check connection with DDI-S cable(RCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0510	Device: timeout error [Location to be detected] image process module (SCIP) [Detection timing] when there is no interruption 2 min after the operation has been started.	Check connection with DDI-S cable(RCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0511	Device: abnormal termination error [Location to be detected] image process module (SCIP) [Detection timing] when abnormal interruption is detected after the operation has been detected.	Check connection with DDI-S cable(RCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0520	Device: timeout error [Location to be detected] image process module (CMIP) [Detection timing] When there is no interruption 2 min after the operation has been started	Check connection with DDI-S cable(RCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0521	Device: abnormal termination error [Location to be detected] image process module (CMIP) [Detection timing] when abnormal interruption is detected after the operation has been detected.	Check connection with DDI-S cable(RCON). Replace the main controller PCB.

Code	Cause	Remedy
0530	Device: timeout error [Location to be detected] image process module (JPEN) [Detection timing] when there is no interruption 2 min after the operation has been started.	Turn OFF and then ON the power. Replace the main controller PCB if this occurs frequently.
0531	Device: abnormal termination error [Location to be detected] image process module (JPEN) [Detection timing] when abnormal interruption is detected after the operation has been started.	Turn OFF and then ON the power. Replace the main controller PCB if this occurs frequently.
0540	Device: timeout error [Location to be detected] image process module (JPDE) [Detection timing] when there is no interruption 2 min after the operation has been started.	Turn OFF and then ON the power. Replace the main controller PCB if this occurs frequently.
0541	Device: abnormal termination error [Location to be detected] image process module (JPDE) [Detection timing] when abnormal interruption is detected after the operation has been started.	Turn OFF and then ON the power. Replace the main controller PCB if this occurs frequently.
0550	Device: timeout error [Location to be detected] image process module (PRIP) [Detection timing] when there is no interruption 2 min after the operation has been started.	Check connection with DDI-P cable(DCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0551	Device: abnormal termination error [Location to be detected] image process module (PRIP) [Detection timing] when abnormal interruption is detected after the operation has been started.	Check connection with DDI-P cable(DCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0560	Device: timeout error [Location to be detected] image process module (PRIO) [Detection timing] when there is no interruption 2 min after the operation has been started.	Check connection with DDI-P cable(DCON). Replace the main controller PCB.
0561	Device: abnormal termination error [Location to be detected] image process module (PRIO) [Detection timing] when abnormal interruption is detected after the operation has been started.	Check connection with DDI-P cable(DCON). Replace the main controller PCB.

16.1.4 E400, E413, E490 (ADF)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-4

Code	Cause/Detection Details	Measures
E400	A communication error is detected for a certain period of time after communication with the engine started at the time of initialization.	
0001	The checksum values of data received from the ADF driver PCB are inconsistent for a certain period of time.	Check connection of ADF lattice cable (cleaning of connecting point). Replace the AC driver PCB. Replace the reader controller PCB. Replace the main controller PCB.
0002	The status of data received from the ADF driver PCB is not normal for a certain period of time.	Check connection of ADF lattice cable (cleaning of connecting point). Replace the AC driver PCB. Replace the reader controller PCB. Replace the main controller PCB.
0003	A serial communication error interrupt is detected for a certain period of time.	Check connection of ADF lattice cable (cleaning of connecting point). Replace the AC driver PCB. Replace the reader controller PCB. Replace the main controller PCB.
E413	Failure in the separation motor (The level of the separation motor HP sensor does not change within a specified period even when the separation motor is driven.)	
0001	The separation roller is in the OPEN status when initializing the separation motor.	Replace the separation motor HP sensor. Replace the separation motor. Replace the ADF driver PCB.
0002	The separation roller is in the CLOSE status when initializing the separation motor.	Replace the separation motor HP sensor. Replace the separation motor. Replace the ADF driver PCB.
E490	The ADF installed is not supported.	
0001	Error with an incorrect ADF model	The ADF installed is not supported. Replace the DC controller PCB.

16.1.5 E500 to E5F9 (Finisher)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-5

Code	Detail code	Name	Detection	Remedy
E500	0001	fault in communication with the finisher (common among all finishers)		Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E503	0002	fault in communication with the finisher (External finisher)	fault in communication between finisher and saddle unit	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the saddle controller PCB. Check the cable.
	0003		fault in communication between finisher and punch unit	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the punch drive PCB. Check the cable.
E505	0001	fault in the backup memory of the finisher (common among all finishers)	fault in the data stored in backup memory	Turn off the main power. Check the wiring of the DC controller PCB and the finisher controller, and check the fuse of the 24-V power supply. Thereafter, turn the main power back on.
	0002		fault in the EEPROM data of the punch unit	Replace the punch driver PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E514	0001	fault in stack delivery motor (Finisher-S1)	When the stack retaining spacer is returned to home position, the belt escape home position sensor does not go on within 1.5 sec.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the stack delivery motor. Check the stack delivery drive mechanism.
	0002		When the stack retaining spacer is shifted from home position, the belt escape home position sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.	
E514	0001	fault in trailing edge assist motor (External finisher)	The home position sensor does not go off even when the trailing edge assist motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	Replace the finisher control PCB. Replace the trailing edge assist motor.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go on even after the trailing edge assist motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E519	0001	Gear change motor error (External finisher)	The home position sensor does not go off even when the gear change motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the gear change motor. Check the gear change mechanism.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go on even when the gear change motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E520	0001	The offset motor or the finisher controller PCB is faulty. The offset home position sensor is faulty (Finisher-S1).	While the offset motor is in operation, drive was applied for 1000 msec for movement toward the home position sensor; however, the offset home position sensor does not go on.	Replace the offset motor. Replace the offset home position sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		While the offset motor is in operation, drive was applied for 1000 msec for movement away from the home position sensor; however, the offset home position sensor does not go off.	
E530	8001	Rear alignment error (Finisher-S1)	The home position sensor does not go on within 2000 msec after the start of operation when the rear aligning plate is shifted to home position.	Replace the finisher controlled PCB. Replace the rear alignment motor. Check the rear aligning plate drive mechanism. Check the rear alignment home position sensor.
	8002		The home position sensor does not go off within 1000 msec after the start of operation when the rear aligning plate is shifted from home position.	
E530	0001	Front alignment error (External finisher)	The home position sensor does not go off even when the front alignment motor has been rotated for a specific period of time.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the front alignment motor. Check the front aligning plate drive mechanism. Check the front alignment home position sensor.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go on even when the front alignment motor has been rotated for a specific period of time.	
E531	8001	Stapler error (Finisher-S1)	At time of staple jam recovery, the home position sensor does not go on with 500 msec after the start of reverse rotation of the stapler motor.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the stapler. Check the harness.
	8002		The home position sensor does not go off within 500 msec after the stapler motor has been started.	
E531	0001	Stapler error (External finisher)	The home position sensor does not go off even when the stapler motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the stapler. Check the harness.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go on even when the stapler motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E532	8001	Stapler shift error (Finisher-S1)	The stapler slide home position sensor does not go on within 11 sec when the stapler is shifted to home position.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the stapler shift motor. Check the stapler shift home position sensor. Check the harness.
	8002		The stapler slide home position sensor does not go off within 1.0 sec when the stapler is shifted from home position.	
E532	0001	Stapler shift error (External finisher)	The home position sensor does not go off even after the stapler shift motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the stapler shift motor. Check the stapler shift home position sensor. Check the harness.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go on even when the stapler shift motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E535	0001	Swing cam error (Finisher-S1)	The home position sensor does not go off within 1000 msec after the start of operation when the swing arm is shifted from home position.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the swing cam motor. Check the swing cam home position sensor. Check the harness.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go off within 1.0 sec when the stack delivery roller swing arm is moved from home position.	
E535	0001	Swing cam error (External finisher)	The home position sensor does not go off even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the swing cam motor. Check the swing cam home position sensor. Check the harness.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go on even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E537	8001	Front alignment error (Finisher-S1)	The home position sensor does not go on within 2.0 sec when the front aligning plate is moved to home position.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the front alignment motor. Check the front aligning plate drive mechanism. Check the front alignment home position sensor.
	8002		The home position sensor dos not go off within 1.0 sec when the front aligning plate is shifted from home position.	

Code	Detail code	Name	Detection	Remedy
E537	0001	Rear alignment error (External finisher)	The home position sensor does not go on within 2000 msec after the start of operation when the read aligning plate is moved to home position.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the rear alignment motor. Check the rear aligning plate drive mechanism. Check the rear alignment home position sensor.
	0002		The home position sensor does not go off within 1000 msec after the start of operation when the rear aligning plate is moved form home position.	
E540	8002	Stack tray motor error (Finisher-S1)	The operation to detect the paper surface of the stack tray does not end within 1.0 sec.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the tray ascent/descent motor. Check the stack tray drive mechanism. Check the paper surface sensor.
	8003		An abnormal combination of sensor states has been detected.	Replace the finisher controller PCB. Check the stack tray upper limit sensor. Check the stack tray lower limit sensor. Check the stack tray upper paper surface sensor. Check the stack tray lower paper surface sensor.
E540	0002	Upper tray ascent/descent motor error (External finisher)	Upper tray ascent/descent motor clock error	Replace the No. 1 tray shift motor. Replace the finisher controller PCB. Check the tray ascent/descent mechanism.
	0003		Area error	Replace the No. 1 tray area sensor PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0004		Safety switch activation	Check the No. 1 tray closed detecting switch. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E542	0002	Lower tray ascent/descent motor error (External finisher)	Lower tray ascent/descent motor clock error	Replace the No. 2 tray shift motor. Replace the finisher controller PCB. Check the tray ascent/descent mechanism.
	0003		Area error	Replace the No. 2 tray shift area sensor PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E577	8001	Paddle error (Finisher-S1)	The paddle home position sensor does not go on within 1.5 sec when the paddle is shifted to home position.	Check the paddle motor. Check the paddle home position sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002		The paddle home position sensor does not go off within 1.0 sec when the paddle is moved to home position.	
E584	0001	Shutter unit error (External finisher)	The shutter open sensor does not go off (i.e., the shutter does not close).	Check the stack edging motor. Check the open/close clutch. Check the shutter home position sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The shutter open sensor does not go on (i.e., the shutter does not open).	
E590	0001	Punch motor error	The punching home position is not detected even when the puncher motor has been driven for 200 msec.	Check the punch motor. Check the punch motor clock sensor. Check the punch driver PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The punch home position sensor is not defected even after the motor has stopped at time of punch motor initial operation.	
E591	0001	Punch dust sensor error	Error in light-receiving voltage while light is emitted	Check the waste paper case full sensor. Check the punch driver PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		Error in light-receiving voltage while light is not emitted	
E592	0001	Paper trailing edge sensor/ horizontal sensor error	Error in light-receiving voltage when light is emitted (trailing edge sensor)	Check the paper trailing edge sensor. Check the horizontal registration sensor. Check the punch driver PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is not emitted (trailing edge sensor)	
	0003		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is emitted (horizontal registration sensor 1)	
	0004		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is not emitted (horizontal registration sensor 1)	
	0005		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is emitted (horizontal registration sensor 2)	
	0006		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is not emitted (horizontal registration sensor 2)	
	0007		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is emitted (horizontal registration sensor 3)	
	0008		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is not emitted (horizontal registration sensor 3)	
	0009		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is emitted (horizontal registration sensor 4)	
	000A		Error in light-receiving voltage when light is not emitted (horizontal registration sensor 4)	
E593	0001	Punch shift motor error	The light-receiving voltage home position sensor does not go off when light is emitted.	Check the horizontal registration motor. Check the horizontal registration home position sensor. Check the punch driver PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB. Check the punch shift mechanism.
	0002		The light-receiving voltage home position sensor does not go on when light is not emitted.	
E5F0	0001	Saddle paper positioning plate error	The paper positioning plate home position sensor does to go on when the paper positioning motor has been driven for 1.33 sec. Paper positioning plate motor (M4S)/paper positioning plate home position sensor (P17S)	Check the paper positioning plate motor. Check the paper positioning plate home position sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB. Check the paper positioning plate drive mechanism.
	0002		The paper positioning plate home position sensor doest not go off when the paper positioning plate motor has been driven for 1 sec. Paper positioning plate motor (M4S)/paper positioning plate home position sensor (P17S)	
E5F1	0001	Saddle paper folding error	The number of detection pulses of the paper folding motor clock sensor has dropped below a specific value. Paper folding motor (M2S)/paper folding motor clock sensor (P14S)	Check the paper folding motor. Check the paper folding motor clock sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB. Check the paper folding plate drive mechanism.
	0002		The state of the paper folding home position sensor doest not change when the paper folding motor has been driven for 3 sec. Paper folding motor (M2S)/paper folding motor clock sensor (P14S)	

Code	Detail code	Name	Detection	Remedy
E5F2	0001	Saddle guide error	The guide home position sensor does not go on when the guide motor has been driven for 0.455 sec. Guide motor (M3S)/guide home position sensor (PI13S)	Check the guide motor. Check the guide home position sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB. Check the guide drive mechanism.
	0002		The guide home position sensor does not go off when the guide motor has been driven for 1 sec. Guide motor (M3S)/guide home position sensor (PI13S)	
E5F3	0001	saddle alignment error	The aligning plate home position sensor does not go on when the alignment motor has been driven for 0.5 sec. (at time of initialization, 1.67 sec.) Alignment motor (M5S)/aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)	Check the alignment motor. Check the alignment home position sensor. Check the aligning plate drive mechanism. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The aligning plate home position sensor does not go off when the alignment motor has been driven for 1 sec. Alignment motor (M5S)/aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)	
E5F4	0001	Saddle rear stapling error	The stitching home position sensor does not go on when the stitch motor (rear) has been rotated in reverse for 0.5 sec or more. Stitch motor (rear; M6S)/stitching home position sensor (rear; MS5S)	Replace the stitcher (rear). Check the harness. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The stitching home position sensor does not go off when the stitch motor (rear) has been rotated in normal direction for 0.5 sec or more. Stitch motor (rear; MS)/stitching home position sensor (rear; MS5S)	
E5F5	0001	Saddle front stapling error	The stitching home position sensor does not go on when the stitch motor (front) has been rotated in reverse for 0.5 sec or more. Stitch motor (front; M7S)/stitching home position sensor (front; MS7S)	Replace the stitcher (front). Check the harness. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The stitching home position sensor does not go off when the switch motor (front) has been rotated in normal direction for 0.5 sec or more. Stitch motor (front; M7S)/stitching home position sensor (front; MS7S)	
E5F6	0001	Saddle butting error	The paper butting plate home position sensor does not go on when the paper butting plate motor has been driven for 0.3 sec. Paper butting plate motor (M8S)/paper butting plate home position sensor (PI14S)	Check the paper butting plate motor. Check the paper butting plate home position sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The paper butting plate home position sensor does not go off when the paper butting plate motor has been driven for 80 msec or more. Paper butting plate motor (M8S)/paper butting plate home position sensor (PI14S)	
	0003		The number of detection pulses of the paper butting plate motor has dropped below a specific value. paper butting plate motor (M8S)/paper butting plate motor clock sensor (PI1S)	Check the paper butting plate motor. Check the paper butting plate motor clock sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0004		The paper butting plate leading edge sensor does not go off when the paper butting plate motor has been driven for 80 msec. Paper butting plate motor (M8S)/paper butting plate leading edge sensor (PI15S)	Check the paper butting plate motor. Check the paper butting plate leading edge sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0005		The paper butting plate leading edge sensor does not go on when the paper butting plate motor has been driven for 0.3 sec. Paper butting plate more (M8S)/paper butting plate leading edge sensor (PI15S)	
E5F8	0001	Saddle connector error	The connector of the paper butting plate home position sensor has been identified as being disconnected. Connector of guide home position sensor (PI13S)	Connect the connector of the guide home position sensor. Check the harness. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The connector of the paper butting plate home position sensor has been identified as being disconnected. Connector of paper butting plate home position sensor (PI14S)	Connect the connector of the paper butting plate home position sensor. Check the harness. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0003		The connector of the paper butting plate leading edge sensor has been identified as being disconnected. Connector of paper butting plate leading edge sensor (PI15S)	Connect the connector of the paper butting plate leading edge sensor. Check the harness. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E5F9	0001	Saddle switch error	The inlet cover switch has been identified as being open for 1 sec or more after the start of printing or the start of initial rotation with the following sensors identifying their respective covers as being closed: - inlet cover sensor (PI9S) - nt cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) - delivery cover sensor (PI3S) Or, the front over switch (MS2S) or the delivery cover switch (MS3S) is open. Inlet cover switch (MS1S)/front cover switch (MS2S)/delivery cover switch (MS3S)	Check the inlet cover switch. Check the inlet cover sensor. Check the front cover open/ closed sensor. Check the delivery cover sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0002		The front cover switch has been identified as being open from the start of printing or the start of initial rotation with the following sensors identifying their respective covers as being closed. - inlet cover sensor (PI9S) - front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) - delivery cover sensor (PI3S) - front cover switch (MS2S)/delivery cover switch (MS3S)	Check the front cover switch. Check the inlet cover sensor. Check the front cover open/ closed sensor. Check the delivery cover sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	0003		The delivery cover switch has been identified as being open after the start of printing or the start of initial rotation of the host machine with the following sensors identifying their respective covers as being closed: - inlet cover sensor (PI9S) - front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) - delivery cover sensor (PI3S) - delivery cover switch (MS3S)	Check the delivery cover switch. Check the inlet cover sensor. Check the inlet cover sensor. Check the front cover open/closed sensor. Check the delivery cover sensor. Replace the finisher controller PCB.

16.1.6 E602 (Error in HDD/encryption board)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-6

Code	Cause	Remedy
E602	There is an error on the hard disk.	
0001	[Cause] An HDD detection error has occurred. The HDD cannot be detected. The HDD does not become ready. The HDD returns an error. [Detection] while boot ROM is in session BARSAC startup, mounting (usrIde) [Timing of Detection] once at startup	See the details under 602.
0002	[Cause] There is no startup file. The program for the main CPU does not exist on the HDD or in BOOTDEV/BOOT, and so on. [Detection] while boot ROM is in use at time of system file loading (usrIde) [Timing of Detection] once at startup	See the details under 602.
0003	[Cause] An HDD write abort error has occurred. The sectors for BOOTDEV on the HDD cannot be read. [Detection] BARSAC (all; at time of bootable startup) [Timing of Detection] once at startup	See the details under 602.
0006	[Cause] A subbootable that matches the PDL type does not exit in BOOTDEV/BOOT. [Detection] during loading of sub boot in oclibroot [Timing of Detection] once at bootable startup	See the details under 602.
0009	[Cause] there is no necessary FONT file in /BOOTDEV/BOOT. [Location to be detected] each point [Detection timing] detected when executing report print, X/IFAX communication, stamp print	1. Download SYSTEM again. 2. Check that the font file is located in /BOOTDEV/BOOT.
0012	[Cause] damage/deletion of file on HDD referred by WEB browser [Location to be detected] initialization of web browser [Detection timing] Archive cannot be found in /BOOTDEV/BROWS by reextracting (reloading) web browser's file when failed to extract (load) web browser's file in /APL_GEN/NetFront.	Reinstall WEB browser contents using download tool. (If failed to recover, replace HDD because HDD could have been damaged)
2000	Error in authentication between the host machine and encryption board	- Check connection of encryption board (turn OFF and then ON the power) - Use SST to execute key clear of the encryption board (HDD needs to be formatted because HDD is not formatted. System firmware needs to be reinstalled)
2001	Mismatch in the operation of encryption board	- Use SST to execute key clear of the encryption board (HDD needs to be formatted because HDD is not formatted. System firmware needs to be reinstalled)
2002	Fault in the encryption board, etc.	- Check connection of the encryption board (turn OFF and then ON the power) -Use SST to execute key clear of the encryption board (HDD needs to be formatted because HDD is not formatted. System firmware needs to be reinstalled) -After replacing the encryption board, format HDD and reinstall SYSTEM using SST. -Replace the main controller PCB.
01XX	/DOSDEV is faulty.	See the details under 602.
02XX	/FSTDEV is faulty.	See the details under 602.
03XX	/DOSDEV2 is faulty.	See the details under 602.
04XX	/FSTPDEV is faulty.	See the details under 602.
05XX	/DOSDEV3 is faulty.	See the details under 602.
06XX	/PDLDEV is faulty.	See the details under 602.
07XX	/DOSDEV4 is faulty.	See the details under 602.
08XX	/BOOTDEV is faulty.	See the details under 602.
09XX	/DOSDEV5 is faulty.	See the details under 602.
10XX	Abnormal /APL_MEAP	See the details under 602.
11XX	Abnormal /APL_SEND	See the details under 602.
12XX	Abnormal /APL_KEEP	See the details under 602.
13XX	Abnormal /APL_LOG	See the details under 602.
FFXX	There is an error in a partition that cannot be identified.	See the details under 602.

16.1.7 Detail in E602

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

<E602-XXYY>

XX= "00"

T-16-7

XX	YY	Description	Remedy
00	01	The HDD cannot be recognized. The startup partition (BOOTDEV) cannot be found at startup.	1. Turn off the main switch, and check the cable connector. Then, turn on the main switch. 2. Check to see if the HDD spins up when the main switch is turned on and if the 5V/12V power is supplied. 3. If the symptom still exists after the foregoing, replace the HDD, re-install the system software. If the symptom still exists, replace the main board.
	02	The system software for the main CPU does not exist.	1. Start in safe mode, reinstall a system, and turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Replace the HDD and reinstall a system.
	03	Suspension of a write operation to the boot device has been detected.	1. Start in safe mode, reinstall a system, and turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Replace the HDD and reinstall a system.
	06	The system software of the sub CPU does not exist.	1. Start in safe mode, reinstall a system, and turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Replace the HDD and reinstall a system.

XX= "01" to "FF"

T-16-8

XX				YY					
XX	CHK-TYPE	Partition	Description	Occurrence at time of start-up			Occurrence during normal execution		
				03	05	00,01,02,04	11,21	13,25	10,12,14,22,23,24
				Action			Action		
01	1	FSTDEV	compressed image data (e.g., Box)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12
02		IMG_MNG	file management table, profile						
03		FSTCDEV	job archiving (changing)						
04	2	APL_GEN	general-purpose data						
05		TMP_GEN	general-purpose data (temporary file)						
06		TMP_FAX	not used						
07		TMP_PSS	for PDL spool (temporary file)						
08	3	PDLDEV	PDL-related file						
09	4	BOOTDEV	firmware (system, MEAP, key, certificate, PDF dictionary, RUI, content, voice dictionary)	*3	*8				
10	5	APL_MEAP	MEAP application	*1	*5				
11	6	APL_SEND	address book, filter	*2	*6				
12	7	APL_KEEP	for non-initialization data storage	*3	*8				
13	8	APL_LOG	system log	*1	*5				
FF	0	not specified	check for and recovery of HDD full-fault sectors	*4	*7				

[HDD formatting]

T-16-9

XX	CHK-TYPE	Partition in question	Description	Typical item deleted	HDD formatting by HD-CLEAR	Normal mode + HDD formatting with SST	Safe mode + HDD formatting with SST
01	1	DOSDEV	General data storage area	Entire collection of image data (e.g., Box)	Possible (4 partitions, simul-taneously)	Not possible	Not possible
02	1	FSTDEV	Image data storage area (e.g., Box)	Entire collection of image data (e.g., Box)	Possible (4 partitions, simul-taneously)	Not possible	Not possible
03	1	DOSDEV2	Image thumbnail display data area (e.g., Box)	Entire collection of image data (e.g., Box)	Possible (4 partitions, simul-taneously)	Not possible	Not possible
04	1	FSTPDEV	Image data storage area (e.g., Box)	Entire collection of image data (e.g., Box)	Possible (4 partitions, simul-taneously)	Not possible	Not possible
05	2	DOSDEV3	General file storage area (user settings, logs, PDL spool, image data control info)	Items that are relatively less critical	Possible	Not possible	Not possible
06	3	PDLDEV	PDL-related file storage area (font, registered form, ICC profile, color correction info file for PDL function)	User Font IccProfil	Possible	Not possible	Not possible
07	4	DOSDEV4	Firmware storage area (address book, filter)	Address book	Not possible	Not possible	Not possible
08	4	BOOTDEV	Firmware storage area (System, Language, RUI)	System software	Not possible	Specify the BOOTDEV and perform a format. System download is required after format.	
09	5	DOSDEV5	For future expansion	None in particular	Possible	Not possible	Not possible

XX	CHK-TYPE	Partition in question	Description	Typical item deleted	HDD formatting by HD-CLEAR	Normal mode + HDD formatting with SST	Safe mode + HDD formatting with SST
FF	0	Not identified	Entire HDD (check on faulty sector and recovery)	-	-	-	-

* When the machine starts up for the first time after its HDD has been formatted, it may take longer than usual to complete the startup session.

[Remedy]

	YY	Description	Action
*1	03	The ongoing write operation is interrupted (at start-up).	- Set the partition number in question for CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power. - Enter CHK-TYPE in question (for the partition), and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power.
*2			- Ask the user to download the address book data using a remote UI. - Set the partition number in question for CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power. - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*3			- Set CHK-TYPE=0, and execute HD-CHECK; then, turn off and then back on the power. - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*4			- Set CHK-TYPE=0, and execute HD-CHECK; then, turn off and then back on the power. - Set CHK-TYPE=1, 2, 3, 5, and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power.
*5	05	A file system error has occurred.	- Enter CHK-TYPE in question (for the partition), and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power. - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*6			The machine is designed so that execution of HD-CLEAR is not possible in service mode (so as to prevent loss of information, e.g., address book, filter information). - Ask the user to download the address book data using a remote UI. - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*7			- Set CHK-TYPE=1, 2, 3, 5, and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power. - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*8			- Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*9	00 01 02 04	The HDD has poor contact, or a system error has occurred.	- Check the cable and the power cord. - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*10	11 21	The HDD has poor contact.	- Check the cable and the power cord. - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*11	13 25	The ongoing write operation has been interrupted.	There is a strong possibility of damage in the file data (e.g., Box) stored on the HDD. - Set the partition number in question for CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CHECK; then, turn off and back on the power. - Set the partition number in question for CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and back on the power. (In the case of BOOTDEV, BOOTDEV2 or APL_SEND, execute reformatting using the SST, and reinstall the system software.) - Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.
*12	10 12 14 22 23 24	A system error or a packet error has been detected.	- Replace the HDD, and reinstall the system software.

T-16-10

⚠
- HD-CLEAR
When you have executed HD-CLEAR, all contents of the partition in question (files, sub directories) will be lost.
The actual formatting will take place when the machine is started up after it has been turned off upon execution of HD-CLEAN.
At this time, the Startup screen shows a progress bar, its edge reaching the end in about 5 min. Be sure not to turn off the power while the progress bar is moving.

- HD-CHECK
If the power is cut while data is being written to the HDD, the occurrence of a write-suspended sector is a possibility. When HD-CHECK is run on such a sector, repairs will be made, but all data in the sector will be lost. A write-suspended sector may be repaired only by HDD-CHECK (0); if not TYPE-TYPE=0, the task will be limited to an FS level check.

- Replacing the HDD
1. Turn OFF the main power.
2. Connect a new HDD.
3. Start the host machine in safe mode.
4. Download System, RUI and Lang with service support tool.
5. Turn OFF/ON the power.

16.1.8 E604 to E748 (Main Controller, DC Controller)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-11

Code	Cause	Remedy
E604	The image memory is faulty or is inadequate.	

Code	Cause	Remedy
0000	The memory size does not match the model.	Increase the memory.
E609	There is an error on the HDD.	
0008	At startup, the HDD fails to reach a specific temperature level within a specific period of time.	Replace the hard disk. Replace the DC controller PCB.
0009	At time of sleep recovery, the temperature fails to reach a specific level.	Replace the hard disk. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E610	The HDD coding key is faulty.	
0001	An encryption board does not exist.	- Check the hardware constitution
0002	Memory configuration to perform encryption is not satisfied.	- Check the hardware constitution
0101	Memory initialization for the key storage area fails.	- Turn the main power switch off/on
0102	Initialization for the encryption processing area fails.	- Turn the main power switch off/on
0201	Error in the encryption processing area	- Turn the main power switch off/on
0202	Error in the encryption processing area	- Turn the main power switch off/on
0301	Creation of an encryption key fails.	- Turn the main power switch off/on
0302	A fault in the encryption key is detected.	- Turn the main power switch off/on Turn off/on the main power switch. (The contents of HDD are initialized.)
0303	A fault in the encryption key is detected.	- Turn the main power switch off/on Turn off/on the main power switch. (The contents of HDD are initialized.)
0401	An error is detected during encrypting.	- Turn the main power switch off/on
0402	An error is detected during encrypting.	- Turn the main power switch off/on
0501	Error in document management information on /FSTDEV	- Turn the main power switch off/on
E611	Error in repeated reboot due to such causes as malfunctioning SRAM	
0000	When damaged SRAM information occurs and hinders reading the job information on the SRAM, repeated reboot occurs at recovery from power supply cut.	Execute SRAM clear.
E674	An error has occurred in communication between the fax control PCB (2-line) and main controller PCB.	
0001	An attempt to set mode for the fax device has failed.	1. Check the connection of the cable between the fax control PCB (2-line) and the main controller PCB. 2. Replace the ROM DIMM of the fax control PCB (2-line). 3. Replace the fax control PCB (2-line). 4. Replace the main controller PCB.
0100	Writing communication information fails after communication is completed, and reading the communication information fails.	Turn the main power switch off/on. Turning off/on the main power switch clears all communication information (log).
E710	There is an error in the initialization of the IPC.	
0001	The machine fails to become ready 3 sec or less after the IPC chip startup.	Check the cable.
E711	There is an error in the IPC communication.	
0001	The occurrence of an error has been recorded in the error register of the IPC chip 4 times or more within 1.5 sec.	Check the cable.
E713	There is an error in the communication with the finisher or 3-way unit.	
0000	The communication with the finisher / 3-way unit does not resume within 5 sec after it has been disrupted.	Check the cable. Replace the DC controller PCB. Replace the finisher controller PCB. Replace the 3-way unit driver PCB.
E716	Communication error with the pedestal/ 3-way unit	
0000	After the presence of a pedestal or a 3-way unit has been detected, the communication fails to be normal for 5 sec.	Check the cable. Replace the DC controller PCB. Replace the pedestal driver PCB. Replace the 3-way unit driver PCB.
0010	When the communication with the 3-way unit is faulty after detecting the connection with the finisher.	Install the 3-way unit. Check the cable and replace the DC controller PCB. Replace the 3-way unit driver PCB.
E717	There is an error in the communication with the eM controller.	
0001	The eM controller is not connected at power on, although it was connected before the power was turned off because of an error.	Check the cable; thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR.
0002	An IPC error has occurred while the eM controller is in operation. There is an open circuit for the IPC. An error has occurred, and the IPC communication remains disabled.	Check the cable; thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR.
E719	There is a coin vendor error.	
0001	The coin vendor is not connected when the power is turned on, although it was connected before the power was turned off because of an error.	Check the cable; thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR.
0002	While the coin vendor is in operation, an IPC error has occurred, IPC has developed an open circuit, or an error preventing recovery of IPC communication has occurred. An open circuit has been detected in the line for the pickup/delivery signal. An illegal signal has been detected.	Check the cable; thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR.
0003	While the unit price is being checked at startup, an error occurs in the communication with the coin vendor.	Check the cable; thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR.
0011	An error has occurred at new card reader startup. The new card reader is not connected when the power is turned off, although it was connected when the power was turned off.	Check the cable; thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR.
0012	An IPC error has occurred at new card reader startup. There is an IPC open circuit. An error has occurred that prevents recovery of IPC communication.	Check the cable; thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR.
0031	Error in communication at card reader (serial) startup Communication with the card reader cannot be started at startup.	1. Check the connection of the cable for the card reader (connector disconnected, cable cut); thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. 2. Execute the following items in service mode after removing the card reader, and then install the card reader again. - COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CARD - COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR

Code	Cause	Remedy
0032	Error in communication after card reader (serial) startup Communication with the card reader is available at startup, and then becomes unavailable.	Check the connection of the cable for the card reader (connector disconnected, cable cut); thereafter, reset the condition in service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR.
E730	There is a PDL software error.	
1001	An initialization error has occurred.	1. Execute PDL resetting. 2. Turn on the power once again.
100A	An error that may be critical to the system (e.g., failed initialization) has occurred.	1. Execute PDL resetting. 2. Turn on the power once again.
9004	There is an error in the communication (PAI) with an external controller.	1. Turn on the power once main. 2. Check the connection of the open I/F board and the cable. 3. Replace the board for the external controller open I/F. 4. Replace the main board.
9005	There is a fault in the connector of the vide cable to the external controller.	1. Turn on the power once main. 2. Check the connection of the open I/F board and the cable. 3. Replace the board for the external controller open I/F. 4. Replace the main board.
A006	The PDL board does not respond. A subbootable is faulty or absent.	1. Execute PDL resetting. 2. Turn on the power once again. 3. Check the connection of the SURF board. 4. Re-install the firmware. 5. Replace the main board.
A007	There is a mismatch between the control software of the machine and the PDL control software in regard to version.	1. Execute PDL resetting. 2. Turn on the power once again. 3. Execute system formatting (all), and reinstall the system.
B013	There is corruption in the font data.	1. Turn on the power once again. 2. Re-install the software. 3. Execute system formatting (all), and reinstall the system.
E732	There is an error in the communication with the scanner.	
0001	There is a DDI-S communication error.	1. Check the connector used to connect the scanner. 2. Check the power supply of the scanner (to see if initialization takes place at startup). 3. Replace the reader controller, scanner board, or main board as necessary.
0010	Fault in detection of DDI-S Vsync signal	
9999	A scanner is first detected from the printer model. (Not an error code but only the message 'Turn the main power switch OFF&ON again' is displayed on the users screen. The error is recorded in service mode > DISPLAY > ERR.	Turn the main power switch off/on
E733	There is an error in the communication with the printer.	
0000	At startup, communication with the printer fails.	1. Check the connector used to connect to the printer. 2. Check the power supply of the printer (to see if initialization takes place at startup). 3. Replace the DC controller or the main board.
0001	There is a DDI-P communication error.	1. Check the connection with the printer. 2. Check the power supply of the printer (to see if initialization takes place at startup). 3. Replace the DC controller or the main board.
0010	Fault in detection of DDI-P Vsync signal	1. Check the connection with the printer. 2. Check the power supply of the printer (to see if initialization takes place at startup). 3. Replace the DC controller or the main board.
0020	Error in DDI-P communication	1. Check the connection with the printer. 2. Check the power supply of the printer (to see if initialization takes place at startup). 3. Replace the DC controller or the main board.
0021	Error in DDI-P communication	1. Check the connection with the printer. 2. Check the power supply of the printer (to see if initialization takes place at startup). 3. Replace the DC controller or the main board.
E740	There is an error on the Ether board.	
0002	The MAC address is illegal.	Replace the LAN card.
E743	There is an error in the DDI communication.	
0000	An SCI error has occurred. The received data is faulty. A reception timeout condition has occurred. An SEQ timeout error has occurred.	Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable used to connect the reader unit and the printer unit. Replace the following as necessary: flexible cable, reader controller PCB, main controller PCB.
E744	There is an error in the language file/boot ROM.	
0001	The version of the language file on the HDD and that of the bootable do not match.	Download a language file of the correct version.
0002	The size of the language file on the HDD is too large.	Download a language file of the correct version.
0003	There is no language file on the HDD indicated by config.txt for a switchover.	Download a language file of the correct version.
0004	An attempt to switchover to a language on the HDD fails.	Download a language file of the correct version.
1000	The boot ROM that is mounted is of the wrong type.	Replace the boot ROM with one of the model in question.
2000	The engine ID indicated by the software ID is illegal.	Replace it with a software ID of the correct model.
3xxx	Disagreement between the installed memory and the boot ROM	Confirm and correct the installed memory and the boot ROM.
E745	There is a fault on the TokenRing board.	
0001	An attempt at PCI initialization has failed.	1. Disconnect and then connect the TokenRing board. 2. Replace the TokenRing board.
0002	The MAC address is faulty.	1. Replace the TokenRing board.
0003	There is an error in the acquisition/setting of board information.	1. Replace the TokenRing board.

Code	Cause	Remedy
0004	There is a connection error.	1. Check the connection of the cable. 2. Replace the cable. 3. Check the power source of the MAU. 4. Replace the MAU. 5. Replace the TokenRing board.
0005	Other Errors	
E746	The accessories board is of the wrong type.	
0003	At startup, a board for a different model has been detected.	Replace the UFR board of the correct type (model).
E748	There is a mismatch between controller board and SDRAM size.	
4910	A controller board that does not match the product is defected.	- Replace the main controller PCB.
2000	An error occurs when accessing the chip on the main controller PCB.	Replace the main controller PCB.
2001	An error occurs when accessing the memory on the main controller PCB.	1. Unplug/plug in the memory. 2. Replace the main controller PCB.

16.1.9 E804 to E805 (DC Controller Control Fan)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-12

Code	Cause	Remedy
E804	Error in power supply cooling fan	
0000	Failure in power supply cooling fan (while the fan is not working) When lock signal is detected for 5 sec while the fan is stopped.	- Disconnect and then connect the connector (J303) on DC controller PCB. - Replace the power supply cooling fan - Replace DC controller PCB
0001	Failure in rotation of power supply cooling fan When lock signal failed to be detected for 5 sec while the fan is driven.	- Disconnect and then connect the connector (J303) on DC controller PCB. - Replace the power supply cooling fan - Replace DC controller PCB
E805	There is a fan error.	
0000	Failure in heat exhaust fan (front) (FM2) When lock signal is detected for 5 sec while the fan is stopped.	- Replace the heat exhaust fan (front) - Replace DC controller PCB
0001	Failure in rotation of heat exhaust fan (front) (FM2) When lock signal failed to be detected for 5 sec while the fan is driven.	- Replace the heat exhaust fan (front) - Replace DC controller PCB
0002	Failure in heat exhaust fan (rear) (FM1) When lock signal is detected for 5 sec while the fan is stopped.	- Replace the heat exhaust fan (rear) - Replace DC controller PCB
0003	Failure in rotation of heat exhaust fan (rear) (FM1) When lock signal failed to be detected for 5 sec while the fan is driven.	- Replace the heat exhaust fan (rear) - Replace DC controller PCB
E911	Error in memory leak	

16.2 Error Code (SEND)

16.2.1 Self-Diagnostic Display

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-13

Cause	Remedy
Out of resources. Wait for a moment, then perform operation again.	
You cannot browse the network. There is a lack of TCP/IP resources because documents have just been continuously sent or are being continuously sent via FTP or Windows (SMB).	Wait for a while, and try browsing again.
Set the IP Address.	
This machine is not set with an IP address.	Specify the IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen), turn the machine's main power OFF, and then back ON.
No response from the server. Check the settings.	
The specified server settings are incorrect, or the server is not turned ON. Alternatively, the machine's TCP/IP resources may be low.	Wait for a while, and then try browsing again. If there is still no response from the server, try selecting another server.
NetWare is in use. Wait for a moment, then perform operation again.	
You cannot browse the network because NetWare is printing through a PServer or NDS PServer.	Wait until printing is complete, and then try browsing again.
There are too many subdirectories.	
You have exceeded the maximum number of subdirectory levels allowed.	Specify a different destination because the directory level that you are trying to access cannot be specified.
No response.	
The server was not running when you tried to send.	Make sure that the server is ON, and check the destination.
The network connection was lost when you tried to send. (Either you could not connect to the destination, or the connection was lost before the job could be completed.)	Check the status of the network.
You tried to send via NetWare, but the Tree name was not entered.	Enter the Tree name.
A TCP/IP error occurred when you tried to send an e-mail message or I-fax.	Check that the network cables and connectors are properly connected.
Check the TCP/IP.	
The machine's TCP/IP connection is not operating.	Check the IP Address Settings (IP Address, DHCP, RARP, BOOTP) in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
Cannot find the selected server. Check the settings.	
The IP address that the machine should connect to cannot be determined.	1. Check the DNS Server Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). 2. Check whether the DNS server's DNS settings are correct.
If <Login Information> in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Use (security auth.)' for the LDAP server, the machine will not be able to determine the host name.	Check the DNS Server Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
Cannot connect to the selected server. Check the settings.	
The machine cannot connect to the specified IP address/port.	1. Check the Gateway Address setting in IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). 2. Check the Server Address and Port Number in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). 3. Check whether the LDAP server is operating normally. 4. If <Login Information> in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Use (security auth.)' for the LDAP server, check whether UDP (User Datagram Protocol) packages are blocked by the filter.
Check the user name and password or check settings.	
When setting Login Information for the LDAP server to 'Use' or 'Use (security auth.)', the user name or password is incorrect.	Check the User Name and Password settings when <Login Information> in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Use' or 'Use (security auth.)'.
When setting Login Information for the LDAP server to 'Use (security auth.)', the domain name is incorrect.	Check the Domain Name setting when <Login Information> in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Use (security auth.)'.
Cannot complete searching due to timeout. Check the settings.	
The search could not be completed within the time specified under <Search Timeout>.ÅB	Increase the time setting for Search Timeout in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
The number of search results has exceeded limits. Change search conditions and try again.	
The number of addresses that meet the search criteria exceeds the specified maximum number of addresses to search.	1. Narrow down the search criteria, and then search again. 2. Increase the maximum number of addresses to search.
Search condition includes characters that cannot be used with the selected server.	
"\" is used in the search criterion.	Remove "\" from the search criterion, and then search again.
The combination of characters used in the search criterion does not constitute an acceptable search criterion. -There is an unequal number of "("and")". -"*" is not placed within "( )".	Make sure that the characters for the search criterion are combined properly, and then search again.

Cause	Remedy
If <Server LDAP version and character code> is set to 'ver.2 (JIS)', characters other than ASCII Code (0x20-0x7E) are being used.	Omit characters that cannot be used, and then search again.
Cannot start searching because the version setting for the server is incorrect. Check the settings.	
Although 'ver. 3' is set as the server LDAP version number in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen), the LDAP server is running on version 2.	Set Server LDAP version and character code in Register LDAP Server in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) to 'ver. 2'.

16.2.2 List of Error Codes without Messages

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-14

Cause	Remedy
# 001	
Different sized originals were scanned without setting the Different Size Originals mode.	Set the Different Size Originals mode, and then try scanning again.
Different sized originals were scanned in the 2-Sided Original without setting the Different Size Originals mode.	Set the Different Size Originals mode, and then try scanning again.
# 003	
Communications that take longer than the preset time (64 minutes) caused the error.	1. Reduce the resolution or divide the document into two or more parts, and then try sending the document again. 2. When receiving a document, ask the remote party to either reduce the resolution at which the document is scanned, or divide the document into two or more parts before sending it.
# 005	
The recipient did not answer within 35 seconds.	Confirm that the recipient's machine is able to communicate, and then try again.
The receiving machine is not a G3 fax.	Check the type of machine that the recipient has.
# 009	
There is no paper.	Load paper.
The paper drawer is not correctly inserted into the machine.	Insert the paper drawer properly.
# 011	
The document that you are sending is not placed correctly.	Place the document properly into the feeder or on the platen glass, and try sending again.
# 012	
The document could not be sent because the receiving fax machine was out of paper.	Ask the recipient to load paper into their fax machine.
# 018	
The recipient's machine did not respond when your machine redialed.	Confirm that the recipient's machine is able to communicate, and then try again.
The documents could not be sent because the recipient's machine was performing another task.	Confirm that the recipient's machine is able to communicate, and then try again.
The settings on your machine do not match the settings on the recipient's machine.	Check that the settings on your machine match those on the recipient's machine, and that the recipient's machine is able to communicate, and try again.
# 022	
Forwarding could not be performed because all of the addresses stored in the specified group destination have been deleted, or a User Inbox is specified as the group destination.	Re-enter the group destination, and try sending again.
When transmitting to a destination stored in the Address Book, transmission could not be performed because the specified destination stored in the Address Book was deleted while the documents were waiting to be sent.	Re-enter the destination in the Address Book, and try sending again.
Transmission via fax driver is not allowed.	Allow Fax Driver TX in Restrict the Send Function in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Off'. Set Allow Fax Driver TX to 'On'.
Forwarding could not be performed because a group address that includes a destination using WebDAV is selected as the forwarding destination.	Specify a forwarding destination that does not use WebDAV.
# 037	
Transmission via fax driver is not allowed.	Allow Fax Driver TX in Restrict the Send Function in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Off'. Set Allow Fax Driver TX to 'On'.
Data that contains more than 1,000 pages is received.	This machine can print or store up to 999 pages of data in memory, but will delete any data that exceeds this limit. Ask the sender to resend the remaining page.
# 080	
A subaddress is not set in the recipient's machine.	Try sending the document without a subaddress, or request that the recipient set the same subaddress as the sender's subaddress.
# 081	
A password is not set in the recipient's machine.	Try sending the document without a password, or request that the recipient set the same password as the sender's password.
# 102	
The subaddress and/or password do not match.	Check the subaddress and/or password of the recipient's machine, make sure that the subaddress and password you are sending with the document matches the recipient's, and then try again.
# 107	

Cause	Remedy
The document could not be sent because there was insufficient memory available.	1. Resend the document at a lower resolution. 2. Erase unnecessary documents and documents with errors to make more memory available. 3. If this problem occurs frequently, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
# 701	
The specified Department ID does not exist, or the password has changed.	Enter the correct Department ID or password using 0 - 9 (numeric keys) on the control panel, and then try sending again.
The Department ID or password was changed during the job.	Try performing the job again with the new Department ID and password. If you do not know the password, contact your System Manager.
<Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs> in Dept. ID Management in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Off'.	Set <Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs> in Dept. ID Management in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) to 'On'.
# 702	
The document could not be sent because the memory is full.	1. Wait a few moments, and then try again after the other send jobs complete. 2. Do not send the document to too many recipients at the same time. Send the document to a smaller number of recipients.
# 703	
The memory for the image data is full.	1. Wait a few moments, and then try again after the other send jobs are complete. 2. Erase documents stored in inboxes. If the machine still does not operate normally, turn the main power OFF, and then back ON.
# 704	
An error occurred while reading address information from the Address Book.	Check the address settings. If the machine still does not operate normally, turn the main power OFF, and then back ON.
# 705	
The send operation was interrupted because the size of the image data is larger than the Maximum Data Size for Sending set in E-mail/I-Fax Common Settings in Communications Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).	Change the Maximum Data Size for Sending setting in E-mail/I-Fax Common Settings in Communications Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). Select a lower resolution, or if you are using I-fax, decrease the number of pages containing images that you are sending each time, so that you do not exceed the Maximum Data Size for Sending limit. Depending on the destination conditions, it may be possible to divide the data.
# 706	
The Address Book is being imported or exported from the Remote UI, or it is being used by another sending component.	Wait until the Address Book Import/Export function from the Remote UI or the other sending component is complete, and then try sending again.
# 711	
The inbox memory is full.	Erase the unnecessary documents stored in the inbox.
# 712	
The maximum number of documents is already stored in the inbox.	Erase the unnecessary documents stored in the inbox.
# 713	
The document in the inbox was deleted before its link was sent via e-mail.	Store the necessary document in the inbox again, and then try to send the link via e-mail.
# 751	
The server is not functioning. The network is down (the server is unable to connect to the network or was disconnected).	Check the recipient's address. Check that the network is up.
# 752	
The server is not functioning. The network is down.	Check that the SMTP server is operating properly. Check the network status.
The SMTP server name for e-mail or I-fax is not correct. The domain name or e-mail address may not be set.	Check the SMTP Server name, domain name, and E-mail Address in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
# 753	
TCP/IP error occurred while sending an e-mail message. (Socket, Select error, etc.)	Check the network cables and connectors. If the machine still does not operate normally, turn the main power OFF, and then back ON.
# 754	
The server is not functioning or the network is down. The destination setting is not correct.	Check the server and network. Check the destination's address settings.
# 755	
You cannot send jobs because TCP/IP is not functioning correctly.	Check TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
The IP address is not set.	Check TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
When the machine was turned ON, an IP address was not assigned to the machine by the DHCP, RARP, or BOOTP server.	Check TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
# 756	
NetWare in NetWare Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'Off'.	Turn NetWare in NetWare Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) 'On'.
# 761	

Cause	Remedy
A PDF or XPS with a digital signature could not be sent because a digital certificate or key pair registered in the machine is corrupt or could not be accessed.	1. If you are sending a PDF or XPS with a user signature, confirm that the user certificate is not corrupt. If the user certificate is corrupt, re-install it. 2. If you are sending a PDF or XPS with a device signature, confirm that the device certificate is not corrupt. If the device certificate is corrupt, generate it again.
# 766	
The certificate used to send a PDF or XPS with a digital signature has expired.	1. Update the certificate, or use a certificate which has not expired. 2. Set the date and time of the machine to the correct date and time.
# 770	
Data could not be sent with WebDAV, because the WebDAV server or proxy server does not support SSL communications.	1. Check the settings of the WebDAV server. 2. Check the proxy server if you are communicating via a proxy server.
# 801	
A timeout error occurred while the machine was communicating with the SMTP server to send an e-mail message or send/receive an I-fax.	Check that the SMTP server is functioning normally. Check the network status.
The SMTP server returned an error while trying to connect. The destination is not correct. An error occurred on the server side during transmission to a file server.	Check that the SMTP server is functioning normally. Check the network status. Check the destination setting. Check the status and setting of the file server.
You are sending a file to a destination to which you have no write permission.	Check the destination setting.
When the machine tried to send a file to the server, a file with the same name already exists on the FTP server and that file cannot be overwritten.	Change the settings on the file server to enable the file to be overwritten, or contact the server administrator.
When the machine tried to send a file to the server, either the folder name is incorrectly specified or the password is incorrect.	Check the destination setting.
# 802	
The name of the SMTP Server in E-mail/I-Fax settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is incorrect. The DNS server name in DNS Server Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is incorrect. Connection to the DNS server failed.	Check the name of the SMTP Server in E-mail/I-Fax Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). Check the DNS server name in DNS Server Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). Check that the DNS server is functioning normally.
# 803	
The connection was interrupted due to reasons on the recipient's side before all of the pages could be sent.	Try sending again.
# 804	
Unable to match the specified directory name when sending data to a file server.	Check the destination.
You have no permission to access the folder.	Change the settings on the file server to enable access to the folder, or contact the server administrator.
# 806	
An incorrect user name or password was specified for the sending of a file to a file server.	Change the user name or password.
An incorrect destination was specified for the sending of an e-mail message or I-fax.	Check the e-mail or I-fax address.
# 810	
A POP (Post Office Protocol) server connection error occurred while receiving an I-fax.	Check the POP Server name in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). Confirm that the POP server is functioning normally. Check the network
The POP server returned an error during the connection.	Check the POP Server name in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). Confirm that the POP server is functioning normally. Check the network status.
A timeout error occurred on the server while connecting to the POP server.	Check the POP Server name in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). Confirm that the POP server is functioning normally. Check the network status.
# 815	
You cannot log on to the file server because the machine is printing a document sent to that server. Simultaneous connections are not possible.	Wait for a few moments before trying to send the data again, or change the NetWare server to which you are sending your documents. Alternatively, stop the PServer.
# 818	
The received data is not in a printable file format.	Ask the sender to change the file format and resend the data.
# 819	
You have received data that cannot be processed (MIME information is incorrect).	Check the settings, and ask the sender to resend the data.
# 820	
You have received data that cannot be processed (BASE 64 or uuencode is incorrect).	Check the settings, and ask the sender to resend the data.
# 821	
You have received data that cannot be processed (TIFF analysis error).	Check the settings, and ask the sender to resend the data.
# 822	

Cause	Remedy
You have received data that cannot be processed (image data cannot be decoded).	Check the settings, and ask the sender to resend the data.
# 827	
You have received data that cannot be processed (contains MIME information that is not supported).	Check the settings, and ask the sender to resend the data.
# 828	
You have received HTML data.	Ask the sender to use a file format other than HTML, and then resend the data.
# 829	
Data that contains more than 1,000 pages is received.	This machine can print or store up to 999 pages of data in memory, but will delete any data that exceeds this limit. Ask the sender to resend the remaining pages.
# 830	
A DSN (Delivery Status Notification) error notification is received because of an incorrect I-fax address or destination setting, or because the data size of the sent documents exceeds the mail server capacity.	1. Check the I-fax address or destination setting. 2. Set Maximum Data Size for Sending in E-mail/I-Fax Common Settings in Communications Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) so that it is less than the mail server capability. 3. Check the status of the mail server, DNS server, and network.
# 831	
An I-fax document could not be received using SMTP because of the RX/Print Range setting in IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).	Reset the RX/Print Range setting in IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
# 832	
DSN (Delivery Status Notification) mail was not sent because TCP/IP Settings or E-mail/ I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) have not been set, or because trouble has occurred in the mail server.	1. Check the DNS Server Settings and IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings, and E-mail/ I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). 2. Check the status of the mail server and DNS server.
# 833	
MDN (Mail Delivery Notification) mail was not sent because TCP/IP Settings or E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) have not been set, or because trouble has occurred in the mail server.	1. Check the DNS Server Settings and IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings, and E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). 2. Check the status of the mail server and DNS server.
# 834	
An MDN (Mail Delivery Notification) error notification is received because of an incorrect I-fax address or destination setting, or because trouble has occurred in the network or mail server. Alternatively, the memory of the receiving machine is full.	Check the I-fax address and destination settings.
# 835	
The maximum number of text lines for receiving an I-fax has been exceeded.	Ask the sender to reduce the amount of text data in the body of the document, and then resend the data.
# 837	
A connection request was received from a host whose connection is restricted by IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).	Check the settings in IP Address Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). Make sure that the connection request is made from an authorized host.
# 839	
The user name or password for the SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH) in Authent./Encryption in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is incorrect.	Check the user name and password for SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH) in Authent./Encryption in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
# 841	
The encryption algorithm that matches the mail server does not exist for sending e-mail or I-fax.	1. Set Allow SSL in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) to 'Off'. 2. Add the same encryption algorithm as the mail server in the mail server settings.
# 842	
Authentication using the client certificate was requested by the mail server for sending an e-mail message or I-fax.	1. Set Allow SSL in E-mail/I-Fax in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) to 'Off'. 2. Change the mail server settings so that the client certificate is not requested.
# 843	
There is large difference between the current time set in the KDC (Key Distribution Center) server and the time set in the machine.	1. Change the current date and time in Date & Time Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen). 2. Change the current time set in the KDC (Key Distribution Center) server.
# 847	
Could not save the received document in the Confidential Fax Inbox, as the memory of the Confidential Fax Inbox is full.	Erase unnecessary documents stored in the Confidential Fax Inbox or the Memory RX Inbox.
# 851	
There is insufficient memory remaining in the system.	Check the system's available memory, and delete unnecessary documents in the inboxes.
The memory for image data is full.	Erase unnecessary documents to make more memory available.
The scanned document cannot be stored because there are more than 2,000 documents in the specified inbox.	Delete unnecessary documents from the specified inbox.
# 852	

Cause	Remedy
An error occurred because the main power switch was turned OFF while a job was being processed.	Check to see if the main power switch is turned ON. Try processing the job again, if necessary.
# 859	
A compression error occurred with the image data.	Check the print settings, and try printing again.
An original was not scanned properly, or the orientation of the original was incorrect.	Check the scan settings, and try scanning again.
# 868	
Failed to communicate with the destination when sending with WebDAV, because access via a proxy server was requested (received HTTP Error 305: Use Proxy).	1. Check the settings of the WebDAV server. 2. Check Proxy Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
# 869	
Received a response from the destination stating that authorization failed when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 401: Unauthorized).	1. Check the user name and password for the destination. 2. Check the security settings of the WebDAV server.
# 870	
Received a response from the destination stating that the request was denied when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 403: Forbidden).	1. Wait a few moments, and then try again. 2. Check the destination. 3. Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 871	
Received a response from the destination stating that the specified folder could not be found when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 404: Not Found/409: Conflict/410: Gone).	Check the destination.
# 872	
Received a response from the destination stating that access is denied when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 405: Method Not Allowed).	Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 873	
Received a response from the destination stating that proxy authentication failed when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 407: Proxy Authentication Required).	Check Proxy Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen).
# 874	
Received a response from the destination stating that the connection timed out when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 408: Request Timeout).	1. Wait a few moments, and then try again. 2. Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 875	
Received a response from the destination stating that chunked encoding was denied when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 411: Length Required).	1. Set Use Chunked Encoding with WebDAV Sending in TX Settings under <Common Settings> in Communications Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) to 'Off'. 2. Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 876	
Received a response from the destination stating that the size of the data was too large when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 413: Request Entity Too Large).	Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 877	
Received a response from the destination stating that the URI (host name + folder path) was too long when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 414: Request-URI Too Long).	Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 878	
Received a response from the destination stating that the server encountered an unexpected condition that prevented it from executing the request when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 500: Internal Server Error).	Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 879	
Received a response from the destination stating that the server does not support the necessary functions to execute the request when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 501: Not Implemented).	1. Check the settings of the WebDAV server. 2. If you are sending via a proxy server without using SSL communication, set Use Chunked Encoding with WebDAV Sending in TX Settings under <Common Settings> in Communications Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) to 'Off'.
# 880	
Received a response from the destination stating that the proxy server failed to communicate with the server above it when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 502: Bad Gateway).	1. Check the settings of the WebDAV server. 2. Check the settings of the proxy server.
# 881	
Received a response from the destination stating that the server could not handle the current request when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 503: Service Unavailable).	Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 882	
Received a response from the destination stating that the proxy server failed to communicate with the server above it when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 504: Gateway Timeout).	1. Check the settings of the WebDAV server. 2. Check the settings of the proxy server.
# 883	
Received a response from the destination stating that the server does not support the necessary functions to execute the request when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 505: HTTP Version Not Supported).	Check the settings of the WebDAV server.

Cause	Remedy
# 884	
Received a response from the destination stating that the server does not have sufficient free disk space to execute the request when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 507: Insufficient Storage).	Check the settings of the WebDAV server.
# 885	
An unexpected error occurred when sending with WebDAV.	1. Check the settings of the WebDAV server. 2. Check the settings of the proxy server.
# 886	
Received a response from the destination stating that the request was invalid when sending with WebDAV (received HTTP Error 400: Bad Request).	If you are sending via a proxy server without using SSL communication, set Use Chunked Encoding with WebDAV Sending in TX Settings under <Common Settings> in Communications Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) to 'Off'.
# 899	
The e-mail message or I-fax has been successfully sent, but reception may be incomplete because the transmission was relayed via multiple servers.	1. Confirm whether reception was completed. 2. Check if you received an error notification.
# 995	
Reserved communication jobs were cleared.	Reserve the jobs again, if necessary.

16.3 Jam Code

16.3.1 Jam codes (printer unit)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-15

Code	Jam
01xx	delay jam
02xx	stationary jam
0Axx	residual jam
0B00	door open jam
0Cxx	error retry jam
0D91	wrong size specified (transportation of sheets shorter than the ones specified)

T-16-16

Code	Sensor	Sensor notation
xx01	cassette 1 tray sensor	PS10
xx02	cassette 2 retry sensor	PS11
xx03	cassette 3 retry sensor	PS1 (cassette pedestal)
xx04	cassette 4 retry sensor	PS2 (cassette pedestal)
xx05	registration sensor	PS9
xx06	---	---
xx07	fixing delivery sensor	PS13
xx08	No. 1 delivery sensor	PS14
xx09	No. 2 delivery sensor	PS1A (2/3 delivery unit)
xx0A	reversal sensor	PS4A (2/3 delivery unit)
xx0B	No. 3 delivery sensor	PS5A (2/3 delivery unit)
xx0C	duplexing assembly feed sensor	PS3A (2/3 delivery unit)
xx0D	duplex/feed sensor	PS17
xx0E	deck retry sensor	PS6D (side paper deck)
xx0F	deck pull-off sensor	PS1D (side paper deck)
xx11	buffer inlet sensor	PS1B (buffer path unit)
xx12	buffer outlet sensor	PS2B (buffer path unit)
0B00	door switch	SW2
0B00	feeding cover sensor	PS18
0B00	front cover sensor	PS22
0B00	right cover open/ closed sensor	PS59 (cassette pedestal)
0CF1	-	E007/E010/E014/E110/E191/E197/E261/E805
0CA0	-	E733
0D91	Registration sensor (PS9)	PS9

MEMO: Error retry jam
For the purpose of preventing the machine from stopping (OFF/ON) at an error occurrence due to such reasons as false detection, the following error cases are handled as jam; only the case of error recurrence at restarting is handled as an error.
If a paper is in the machine, remove the paper according to the instruction of the control panel to recover the machine. If not, it automatically recovers.
The history of error retry jam can be checked in the following service mode item; COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM as in the case of ordinary jam.

<Relevant error code>
E007/E010/E014/E110/E191/E197/E261/E805/E733

16.3.2 Jam Code (ADF)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-17

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor No. / Type of Error
0003	Registration sensor	SR1
0004	Registration sensor	SR1
0005	Registration sensor, Read sensor	SR1,SR2
0006	Read sensor	SR2
0007	Read sensor, Delivery reversal sensor	SR2,SR3
0008	Delivery reversal sensor	SR3
0044	Registration sensor	SR1
0045	Registration sensor, Read sensor	SR1,SR2
0046	Read sensor	SR2
0047	Read sensor, Delivery reversal sensor	SR2,SR3
0048	Read sensor	SR2

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor No. / Type of Error
0071	-	-
0073	Release motor HP sensor	SR11
0084	Registration sensor	SR1
0090	Sensor in reader unit	-
0091	Sensor in reader unit	-
0092	Cover open/closed sensor	SR6
0093	Cover open/closed sensor	SR6
0094	Registration sensor, Read sensor, Delivery reversal sensor	SR1,SR2,SR3
0095	-	-

16.3.3 Jam codes (Finisher)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Finisher-AE1/AE2

T-16-18

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor No. / Type of Error
1011	inlet path sensor feed delay jam	PI103
1014	feed path sensor feed delay jam	PI104
1091	feed delay jam	PI18
1092	delivery delay jam	PI11
1093	saddle inlet sensor feed delay jam	PI22
1121	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam	PI103
1124	feed path sensor feed stationary jam	PI104
1205	inlet path sensor timing jam	PI103
1307	power-on jam	PI33, PI104
1387	power-on jam	PI8,PI11,PI17,PI18,PI19,PI20,PI22
1408	door open jam	PI101, PI102, MS101
1488	door open jam	PI3,PI9,PI102
1506	stapler jam	PI50
1586	stitcher jam	SW7,SW5
11A1	feed stationary jam	PI18,PI19,PI20
11A2	delivery stationary jam	PI11,PI17
11A3	saddle inlet sensor feed stationary jam	PI22

- Finisher-S1

T-16-19

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor No. / Type of Error
1011	inlet path sensor feed delay jam	PI5
1121	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam	PI5
1F81	stack delivery jam	PI1
1506	staple jam	STP
1307	power-on jam	POWER ON
1408	door open jam (joint)	DOOR
1644	punch hole jam	SR2
1347	punch power-on jam	LED7/PTR7

16.4 Alarm Code

16.4.1 Alarm Code

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-16-20

Location code/ Location		Alarm code/ Description	
00	Error code (4 digits)	0246	Failure to write operation.
		0247	Failure to write retry operation.
02	Optical System, Reader Unit, Copier	0022	Read motor / delivery motor fan alarm
04	Pick-up/Feeder System, Copier	0008	Optional deck lifter error
		0011	Alarm for 1st cassette right deck retry failure
		0012	Alarm for 2nd cassette left deck retry failure
		0013	Alarm for 3rd cassette retry failure
		0014	Alarm for 4th cassette retry failure
		0017	Alarm for MF retry failure
		0018	Alarm for optional deck retry failure
31	Electrical/ Controller System, Copier	0002	Power supply relay durability alarm
		0005	Environment sensor reading alarm

Location code/ Location		Alarm code/ Description	
50	ADF	0003	Separation of the first sheet of original fails
		0011	At the time of recovery from jam, the sheets of the original having been read before the recovery are not set on the tray.
61	Staple System, Sorter/ Finisher	0001	Running out of staples
62	Saddle Stitcher System	0001	Running out of stitching staples
65	Puncher System, Sorter/ Finisher	0001	Puncher waste receptacle is full
73	LIPS	0004	Translator work memory overflow
		0006	Configuration acquisition/management error
		0007	LIPS internal memory management error
		0008	LIPS internal file management error
		0009	Reception data management error
		0010	Page control error
		0011	Macro control error
		0012	Color management error
		0013	Layout control error
		0014	Font management error
		0015	Text rendering error
		0016	Graphics rendering error
		0017	Image rendering error
		0018	LCD indication error
		0019	Text mode command layer error
		0020	Vector motor command layer error
		0021	Utility execution control error
		0022	LIPS internal database management error
		0023	LIPS internal menu management error
		0024	LPS internal boot error
		0025	Failure in memory allocation while Graphic library is being used for image processing
		0026	Specified image data format is not supported.
76	Font	0001	There is a shortage of memory for an internal font.
		0002	No work area can be obtained for analysis of a font downloaded using Resource Download.
		0003	An attempt to access a file that contains a specific font has failed.
		0004	The FM work memory cannot be acquired.
		0005	An attempt to analyze an internal font has failed.
		0006	The alignment of the front data is wrong.
		0007	An attempt to acquire work memory by the scalar has failed. The failure may be any of 3 types depending on its location of occurred.
		0008	An attempt to acquire work memory by the scalar has failed. The failure may be any of 3 types depending on its location of occurrence.
77	PDL Community	0001	Unable to allocate memory
		0002	Page being constructed is too complex to be rendered.
		0003	Input to DGL was invalid.
		0005	Some error, other those above.
		0006	DLG would not have enough memory to complete an operation
78	GL	0003	GL INPUT_INVALID
		0005	GL LIMCHECK
79	In-house manufactured PCL	0001	PCL initialization error
		0002	PCL process error
		0003	Translator work memory overflow
		0004	Downloading overflow
80	BDL	0001	Admin Error
		0003	DataArea Error
		0010	Graphics Error
		0011	Char Error
		0015	Version that print data cannot be processed
		0016	Translator work memory overflow
		0018	Syntax Error
		0019	Data format is incorrect in BDL custom mode.
81	Imaging	0001	Unable to allocate memory
		0002	Page being constructed is too complex to be rendered
		0003	Translator work memory overflow
		0004	Imaging initialization error
		0005	Imaging process error
82	RIP	0001	H/W Dart hang-up due to invalid Display List

Location code/ Location		Alarm code/ Description	
83	CanonPDF	0001	PDF data error
		0002	PDF compression analysis error
		0003	PDF page compression error
		0004	PDF data processing error
		0005	PDF memory full
		0006	PDF temporary file error
		0007	PDF color analysis error
		0008	PDF data reading error
		0009	PDF output selection error
		0010	PDF profile error
		0011	PDF access error
		0012	PDF analysis access error
		0013	PDF font error
		0014	PDF rendering error
		0015	PDF data decryption error
		0016	PDF print range error
		0017	PDF error
		0018	PDF analysis error A transparent object not supported exists.

Chapter 17 Service Mode

Contents

17.1 Outline....17-1
17.1.1 Construction of Service Mode....17-1
17.1.2 Starting Service Mode and Making Selections....17-2
17.1.3 Ending Service Mode....17-2
17.1.4 Back-Up....17-2
17.1.5 Initial Screen....17-3
17.1.6 2nd/3rd Item Screen....17-3
17.1.7 4th Item Screen....17-4
17.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode)....17-5
17.2.1 COPIER....17-5
17.2.1.1 COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION....17-5
17.2.1.2 COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS....17-19
17.2.1.3 COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG....17-22
17.2.1.4 COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-STS....17-23
17.2.1.5 COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM....17-24
17.2.1.6 COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR....17-24
17.2.1.7 COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS....17-25
17.2.1.8 COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD....17-26
17.2.1.9 COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR....17-28
17.2.1.10 COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-2....17-28
17.2.1.11 COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT....17-28
17.2.2 FEEDER....17-29
17.2.2.1 FEEDER > DISPLAY....17-29
17.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode)....17-29
17.3.1 Outline....17-29
17.3.2 <DC-CON>....17-30
17.3.3 <R-CON>....17-32
17.3.4 <FEEDER>....17-32
17.3.5 <SORTER>....17-33
17.3.6 <MN-CONT>....17-38
17.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode)....17-38
17.4.1 COPIER....17-38
17.4.1.1 COPIER > ADJUST > AE....17-38
17.4.1.2 COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY....17-38
17.4.1.3 COPIER > ADJUST > CCD....17-40
17.4.1.4 COPIER > ADJUST > LASER....17-55
17.4.1.5 COPIER > ADJUST > DEVELOP....17-57
17.4.1.6 COPIER > ADJUST > DENS....17-58
17.4.1.7 COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK....17-58
17.4.1.8 COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL....17-59
17.4.1.9 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI....17-59
17.4.1.10 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR....17-60
17.4.1.11 COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ....17-69
17.4.1.12 COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ....17-72
17.4.1.13 COPIER > ADJUST > FIXING....17-73
17.4.1.14 COPIER > ADJUST > MISC....17-74
17.4.2 FEEDER....17-77
17.4.2.1 FEEDER > ADJUST....17-77
17.4.3 SORTER....17-78
17.4.3.1 SORTER > ADJUST....17-78
17.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode)....17-79
17.5.1 COPIER....17-79
17.5.1.1 Points To Note When Operate The Service Mode (FUNCTION)....17-79

17.5.1.2 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL 17-79
17.5.1.3 COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD 17-81
17.5.1.4 COPIER > FUNCTION > DENS 17-83
17.5.1.5 COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC 17-83
17.5.1.6 COPIER > FUNCTION > CST 17-83
17.5.1.7 COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING 17-84
17.5.1.8 COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL 17-85
17.5.1.9 COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK 17-86
17.5.1.10 COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR 17-88
17.5.1.11 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R 17-93
17.5.1.12 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P 17-93
17.5.1.13 COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM 17-96
17.5.2 FEEDER 17-97
17.5.2.1 FEEDER > FUNCTION 17-97
17.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode) 17-101
17.6.1 COPIER 17-101
17.6.1.1 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (1/15) 17-101
17.6.1.2 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (2/15) 17-104
17.6.1.3 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (3/15) 17-107
17.6.1.4 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (4/15) 17-109
17.6.1.5 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (5/15) 17-111
17.6.1.6 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (6/15) 17-113
17.6.1.7 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (7/15) 17-114
17.6.1.8 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (8/15) 17-116
17.6.1.9 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (9/15) 17-118
17.6.1.10 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (10/15) 17-120
17.6.1.11 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (11/15) 17-122
17.6.1.12 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (12/15) 17-124
17.6.1.13 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (13/15) 17-126
17.6.1.14 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (14/15) 17-129
17.6.1.15 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (15/15) 17-132
17.6.1.16 COPIER > OPTION > USER (1/7) 17-133
17.6.1.17 COPIER > OPTION > USER (2/7) 17-141
17.6.1.18 COPIER > OPTION > USER (3/7) 17-144
17.6.1.19 COPIER > OPTION > USER (4/7) 17-147
17.6.1.20 COPIER > OPTION > USER (5/7) 17-150
17.6.1.21 COPIER > OPTION > USER (6/7) 17-153
17.6.1.22 COPIER > OPTION > USER (7/7) 17-155
17.6.1.23 COPIER > OPTION > CST 17-157
17.6.1.24 COPIER > OPTION > ACC 17-160
17.6.1.25 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE (1/2) 17-162
17.6.1.26 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE (2/2) 17-163
17.6.1.27 COPIER > OPTION > COMBO 17-164
17.6.1.28 COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR 17-166
17.6.2 FEEDER 17-176
17.6.2.1 FEEDER > OPTION 17-176
17.6.3 SORTER 17-177
17.6.3.1 SORTER > OPTION 17-177
17.6.4 BOARD 17-177
17.6.4.1 BOARD > OPTION 17-177
17.7 TEST (Test Print Mode) 17-178
17.7.1 COPIER 17-178
17.7.1.1 COPIER > TEST > PG 17-178
17.7.1.2 COPIER > TEST > NETWORK 17-179
17.7.1.3 COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP 17-180
17.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode) 17-182
17.8.1 COPIER 17-182
17.8.1.1 COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL 17-182
17.8.1.2 COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP 17-183
17.8.1.3 COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER 17-184

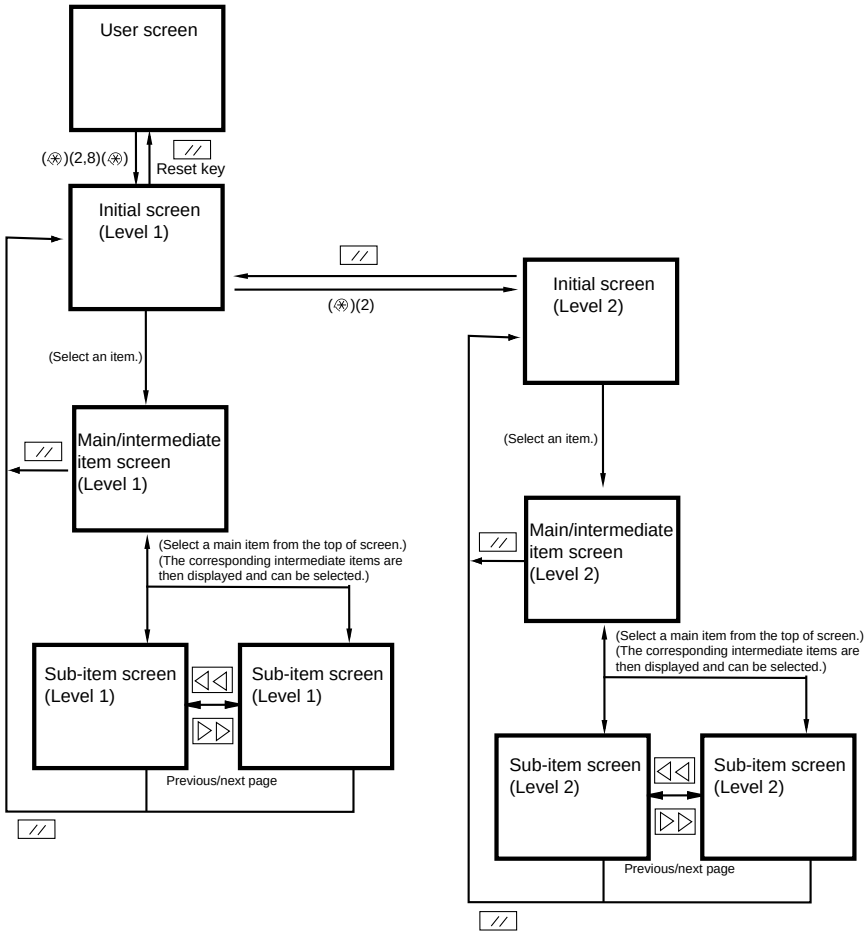
17.8.1.4 COPIER > COUNTER > JAM 17-184
17.8.1.5 COPIER > COUNTER > MISC 17-185
17.8.1.6 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 17-186
17.8.1.7 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 17-188

17.1 Outline

17.1.1 Construction of Service Mode

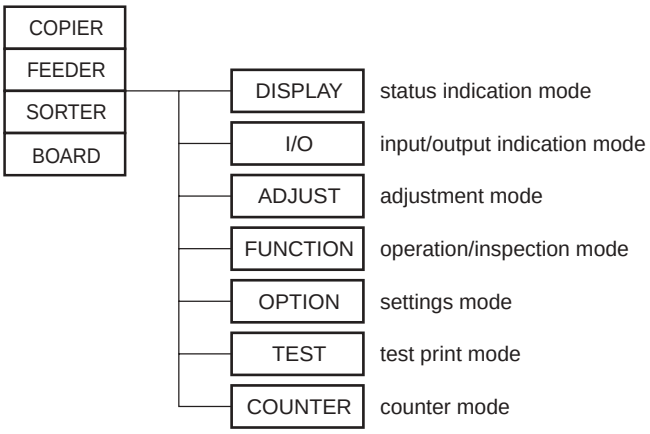
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The machine's service mode has a 3-layer screen construction: Initial screen, Level 1/2 screen, and Level 3 screen. Its mode items are grouped into those used in regular maintenance work (Level 1 items) and those used in response to faults (Level 2 items).



F-17-1

The machine's service mode is divided into the following 7 types:



F-17-2

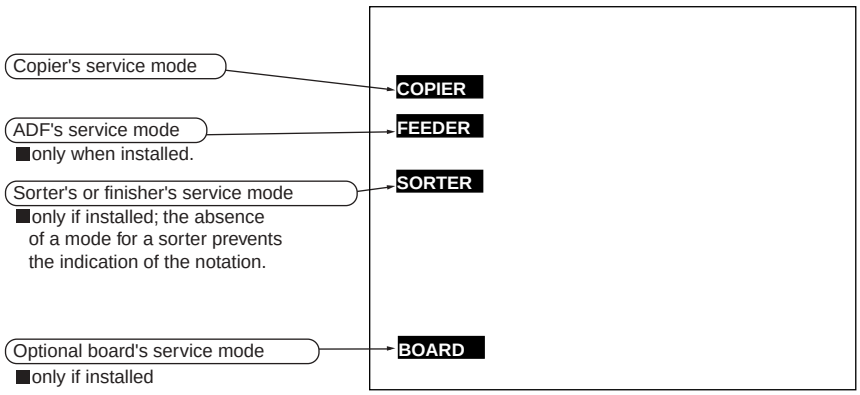
17.1.2 Starting Service Mode and Making Selections

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> If you want to execute a machine operation using a service mode item, be sure to disconnect all cables from an external controller or a network before starting service mode. Particularly, if you are using a FUNCTION (operation/inspection) mode item, the arrival of a print job from an external source can cause the machine to malfunction, leading to damage.

1) Press the asterisk key "✳" on the control panel.
2) Press the 2 and 8 keys of the keypad at the same time.

3) Press the asterisk key "✳" on the control panel.
In response to the foregoing key operations, the machine will bring up the following Initial screen:



F-17-3

17.1.3 Ending Service Mode

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

A press on the Reset key will bring back the Service Mode Initial screen.
Another press on the Reset key will end service mode, and bring back the User screen (standard screen).

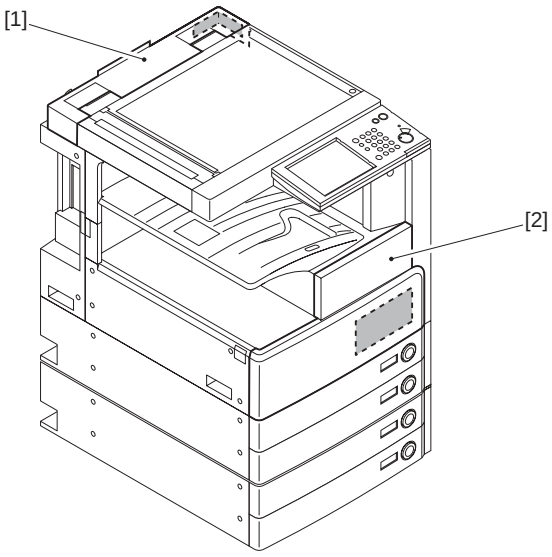
> ⚠
> If you used service mode (ADJUST, FUNCTION, OPTION), be sure to turn off and then on the main power switch after ending service mode.

17.1.4 Back-Up

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

At time of shipment from the factory, all machines are adjusted individually, and adjustment values are recorded in their respective service labels.
If you have replaced the reader controller PCB or the DC controller PCB, or if you have initialized the RAM, the adjustment values (for ADJUST and OPTION) will return to their default settings. If there has been any change in a service mode item, be sure to update its setting indicated on the service label. As necessary, make use of the space in the service label (as when recording an item not found on the label).

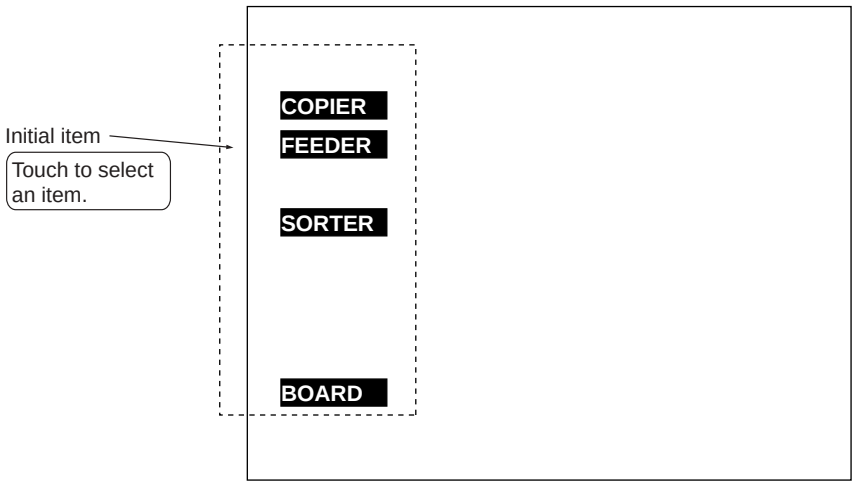
- Service Label for the Reader Controller PCB (behind the rear cover [1] of the reader unit)
- Service Label [2] for the Main Controller PCB/DC controller PCB (behind the front cover unit of the printer unit)



F-17-4

17.1.5 Initial Screen

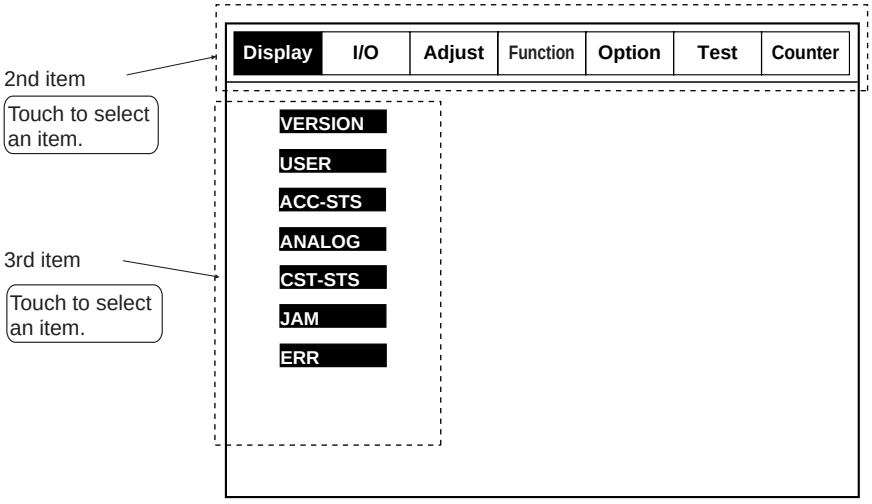
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-17-5

17.1.6 2nd/3rd Item Screen

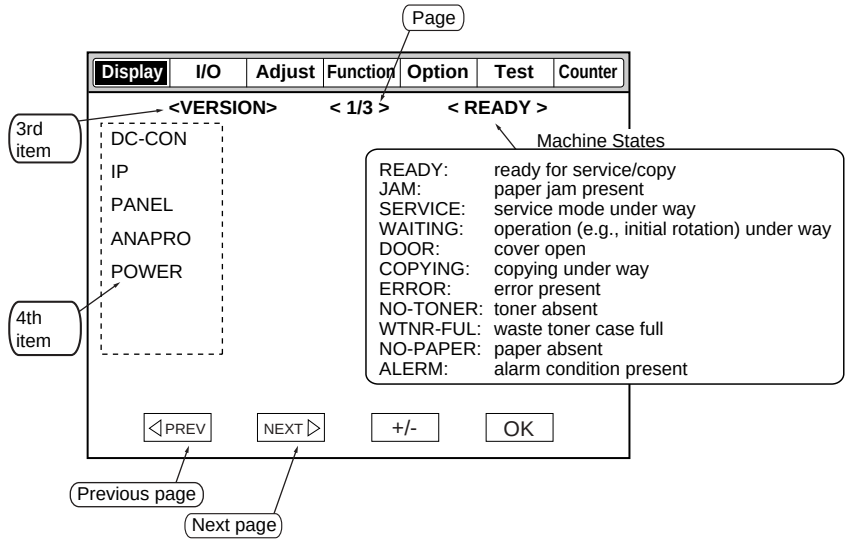
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



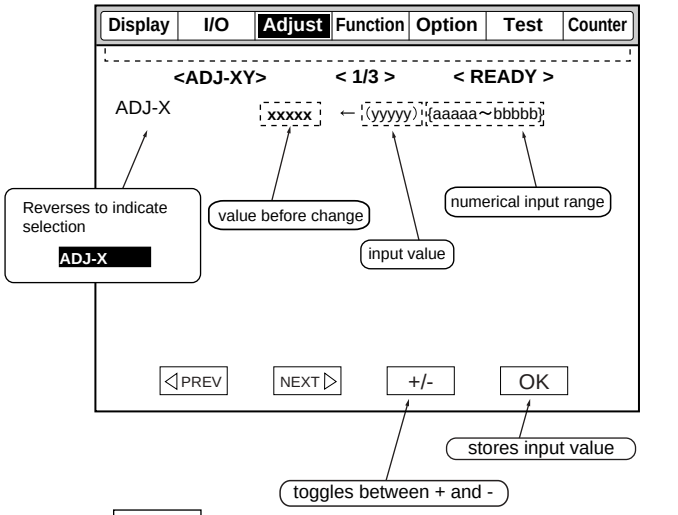
F-17-6

17.1.7 4th Item Screen

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-17-7



Stop key: press it to stop the ongoing operation.

Clear key: press to clear an input.

Start key: press to start copying without leaving service mode.

F-17-8

17.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode)

17.2.1 COPIER

17.2.1.1 COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-1

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DC-CON	1	Title	Firmware version of DC controller PCB
		Purpose	Check the firmware version of DC controller PCB.
		Note	Check that the firmware version of DC controller PCB is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
R-CON	1	Title	Firmware version of reader controller PCB
		Purpose	Check the firmware version of reader controller PCB.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PANEL	1	Title	ROM version of CPU PCB on the control panel
		Purpose	Check the ROM version of CPU PCB on the control panel.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
POWER	1	Title	ROM version for the compound power supply PCB
		Purpose	To check the ROM version for the compound power supply PCB.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When the laser scanner reaches the life and needs to be replaced, adjust the hard VR.
FEEDER	1	Title	ROM version of DADF controller PCB
		Purpose	Check the firmware version of DADF controller PCB.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SORTER	1	Title	Firmware version of finisher controller PCB
		Purpose	Check the firmware version of finisher controller PCB.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NIB	1	Title	Version of Network software
		Purpose	Check the version of network software.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PS/PCL	1	Title	Version of UFR board (PS/PCL)
		Purpose	Printer board (PS/PCL) ROM version. BW type: this mode is not used with BW3 model or later (Not displayed on UI). [PDL-TYPE] substitute for this.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2
		Unit	xx.yy (xx: version number, yy: development management number)
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SDL-STCH	1	Title	ROM version of saddle stitcher controller PCB
		Purpose	ROM version of saddle stitcher controller PCB
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2
		Unit	0xXXYY
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MN-CONT	1	Title	Firmware version of main controller PCB
		Purpose	Check the firmware version of main controller PCB.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DIAG-DVC	1	Title	ROM version of card reader D1/NE controller A1
		Purpose	ROM version of card reader D1/NE controller A1
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2
		Unit	0xXXYY
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
RUI	1	Title	Version of remote UI
		Purpose	Check the version of remote UI.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PUNCH	1	Title	Software version of punch unit
		Purpose	Displays the software version of punch unit
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2
		Unit	N/A
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Check the software version of punch unit.
LANG-EN	1	Title	Version of English language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of English language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-FR	1	Title	Version of French language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of French language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-DE	1	Title	Version of German language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of German language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-IT	1	Title	Version of Italy language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Italy language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LANG-JP	1	Title	Version of Japanese language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Japanese language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-CS	2	Title	Version of Czech language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Czech language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-DA	2	Title	Version of Danish language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Danish language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-EL	2	Title	Version of Greek language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Greek language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-ES	2	Title	Version of Spanish language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Spanish language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-ET	2	Title	Version of Estonian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Estonian language file.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	0xXXYY
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-FI	2	Title	Version of Finnish language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Finnish language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LANG-HU	2	Title	Version of Hungarian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Hungarian language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-KO	2	Title	Version of Korean language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Korean language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-NL	2	Title	Version of Dutch language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Dutch language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-NO	2	Title	Version of Norwegian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Norwegian language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-PL	2	Title	Version of Polish language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Polish language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-PT	2	Title	Version of Portuguese language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Portuguese language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LANG-RU	2	Title	Version of Russian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Russian language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-SL	2	Title	Version of Slovenian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Slovenian language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-SV	2	Title	Version of Swedish language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Swedish language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-TW	2	Title	Version of traditional Chinese language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of traditional Chinese language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-ZH	2	Title	Version of simplified Chinese language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of simplified Chinese language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-BU	2	Title	Version of Bulgarian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Bulgarian language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LANG-CR	2	Title	Version of Croatian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Croatian language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-RM	2	Title	Version of Romanian language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Romanian language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-SK	2	Title	Version of Slovak language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Slovak language file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-TK	2	Title	Version of Turkish language file
		Purpose	Check the Version of Turkish language file.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	0xXXYY
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
JAVA-VM	1	Title	Version of built-in JavaVM on bootable
		Purpose	Check the built-in JavaVM version on bootable .
		Note	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEAP	1	Title	Version of MEAP contents
		Purpose	Check the version of MEAP contents on hard disk.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OCR-CN	1	Title	OCR version of Chinese (simplified)
		Purpose	Check the OCR version of Chinese (simplified).
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
OCR-JP	1	Title	OCR version of Japanese
		Purpose	Check the OCR version of Japanese.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
OCR-KR	1	Title	OCR version of Korean
		Purpose	Check the OCR version of Korean..
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
OCR-TW	1	Title	OCR version of Chinese (traditional)
		Purpose	Check the OCR version of Chinese (traditional).
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
BOOTROM	1	Title	Version display of BOOT-ROM
		Purpose	Check the version of BOOT-ROM.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY + ASCII9 characters
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TTS-JA	1	Title	Displays the version of Japanese voice dictionary
		Purpose	Check the version of Japanese voice dictionary.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
TTS-EN	1	Title	Displays the version of English voice dictionary
		Purpose	Check the version of English voice dictionary.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
WEB-BRWS	1	Title	Version description of web browser
		Purpose	Check the version of web browser.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
HELP	1	Title	Version of easy NAVI
		Purpose	To display the file of [easy NAVI]
		Note	Since the function of [easy NAVI] is external file, it needs to display the version.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-CA	2	Title	File version of Catalan language file
		Purpose	Check the file version of language file.
		Note	Check that the file version of Catalan language file is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
WEBDAV	1	Title	Version display of WebDAV
		Purpose	Check the file version of [WebDAV] file.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
TIMESTMP	1	Title	Version display of time stamp
		Purpose	Check the file version of [time stamp].
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed.
ASR-JA	1	Title	Version display of Japanese speech recognition dictionary
		Purpose	Check the version of speech recognition dictionary
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2
		Unit	0xXXYY
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed. Voice synthesis dictionary is TTS-XX *ASR = Automatic Speech Recognition

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ASR-EN	1	Title	Version display of English speech recognition dictionary
		Purpose	Check the version of speech recognition dictionary
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2
		Unit	0xXXYY
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the file does not exist, --.-- is displayed. Voice synthesis dictionary is TTS-XX *ASR = Automatic Speech Recognition
MEDIA-JA	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Japanese
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Japanese.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-EN	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of English
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of English.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-DE	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of German
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of German.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-IT	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Italy
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Italy.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-FR	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of French
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of French.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MEDIA-ZH	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Chinese (simplified)
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Chinese (simplified).
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-SK	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Slovak
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Slovak.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-TK	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Turkish
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Turkish.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-CS	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Czech
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Czech.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-EL	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Greek
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Greek.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-ES	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Spanish
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Spanish.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MEDIA-ET	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Estonian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Estonian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-FI	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Finnish.
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Finnish.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-HU	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Hungarian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Hungarian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-KO	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Korean
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Korean.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-NL	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Dutch
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Dutch.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-NO	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Norwegian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Norwegian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MEDIA-PL	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Polish
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Polish.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-PT	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Portuguese
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Portuguese.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-RU	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Russian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Russian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-SL	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Slovenian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Slovenian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-SV	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Swedish
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Swedish.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-TW	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Chinese (traditional)
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Chinese (traditional).
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MEDIA-BU	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Bulgarian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Bulgarian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-CR	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Croatian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Croatian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-RM	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Romanian
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Romanian.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-CA	2	Title	Version display of paper type information of Catalan
		Purpose	Check the version display of paper type information of Catalan.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FAX1	1	Title	Version of on board FAX board
		Purpose	ROM version of on board FAX board
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	21-digit ASCII
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Check the version of optional FAX board.
FAX2/3	1	Title	Version of optional FAX board
		Purpose	Displays the version of optional 1-line board (total 2 lines) or 2-line board (total 3 lines).
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	If the 21-degit ASCII board is not implemented, displays NULL
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Check the version of optional FAX board.

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
IOCS	1	Title	BIOS version
		Purpose	Displays the version of BIOS
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2
		Unit	XX.YY
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When checking the version of BIOS at a field
SYSTEM	1	Title	Versions of Linux Kernel/driver/library
		Purpose	Displays the versions of Linux kernel/tool/driver/file
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	(XX.YY)XX.YY XX.YY XX.YY XX.YY(KER TOOL DRIVER FILE) There is a space between versions to separate 4 versions.
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When displaying the versions of Linux kernel/tool/driver/file
ROOT	1	Title	Displays the ROOT version
		Purpose	Check when displaying the ROOT version
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	XX.YY
		Unit	N/A
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This cannot be upgraded at a field.
FLASH	2	Title	Displays the firmware version of new encryption board
		Purpose	Check the firmware version of new encryption board.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	XX.YY
		Unit	N/A
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The firmware of new encryption board is written on FLASH and it cannot be upgraded in a field.

17.2.1.2 COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-2

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FEEDER	1	Title	Display of the status of DADF connection
		Purpose	Check the status of DADF connection.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SORTER	1	Title	Display of the status of connection of finisher and puncher
		Purpose	Check the status of connection of finisher and puncher.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Sorter type 0: None, 1: Finisher, 2: Saddle finisher Punch type 0: None, 1: 2-hole, 2: 2/3-hole, 3: 4-hole (fr), 4: 4-hole (sw)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DECK	1	Title	Display of the status of paper deck connection
		Purpose	Check the status of paper deck connection.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CARD	1	Title	Display of the status of card reader connection
		Purpose	Check the status of card reader connection.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Card reader is connected but a card is not inserted 1: Card reader is not connected or card reader is connected with card inserted ([1] indicates the copy being available, [0] indicates the copy being not available)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DATA-CON	1	Title	Display of the status of connection of NE controller-A1
		Purpose	Displays the status of connection of NE controller-A1
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: assist not connected, 1: assist2 (without CC-X function) connected, 2: assist3 connected, 3: assist 2 (with CC-X function) connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RAM	1	Title	Display of the amount of memory installed on the main controller PCB
		Purpose	Check the amount of memory for image process (SOC side) on the main controller PCB.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	512MB, 768MB
		Unit	MB
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COINROBO	1	Title	Display of the status of coin vendor connection
		Purpose	Check the status of coin vendor connection.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NIB	1	Title	Display of the status of network board connection
		Purpose	Check the status of Network board connection.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Ethernet board connected 2: Token ring board connected 3: Ethernet board and token ring board connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PS/PCL	1	Title	Display of the status of UFR board (PS/PCL function) connection
		Purpose	Check the status of UFR board (PS/PCL function) connection.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NETWARE	1	Title	Display of the installation status of NetWare firmware
		Purpose	Check the installation status of NetWare firmware.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SEND	1	Title	Display whether the board to handle SEND is mounted or not
		Purpose	Check whether the board to handle SEND is mounted or not. Only when the board is mounted, SEND function can be used.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not mounted 1: Mounted
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PDL-FNC1	1	Title	Display of the valid PDL 1
		Purpose	Check the valid PDLs with 0/1.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0000 0000 0000 0000 - 1111 1111 1111 1111 (0: OFF, 1: ON) b31 : BDL b30 : PS b29 : PCL b28 : PDF b27 : LIPS(LIPS/LX emulation) b26 : N201(LIPS/LX emulation) b25 : I5577(LIPS/LX emulation) b24 : ESC/P(LIPS/LX emulation) b23 : HPGL(LIPS/LX emulation) b22 : HPGL2(LIPS/LX emulation) b21 : IMAGING b20 : KS(this is not used on this machine) b19 to b16 : reserve (This will be used when PDL is newly added.)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PDL-FNC2	1	Title	Display of the valid PDL 2
		Purpose	Check the valid PDLs with 0/1.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0000 0000 0000 0000 - 1111 1111 1111 1111 (0: OFF, 1: ON) b15 to b0 : reserve (This will be used when PDL is newly added.)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
HDD	1	Title	Display of the type name of HDD
		Purpose	Check the type name of HDD.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PCI1	1	Title	Display of the board name of PCI1
		Purpose	Check the names of boards that are connected to PCI1.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	If they are not connected, [-] is displayed and if connected, the names of boards are displayed.
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	3DES+USB-HOST->[3DES+USB-HOST], Giga Ethernet board ->[1Gbit-Board], Encryption board ->[3DES Board], Voice synthesis board ->[Voice Board], Speech recognition board ->[Voice Operation], iSLOT wireless LAN ->[iSLOT], Fax 2-line extension board ->[FAX Riser Board], USB-HOST ->[USB Host Interface Board], IPsec board ->[IPsec Board]
PCI2	1	Title	Display of the board name of PCI2
		Purpose	Check the names of boards that are connected to PCI2.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	If they are not connected, [-] is displayed and if connected, the names of boards are displayed.
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	<Board name> 3DES+USB-HOST->[3DES+USB-HOST], Giga Ethernet board ->[1Gbit-Board], Encryption board ->[3DES Board], Voice synthesis board ->[Voice Board], Speech recognition board ->[Voice Operation], iSLOT wireless LAN ->[iSLOT], Fax 2-line extension board ->[FAX Riser Board], USB-HOST ->[USB Host Interface Board], IPsec board ->[IPsec Board]
PCI3	1	Title	Display of the board name of PCI3
		Purpose	Check the names of boards that are connected to PCI3.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	If they are not connected, [-] is displayed and if connected, the names of boards are displayed.
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	<Board name> 3DES+USB-HOST->[3DES+USB-HOST], Giga Ethernet board ->[1Gbit-Board], Encryption board ->[3DES Board], Voice synthesis board ->[Voice Board], Speech recognition board ->[Voice Operation], iSLOT wireless LAN ->[iSLOT], Fax 2-line extension board ->[FAX Riser Board], USB-HOST ->[USB Host Interface Board], IPsec board ->[IPsec Board]
IA-RAM	1	Title	Display of the amount of memory installed (IA) on the main controller PCB
		Purpose	Check the amount of memory for system process SDRAM (IA side) on the main controller PCB. (512MB, 1024MB) Existing way: COPIER/DISPLAY/ACC-STS/RAM displays the amount of memory for image process SDRAM (SOC side).
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	512MB, 1024MB
		Unit	MB
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.2.1.3 COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-3

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TEMP	1	Title	Machine temperature (environment sensor)
		Purpose	Check the temperature inside the machine.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Deg C
		Appropriate guideline	Guaranteed environment for main body: temperature 15 deg C to 27.5 deg C, humidity 25% to 75%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Temperature/humidity detected by the environment sensor (left) is not used for the parameter of control.
HUM	1	Title	Machine humidity (environment sensor)
		Purpose	Check the humidity inside the machine.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Guaranteed environment for main body: temperature 15 deg C to 27.5 deg C, humidity 25% to 75%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Temperature/humidity detected by the environment sensor (left) is not used for the parameter of control.
ABS-HUM	1	Title	Moisture amount (environment sensor)
		Purpose	Check the amount of moisture.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	XX.xx
		Unit	g
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 20
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DR-TEMP	1	Title	Display of the temperature around the photosensitive drum
		Purpose	To check if a fault in image is attributed to the temperature of the photosensitive drum.
		Note	If the temperature is not within the standard range (approx 42.5 deg C), change the switch for heater temperature setting or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Deg C
		Appropriate guideline	Room temperature -/+ alpha (alpha; rise in temperature inside the machine)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-C	1	Title	Display of the temperature of the surface of fixing film unit (detected temperature by main thermistor)
		Purpose	Check the temperature of the surface of fixing roller (detected temperature by main thermistor)
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Deg C
		Appropriate guideline	Room temperature to 240 deg C. Approx. 240 deg C during executing a job.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-E	1	Title	Display of the temperature of the surface of fixing film unit (detected temperature by sub thermistor)
		Purpose	Check the temperature of the surface of fixing roller (detected temperature by sub thermistor)
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Deg C
		Appropriate guideline	Room temperature to 240 deg C. Approx. 240 deg C during executing a job.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.2.1.4 COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-STS

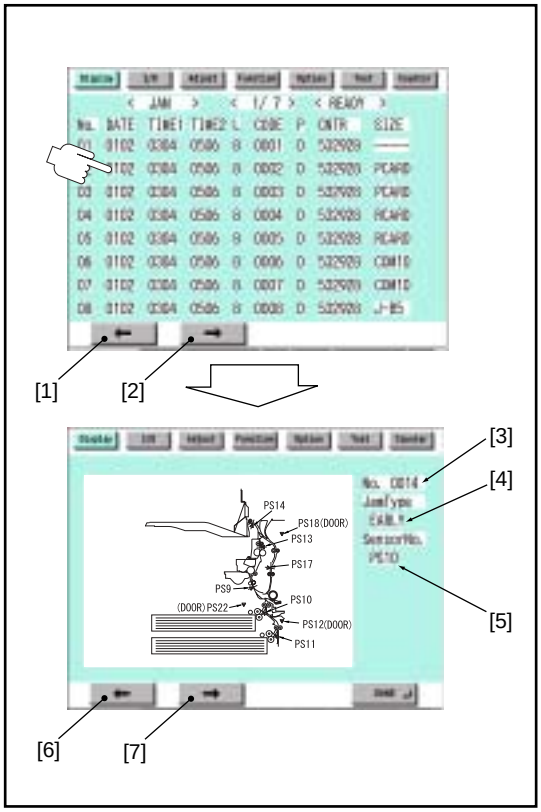
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-4

COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-STS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
WIDTH-MF	2	Title	Paper width size on the manual feed tray
		Purpose	Check the paper width size on the manual feed tray
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	mm
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.2.1.5 COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-17-9

Touch an arbitrary jam display screen to see details about the jam.
(1) To previous page
(2) To next page
(3) Jam sequential number
(4) Jam type
(5) Corresponding sensor
(6) To next jam screen
(7) To previous jam screen
<No.> Jam sequential number: 1 to 50 (The oldest jam has the greatest number.)
<DATE> Jam occurrence date
<TIME1> Jam occurrence time
<TIME2> Jam reset time
<L>Location of the jam: 0 - 2 (0:host machine, 1:Feeder, 2:Finisher)

<CODE>Jam Code
<P> Paper feed position
1: Cassette 1, 2: Cassette 2, 3: Cassette 3, 4: Cassette 4, 5: Side paper deck, 6: Manual feed tray, 9: Duplex unit
<CNTR> Software counter value of the paper feed stage
<SIZE> Paper size

17.2.1.6 COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

F-17-10

<No.> Error sequential number: 1 to 50 (The oldest error has the greatest number.)
<DATE> Error occurrence date
<TIME1> Error occurrence time
<TIME2> Error reset time
<CODE> Error code
<DTL> Error detail code (0000 for none)
<L> Error location
0: Main controller 1: DADF 2: Finisher 3: Not used 4: Reader unit 5: Printer unit
6: Various PDL board 7: Fax board
<P> Not used

17.2.1.7 COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-5

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PRIMARY	1	Title	Current value of the primary charge assembly
		Purpose	Current of the primary charge
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	30 to 60 Changes according to an environment and a duration
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR	1	Title	Current value of the transfer charge assembly
		Purpose	Transfer current (1st side)
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	19 to 23uA (at single-sided printing)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BIAS	1	Title	Setting value of developing bias of the last job
		Purpose	-
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	520 to 550 Changes according to an environment and the duration of a developing assembly
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-V	1	Title	Voltage value at the transfer charge roller registration detection control (ATVC)
		Purpose	-
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	1200 to 2000 Changes according to an environment and the duration of a fixing roller
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.2.1.8 COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-6

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TARGET-B	2	Title	Target value of shading for blue
		Purpose	When replacing the reader controller PCB, if the scanned image has some failure, check the target value of shading for blue.
		Note	If the machine continues to display 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum), there may be some problem on reader controller PCB.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	1 to 2047
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TARGET-G	2	Title	Target value of shading for green
		Purpose	When replacing the reader controller PCB, if the scanned image has some failure, check the target value of shading for green.
		Note	If the machine continues to display 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum), there may be some problem on reader controller PCB.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	1 to 2047
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TARGET-R	2	Title	Target value of shading for red
		Purpose	When replacing the reader controller PCB, if the scanned image has some failure, check the target value of shading for red.
		Note	If the machine continues to display 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum), there may be some problem on reader controller PCB.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	1 to 2047
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-B	2	Title	Adjustment value of offset level on CCD (blue)
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-G	2	Title	Adjustment value of offset level on CCD (green)
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-R	2	Title	Adjustment value of offset level on CCD (red)
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
OFST-O	2	Title	Adjustment value of offset level in odd bit on CCD
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-E	2	Title	Adjustment value of offset level in even bit on CCD
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-B	2	Title	Adjustment value of gain level on CCD (blue)
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-G	2	Title	Adjustment value of gain level on CCD (green)
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-R	2	Title	Adjustment value of gain level on CCD (red)
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-O	2	Title	Adjustment value of gain level in odd bit on CCD
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
GAIN-E	2	Title	Adjustment value of gain level in even bit on CCD
		Purpose	To judge if this adjustment value is correct when an image fault attributed to CCD occurs.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 255
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.2.1.9 COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-7

COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DOC-SZ	2	Title	Display of the original size identified by original size sensor
		Purpose	-
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.2.1.10 COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-2

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

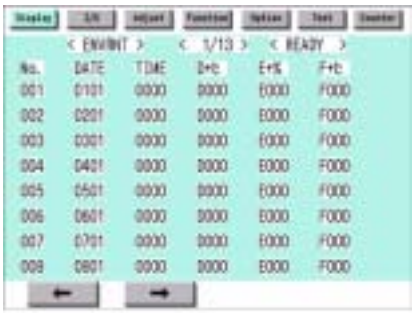
F-17-11

<No.> Alarm sequential number: 1 to 50 (The oldest alarm has the greatest number.)
<DATE> Alarm occurrence date
<TIME1> Alarm occurrence time
<TIME2> Alarm reset time
<CODE> Alarm location code and alarm code
<DTL> Alarm detail code
<CNTR> Total counter value at alarm occurrence

17.2.1.11 COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Environmental log display
Changes of [In-machine temperature (deg C)/humidity (%) / Fixing roller surface (center) temperature (deg C) are displayed as log data.
Remarks: The data acquisition cycle can be set at COPIER>OPTION>BODY>ENVP-INT in Service Mode.



F-17-12

T-17-8

Item	Description
No.	Error sequential number: (The oldest error has the greatest number.)
DATE	Data acquisition date
TIME	Data acquisition time
D+deg C	In-machine temperature
E+%	In-machine humidity
F+deg C	Fixing roller surface temperature

17.2.2 FEEDER

17.2.2.1 FEEDER > DISPLAY

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-9

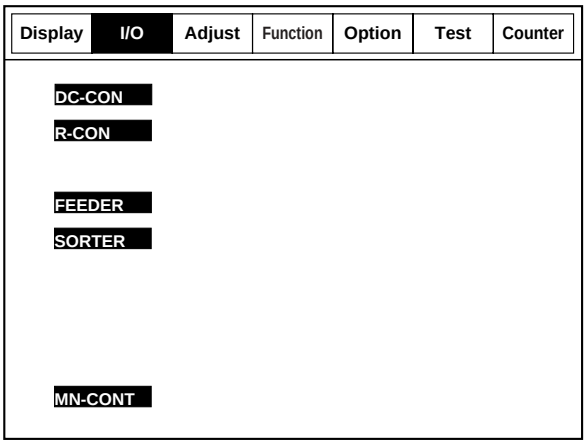
FEEDER > DISPLAY >			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FEEDSIZE	1	Title	Display of the original size detected with the ADF
		Purpose of use	To check if the ADF detects correctly the original size
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > CST > CST-U1, CST-U2 (level 2)
		Additional description and notes	Displays the paper size such as A4 and LTR. For the paper name, refer to CST-U1, CST-U2.
TRY-WIDE	1	Title	Displaying the distance between the original width detection slides (Detecting the paper width)
		Purpose of use	To check if the original width detection slide normally operates
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	mm
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode)

17.3.1 Outline

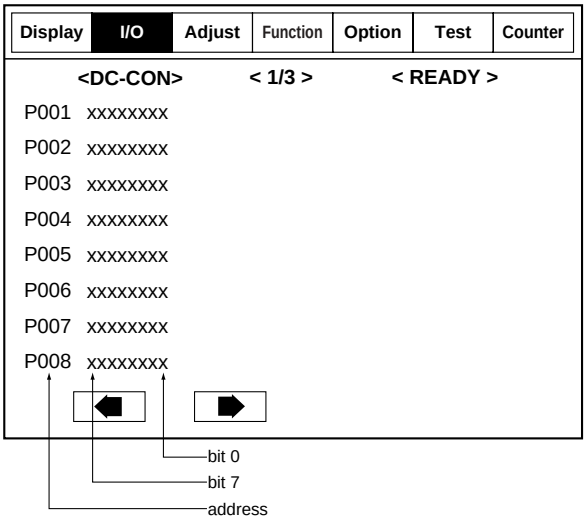
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The figures below show the COPIER > I/O screen and the next pages describe the items (necessary items for market services only).



F-17-13

<Screen interpretation>



F-17-14

17.3.2 <DC-CON>

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-10

Address	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P001	0-2	For development	
	3	High-voltage reset detection	0: High-voltage reset detected
	4-7	For development	
P002	0-6	For development	
	7	Not used	
P003	0	Not used	
	1	Main thermistor overheat relay	0: OFF
	2	Thermistor partial pressure resistance change signal	0: At high temperature 1: At low temperature
	3	Not used	
	4	Fixing relay ON signal	0: OFF 1: ON
	5	Not used	
	6	For development	
	7	Printer power supply 100V/200V detection	1: 100V/120V 2: 230V
P004	0-7	For development	
P005	0-4	For development	
	5-7	Not used	
P006	0-7	For development	

Address	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P007	0	Laser scanner motor standby signal	1: standby
	1	Main motor ON signal	1: OFF 0: ON
	2	Cassette heater ON signal	1: OFF 0: ON
	3	Toner container motor ON signal	0: OFF 1: ON
	4	Hopper motor ON signal	0: OFF 1: ON
	5	Pre-exposure LED	0: Not activated 1: Activated
	6	For development	
	7	Not used	
	8	Power supply cooling fan	1: 12V drive OFF 0: 12V drive ON
	9-15	reserve	
P008	0	Cassette 1 size detection 1	-
	1	Cassette 1 size detection 2	-
	2	Cassette 1 size detection 3	-
	3	Cassette 1 size detection 4	-
	4	Cassette 1 size detection 5	-
	5	Cassette 1 paper level sensor B	1: Approx. 50 sheets or less remained
	6	Cassette 1 paper level sensor A	1: Approx. half or less remained
	7	Cassette 1 paper sensor	1: Paper absent
	8	Cassette 2 size detection 1	-
	9	Cassette 2 size detection 2	-
	10	Cassette 2 size detection 3	-
	11	Cassette 2 size detection 4	-
	12	Cassette 2 size detection 5	-
	13	Cassette 2 paper level sensor B	1: Approx. 50 sheets or less remained
	14	Cassette 2 paper level sensor A	1: Approx. half or less remained
	15	Cassette 2 paper sensor	1: Paper absent
P009	0-7	For development	
P010	0	For development	
	1	Not used	
	2	Thermistor connector detection	1: Disconnected
	3	Not used	
	4	Detection of connector between laser driver and mage PCB	1: Disconnected
	5-7	Not used	
P011	0-2	For development	
	3-7	Not used	
P012	0-7	For development	
P013	0-2	For development	
	3-4	Not used	
	5	For development	
	6	High-voltage power supply PCB	1: Reset requested
	7	Motor standby signal (for motor driver)	0: Standby
	8-15	Not used	
P014	0-3	Not used	
	4	Heat discharge fan (front)	1: ON 0: OFF
	5-6	Not used	
	7	Power supply cooling fan	1: ON 0: OFF
	8-15	For development	
P015	0-1	Not used	
	2	For development	
	3	Toner level detection signal	1: Toner remained
	4-8	For development	
	9	Power supply cooling fan lock detection	0: Locked
	10	Cassette 1 retry sensor	1: Detected
	11	Cassette 2 retry sensor	1: Detected
	12	Pre-registration sensor	1: Detected
	13	Fixing outlet sensor	1: Detected
	14	Duplex feed sensor	1: Detected
	15	No. 1 delivery sensor	1: Detected

Address	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P016	0	No. 1 delivery full sensor	0: Full
	1	Manual feeder paper sensor	0: Paper present
	2-3	For development	
	4	Heat discharge fan (rear) lock detection	0: Locked
	5	Heat discharge fan (front) lock detection	0: Locked
	6	Main motor lock detection	0: Locked
	7	Developing assembly toner sensor connection detection	0: Connected
	8	Waste toner sensor	0: Full
	9	Front cover sensor	0: Open
	10	Feed cover sensor	0: Open
	11	Interlock switch	1: Open
	12	Not used	
	13	Sub hopper overcurrent detection signal	0: Overcurrent detected
	14	Sub hopper sensor	0: No toner
	15	Sub hopper sensor connection detection	0: Connected

17.3.3 <R-CON>

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-11

Address	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P001	0-3	For development	
	4	Original size sensor (AB configuration)	0: Original present
	5	Original size sensor (INCH configuration)	0: Original present
	6	Original size sensor ON/OFF	1: ON
	7	For development	
P002	0-6	For development	
	7	Scanner motor CW/CCW signal	1: CW
P003	0-5	For development	
	6	Not used	
	7	For development	
P004	0	For development	
	1	Not used	
	2	Platen open/closed sensor 0	1: Open
	3	Platen open/closed sensor 1	1: Open
	4	HP sensor	1: HP
	5	For development	
	6	Not used	
	7	Flat cable connection detection (Reader controller CCD unit)	0: Normal 1: Abnormal (Inserted not straight)
P005	0-1	For development	
	2-7	Not used	
P006	0	13V power supply monitor	0: Normal 1: Power supply cut
	1	24V power supply monitor	0: Normal 1: Power supply cut
	2-5	Not used	
	6	For development	
	7	Not used	
P007	0-7	Not used	
P008	0-1	Not used	
	2	For development	
	3	CCD power supply ON	1: ON
	4-5	Not used	
	6	For development	
	7	Scanner motor enable signal	1: Operation available 0: Stop

17.3.4 <FEEDER>

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-12

Address	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P001	0-7	Not used	
P002	0	Document Detecting LED ON signal	1: ON
	1	Fan drive	1: ON
	2	Stamp solenoid drive	1: ON
	3-5	Not used	
	6	Separation clutch drive	1: ON
	7	Registration clutch drive	1: ON

Address	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P003	0	Feeding motor enable signal	1: ON
	1	Feeding motor rotation direction	1: Normal rotation 0: Reverse rotation
	2	Separation motor enable signal	1: ON
	3	Separation motor rotation direction	1: Normal rotation 0: Reverse rotation
	4-7	Not used	
P004	0-2	Model identification board 0 to 2	
	3	Fan lock detection	1: Locked
	4	Delivery sensor	1: Document present
	5	Read sensor	0: Document present
	6	Timing sensor	1: Document present
	7	Registration sensor	0: Document present
P005	0	Length 2 (short) sensor	1: Document present
	1	Length 1 (long) sensor	1: Document present
	2	Separation HP sensor	0: Separated
	3	Cover sensor	0: Open
	4	Last sheet sensor	1: Document present
	5	Document detecting sensor	0: Document present
	6	A4/LTR detecting sensor	0: LTRR
	7	For development	
AD0	0-7	Document tray width AD value	
PWM0	0-7	Separation solenoid PWM value	
PWM1	0-7	Feeding motor PWM value	
PWM2	0-7	Separation motor PWM value	

17.3.5 <SORTER>

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-13

Address	Controller	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P001	STACKER	0	Entry transport motor A	
		1	Entry transport motor B	
		2	Entry transport motor A-	
		3	Entry transport motor B-	
		4	Entry transport motor current switching 0	0:ON
		5	Entry transport motor current switching 1	0:ON
		6	Entry transport/bundle ejection motor standby signal	1:ON
		7	Common solenoid ON signal	0:ON
P002	STACKER	0	Punch transport motor A	
		1	Punch transport motor A-	
		2	Punch transport motor B	
		3	Punch transport motor B-	
		4	Punch transport motor current switching 0	1:ON
		5	Punch transport motor current switching 1	1:ON
		6	Tray 2 motor clock	
		7	Tray 1 motor clock	
P003	STACKER	0-3	For development	
		4-7	Not used	
P004	STACKER	0	Saddle connection detection signal	0:ON
		1	Not used	
		2	Oscillating HP sensor	1:ON
		3	Top cover sensor	0:ON
		4	Front cover sensor	0:ON
		5	Front cover interlock sensor	1:ON
		6	Gear change HP sensor	1:ON
		7	Not used	
P005	STACKER	0-1	For development	
		2	Punch send request signal	0:ON
		3	Saddle 13VON signal	1:ON
		4-7	Not used	
P006	STACKER	0	Punch connection sensor	0:ON
		1-2	Not used	
		3	Punch motor standby	1:ON
		4	Entry sensor(IRQ0)	1:ON
		5	Paper rear end sensor(IRQ1)	1:ON
		6	Punch communication input(IRQ2)	0:ON
		7	Not used	

Address	Controller	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P007	STACKER	0	Tray proximity sensor	0:ON
		1	Tray 2 area sensor 1	0:ON
		2	Tray 2 area sensor 2	0:ON
		3	Tray 2 area sensor 3	0:ON
		4	Tray 2 paper detection sensor	1:ON
		5	Tray 2 paper surface sensor	1:ON
		6	Entry motor clock input	
		7	Bundle ejection motor clock input	
P008	STACKER	0	Tray 3 paper detection sensor	1:ON
		1	Tray 3 connection sensor	0:ON
		2	High-quality paper sensor	1:ON
		3	Tray 1 interlock detection sensor	1:ON
		4	Tray 1 area sensor 1	0:ON
		5	Tray 1 area sensor 2	0:ON
		6	Tray 1 area sensor 3	0:ON
		7	Tray 1 paper detection sensor	1:ON
P009	STACKER	0	Tray 1 shift motor CW	0:ON
		1	Tray 1 shift motor enable	1:ON
		2	Tray 1 shift motor power switching 0	0:ON
		3	Tray 1 shift motor power switching 1	0:ON
		4	Tray 2 shift motor CW	0:ON
		5	Tray 2 shift motor enable	1:ON
		6	Tray 2 shift motor power switching 0	0:ON
		7	Tray 2 shift motor power switching 1	0:ON
P010	STACKER	0	Not used	
		1	Oscillating pressure motor power switching 0	0:ON
		2	Oscillating pressure motor phase-A pulse output	
		3	Oscillating pressure motor phase-B pulse output	
		4-7	Not used	
P011	STACKER	0	Entry roller spaced solenoid	1:ON
		1-2	For development	
		3	Buffer roller spaced solenoid	1:ON
		4	Transport path sensor	1:ON
		5-7	Not used	
P012	STACKER	0	Gear change phase A	
		1	Gear change phase B	
		2	Gear change motor current switching 0	0:ON
		3	Gear change motor current switching 1	0:ON
		4	Not used	
		5-7	For development	
P013	STACKER	0	For development	
		1	Pre-alignment HP sensor	1:ON
		2	Pre-alignment HP sensor	1:ON
		3	Processing tray paper detection sensor	1:ON
		4	Rear-end assist HP sensor	1:ON
		5-7	Not used	
P014	STACKER	0	Post-alignment motor phase A	
		2	Post-alignment motor phase B	
		3	Post-alignment motor current switching 0	0:ON
		4-7	Not used	
P015	STACKER	0	Pre-alignment phase A	
		1	Pre-alignment phase B	
		2	Pre-alignment motor current switching 0	0:ON
		3-7	Not used	

T-17-14

Address	Controller	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P016	STACKER	0	Rear-end assist phase A	
		1	Rear-end assist phase B	
		2	Rear-end assist motor current switching 0	0:ON
		3	Rear-end assist motor current switching 1	0:ON
		4	Rear-end assist standby	1:ON
		5-7	Not used	

Address	Controller	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P017	STACKER	0	Stapler slide standby	1:ON
		1	Stapler CW	1:ON
		2	Stapler CCW	1:ON
		3	Not used	
		4	Stapler slide phase A	
		5	Stapler slide phase B	
		6-7	Not used	
P018	STACKER	0-1	Not used	
		2	Stapler HP sensor	1:ON
		3	Staple Ready signal	1:ON
		4	Staple Present signal	1:ON
		5	Stapler connection signal	0:ON
		6	Stapler slide HP sensor	1:ON
		7	Stapler - alignment plate interference sensor	1:ON
P019	STACKER	0	Stapler slide current switching 0	0:ON
		1	Stapler slide current switching 1	0:ON
		2	Under-bundle roller clutch	1:ON
		3	Shutter clutch	1:ON
		4	First paper ejection roller spaced solenoid	1:ON
		5	Buffer paper rear-end press solenoid	1:ON
		6	Bundle-out motor current switching 1	0:ON
		7	Bundle-out motor current switching 0	0:ON
P020	STACKER	0	Bundle-out motor phase A	
		1	Bundle-out motor phase B	
		2	Bundle-out motor phase A-	
		3	Bundle-out motor phase B-	
		4	Ejection-position paper detection sensor	1:ON
		5	Scalable interlock	1:ON
		6	Shutter HP sensor	1:ON
		7	Oscillating guide interlock	1:ON
P021	STACKER	0	DIPSW_8	0:ON
		1	DIPSW_7	0:ON
		2	DIPSW_6	0:ON
		3	DIPSW_5	0:ON
		4	DIPSW_4	0:ON
		5	DIPSW_3	0:ON
		6	DIPSW_2	0:ON
		7	DIPSW_1	0:ON
P022	STACKER	0	PUSU switch 1	0:ON
		1	PUSU switch 2	0:ON
		2	PUSU switch 3	0:ON
		3	Not used	
		4	5V detection signal	1:ON
		5	24V detection signal	0:ON
		6	Not used	
		7	Fan error detection signal	0:ON
P023	STACKER	0	FAN ON	1:ON
		1	LED1	0:ON
		2	LED2	0:ON
		3	LED3	0:ON
		4	FIN internal power supply ON	0:ON
		5-6	Not used	
		7	Return roller spaced solenoid	0:ON
P024	SADDLE	0	Guide motor phase A	
		1	Guide motor phase B	
		2	Guide motor current switching	0:ON
		3	Saddle transport motor current switching	
		4	Saddle transport motor phase A	
		5	Saddle transport motor phase B	
		6	Saddle transport motor phase A-	
		7	Saddle transport motor phase B-	

Address	Controller	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P025	SADDLE	0	Alignment motor phase A	
		1	Alignment motor phase B	
		2	Alignment motor current switching	0:ON
		3	Paper positioning motor current switching	0:ON
		4	Paper positioning motor phase A	
		5	Paper positioning motor phase B	
		6-7	For development	
P026	SADDLE	0	Not used	
		1	For development	
		2	Not used	
		3	For development	
		4-7	Not used	
P027	SADDLE	0	Stapler current detection signal	1:ON
		1	Stapler current detection signal	1:ON
		2	Paper ejection cover sensor connector open	0:ON
		3	Front cover sensor connector open	0:ON
		4	Butting plate HP connector open	0:ON
		5	Folding roller guide HP connector open	0:ON
		6	Saddle stapler unit connector open	0:ON
		7	Butting plate TOP connector open	0:ON
P028	SADDLE	0	Inside staple detection	1:ON
		1	Front staple detection	1:ON
		2	Front stapler motor reverse rotation signal	0:ON
		3	Transport motor driver standby signal	0:ON
		4-7	Not used	
P029	SADDLE	0	Front cover open - 24V down detection	1:ON
		1	Entry cover open - 24V down detection	1:ON
		2	Folding motor forward rotation signal	1:ON
		3	Folding motor reverse rotation signal	1:ON
		4	Folding motor clock sensor	1:ON
		5	Butting motor clock sensor	1:ON
		6	Stapler HP sensor	1:ON
		7	Stapler HP sensor	1:ON
P030	SADDLE	0	Paper positioning plate HP sensor	0:ON
		1	Folding roller guide HP sensor	1:ON
		2	Entry cover open detection	0:ON
		3	Saddle stapler open detection	1:ON
		4	Butting plate HP sensor	1:ON
		5	Butting plate TOP sensor	1:ON
		6	Not used	
		7	Transport clock	

T-17-15

Address	Controller	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P031	SADDLE	0	Saddle tray paper detection sensor	0:ON
		1	Paper positioning section paper detection sensor	0:ON
		2	Crescent roller HP sensor	0:ON
		3	Saddle paper ejection path sensor	0:ON
		4	Saddle path (upstream) sensor	1:ON
		5	Saddle path (midstream) sensor	1:ON
		6	Saddle path (downstream) sensor	1:ON
		7	Saddle path sensor	1:ON
P032	SADDLE	0	Butting motor enable signal	1:ON
		1	Butting motor forward rotation signal	1:ON
		2	Butting motor reverse rotation signal	1:ON
		3	Folding roller HP sensor	1:ON
		4	Front door open detection sensor	0:ON
		5	Paper ejection cover open detection sensor (photosensor)	0:ON
		6	Saddle alignment HP sensor	0:ON
		7	Paper ejection cover open and 24V down detection	1:ON

Address	Controller	Bit	Display contents	Remarks
P033	SADDLE	0	Entry flapper solenoid	1:ON
		1	Saddle path switching flapper 1	1:ON
		2	Saddle path switching flapper 2	1:ON
		3	Intermediate transport solenoid	1:ON
		4-5	Not used	
		6	Entry path sensor	1:ON
		7	Not used	
P034	SADDLE	0	Inside stapler motor forward rotation	0:ON
		1	Inside stapler motor reverse rotation	0:ON
		2	Front stapler motor forward rotation	0:ON
		3	Not used	
		4	Folding roller HP connector open	0:ON
		5-7	Not used	
P035	SADDLE	0	DIPSW_1	0:ON
		1	DIPSW_2	0:ON
		2	DIPSW_3	0:ON
		3	DIPSW_4	0:ON
		4	DIPSW_5	0:ON
		5	DIPSW_6	0:ON
		6	DIPSW_7	0:ON
		7	DIPSW_8	0:ON
P036	SADDLE	0-1	Not used	
		2	Push switch 1	0:ON
		3	5V detection signal	0:ON
		4	24V detection signal	0:ON
		5-7	Not used	
P037	SADDLE	0	POWER_ON	1:ON
		1	LED1	1:ON
		2	LED2	1:ON
		3	LED3	1:ON
		4	LEDY	0:ON
		5	TRAY_MTR_CUR	0:ON
		6	TRAY_MTR_B	0:ON
		7	TRAY_MTR_A	0:ON
P038	PUNCHER	0	DIPSW1	0:ON
		1	DIPSW2	0:ON
		2	DIPSW3	0:ON
		3	-	
		4	PCH-OUT	
		5	Rear-end sensor	1:ON
		6	Punch encoder clock	
		7	Punch HP sensor	0:ON
P039	PUNCHER	0-2	For development	
		3-7	-	
P040	PUNCHER	0-3	For development	
		4	Horizontal registration HP sensor	1:ON
		5	Horizontal registration motor STB	0:ON
		6	Punch motor CCW	0:ON
		7	Punch motor CW	0:ON
P041	PUNCHER	0-3	-	
		4	DIPSW4	0:ON
		5	Horizontal registration motor CUR	0:ON
		6	For development	
		7	-	
P042	PUNCHER	0	LED1	0:ON
		1-2	For development	
		3	LED2	0:ON
		4	Front cover sensor	0:ON
		5	For development	
		6	PUSHSW2	0:ON
		7	PUSHSW1	0:ON
P043	PUNCHER	0-4	-	
		5	Top cover sensor	0:ON
		6-7	-	

17.3.6 <MN-CONT>

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Not used

17.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode)

17.4.1 COPIER

17.4.1.1 COPIER > ADJUST > AE

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-16

COPIER > ADJUST > AE			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
AE-TBL	1	Title	Character density adjustment when adjusting image density
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB
		Note	Increasing the setting value makes the character density stronger. Decreasing the setting value makes the character density weaker. Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB.
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ Adjustment at factory shipment	5/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.2 COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY

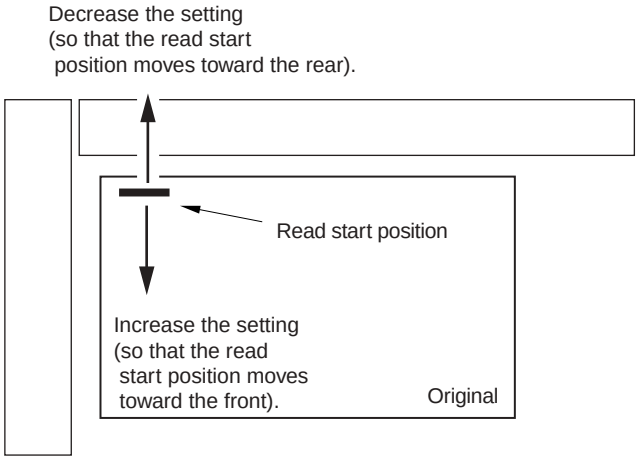
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-17

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ADJ-X	1	Title	Adjustment of scanning system image lead edge position (image's scan-start position in vertical scanning direction)
		Purpose	Adjust the image lead edge position in scanning system (image scan-start position in vertical scanning direction).
		Situation	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB/when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to Note the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 100
		Unit	0.1mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm shift of image scan-start position toward the trail edge direction by 1-increment in the setting value (image scan range shifts toward the trail edge direction).
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	20/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Decrease the setting value if non-image width is bigger than the specific value. - Increase the setting value if copying area exceeds the original area
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ADJ-Y	1	Title	Adjustment value of image scan-start position <Y-direction>
		Purpose	Adjust the value for image scan-start position <Y-direction>
		Situation	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to Note the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	85 to 290
		Unit	0.1mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm shift of image scan-start position toward the trail edge direction by 1-increment in the setting value (image scan range shifts toward the trail edge direction).
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	144/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	- Decrease the setting value if non-image width is bigger than the specific value. - Increase the setting value if copying area exceeds the original area
ADJ-S	1	Title	Adjustment of CCD scan-start cell position (image scan-start position in horizontal scanning direction)
		Purpose	Adjust the position to measure data for shading correction with standard white plate.
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 500
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	0.1 mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	121/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
ADJ-Y-DF	1	Title	Adjustment of horizontal scanning position at feeder mode
		Purpose	Adjust horizontal scanning position at feeder mode (because there is no mechanism to adjust side registration with feeder's document tray)
		Situation	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to Note the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	50 to 290
		Unit	0.1mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm shift of image scan-start position toward the front direction by 1-increment in the setting value.
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	144/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
STRD-POS	1	Title	Adjustment of CCD scan position at stream-reading mode with DF
		Purpose	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to Note the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 200
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	0.1 mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	100/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS COPIER > FUNCTION > DOSCT
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ADJ-X-MG	1	Title	Fine adjustment of magnification ration in vertical scanning when scanning with reader copyboard
		Purpose	Execute fine adjustment of vertical scanning magnification ratio when scanning with reader copyboard
		Situation	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to Note the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-50 to +50
		Unit	0.1mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm shift of image scan-start position toward the front direction by 1-increment in the setting value.
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-



F-17-15

17.4.1.3 COPIER > ADJUST > CCD

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-18

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
W-PLT-X	1	Title	White label data entry with standard white plate
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing copyboard glass
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB -Be sure to enter the numeric value on copyboard glass when replacing the copyboard glass. - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 9999
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	8161/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
W-PLT-Y	1	Title	White label data (Y) entry with standard white plate
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing copyboard glass
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB -Be sure to enter the numeric value on copyboard glass when replacing the copyboard glass. - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 9999
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	8621/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
W-PLT-Z	1	Title	White label data (Z) entry with standard white plate
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing copyboard glass
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB -Be sure to enter the numeric value on copyboard glass when replacing the copyboard glass. - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 9999
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	9270/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
SH-TRGT	1	Title	Shading target value with white standard plate for the back of DF (backup)
		Purpose	Specify the numeric value on service label when replacing RCON PCB. Also when CCD unit, etc. is replaced, adjust the back image to match the front image.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 2047
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1136/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
CCDU-RG	1	Title	Entry of color displacement correction value in vertical scanning direction (between R-G at document scanning with CCD unit + lens)
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB -Be sure to enter the numeric value on the label attached to CCD unit when replacing the CCD unit. - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	With color displacements in vertical scanning direction due to scanning system, this mode executes correction by adjusting correction level between R and G with 3-line CCD sensor, which is dependent on CCD unit + lens. Image correction is executed on main controller PCB.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CCDU-GB	1	Title	Entry of color displacement correction value in vertical scanning direction (between G-B at document scanning with CCD unit + lens)
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB -Be sure to enter the numeric value on CCD unit when replacing the CCD unit. - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	With color displacements in vertical scanning direction due to scanning system, this mode executes correction by adjusting correction level between G and B with 3-line CCD sensor, which is dependent on CCD unit + lens. Image correction is executed on main controller PCB.
FCCDU-RG	1	Title	Entry of color displacement correction value in vertical scanning direction (between R-G at document scanning with CCD unit + lens at the time of factory shipment).
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	With color displacements in vertical scanning direction due to scanning system, this mode executes correction by adjusting correction level between R and G with 3-line CCD sensor, which is dependent on CCD unit + lens. Image correction is executed on main controller PCB.
FCCDU-GB	1	Title	Entry of color displacement correction value in vertical scanning direction (between G-B at document scanning with CCD unit + lens at the time of factory shipment)
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	With color displacements in vertical scanning direction due to scanning system, this mode executes correction by adjusting correction level between G and B with 3-line CCD sensor, which is dependent on CCD unit + lens. Image correction is executed on main controller PCB.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
50-RG	1	Title	Color displacement (G-R) offset value display at BOOK mode/50% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
50-GB	1	Title	Color displacement (G-B) offset value display at BOOK mode/50% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
100-RG	1	Title	Color displacement (G-R) offset value display at BOOK mode/100% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
100-GB	1	Title	Color displacement (G-B) offset value display at BOOK mode/100% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB, when replacing CCD unit
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
50DF-RG	1	Title	Color displacement (G-R) offset value display at ADF mode/50% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
50DF-GB	1	Title	Color displacement (G-B) offset value display at ADF mode/50% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
100DF-RG	1	Title	Color displacement (G-R) offset value display at ADF mode/100% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
100DF-GB	1	Title	Color displacement (G-B) offset value display at ADF mode/100% scanning
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of reader controller PCB, when replacing reader controller PCB
		Note	- Be sure to enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of the reader controller PCB/ replacing the reader controller PCB - If changing the setting value of this item, be sure to write down the changed value on the reader's service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DFTAR-R	1	Title	Shading target value (RED) entry when using DF (normal document scanning position)
		Purpose	In case of image fault (due to chart soil, etc) after executing: COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2; enter the factory measurement value using this mode.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 2047
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1159/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1 (Level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2 (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
DFTAR-G	1	Title	Shading target value (GREEN) entry when using DF (normal document scanning position)
		Purpose	In case of image fault (due to chart soil, etc) after executing: COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2; enter the factory measurement value using this mode.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 2047
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1189/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1 (Level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2 (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
DFTAR-B	1	Title	Shading target value (BLUE) entry when using DF (normal document scanning position)
		Purpose	In case of image fault (due to chart soil, etc) after executing: COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2; enter the factory measurement value using this mode.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 2047
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1209/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1 (Level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2 (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
CCD-CHNG	1	Title	CCD replacement flag
		Purpose	Set this mode when CCD replacement is completed.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0 to 1
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DFTAR-K	1	Title	Black shading target value when using DF
		Purpose	- When replacing reader controller PCB/executing RAM clear - When replacing ADF
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 2047
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1189/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M1	1	Title	MTF setting value for R in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M2	1	Title	MTF setting value for R in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M3	1	Title	MTF setting value for R in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M4	1	Title	MTF setting value for G in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF3-M5	1	Title	MTF setting value for G in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M6	1	Title	MTF setting value for G in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M7	1	Title	MTF setting value for B in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M8	1	Title	MTF setting value for B in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M9	1	Title	MTF setting value for B in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF3-M10	1	Title	MTF setting value for K in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M11	1	Title	MTF setting value for K in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-M12	1	Title	MTF setting value for K in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S1	1	Title	MTF setting value for R in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S2	1	Title	MTF setting value for R in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF3-S3	1	Title	MTF setting value for R in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S4	1	Title	MTF setting value for G in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S5	1	Title	MTF setting value for G in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S6	1	Title	MTF setting value for G in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S7	1	Title	MTF setting value for B in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF3-S8	1	Title	MTF setting value for B in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S9	1	Title	MTF setting value for B in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S10	1	Title	MTF setting value for K in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S11	1	Title	MTF setting value for K in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF3-S12	1	Title	MTF setting value for K in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF4-M1	1	Title	MTF specified value for R in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M2	1	Title	MTF specified value for R in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M3	1	Title	MTF specified value for R in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M4	1	Title	MTF specified value for G in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M5	1	Title	MTF specified value for G in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF4-M6	1	Title	MTF specified value for G in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M7	1	Title	MTF specified value for B in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M8	1	Title	MTF specified value for B in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M9	1	Title	MTF specified value for B in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M10	1	Title	MTF specified value for K in horizontal scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF4-M11	1	Title	MTF specified value for K in horizontal scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-M12	1	Title	MTF specified value for K in horizontal scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S1	1	Title	MTF specified value for R in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S2	1	Title	MTF specified value for R in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S3	1	Title	MTF specified value for R in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF4-S4	1	Title	MTF specified value for G in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S5	1	Title	MTF specified value for G in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S6	1	Title	MTF specified value for G in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S7	1	Title	MTF specified value for B in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S8	1	Title	MTF specified value for B in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTF4-S9	1	Title	MTF specified value for B in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S10	1	Title	MTF specified value for K in vertical scanning direction (front)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S11	1	Title	MTF specified value for K in vertical scanning direction (center)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MTF4-S12	1	Title	MTF specified value for K in vertical scanning direction (rear)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label (included in the package) attached on CCDBOX when replacing CCDBOX/reader controller PCB (at RCON clear)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	20 to 80
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	55/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.4 COPIER > ADJUST > LASER

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-19

COPIER > ADJUST > LASER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LA-OFF	1	Title	Laser trail edge OFF adjustment
		Purpose	Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Note the value on service label when adjusting setting value
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
POWER	1	Title	Laser power adjustment
		Purpose	Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Note the value on service label when adjusting setting value
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
LDADJ1-K	1	Title	Magnification ratio between lasers A-B (K)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label attached to the laser scanner unit when replacing the scanner unit.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-512 to +511
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Magnification ratio adjustment of B laser in laser scanner unit. Adjustment based on the magnification ratio of A laser as a reference. Image quality drops if inappropriate value is entered.
LDADJ2-K	1	Title	Magnification ratio between lasers A-C (K)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label attached to the laser scanner unit when replacing the scanner unit.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-512 to +511
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Magnification ratio adjustment of C laser in laser scanner unit. Adjustment based on the magnification ratio of A laser as a reference. Image quality drops if inappropriate value is entered.

COPIER > ADJUST > LASER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LDADJ3-K	1	Title	Magnification ratio between lasers A-D (K)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label attached to the laser scanner unit when replacing the scanner unit.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-512 to +511
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Magnification ratio adjustment of D laser in laser scanner unit. Adjustment based on the magnification ratio of A laser as a reference. Image quality drops if inappropriate value is entered.
LDADJ4-K	1	Title	Phase difference between lasers A-B (K)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label attached to the laser scanner unit when replacing the scanner unit.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-512 to +511
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Phase difference (scan-start timing) adjustment between lasers A and B in laser scanner unit. Variation in phase difference (scan-start position) between lasers A and B if inappropriate value is entered. (K)
LDADJ5-K	1	Title	Phase difference between lasers A-C (K)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label attached to the laser scanner unit when replacing the scanner unit.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-512 to +511
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Phase difference (scan-start timing) adjustment between lasers A and C in laser scanner unit. Variation in phase difference (scan-start position) between lasers A and C if inappropriate value is entered. (K)
LDADJ6-K	1	Title	Phase difference between lasers A-D (K)
		Purpose	Enter the value on the label attached to the laser scanner unit when replacing the scanner unit.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-512 to +511
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Phase difference (scan-start timing) adjustment between lasers A and D in laser scanner unit. Variation in phase difference (scan-start position) between lasers A and D if inappropriate value is entered. (K)

17.4.1.5 COPIER > ADJUST > DEVELOP

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-20

COPIER > ADJUST > DEVELOP			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DE-OFST	1	Title	Offset value entry for developing bias DC
		Purpose	When a fault in image occurs (foggy image, light density)
		Note	Density gets stronger when increasing the value
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.6 COPIER > ADJUST > DENS

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-21

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DENS-ADJ	1	Title	Image (copy/printer) density correction
		Purpose	In case of foggy image or white area (faulty transfer) at high density area. When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB.
		Note	Note the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB. Increasing the value reduces white area. Decreasing the value reduces foggy image.
		Settings/Adjustment range	1 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	5/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.7 COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-22

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
BLANK-T	1	Title	Adjustment value entry for non-image width (lead edge)
		Purpose	Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Note the value on service label when changing the setting value
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	0.1 mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increasing the value makes non-image width bigger.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
BLANK-B	1	Title	Adjustment value entry for non-image width (trail edge)
		Purpose	Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Note the value on service label when changing the setting value
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	0.1 mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increasing the value makes non-image width bigger.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.8 COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-23

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
OFST-P-K	1	Title	Density adjustment at test print scanning
		Purpose	Only when replacing reader controller PCB/executing Rcon clear
		Note	Note the value on reader service label when changing the setting value
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Execute offset adjustment for test print scanning signal in PASCAL control at auto gradation correction (full correction)

17.4.1.9 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-24

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
OFST1-DC	1	Title	Adjustment value entry for primary charging DC offset 1
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB When replacing power supply PCB
		Note	Enter the value on the label attached to the case of the new power supply PCB when replacing the power supply PCB.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
OFST1-AC	1	Title	Adjustment value entry for primary charging AC offset 1
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB When replacing the power supply PCB.
		Note	Enter the value on the label attached to the case of the new power supply PCB when replacing the power supply PCB.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.10 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-25

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-OFST	1	Title	Offset output adjustment value entry for transfer charging current
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Enter the value on service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-SPP	1	Title	Output adjustment value entry for transfer bias with thick paper (at 1-sided print with thick paper, at the 1st side print of 2-sided print with thick paper)
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Enter the value on service label. Increasing the value makes the bigger impact.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
2TR-TGT1	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR1 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV1 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP1
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
2TR-TGT2	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR2 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV2 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP2
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
2TR-TGT3	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR3 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV3 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP3
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
2TR-TGT4	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR4 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV4 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP4
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
2TR-TGT5	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR5 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV5 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP5
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
2TR-TGT6	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR6 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV6 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP6
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
2TR-TGT7	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR7 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV7 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP7
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
2TR-TGT8	2	Title	Offset adjustment for secondary transfer target current
		Purpose	In case of image fault due to secondary transfer
		Note	Set the conditions for material, environment, and 2-sided printing in the relevant service mode and adjust the offset value under these conditions.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to +10
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - Increase the setting value (effective for toner spatter, dotted image) - Decrease the setting value (effective for white dot/white spot/granulated image at halftone)
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-PPR8 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-ENV8 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-DUP8
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-PPR1	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT1
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-PPR2	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT2
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-PPR3	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT3
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-PPR4	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT4
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-PPR5	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT5
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-PPR6	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	1/No
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT6
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-PPR7	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT7
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-PPR8	2	Title	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	Paper type item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: plain paper, 2 thick paper, 3: envelope, 4: tracing paper, 5: transparency, 6: postcard, 7: label paper, 8: bond paper
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT8
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-ENV1	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT1
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-ENV2	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT2
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-ENV3	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT3
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-ENV4	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT4
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-ENV5	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT5
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-ENV6	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT6
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-ENV7	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT7
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-ENV8	2	Title	Environment item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	-
		Note	Be sure to enter the value in ENV-TR: COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC>ENV-TR
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: A segment (low humidity) 2: B segment (normal temperature) 3: C segment (high temperature)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT8
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-DUP1	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT1
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-DUP2	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT2
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-DUP3	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT3
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-DUP4	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT4
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-DUP5	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT5
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-DUP6	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT6
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-DUP7	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT7
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-DUP8	2	Title	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Purpose	1st sided/2nd sided item at secondary transfer offset adjustment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1: 1-sided, 2: auto 2-sided, 3: multi 1-sided, 4: multi 2-sided
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TGT8
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-TP-TM	1	Title	Time adjustment to apply voltage for transfer lead edge weak bias
		Purpose	Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	This mode determines the level to apply voltage for transfer lead edge weak bias. Transfer lead edge weak bias becomes effective with the following settings: 1) Output condition: COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > Select the following: (1)PPR-SLCT(paper type)/ (2)MOD-SLCT(pickup mode)/ (3)ENV-SLCT(environment selection), then register at TR-SW1 to 5 2) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > Select the following: (1)TR-TP-TM (time to apply bias) / (2)TR-TP-LV (level to apply bias)
		Settings/Adjustment range	0 to 127
		Unit	msec
		Amount of change per unit	2
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > PPR-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > MOD-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > ENV-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > TR-SW1 to 5 (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-LV (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TR-TP-LV	1	Title	Level adjustment of transfer lead edge weak bias
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Enter the value on service label. This mode determines the level to apply voltage for transfer lead edge weak bias. Transfer lead edge weak bias becomes effective with the following settings: 1) Output condition: COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > Select the following: (1)PPR-SLCT(paper type)/ (2)MOD-SLCT(pickup mode)/ (3)ENV-SLCT(environment selection), then register at TR-SW1 to 5 2) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > Select the following: (1)TR-TP-TM (time to apply bias) / (2)TR-TP-LV (level to apply bias)
		Settings/Adjustment range	-50 to +50
		Unit	%
		Amount of change per unit	The following shows exceptional setting values: 48: -60% 49: -90% 50: -100% e.g.: enter "-50" --> -50%, enter "47" --> 47% enter "50" --> -100% (DCON Ver.15.11 or later)
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > PPR-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > MOD-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > ENV-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > TR-SW1 to 5 (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-TM (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.11 COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-26

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
REGIST	1	Title	Lead edge margin adjustment (timing to activate (ON) the registration roller clutch)
		Purpose	- When adjusting lead edge margin - Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB
		Note	Note the adjustment value on service label after adjustment.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. 0.1mm image shift toward the lead edge direction by 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
LOOP-CST	1	Title	Registration loop (arch) adjustment at cassette pickup
		Purpose	- In case of paper skew with paper picked up from the cassette - Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB
		Note	Note the adjustment value on service label after adjustment.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	63/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. paper is fed 0.1mm more with 1-increment in the setting value, resulting in increased registration loop (arch) amount.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
LOOP-MF	1	Title	Registration loop (arch) adjustment at manual feed pickup
		Purpose	- In case of paper skew with paper picked up from the manual feeder. - Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB
		Note	Note the adjustment value on service label after adjustment.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	45/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. paper is fed 0.1mm more with 1-increment in the setting value, resulting in increased registration loop (arch) amount.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
ADJ-REFE	1	Title	Left edge margin (side registration) adjustment (with small paper(LTR or smaller)) at the 2nd side (at re-pickup)
		Purpose	- In case of side registration of 2nd side (at re-pickup) with small paper - Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB
		Note	Note the adjustment value on service label after adjustment.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. 0.1mm image shift toward the rear by 1-increment in the setting value.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LOOPREFE	1	Title	Registration loop (arch) adjustment at 2-sided pickup
		Purpose	When skew often occurs on a special paper. Input the value on the service label when executing RAM clear for the DC controller PCB and when replacing the DC controller PCB.
		Note	Note the adjustment value on service label after adjustment.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	45/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. paper is fed 0.1mm more with 1-increment in the setting value, resulting in increased registration loop (arch) amount.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
RG-HF-SP	1	Title	Timing adjustment to activate (ON) the registration clutch (Manual feed pickup)
		Purpose	Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB
		Note	Note the adjustment value on service label after adjustment.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	0.1 mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
ADJ-RE-L	1	Title	Side registration adjustment (large paper (Larger than LTR)) at 2nd side (re-pickup)
		Purpose	- In case of side registration adjustment at 2nd side (re-pickup) with large paper - Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB
		Note	Note the adjustment value on service label after adjustment.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. 0.1mm image shift toward the lead edge direction by 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
LOOP-THK	2	Title	Registration loop (arch) adjustment at thick paper pickup
		Purpose	-
		Note	paper is fed 0.1mm more with 1-increment in the setting value, resulting in increased registration loop (arch) amount.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LOOP-SP	2	Title	Registration loop (arch) adjustment at special paper pickup
		Purpose	-
		Note	
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/at factory shipment	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. Paper is fed 0.1mm more with 1-increment in the setting value, resulting in increased registration loop (arch) amount.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
LOOP-ENV	2	Title	Registration loop (arch) adjustment at envelope pickup from the cassette
		Purpose	-
		Note	Paper is fed 0.1mm more with 1-increment in the setting value, resulting in increased registration loop (arch) amount.
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to 127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/at factory shipment	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. Paper is fed 0.1mm more with 1-increment in the setting value, resulting in increased registration loop (arch) amount.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.12 COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-27

COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MF-A4R	1	Title	Basic numeric value entry for paper width of A4R manual feed tray
		Purpose	- When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB - In case of registering value when replacing paper width detection VR/for the first time
		Note	- When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB. - In case of registering value when replacing paper width detection VR/for the first time, Be sure to execute the following In service Mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CST>A4R. In case of changing the setting value, be sure to note the setting value on main station service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	0 to 1024
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	516/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A4R (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MF-A6R	1	Title	Basic numeric value entry for paper width of A6R manual feed tray
		Purpose	- When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB - In case of registering value when replacing paper width detection VR/for the first time
		Note	- Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB. - In case of registering value when replacing paper width detection VR/for the first time, be sure to execute the following in Service Mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CST>A6R. In case of changing the setting value, be sure to note the setting value on main station service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	0 to 1024
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	175/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A6R (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MF-A4	1	Title	Basic numeric value entry for paper width of A4 manual feed tray
		Purpose	- When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB - In case of registering value when replacing paper width detection VR/for the first time
		Note	- Enter the value on service label when executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing DC controller PCB. - In case of registering value when replacing paper width detection VR/for the first time, be sure to execute the following in Service Mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CST>A4. In case of changing the setting value, be sure to describe the setting value on main station service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	0 to 1024
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	791/Yes
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A4 (Level 1)
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.13 COPIER > ADJUST > FIXING

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-28

COPIER > ADJUST > FIXING			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FX-FL-SP	2	Title	Fine adjustment value entry for fixing film speed when using plain paper
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Enter the value on service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	-3 to 3
		Unit	msec
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
FX-FL-TH	2	Title	Fine adjustment value entry for fixing film speed when using thick paper
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Enter the value on service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	-3 to 3
		Unit	msec
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > FIXING			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FX-FL-LW	2	Title	Fine adjustment value entry for fixing film speed when using plain paper at low speed
		Purpose	When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB
		Note	Enter the value on service label
		Settings/Adjustment range	-3 to 3
		Unit	msec
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.1.14 COPIER > ADJUST > MISC

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-29

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SEG-ADJ	1	Title	Adjustment in separation level between text and photo at text/photo/map mode.
		Purpose	In case of adjusting separation level between text and photo at text/photo/map mode.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-4 to 4
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - To emphasize the document as photo document: increase the setting value - To emphasize the document as text document: decrease the setting value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
K-ADJ	1	Title	Adjustment in black color recognition level at black text processing
		Purpose	In case of emphasizing black color
		Settings/Adjustment range	-3 to 3
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. To emphasize black color in document: increase the setting value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
ACS-ADJ	1	Title	Adjustment in color recognition level at ACS mode.
		Purpose	In case of adjusting color recognition level at ACS mode
		Settings/Adjustment range	-3 to 3
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. - To emphasize the document as B/W document: increase the setting value - To emphasize the document as color document: decrease the setting value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
IMG-DLY	1	Title	Not use

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ACS-EN	2	Title	Adjustment in ACS-judgment area
		Purpose	In case of adjusting ACS-judgment area
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-2 to 2
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. Increasing the setting value makes the judgment area bigger
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
ACS-CNT	2	Title	Adjustment in count area of chromatic color judgment pixel at ACS-judgment
		Purpose	In case of adjusting count area of chromatic color judgment pixel at ACS-judgment
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-2 to 2
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. Increasing the setting value makes the judgment area bigger
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
ACS-EN2	2	Title	Adjustment in ACS-judgment area
		Purpose	In case of adjusting ACS-judgment area (at DF stream reading)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-2 to 2
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	1/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. Increasing the setting value makes the judgment area bigger
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
ACS-CNT2	2	Title	Adjustment in count area of pixels to be judged as chromatic color at ACS judgment (at ADF stream reading mode)
		Purpose	In case of adjusting count area of chromatic color judgment pixels at ACS-CNT2 ACS-judgment (at ADF stream reading mode)
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-2 to 2
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. Increasing the setting value makes the judgment area bigger
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
C1-ADJ-Y	2	Title	Cassette 1 side registration adjustment value entry
		Purpose	- In case of adjusting side registration of paper picked up from cassette 1 - When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB (enter the value on service label)
		Note	Note the value on service label after adjusting this mode
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. The front margin becomes bigger by 0.1mm with 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric figure for laser scan-start position with paper picked up from cassette 1
C2-ADJ-Y	2	Title	Cassette 2 side registration adjustment value entry
		Purpose	- In case of adjusting side registration of paper picked up from cassette 2 - When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB (enter the value on service label)
		Note	Note the value on service label after adjusting this mode
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. The front margin becomes bigger by 0.1mm with 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric figure for laser scan-start position with paper picked up from cassette 2
C3-ADJ-Y	2	Title	Cassette 3 side adjustment registration value entry
		Purpose	- In case of adjusting side registration of paper picked up from cassette 3 - When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB (enter the value on service label)
		Note	Note the value on service label after adjusting this mode
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. The front margin becomes bigger by 0.1mm with 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric figure for laser scan-start position with paper picked up from cassette 3
C4-ADJ-Y	2	Title	Cassette 4 side registration adjustment value entry
		Purpose	- In case of adjusting side registration of paper picked up from cassette 4 - When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB (enter the value on service label)
		Note	Note the value on service label after adjusting this mode
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. The front margin becomes bigger by 0.1mm with 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric figure for laser scan-start position with paper picked up from cassette 4

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MF-ADJ-Y	2	Title	Multi (manual) feeder side registration adjustment value entry
		Purpose	- In case of adjusting side registration of paper picked up from multi (manual) feeder - When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB (enter the value on service label)
		Note	Note the value on service label after adjusting this mode
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/at factory shipment	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. The front margin becomes bigger by 0.1mm with 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric figure for laser scan-start position with paper picked up from multi manual feed tray
DK-ADJ-Y	2	Title	Side paper deck manual feeder side registration adjustment value entry
		Purpose	- In case of adjusting side registration of paper picked up from side paper deck - When executing RAM clear of DC controller PCB/replacing the PCB (enter the value on service label)
		Note	Note the value on service label after adjusting this mode
		Settings/Adjustment range	-128 to +127
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear/at factory shipment	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch. The front margin becomes bigger by 0.1mm with 1-increment in the value
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric figure for laser scan-start position with paper picked up from side paper deck
FRAME-X	2	Title	Zoom fine adjustment value (in vertical scanning direction) entry
		Purpose	In case of adjusting magnification ration in vertical scanning direction
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to 10
		Unit	%
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric value for extended image area in vertical scanning direction
FRAME-Y	2	Title	Zoom fine adjustment value (in horizontal scanning direction) entry
		Purpose	In case of adjusting magnification ration in horizontal scanning direction
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-10 to 10
		Unit	%
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/No
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value (switch with +/- key), and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	Enter the value according to the registered numeric value for extended image area in horizontal scanning direction
IMG-DLY	1	Title	Not in use

17.4.2 FEEDER

17.4.2.1 FEEDER > ADJUST

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-30

FEEDER > ADJUST >			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DOCST	1	Title	Adjusting the original stop position for ADF pickup (original tray pickup)
		Purpose	To adjust the leading edge margin for ADF pickup
		Situation	-
		Note	Delivering the original enables the setting. Be sure to press the OK key to deliver the original. When changing the setting, input the setting on the main station service label.
		Settings/Adjustment range	- 7 to + 7
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.5mm
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/none
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	The larger the value, the smaller the leading edge margin.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	
LA-SPEED	1	Title	Adjusting the original feeding speed in stream reading
		Purpose of use	To adjust the original feeding speed in stream reading mode The larger the setting, the faster the speed (the image reduced).
		Precautions for use	When changing the setting, input the setting on the main station service label.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	- 30 to + 30
		Unit	%
		Amount of change per unit	0.10%
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/none
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. The larger the setting, the faster the speed (the image reduced). The smaller the setting, the slower the speed (the image extended). 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
DOC-LNGH	1	Title	Correcting the paper length in extra length/indeterminate mode with ADF
		Purpose of use	When installing the ADF (to correct errors in detecting the paper length in extra length/indeterminate mode with ADF)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	- 100 to 100
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.1
		Value at RAM clear/ adjustment at factory shipment	0/none
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.4.3 SORTER

17.4.3.1 SORTER > ADJUST

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-31

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PNCH-HLE	1	Title	Adjusting the distance between the paper end and the punch hole position
		Purpose	To adjust the hole position according to the individual user condition
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	- 4 to 2
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode)

17.5.1 COPIER

17.5.1.1 Points To Note When Operate The Service Mode (FUNCTION)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-32

Points to note when executing service mode (FUNCTION)
When executing the item in the following service mode; service mode > FUNCTION, be sure to check that "READY" is displayed at the upper right of the service mode screen and then press [OK].

17.5.1.2 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-33

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TONER-S	1	Title	Stirring the toner in the developing assembly at installation
		Purpose	To stir the toner in the developing assembly at the time of installation
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	During operation: remaining time (sec) / normal completion: 0 / abnormal termination: 0xFFFF
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item. 2) "Check the Developer" is displayed. Check to see that the connector of the developing assembly is connected. 3) Press the OK key to start the operation and perform countdown; after that, it automatically stops.
		OK/NG criteria	After the operation is completed, 'OK' is displayed.
		Time required	Approx. 600 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	"Check the Developer" is displayed to prevent the connector from being disconnected at replacing the developing assembly. This message is unnecessary at the installation in the case of shipment with the developing assembly installed.
STRD-POS	1	Title	Auto adjustment of CCD reading position in stream reading
		Purpose	When installing the DF, or removing the ADF and reinstalling it
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key. - Automatically stopped after auto adjustment is completed. 2) The value in service mode (COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS) is updated. Input this value on the service label.
		OK/NG criteria	After the operation is completed, 'OK' is displayed.
		Time required	Approx. 10 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CARD	1	Title	Setting of the card number of the card reader
		Purpose	When installing the card reader/after replacing the HDD
		Note	At execution, the card management information (department ID and personal identification number) is initialized.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 2001
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item. 2) Input the number of card to use and press the OK key. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CARD-RNG (level 2)
		Additional description and notes	Serial number from the input to the number of cards set in CARD-RNG is the usable card number.
E-RDS	1	Title	Setting to switch Embedded-RDS function use/unused
		Purpose	At using Embedded-RDS
		Note	Be sure to use the following five items; E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR in a set.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Unused 1: Use (transmitting all counter information)
		Unit	0
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR(level 1)
		Additional description and notes	Embedded-RDS is a function of transmitting device information such as device counter/fault/durables and consumables to the server of the sales company using SOAP protocol.
RGW-PORT	1	Title	Specifying the port number of the server of the sales company to be used in Embedded-RDS
		Purpose	At using Embedded-RDS
		Note	Be sure to use the following five items; E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR in a set.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	443
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
COM-TEST	1	Title	Checking the connection with the server of the sales company to be used in Embedded-RDS
		Purpose	When using Embedded-RDS (Try to connect the server of a sales company, judge if the connection is successful, and then display the result.)
		Note	Be sure to set the following five items; E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR in a set.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	During operations: 'ACTIVE' At connection: 'OK' When connection fails: 'NG'
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if the display is changed into 'OK' after 'ACTIVE' (blinking) is displayed.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR(level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
COM-LOG	1	Title	Detailed display of the result of communication test for the server of the sales company to be used in Embedded-RDS
		Purpose	When using Embedded-RDS (to display the information on error in connection with the server of the sales company)
		Note	Be sure to use the following five items; E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR in a set.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Information on year, date, time, error code, details of the error (up to 128 characters)
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	-
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
RGW-ADR	1	Title	Specifying URL of the server of the sales company to be used in Embedded-RDS
		Purpose	When using Embedded-RDS
		Note	- Shift-JIS character strings unavailable - Be sure to use the following five items; E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR in a set.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	URL
		Value at RAM clear	https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item and press URL. 2) Input the URL in the dialog and press the OK key. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR(level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
CNT-DATE	1	Title	Setting of the date of the start of counter transmission to the server of the sales company
		Purpose	When a third party expansion function is activated with Embedded-RDS, set the date of starting the transmission of counter information to the server of the sales company.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	YYYY: year, MM: month, DD: day, HH: hour, MM: min
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	000000000000 (12 digits: YYYYMMDDHHMM)
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item. 2) Input the setting of year, month, day, hour, min and then press the OK key. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is displayed only when a Embedded-RDS third-party expansion function is activated.
CNT-INTV	1	Title	Setting of the interval of transmitting counter to the server of the sales company
		Purpose	Set the interval of transmitting counter information to the server of the sales company when a third party expansion function is activated with Embedded-RDS.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 168 (168 hours=1 week)
		Value at RAM clear	24
		Unit	Hour
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is displayed only when a Embedded-RDS third-party expansion function is activated.

17.5.1.3 COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-34

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DF-WLVL1	1	Title	ADF white level adjustment (platen board cover scan/stream reading scan)
		Purpose	Only when replacing the reader controller PCB, clearing RCON
		Note	Be sure to execute these two items (DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2) simultaneously.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Place a paper that users normally use on the copyboard glass and execute the following item; COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1. : Read the white level in BOOK mode. (Check the transparency of the glass for BOOK mode.) 2) Set a paper that users normally use to the DF and execute the following item; COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2. : Read the white level in DF mode (stream reading). (Check the transparency of the glass for stream reading.) (Read the both sides of chart.) Reading the face: Calculate DFTAR-R Reading the back: Calculate DFTAR2-R
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2 (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-WLVL2	1	Title	ADF white level adjustment (platen board cover scan/stream reading scan)
		Purpose	Only when replacing the reader controller PCB, clearing RCON
		Note	Be sure to execute these two items (DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2) simultaneously.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Place a paper that users normally use on the copyboard glass and execute the following item; COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1. : Read the white level in BOOK mode. (Check the transparency of the glass for BOOK mode.) 2) Set a paper that users normally use and execute the following item; COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2. : Read the white level in DF mode (stream reading). (Check the transparency of the glass for stream reading.) (Read the both sides of chart.) Reading the face: Calculate DFTAR-R Reading the back: Calculate DFTAR2-R
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MTF-CLC	1	Title	Calculating the MTF filter count to be set in ASICS based on the MTF value
		Purpose	[When replacing the CCD] Set the following item; COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > CCDCHNG (new item) when replacing the CCD. Executing this mode calculates again the MTF filter count to be set in ASICS. [When replacing the CCD] When replacing the CCD, set the following value; COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF_M1 to 9 MTF_S1 to 9. Executing this mode calculates again the MTF filter count to be set in ASICS. [When replacing the RCON PCB] Perform backup for RCON (here, MTF2_M1 to 9 MTF2_S1 to 9(MTF value for CCD) and execute this mode to calculate again the MTF filter count to be set in ASICS. [When replacing the DFRCON PCB] Perform backup for RCON (here, MTF_M1 to 9 MTF_S1 to 9(MTF value for CCD) and execute this mode to calculate again the MTF filter count to be set in ASICS.
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	None
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M1 to 9 MTF-S1 to 9 MTF2-M1 to 9 MTF2-S1 to 9 (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	Calculate the MTF filter count to be set in ASICS based on the MTF value of each CCD in COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M1 to 9 MTF-S1 to 9 MTF2-M1 to 9 MTF2-S1 to 9.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DF-WLVL3	1	Title	ADF white level adjustment (platen board cover scan: for 4-line CCD)
		Purpose	Only when replacing the reader controller PCB, clearing RCON
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Scan a blank sheet on the platen and adjust the white level.
DF-WLVL4	1	Title	ADF white level adjustment (DF scan: 4-line CCD)
		Purpose of use	Only when replacing the reader controller PCB, clearing RCON
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Scan a blank sheet in stream reading mode and adjust the white level.

17.5.1.4 COPIER > FUNCTION > DENS

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-35

COPIER > FUNCTION > DENS			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
WHITE-ME	1	Title	Not use.
PD-DENS	1	Title	Not use.
PD-ME	1	Title	Not use.

17.5.1.5 COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-36

COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
D-GAMMA	1	Title	Photosensitive drum resistance measurement control (APVC)
		Purpose	- Adjustment in the case of replacing the drum unit - Identifying causes of copy density auto adjustment (PD-ME) judged as NG - Measured to check wear of the drum
		Note	Execute this mode only when necessary. Do not execute it when unnecessary.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 15
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item and press the OK key. 2) When a sheet of white paper is copied, auto control is completed. 3) Display the measurement in the following; COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS > PRIMARY.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS > PRIMARY (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

17.5.1.6 COPIER > FUNCTION > CST

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-37

COPIER > FUNCTION > CST			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MF-A4R	1	Title	Registering the reference value of paper width for the manual feed tray (A4R width: 210 mm)
		Purpose	When registering the reference value of paper width (A4R) for the manual feed tray
		Note	Execute fine adjustment in the following item; ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4R.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	AD value
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Set a sheet of the appropriate paper on the manual feed tray and adjust the guide to the paper width. 2) Select (highlight) the item. 3) Press the OK key. The value is registered when auto adjustment is completed.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4R (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MF-A6R	1	Title	Registering the reference value of paper width for the manual feed tray (A6R width: 105 mm)
		Purpose	When registering the reference value of paper width (A6R) for the manual feed tray
		Situation	-
		Note	Execute fine adjustment in the following item; ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A6R.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	AD value
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Set a sheet of the appropriate paper on the manual feed tray and adjust the guide to the paper width. 2) Select (highlight) the item. 3) Press the OK key. The value is registered when auto adjustment is completed.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A6R (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MF-A4	1	Title	Registering the reference value of paper width for the manual feed tray (A4 width: 297 mm)
		Purpose	When registering the reference value of paper width (A4) for the manual feed tray
		Situation	-
		Note	Execute fine adjustment in the following item; ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	AD value
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Set a sheet of the appropriate paper on the manual feed tray and adjust the guide to the paper width. 2) Select (highlight) the item. 3) Press the OK key. The value is registered when auto adjustment is completed.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4 (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

17.5.1.7 COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-38

COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
NIP-CHK	1	Title	Output for auto measurement of fixing nip width
		Purpose	When checking the fixing nip width
		Note	This equipment does not perform the adjustment of nip width. This item is used only for checking the nip width.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Execute solid black print with a sheet of A4/LTR size paper. 2) Execute print of approx. 20 sheets of A4 size test sheets. 3) Set the solid black paper of A4/LTR size created in step 1 on the manual feed tray with its solid black side facing down. 4) Select service mode and press the OK key. (Papers on the manual feed tray are fed). 5) The fed paper being caught in the fixing roller stops; and then it is delivered in approx. 10 sec. 6) Check to see that the nip width of the delivered paper is within the standard.
		OK/NG criteria	7.6 to 10.6 mm
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.5.1.8 COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-39

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LCD-CHK	1	Title	Checking dots on the LCD
		Purpose	- When checking the dots on the LCD - When replacing the LCD unit
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key to start the operation. The whole touch panel screen is activated in white - black - red - green - blue in this order. (Check it.) 2) Press the stop key to stop the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LED-CHK	1	Title	Starting the check of LED activation on the control panel
		Purpose	- When checking LED activation on the control panel - When replacing the LCD unit
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key. The LED on the control panel is activated in the order. Press LED-OFF to stop it.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL > LED-OFF (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
LED-OFF	1	Title	Stopping LED activation check on the control panel
		Purpose	To stop the LED activation check on the control panel during executing LCD-CHK
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Press this item during the execution of LED-CHK.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL > LED-CHK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
KEY-CHK	1	Title	Key input check
		Purpose	- Check key input on the control panel. - When replacing the LCD unit
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item to display the input box. 2) Press the key on the control panel to display the input value. See the following chart (KEY-CHK input key and screen display). 3) After checking, press the item to cancel highlighting to stop the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TOUCHCHK	1	Title	Adjusting the coordinate position on the analog touch panel
		Purpose	- Adjust the coordinate position on the analog touch panel. - When replacing the LCD unit
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key. 2) Press the 9 locations of '+' displayed sequentially on the touch panel in the order to complete the adjustment.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

- Input key and screen display of KEY-CHK

T-17-40

Key	**Display on screen**
0 to 9, #, *	0 to 9, #, *
Reset	RESET
Stop	STOP
User mode	USER
Start	START
Power save	STAND BY
Clear	CLEAR
PIN	ID
Help	?
Counter check	BILL

17.5.1.9 COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-41

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CL	1	Title	Specifying a clutch for operation check
		Purpose	To check the operation of the clutch
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 6
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > CL-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CL-ON	1	Title	Starting operation check of the clutch
		Purpose	When operating the clutch specified in COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK>CL
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item and press the OK key to turn on/off in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF for 10 sec -> ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF for 10 sec -> ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > CL (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MTR	1	Title	Specifying a motor for operation check
		Purpose	To check the operation of the motor
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 58 (For details, see the chart shown later.)
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item. 2) Input the code of the motor with keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press MTR-ON to check the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > MTR-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MTR-ON	1	Title	Starting the operation of the motor
		Purpose	When operating the clutch specified in COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK>MTR
		Note	Be sure to check the operation of the bottle motor after removing the toner container. (Operation check performed with the toner container installed may cause toner leak in the machine.)
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item and press the OK key to repeat ON/OFF in the following pattern. ON for 5 sec -> Complete - ON for 10 sec for the hopper stirring motor and the horizontal registration motor -> OFF - The shift tray motor stops at the front/rear HP.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > MTR (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
SL	1	Title	Specifying a solenoid for operation check
		Purpose	To start the operation of the solenoid
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 2 1: Primary fixing web solenoid 2: Secondary fixing web solenoid
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item. 2) Input the code of the solenoid with keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press SL-ON and check the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SL-ON	1	Title	Starting the operation of the solenoid
		Purpose	When operating the clutch specified in COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK>SL
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item and press the OK key to repeat ON/OFF in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF for 10 sec -> ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF for 10 sec -> ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

T-17-42

- Designation numbers and corresponding clutches

1	Manual feed pickup clutch (CL1)	2	Registration clutch (CL2)
3	Developing cylinder clutch (CL3)	4	Duplex feed clutch (iR3225 only) (CL4)
5	Deck feeder clutch (paper deck) (CL1D)	6	Deck pickup clutch (paper deck) (CL2D)

T-17-43

- Designation numbers and corresponding motors

1	Laser scanner motor (M1)	2	Main motor (M2)
3	Fixing motor (M3)	4	No.1 delivery motor (M4)
5	Toner container motor (M5)	6	Cassette 1 pickup motor (M6)
7	Cassette 2 pickup motor (M7)	8	duplex feed motor (iR 3245/3235/3230 only) (M10)
9	Hopper motor (M12)	10	Cassette 3 pickup motor (cassette pedestal) (M51)
11	Cassette 4 pickup motor (cassette pedestal) (M52)	12	Deck main motor (paper deck) (M1D)
13	Deck lifter motor (paper deck) (M2D)	14	No.2 delivery motor (3 way unit) (M1)
15	No.3 delivery motor (3 way unit) (M2)	16	Buffer pass motor (buffer path unit) (M3)

T-17-44

- Designation numbers and corresponding solenoids

1	Cassette 1 pickup solenoid (SL1)	2	Cassette 2 pickup solenoid (SL2)
3	Cassette 3 pickup solenoid (cassette pedestal) (SL51)	4	Cassette 4 pickup solenoid (cassette pedestal) (SL52)
5	Deck pickup roller release solenoid (paper deck) (SL1D)	6	Deck open solenoid (paper deck) (SL2D)
7	No.1 delivery solenoid (3 way unit) (SL1)	8	No.2 delivery solenoid (3 way unit) (SL2)
9	No.3 delivery solenoid (3 way unit) (SL3)		

17.5.1.10 COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-45

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ERR	1	Title	Clearing error code
		Purpose	At error occurrence
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	(Relevant error codes: E000/E001/E002/E003/E005) 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DC-CON	1	Title	Clearing RAM on the DC controller PCB
		Purpose	When clearing RAM on the DC controller PCB
		Note	The contents of RAM are cleared after turning off/on the main power switch.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Make prints for the contents of service mode in COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch. 4) Input the data that has been output in P-PRINT when necessary.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
R-CON	1	Title	Clearing RAM on the reader controller PCB
		Purpose	When clearing RAM on the reader controller PCB
		Note	The setting is cleared after turning off/on the main power switch.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Make prints for the contents of service mode in COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch. 4) Input the data output in P-PRINT when necessary.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
JAM-HIST	1	Title	Clearing jam history
		Purpose	When clearing jam history
		Note	The jam history is cleared after pressing the OK key.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ERR-HIST	1	Title	Clearing error code history
		Purpose	When clearing error code history
		Note	The error code history is cleared after pressing the OK key.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PWD-CLR	1	Title	Clearing the password of 'System Manager' set in user mode
		Purpose	When clearing the password of 'System Manager' set in user mode
		Note	The value of password is cleared after pressing the OK key.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ADRS-BK	1	Title	Clearing the address book data
		Purpose	When clearing the address book data
		Note	The address book data is cleared after turning off/on the main power switch.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CNT-MCON	1	Title	Clearing the counter for servicing counted in the main controller PCB (main)
		Purpose	When clearing the counter for servicing counted in the main controller PCB (main)
		Note	The counter value is cleared after pressing the OK key. (For the counters to clear, see the section of COUNTER mode.)
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COUNTER
		Additional description and notes	-
CNT-DCON	1	Title	Clearing the counter for various services counted in the DC controller PCB
		Purpose	When clearing the counters for various services counted in the DC controller PCB (FIN-STPR, FIN-PDDL, SADDLE, STPL)
		Note	The counter value is cleared after pressing the OK key.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > FIN-STPR (level 1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > FIN-PDDL (level 1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > SADDLE (level 1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > STPL (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
OPTION	1	Title	Mode to return the setting in service mode (OPTION) to the default (the value at RAM clear)
		Purpose	When returning the setting in service mode (OPTION) to the default (the value at RAM clear)
		Note	The setting is cleared after pressing the OK key. The data to clear is the data on the main controller, the DC controller, and the reader controller.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Make prints for the contents of service mode in COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MMI	1	Title	Clearing various settings in user mode
		Purpose	When clearing the following settings in user mode - Backup data for the copy control panel - Common settings backup data - Various backup data excluding FAX
		Note	The setting is cleared after turning off/on the main power switch.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MN-CON	1	Title	Clearing RAM on the main controller PCB SRAM board
		Purpose	When clearing RAM on the main controller PCB SRAM board
		Note	- The contents of RAM is cleared after turning off/on the main power switch. - When executing this item, the data on the SRAM board are all initialized. - File management information on the hard disk is initialized; and then the image data on the hard disk cannot be read. - When executing this item, be sure to inform users that all images in BOX are lost and to get their approval.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Make prints of the contents of service mode in COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. The machine is automatically restarted and 'Turn on the main power switch again' is displayed. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
CARD	1	Title	Clearing the data related to the card ID (department)
		Purpose	When clearing the card ID (department) data
		Note	The data related to the card ID is cleared after turning off/on the main power switch.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ALARM	1	Title	Clearing alarm log
		Purpose	When clearing alarm log
		Note	The alarm log is cleared after turning off/on the main power switch.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SND-STUP	2	Title	Clearing the name of transmission reading settings
		Purpose	When switching the language setting
		Note	The transmission reading setting is cleared after turning off/on the main power switch.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CA-KEY	2	Title	Deleting both the CA certificate and key pair
		Purpose	When service technicians replace or dispose the device
		Note	If a service technician replaces or disposes the device, delete both the CA certificate and key pair. The CA certificate is used for the MEAP application using E-RDS, SSL client connection. The key pair is used in IPP, RUI, and MEAP SSL function. - Without this operation at replacing or disposing the device, the CA certificate and key pair additionally registered by a user remain in the HDD, which may cause security issues. Therefore, the service technicians must perform this operation surely. - After performing the operation, be sure to check that OK is displayed. If NG is displayed, the CA certificate and key pair may have not been deleted correctly; and therefore, they must be deleted surely by such methods as initializing the HDD. - This operation deletes the server certificate and key pair of SSL additionally registered by a user, and should not be executed carelessly. If they are accidentally deleted, the user needs to reinstall a SSL server certificate. If the user has not executed additional install.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) If clearing is normally executed, OK is displayed. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Turning off/on the power supply decrypts the CA certificate and key pair registered as factory settings from the archive (/BOOTDEV/KCMNG) and enables the abovementioned function (E-RDS/SSL function).
LANG-ERR	1	Title	Clearing language-related errors
		Purpose of use	If an error code related to languages occurs after setting other language than the default, execute this item to recover. (The recovery operation changes the language into the default).
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ERDS-DAT	1	Title	Clearing SRAM data of Embedded-RDS
		Purpose of use	To return the SCM value stored in SRAM of Embedded-RDS to the factory setting
		Situation	When executing version-up for bootable in an environment using E-RDS
		Note	- The contents of SRAM are cleared after pressing the OK key. - Be sure to use this item when executing version-up of bootable in an environment using E-RDS. The usage of SRAM in E-RDS varies according to the version; there occurs a data mismatch without clearing SRAM. - The data stored in the SRAM related to E-RDS are E-RDS ON/OFF, port number of the server, Server SOAP URL, schedule of communication with the server (hourly intervals of obtaining the data). The value set in the following items are cleared. - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-ADR - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) If clearing is normally executed, OK is displayed.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS (level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT (level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-ADR (level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
KEY-CLR	2	Title	Clearing the encryption key of the HDD encryption board
		Purpose	When replacing the encryption key of the HDD encryption board (security kit)
		Note	This operation makes all data on HDD unavailable. Formatting HDD is required when turning off/on the main power switch after this operation.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) If clearing is normally executed, OK is displayed. 3) Turn off/on the main power switch. 4) The processing at the time of installing the encryption board is activated and a new encryption key is created.
		OK/NG criteria	Check to see that a new encryption key is created.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.5.1.11 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-46

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SCANLAMP	1	Title	Executing activation of the scanning lamp
		Purpose	When replacing the scanning lamp
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	On operation: 'ACTIVE' displayed At completion: 'OK!' displayed
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to activate the scanning lamp for 3 sec.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	3 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.5.1.12 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-47

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P

Item	Level	Description	
P-PRINT	1	Title	Making prints for the setting in service mode
		Purpose	When executing CLEAR in service mode
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to make prints.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 120 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Output starts in approx. 15 sec.
KEY-HIST	1	Title	Making prints of key input history of the control panel
		Purpose	To make prints for the key input history of the control panel
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to make prints.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 40 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
HIST-PRT	1	Title	Making prints for jam history and error history
		Purpose	To make prints for the jam history and error history
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to make prints.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 30 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRS-DATA	1	Title	Migrating the data received in memory to BOX
		Purpose	To migrate the data received in memory to BOX
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to migrate the data.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
USER-PRT	1	Title	Making prints for user mode
		Purpose	To make prints for user mode
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to make prints.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 35 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Output starts in approx. 3 sec.

LBL-PRNT	1	Title	Making prints for service labels
		Purpose	To make prints for the service labels
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Set the A4/LTR paper on the cassette 1. 2) Select this item. 3) Press the OK key to make prints.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 55 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Output starts in approx. 15 sec.
PRE-EXP	1	Title	Checking activation of the pre-exposure lamp (LED)
		Purpose	To check the activation of the pre-exposure lamp (LED)
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	On operation: 'ACTIVE' displayed At completion: 'OK!' displayed
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press (highlight) the item. 2) Press the OK key to execute each operation for several sec and stop automatically (activated).
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 30 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If activation of the pre-exposure lamp causes a fault in the photosensitive drum, turn the drum.
D-PRINT	1	Title	Making prints for service mode (DISPLAY)
		Purpose	To make prints for service mode (DISPLAY)
		Note	Mode to output only the items on DISPLAY (excluding printouts with P-PRINT/LBL-PRINT/HIST-PRINT and ALARM).
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 45 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ENV-PRT	1	Title	Output of log of the temperature and humidity inside the machine/surface temperature of the fixing roller
		Purpose	To obtain the information on previous temperature inside the machine/fixing temperature in the case of trouble analysis
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	Approx. 30 sec
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PJH-P-1	1	Title	Making prints for print job history with detailed information (for 100 jobs)
		Purpose	To make prints for print job history stored in the copier with detailed information for the latest 100 jobs
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	- Make prints for the print job history with the detailed information not displayed/output on the report print of the job history screen and the print job history in System Monitor > Print > Log > Printer. - The latest 100 print jobs are output; If the number of print job history recorded is less than 100, all recorded jobs are output. - The only difference from PJH-P-2 is the number of job history.

PJH-P-2	1	Title	Making prints for print job history with detailed information (for all jobs)
		Purpose	To make prints for the history of all print jobs stored in the copier with their detailed information
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'OK!' is displayed after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (blinking).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	- Make prints for the print job history with the detailed information not displayed/output on the report print of the job history screen and the print job history in System Monitor > Print > Log > Printer. - The history of all print jobs recorded (up to 5000 jobs for BW3/CL2 machine or newer) is output. - The only difference from PJH-P-1 is the number of job history.

17.5.1.13 COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-48

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DOWNLOAD	1	Title	Switching download mode
		Purpose	To switch the download mode
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Waiting a command: STAND-BY During communication: CONNECTED Completed: HOLD
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key. 2) Enter the download mode; the state becomes waiting a command (waiting being connected). (STAND-BY [or STNDBY] is displayed next to the DOWNLOAD Sub-items.) 3) Execute downloading using Service Support Tool . (CONNECTED is displayed during the communication with PC.) 4) When the communication is completed, HOLD is displayed. (The power supply can be turned off at HOLD.)
		OK/NG criteria	It is OK if 'STAND-BY', 'CONNECTED', and then 'HOLD' are displayed.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CHK-TYPE	1	Title	Specifying partition number for executing HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK
		Purpose	To specify the partition number for executing HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	(0 to 65535) 0: Sector check and recovery of the whole HDD 1: Image storage area 2: General-purpose file storage area 3: Area of storing files for PDL 4: Program file storage area 5: MEAP application 6: Address book/transfer settings 7: MEAP storage data 8: System log storage area
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select this item. 2) Select the number of partition with keypad. 3) Press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR (level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	General-purpose file means the management information of user settings data/log data/PDL spool data/image data, and so on.

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
HD-CHECK	1	Title	Checking the whole HD and executing recovery
		Purpose	To check the whole HD and execute recovery
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Sector check and recovery of the whole HDD 1: Image storage area 2: General-purpose file storage area 3: Area of storing files for PDL 4: Program file storage area
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	First 2 bytes: Progress of check (unit: %) Last 2 bytes: Result (Check only when the first 2 bytes indicate 0%) 0: Normal Other than 0: Abnormal
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
HD-CLEAR	1	Title	Initializing the partition specified in CHK-TYPE
		Purpose	To initialize the partition specified in CHK-TYPE
		Note	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	First 2 bytes: Progress of check (unit: %) Last 2 bytes: Result (Check only when the first 2 bytes indicate 0%) 0: Normal Other than 0: Abnormal
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
DEBUG-1	2	Title	Specifying the timing of writing the log type and log onto the HDD
		Purpose	To specify the timing of writing the log type and log onto the HDD
		Note	Use this item to analyze causes of troubles. Change the setting by following the instructions by Quality Support section.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Invalid 1: Invalid 2: Save SUBLOG. Timing; when Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected 3: Overwrite and save SUBLOG. Timing; when Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Change the setting by following the instructions by Quality Support section.
		OK/NG criteria	Execute the processing to record logs and check to see that the type of log and timing have been changed.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SUBLOG to save with the setting '2' or '3' cannot be output. (Upload it from SST.)
DEBUG-2	2	not use	

17.5.2 FEEDER

17.5.2.1 FEEDER > FUNCTION

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-49

FEEDER > FUNCTION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTR-CHK	1	Title	Operation check for the ADF motor, etc.
		Purpose of use	To perform the operation check the ADF motor, etc.
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0, 1
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press MTR-CHK (to highlight). 2) Input the number of an appropriate part with keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press MTR-ON to check the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > MTR-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
TRY-A4	1	Title	DF original paper width detection auto adjustment (A4 width)
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRY-A5R	1	Title	DF original paper width detection auto adjustment (A5R width)
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRY-LTR	1	Title	DF original paper width detection auto adjustment (LTR width)
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

FEEDER > FUNCTION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TRY-LTRR	1	Title	DF original paper width detection auto adjustment (LTRR width)
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Select (highlight) the item and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FEED-CHK	1	Title	Checking the passage of paper for ADF
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	At set command: 00 : 1-sided pickup/delivery operation 01 : 2-sided pickup/delivery operation 02 : 1-sided pickup/delivery operation with stamp 03 : 2-sided pickup/delivery operation with stamp
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press FEED-CHK (to highlight). 2) Input the number of an appropriate part with keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FEED-ON to check the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > FEED-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-CHK	1	Title	Checking the DF clutch
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 : Pickup clutch
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press CL-CHK (to highlight). 2) Input the number of an appropriate part with keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press CL-ON to check the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > CL-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-ON	1	Title	Starting the clutch operation
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	Press CL-ON and the OK key to start the clutch operation. Press the OK key again to stop the operation. (It automatically stops in 2 sec, however 'STOP' is not displayed unless pressing the OK key again.)
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > CL-CHK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

FEEDER > FUNCTION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FAN-CHK	1	Title	Checking the ADF cooling fan
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Cooling fan
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press FAN-CHK (to highlight). 2) Input the number of an appropriate part with keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FAN-ON to check the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > FAN-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
FAN-ON	1	Title	Starting the fan operation
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press FAN-ON and the OK key to start the fan operation. 2) Press the OK key again to stop the operation. (It automatically stops in approx. 5 sec, however 'STOP' is not displayed unless pressing the OK key again.)
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > FAN-CHK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
SL-CHK	1	Title	Checking the ADF solenoid
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Pressure solenoid 1: Stamp solenoid
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press SL-CHK (to highlight). 2) Input the number of an appropriate part with keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press SL-ON and check the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > SL-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
SL-ON	1	Title	Starting the solenoid operation
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	The operation specification varies according to the model. 1) Press SL (to highlight) and the OK key to start the motor operation. 2) Press the OK key again to stop the operation. (It automatically stops in approx. 5 sec, however 'STOP' is not displayed unless pressing the OK key again.)
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > SL-CHK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

FEEDER > FUNCTION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MTR-ON	1	Title	Starting the motor operation
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	The operation specification varies according to the model. 1) Press MTR-ON (to highlight) and the OK key to start the motor operation. 2) Press the OK key again to stop the operation. (It automatically stops in approx. 5 sec, however 'STOP' is not displayed unless pressing the OK key again.)
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > MTR-CHK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
ROLL-CLN	1	Title	ADF roller cleaning mode
		Purpose of use	Rotate the roller with the motor and attach a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol to the roller to clean it.
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press ROLL-CLN (to highlight). 2) During the roller rotation, attach a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol to the roller to clean it. 3) Reverse ROLL-CLN and press the OK key to stop the roller.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FEED-ON	1	Title	Checking the passage of paper with ADF
		Purpose of use	-
		Situation	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Press FEED-ON and the OK key to start the passage of paper according to the operation mode set in FEED-CHK.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	FEEDER > FUNCTION > FEED-CHK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode)

17.6.1 COPIER

17.6.1.1 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (1/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-50

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MODEL-SZ	1	Title	Selection of standard variable size display and ADF document detection size
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the standard variable size display and ADF document detection size.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: AB type (6R5E) 1: Inch type (5R4E)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Varies depending on the destination.
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value (0, 1) is automatically set in accordance with the destination.
FIX-CLN	2	Title	Setting of the frequency to execute fixing cleaning
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the frequency to execute fixing cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Do not execute cleaning 1: Once every 500 prints, temperature control at 225degC, idling for 60 sec 2: Once every 200 prints, temperature control at 225degC, idling for 60 sec 3: Once every 100 prints, temperature control at 225degC, idling for 60 sec
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-TEMP	1	Title	Selection of the fixing temperature mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the fixing temperature mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: Priority is given to productivity. The controlled temperature is fixed at -20degC. 2: The controlled temperature is fixed at -10degC. 3: The controlled temperature is set to -20degC only when the room temperature is 21degC or higher. 4: The controlled temperature is set to -10degC only when the room temperature is 21degC or higher. 5: The controlled temperature is fixed at +6degC. 6: The controlled temperature is fixed at +10degC. 7: The controlled temperature is fixed at +15degC.
		Unit	degC
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > TEMP-CON (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > BODY > TEMPCON2 (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	This item can be used with the setting of TEMP-CON or TEMPCON2. Example) When "FIX-TEMP=-6degC, TEMP-CON=-6degC" is set, the controlled temperature is offset at -12degC.
CPMKP-SW	2	Title	ON/OFF of sequence to decrease the copy speed
		Purpose of use, When used	Decrease the copy speed to maintain fixing performance.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 : OFF 1 : ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
HUM-SW	2	Title	Selection of the level of transfer current output by the environment sensor
		Purpose of use, When used	Use this item when a failure occurs to the environment sensor. The output level of transfer current is controlled in accordance with the specified environment.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Automatic control by the environment sensor 1: Low humidity 2: Rather low humidity 3: Normal humidity 4: Rather high humidity 5: High humidity Make the setting in accordance with the installation environment. The transfer current output level is controlled in accordance with the specified environment. Low-humidity environment: The transfer current output level increases. High-humidity environment: The transfer current output level decreases.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SCANSLCT	2	Title	ON/OFF of the function to calculate the scanned area from the selected paper size
		Purpose of use, When used	Make ON/OFF setting of the function to calculate the scanned area from the selected paper size.
		Precautions for use	If "1" is set when the paper size is larger than the document size, the scanned area increases and productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (The scanned area is determined based on the document size detected.) 1: ON (The scanned area is determined based on the paper size.)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PASCAL	1	Title	Selection of whether or not to use the contrast potential and gradation correction data calculated by automatic gradation correction control
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether or not to use the contrast potential and gradation correction data calculated by automatic gradation correction control.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TRANS-SW	1	Title	Switching of the transfer high-voltage control mode from fixed current control mode to fixed voltage control mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the transfer high-voltage control mode from fixed current control mode to fixed voltage control mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Do not switch the mode. 1: Fixed voltage mode 1 2: Fixed voltage mode 2
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TEMP-CON	1	Title	Switching of the fixing temperature mode (for thick paper)
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the fixing temperature mode for thick paper.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: Priority is given to productivity. The controlled temperature is fixed at -10degC. 2: The controlled temperature is fixed at -6degC. 3: The controlled temperature is fixed at -3degC. 4: Priority is given to fixing performance. The controlled temperature is fixed at +3degC. 5: The controlled temperature is fixed at +6degC. 6: The controlled temperature is fixed at +10degC. 7: The controlled temperature is fixed at +15degC.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FIX-TEMP (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	This item can be used with the setting of FIX-TEMP. Example) When "FIX-TEMP=-6degC, TEMP-CON=-6degC" is set, the controlled temperature is offset at -12degC.

17.6.1.2 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (2/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-51

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PRIAC-SW	1	Title	Mode of measures for drum charging failure
		Purpose of use, When used	Use this item when an image failure occurs due to drum charging failure.
		Precautions for use	The setting value is cleared to 0 in the following cases. - when APVC is executed after a new drum unit is installed - when COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > D-GAMMA is executed
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Default 1: +50 uA 2: +100 uA
		Unit	uA
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > D-GAMMA (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TEMPCON2	1	Title	Switching of the fixing temperature mode (for plain paper, manual feed tray)
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the fixing temperature mode when plain paper is fed from the manual feed tray.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: Priority is given to productivity. The controlled temperature is fixed at -10degC. 2: The controlled temperature is fixed at -6degC. 3: The controlled temperature is fixed at -3degC. 4: Priority is given to fixing performance. The controlled temperature is fixed at +3degC. 5: The controlled temperature is fixed at +6degC. 6: The controlled temperature is fixed at +10degC. 7: The controlled temperature is fixed at +15degC.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FIX-TEMP (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	This item can be used with the setting of FIX-TEMP. Example) When "FIX-TEMP=-6degC, TEMPCON2=-6degC" is set, the controlled temperature is offset at -12degC.
SENS-CNF	2	Title	Setting of the document detection sensor placement
		Purpose of use	This item is used when the RAM contents on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or after the PCB has been replaced. The setting of document detection size is selected in accordance with the document sensor placement.
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: AB type 1: Inch type 2: A type
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Varies depending on the destination / 0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. In the case of machines destined for inch or A type manufacturers, be sure to set "1" (Inch type) or "2" (A type) after the RAM contents on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or after the PCB has been replaced.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CONFIG	1	Title	Switching of country/region, language, destination and paper size type
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the multiple system software applications on the hard disk, and switch the country/region, language, destination and paper size type.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	XXYYZZAA XX: Country/region (example: JP = Japan) YY (*): Language (example: ja = Japanese) ZZ (*): Destination (example: 00 = CANON) AA: Paper size type (00 = AB type, 01 = Inch type, 02 = A type, 03 = Inch/AB type) * The setting cannot be changed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Varies depending on the destination.
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select <CONFIG>. 2) Select the desired item. 3) Press the +/- keys. Each time one of the keys is pressed, the setting is switched. 4) Display the desired setting, and press the OK key. 5) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
RAW-DATA	2	Title	Received data print mode selection
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to identify whether the trouble in the images received is due to the received image data or image processing when such trouble has occurred.
		Precautions for use	The setting must be returned to "0" after the trouble has been remedied.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal printing operation 1: No image processing; raw data printed as is
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SHARP	2	Title	Change of the sharpness level (Setting of the center value)
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the sharpness level.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 5
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	3
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COTDPC-D	2	Title	Toner usage reduction mode (Decrease of potential (VD))
		Purpose of use, When used	Reduce toner usage.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No reduction 1: Reduction by approx. -10% 2: Reduction by approx. -20% 3: Reduction by approx. -30%
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RMT-LANG	2	Title	Switching of the language on remote UI
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the language on remote UI.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Varies depending on the destination.
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Display the desired setting by pressing the +/- keys, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
IFAX-LIM	2	Title	Restriction on number of lines printed during IFAX reception
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when preventing the machine from keeping on printing the attached file in case where error mails have been received, mail parsing has failed, etc. The number of lines printed during IFAX reception is restricted.
		Precautions for use	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	0 to 999 0: No mail text is created. 999: No restrictions
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	500
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If "0" has been set, only the header and footer will be printed out on one sheet when mail containing only the main text and no attached files has been received.

17.6.1.3 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (3/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-52

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DF-BLINE	2	Title	Measures for black streaks due to dirt on the platen roller at ADF stream reading
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when black streaks occur due to dirt on the platen roller at ADF stream reading.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Measures are not implemented. 1: Measures are implemented.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TEMP-TBL	1	Title	Change of the fixing regulation temperature table
		Purpose of use, When used	To change the fixing regulation temperature table.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: A normal fixing regulation temperature table is used. (190degC) 1: A fixing regulation temperature table for a temperature approx. 5degC lower than the normal table is used. (185degC) 2: A fixing regulation temperature table for a temperature approx. 10degC lower than the normal table is used. (180degC)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
W/SCNR	1	Title	Reader availability setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether the reader is available or not.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Reader is not available. 1: Reader is available.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If the reader is detected as being available at startup, "1" is set automatically.
FIX-SMR	2	Title	Measures for smear in fixing operation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used for a faulty image caused by smear in fixing operation.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: The absolute value for developing bias is decreased by 20V. 2: The absolute value for developing bias is decreased by 40V. 3: Reserve
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FAN-EXTN	2	Title	Fan drive extension mode after completion of a job
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SMTPTXPN	2	Title	Change of the SMTP transmission port number
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the SMTP transmission port number.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	25
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SMTPRXPN	2	Title	Change of the SMTP reception port number
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the SMTP reception port number.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	25
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
POP3PN	2	Title	Change of the POP reception port number
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the POP reception port number.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	110
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RUI-DSP	1	Title	Restriction on copy function option display using remote UI (to comply with the disability laws)
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display the copy function options using the remote UI (to comply with the disability laws)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The copy screen is not displayed for the remote UI. 1: The copy screen is displayed for the remote UI.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.4 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (4/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-53

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ORG-LGL	2	Title	Setting of special paper sizes (LGL type) which cannot be recognized when ADF is used
		Purpose of use, When used	Set special paper sizes which cannot be recognized in the ADF.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Legal-R 1: Oficio-R, Bolivia 2: Oficio-R, Argentina 3: Legal-R, Argentina 4: Oficio-R, Mexico
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ORG-LTR	2	Title	Setting of special paper sizes (LTR type) which cannot be recognized when ADF is used
		Purpose of use, When used	Set special paper sizes which cannot be recognized in the ADF.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Letter 1: Exclusive 2: South Korean government agency paper 3: Argentine letter 4: Government letter
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ORG-LTRR	2	Title	Setting of special paper sizes (LTR-R type) which cannot be recognized when ADF is used
		Purpose of use, When used	Set special paper sizes which cannot be recognized in the ADF.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Letter-R 1: Oficio-R 2: Oficio-R, Ecuador
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ORG-LDR	2	Title	Setting of special paper sizes (LDR type) which cannot be recognized when ADF is used
		Purpose of use, When used	Set special paper sizes which cannot be recognized in the ADF.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Ledger-R (11x17) 1: Argentine letter
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ORG-B5	2	Title	Setting of special paper sizes (B5 type) which cannot be recognized when ADF is used
		Purpose of use, When used	Set special paper sizes which cannot be recognized in the ADF.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: JIS B5 1: South Korean government agency paper
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
UI-COPY	2	Title	Restriction on 'Copy' screen display
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether the 'Copy' screen is to be displayed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Copy screen is not displayed. 1: Copy screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-BOX	2	Title	Restriction on 'BOX' screen display
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether the 'BOX' screen is to be displayed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: BOX function not provided (and no storage possible using PDL to Box) 1: BOX function provided 2: BOX function provided (with restrictions; no display on operation unit screen or remote UI, but storage possible using PDL to Box)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-SEND	2	Title	Restriction on 'SEND' screen display
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether the 'SEND' screen is to be displayed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: SEND screen is not displayed. 1: SEND screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-FAX	2	Title	Selection of whether to display the FAX screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether the FAX screen is to be displayed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: FAX screen is not displayed. 1: FAX screen is not displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.5 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (5/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-54

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
NEGA-GST	2	Title	Setting for addition of pre-exposure sequence
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when a drum negative ghost occurs. Pre-exposure operation is performed by laser at initial rotation or between sheets.
		Precautions for use	The operation is performed at the following timing between sheets. Plain paper: Consecutive 32 prints (A4-based conversion) Thick paper, special paper: Consecutive 16 prints (A4-based conversion)
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: Pre-exposure operation is performed at initial multiple rotations. 2: Pre-exposure operation is performed at initial multiple rotations and between sheets.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FTPTXPN	2	Title	Setting of the SEND destination port (FTP) number
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the SEND destination port (FTP) number.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	21
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NW-SPEED	2	Title	Selection of the data transfer speed for service network connection
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the data transfer speed for service network connection.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Automatic 1: 100Base-TX 2: 10Base-T
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STS-PORT	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of the T.O.T. synchronous type status communication port
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when Service NAVI is used. To turn ON/OFF the Inquiry/Response (synchronous) type status communication port in T.O.T.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON When Service NAVI is used, set to "1" to connect the PC and machine using a crossover cable.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CMD-PORT (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	T.O.T(TUIF over TCP) A communication protocol (Canon's own protocol) which is used for the presentation (UI) of built-in applications and for communication with applications inside the machine such as COPY/SEND/BOX.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CMD-PORT	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of the T.O.T. asynchronous type command communication port
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when Service NAVI is used. To turn ON/OFF the asynchronous type command communication port in T.O.T.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON When Service NAVI is used, set to "1" to connect the PC and machine using a crossover cable.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > STS-PORT (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	T.O.T(TUIF over TCP) A communication protocol (Canon's own protocol) which is used for the presentation (UI) of built-in applications and for communication with applications inside the machine such as COPY/SEND/BOX.

17.6.1.6 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (6/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-55

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MODELSZ2	2	Title	Setting of global support for document size detection while the copyboard cover use
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when supporting individual users (mixed stacking of AB/Inch type documents). Turn ON/OFF the global support for document size detection while the copyboard cover is being used.
		Precautions for use	This item must not be normally used. When both AB and Inch type documents are stacked together, a separate document size sensor (photosensor) is required for the document size to be detected properly.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal (detection operation by detected size for each destination) 1: Detection of stacking of both AB and Inch type documents
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When the item is set to '1', the document size is not detected while the platen is opened or closed. (The document lighting lamp does not light.)
SZDT-SW	2	For future expansion	
DFDST-L1	1	Title	Dirt detection level adjustment (between documents) during ADF use
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when black streaks caused by dirt have occurred or when users have filed complaints. Adjust the dirt detection level in the dirt detection correction control which is exercised between documents.
		Precautions for use	Increase the value when dirt fails to be detected, resulting in black streaks. However, if the value is increased too much, even small-sized dirt of the kind which does not appear on the image will also be detected, and the cleaning instruction screen may appear frequently. Reduce the value if users complain because the cleaning instruction screen which appears when dirt is detected is displayed frequently. Conversely, if the value is reduced too much, black streaks may appear on the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255 When the value is reduced, it becomes harder for dirt to be detected. When the value is increased, it becomes easier for even small-sized dirt to be detected. When '0' is set, the correction control function used when dirt is detected is set to OFF.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	93
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If dirt is present, black streaks will appear on the images. For this reason, when dirt is detected, image correction is executed to prevent the occurrence of black streaks.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DFDST-L2	1	Title	Dirt detection level adjustment (upon job completion) during ADF use
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when black streaks caused by dirt have occurred or when users have filed complaints. Adjust the dirt detection level in the dirt detection correction control which is exercised when jobs have been completed.
		Precautions for use	Increase the value when dirt fails to be detected, resulting in black streaks. However, if the value is increased too much, even small-sized dirt of the kind which does not appear on the image will also be detected, and the cleaning instruction screen may appear frequently. Reduce the value if users complain because the cleaning instruction screen which appears when dirt is detected is displayed frequently. Conversely, if the value is reduced too much, black streaks may appear on the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255 When the value is reduced, it becomes harder for dirt to be detected. When the value is increased, it becomes easier for even small-sized dirt to be detected. When '0' is set, the correction control function used when dirt is detected is canceled.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	80
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If dirt is present, black streaks will appear on the images. For this reason, when dirt is detected, image correction is executed to prevent the occurrence of black streaks.
DST-POS	1	Title	Use it to switch the original reading position when the ADF is in use.
		Purpose of use, When used	Use it to set the original read position in the presence of dust on the glass surface.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Scanning position of 2.5mm (3 points) and 6.5 mm (nomal position) 1: Fixed scanning position of 2.5mm (3 points) 2: Fixed scanning position of 6.5mm
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.7 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (7/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-56

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
NS-CMD5	2	Title	Restriction on use of CRAM-MD5 authentication system during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict the use of the CRAM-MD5 authentication system during SMTP authentication.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated. CRAM-M5 (Challenge Response Authentication Mechanism - Message Digest 5) is a user authentication system which provides encryption so that the password character string will not pass through the network in its original form.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
NS-GSAPI	2	Title	Restriction on use of GSSAPI authentication system during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict the use of the GSSAPI authentication system during SMTP authentication.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated. GSSAPI (Generic Security Services Application Programming Interface) is a user authentication system.
NS-NTLM	2	Title	Restriction on use of NTLM authentication system during SMTP authentication.
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict the use of the NTLM authentication system during SMTP authentication.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated. NTLM (NT LanMan) is a user authentication system which is shared and used by the Windows NT family.
NS-PLNWS	2	Title	Restriction on use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to restrict the use of PLAIN and LOGIN authentication, which authenticate plaintext, during SMTP authentication in an environment where communication packets are encrypted.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated.
NS-PLN	2	Title	Restriction on use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication, which authenticate plaintext, during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to restrict the use of PLAIN and LOGIN authentication, which authenticate plaintext, during SMTP authentication in an environment where communication packets are not encrypted.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
NS-LGN	2	Title	Restriction on use of LOGIN authentication during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict the use of LOGIN authentication during SMTP authentication.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated.
MEAP-PN	2	Title	Change of the HTTP port number of MEAP application
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the HTTP port number of the MEAP application
		Precautions for use	Do not use port number"8080" when Print Server is connected. If the port is used, you can not see the page for RUI of the device with MEAP authentication application. (port "8080" is reserved for redirecting from EFI controller to device.)
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	8000
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.8 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (8/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-57

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SVMD-ENT	2	Title	Switching of procedure for establishing service mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the procedure for establishing the service mode in order to prevent the leakage of information.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: [Initial settings/registration]-> Press [2] and [8] at the same time. -> [Initial settings/registration] 1: [Initial settings/registration]]-> Press [4] and [9] at the same time. -> [Initial settings/registration]
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ENVP-INT	1	Title	Setting of history retrieval cycle for temperature/humidity inside machine and fixing roller surface temperature
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when analyzing trouble. To set the cycle for retrieving (COPIER>DISPLAY>ENVRNT) the history of the temperature/humidity inside the machine and the fixing roller surface temperature.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 480
		Unit	1 min
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	60
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT
		Additional description and notes	-
SSH-SW	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of SSH server function
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the SSH server function ON and OFF. (used in Japanese machines only; not used in overseas machines)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SSH=Secure Shell This program is for logging in to other computers over a network, executing commands for machines in remote locations and for moving files to other machines. Since the data flowing through the network is encrypted, series of operations can be performed safely even over the Internet.
RMT-LGIN	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of remote login operation to SSH server
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to allow remote login to the debug console of the SSH server from a remote host (SSH client: DA (digital accessory)).
		Precautions for use	Valid only when the COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW(Level 2) setting is '1' (ON).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Remote login to the SSH server is not allowed. 1: Remote login to the SSH server is allowed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-
RE-PKEY	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of SSH server key regeneration.
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the regeneration of the server key ON and OFF. (used in Japanese machines only; not used in overseas machines)
		Precautions for use	- Valid only when the COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW (Level 2) setting is '1' (ON) - When '1' (regenerate) is set, host machine start up may take about 3 to 4 minutes longer than usual. See the Additional description and notes.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The SSH server pair key is not regenerated at host machine startup. 1: The SSH server pair key is regenerated at host machine startup.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	When '1' (regenerate) is set, the SSH server host regenerates the pair key (secret key and public key) when the power is set to OFF and back to ON, and it outputs the key pair and saves it on the hard drive. It may take about 3 to 4 minutes longer than usual at host machine startup to execute this processing.
U-NAME	2	For future expansion (The setting must not be changed.)	
U-PASWD	2	For future expansion (The setting must not be changed.)	

17.6.1.9 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (9/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-58

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DA-PORT	2	Title	Port setting when DA is installed
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when DA is installed. (used in Japanese machines only, not used in overseas machines) Set the port for communication with the DA (Digital Accessory).
		Precautions for use	When this item is set to '1', the following items are also set to ON. COPIER > OPTION > BODY > STS-PORT > CMD-PORT > SSH-SW > DA-PORT
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Closed 1: Opened (when DA is installed)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	For future expansion (The setting must not be changed.)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DA-CNCT	2	Title	WPGW connection setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the WPGW connection. (used in Japanese machines only, not used in overseas machines)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	WPGW : Workplace Gateway
CHNG-STS	2	Title	Setting of T.O.T. status connection port number
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when Service NAVI is used. Set the number of the port used for the status connection in T.O.T.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	20010
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CHNG-CMD	2	Title	Setting of T.O.T. command connection port number
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when Service NAVI is used. Set the number of the port number for the command connection in T.O.T.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	20000
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MEAP-DSP	2	Title	Setting to prohibit screen display switching from MEAP screen to standard screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Prohibit the switching of the screen display from the MEAP screen to the standard screen (COPY/ SEND/BOX screen, etc.).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Switching enabled (the display can transfer to the standard screen) 1: Switching disabled (the display cannot transfer to the standard screen)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Even when '1' is set, the display will transfer to the standard screen when an error, jam or alarm has occurred.
ANIM-SW	2	Title	Setting to prohibit switching of display to error or jam screen while the MEAP application is running
		Purpose of use, When used	Prohibit the switching of the display to the error or jam screen while the MEAP application is running
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Switching enabled (the warning screen is displayed) 1: Switching disabled (the warning screen is not displayed)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	Even when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP is set to '1', the display will transfer to the standard screen to display the warning screen if an error, jam or alarm has occurred. When this item is set to '1' and then an error, jam and alarm has occurred: - Screen transfer to the standard screen will be prohibited. - A warning display urging the user to contact the service engineer in charge appears on the MEAP screen.
BASE-SW	1	Title	Switching from MEAP-Full model to Base model
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when trouble caused by the MEAP application has occurred. Switch from the MEAP-Full model to the Base model.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (Base model) 1: ON (Full model) Set to '0' when restricting to the operation of the MEAP application for the purposes of trouble analysis.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The setting of this item can be changed only from '1' to '0'.
MEAP-SSL	2	Title	Setting of HTTPS port for MEAP
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the port of the HTTPS server when SSL is used by HTTP of MEAP.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	8443
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CCD-TYPE	2	Title	Setting of CCD unit type
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Initial type CCD unit 1: Modified CCD unit
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.10 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (10/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-59

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FIX-LOW	1	Title	Fixing performance improvement mode in a low-temperature environment
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when a fixing failure has occurred in a low-temperature environment.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: Low temperature fixing performance improvement mode is set to ON.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SC-L-CNT	1	Title	Setting of scan counter threshold for identifying paper size (large/small)
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the scan counter threshold for identifying paper size (large/small).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: B4-size sheets are counted as small size sheets. 1: B4-size sheets are counted as large size sheets.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
KSIZE-SW	2	Title	Switch supporting Chinese paper (K sizes)
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when K size paper is used. Detect and display Chinese paper (8K, 16K).
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MODEL-SZ has been set to '0' (AB type).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: K size paper is not supported. 1: K size paper is supported.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MODEL-SZ
		Additional description and notes	8K paper: 270mm x 390mm / 16K paper: 270mm x 195mm

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LPD-PORT	2	Title	LPD port number setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the LPD port number.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	515
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When printing over a network, the LPD port serves as the network port for TCP/IP communication.
ORG-B4	2	Title	Setting of special paper size which cannot be recognized when using ADF
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: JIS B4-R 1: FOLIO-R
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PDF-RDCT	2	Title	Switch to select whether to reduce and send data when receiving and transferring images (PDF transmission)
		Purpose of use, When used	When creating PDF files of images which have been received by iFAX and sending them as email and files, this item is used to select whether to reduce the data before sending it.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Images are not reduced. 1: Images are reduced.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
REBOOTSW	2	Title	Reboot switch when E240 error has occurred
		Purpose of use, When used	When the E240 error (communication error between the main controller and DC controller) has occurred, the drive system may still continue operating. Consequently, the machine is designed to reboot automatically. When it is rebooted, however, the spooled print jobs will be cleared. This mode is used to prevent this from happening.
		Precautions for use	- This function is not normally used. - When the function is used because the user has asked for it to be provided, the user must be given a thorough explanation (that the drive system may continue operating when the E240 error has occurred).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Automatic rebooting when the E240 error has occurred 1: No automatic rebooting when the E240 error has occurred
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
VP-ART	2	Title	Line art process change switch
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the outlining process of line art in scalable PDF files.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VP-TXT	2	Title	Text vectorizing process change switch
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the vectorizing process of text in scalable PDF files.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.11 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (11/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-60

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
UI-PRINT	2	Title	Print job screen display restriction
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display the print job screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The print job screen is not displayed. 1: The print job screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
WUEV-SW	2	Title	Sleep notice selector switch
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to give sleep notice to the applications (such as imageWARE) on the network when the host machine has transferred to the sleep mode or when its operation has been restored from the sleep mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Sleep notice is given. 1: No sleep notice is given.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-INT (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
WUEV-INT	2	Title	Sleep notice interval setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the sleep notice interval when giving sleep notice.
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW is set to '0'
		Settings and adjustment ranges	60 to 65535
		Unit	Seconds
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	600
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-
WUEV-POT	2	Title	Sleep notice destination port number setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the port number on the sleep notice destination PC when giving sleep notice.
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW is set to '0'
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	11427
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-
WUEV-RTR	2	Title	Sleep notice range setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the maximum number of routers to the sleep notice destinations through which the sleep notice is to be given.
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW is set to '0'
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 254
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	3
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-
SJB-UNW	2	Title	Switch for selecting number of reserved print jobs among secure print jobs
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the upper limit for the number of reserved jobs among the secure print jobs.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 50 jobs 1: 90 jobs
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
UI-RSCAN	2	Title	Remote scan screen display restriction
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display the remote scan screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The remote scan screen is not displayed. 1: The remote scan screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-EPRNT	2	Title	Expanded print screen display restriction
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display the expanded print screen (print screen for the print server).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The expanded print screen is not displayed. 1: The expanded print screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-WEB	2	Title	Web browser screen display restriction
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display the web browser screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The web browser screen is not displayed. 1: The web browser screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.12 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (12/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-61

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
WEBV-SW	2	Title	Switch for prohibiting use of WEBDAV function
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used as a means to reduce the amount of the used memory in the host machine when the WEBDAV function is not used. Prohibit the use of the WEBDAV function.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Use of the WEBDAV function is allowed. 1: Use of the WEBDAV function is prohibited. When '1' is set, the following items related to WEBDAV function will not be displayed in the user mode: - Destination table specifications setting > destination registration > files > protocol > "WEBDAV" - Transmission specifications setting > "Use chunk division transmission for WEBDAV transmission"
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The WEBDAV function is provided in the host machine as a standard accessory.
FACT-DEF	2	Not used	
CARD-RNG	2	Title	Setting of number of card departments (number of cards) usable with card reader
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the number of card departments (number of cards) which can be used when the card reader is used.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1000
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
WUEN-LIV	2	Title	Setting of start time after sleep notice from network
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the time when the machine is started in the sleep mode from the network without being accompanied by the introduction of any jobs, until the host machine next transfers to the sleep mode.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	10 to 600
		Unit	Seconds
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	15
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MAILYEAR	2	Title	Entry of year, month and date in a subject and file name for email transmission
		Purpose of use, When used	Automatically add the year, month and date, time, and allocation number at the end of the character string specified in a subject and file name for email transmission.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Year, month and date, time, and allocation number are not added. 1: Year, month and date, time, and allocation number are added.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SEND-AUT	2	Title	Switching of user authentication to use SEND function
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when executing user authentication to use SEND function.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The guest button is not displayed. 1: The guest button is displayed. When this item is set to '1', the guest button is displayed in the MEAP login screen. However, pressing this button will allow a user who does not use SEND function to login without using an ID and password.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	After a user logs in using the guest button, SEND function cannot be used.
SJOB-CL	1	Title	Switch for enabling scan job cancellation by logout
		Purpose of use, When used	Cancel scan jobs in operation if logout is initiated.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Canceling is disabled. 1: Canceling is enabled.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	- Scan jobs are jobs upon completion of the scanning operation. Scan jobs cannot be canceled while scanning is underway. - When the job is canceled, it will be handled in the same manner as cancellation by the user and will be recorded in communication records.
DHCP-12	2	Title	Selecting whether to enable DHCP option 12 requests
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to prevent the inclusion of option 12 and option 81 in the DHCP packets in an environment where the packets passing over the network are monitored. Enable host name (option 12) inquiries using option 55 of DHCP. *DHCP(Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DHCP-81	2	Title	Selecting whether to enable DHCP option 81 requests
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to prevent the inclusion of option 12 and option 81 in the DHCP packets in an environment where the packets passing over the network are monitored. Enable the dynamic changes in the IP addresses made by option 81 of DHCP.
		Precautions for use	When this item is set to '1' and the dynamic DNS setting of the user mode is set to ON, the dynamic changes in the IP addresses made by option 81 of DHCP take effect.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.13 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (13/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-62

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PT3-INEX	2	Title	Enable switch for paper brand Type 3 import/export
		Purpose of use, When used	Enable the paper brand Type 3 information to be handled by the following functions: - Import/export using remote UI - Distribution of equipment information - Import/export from iWEMC
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not enabled 1: Enabled
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IFX-CHIG	1	Title	Setting of operation by number of characters in iFAX incoming mail text
		Purpose of use, When used	To ensure that mail text during iFAX reception is not printed or transmitted when it has fewer characters than the number set.
		Precautions for use	Mail text consisting solely of the carriage return codes is sometimes sent by an another machine, and the machine will print a blank sheet in a case like this. The printing of blank sheets can be eliminated when a value of '2' or so is set for this item. However, users should be urged to exercise caution since mail text containing fewer the number of characters than the number set will no longer be printed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999 0: No mail text is ignored.
		Unit	Number of characters
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	- Concerning operation when a setting other than '0' is used If the incoming mail is determined to have no main text and no attached TIFF files are present, one page bearing only headers and footers will be printed and transmitted. - Chinese characters ('kanji') are calculated at the rate of 2 bytes per character, and the carriage return codes and other control codes are included in the number of characters.
USB-RCNT	2	Title	Automatic connection setting during USB device disconnection
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to initiate automatic connection when USB devices are disconnected.
		Precautions for use	If this item is set to '1' and a USB hub is provided, all the devices will be re-connected when one of them has been disconnected.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No automatic connection 1: Automatic connection When this item is set to '0', a USB device cannot be used once it has been removed. To re-connect the device, the power of the machine must be set to OFF and then back ON. When this item is set to '1', a USB device can be automatically re-connected even when it has been removed and re-installed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
BOX-BKUP	1	Title	Switch to permit restoration of BOX backup data
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used for replacement. Permit restoration of the backup data of other models (some models).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Restoration is permitted when the target model is the same model. 1: Restoration is permitted when the target model is a one-generation succeeding model.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The setting value returns to '0' when restoration has been successfully completed.
RAG-CONT	1	Title	Setting of the level of fixing smear control mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the level of fixing smear control mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DNSTRANS	1	Title	DNS transfer priority switch
		Purpose of use, When used	If both IPv6 and IPv4 are used and the DNS server supports IPv4, timeout occurs when DNS query is executed by giving priority on IPv6. This item is used to give priority on DNS query by IPv4 in a case like this. Determine the priority level on the protocol to be used for DNS query (IPv4/IPv6) based on the value of DNStrans.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: IPv4 1: IPv6
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MIBCOUNT	2	Title	Charge counter MIB switch
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used not to display the charge counter MIB. Change the range of the charge counter MIB scope.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: All charge counter MIBs are displayed. 1: All charge counter MIBs displayed on the LUI are displayed. 2: No charge counter MIBs are displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
RMT-CNSL	1	Title	Switching of ON/OFF of MEAP Remote Console
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to acquire FunctionCompose logs. Switch ON/OFF setting of MEAP Remote Console.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON When acquiring FunctionComposer logs, set this item to '1' and acquire logs by Remote Console.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEAP-PRI	2	Title	Change of MEAP task priority
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when increasing MEAP processing performance.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.14 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (14/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-63

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PDLEVCT1	2	Title	Setting of event skipping with PDL continuous jobs
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to set event skipping with PDL continuous jobs.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No event skipping 1: Skip target 1 2: Skip target 2 The performance is improved in the ascending order of 0->1->2. When the COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CT-TIME value has been increased and trouble has occurred in parts of the screen displays, set this mode to '0' (no event skipping) to eliminate the trouble.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PROXYRES	2	Title	Switch for selecting whether to provide a proxy response to inquiries from Windows
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used not to provide a proxy response so that accurate status responses are provided for inquiries from Windows during sleep mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: A proxy response is not provided. 1: A proxy response is provided.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-PROT	1	Title	Mode of measures for jams of paper absorbing moisture
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when jams occur in paper absorbing moisture.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON The mode of measures for jams of paper absorbing moisture (initial rotation period is specified to be longer than the normal period) becomes valid when all the following conditions are satisfied. - FIX-PROT="1" - FIX-TEMP=-10degC or -20degC - The room temperature is higher than 21degC.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-OFST	1	Title	Mode of measures for dirt on fixing film
		Purpose of use, When used	When a small number of large-size sheets passed through the machine after small-size sheets continuously passed through, dirt occurs on the edge of film, which may cause the life of fixing film to be shortened. To prevent this symptom, this mode is used to stop feed operation of subsequent sheets until the fixing sub thermistor detection temperature becomes lower than the specified temperature.
		Precautions for use	Productivity may decrease depending on the degree of temperature increase on the edge.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Start passing sheets at 240degC or less. 1: Start passing sheets at 180degC or less. 2: Start passing sheets at 190degC or less. 3: Start passing sheets at 200degC or less. This setting becomes valid when all of the following conditions are satisfied. - FIX-OFST="1" - When the small-size paper is switched to the large-size paper, the difference of temperature between the fixing main thermistor and the sub thermistor is higher than the specified temperature.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
WOLTRANS	1	Title	Setting of the protocol for recovery from sleep mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Determine the protocol for recovery from sleep mode based on the WOL(Wake On LAN)trans value.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: wsd&snmp 2: wsd&cpca 3: cpca&snmp
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	One of the requirements for recovery from sleep mode is to receive a specific network packet. When the number of network protocols supported by the device increases, this specific network packet transfers to the network packet supporting a new network protocol. However, in an environment where the device is actually used, there is a possibility that the existing network protocol will be used instead of a new network protocol.
TCPDLACK	1	Title	Switch for selecting whether to enable/disable the delay acknowledgment function
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to enable/disable the delay acknowledge function. This item is used to disable the delay acknowledge function when the network data transfer performance level is decreased due to delay acknowledge in the 10M environment, etc.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1 When this item is set to '0', the delay acknowledge function of TCP is disabled.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
802XTOUT	1	Title	IEEE802.1X authentication timeout value
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when a response is made from the authentication server at slow or fast timing. Change the time to wait a response from the authentication server when 802.1X authentication is performed by the device.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	10 to 120
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	30
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IKERETRY	1	Title	Number of IKE retries
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the number of retries when no response is made from the receiver when transmitting IKE packets.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	Number of retries
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SPDALDEL	2	Title	Initialization of the SPD value
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to initialize all SPD values when mismatches have occurred in the controlled SPD values at the time of increasing the IPSec board.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SPD values are controlled when the IPSec board is used. When mismatches have occurred in SPD values, the machine can usually recover only by executing SRAM clear. By using this item, SPD values can be initialized without executing SRAM clear.

17.6.1.15 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (15/15)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-64

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
NCONF-SW	1	Title	ON/OFF switch of the Network Configurator function
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the user asks for the item to be provided. This item is used to prevent attack from a remote machine via network when the Network Configurator function is not needed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The Network Configurator function is used to communicate with NetSpot Device Installer, etc. and the network settings can be changed from the remote machine.
ABK-TOOL	1	Title	Switch to permit an access from the Address Book Maintenance Tool
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to permit import from the Address Book Maintenance Tool (only used in Japan)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The Address Book Maintenance Tool is provided by CMJ.
IKEINTVL	1	Title	IKE retry interval
		Purpose of use, When used	Set a retry interval for a case when an IKE packet was transmitted but no response was made from the receiver.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 30
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	10
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ILSZ-JAM	2	Title	Switch for detecting a jam caused by difference of paper size
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the user asks for the item to be provided. This item is used to perform normal printing when using the paper smaller than the one specified in the paper size dial. Select whether to detect jams caused by difference of paper size.
		Precautions for use	When this item is set to '1' and when the paper larger than the one specified in the dial is used, productivity may decrease and dirt may occur on the backside of paper.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Jam caused by difference of paper size is detected. 1: Jam caused by difference of paper size is not detected. When this mode is set to '1' and when the paper smaller than the one specified in the dial is used, jams are not detected.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Usually, when the paper size specified in the dial of the paper cassette differs from the size of the paper actually used, it is judged as a jam caused by difference of paper size.
IPSDEBLV	2	Not used	
SP-LINK	1	Title	1W sleep mode setting
		Purpose of use, When used	This is a switch used to place the machine on standby for 10base-T as default setting in order to realize 1W power in sleep mode.
		When used	This item is used when switching the machine operation to sleep mode after Negotiation in the same manner as the existing machine.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Operation is forcibly switched to sleep mode on 10base-T. 1: Operation is switched to sleep mode after Negotiation.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.16 COPIER > OPTION > USER (1/7)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-65

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
COPY-LIM	1	Title	Change in upper limit setting for number of copies
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the upper limit setting for the number of copies.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 9999
		Unit	Copies
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	9999
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SLEEP	1	Title	Auto sleep function ON/OFF setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the auto sleep function to ON and OFF.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The time taken to transfer to the sleep mode is set in the user mode. Timer settings > auto sleep time
SIZE-DET	2	Title	Document size detection function ON/OFF setting
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the user asks for the item to be provided (as a means to remedy the glare from the document lighting lamp). Set the document size detection function to ON and OFF.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER1	1	Title	Display of soft counter 1 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the counter type of the soft counter 1 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	The settings cannot be changed; display only.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Differs according to the destination. Reference: External and Controls > Counters
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER2	1	Title	Display of soft counter 3 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the counter type of the soft counter 3 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Differs according to the destination. Reference: External and Controls > Counters
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
COUNTER3	1	Title	Display of soft counter 3 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the counter type of the soft counter 3 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Differs according to the destination. Reference: External and Controls > Counters
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER4	1	Title	Display of soft counter 4 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the counter type of the soft counter 4 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	Differs according to the destination. Reference: External and Controls > Counters
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER5	1	Title	Display of soft counter 5 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the counter type of the soft counter 5 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER6	1	Title	Display of soft counter 6 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the counter type of the soft counter 6 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

Software counter specifications
100 - 199: Total
200 - 299: Copy (001 to 099 added in case of shortage)
300 - 399: Print
400 - 499: Copy and print
500 - 599: Scan
600 - 699: Box print
700 - 799: Receive print
800 - 899: Report print
900 - 999: Send
Explanations of symbols and terms in the table
- YES: Counter valid in this machine
- Large size: Paper greater than B4
- Small size: Paper of B4 or smaller
- Counter Description: Numerals 1 and 2 indicate the counts of large size paper.

In service mode (COPIER>OPTION>USER>B4-L-CNT), B4 or greater can be set as the large size.
- Total A: Total excluding local and remote copies
- Total B: Total excluding local and remote copies and box prints
- Copy: Local and remote copies
- Copy A: Local and remote copies and box prints
- Print: PDL, report, and box prints
- Print A: PDL and report prints
- Scan: Black-and-white and color scans

T-17-66

No.	Counter Description	Support
101	Total 1	yes
102	Total 2	yes
103	Total (Large)	yes
104	Total (Small)	yes
105	Total (Full-color 1)	
106	Total (Full-color 2)	
108	Total (Black-and-white 1)	yes
109	Total (Black-and-white 2)	yes
110	Total (Monochrome / Large)	
111	Total (Monochrome / Small)	
112	Total (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
113	Total (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
114	Total 1 (Duplex)	yes
115	Total 2 (Duplex)	yes
116	Large (Duplex)	yes
117	Small (Duplex)	yes
118	Total (Monochrome 1)	
119	Total (Monochrome 2)	
120	Total (Full-color / Large)	
121	Total (Full-color / Small)	
122	Total (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
123	Total (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
124	Total (Full-color + Monochrome 2)	
125	Total (Full-color + Monochrome 1)	
126	Total A1	yes
127	Total A2	yes
128	Total A (Large)	yes
129	Total A (Small)	yes
130	Total A (Full-color 1)	
131	Total A (Full-color 2)	
132	Total A (Black-and-white 1)	yes
133	Total A (Black-and-white 2)	yes
134	Total A (Monochrome / Large)	
135	Total A (Monochrome / Small)	
136	Total A (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
137	Total A (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
138	Total A1 (Duplex)	
139	Total A2 (Duplex)	
140	Large A (Duplex)	
141	Small A (Duplex)	
142	Total A (Monochrome 1)	
143	Total A (Monochrome 2)	
144	Total A (Full-color / Large)	
145	Total A (Full-color / Small)	
146	Total A (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
147	Total A (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
148	Total A (Full-color + Monochrome 2)	
149	Total A (Full-color + Monochrome 1)	
150	Total B1	yes
151	Total B2	yes
152	Total B (Large)	yes
153	Total B (Small)	yes
154	Total B (Full-color 1)	
155	Total B (Full-color 2)	
156	Total B (Black-and-white 1)	yes
157	Total B (Black-and-white 2)	yes
158	Total B (Monochrome / Large)	
159	Total B (Monochrome / Small)	
160	Total B (Black-and-white / Large)	yes

No.	Counter Description	Support
161	Total B (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
162	Total B1 (Duplex)	
163	Total B2 (Duplex)	
164	Large B (Duplex)	
165	Small B (Duplex)	
166	Total B (Monochrome 1)	
167	Total B (Monochrome 2)	
168	Total B (Full-color / Large)	
169	Total B (Full-color / Small)	
170	Total B (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
171	Total B (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
172	Total B (Full-color + Monochrome 2)	
173	Total B (Full-color + Monochrome 1)	
201	Copy (Total 1)	yes
202	Copy (Total 2)	yes
203	Copy (Large)	yes
204	Copy (Small)	yes
205	Copy A (Total 1)	yes
206	Copy A (Total 2)	yes
207	Copy A (Large)	yes
208	Copy A (Small)	yes
209	Local copy (Total 1)	yes
210	Local copy (Total 2)	yes
211	Local copy (Large)	yes
212	Local copy (Small)	yes
213	Remote copy (Total 1)	yes
214	Remote copy (Total 2)	yes
215	Remote copy (Large)	yes
216	Remote copy (Small)	yes
217	Copy (Full-color 1)	
218	Copy (Full-color 2)	
219	Copy (Monochrome 1)	
220	Copy (Monochrome 2)	
221	Copy (Black-and-white 1)	yes
222	Copy (Black-and-white 2)	yes
223	Copy (Full-color / Large)	
224	Copy (Full-color / Small)	
225	Copy (Monochrome / Large)	
226	Copy (Monochrome / Small)	
227	Copy (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
228	Copy (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
229	Copy (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
230	Copy (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
231	Copy (Full-color + Monochrome / 2)	
232	Copy (Full-color + Monochrome / 1)	
233	Copy (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
234	Copy (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
235	Copy (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
236	Copy (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
237	Copy (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
238	Copy (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
245	Copy A (Full-color 1)	
246	Copy A (Full-color 2)	
247	Copy A (Monochrome 1)	
248	Copy A (Monochrome 2)	
249	Copy A (Black-and-white 1)	yes
250	Copy A (Black-and-white 2)	yes
251	Copy A (Full-color / Large)	
252	Copy A (Full-color / Small)	
253	Copy A (Monochrome / Large)	
254	Copy A (Monochrome / Small)	
255	Copy A (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
256	Copy A (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
257	Copy A (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
258	Copy A (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
259	Copy A (Full-color + Monochrome / 2)	

No.	Counter Description	Support
260	Copy A (Full-color + Monochrome / 1)	
261	Copy A (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
262	Copy A (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
263	Copy A (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
264	Copy A (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
265	Copy A (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
266	Copy A (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
273	Local copy (Full-color 1)	
274	Local copy (Full-color 2)	
275	Local copy (Monochrome 1)	
276	Local copy (Monochrome 2)	
277	Local copy (Black-and-white 1)	yes
278	Local copy (Black-and-white 2)	yes
279	Local copy (Full-color / Large)	
280	Local copy (Full-color / Small)	
281	Local copy (Monochrome / Large)	
282	Local copy (Monochrome / Small)	
283	Local copy (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
284	Local copy (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
285	Local copy (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
286	Local copy (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
287	Local copy (Full-color + Monochrome / 2)	
288	Local copy (Full-color + Monochrome / 1)	
289	Local copy (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
290	Local copy (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
291	Local copy (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
292	Local copy (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
293	Local copy (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
294	Local copy (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
002	Remote copy (Full-color 1)	
003	Remote copy (Full-color 2)	
004	Remote copy (Monochrome 1)	
005	Remote copy (Monochrome 2)	
006	Remote copy (Black-and-white 1)	yes
007	Remote copy (Black-and-white 2)	yes
008	Remote copy (Full-color / Large)	
009	Remote copy (Full-color / Small)	
010	Remote copy (Monochrome / Large)	
011	Remote copy (Monochrome / Small)	
012	Remote copy (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
013	Remote copy (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
014	Remote copy (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
015	Remote copy (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
016	Remote copy (Full-color + Monochrome / 2)	
017	Remote copy (Full-color + Monochrome / 1)	
018	Remote copy (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
019	Remote copy (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
020	Remote copy (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
021	Remote copy (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
022	Remote copy (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
023	Remote copy (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
301	Print (Total 1)	yes
302	Print (Total 2)	yes
303	Print (Large)	yes
304	Print (Small)	yes
305	Print A (Total 1)	yes
306	Print A (Total 2)	yes
307	Print A (Large)	yes
308	Print A (Small)	yes
309	Print (Full-color 1)	
310	Print (Full-color 2)	
311	Print (Monochrome 1)	
312	Print (Monochrome 2)	
313	Print (Black-and-white 1)	yes
314	Print (Black-and-white 2)	yes
315	Print (Full-color / Large)	

No.	Counter Description	Support
316	Print (Full-color / Small)	
317	Print (Monochrome / Large)	
318	Print (Monochrome / Small)	
319	Print (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
320	Print (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
321	Print (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
322	Print (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
323	Print (Full-color + Monochrome / 2)	
324	Print (Full-color + Monochrome / 1)	
325	Print (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
326	Print (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
327	Print (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
328	Print (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
329	Print (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
330	Print (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
331	PDL print (Total 1)	yes
332	PDL print (Total 2)	yes
333	PDL print (Large)	yes
334	PDL print (Small)	yes
335	PDL print (Full-color 1)	
336	PDL print (Full-color 2)	
339	PDL print (Black-and-white 1)	yes
340	PDL print (Black-and-white 2)	yes
341	PDL print (Full-color / Large)	
342	PDL print (Full-color / Small)	
345	PDL print (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
346	PDL print (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
351	PDL print (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
352	PDL print (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
355	PDL print (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
356	PDL print (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
401	Copy + Print (Full-color / Large)	
402	Copy + Print (Full-color / Small)	
403	Copy + Print (Monochrome / Large)	
404	Copy + Print (Monochrome / Small)	
405	Copy + Print (Monochrome 2)	
406	Copy + Print (Monochrome 1)	
407	Copy + Print (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
408	Copy + Print (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
409	Copy + Print (Full-color + Monochrome / 2)	
410	Copy + Print (Full-color + Monochrome / 1)	
411	Copy + Print (Large)	
412	Copy + Print (Small)	
413	Copy + Print (2)	
414	Copy + Print (1)	
415	Copy + Print (Monochrome / Large)	
416	Copy + Print (Monochrome / Small)	
417	Copy + Print (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
418	Copy + Print (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
419	Copy + Print (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
420	Copy + Print (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
421	Copy + Print (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
422	Copy + Print (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
501	Scan (Total 1)	yes
502	Scan (Total 2)	yes
503	Scan (Large)	yes
504	Scan (Small)	yes
505	Black-and-white scan (Total 1)	yes
506	Black-and-white scan (Total 2)	yes
507	Black-and-white scan (Large)	yes
508	Black-and-white scan (Small)	yes
509	Color scan (Total 1)	
510	Color scan (Total 2)	
511	Color scan (Large)	
512	Color scan (Small)	
601	Box print (Total 1)	yes

No.	Counter Description	Support
602	Box print (Total 2)	yes
603	Box print (Large)	yes
604	Box print (Small)	yes
605	Box print (Full-color 1)	
606	Box print (Full-color 2)	
607	Box print (Monochrome 1)	
608	Box print (Monochrome 2)	
609	Box print (Black-and-white 1)	yes
610	Box print (Black-and-white 2)	yes
611	Box print (Full-color / Large)	
612	Box print (Full-color / Small)	
613	Box print (Monochrome / Large)	
614	Box print (Monochrome / Small)	
615	Box print (Black-and-white / Large)	yes
616	Box print (Black-and-white / Small)	yes
617	Box print (Full-color + Monochrome / Large)	
618	Box print (Full-color + Monochrome / Small)	
619	Box print (Full-color + Monochrome / 2)	
620	Box print (Full-color + Monochrome / 1)	
621	Box print (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
622	Box print (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
623	Box print (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
624	Box print (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
625	Box print (Black-and-white / Large / Duplex)	
626	Box print (Black-and-white / Small / Duplex)	
701	Receive print (Total 1)	yes
702	Receive print (Total 2)	yes
703	Receive print (Large)	yes
704	Receive print (Small)	yes
705	Receive print (Full-color 1)	
706	Receive print (Full-color 2)	
707	Receive print (Gray-scale 1)	
708	Receive print (Gray-scale 2)	
709	Receive print (Monochrome 1)	yes
710	Receive print (Monochrome 2)	yes
711	Receive print (Full-color / Large)	
712	Receive print (Full-color / Small)	
713	Receive print (Gray-scale / Large)	
714	Receive print (Gray-scale / Small)	
715	Receive print (Monochrome / Large)	yes
716	Receive print (Monochrome / Small)	yes
717	Receive print (Full-color + Gray-scale / Large)	
718	Receive print (Full-color + Gray-scale / Small)	
719	Receive print (Full-color + Gray-scale 2)	
720	Receive print (Full-color + Gray-scale 1)	
721	Receive print (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
722	Receive print (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
723	Receive print (Gray-scale / Large / Duplex)	
724	Receive print (Gray-scale / Small / Duplex)	
725	Receive print (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
726	Receive print (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
801	Report print (Total 1)	yes
802	Report print (Total 2)	yes
803	Report print (Large)	yes
804	Report print (Small)	yes
805	Report print (Full-color 1)	
806	Report print (Full-color 2)	
807	Report print (Gray-scale 1)	
808	Report print (Gray-scale 2)	
809	Report print (Monochrome 1)	yes
810	Report print (Monochrome 2)	yes
811	Report print (Full-color / Large)	
812	Report print (Full-color / Small)	
813	Report print (Gray-scale / Large)	
814	Report print (Gray-scale / Small)	
815	Report print (Monochrome / Large)	yes

No.	Counter Description	Support
816	Report print (Monochrome / Small)	yes
817	Report print (Full-color + Gray-scale / Large)	
818	Report print (Full-color + Gray-scale / Small)	
819	Report print (Full-color + Gray-scale 2)	
820	Report print (Full-color + Gray-scale 1)	
821	Report print (Full-color / Large / Duplex)	
822	Report print (Full-color / Small / Duplex)	
823	Report print (Gray-scale / Large / Duplex)	
824	Report print (Gray-scale / Small / Duplex)	
825	Report print (Monochrome / Large / Duplex)	
826	Report print (Monochrome / Small / Duplex)	
901	Copy scan total 1 (Color)	
902	Copy scan total 1 (Black-and-white)	
903	Copy scan total 2 (Color)	
904	Copy scan total 2 (Black-and-white)	
905	Copy scan total 3 (Color)	
906	Copy scan total 3 (Black-and-white)	
907	Copy scan total 4 (Color)	
908	Copy scan total 4 (Black-and-white)	
909	Local copy scan (Color)	
910	Local copy scan (Black-and-white)	
911	Remote copy scan (Color)	
912	Remote copy scan (Black-and-white)	
913	Send scan total 1 (Color)	
914	Send scan total 1 (Black-and-white)	
915	Send scan total 2 (Color)	
916	Send scan total 2 (Black-and-white)	yes
917	Send scan total 3 (Color)	
918	Send scan total 3 (Black-and-white)	yes
919	Send scan total 4 (Color)	
920	Send scan total 4 (Black-and-white)	
921	Send scan total 5 (Color)	
922	Send scan total 5 (Black-and-white)	yes
929	Send scan total 6 (Color)	
930	Send scan total 6 (Black-and-white)	yes
931	Send scan total 7 (Color)	
932	Send scan total 7 (Black-and-white)	
933	Send scan total 8 (Color)	
934	Send scan total 8 (Black-and-white)	
935	Universal send scan total (Color)	
936	Universal send scan total (Black-and-white)	
937	Box scan (Color)	
938	Box scan (Black-and-white)	
939	Remote scan (Color)	
940	Remote scan (Black-and-white)	yes
941	Send scan / FAX (Color)	
942	Send scan / FAX (Black-and-white)	
943	Send scan / IFAX (Color)	
944	Send scan / IFAX (Black-and-white)	
945	Send scan / E-mail (Color)	
946	Send scan / E-mail (Black-and-white)	
947	Send scan / FTP (Color)	
948	Send scan / FTP (Black-and-white)	
949	Send scan / SMB (Color)	
950	Send scan / SMB (Black-and-white)	
951	Send scan / IPX (Color)	
952	Send scan / IPX (Black-and-white)	
953	Send scan / Database (Color)	
954	Send scan / Database (Black-and-white)	
955	Send scan / Local print (Color)	
956	Send scan / Local print (Black-and-white)	
957	Send scan / Box (Color)	
958	Send scan / Box (Black-and-white)	

17.6.1.17 COPIER > OPTION > USER (2/7)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-67

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DATE-DSP	2	Title	Switching of date/time display format
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the date/time display which matches the format used in the country or region concerned.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: YYMM/DD 1: DD/MM'YY 2: MM/DD/YY
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	The value differs depending on the destination.
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The setting is reflected in the date setting sequence for the date/time setting accessed from system control settings and in the sequence of the year/month/day printed on reports.
MB-CCV	2	Title	Restriction on control card users for mailboxes
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict the control card users for mailboxes.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (users are not restricted) 1: ON (users are restricted)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CONTROL	1	Title	Switch for selecting whether to charge for PDL jobs
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to output the count pulses to the charge control unit when such a unit (a coin vender or a control card made by another manufacturer) is connected.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: PDL jobs are not charged 1: PDL jobs are charged. Set '1' to charge for PDL jobs.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
B4-L-CNT	1	Title	Selection of countup when using B4 size sheets
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to count B4 size paper as large size paper or small size paper in soft counter 1 to 6.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: B4 size paper is counted as small size paper. 1: B4 size paper is counted as large size paper.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SC-L-CNT (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TRY-STP	2	Title	Setting of printing suspension mode when finisher tray is full
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to suspend printing when a full tray has been detected in the finisher.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal (printing is suspended when a full finisher tray is detected) 1: Printing is suspended only during height detection.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MF-LG-ST	2	Title	Setting of long document button display
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the "long document" button on the application screen accessed from the copy screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The button is not displayed. 1: The button is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Sheets/documents up to 630mm long can be supported. However, the bypass tray unit needs to be used for sheets, and the ADF needs to be used for documents.
CNT-DISP	2	Title	Setting as to whether to display the serial number on the counter status check screen
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to display the serial number on the counter status check screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Serial number is displayed. 1: Serial number is not displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PH-D-SEL	2	Title	Switching of the number of lines in printing paper photo mode
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 141 lines, 1: 134 lines
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
COPY-JOB	1	Title	Prohibition of copy job reservations when card reader/coin vender is used
		Purpose of use, When used	Prohibit copy job reservations when the card reader or coin vender is used.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Reservation enabled 1: Reservation prohibited
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OP-SZ-DT	2	Title	Setting as to whether to detect document sizes while platen remains open
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used document sizes are to be detected automatically in cases where thick books, 3-dementional objects, etc. are scanned. This item is used when document size detection is to be activated while the platen remains open.
		Precautions for use	When COPIER > OPTION > USER > SIZE-DET(Level 2) is set to '0', the document sizes are not detected while the platen remains open even if this mode is set to '1'.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Document sizes cannot be detected while the platen remains open. -> The document sizes must be input from the operation unit screen. 1: Document sizes can be detected while the platen remains open. -> The document sizes are detected by pressing the start key.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > USER > SIZE-DET (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.18 COPIER > OPTION > USER (3/7)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-68

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
NW-SCAN	2	Title	Enabling of network scan function
		Purpose of use, When used	Enable the network scan function.
		Precautions for use	The setting cannot be changed on machines for the Japanese market. This item is fixed at '1' for PS/PCL machines destined for overseas.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The network scan function is not enabled. 1: The network scan function is enabled.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
HDCR-DSP	2	Title	Selection of data clearing method in hard drive complete deletion mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the data clearing method in the hard drive complete deletion mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Hard drive data is cleared using all null data in one session. 2: Hard drive data is cleared using random data in one session. 3: Hard drive data is cleared using random data in 3 sessions. When the setting value is increased, the security level is improved, but the time required for clearing the hard drive data becomes longer.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Hard drive complete deletion function: This function writes null data or random data over the file data areas at the time when the files are deleted logically (when the control information data is deleted) to clear the hard drive.
JOB-INVL	2	Title	Setting of job intervals during interrupts
		Purpose of use, When used	With interrupt copying, it is difficult to differentiate between the sheets of one job from the sheets of another because the sheets of one job continue on from those of the previous job. As a remedial measure, gaps between the sheets are left after the last sheet of the previous job has been delivered.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Standard setting (sheets of one job continue on from the sheets of the previous job) 1: Output of the following job is started after the last sheet of the interrupt copying job has been delivered. 2: The output of the job is started only after the last sheet of the previous job has been delivered for all jobs.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-PSESW	1	Title	Selection of print pause function switch display
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the user asks for the item to be provided; when quickly suspending a print job being executed or reserved. Display the "print pause" button on the system status/suspension screen.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The "print pause" button is not displayed. 1: The "print pause" button is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IDPRN-SW	1	Title	Switching of job types counted up by department control counters
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the type of jobs which are to be counted up by the department control counters.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: For countup by PRINT category->BoxPrint, ReportPrint, SendLocalPrint, PDLPrint For countup by COPY category->COPY 1: For countup by PRINT category->ReportPrint, SendLocalPrint, PDLPrint For countup by COPY category->COPY, BoxPrint
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PCL-COPY	2	Title	Binder control mode of COPIES command for PCL
		Purpose of use, When used	Make the COPIES command control method when Canon's PCL is used identical to the COPIES command control method used in the PCLs of other manufacturers.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Control is exercised on a page-by-page basis in accordance with the COPIES command value specified on each page. 1: The COPIES command value specified on page 1 is treated as the binding number, and the value of the COPIES command for the subsequent pages is canceled. (In the sorting mode only; in non-sorting modes, control is the same as with the '0' setting.) 2 to 65535: For further expansion '0' is the control method for Canon's PCL. To make this identical to the control method used in the PCLs of other manufacturers, use the '1' setting.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CNT-SW	1	Title	Selection of default display item for charge counter
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the default display item for the charge counter which is to be displayed on the counter status check screen. (used only for machines for the Japanese market)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Japan 0: Counter 1 - total 1: 101 1: Counter 1 - total 2: 102 Counter 2 - copy (total 2): 202 Counter 3 - total A2: 127 2: Not used UL 0: Counter 1 - total 1: 101 Counter 2 - total (large): 103 Counter 3 - copy (total 1): 201 Counter 4 - copy (large): 203 1: Counter 1 - total 2: 102 Counter 2 - copy (total 2): 202 2: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
REMPNL	1	Title	Use it to select whether to use the remote panel function
		Purpose of use, When used	Selects whether to use the remote panel function, which enables a user to operate a device using a PC in the same manner as the LCD panel.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Do not use remote panel function. 1: Use remote panel function.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
BCNT-AST	1	Title	Selection of job type when BoxPrint is counted by NE controller
		Purpose of use, When used	Select the job type to be counted when BoxPrint is counted by the NE controller (ASSIST).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Jobs are counted as PDL jobs. 1: Jobs are counter as copy jobs.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRJOB-CP	2	Title	Setting as to whether to send count pulses during receive print and ReportPrint
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to send count pulse notices for each page during receive print or ReportPrint to the charge control unit (a coin vender or a control card made by another manufacturer) when such a unit is being used.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Count pulses are not sent. 1: Count pulses are sent.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.19 COPIER > OPTION > USER (4/7)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-69

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DOC-REM	1	Title	ON/OFF setting for document removal message display
		Purpose of use, When used	Set ON/OFF for displaying the document removal message.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The document removal message is not displayed. 1: The document removal message is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DPT-ID-7	2	Title	Selection of 7-digit password input for department ID registration/authentication
		Purpose of use, When used	Set up so that the department ID and also the password are input in 7 digits for department ID registration and authentication.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Input as before 1: Input using 7 digits
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
RUI-RJT	2	Title	Setting as to whether to disconnect HTTP port during illegal authentication from remote UI
		Purpose of use, When used	Disconnect the HTTP port when illegal authentication has occurred 3 times from a remote UI.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The HTTP port is not disconnected. 1: The HTTP port is disconnected.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CTM-S06	2	Title	Setting to delete password from the transmission address export file
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the leakage of information is to be prevented. Set the deletion of the password from the file transmission address export file.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The password is not deleted. 1: The password is deleted. When '1' is set, the password for the transmission destination is deleted from the export file when the address book data is exported from the remote UI.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FREG-SW	2	Title	Selection of whether to display MEAP counter (for SEND) free register area
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when trouble is analyzed. Select whether to display the free register area of the MEAP counter (for SEND).
		Precautions for use	- This must not be used for regular servicing. - It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The free register area is not displayed. 1: The free register area is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The MEAP counter has a free register area in which the MEAP applications can be counted up independently.
IFAX-SZL	2	Title	Selection of whether to impose transmission size limits during IFAX transmissions
		Purpose of use, When used	Enable data whose volume is greater than the upper limit of the transmission data size to be transmitted in IFAX transmissions which do not go through the server.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The transmission size limit is imposed (both when the transmissions go through and do not go through the server). 1: The transmission size limit is released (but only when the transmissions do not go through the server). Error #830 results if data whose volume exceeds the upper limit is transmitted when '0' is set.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The upper limit for the transmission data size can be set in the user mode by selecting the following: system control settings > communication control settings > I-FAX settings > upper limit of transmission data size

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
IFAX-PGD	2	Title	Selection of whether to enable page division transmission during IFAX Simple mode transmissions (only when upper limit of transmission data size is exceeded)
		Purpose of use, When used	Enable the division transmissions on a page-by-page basis when the transmission data exceeds the upper limit of the transmission data size during IFAX Simple mode transmissions.
		Precautions for use	When '0' is set: - The page sequence at the receiving end cannot be guaranteed. - Other jobs received may interrupt between pages. The setting must be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand the possible problems that may arise from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Page division transmission during IFAX Simple mode transmissions is not enabled. 1: Page division transmission during IFAX Simple mode transmissions is enabled.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The upper limit for the transmission data size can be set in the user mode by selecting the following: system control settings > communication control settings > email/I-FAX settings > upper limit of transmission data size
MEAPSAFE	2	Title	Switching to MEAP safe mode
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the MEAP platform fails to start up properly due to contention of resources among the MEAP applications, service registration or utilization sequence or some other factor. This item is used to switch the safe mode in order to initiate the system restoration processing when the MEAP platform fails to start up properly. It controls the shutdown of the MEAP applications, and switches to the safe mode (in which the logs and other data for ascertaining the causes of MEAP trouble can be obtained).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode 1: Safe mode
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The safe mode is a mode for shutting down already installed MEAP applications and starting up only the system applications which are started up in the default status so that the system will start up safely. It enables the logs for ascertaining the causes of MEAP trouble to be obtained. While the safe mode is established, 'MPSF' appears on the operation unit screen.
AFN-PSWD	2	Title	Restriction on access to user mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict access to the user mode by way of a password
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode (the display transfers to the user mode screen without requesting a password from the user) 1: The display transfers to the user mode screen after the correct password has been entered. When '1' is set, the user is requested to input the system administrator password after pressing the initial settings/registration (Additional Functions) key.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PTJAM-RC	2	Title	Automatic resumption of printing switch for PDL print jams
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to automatically resume printing after releasing a jam when jamming has occurred during PDL printing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (printing is not automatically resumed.) 1: ON (printing is automatically resumed.)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.20 COPIER > OPTION > USER (5/7)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-70

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PDL-NCSW	2	Title	PDL print job card control mode setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Place the PDL print jobs under the control of the card reader.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: PDL printing is performed regardless of whether a card is inserted. 1: PDL printing is not performed when a card has not been inserted or the department ID does not match; PDL printing is performed when a card has been inserted and when the department ID matches.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SLP-SLCT	2	Title	Network-type application use selector switch
		Purpose of use, When used	Specific packets must be received for the machine to be reset from sleep mode 3 via the network. Since the existing network-type applications (NetSpot Accountant and imageWARE) do not send these packets, the machine cannot be reset via the network when its operation has transferred to sleep mode 3.
		Precautions for use	- This must not be used for regular servicing. - When '1' is set, operation is no longer transferred to sleep mode 3 (2W power) so this is disadvantageous in terms of minimizing the power consumption.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not used (operation can transfer to sleep mode 3) 1: Used (operation cannot transfer to sleep mode 3) Set this item to '1' if the machine is to be allowed to be reset from the sleep mode via the network.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PS-MODE	2	Title	Compatibility mode selection when PS is used (image processing, print specifications)
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing from an existing machine. Maintain compatibility with existing machines in terms of image processing and print specifications for PS prints.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: PS compatibility mode is not used. 1: Same image processing as for iR2200/2800/3300 series (compatibility with existing machines) 2: Same image processing as for iR105 (compatibility with existing machines) 3: Reserved 4: Printing on both sides of the sheets when both the landscape and portrait formats are involved and a controller made by Canon is used. 5 to 65535: Reserved When '1' is set, the same printing results as those obtained from the iR2200/2800/3300 series are achieved. When '2' is set, the same printing results as those obtained from the iR105 series are achieved.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CNCT-RLZ	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of connection serializing function
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the connection serializing function to ON and OFF. Connection serializing is a function for guaranteeing the job grouping function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. The job grouping function is guaranteed by means of a setting which does not allow multiple connections to be accepted at the machine end.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON When '1' is set, the job data of the second and any subsequent connections will not be received until the reception of the job data of the first connection is completed to prevent the rearrangement of the jobs.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Connections: This refers to the connections established through the network between the machine and a multiple number of hosts (such as PCs). Job grouping function: This is a function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0 which prevents the current job from being interrupted by jobs from other PCs by means of group jobs (the transmission of a multiple number of jobs in a single job transmission session).
JA-FUNC	2	Title	ON/OFF for job archive function
		Purpose of use, When used	When 'ON' is set, the job archive function is enabled.
		Precautions for use	The setting cannot be changed in the service mode; only reference is allowed. The setting can be only made from the MEAP program supporting job archive.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF, 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
JA-JOB	2	Title	Setting of the target job for job archiving
		Purpose of use, When used	When the job archive function is enabled, archiving is performed when executing the job in accordance with the specified job type of the target job.
		Precautions for use	The setting cannot be changed in the service mode; only reference is allowed. The setting can be only made from the MEAP program supporting job archive.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: None, 3: Limited to FAX/IFAX
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
JA-RESTR	2	Title	Setting of restriction items for job archive
		Purpose of use, When used	When the job archive function is enabled, specification restriction operation is performed for the target function in accordance with the setting made.
		Precautions for use	The setting cannot be changed in the service mode; only reference is allowed. The setting can be only made from the MEAP program supporting job archive.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Bit0: Image file acquisition function (0: OFF, 1: ON) Bit1: Form registration composite function (0: OFF, 1: ON) Bit2: Document edit function (0: OFF, 1: ON)
		Unit	32 specification restrictions based on Bit definition
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LDAP-SW	1	Title	LDAP server search condition selector switch
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the search conditions when searching for email addresses, etc. from the LDAP server.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: '(Target) including next' 1: '(Target) excluding next' 2: '(Target) same as next' 3: '(Target) not the same as next' 4: '(Target) starting with next' 5: '(Target) ending with next'
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	4
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	LDAP: Lightweight Directory Access Protocol The LDAP server registration can be performed by accessing the LDAP server registration from the system control settings. Once registered, email addresses, etc. can be searched from it. The search results (email addresses, etc.) can be registered on address lists, etc.
FROM-OF	1	Title	From address deletion switch when sending mail
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to delete the from address when sending mail.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The from addresses are not deleted. 1: The from addresses are deleted.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DOM-ADD	2	Title	Switch for adding input of send destination domain when sending mail
		Purpose of use, When used	Send the addresses which are input when mail is sent together with the domain (example: @xxx.com) which has been set in the user mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The send destination domain is not added. 1: The send destination domain is added. Example: When the user sends mail to aaa@xxx.com When the domain is set to xxx.com in the user mode and then this mode item is set to '1', 'aaa@xxx.com' is displayed simply by inputting 'xxx' when mail is to be sent.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.21 COPIER > OPTION > USER (6/7)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-71

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SPEAKER	1	Title	Switch for selecting 'speaker/headphones switching' display of voice specifications setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to display the 'speaker/headphones switching' item on the voice specifications screen in the user mode.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The 'speaker/headphones switching' item is not displayed. 1: The 'speaker/headphones switching' item is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The 'voice specifications setting' is displayed in the user mode only when the voice guidance kit has been installed.
FILE-OF	1	Title	Switch for prohibiting transmission to file destinations
		Purpose of use, When used	Prohibit transmission to file destinations by prohibiting the input of file addresses from the address book.
		Precautions for use	File addresses which are already registered must be deleted manually since it is still possible to use them even when '1' is set for this item.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Transmission to file destinations is not prohibited. 1: Transmission to file destinations is prohibited.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MAIL-OF	1	Title	Switch for prohibiting transmission to email destinations
		Purpose of use, When used	Prohibit transmission to email destinations by prohibiting the input of email addresses from the address book.
		Precautions for use	Email addresses which are already registered must be deleted manually since it is still possible to use them even when '1' is set for this item.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Transmission to email destinations is not prohibited. 1: Transmission to email destinations is prohibited.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IFAX-OF	1	Title	Switch for prohibiting transmission to i-FAX destinations
		Purpose of use, When used	Prohibit transmission of i-FAX destinations by prohibiting the input of i-FAX addresses from the address book.
		Precautions for use	i-FAX addresses which are already registered must be deleted manually since it is still possible to use them even when '1' is set for this item.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Transmission to i-FAX destinations is not prohibited. 1: Transmission to i-FAX destinations is prohibited.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LDAP-DEF	1	Title	Default value selector switch for LDAP server search conditions
		Purpose of use, When used	Change the default conditions of the search target attributes which are specified when conducting advanced LDAP server searches.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 'Name' 1: 'Email' 2: 'Fax' 3: 'Organization' 4: 'Organization unit' 5: 'To be registered 1' (set as desired by the user) 6: 'To be registered 2' (set as desired by the user)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > USER > LDAP-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
FREE-DSP	2	Title	Switching of charge invalidation display
		Purpose of use, When used	When there is no hard switch used to select whether to perform charging at the vender's side, it needs to be controlled by a soft switch. In such a case, this item is used to select whether to display the charge invalidation screen (soft switch).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The charge invalidation screen is not displayed. 1: The charge invalidation screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CLR-TIM	2	Title	Selection of time to clear all data in HDD encryption kit
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the user of the HDD encryption kit has pointed out that the job processing speed is low. Select the time to clear all the data when using the HDD encryption kit. When all the data is cleared, the job processing speed may be reduced depending on the data concerned. This is because the clearing of the already processed page data is conducted in parallel with the job processing and this puts a strain on the CPU and HDD access processing. The job processing capability is improved by clearing the data after the jobs have been completed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Data is cleared during job processing. 1: Data is cleared after job processing.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ATCT-ADD	1	Title	Switch for adding auto clear time
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when desiring to set auto clear time (or time until operation transfers to automatic off-line which is linked to the auto clear time) to less than 1 minute. Auto clear time is usually 1 to 9 minutes. By using this item, it can be set to 10 sec, 20 sec, 30 sec, 40 sec, and 50 sec.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No auto clear time is added. 1: Auto clear time is added (addition of 10 sec, 20 sec, 30 sec, 40 sec, or 50 sec)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When '1' is set, the message 'Entry can be made using numeric keys. (0 min = None / 1 to 9 min)' that appears on the auto clear setting screen in the user mode is not displayed.
HDCR-DSW	1	Title	Selection of whether to display 'HDD complete deletion ON/OFF' item in the user mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display the 'HDD complete deletion ON/OFF' item in the user mode.
		Precautions for use	This mode is valid only when the HDD data complete deletion function (license) is activated.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The 'HDD complete deletion ON/OFF' item is not displayed. 1: The 'HDD complete deletion ON/OFF' item is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.22 COPIER > OPTION > USER (7/7)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-72

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SNMP-COA	2	Title	Switching of SNMP access restriction using an internal community name (administrator's right)
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict the SNMP access using the community name (administrator's right) internally retained. The SNMP community name can be usually set by "user mode > system control settings > network settings > SNMP settings. Separately from the community name set in this mode, another community name (administrator's right) is internally retained, and it is used when the utility software manufactured by Canon, such as NetSpot, has been accessed. Set '0' or '1' when desiring to restrict the SNMP access using an internal community name from the security point of view.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON (Read only) 2: ON (Read/Write)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SNMP-COU	2	Title	Switching of SNMP access restriction using an internal community name (user's right)
		Purpose of use, When used	Restrict the SNMP access using the community name (user's right) internally retained. The SNMP community name can be usually set by "user mode > system control settings > network settings > SNMP settings. Separately from the community name set in this mode, another community name (user's right) is internally retained, and it is used when the utility software manufactured by Canon, such as NetSpot, has been accessed. Set '0' or '1' when desiring to restrict the SNMP access using an internal community name from the security point of view.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON (Read only) 2: ON (Read/Write)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SCALL-SW	1	For future expansion	
SCALLCMP	1	For future expansion	
USBH-DSP	2	Title	Selection of whether to display 'Use the USB host' in the user mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display the 'Use the USB host' item on the UI when settings are made in 'system control settings > network settings > USB settings'.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The 'Use the USB host' item is not displayed. 1: The 'Use the USB host' item is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
USBM-DSP	2	Title	Selection of whether to display 'USB external memory device driver settings' in the user mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display 'USB external memory device driver settings' under 'system control settings' > 'USB settings' in the user mode. This item is used when the user does not want the administrator on the user side to change the settings of 'USB external memory device driver settings' in the user mode. When '0' is set while specific settings are made, 'USB external memory device driver settings' is not displayed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This is an alternative function of the existing USBK-DSP.
USBI-DSP	2	Title	Selection of whether to display 'USB input device driver setting' in the user mode
		Purpose of use, When used	Select whether to display 'USB input device driver settings' under 'system control settings' > 'USB settings' in the user mode. This item is used when the user does not want the administrator on the user side to change the settings of 'USB input device driver settings' in the user mode. When '0' is set while specific settings are made, 'USB input device driver settings' is not displayed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This is an alternative function of the existing USBK-DSP.
CTCHKDSP	1	Title	Selection of whether to display the counter print button in the counter check screen
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when the user wants to print the counter screen by adding the model name/serial number/counter check date&time.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The counter print button is not displayed. 1: The counter print button is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.23 COPIER > OPTION > CST

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-73

COPIER > OPTION > CST			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
U1-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U1) is detected
		Purpose of use, When used	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U1) is detected.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
U2-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U2) is detected
		Purpose of use, When used	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U2) is detected.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
U3-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U3) is detected
		Purpose of use, When used	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U3) is detected.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
U4-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U4) is detected
		Purpose of use, When used	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U4) is detected.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > CST			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CST-U1	2	Title	Setting of paper name used for paper size group 'U1'
		Purpose of use, When used	When setting the following special size paper for U1, U2, U3, and U4 which are specified for the paper name to be used in paper size group, it becomes possible to treat the paper size in U1, U2, U3, and U4 as special size paper in universal size cassettes.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	24: Foolscap (CST-U2: Default), 25: Australian Foolscap, 26: Oficio, 27: Oficio; Ecuador, 28: Oficio; Bolivia, 29: Argentine Letter (U4: Default), 30: Argentine Letter-R, 31: Government Letter (U1: Default), 32: Government Letter-R, 34: Government Legal (U3: Default), 35: Folio, 36: Oficio; Argentine, 37: Oficio; Mexico
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	31
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CST-U2	2	Title	Setting of paper name used for paper size group 'U2'
		Purpose of use, When used	When setting the following special size paper for U1, U2, U3, and U4 which are specified for the paper name to be used in paper size group, it becomes possible to treat the paper size in U1, U2, U3, and U4 as special size paper in universal size cassettes.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	24: Foolscap (CST-U2: Default), 25: Australian Foolscap, 26: Oficio, 27: Oficio; Ecuador, 28: Oficio; Bolivia, 29: Argentine Letter (U4: Default), 30: Argentine Letter-R, 31: Government Letter (U1: Default), 32: Government Letter-R, 34: Government Legal (U3: Default), 35: Folio, 36: Oficio; Argentine, 37: Oficio; Mexico
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	24
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CST-U3	2	Title	Setting of paper name used for paper size group 'U3'
		Purpose of use, When used	When setting the following special size paper for U1, U2, U3, and U4 which are specified for the paper name to be used in paper size group, it becomes possible to treat the paper size in U1, U2, U3, and U4 as special size paper in universal size cassettes.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	24: Foolscap (CST-U2: Default), 25: Australian Foolscap, 26: Oficio, 27: Oficio; Ecuador, 28: Oficio; Bolivia, 29: Argentine Letter (U4: Default), 30: Argentine Letter-R, 31: Government Letter (U1: Default), 32: Government Letter-R, 34: Government Legal (U3: Default), 35: Folio, 36: Oficio; Argentine, 37: Oficio; Mexico
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	34
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CST-U4	2	Title	Setting of paper name used for paper size group 'U4'
		Purpose of use, When used	When setting the following special size paper for U1, U2, U3, and U4 which are specified for the paper name to be used in paper size group, it becomes possible to treat the paper size in U1, U2, U3, and U4 as special size paper in universal size cassettes.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	24: Foolscap (CST-U2: Default), 25: Australian Foolscap, 26: Oficio, 27: Oficio; Ecuador, 28: Oficio; Bolivia, 29: Argentine Letter (U4: Default), 30: Argentine Letter-R, 31: Government Letter (U1: Default), 32: Government Letter-R, 34: Government Legal (U3: Default), 35: Folio, 36: Oficio; Argentine, 37: Oficio; Mexico
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	29
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > CST			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
ENV1	1	Title	Registration of envelope cassette paper size (ENV1)
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the paper size for the envelope cassette.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	21: ISO-C5, 22: COM10, 23: MONARCH, 24: DL, 25: ISO-B5, 26: Youkei No. 4
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	26
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ENV2	1	Title	Registration of envelope cassette paper size (ENV2)
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the paper size for the envelope cassette.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	21: ISO-C5, 22: COM10, 23: MONARCH, 24: DL, 25: ISO-B5, 26: Youkei No. 4
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	22
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.24 COPIER > OPTION > ACC

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-74

COPIER > OPTION > ACC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
COIN	1	Title	Switching of coin vendor
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when coin vendor is installed. Switch coin vendor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Coin vendor not in use (not charged) *Control card is available to use. 1: Coin vendor (charged) 2: Remote counter (charged) 3: DA charging (Digital Accessory; only used for machines in Japanese market) 4: Device charging mode
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK-P	1	Title	Setting of paper size used for side paper deck (Use PD-SIZE for large-size paper.)
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the paper size used for the side paper deck.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: A4, 1: B5, 2: LTR
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > ACC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
OUT-TRAY	1	Title	Presence/absence of 3rd delivery tray
		Purpose of use, When used	Set '1' when installing the 3rd delivery unit.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The 3rd delivery tray is absent. 1: The 3rd delivery tray is present.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CC-SPSW	2	Title	Switching of control card I/F support level
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the control card (CCIV/CCV) I/F support level.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No support 1: Support (priority on speed) 2: Support (priority on upper limit control of print count) Set '1' in case of giving priority on maintaining performance of printer engine. However, accurate print stop by upper limit control of print count is not available. Set '2' in case of realizing accurate print stop by upper limit control of print count. However, the performance of printer engine may drop depending on pickup position.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UNIT-PRC	2	Title	Setting of currency unit handled with coin vendor
		Purpose of use, When used	Make a setting of currency unit handled with coin vendor
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Yen 1: Euro 2: Pound 3: Swiss Franc 4: Dollar 5: No unit, no fractional unit 6: No unit, with fractional unit
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IN-TRAY	1	Title	Presence/absence of inner delivery tray
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the presence/absence of the 2nd delivery tray.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The 2nd delivery tray is absent. 1: The 2nd delivery tray is present.
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > ACC			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MIN-PRC	1	Title	Setting of the minimum value for coin vendor
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the minimum unit which can be used for coin vendor when it is installed. Example: Coin vendor supporting Yen --> When setting the minimum unit to '10 yen', enter '10'. When 'COPIER > OPTION > ACC > UNIT-PRC' is set to '1' to '4' (Euro/Pound/Swiss Franc/Dollar), entry is made based on a fractional unit. Example: When '50' is entered, it is treated as '50 cents ($0.50)'. This item is valid only when 'ACC>COIN' is set to '4'.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1-65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	10
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > ACC > COIN (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > ACC > UNIT-PRC (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-
MAX-PRC	1	Title	Setting of the maximum value for coin vendor
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the maximum unit which can be used for coin vendor when it is installed. Example: Coin vendor supporting Yen --> When setting the maximum unit to '8900 yen', enter '8900'. When 'COPIER > OPTION > ACC > UNIT-PRC' is set to '1' to '4' (Euro/Pound/Swiss Franc/Dollar), entry is made based on a fractional unit. Example: When '5000' is entered, it is treated as '5000 cents ($50.00)'. This item is valid only when 'ACC>COIN' is set to '4'.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1-65535
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > ACC > COIN (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > ACC > UNIT-PRC (Level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-
MIC-TUN	1	Title	Manual tuning for voice recognition microphone
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when manually adjusting the voice acquisition level sensitivity for the input device connected by the user. This item is used to make an adjustment when the sensitivity of the microphone is not increased by manual tuning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0-255
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	128
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The setting of automatic tuning can be made in the user mode; initial settings/registration > system control > voice control settings > tuning of microphone

17.6.1.25 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE (1/2)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-75

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
IMG-CONT	1	Title	Print server connection setting
		Purpose of use	Make the connection setting with the print server.
		When used	At installation
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode (print server unconnected) 1: Not in use 2: Not in use 3: Print server connected 4: Not in use 5: Not in use
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. Then enter the specified value and press [OK] key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	

When the value is set to 1, the values of the following user mode items return to the standard values of EFI.
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > IP address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Subnet mask
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Gateway address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Communication method
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Ethernet type
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Activation time

The following user mode settings are set to OFF.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of DHCP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of RARP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of BOOTP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Automatic detection
- System administration setting > Network setting > Use of spool function

When the value is set to 3 or 4, the following settings are set to OFF in addition to the items mentioned above.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > RAW setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > LPD setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IPP printing
- System administration setting > Network setting > SMB setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > FTP print setting > Use of FTP print
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > BMLinkS setting > Use of BMLinkS
- System administration setting > Network setting > NetWare setting > Use of NetWare

Since the items mentioned above do not recover even when you set the value back to '0 (Normal mode)', make the setting again whenever necessary.

17.6.1.26 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE (2/2)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-76

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
AP-OPT	2	Title	Enable/disable print setting from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to enable/disable print setting from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Print permission with the specified account 1: Print permission without an account 2: No print permission (Only specified department ID can be printed.)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
AP-ACCNT	2	Title	Department ID setting of a print job from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed
		Purpose of use, When used	Make a department ID setting of a print job from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 9999999
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
AP-CODE	2	Title	Pass code setting from the print server
		Purpose of use, When used	Make a pass code setting from the print server.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 9999999
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NWCT-TM	2	Title	Timeout setting for keeping a network connection
		Purpose of use, When used	Make a timeout setting for keeping the network connection between the host machine and the PC application. (Keep alive setting)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 5
		Unit	Minute
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Main assumed PC application: Network print application, Email function, Remote copy printer function, MEAP network application, etc.
CNT-TYPE	1	Title	Print server connection switching switch
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used at print server installation. Switch the connected print server.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 999: EFI controller ID
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.27 COPIER > OPTION > COMBO

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-77

COPIER > OPTION > COMBO			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PPR-SLCT	1	Title	Setting switch for weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination (paper type)
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Plain paper, 2: Thick paper, 3: Envelope, 4: Tracing paper, 5: OHP, 6: Postcard, 7: Label, 8: Bond paper
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > PPR-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > MOD-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > ENV-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-TM (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-LV (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	The weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination is enabled by making the following settings. 1: Output condition: Make the settings of "COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > (1)PPR-SLCT(paper type) / (2)MOD-SLCT(pickup mode) / (3)ENV-SLCT(selection of environment)" and register them in TR-SW1 to 5. 2: Make the settings of "COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > (1)TR-TP-TM (application time) / (2)TR-TP-LV (application level)".
MOD-SLCT	1	Title	Setting switch for weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination (pickup mode)
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Single-sided, 2: 2nd page of double-sided printing (paper picked up from a cassette), 3: 2nd page of double-sided printing (paper picked up from manual feed tray)
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > PPR-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > MOD-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > ENV-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-TM (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-LV (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	The weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination is enabled by making the following settings. 1: Output condition: Make the settings of "COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > (1)PPR-SLCT(paper type) / (2)MOD-SLCT(pickup mode) / (3)ENV-SLCT(selection of environment)" and register them in TR-SW1 to 5. 2: Make the settings of "COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > (1)TR-TP-TM (application time) / (2)TR-TP-LV (application level)".
ENV-SLCT	1	Title	Setting switch for weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination (selection of environment)
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Low humidity 2: Rather low humidity 3: Normal humidity 4: Rather high humidity 5: High humidity
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	3
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > PPR-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > MOD-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > ENV-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-TM (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-LV (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	The weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination is enabled by making the following settings. 1: Output condition: Make the settings of "COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > (1)PPR-SLCT(paper type) / (2)MOD-SLCT(pickup mode) / (3)ENV-SLCT(selection of environment)" and register them in TR-SW1 to 5. 2: Make the settings of "COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > (1)TR-TP-TM (application time) / (2)TR-TP-LV (application level)".

COPIER > OPTION > COMBO			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-SW1/2/3/4/5	1	Title	Setting for weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination
		Purpose of use, When used	-
		Precautions for use	Register the following installation to this switch. COPIER>OPTION>COMBO>PPR-SLCT/ MOD-SLCT/ENV-SLCT
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Use necessary combinations of the three service mode items mentioned above. 2) Select from TR-SW1 through 5. 3) Set '1' for the selected switch. * When these requirements are satisfied, weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination becomes enabled. ** When setting '1' for any of TR-SW1 through 5 and selecting from TR-SW1 through 5, the setting of the selected switch is displayed in COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > PPR-SLCT / MOD-SLCT / ENV-SLCT. Weak bias at the lead edge of transfer destination becomes enabled when the settings mentioned above and below are made. COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > (1)TR-TP-TM (application time) / (2)TR-TP-LV (application level)
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > PPR-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > MOD-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > OPTION > COMBO > ENV-SLCT (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-TM (Level 1) COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > TR-TP-LV (Level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.1.28 COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-78

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
Transfer Invalidation Procedure: 1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it. 2) Enter '0', and press the OK key. The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
ST-SEND	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the SEND function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-SEND	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This mode is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the SEND function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-ENPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-ENPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-SPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-SPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-EXPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PDF expansion kit upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PDF expansion kit.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	PDF expansion kit = Encrypted PDF + Searchable PDF
TR-EXPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PDF expansion kit upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PDF expansion kit.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when it is for inside Japan and the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	PDF expansion kit = Encrypted PDF + Searchable PDF
ST-PDFDR	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PDF direct print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PDF direct print function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-PDFDR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PDF direct print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PDF direct print function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-SCR	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the encrypted secure print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the encrypted secure print function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-SCR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the encrypted secure print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the encrypted secure print function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the '3DES+USH-H' board has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-HDCLR	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the HDD encryption/erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the HDD encryption/erase function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the '3DES+USH-H' board has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-HDCLR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the HDD encryption/erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the HDD encryption/erase function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the '3DES+USH-H' board has been installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-BRDIM	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the BarDIMM upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the BarDIMM.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-BRDIM	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the BarDIMM upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the BarDIMM.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-VNC	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the VNC upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the VNC.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-VNC	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the VNC.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-WEB	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the WEB browser upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the WEB browser.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-WEB	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the WEB browser upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the WEB browser.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-HRPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the high-compression PDF function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the high-compression PDF function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-HRPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the high-compression PDF function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the high-compression PDF function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-TRSND	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the trial SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the trial SEND function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-TRSND	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the trial SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the trial SEND function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-WTMRK	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the secure watermark print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the secure watermark print function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-WTMRK	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the secure watermark print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the secure watermark print function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-TSPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the time stamp PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the time stamp PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-TSPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the time stamp PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the time stamp PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-USPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the digital user signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the digital user signature PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-USPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the license key of the digital user signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the digital user signature PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-DVPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the digital device signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the digital device signature PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-DVPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the digital device signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the digital device signature PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-SCPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the scalable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the scalable PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-SCPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the installation status of the scalable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the scalable PDF transmission function.
		Precautions to use	This item is valid only when the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-AMS	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the ACQ upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the ACQ.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-AMS	1	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the ACQ upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the ACQ.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-ERDS	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function (the function to send the account counter to the 3rd party's account server).
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-ERDS	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PS	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PS upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PS function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-PS	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PS function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PCL	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PCL function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-PCL	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PCL function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PSLI5	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX(UFR II) upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX(UFR II).
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-PSLI5	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX(UFR II) upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX(UFR II) function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-LIPS5	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4 upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-LIPS5	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4 upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-LIPS4	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the LIPS IV function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the LIPS IV function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-LIPS4	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the LIPS IV function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the LIPS IV function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PSPCL	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PS/PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PS/PCL function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-PSPCL	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS/PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PS/PCL function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PCLUF	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PCL/UFR function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-PCLUF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PCL/UFR function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PSLIP	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PS and LIPS function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PS and LIPS function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-PSLIP	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS and LIPS function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PS and LIPS function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PSPCU	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the PS/PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the PS/PCL/UFR function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-PSPCU	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS/PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the PS/PCL/UFR function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-LXUFR	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-LXUFR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-HDCR2	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the HDD erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the HDD erase function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-HDCR2	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the HDD erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Display the transfer license key of the HDD erase function.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-USB-M	2	Title	Displaying the installation status of the function of printing from the USB memory / the function of data saving into the USB memory upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the installation status of the function of printing from memory media.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-USB-M	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the function of printing from the USB memory / the function of data saving into the USB memory upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used when replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine. Obtain the transfer license key to use the print function from memory media by other MFP machine.
		Precautions to use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Value at time of shipment from factory/Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.6.2 FEEDER

17.6.2.1 FEEDER > OPTION

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-79

FEEDER > OPTION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SIZE-SW	1	Title	On/off of detection of mixed originals of the AB and INCH size configuration
		Purpose	-
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: Not detect mixing, 1: Detect mixing
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	-
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.6.3 SORTER

17.6.3.1 SORTER > OPTION

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-80

SORTER > OPTION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
BLNK-SW	1	Title	Settings of margin width (W) at both sides of folding position for using the saddle stitcher
		Purpose	To set the margin (W) on both sides of the holding position for using the saddle stitcher
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: Normal 1: Wide 2: Full image (no margin)
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	2
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	2
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
MD-SPRTN	1	Title	Settings for reduced operation without stopping the operation in the case of error occurrences in the finisher
		Purpose	To perform a reduced operation without stopping the operation in the case of error occurrences in the finisher
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: Normal 1: Not perform stapling and alignment with the finisher. (Perform reduced operations).
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.6.4 BOARD

17.6.4.1 BOARD > OPTION

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-81

BOARD > OPTION			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
MENU-1 to MENU-4	2	Title	Display of level 1 to 4 in the printer setting menu
		Purpose	At a user's request
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: hide 1: display
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
FONTDL	1	Title	Switching to hide/display the service settings screen for the fonts to list on the PS Chinese character font downloader
		Purpose	To switch the display setting of the service settings screen for the fonts to list on the PS Chinese character font downloader
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: hide 1: display
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select (highlight) the item, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

17.7 TEST (Test Print Mode)

17.7.1 COPIER

17.7.1.1 COPIER > TEST > PG

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-82

COPIER > TEST > PG			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TYPE	1	Title	Test print
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used at trouble analysis. Input a type number for test print, and press the Start key to perform test print.
		Precautions for use	Be sure to return to 0 after completing test print.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal print 1-3: For development 4: Solid white 5: Halftone (density: 80H, Tbic rank 2, without image correction) 6: Halftone (density: 80H, 134line screen or 141 line screen, without image correction) 7: Solid black 8: Horizontal line (4dot, 27 space) 9: Horizontal line (6dot, 50 space) 10: Horizontal line (2 dot, 3 space) 11: Halftone (density: 60H, Tbic rank 2, without image correction) 12: Halftone (density: 80H, 134line screen or 141 line screen, without image 13: Halftone (density: 30H, Tbic rank 2, without image correction) 14: Halftone (density: 30H, 134line screen or 141 line screen, without image 15-50: For development
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > TEST > PG			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TXPH	1	Title	Setting of an image mode for test print
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used at trouble analysis. Make the setting of an image mode for test print output.
		Precautions for use	This item is valid only for test print.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Error diffusion 1: Screen with small line number [113 to 190 lines] 2: Screen with large line number [200 to 268 lines] 3: Screen for COPY [around 220 lines] 4: Screen for REOS [no screen structure]
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PG-PICK	1	Title	Selection of a cassette used for test print
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used at trouble analysis. Select a cassette used for test print output.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Cassette 1, 2: Cassette 2, 3: Cassette 3 (Optional Cassette 1), 4: Cassette 4 (Optional Cassette 2), 5: Side paper deck, 6: Manual feed tray, 7-8: Not used
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2-SIDE	1	Title	Setting of PG 2-sided mode
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used at trouble analysis. Make the setting of 1-sided/2-sided for the PG to output.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Single sided 1: Double sided
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PG-QTY	1	Title	Setting of PG count
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used at trouble analysis. Make the setting of the number of PG to output.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 999
		Unit	-
		Values established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.7.1.2 COPIER > TEST > NETWORK

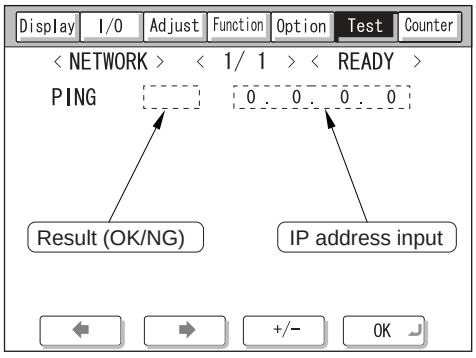
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-83

COPIER > TEST > NETWORK			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PING	1	Title	Checking the network-related connections
		Purpose of use, When used	This item is used to check the network connection at installation or to check a problem in the network connection. Check the connection between this machine and network (only for TCP/IP).
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IPV6-ADR	1	Title	PING (IPv6) destination address
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the destination address to send PING in the setting of COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING-IP6.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	IPv6 address: 39 characters maximum including hexadecimal characters (0-9, a-f) and a separator (:) The character string must have consistency as an IPv6 address.
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING-IP6
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > TEST > NETWORK			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PING-IP6	1	Title	Sending PING to the specified IPv6 address
		Purpose of use, When used	Send PING to the specified IPv6 address.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>IPV6-ADR
		Additional description and notes	-
IPSECPOL	1	Title	Polling test for the IPSec encryption board
		Purpose of use, When used	Check whether hardware trouble has occurred to the IPSec encryption board.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	- Select the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to start the test. It takes about 3 minutes for the test. - The test result is displayed as OK/NG. <Details of NG> 0: No board is recognized. 1: NG item is included in the test result.
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IPSECINT	1	Title	Interrupt test for the IPSec encryption board
		Purpose of use, When used	Check whether hardware trouble has occurred to the IPSec encryption board.
		Precautions for use	- Select the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to start the test. It takes about 3 minutes for the test. - The test result is displayed as OK/NG. <Details of NG> 0: No board is recognized. 1: NG item is included in the test result.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	None
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

1) Press the switch at the operating section long for the shutdown sequence and turn the main power switch OFF.
2) Connect the network cable to this machine and turn the main power switch ON.
3) Notify the system administrator that the machine has been installed to request network setup.
4) Notify the system administrator of the network connection check plan and check the PING remote host address (IP address of a PC terminal in the user network).
5) Select the service mode (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the IP address checked at Step 4 from the ten-key pad of the operating section, and press the OK key and the Start key.
   - Once the network has been connected normally, OK is displayed. (End)
   - If NG is displayed, check the connection of the network cable first. If the network cable is connected normally, do Step 6 and later. If the network cable is not connected normally, repeat Step 5.
6) Select the service mode (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the loopback address *(127.0.0.1), and press the OK key and the Start key.
   - If NG is displayed, the TCP/IP setting of the local machine may be wrong. Return to Step 3 and check the setting again.
   - If OK is displayed, the TCP/IP setting of the local machine seems correct but the network controller (main controller circuit board) may be faulty. Check the controller at Step 7.
   *: Since the loopback address signal is returned before the network controller, the TCP/IP setting of the local machine can be checked.
7) Select the service mode (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the local host address (IP address of the local machine), and press the OK key.
   - If NG is displayed, the IP address of the local machine may be wrong or the network controller may be faulty. Check the IP address with the system administrator or replace the main controller circuit board.
   - If OK is displayed, there seem to be no problems about the network setting of the local machine or the network controller.
   Then the problem may be attributable to the user network environment. Report this to the system administrator and request action.



F-17-16

17.7.1.3 COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-84

COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
CAPOFFON	1	Title	Switch to enable the built-in packet capture function
		Purpose of use, When used	Enable the function of capturing network data.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The function is turned off. 1: The function is turned on.
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STT-STP	1	Title	Manual switch to stop the start of capturing
		Purpose of use, When used	Manually start or stop network capturing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CAPSTATE	1	Title	Displaying the status of the network capture function.
		Purpose of use, When used	Display the status of the network capture function.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	When this item is selected in the screen, the current status is displayed. (Unless selection is made, the status is not updated.) <Details of display> "RUNNING": Operation is running. "STOP": Operation is being stopped. "FILERR": Operation is being stopped due to a filter setting error. "HDDFULL": Operation is being stopped due to HDD Full. "GENERROR": Operation is being stopped due to other errors.
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PONSTART	1	Title	Setting of whether to start network capture at power-on
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to start network capture when the power is on.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Do not tart capturing when the power is turned on. 1: Start capturing when the power is turned on.
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
KEEPCAP	1	Title	Setting of whether to continue capturing operation after the power is turned OFF/ON
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to continue capturing operation after the power is turned OFF/ON if capturing operation has been executed before the power is turned OFF. When PONSTART is set to ON, capturing operation starts even if KEEPCAP is set to OFF.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Do not continue capturing operation. (When the power is turned OFF during capturing operation, the capturing operation does not continue after the power is turned ON next time.) 1: Continue capturing operation. (When the power is turned OFF during capturing operation, the capturing operation continues after the power is turned ON next time.)
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OVERWRIT	1	Title	Setting for overwriting of captured data
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to continue capturing operation while deleting old captured data when the HDD area to save captured data has become full.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: When HDD becomes full, stop capturing operation. 1: When HDD becomes full, delete old captured data and continue capturing operation.
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > TEST > NET-CAP			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FILTER	1	Title	Filter setting for the capture function
		Purpose of use, When used	Switch the filter setting for the capture function.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Only acquire a packet destined to the machine. (no promiscuous mode) 1: Use the setting file. 2: No filter setting is made. (promiscuous mode)
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PAYLOAD	1	Title	Setting of whether to discard the payload
		Purpose of use, When used	Set whether to discard the payload before saving the packet data.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Save the captured packet data without discarding the payload. 1: Discard the payload and save the packet data.
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TIMERSTT	1	Title	Setting of the time to start capturing
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the time to start capturing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	yyyy: Year, mm: Month, dd: Day, HH: Hour, MM: Minute Example) -2008/03/28 12:00
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TIMERSTP	1	Title	Setting of the time to end capturing
		Purpose of use, When used	Set the time to end capturing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	yyyy: Year, mm: Month, dd: Day, HH: Hour, MM: Minute Example) -2008/03/28 15:00
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SET-CLR	1	Title	Initialization of the capture setting
		Purpose of use, When used	Initialize the capture setting value. Values set for POSTART/KEEPCAP/OVERWRIT/FILTER/ PAYLOAD/TIMERSTT/TIMERSTP return to default values.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FILE-CLR	1	Title	Initialization of the captured data
		Purpose of use, When used	Delete the captured packet data file.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

17.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode)

17.8.1 COPIER

17.8.1.1 COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-85

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000. MEMO: Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
SERVICE1	1	Title	Total counter 1 for service
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
SERVICE2	1	Title	Total counter 2 for service
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
COPY	1	Title	Total copy counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
PDL-PRT	1	Title	PDL print counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
FAX-PRT	1	Title	FAX reception print counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	Clearing can be performed.
RMT-PRT	1	Title	Remote print counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	Clearing can be performed.
BOX-PRT	1	Title	BOX print counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	Clearing can be performed.
RPT-PRT	1	Title	Report print counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	Clearing can be performed.
2-SIDE	1	Title	Double-sided copy/print counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	Clearing can be performed.
SCAN	1	Title	Scan counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	Clearing can be performed.

17.8.1.2 COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-86

COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
C1	1	Title	Total paper counter fed from cassette 1
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
C2	1	Title	Total paper counter fed from cassette 2
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
C3	1	Title	Total paper counter fed from cassette 3
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
C4	1	Title	Total paper counter fed from cassette 4
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
MF	1	Title	Manual feed tray pickup total counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
DK	1	Title	Side paper deck pickup total counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
2-SIDE	1	Title	Double-sided pickup total counter
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-

17.8.1.3 COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-87

COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FEED	1	Title	Total counter for document fed by ADF
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Additional description and notes	-
DFOP-CNT	1	Title	ADF open/close hinge counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	One count-up is performed each time the ADF is opened/closed.
		Additional description and notes	-

17.8.1.4 COPIER > COUNTER > JAM

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-88

COPIER > COUNTER > JAM			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TOTAL	1	Title	Total jam counter for the printer
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
FEEDER	1	Title	Total jam counter for the feeder
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
SORTER	1	Title	Total jam counter for the finisher
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
2-SIDE	1	Title	Jam counter for the unit for double-sided copy
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
MF	1	Title	Jam counter for the manual feed tray
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
C1	1	Title	Jam counter for the cassette 1
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
C2	1	Title	Jam counter for the cassette 2
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
C3	1	Title	Jam counter for the cassette 3
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
C4	1	Title	Jam counter for the cassette 4
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
DK	1	Title	Jam counter for the side paper deck
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-

17.8.1.5 COPIER > COUNTER > MISC

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-89

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
LSR-MTR	1	Title	Laser scanner motor counter
		When used	This item is used as a guide to judge whether to replace the laser scanner unit.
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
ALLPW-ON	1	Title	Counter for starting the non-all night power supply
		When used	This item is used as a guide to judge whether to replace the power supply unit.
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-
HDD-ON	1	Title	HDD activation counter
		When used	This item is used as a guide to judge whether to replace the HDD.
		Unit	Count
		Additional description and notes	-

Counts in the Service Mode <MISC> are categorized into the following 5 count types.

"Type 1:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full-color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts"

"Type 2:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full-color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts"

"Type 3:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full-color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts"

"Type 4:
B&W/Full-color: 1 count"

"Type 5:
B&W: Not counted Full-color: 1 count"

17.8.1.6 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-90

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000. This item is used to check the target of replacing durable parts. Be sure to clear the value of the relevant item after replacing parts.			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
TR-ROLL	1	Title	Paper counter for the transfer roller
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SP-SC-EL	1	Title	Separation static charge eliminator high-voltage ON counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DVG-CYL	1	Title	Developing cylinder rotation counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C1-PU-RL	1	Title	Cassette 1 pickup roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C1-SP-RL	1	Title	Cassette 1 separation roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C1-FD-RL	1	Title	Cassette 1 feed roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C2-PU-RL	1	Title	Cassette 2 pickup roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 **When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.** **This item is used to check the target of replacing durable parts.** **Be sure to clear the value of the relevant item after replacing parts.**			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
C2-SP-RL	1	Title	Cassette 2 separation roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C2-FD-RL	1	Title	Cassette 2 feed roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
M-PU-RL	1	Title	Manual feed roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
M-SP-PD	1	Title	Manual feed separation pad counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-LW-RL	1	Title	Fixing lower roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-FILM	1	Title	Fixing film counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-CL-RL	1	Title	Fixing cleaning roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-LW-BR	1	Title	Pressure roller bearing counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FL-WD	1	Title	Fixing unit counter (wide-width paper)
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Count up by 1 when the paper with main scanning width of 279.4mm or more passes through
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FL-NRW	1	Title	Fixing unit counter (narrow-width paper)
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Count up by 1 when the paper with main scanning width of less than 279.4mm passes through
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 **When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.** **This item is used to check the target of replacing durable parts.** **Be sure to clear the value of the relevant item after replacing parts.**			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
OZ-FIL1	1	Title	Ozone filter fan counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-

<How to see periodically replaced/durable parts counter>
This machine has periodically replaced/durable parts counter (PRDC-1/DRBL-1/DRBL-2), which can be used to check the target of replacing periodically replaced/durable parts.

<Example>

PRE-WIRE / 00000027 / 00500000 / 0% !! 82
[1] [2] [3] [4] [5] [6]

F-17-17

[1]: Parts name is displayed. Primary charging wire in the example.
[2]: Counter value (actual usage of sheets) is displayed. Clear the value by clear key at replacement of parts.
[3]: Limit value (target of replacement) is displayed. The value can be changed by selecting an item and pressing the numeric key. After changing, press the OK key.
[4]: The ratio of the counter value to the limit value is displayed.
[5]: One mark (!) is displayed when the ratio is 90 to 100%. Two marks (!) is displayed at 100% or more. Not displayed in the example mentioned above.
[6]: Predicted number of days to replacement is displayed. 82 days in the example.

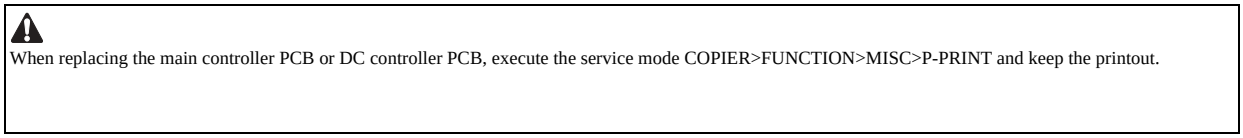
<DRBL-1> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB

T-CLN-BD, TR-BLT, TR-ROLL, 1TR-STC, 2TR-INRL, CLN-BLD, CL-SUPS, BS-SL-F, BS-SL-R, C1-PU-RL, C1-SP-RL, C1-FD-RL, C2-PU-RL, C2-SP-RL, C2-FD-RL, C3-PU-RL, C3-SP-RL, C3-FD-RL, C4-PU-RL, C4-SP-RL, C4-FD-RL, M-PU-RL, M-SP-RL, FX-IN-BS, FX-WEB, FX-EX-RL, FX-EX-BS, DLV-UCLW, DLV-LCLW, FX-LB-ST, FX-LB-PD, FX-LB-PC, FX-LB-OR, FX-EX-C1, DEV-CL, BS-SL-F2, BS-SL-R2, DMR-CLN, 2TR-BLD, 2TR-CLN

- DC controller PCB

DV-UNT-C, DV-UNT-Y, DV-UNT-M, DV-UNT-K, FX-UP-RL, FX-BL-CT, TB-CLN2, ITB-CLN1


When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

17.8.1.7 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-17-91

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 **When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.** **This item is used to check the target of replacing durable parts.** **Be sure to clear the value of the relevant item after replacing parts.**			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DF-PU-RL	1	Title	ADF pickup roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1 Count up when 1 sheet of document (not a page) is scanned in both single-sided and double-sided mode
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	Estimated life: 250,000 prints
DF-SP-PL	1	Title	ADF separation plate counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 **When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.** **This item is used to check the target of replacing durable parts.** **Be sure to clear the value of the relevant item after replacing parts.**			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
DF-SP-PD	1	Title	ADF separation pad counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1 Count up by 1 when 1 sheet of document (not a page) is scanned in both single-sided and double-sided mode
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-FD-RL	1	Title	ADF feed roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper1 Single-sided: Count up by 1 when 1 sheet of document is scanned Double-sided: Count up by 3 when 1 sheet of document is scanned (Feed operation is performed three times; for front side, backside, and idle feeding.)
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	Estimated life: 80,000 prints
LNT-TAP1	1	Title	ADF dust collecting tape 1 counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1 Count up by 1 when 1 sheet of document (not a page) is scanned in both single-sided and double-sided mode
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LNT-TAP2	1	Title	ADF dust collecting tape 2 counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1 Count up by 1 when 1 sheet of document (not a page) is scanned in both single-sided and double-sided mode
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LNT-TAP3	1	Title	ADF dust collecting tape 3 counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1 Count up by 1 when 1 sheet of document (not a page) is scanned in both single-sided and double-sided mode
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LNT-TAP4	1	Title	ADF dust collecting tape 4 counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1 Count up by 1 when 1 sheet of document (not a page) is scanned in both single-sided and double-sided mode
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LNT-TAP5	1	Title	ADF dust collecting tape 5 counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1 Count up by 1 when 1 sheet of document (not a page) is scanned in both single-sided and double-sided mode
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STAMP	1	Title	ADF stamp solenoid drive counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 **When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.** **This item is used to check the target of replacing durable parts.** **Be sure to clear the value of the relevant item after replacing parts.**			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
PD-PU-RL	1	Title	Paper deck pickup roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PD-SP-RL	1	Title	Paper deck separation roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PD-FD-RL	1	Title	Paper deck feed roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C3-PU-RL	1	Title	Cassette 3 pickup roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C3-SP-RL	1	Title	Cassette 3 separation roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C3-FD-RL	1	Title	Cassette 3 feed roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C4-PU-RL	1	Title	Cassette 4 pickup roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C4-SP-RL	1	Title	Cassette 4 separation roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C4-FD-RL	1	Title	Cassette 4 feed roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SORT	1	Title	Finisher sort path counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Display/setting/adjustment ranges: 00000000 to 99999999 **When 99999999 is exceeded, the value returns to 00000000.** **This item is used to check the target of replacing durable parts.** **Be sure to clear the value of the relevant item after replacing parts.**			
Item	**Level**	**Description**	
FIN-STPR	1	Title	Finisher staple operation counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SADDLE	1	Title	Finisher saddle operation counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SDL-STPL	1	Title	Finisher saddle staple operation counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PUNCH	1	Title	Punch operation counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FN-BFFRL	1	Title	Finisher buffer roller counter
		Unit	Count
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1, Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Additional description and notes	-

<DRBL-2> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and the main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB

DF-PU-RL, DF-FD-RL, DF-SP-BL, DF-F-BLT, DF-HNG-L, DF-HNG-R, DF-SP-M, DF-DL-RL, DF-DL-M, DF-TRL-U, PD-PU-RL, PD-SP-RL, PD-FD-RL

- DC controller PCB

SORT, FIN-STPR, SADDLE, SDL-STPL, PUNCH, FN-BFFRL, SDL-RL

When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

Chapter 18 Upgrading

Contents

18.1 Outline....18-1
18.1.1 Outline of Upgrading the Machine 18-1
18.1.2 Outline of the Service Support Tool 18-2
18.1.3 Points to Note at Time of Downloading 18-4
18.2 Making Preparations 18-5
18.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST) 18-5
18.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB) 18-7
18.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use) 18-9
18.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use) 18-11
18.3 Formatting the HDD 18-13
18.3.1 Formatting Selected Partitions 18-13
18.3.2 Formatting Procedure 18-14
18.4 Downloading System Software 18-16
18.4.1 Downloading the System Software (ALL) 18-16
18.4.1.1 Outline 18-16
18.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure (Assist mode) 18-18
18.4.1.3 Downloading Procedure (Normal mode) 18-22
18.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single) 18-25
18.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure 18-25
18.4.3 Downloading Dcon and Rcon 18-28
18.4.3.1 Outline 18-28
18.4.4 Downloading G3 FAX 18-29
18.4.4.1 Outline 18-29
18.4.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data 18-30
18.4.5.1 Outline 18-30
18.4.5.2 Uploading Procedure 18-31
18.4.5.3 Downloading Procedure 18-33
18.4.6 Version Upgrade using USB 18-35
18.4.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions 18-35
18.4.6.2 Points to Note 18-36
18.4.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto) 18-37
18.4.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version) 18-38
18.4.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting) 18-39
18.4.6.6 Formatting the HDD 18-41
18.4.6.7 Other Functions 18-42

18.1 Outline

18.1.1 Outline of Upgrading the Machine

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Supported Service Support Tool (hereafter, SST) is version 4.02 or later.

T-18-1

Types of System Software	Description on SST		Upgrade method		Description
	System Software Name	Product name	SST	USB memory	
Main Controller	SYSTEM	iR3245	Yes	Yes	- 1 for inside Japan and 1 for outside Japan. - Includes boot program.
Language Module	LANGUAGE		Yes	Yes	This is the message data displayed in the local UI. This module needs to be installed for each language. Installed languages can be changed from 'User Mode > Common Settings > Language Switch'. The version of the module must be consistent with that of the system.
Remote UI Contents	RUI		Yes	Yes	This is the Remote UI contents accessed from Web browser for the operation of the main body. Installed languages can be selected from the top page of the Remote UI. The version of the module must be consistent with that of the system.
MEAP Library	MEAPCONT		Yes	Yes	MEAPCONT is the standard library to use MEAP.
Voice Guidance Dictionary	TTS		Yes	Yes	This is the voice dictionary data used in the environment where the voice guidance PCB is mounted. This dictionary is used when adding the Voice Guidance Kit (optional).
Voice Operation Dictionary	ASR		Yes	Yes	This dictionary is used when adding the Voice Operation Kit (optional).
WEB Browser	BROWSER		Yes	Yes	BROWSER is the data used for WEB browser display which is the optional function. This is used when adding the Web Access Software (optional).
DC Controller	DCON	iR3245/ iR3225 *2	Yes	Yes	Downloading of DCON is performed by way of the main controller assembly.
Reader Controller	RCON	iR3245	Yes	Yes	Downloading of RCON is performed by way of the main controller assembly.
Timestamp module	TSTAMP		Yes	Yes	- Module to be used for sending the PDF with electrical signature. - Used at additional installation of timestamp PDF extension kit (optional; Japan only)
Media Brand Information File	MEDIA		Yes	Yes	This is the file that includes the media brand information selected as the media type. Upgrading of this file enables the addition of the available media brands.
Simple NAVI	HELP		Yes	Yes	This is the data to display Simple Navi (operation supporting function).
WebDAV Contents	WebDAV		Yes	Yes	This is the module used for the function to send input image to the WebDAV server on internet/intranet. WebDAV: Distributed Authoring and Versioning protocol for the WWW
OCR Dictionary	SDICT	iRYYYY	Yes	Yes	This is the dictionary used for conversion of the image data read from the reader assembly to character codes (OCR processing). This is used when adding the Universal Send PDF Advanced Feature Set (optional).
Encryption Communication Key, Certificate/CA Certificate	KEY		Yes	Yes	This function is used for SSL/e-RDS communication. KEY means the key and the certificate used for encrypted communication on the network.
G3FAX (2 lines) *1 G3FAX (2/3 lines) *1	G3FAX	iR3245	Yes	Yes	
Inside Finisher *1	DCON	Fin_S1	Yes *3	-	
External Finisher *1	CONTROLLER SADDLE	Fin_Y	Yes *3	-	

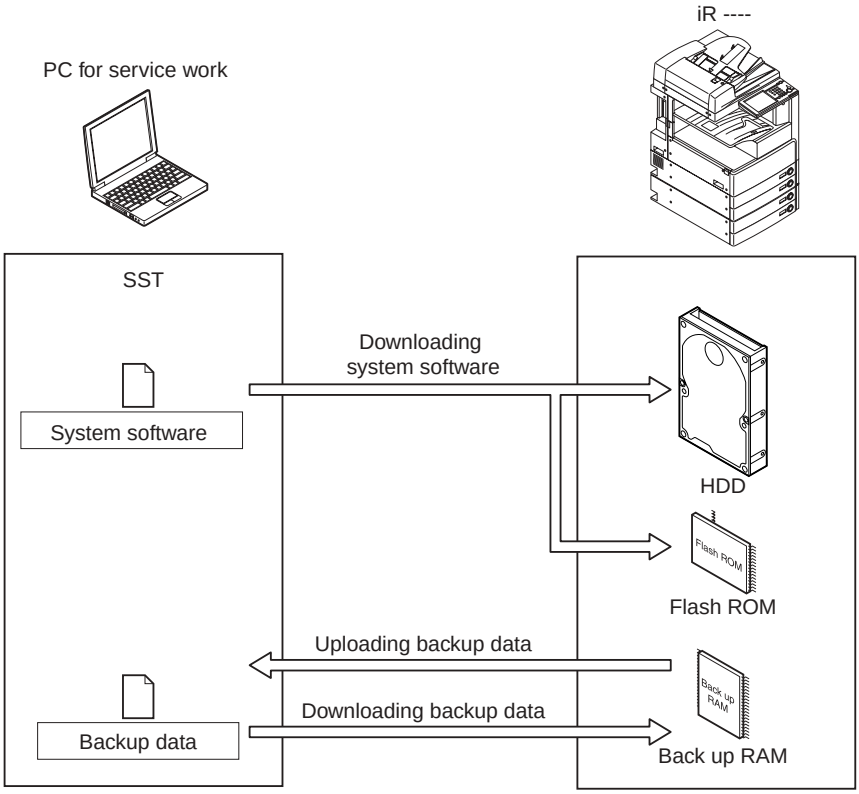
*1: Required only when options are installed.
*2: [iR3245] for iR3245/3235/3230, [iR3225] for iR3225.
*3: Downloader PCB (FY9-2034) is required.

MEMO:
2 types of CPUs, the main CPU (IC51) and the sub CPU (IC45), are equipped with this machine.
The boot program for sub CPU is stored in BootROM on the main controller PCB.
The boot program for main CPU is stored in HDD. There is no BootROM for the main CPU.
Both CPU cannot be upgraded with SST.

18.1.2 Outline of the Service Support Tool

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

The SST has the following functions:



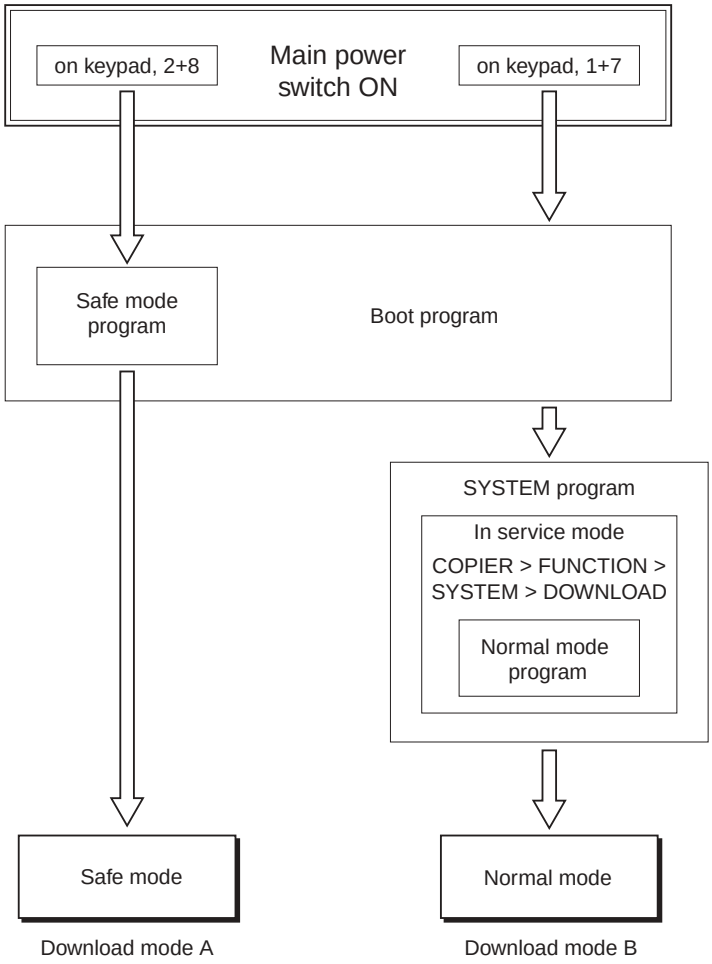
F-18-1

MEMO:
The boot program for main CPU (IC51) is stored in HDD. Thus, this machine cannot start if initializing HDD.

When using SST, enter either of the following download mode.

- **Safe Mode (download mode A)**
  While pressing 2 and 8 keys simultaneously, turn ON the main power switch.

- **Normal Mode (download mode B)**
  While pressing 1 and 7 keys simultaneously, turn ON the main power switch and select: COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DOWNLOAD in service mode, and press [OK].

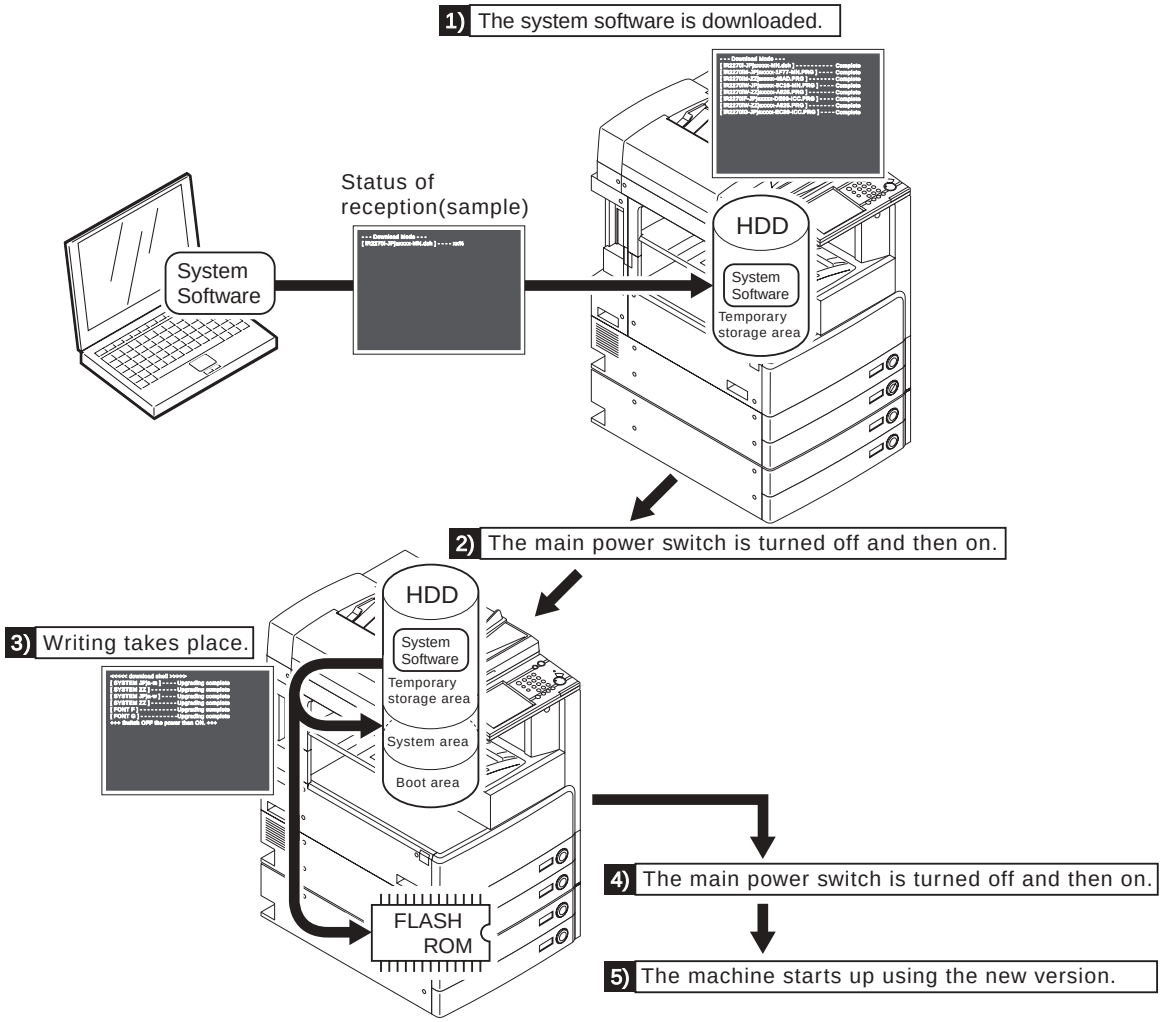


F-18-2

T-18-2

Function	Download mode	
	Safe mode (download mode A)	**Normal mode (download mode B)**
Downloading the system software	-SYSTEM -LANGUAGE -RUI - -DCON -RCON -SDICT -MEAPCONT -KEY	-SYSTEM -LANGUAGE -RUI -G3FAX -DCON -RCON -SDICT -MEAPCONT -KEY
Uploading/downloading backup data	- -MeapBack	-SramRCON -

Download the system software
System software is saved in the temporary storage area on HDD after downloaded with SST (version 4.02 or later).
Restart the machine after download so that it will be written to the system area, Boot area and the flash ROM.
Turn OFF/ON the main power switch and the machine starts with the new version system software.



F-18-3

There are 2 ways to download the system software.

- **Batch download**
  To download various system software collectively
  The system software (combination) that will be downloaded with batch download is stated in the batch download information file ("ALL") which is stored on the system CD. Register the system software in SST to enable the batch download function.

- **Individual download**
  To download the selected system software individually

18.1.3 Points to Note at Time of Downloading

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Do Not Turn Off the Power During Download/Write Operation
Do not turn OFF the power while the system software is being downloaded or written. The machine may fail to start when the power is turned ON.
If the power cannot be turned ON, try to start it in safe mode (press 2 + 8 simultaneously).
If the machine starts in safe mode, download the system software again. If not, replace HDD and download the system software.

Points to Note About Upgrading the DC Controller/Reader Controller
It is recommended to download DCON/RCON in normal mode.
DCON/RCON may be downloaded in either normal mode or safe mode. However, if done in safe mode, the version information of DCON/RCDON will not be obtained. In this case, DCON/RCON on HDD is always overwritten by DCON/RCON on SST regardless of versions; thus it may be downgraded.

18.2 Making Preparations

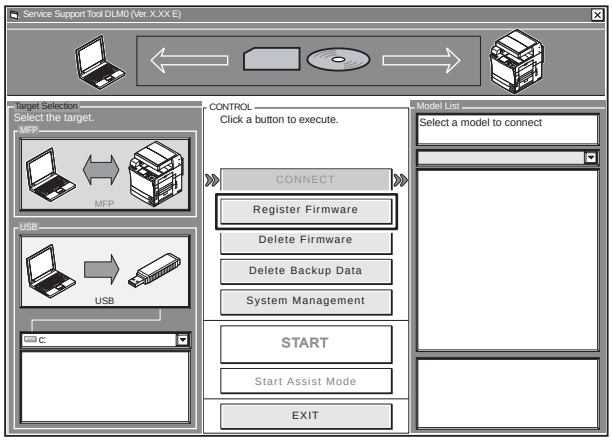
18.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Here, you will be copying the system software found on the System CD to the SST.

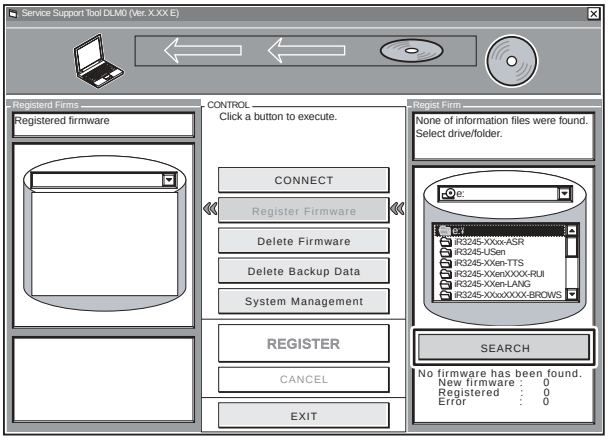
Preparatory Work
Requirements:
- PC installed with SST version 4.02 or later
- System CD for this machine

Installing the System Software
1) Turn on the PC.
2) Set the System CD in the PC.
3) Start up the SST.
4) Click [Register Firmware].



F-18-4

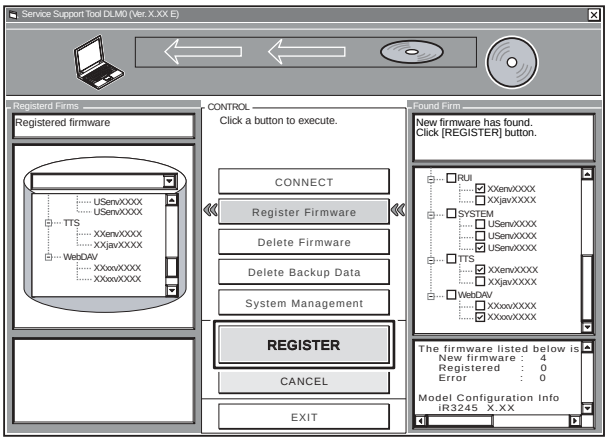
5) Select the drive in which the System CD has been set, and click [SEARCH].



F-18-5

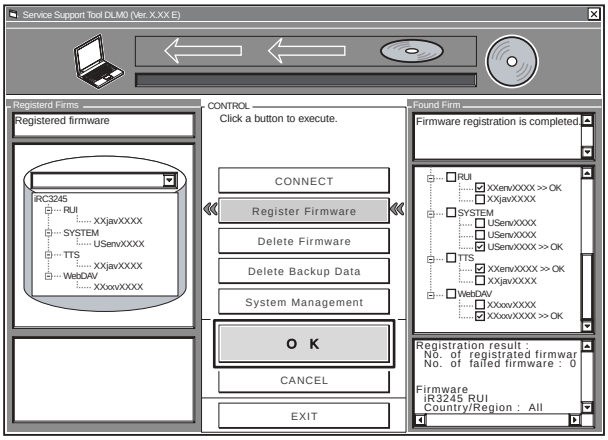
MEMO:
"XXXXX" in the figure represents the version of system software. Same in the subsequent figures.

6) A list of system software found on the System CD appears.
Remove the check marks from the folders and software files you do not need, and click [REGISTER].



F-18-6

7) When a message has appeared to indicate that the system software has been installed, click [OK].



F-18-7

18.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Here, you will be copying the system software from the SST to a USB device.

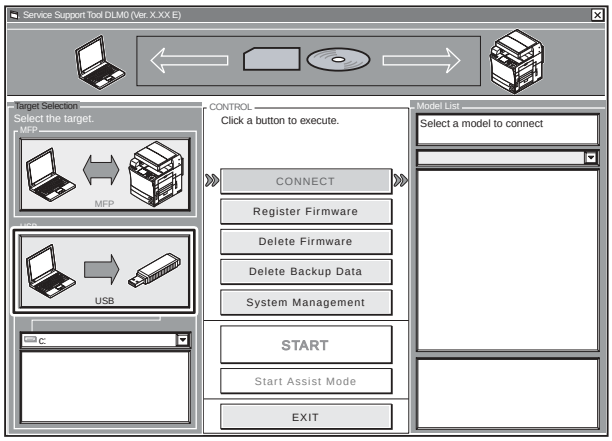
Preparatory Work
Preparation:
- PC installed with SST version 4.02 or later
- USB device (*)

*: USB Requirements

Interface:	USB 1.1 or higher (USB 2.0 or recommended)
Capacity:	1 GB or more recommended (A set of system software is in excess of 512 MB.)
Format:	FAT (FAT16), FAT32 (It must not be NTFS or HFS.) single partition (There must not be multiple partitions.)

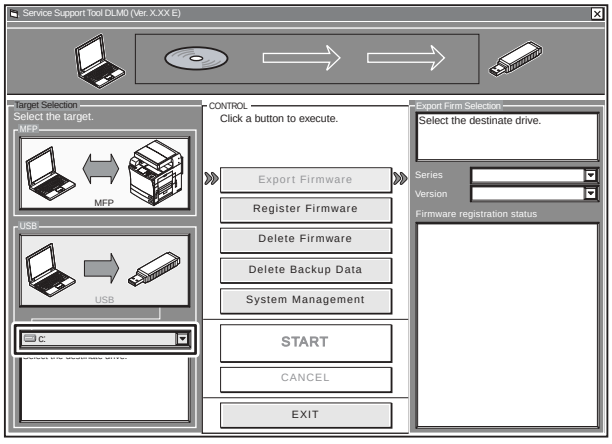
⚠
You cannot use a security-protected USB device. Be sure to remove the protection before use.

Copying the System Software
1) Start up the PC.
2) Connect the USB device to the USB port of the PC.
3) Start up the SST.
4) Click the USB icon on the Target Selection screen.



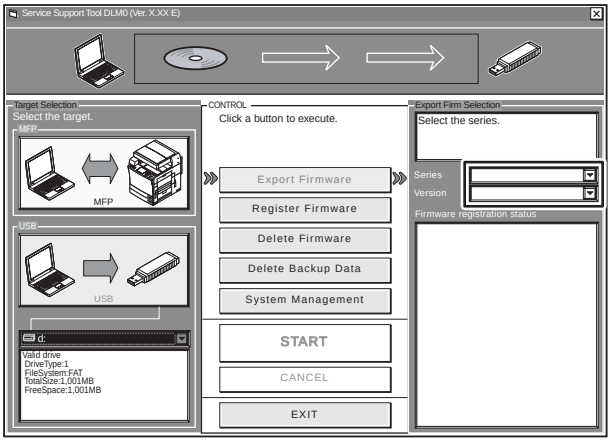
F-18-8

5) Select the drive (removable disk drive) to which the USB device has been connected.



F-18-9

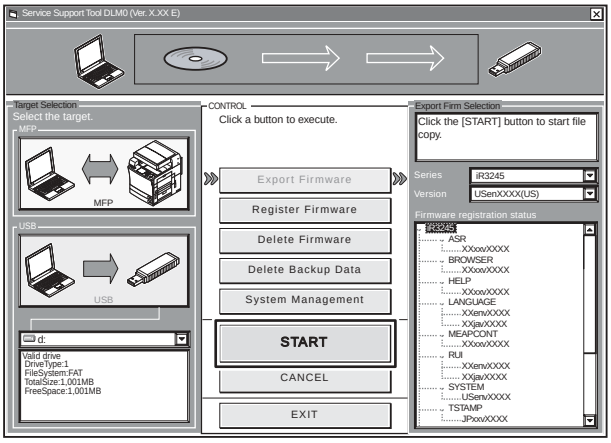
6) Select the appropriate 'Series' and 'Version' of the system software you want to copy.



F-18-10

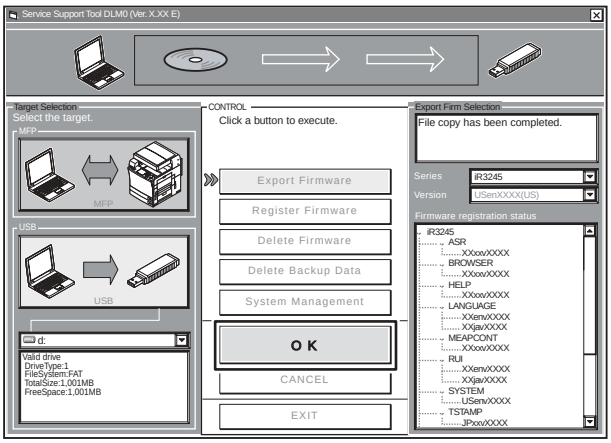
MEMO:
The notations that appear in the column under "Firmware registration status" mean the following:
Y: exists in the SST.
N: does not exist in the SST.

7) Click [START] so that copying to the USB device starts.



F-18-11

8) When done, click [OK].



F-18-12

18.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

You are now ready to connect the PC to the machine.

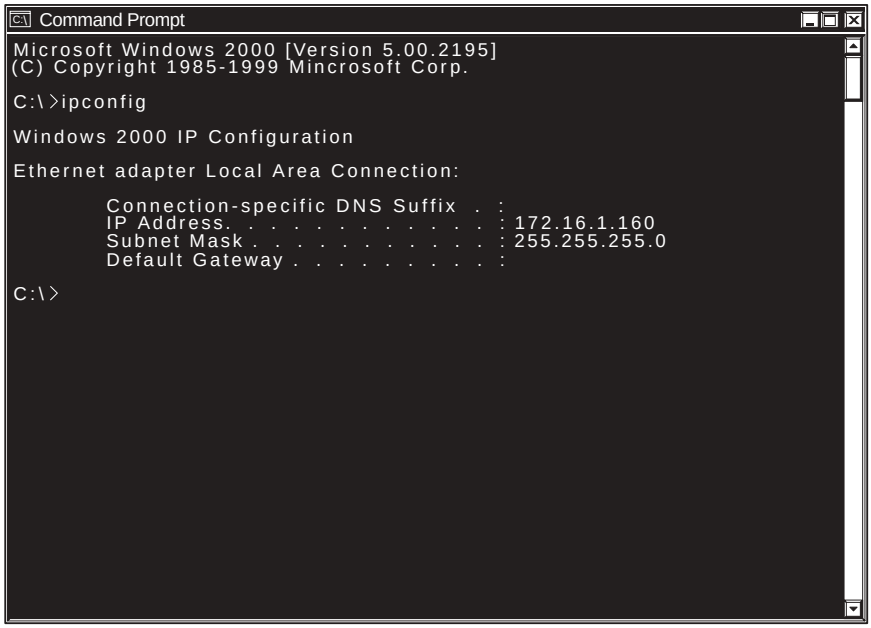
Preparatory Work
Items to Prepare:
- PC to which the SST (version 4.02 or later) and the system software for the machine
- Twisted pair cross cable
  10Base-T: Category 3 or 5
  100Base-TX: Category 5
  1000Base-T: Enhanced Category 5 (CAT5e) or higher

> ⚠
> If a USB device is connected, make sure to remove it.
> When the machine recognizes a USB device, it does not make a communication with SST; thus, USB device and SST cannot be used simultaneously.

Procedure
1) Start up the PC.
2) Check the network settings of the PC.
2-1) At the command prompt, type 'IPCONFIG', and press the Return key.
2-2) Make sure that the network setting is as below.
IP address: 172.16.1.160
subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
default gateway: any

> ⚠
> Do not use the following IP address:
> - 172.16.1.0
> - 172.16.1.100
> - 172.16.1.255

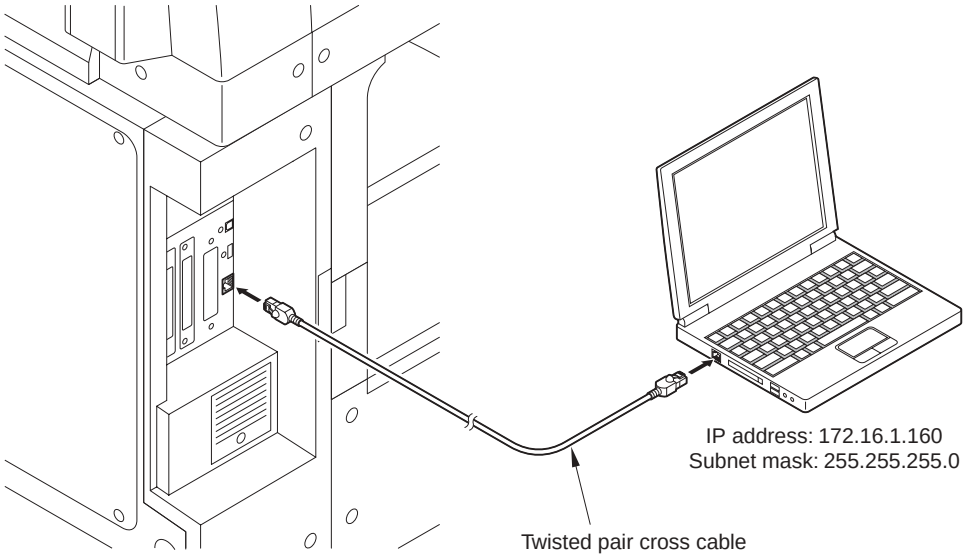
If the settings are not as indicated below, make the appropriate changes:



F-18-13

3) Check to see that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off, and turn off the power of the machine as described below.
3-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
3-2) Shut down the machine by following the instruction on the control panel.
The main power switch will turn off automatically.

4) Connect the PC to the machine using a twisted pair cross cable.



F-18-14

5) Start the machine in appropriate download mode.

- In case of normal mode

While pressing 1 and 7 simultaneously, turn ON the main power switch.
After the machine starts up, select: COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DOWNLOAD in service mode and press [OK].

- In case of safe mode

While pressing 2 + 8 simultaneously, turn ON the main power switch.

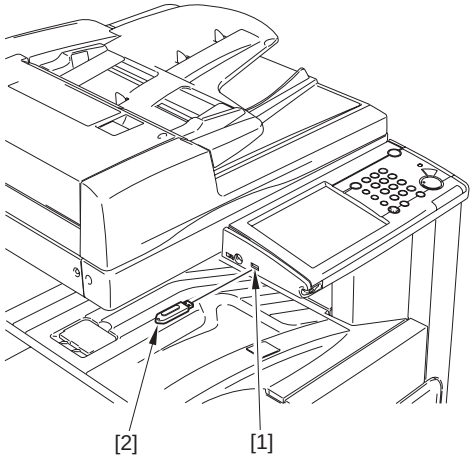
18.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

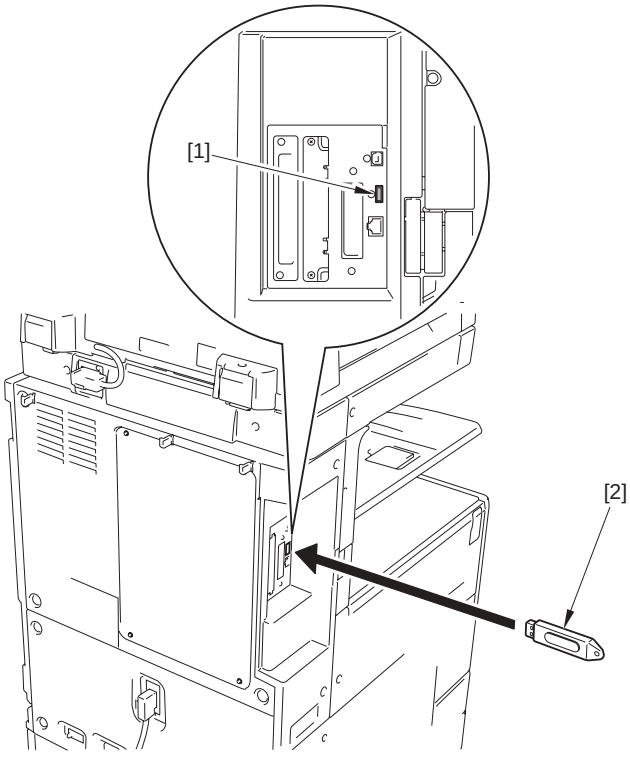
⚠
The SST cannot be run while the USB device is in use. (The machine will not communicate with the SST when it detects the presence of a USB device.)

Preparatory Work
Requirements: USB device to which the system software has been copied.

Procedure
1) Check to see that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off, and turn off the power of the machine as described below.
1-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
1-2) Shut down the machine by following the instruction on the control panel.
The main power switch will turn off automatically.
2) Connect the USB device [2] to the USB port [1].



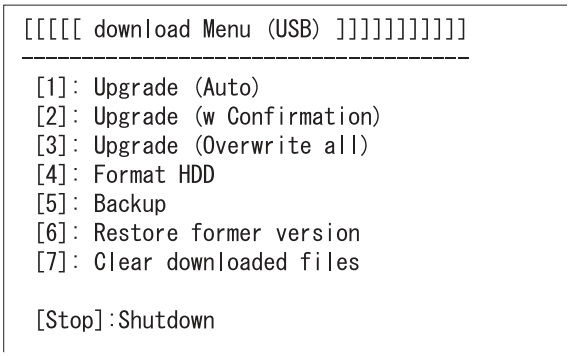
F-18-15



F-18-16

3) If a twisted pair cross cable is connected to the machine, disconnect it.
4) Start the machine in appropriate download mode.
- **In case of normal mode**
  While pressing 1 and 7 simultaneously, turn ON the main power switch.
  After the machine starts up, select: COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DOWNLOAD in service mode and press [OK].
- **In case of safe mode**
  While pressing 2 + 8 simultaneously, turn ON the main power switch.

See the following menu appearing on the control panel, indicating that the machine has recognized the presence of a USB device (The figure represents the normal mode).



F-18-17

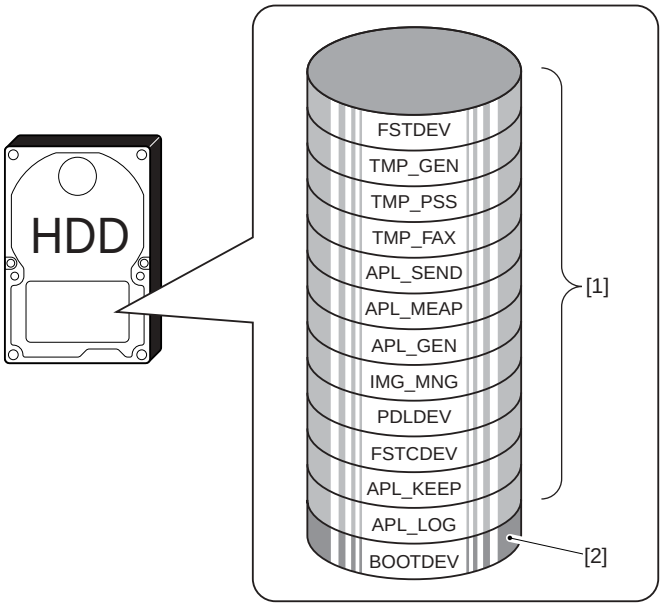
The machine may not recognize a USB device depending on manufacturers or types.
This machine continues to search a USB device up to 60 sec at the maximum after power-ON and if it cannot recognize anything, the foregoing menu will not be displayed.
If such is the case, obtain an appropriate USB device.

18.3 Formatting the HDD

18.3.1 Formatting Selected Partitions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

You can also format (initialize) only those partitions that you select.
Note that only BOOTDEV can be selected and it can be formatted in safe mode only.



F-18-18

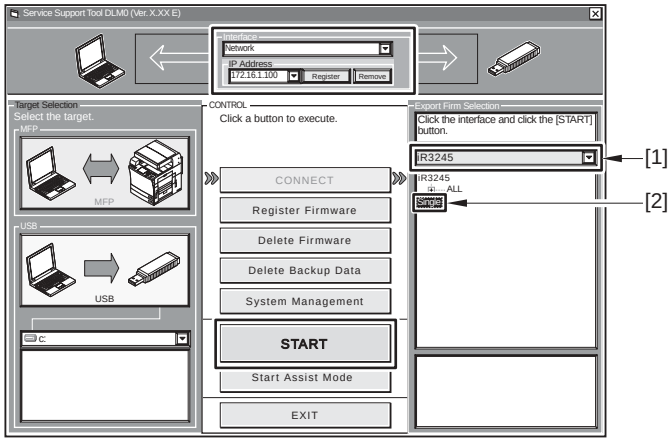
[1] Formatting not possible
[2] Formatting possible in safe mode

MEMO:
Partition-based formatting is possible in service mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR), with the exception of BOOTDEV.

18.3.2 Formatting Procedure

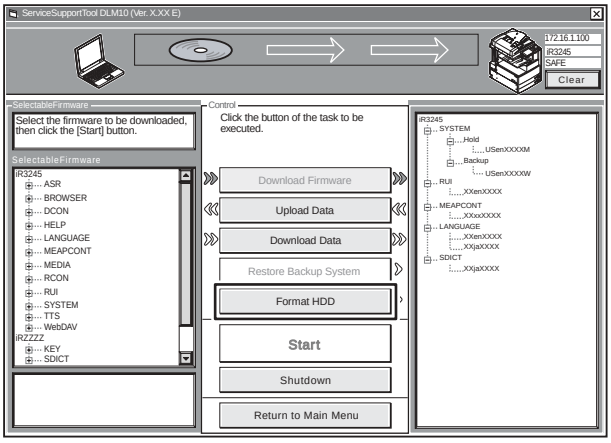
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

1) Start the machine in safe mode. (While pressing 2 + 8, turn ON the main power switch.)
2) Start up the SST.
3) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



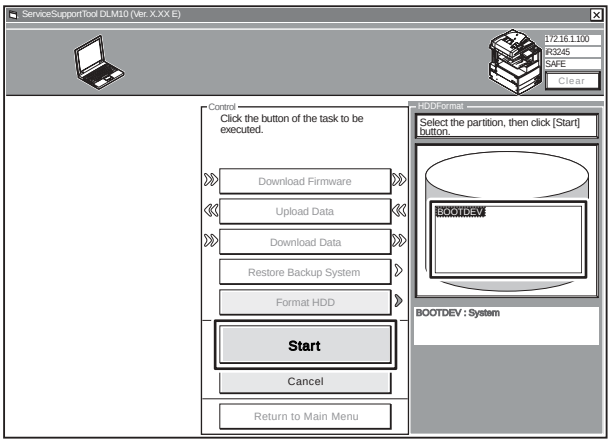
F-18-19

4) Click [Format HDD].



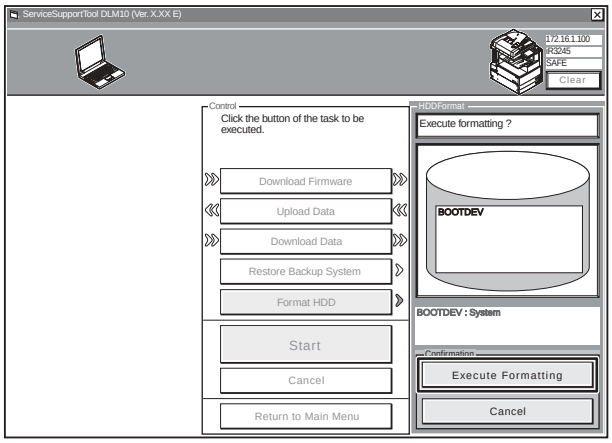
F-18-20

5) Specify BOOTDEV partition, and click [Start].



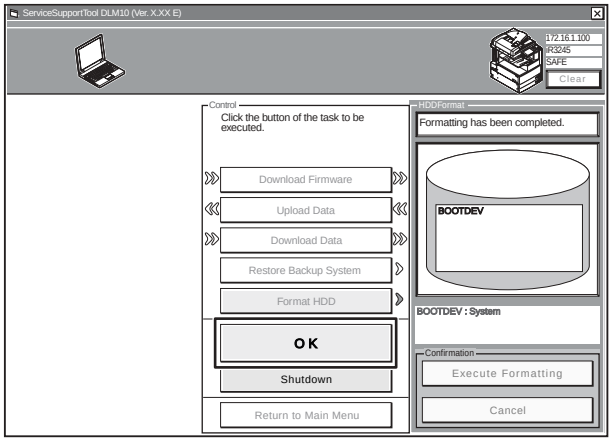
F-18-21

6) Click [Execute Formatting].



F-18-22

7) When formatting has ended, click [OK].



F-18-23

8) return to the main menu.
Move on to download the system software.

⚠
Whenever you have executed HDD formatting, be sure to download the system software; otherwise, an error (E602) will occur when the main power is turned on.

18.4 Downloading System Software

18.4.1 Downloading the System Software (ALL)

18.4.1.1 Outline

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Batch download enables to download various system software collectively.
Combinations of the system software that will be downloaded with batch download are stated in the batch download information file ("ALL").
At batch download, each system software in specific version will be downloaded according to the combination stated in "ALL" file.

There are 2 modes such as Normal mode and Assist mode available for batch download.
Normal mode enables to download in the same manner as existing SST.
Assist mode is a user-friendly mode that has been added to SST version 4.02 or later (recommended). See the following features.

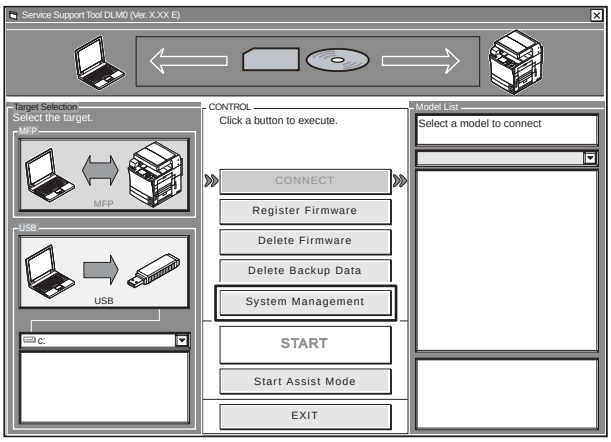
- Identifies the connected model automatically.
  Since this identifies the connected model automatically, users do not have to specify the model name. Moreover, users can continue to download to the multiple devices by simply switching the connection after download.

- Identifies the version of system software automatically.
  If the combination of system software that is registered in SST is newer than the combination on a device, the new combination is selected automatically. If not, it will not be selected. The combination can be selected manually if needed.

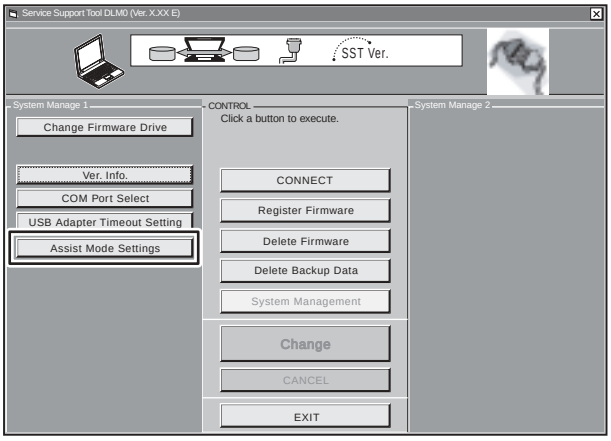
- Identifies the download mode (normal/safe) of the machine automatically.
  Since SST identifies the download mode of the machine, the message prompting the operation to switch the download mode etc. will be displayed when required.

MEMO: Startup mode setting
Users can make a setting to transfer to Assist mode automatically when starting SST.

1) Click [System Management] in main menu.

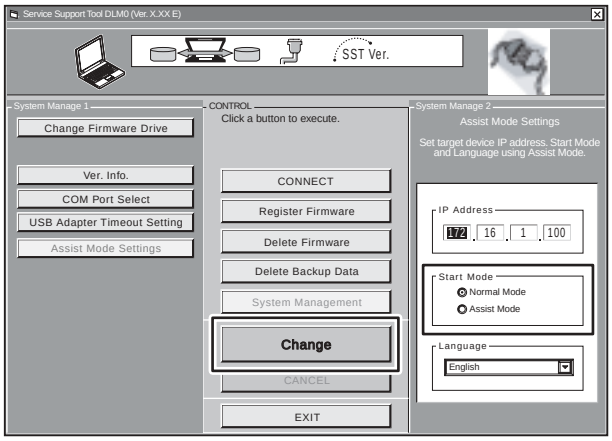


2) Click [Assist Mode Settings].



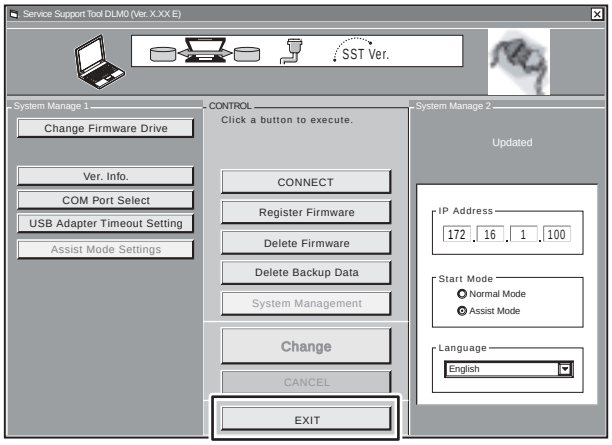
3) Select the start mode and click [Change].

- Normal mode: displays the main menu
- Assist mode: starts up in Assist mode



Also, users can specify an IP address of the machine and a language.

4) Click [EXIT].



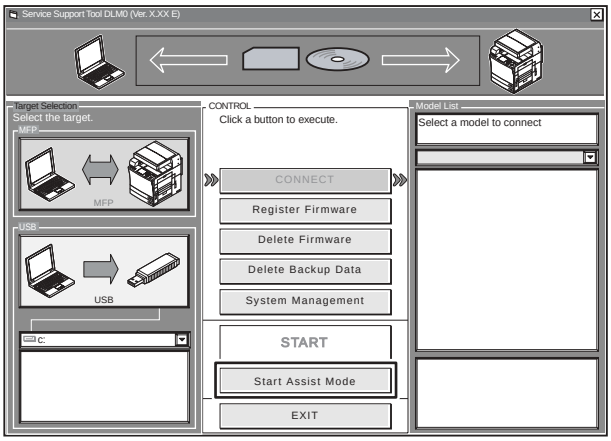
SST closes. Settings will be reflected after the next start.

18.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure (Assist mode)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> **Do Not Turn Off the Power During Download/Write Operation**
> Do not turn OFF the power while the system software is being downloaded or written. The machine may fail to start when the power is turned ON.
> If the power cannot be turned ON, try to start it in safe mode (press 2 + 8 simultaneously).
> If the machine starts in safe mode, download the system software again. If not, replace HDD and download the system software.

1) Start the machine in safe mode. (While pressing 2 + 8, turn ON the main power switch.)
2) Start up the SST.
3) Click [Start Assist Mode].
   If starting the machine in Assist mode, this operation is not needed.

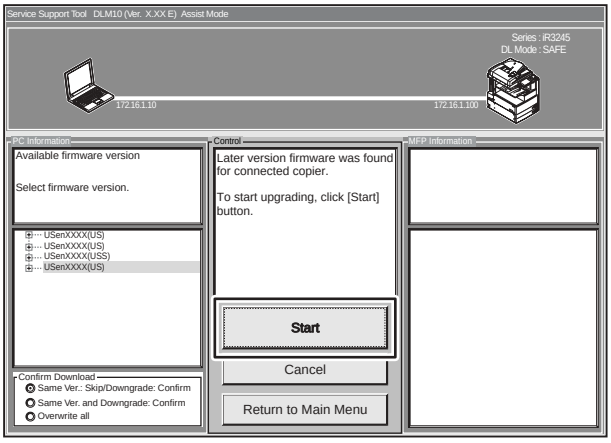


F-18-24

If the newer combination of system software than the machine is registered in SST, it will be selected (highlighted).

> **MEMO:**
> If the older combination of system software than that of device is only registered, nothing is selected. The system software in intended version can be downloaded by selecting the specific combination manually.

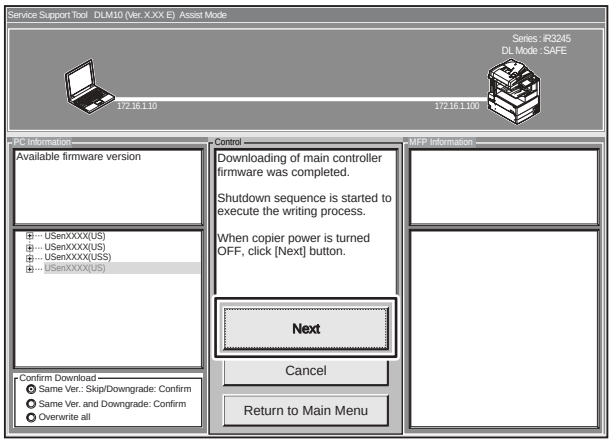
4) Click [Start].



F-18-25

When download is complete, the machine's power turns off automatically.
5) After 10 sec from the power off of the machine, turn on the main power switch.

6) Click [Next].



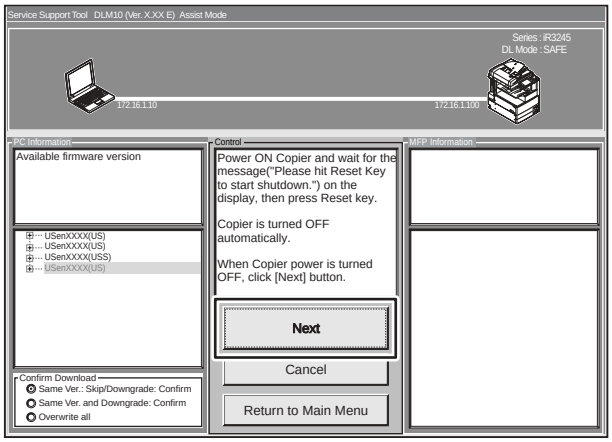
F-18-26

The message prompts to shutdown will be displayed on the control panel.

7) Press reset key.

The power of the machine turns OFF.

8) Click [Next].

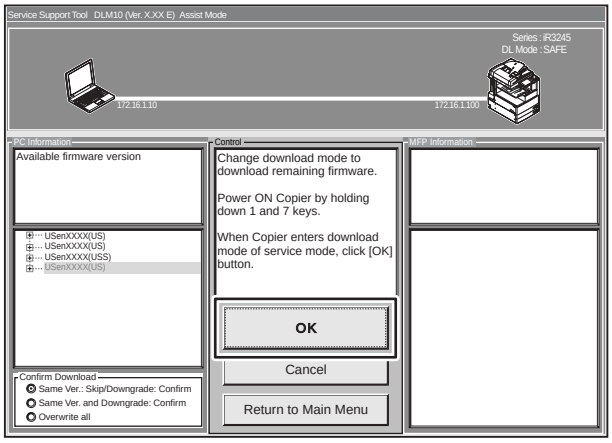


F-18-27

9) Start the machine in normal mode. (While pressing 1 + 7, turn ON the main power switch.)

10) Enter the download mode in service mode.

11) Click [OK].

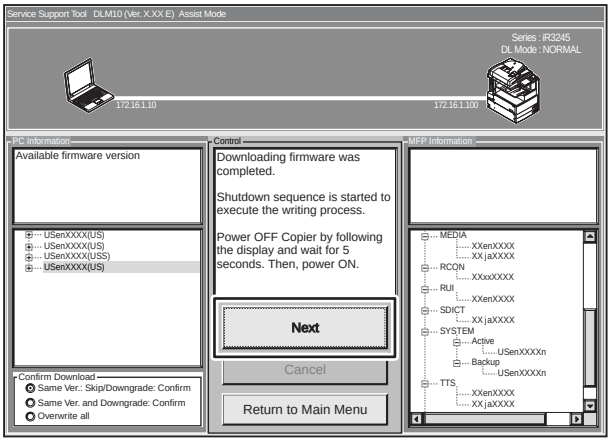


F-18-28

When download is complete, the machine's power turns off automatically.

12) After 10 sec from the power off of the machine, turn on the main power switch.

13) Click [Next].



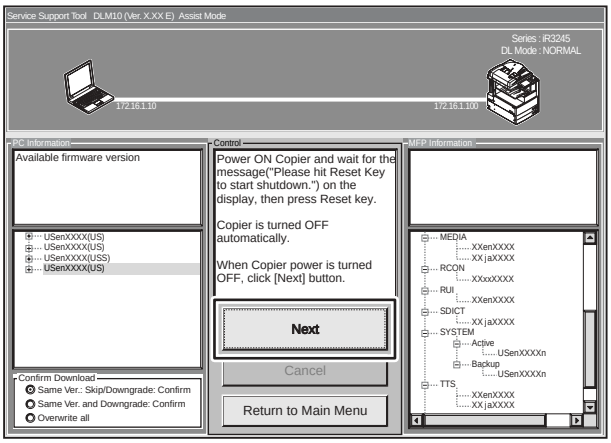
F-18-29

The message prompts to shutdown will be displayed on the control panel.

14) Press reset key.

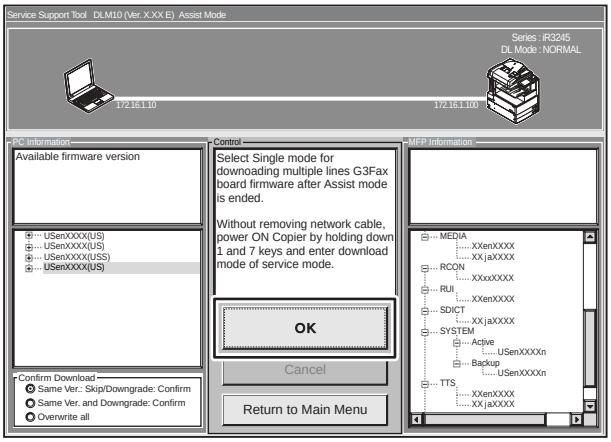
The power of the machine turns off.

15) Click [Next].



F-18-30

16) In the case that the G3FAX board is installed, click [OK].



F-18-31

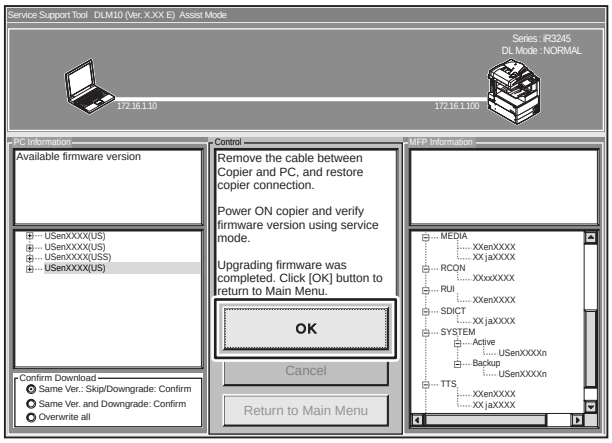
The system software "G3FAX" is not downloaded in a batch, and needs to be done separately. For details, see "Downloading the System Software (Single)".

17) Remove the twisted pair cross cable from the machine.

18) Turn on the main power switch of the machine.

19) Check the system software version in service mode.

20) Click [OK].



F-18-32

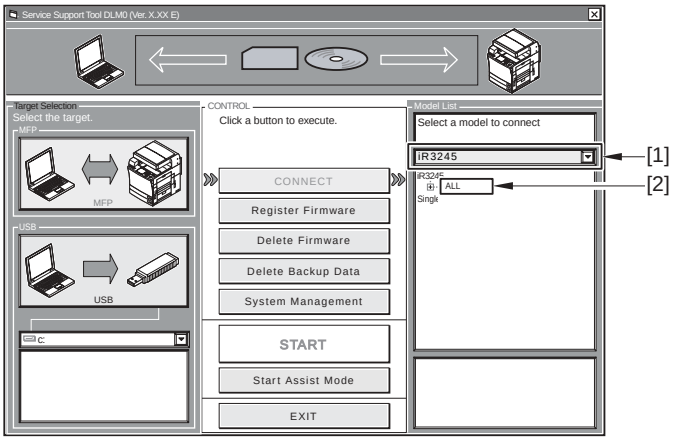
Main menu is displayed.

18.4.1.3 Downloading Procedure (Normal mode)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

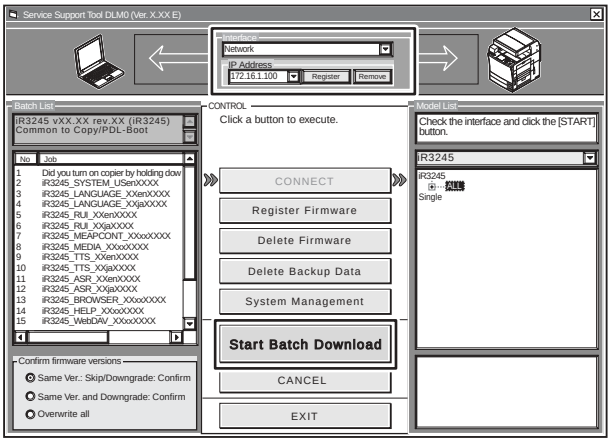
> **Do Not Turn Off the Power During Download/Write Operation**
> Do not turn OFF the power while the system software is being downloaded or written. The machine may fail to start when the power is turned ON.
> If the power cannot be turned ON, try to start it in safe mode (press 2 + 8 simultaneously).
> If the machine starts in safe mode, download the system software again. If not, replace HDD and download the system software.

1) Start the machine in safe mode. (While pressing 2 + 8, turn ON the main power switch.)
2) Start up the SST.
3) Select the model [1] and the batch download information file [2] ('ALL').



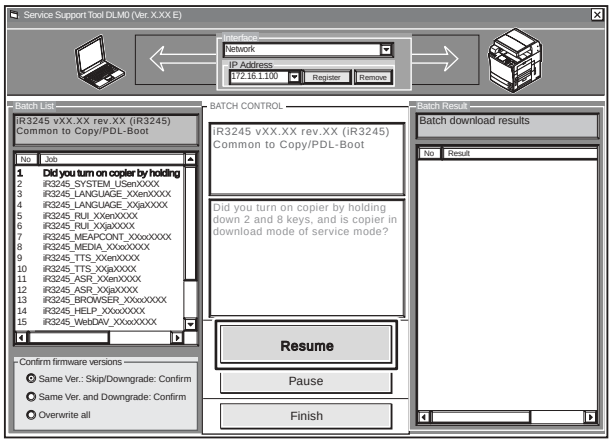
F-18-33

4) Make sure of the network settings, and click [Start Batch Download].



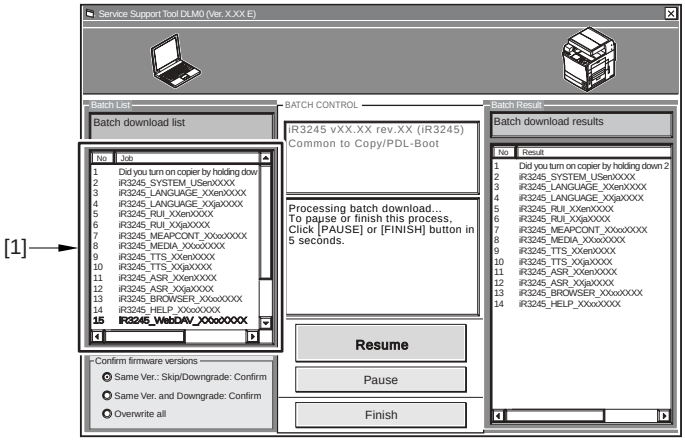
F-18-34

5) Click [Resume].

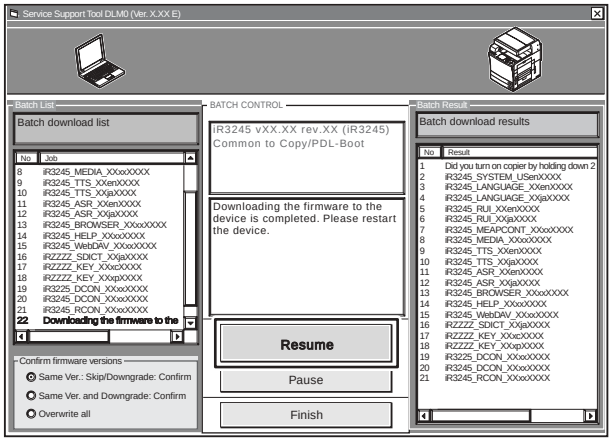


F-18-35

MEMO:
Refer to the Batch Download List screen [1] for the progress of downloading.



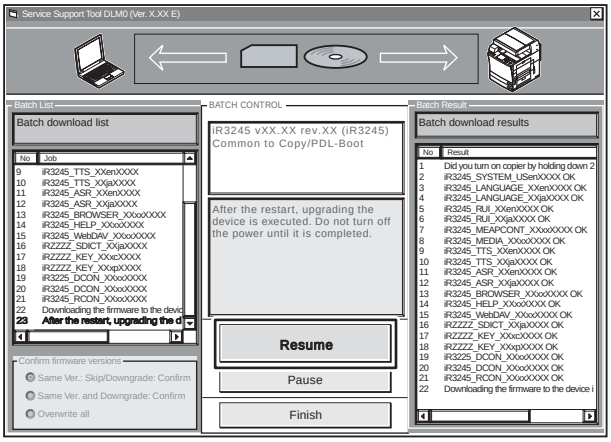
6) When downloading has ended, turn off the machine's main power switch.
7) After 10 sec from the power OFF, turn ON the main power switch.
8) Click [Resume].



F-18-36

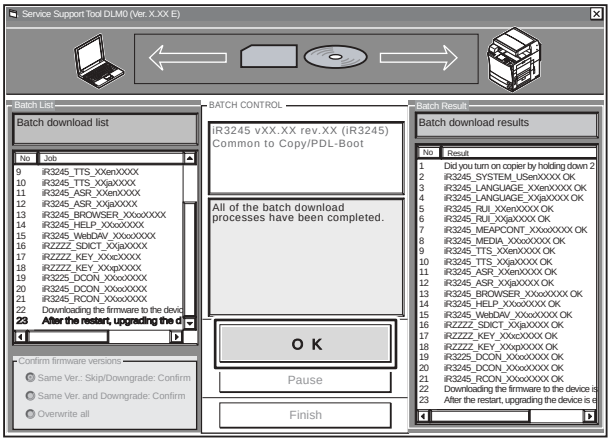
The downloaded system software are written to HDD or flash ROM.
After writing is complete, the message that prompts the shutdown is displayed on the control panel.
9) Press reset key.
The main power switch turns OFF automatically.

10) Click [Resume].



F-18-37

11) Click [OK].



F-18-38

Main menu is displayed.

18.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single)

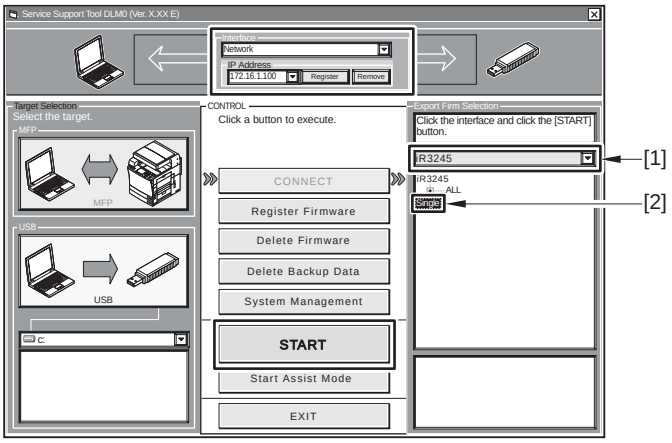
18.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Do Not Turn Off the Power During Download/Write Operation
Do not turn OFF the power while the system software is being downloaded or written. The machine may fail to start when the power is turned ON.
If the power cannot be turned ON, try to start it in safe mode (press 2 + 8 simultaneously).
If the machine starts in safe mode, download the system software again. If not, replace HDD and download the system software.

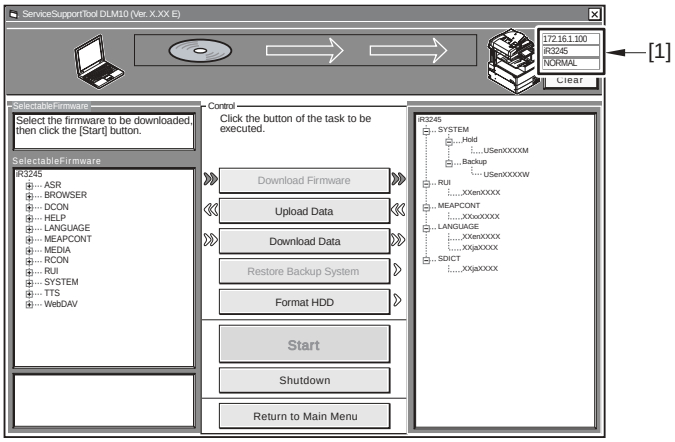
Here is the downloading procedure of the SYSTEM as a sample. (Same for other system software)

1) Start the machine in appropriate download mode.
2) Start up the SST.
3) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].

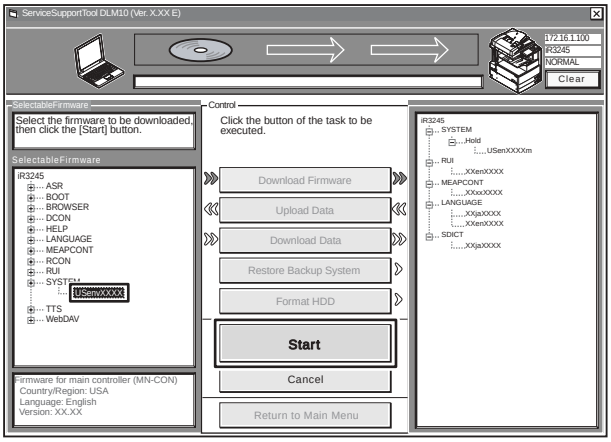


F-18-39

MEMO:
After connecting, the following device information [1] is displayed on the right upper area of the SST screen.
- IP address
- Model name
- Download mode

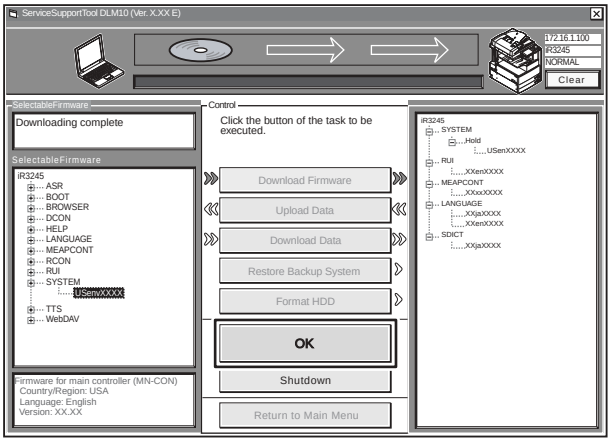


4) Select the version of the SYSTEM you want to download, and click [Start].



F-18-40

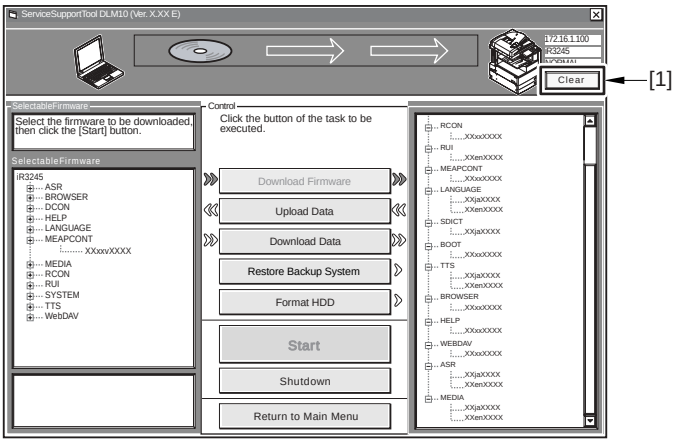
5) When downloading has ended, click [OK] to go back to the previous screen.



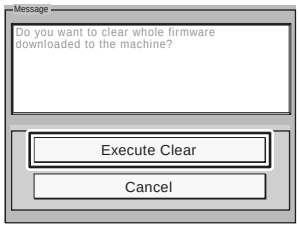
F-18-41

MEMO:
After the download is complete, system software can be deleted without writing it into HDD or flash ROM before the machine is restarted.

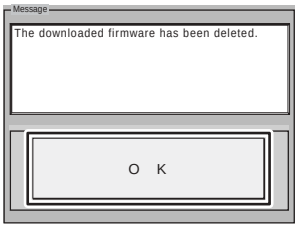
1) Click [Clear] [1].



2) Click [Execute Clear] so that the system software that has been stored in the temporary storage area of the HDD will be removed.



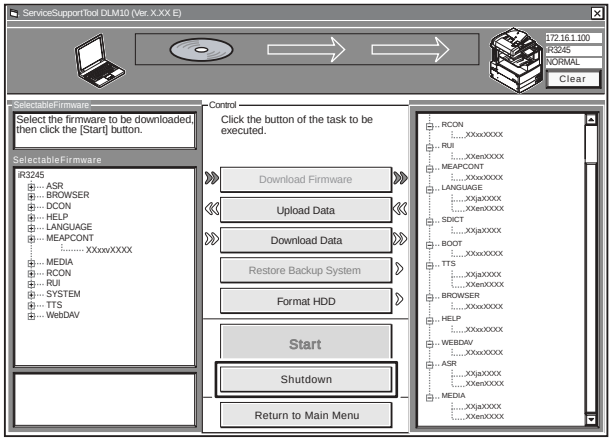
3) Click [OK]. Return to the previous page.



6) Start up the machine. The subsequent procedure differs depending on the download mode.

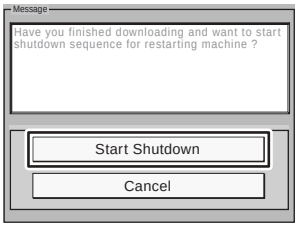
- If the machine is in normal mode

6-1) Click [Shutdown].



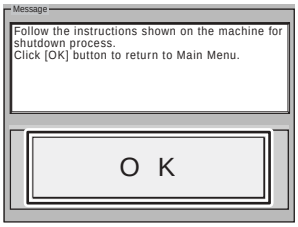
F-18-42

6-2) Click [Start Shutdown] so that the machine starts the shut-down sequence.
The main power switch turns OFF automatically.



F-18-43

6-3) Click [OK].



F-18-44

6-4) Turn on the machine's main power switch.
The downloaded system software is written to HDD or flash ROM.
After writing is complete, the message that prompts the shutdown is displayed on the control panel.

- If the machine is in safe mode

6-1) After 10 sec from when the main power switch of the machine turns OFF, turn ON the main power switch.
The downloaded system software is written to HDD or flash ROM.
After writing is complete, the message that prompts the shutdown is displayed on the control panel.

7) Press reset key.
The main power switch turns OFF automatically.
8) After 10 sec from the power OFF, turn ON the main power switch.

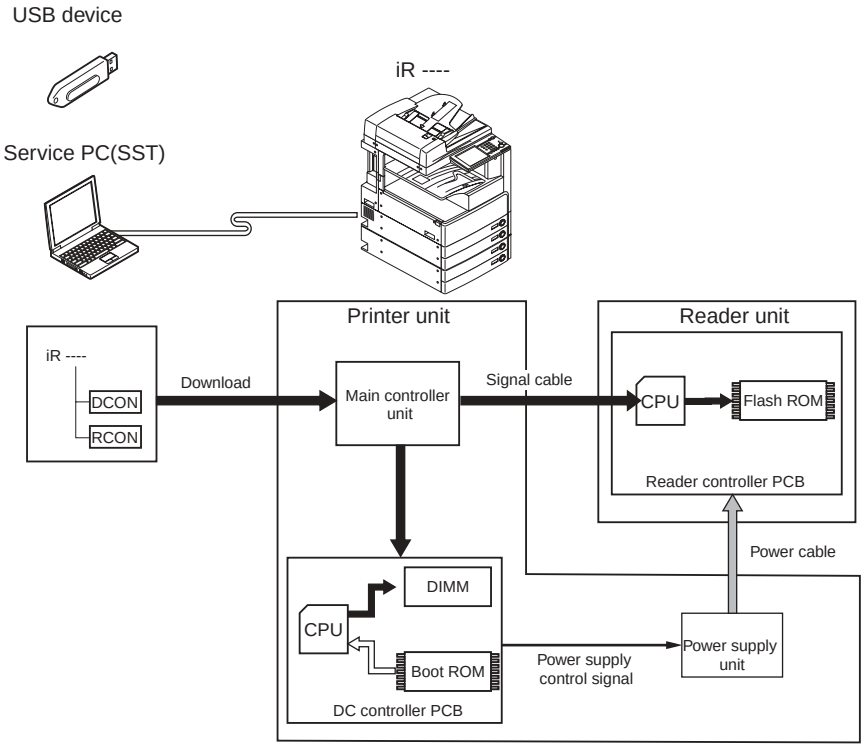
18.4.3 Downloading Dcon and Rcon

18.4.3.1 Outline

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

DCON/RCON is downloaded by way of the main controller unit.
The DC controller PCB/reader controller PCB is equipped with a boot ROM, and downloading may be attempted multiple times in the event of failure.

DCON differs between the iR3245/3235/3230 and the iR3225. The system software designed for the iR3245/3235/3230 is stored as iR3245, while the system software designed for the iR3225 is stored as iR3225.
The machine has a mechanism to read the appropriate system software. It is a good idea to download both types of DCON.



F-18-45

You will not be able to download RCON unless the DC controller has started up normally (as, otherwise, the power supply control signal will not be valid and, as a result, the reader unit remains without power).

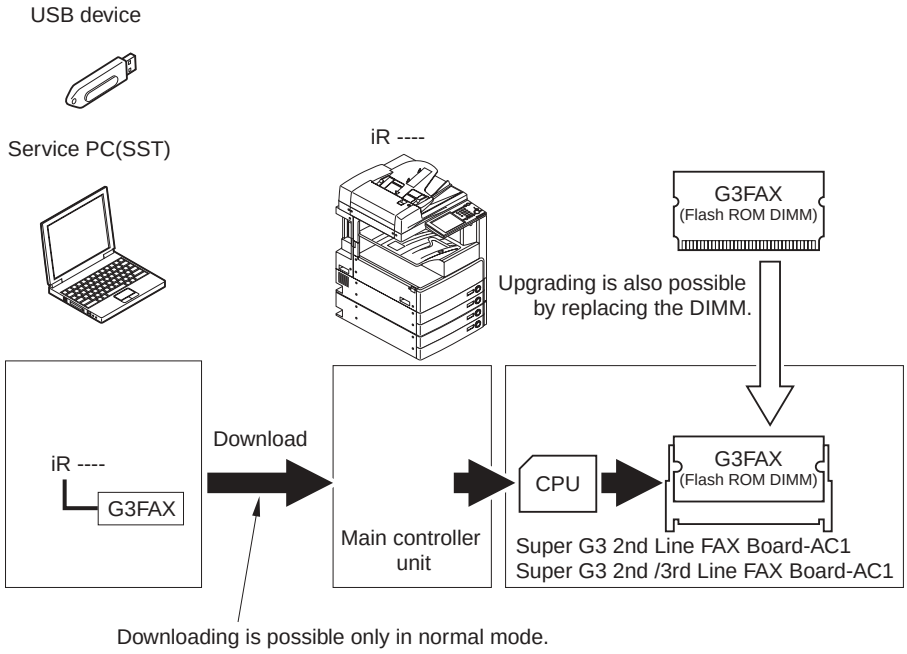
Points to Note About Upgrading the DC Controller/Reader Controller
It is recommended to download DCON/RCON in normal mode.
DCON/RCON may be downloaded in either normal mode or safe mode. However, if done in safe mode, the version information of DCON/RCDON will not be obtained. In this case, DCON/RCON on HDD is always overwritten by DCON/RCON on SST regardless of versions; thus it may be downgraded.

18.4.4 Downloading G3 FAX

18.4.4.1 Outline

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

Super G3FAX board (2 line, 2/3 line) comes with a control CPU and its system software 'G3FAX', which is downloaded by way of the main controller unit. Download is only available in normal mode.



F-18-46

- G3FAX is not downloaded in a batch, and needs to be done separately.
- G3FAX cannot be downloaded twice consecutively. Once it is downloaded, G3FAX board is reset and download mode terminates.
- Do not turn OFF the power of this machine during download or while the machine is writing the downloaded system software.
  If turning off the power, the machine fails to write the data to ROM DIMM on G3FAX board and the G3FAX board may not function normally.
  If G3 FAX board does not function, replace ROM DIMM on G3FAX board.
- If a downloading session fails, you will have to replace the flash ROM DIMM.

MEMO:
System software (SYSTEM) on main controller controls the G3FAX (1 line).

18.4.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data

18.4.5.1 Outline

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-18-3

Backup data	File to select for downloading/uploading
For R&D	~~SramImg.bin~~ (do not select this file)
MEAP application	MeapBack.bin (may be uploaded/downloaded in safe mode)
For R&D	~~Sublog.txt~~ (do not select this file)
Reader controller PCB backup	SramRCON (may be uploaded/downloaded in normal mode)
DC controller PCB backup	Uploaded/downloaded is not applicable.

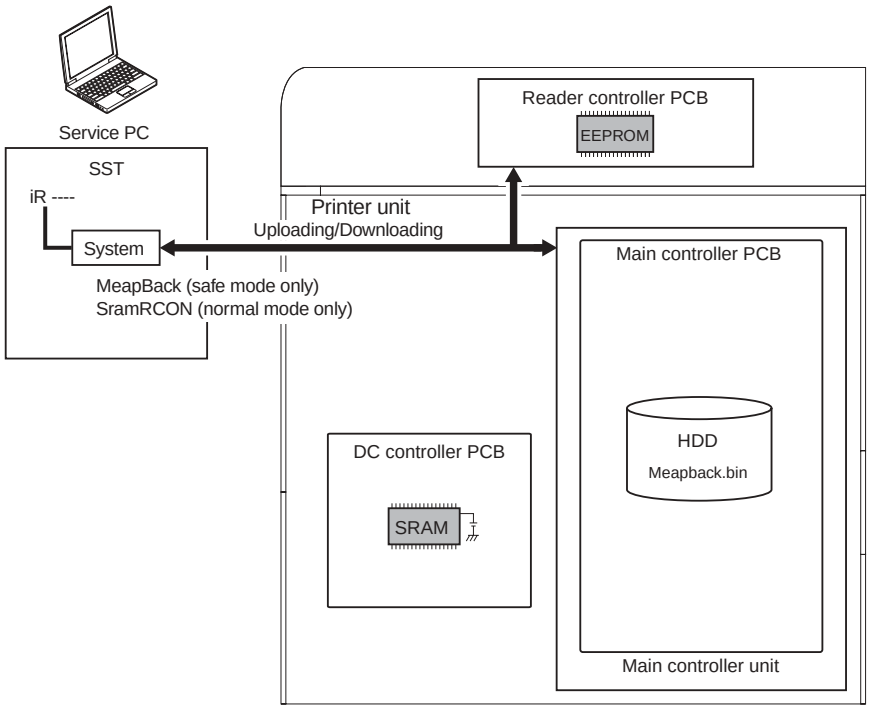
The file MeapBack is a MEAP application and its data stored on the HDD.
The file SramRCON is data stored in the EEPROM of the reader controller PCB.

MEMO:
If you are planning to replace the Reader controller PCB, you can upload the SramRCON file in advance, and download it after replacement so that the service mode and other settings may be inherited.

18.4.5.2 Uploading Procedure

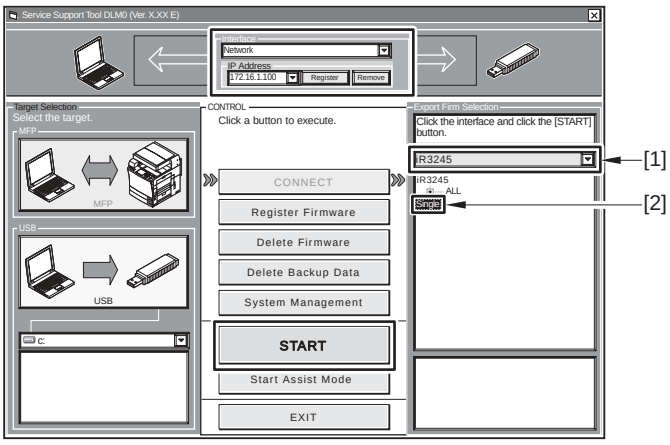
iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- Do not select 'SramImg.bin' or 'Sublog.txt'.
- The file MeapBack or SramRCON may only be downloaded to their source machine.
- The machine must be in safe mode when uploading MeapBack.
- The machine must be in normal mode for uploading SramRCON.



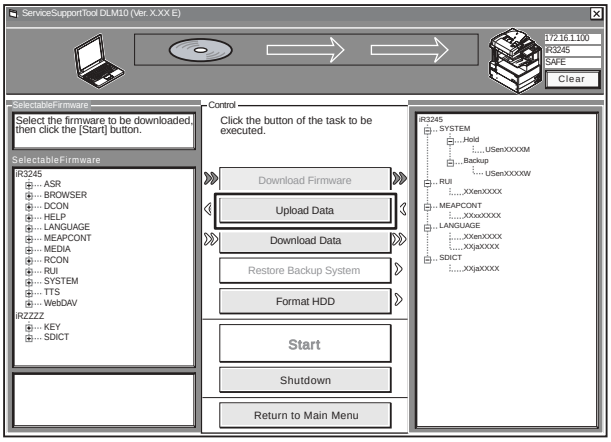
Here is the MeapBack upload procedure as an example.

1) Start the machine in safe mode. (While pressing 2 + 8, turn ON the main power switch.)
2) Start up the SST.
3) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



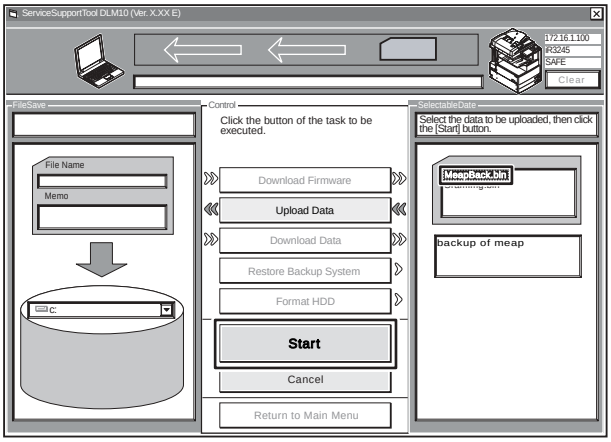
F-18-47

4) Click [Upload Data].



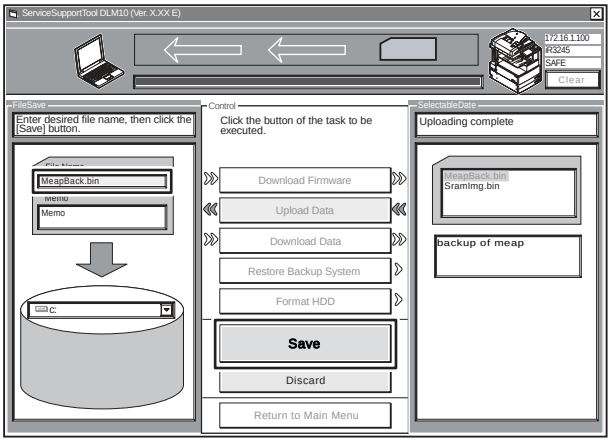
F-18-48

5) Select 'MeapBack.bin', and click [Start].



F-18-49

6) Enter the file name to save and memo if needed, and then click [Save].



F-18-50

7) Click [OK].

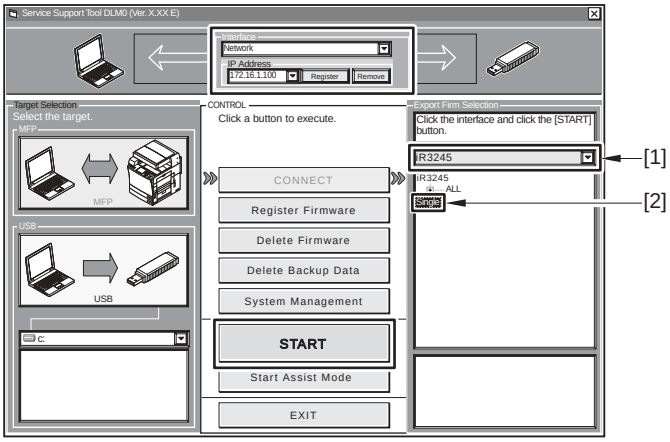
18.4.5.3 Downloading Procedure

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

- The file MeapBack or SramRCON may only be downloaded to their source machine.
- The machine must be in safe mode for downloading the file MeapBack.
- The machine must be in normal mode for downloading the file SramRCON.

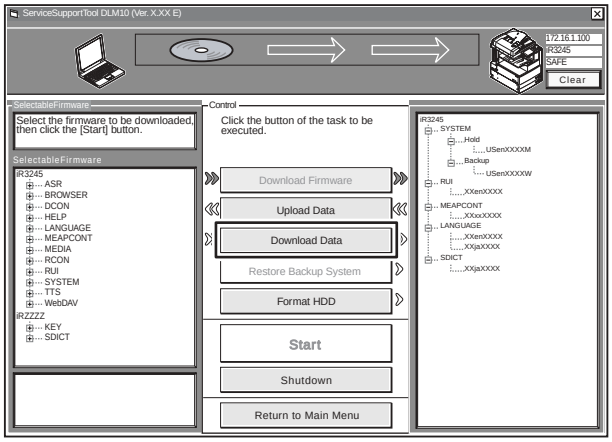
Here is the MeapBack download procedure as an example.

1) Start the machine in safe mode. (While pressing 2 + 8, turn ON the main power switch.)
2) Start up the SST.
3) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



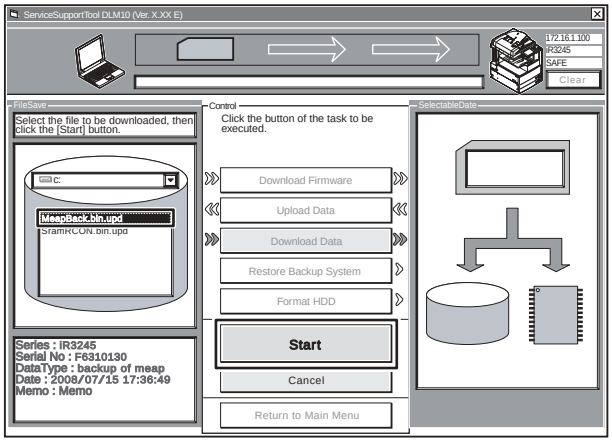
F-18-51

4) Click [Download Data].



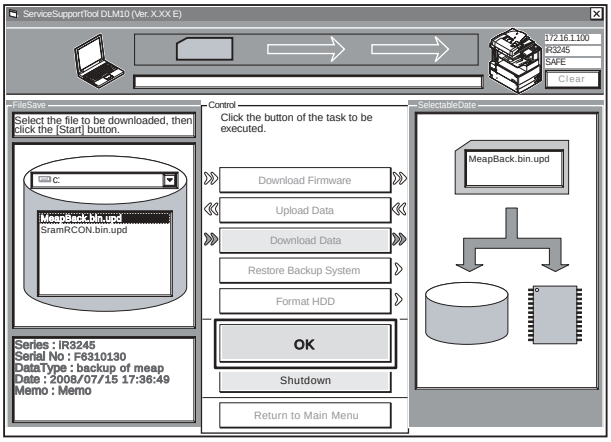
F-18-52

5) Select the data to download, and click [Start].



F-18-53

6) When downloading has ended, click [OK] to return to the previous screen.

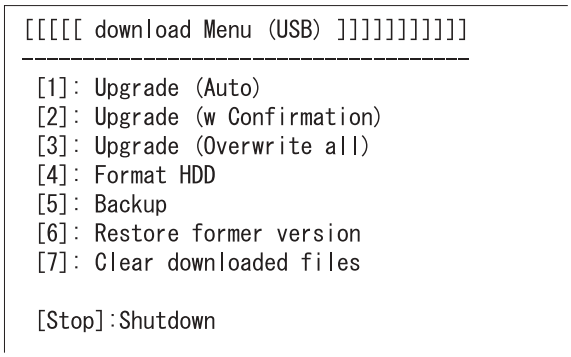


F-18-54

18.4.6 Version Upgrade using USB

18.4.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N



F-18-55

Downloading the System Software

[1]: Upgrade (AUTO)
Use it to download/write the system software. (auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
Use it to download the system software. (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
Use it to download the system software. (all overwrite)

Formatting the HDD (only in safe mode)

[4]: Format HDD
Use it to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition.

Other Functions

[5]: Backup
This is for development review only, do not use.
[6]: Restore former version (in the presence of a backup of the SYSTEM)
Use it to restore the backup of the SYSTEM.
[7]: Clear downloaded files
Use it to remove the system software immediately before downloading (before writing).
[Stop]: Shutdown (in normal mode)
Use it to execute shut-down instructions.

Press the keys on a control panel to select or execute each function.

18.4.6.2 Points to Note

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

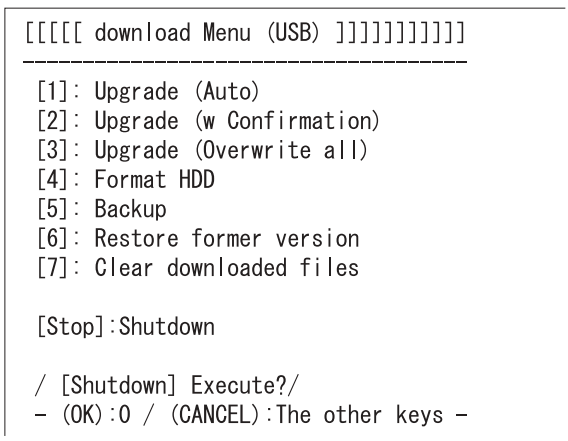
Do Not Turn Off the Power During Download/Write Operation
Do not turn OFF the power while the system software is being downloaded or written. The machine may fail to start when the power is turned ON.
If the power cannot be turned ON, try to start it in safe mode (press 2 + 8 simultaneously).
If the machine starts in safe mode, download the system software again. If not, replace HDD and download the system software.

Downgrading
Be sure that the system software in the USB device is of the latest version.
The following files of the system software do not permit collection of version information. As such, they necessarily overwrite the system software on the HDD:

- KEY
- TTS
- BROWSER
- WebDAV
- TSTAMP
- HELP
- DCON (in safe mode only)
- RCON (in safe mode only)
- G3FAX (in normal mode only)

The following is recommended for normal downloading (i.e., downloading of the system software, not after HDD replacement or formatting):
download mode: normal
download menu: [1]: Upgrade (Auto)

Turning Off the Power After Normal Mode
When ending download mode, be sure to execute the shut-down sequence.
Press [Stop] -> [0] in initial menu and shut-down sequence is executed. When the message prompting to turn OFF the power is displayed, turn OFF the main power switch.



18.4.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

[1]: Upgrade (AUTO)
The system software on the HDD and that in the USB device are compared. If the latter is new, it will be downloaded to the temporary storage area of the HDD. At the end of the downloading, the machine restarts on its own to write the downloaded system software to the system area of the HDD and the flash ROM.

Procedure
1) Check to see that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off, and turn off the power of the machine as described below.
1-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
1-2) Shut down the machine by following the instruction on the control panel.
The main power switch will turn off automatically.
2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
3) Start the machine in appropriate download mode.
4) Press the key on the control panel.
[1] -> **[0]:** execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-------------------------------------
 [1]: Upgrade (Auto)
 [2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
 [3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
 [4]: Format HDD
 [5]: Backup
 [6]: Restore former version
 [7]: Clear downloaded files

 [Stop]:Shutdown
```

F-18-56

While downloading is under way, the control screen shows its progress.

```
////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[iR3245-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-96DO-KEY.dat] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.
```

F-18-57

At the end of the downloading, the machine restarts on its own to start writing to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM.

```
<<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Writing to HDD XX%
```

F-18-58

At the end of writing to the HDD, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then back on the power.

```
<<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
```

F-18-59

5) Turn off the main power switch.
6) Remove the USB device.
7) Turn the main power switch back on.

18.4.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
System software on HDD and that on USB device are compared and if the system software on USB device is newer than that on HDD, it will be downloaded in the temporary storage area on HDD.
If the system software on USB device is the same or older than that on HDD, the message whether or not to overwrite is displayed.
Unlike menu [1], the machine does not restart automatically after download is complete. Turn OFF/ON manually to execute the writing of the system software.

Procedure
1) Check to see that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off, and turn off the power of the machine as described below.
1-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
1-2) Shut down the machine by following the instruction on the control panel.
The main power switch will turn off automatically.
2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
3) Start the machine in appropriate download mode.
4) Press the key on the control panel.
[2] -> **[0]:** execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```
[[[[[  download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
---------------------------------------
 [1]: Upgrade (Auto)
 [2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
 [3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
 [4]: Format HDD
 [5]: Backup
 [6]: Restore former version
 [7]: Clear downloaded files

 /[2] has been selected. Execute?/
 - (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-18-60

While downloading is under way, the control panel shows its progress.

MEMO:
If the system software on USB device is the same or older than that on HDD, the message whether or not to overwrite is displayed each time. Press the key on the control panel.
[0]: overwrite / other than [0]: do not overwrite

```
////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[Warning] Same version or old version.
---------------------------------------
[BOOT XXxx]...Same. OVERWRITE?
   -- (YES):0 /(NO):The other keys--
```

At the end of downloading, a message will appear asking you to press a key.
5) Press any key.
In case of normal mode, shutdown sequence is executed.

```
////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[iR3245-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-96DO-KEY.dat] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.

---Please hit any key---
```

F-18-61

6) When a message appears asking you to turn off the power, turn off the main power switch.
7) Remove the USB device.

8) Turn on the main power switch.
Upon start-up, the machine starts to write the system software to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM.
At the end of writing to the HDD, a message will appear asking you to turn off.
9) After 10 sec from when the main power switch of the machine turns off, turn on the main power switch.

```
<<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
```

F-18-62

18.4.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting)

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
The system software in the USB device will overwrite the software on the HDD regardless of the version of the latter.
Unlike menu item [1], however, the machine will not restart on its own at the end of downloading. When the power is turned off and then back on manually, the machine starts writing the system software.

Procedure
1) Check to see that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off, and turn off the power of the machine as described below.
1-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
1-2) Shut down the machine by following the instruction on the control panel.
The main power switch will turn off automatically.
2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
3) Start the machine in appropriate download mode.
4) Press the key on the control panel.
[3] -> [0]: execute download / other that [0]: go back to Menu screen

```
[[[[[  download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
------------------------------------
 [1]: Upgrade (Auto)
 [2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
 [3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
 [4]: Format HDD
 [5]: Backup
 [6]: Restore former version
 [7]: Clear downloaded files

 /[3] has been selected. Execute?/
 - (OK):O / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-18-63

While downloading is under way, the control panel shows its progress.
At the end of downloading, a message will appear asking you to press a key.
5) Press the appropriate key.
If the machine is in normal mode, the shut-down sequence will start.

```
////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[iR3245-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iR3245-XXxcXXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-96DO-KEY.dat] OK.
[iR3245-XXxpXXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iR3245-XXxxXXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.

---Please hit any key---
```

F-18-64

6) When a message appears asking you to turn off the power, turn off the main power switch.
7) Remove the USB device.

8) Turn the main power switch back on.
Upon start-up, the machine starts writing the system software to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM.
At the end of writing, a message will appear asking you to turn off.
9) After 10 sec from when the main power switch of the machine turns off, turn on the main power switch.

```
<<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
```

F-18-65

18.4.6.6 Formatting the HDD

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

> ⚠
> This function is available only when the machine is in safe mode.

[4]: Format HDD
Use it to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition.

Procedure
1) Check to see that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off, and turn off the power of the machine as described below.
1-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
1-2) Shut down the machine by following the instruction on the control panel.
The main power switch will turn off automatically.
2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
3) Start the machine in safe mode. (While pressing 2 + 8, turn ON the main power switch.)
4) Press the key on the control panel.
[4] -> [0]: go to Partition Selection screen / other that [0]: go back to Menu screen

```
[[[[[  download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
----------------------------------------
 [1]: Upgrade (Auto)
 [2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
 [3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
 [4]: Format HDD
 [5]: Backup
 [6]: Restore former version
 [7]: Clear downloaded files

 /[4] has been selected. Execute?/
 - (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-18-66

5) Press the key on the control panel.
[1] -> [0]: execute BOOTDEV formatting / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
[C]: go back to Menu screen

```
[[[[[ Format HDD Manu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]]
----------------------------------------
 [1]: /BOOTDEV
 [C]: Return to Main Menu

 /[1] has been selected. Execute?/
 - (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-18-67

At the end of formatting, a message will appear asking you to press a key.
6) Press any key to go back to the Menu screen.

```
[[[[[ Format HDD Manu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]]
----------------------------------------
 [1]: /BOOTDEV
 [C]: Return to Main Menu

 /[1] has been selected. Execute?/
 - (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

Formatting /BOOTDEV ... OK
///Formatting HDD ...Complete///

---Please hit any key---
```

F-18-68

7) Start downloading the system software.
Refer to the "Downloading the System Software (Single)" for details.

18.4.6.7 Other Functions

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

[5]: Backup

> ⚠
> This function is for R&D purposes only. Do not use it.

[6]: Restore former version (in the presence of backup of the SYSTEM)
Use it to restore the backup of the SYSTEM while saving the SYSTEM that is current as a backup.

Procedure
1) Check to see that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off, and turn off the power of the machine as described below.
1-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
1-2) Shut down the machine by following the instruction on the control panel.
The main power switch will turn off automatically.
2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
3) Start the machine in appropriate download mode.
4) Press the key on the control panel.
[6] -> [0]: initialize / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
After execution, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then on the power.

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
------------------------------------
 [1]: Upgrade (Auto)
 [2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
 [3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
 [4]: Format HDD
 [5]: Backup
 [6]: Restore former version
 [7]: Clear downloaded files

 /[6] has been selected. Execute?/
 - (OK):O / (CANCEL):The other keys -
Restore former version...Complete.
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
```

F-18-69

5) Turn off the main power switch.
6) Remove the USB device.
7) Turn on the main power switch.

[7]: Clear downloaded files
Use it to remove the system software files that have been saved in the temporary storage area of the HDD.
Use this function when clearing the system software without writing it on HDD after downloaded in menu [2] or [3].

Procedure
1) When the system software download is complete by menu [2] or [3], go through the step 2) without turning OFF/ON the power.
If accidentally turning OFF the power, start the machine in safe mode. (While pressing 2 + 8, turn ON the main power switch.)
2) Press the key on the control panel.
[7] -> [0]: execute / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

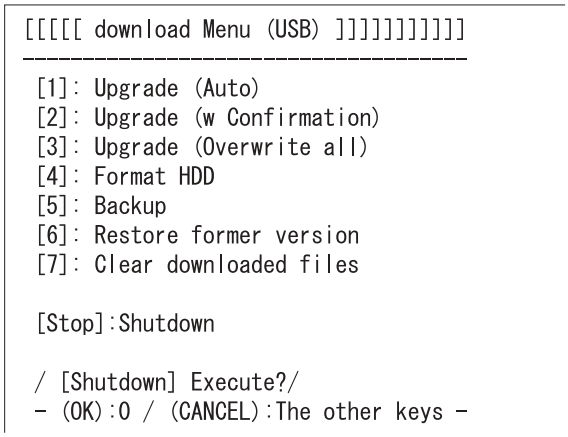
```
[[[[[  download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
------------------------------------
 [1]: Upgrade (Auto)
 [2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
 [3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
 [4]: Format HDD
 [5]: Backup
 [6]: Restore former version
 [7]: Clear downloaded files

 /[7] has been selected. Execute?/
 - (OK):O / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-18-70

Upon execution, the Menu screen will return.

[Stop]: Shutdown (in normal mode only)
Use it to start up the shut-down sequence.

Procedure
1) Press the key on the control panel.
[Stop] -> [0]: execute / other than [0]: go to Menu screen



F-18-71

The shut-down sequence will be executed, and a message will appear asking you to turn off the power.
2) Turn off the main power switch, and remove the USB device.

Chapter 19 Service Tools

Contents

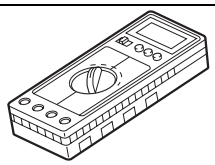
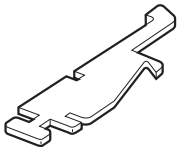
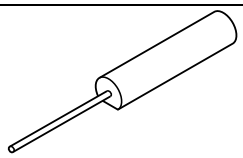
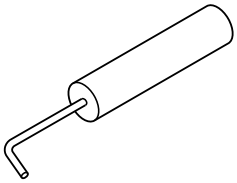
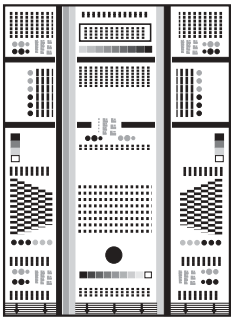
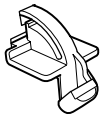
19.1 Service Tools 19-1
19.1.1 Special Tools 19-1
19.1.2 Oils and Solvents 19-1

19.1 Service Tools

19.1.1 Special Tools

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-19-1

Tool name	Tool No.	Rank (*)	Shape	Uses
Digital multimeter	FY9-2002	A		For making electrical checks.
Cover switch	TKN-0093	A		
Tester extension pin	FY9-3038	A		As an addition when making an electrical check.
Tester extension pin (L-shipped)	FY9-3039	A		As an addition when making an electrical check.
NA-3 Test Chart	FY9-9196	A		For checking and adjusting images.
Mirror cleaning tool	FL2-9842	-		Used for cleaning the mirror in the CCD unit. This part is installed in the reader unit. (Not a service tool)

*
A: each service engineer is expected to carry one.
B: each group of 5 service engineers is expected to carry one.
C: each workshop is expected to carry one.

19.1.2 Oils and Solvents

iR3225 / iR3225N / iR3235 / iR3235N / iR3245 / iR3245N

T-19-2

Name	Uses	Composition	Remarks
Alcohol	cleaning; e.g., glass, plastic, rubber; external covers	fluoride-family hydrocarbon alcohol surface activating agent water	- Do not bring near fire. - Procure locally. - IPA (isopropyl alcohol) may be substituted.
Lubricant	- scanner rail - stream reading glass	silicone oil	- KF96SS (300CS) - FY9-6011 (50 cc)

PARTS CATALOG

iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series

Canon

Oct 27 2009

Contents

NUMERICAL INDEX

iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)..... 1-1

iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Parts Catalog)

A1	ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM	2-1
A2	OPTION PARTS CATALOG LIST	2-7
001	POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY	2-8
100	EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.	2-10
101	MACHINE FRONT PLATE	2-15
102	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 1	2-17
103	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2	2-21
104	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 3	2-23
105	MACHINE REAR PLATE 1	2-25
106	MACHINE REAR PLATE 2	2-27
107	MACHINE REAR PLATE 3	2-29
115	RIGHT DOOR ASSEMBLY	2-31
116	PAPER FEEDER FRAME ASSEMBLY	2-36
130	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	2-38
140	POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY	2-41
145	RIGHT LOWER DOOR ASSEMBLY	2-43
250	MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3225 Series)	2-45
251	MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3245/3235/3230 Series)	2-47
261	DUPLEXING DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3245/3235/3230 Series)	2-49
281	FIXING DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY	2-51
300	CASSETTE 1	2-53
301	CASSETTE 2	2-56
310	PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 1	2-59
311	PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 2	2-63
315	MULTI FEED TRAY ASSEMBLY	2-67
350	PAPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY	2-69
351	2ND/3RD DELIVERY ASSEMBLY	2-71
352	2ND UPPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY	2-73
353	2ND DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY	2-75
354	3RD DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY	2-78
370	CASSETTE HEATER ASSEMBLY	2-81
400	READER ASSEMBLY	2-83
460	LASER SCANNER ASSEMBLY	2-88
500	DRUM CARTRIDGE ASSEMBLY	2-89
621	HOPPER ASSEMBLY	2-90

Contents

640 DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY 2-93
810 FIXING ASSEMBLY 2-96
900 CONTROLLER BOX ASSEMBLY 2-101
910 MAIN POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY 2-103
930 DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY 2-104
931 READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY 2-105
932 MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY 2-106
950 IMAGE PCB ASSEMBLY 2-107
994 RELAY DELIVERY CONT. PCB ASS'Y 2-108
A01 DADF MOUNTING HARDWARE (ADF model) 2-109
A10 INTERNAL COMPONENTS (ADF model) 2-111
A11 BASE ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-114
A12 PAPER PICK-UP COVER ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-116
A13 DOCUMENT TRAY ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-118
A21 DRIVE ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-120
A41 FEEDER ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-122
A90 ADF CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-127
T21 ATTACHMENT PARTS (FAX model) 2-128
T22 FAX ASSEMBLY (FAX model) 2-129
T23 SPEAKER ASSEMBLY (FAX model) 2-131

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
999-9999-999	102 -	FB6-3479-000	300 - 2	FC5-0583-000	301 - 11
FA3-8727-000	621 - 8	FB6-3479-000	301 - 2	FC5-0584-000	301 - 13
FA9-2112-000	250 - 6	FB6-3480-000	300 - 3	FC5-0585-000	300 - 12
FA9-2112-000	251 - 6	FB6-3480-000	301 - 3	FC5-0588-010	145 - 2
FA9-2112-000	261 - 1	FB6-3481-000	300 - 4	FC5-0590-000	145 - 4
FA9-2112-000	621 - 28	FB6-3481-000	301 - 4	FC5-0591-000	300 - 13
FB1-8581-000	115 - 23	FB6-3482-000	300 - 5	FC5-0592-000	145 - 5
FB5-4754-000	352 - 7	FB6-3482-000	301 - 5	FC5-0593-000	145 - 6
FB5-4754-000	353 - 1	FB6-3483-000	300 - 6	FC5-0594-000	145 - 7
FB5-4931-000	810 - 1	FB6-3483-000	301 - 6	FC5-0595-010	310 - 25
FB5-9325-000	354 - 1	FB6-3484-000	300 - 7	FC5-0598-000	300 - 14
FB6-3313-000	104 - 2	FB6-3484-000	301 - 7	FC5-0598-000	301 - 14
FB6-3313-000	145 - 1	FB6-3486-000	300 - 8	FC5-0605-000	301 - 16
FB6-3380-020	310 - 1	FB6-3486-000	301 - 8	FC5-0622-000	300 - 15
FB6-3380-020	311 - 1	FB6-3490-000	300 - 9	FC5-0624-000	301 - 15
FB6-3386-010	310 - 2	FB6-3490-000	301 - 9	FC5-0635-000	300 - 16
FB6-3386-010	311 - 2	FB6-3499-000	300 - 30	FC5-0636-000	300 - 17
FB6-3387-000	311 - 25	FB6-3499-000	301 - 12	FC5-0637-000	301 - 17
FB6-3388-000	310 - 3	FB6-3506-000	300 - 10	FC5-0652-000	115 - 6
FB6-3388-000	311 - 3	FB6-3506-000	301 - 10	FC5-0653-020	115 - 7
FB6-3389-000	310 - 4	FB6-3507-000	102 - 2	FC5-0655-000	810 - 26
FB6-3389-000	311 - 4	FB6-3524-000	301 - 30	FC5-0657-000	115 - 42
FB6-3391-000	310 - 6	FB6-3771-000	100 - 1	FC5-0658-000	115 - 43
FB6-3391-000	311 - 6	FB6-3950-000	100 - 31	FC5-0659-000	115 - 9
FB6-3392-020	310 - 7	FB6-4852-000	310 - 24	FC5-0673-000	101 - 7
FB6-3392-020	311 - 7	FB6-4852-000	311 - 24	FC5-0674-000	115 - 10
FB6-3394-000	310 - 9	FB6-6215-000	301 - 30	FC5-0676-000	115 - 11
FB6-3394-000	311 - 9	FB6-7078-000	310 - 22	FC5-0681-000	115 - 60
FB6-3395-000	310 - 10	FB6-7078-000	311 - 22	FC5-0682-000	115 - 13
FB6-3395-000	311 - 10	FC5-0166-000	100 - 32	FC5-0685-000	115 - 14
FB6-3396-010	310 - 11	FC5-0191-000	104 - 6	FC5-0686-010	101 - 8
FB6-3396-010	311 - 11	FC5-0473-000	115 - 63	FC5-0687-000	101 - 9
FB6-3397-000	310 - 12	FC5-0479-030	315 - 5	FC5-0688-000	101 - 10
FB6-3397-000	311 - 12	FC5-0481-000	315 - 7	FC5-0689-000	101 - 11
FB6-3398-000	310 - 13	FC5-0489-000	115 - 25	FC5-0690-000	115 - 15
FB6-3398-000	311 - 13	FC5-0490-000	115 - 26	FC5-0691-000	115 - 44
FB6-3402-000	310 - 15	FC5-0496-000	115 - 38	FC5-0697-000	810 - 32
FB6-3402-000	311 - 15	FC5-0529-000	115 - 30	FC5-0703-000	115 - 46
FB6-3403-000	310 - 16	FC5-0540-000	102 - 39	FC5-0798-000	104 - 22
FB6-3403-000	311 - 16	FC5-0542-000	115 - 32	FC5-0800-000	350 - 4
FB6-3404-000	310 - 17	FC5-0543-000	115 - 31	FC5-0805-000	353 - 17
FB6-3404-000	311 - 17	FC5-0544-000	315 - 13	FC5-0806-000	350 - 6
FB6-3405-000	310 - 18	FC5-0546-000	315 - 11	FC5-0812-000	100 - 17
FB6-3405-000	311 - 18	FC5-0547-000	102 - 40	FC5-0859-000	351 - 1
FB6-3408-000	310 - 20	FC5-0548-000	116 - 1	FC5-0860-020	100 - 43
FB6-3408-000	311 - 20	FC5-0549-000	116 - 13	FC5-0862-000	354 - 9
FB6-3410-000	310 - 21	FC5-0563-020	001 - 2	FC5-0870-000	352 - 8
FB6-3410-000	311 - 21	FC5-0567-010	102 - 17	FC5-0871-000	353 - 19
FB6-3413-000	310 - 23	FC5-0568-000	102 - 18	FC5-0872-000	354 - 2
FB6-3413-000	311 - 23	FC5-0571-010	102 - 3	FC5-0873-000	353 - 20
FB6-3478-000	300 - 1	FC5-0573-000	104 - 17	FC5-0888-020	351 - 2
FB6-3478-000	301 - 1	FC5-0583-000	300 - 11	FC5-0889-000	100 - 20

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
FC5-0953-000	100 - 3	FC5-1114-000	100 - 19	FC5-1422-020	300 - 18
FC5-0954-000	100 - 37	FC5-1115-000	100 - 25	FC5-1422-020	301 - 18
FC5-0957-000	100 - 18	FC5-1117-000	100 - 11	FC5-1423-000	300 - 19
FC5-0958-000	102 - 49	FC5-1118-000	101 - 20	FC5-1423-000	301 - 19
FC5-0959-000	103 - 1	FC5-1120-000	116 - 2	FC5-1424-020	300 - 20
FC5-0972-000	115 - 16	FC5-1121-000	116 - 3	FC5-1424-020	301 - 20
FC5-0974-000	353 - 5	FC5-1124-000	116 - 4	FC5-1425-000	300 - 21
FC5-0976-000	354 - 14	FC5-1125-000	116 - 5	FC5-1425-000	301 - 21
FC5-0977-000	354 - 10	FC5-1126-000	116 - 6	FC5-1516-000	106 - 4
FC5-0978-020	351 - 3	FC5-1127-010	116 - 7	FC5-1517-000	106 - 5
FC5-0985-020	352 - 20	FC5-1130-000	104 - 1	FC5-1518-000	106 - 6
FC5-0987-000	352 - 1	FC5-1131-000	810 - 2	FC5-1533-000	104 - 16
FC5-0988-000	352 - 2	FC5-1146-000	100 - 51	FC5-1535-000	101 - 17
FC5-0989-020	352 - 3	FC5-1168-000	140 - 1	FC5-1535-000	104 - 8
FC5-0991-000	352 - 21	FC5-1208-000	621 - 1	FC5-1536-000	116 - 8
FC5-0996-000	353 - 6	FC5-1209-000	621 - 2	FC5-1539-000	102 - 23
FC5-0997-000	353 - 7	FC5-1210-000	621 - 10	FC5-1540-000	102 - 24
FC5-0998-000	353 - 18	FC5-1211-000	621 - 11	FC5-1541-000	102 - 25
FC5-0999-030	353 - 16	FC5-1214-000	621 - 9	FC5-1545-000	102 - 26
FC5-1003-050	354 - 15	FC5-1217-000	621 - 32	FC5-1552-000	116 - 14
FC5-1005-000	354 - 16	FC5-1221-000	621 - 3	FC5-1558-000	116 - 9
FC5-1006-000	354 - 17	FC5-1239-000	640 - 2	FC5-1559-000	116 - 10
FC5-1009-000	354 - 11	FC5-1243-000	103 - 10	FC5-1562-000	102 - 34
FC5-1010-000	354 - 30	FC5-1246-000	640 - 3	FC5-1564-000	102 - 41
FC5-1011-000	354 - 31	FC5-1247-000	640 - 9	FC5-4285-030	A11 - 1
FC5-1012-000	354 - 3	FC5-1249-000	640 - 4	FC5-4286-000	A11 - 2
FC5-1013-000	352 - 22	FC5-1254-000	640 - 8	FC5-4287-000	A11 - 3
FC5-1013-000	354 - 18	FC5-1262-000	103 - 11	FC5-4295-010	A10 - 27
FC5-1014-000	354 - 19	FC5-1265-000	621 - 12	FC5-4323-000	A12 - 1
FC5-1017-000	353 - 8	FC5-1269-000	621 - 30	FC5-4324-000	A12 - 2
FC5-1019-020	351 - 5	FC5-1274-000	621 - 13	FC5-4353-000	A41 - 1
FC5-1020-020	354 - 4	FC5-1277-000	100 - 12	FC5-4396-000	A10 - 25
FC5-1023-000	354 - 5	FC5-1282-000	100 - 14	FC5-4397-000	A10 - 25
FC5-1024-000	354 - 35	FC5-1340-000	810 - 39	FC5-4399-000	A10 - 2
FC5-1025-000	352 - 4	FC5-1341-010	810 - 13	FC5-4400-000	A10 - 3
FC5-1029-020	354 -	FC5-1343-000	810 - 54	FC5-4425-000	A11 - 4
FC5-1038-000	352 - 5	FC5-1345-000	810 - 57	FC5-4425-000	A12 - 3
FC5-1053-000	353 - 9	FC5-1346-000	810 - 50	FC5-4425-000	A21 - 1
FC5-1054-000	354 - 36	FC5-1348-000	810 - 51	FC5-4425-000	A41 - 2
FC5-1059-000	130 - 1	FC5-1351-000	810 - 4	FC5-4427-000	A01 - 4
FC5-1061-000	130 - 2	FC5-1353-000	810 - 52	FC5-4458-010	130 - 6
FC5-1064-000	130 - 3	FC5-1354-000	115 - 17	FC5-5472-000	T23 - 1
FC5-1065-000	130 - 4	FC5-1356-000	810 - 21	FC5-5473-000	T23 - 2
FC5-1066-000	130 - 5	FC5-1358-000	810 - 6	FC5-5474-000	353 - 10
FC5-1087-000	102 - 53	FC5-1360-000	810 - 7	FC5-6003-000	352 - 24
FC5-1100-000	100 - 24	FC5-1367-000	810 - 8	FC5-6003-000	354 - 12
FC5-1101-000	100 - 5	FC5-1368-000	810 - 9	FC5-6004-000	351 - 14
FC5-1106-000	100 - 8	FC5-1382-000	810 - 53	FC5-6006-000	354 - 6
FC5-1108-000	100 - 9	FC5-1383-000	810 - 10	FC5-6008-020	354 - 20
FC5-1109-000	100 - 10	FC5-1384-000	810 - 11	FC5-6010-000	352 - 9
FC5-1111-000	100 - 29	FC5-1413-000	101 - 2	FC5-6011-000	351 - 6
FC5-1113-000	101 - 1	FC5-1420-000	102 - 15	FC5-6012-010	354 - 32

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
FC5-6014-000	353 - 21	FC6-4824-000	101 - 21	FC7-9358-000	115 - 61
FC5-6016-000	100 - 55	FC6-5046-000	115 - 22	FC7-9370-000	102 - 22
FC5-6019-000	354 - 21	FC6-5050-000	640 - 1	FC7-9381-000	310 - 18
FC5-6540-000	100 - 15	FC6-5051-000	102 - 47	FC7-9381-000	311 - 18
FC5-6899-000	370 - 2	FC6-5052-000	100 - 23	FC7-9481-000	115 - 24
FC5-7156-000	810 - 33	FC6-5053-000	102 - 1	FC7-9502-000	310 - 19
FC5-7160-000	810 - 12	FC6-5055-000	115 - 41	FC7-9502-000	311 - 19
FC5-7181-000	102 - 53	FC6-5055-000	810 - 30	FC7-9522-000	315 - 6
FC5-7182-000	810 - 42	FC6-5059-000	T23 - 3	FC8-0957-000	100 - 53
FC5-7195-000	102 - 52	FC6-5061-000	353 - 3	FC8-0959-000	100 - 50
FC5-7207-010	810 - 5	FC6-5061-000	354 - 28	FC8-0963-000	115 - 66
FC5-7216-020	300 - 31	FC6-5062-000	102 - 38	FC8-1053-000	130 - 9
FC5-7216-020	301 - 31	FC6-5067-000	100 - 41	FC8-1054-000	130 - 10
FC5-7217-000	315 - 14	FC6-5085-000	810 - 20	FC8-1055-000	100 - 42
FC5-7228-000	810 - 50	FC6-6661-000	310 - 61	FC8-1057-000	130 - 11
FC5-7257-000	261 - 4	FC6-6661-000	311 - 61	FC8-1058-000	130 - 12
FC5-7260-000	250 - 16	FC6-7082-000	315 - 14	FC8-1092-000	103 - 2
FC5-7260-000	251 - 16	FC6-7083-000	310 - 19	FC8-1093-000	100 - 7
FC5-7261-000	250 - 17	FC6-7083-000	311 - 19	FC8-1094-000	100 - 13
FC5-7261-000	251 - 17	FC6-7308-000	104 - 7	FC8-1110-000	621 - 41
FC6-2784-000	A12 - 14	FC6-8971-010	A12 - 15	FC8-1111-000	621 - 42
FC6-2848-000	300 - 12	FC6-8973-000	A11 - 5	FC8-1112-000	621 - 43
FC6-2849-000	300 - 14	FC6-8973-000	A41 - 3	FC8-1113-000	621 - 25
FC6-2849-000	301 - 14	FC6-9571-000	130 - 7	FC8-1117-000	621 - 24
FC6-2899-000	621 - 37	FC6-9604-000	115 - 2	FC8-1119-000	101 - 5
FC6-2902-000	115 - 18	FC6-9606-000	315 - 3	FC8-1120-000	106 - 2
FC6-2915-000	350 - 1	FC6-9607-000	315 - 4	FC8-1126-000	621 - 34
FC6-2915-000	353 - 2	FC6-9613-000	106 - 16	FC8-1130-000	621 - 29
FC6-2915-000	354 - 27	FC6-9625-000	115 - 4	FC8-1131-000	103 - 4
FC6-2918-000	101 - 18	FC6-9867-000	310 - 68	FC8-1132-000	100 - 6
FC6-2920-010	810 - 3	FC6-9867-000	311 - 67	FC8-1134-000	100 - 44
FC6-2924-000	810 - 14	FC7-0242-000	810 - 5	FC8-1140-000	621 - 33
FC6-2925-000	810 - 15	FC7-1740-000	315 - 12	FC8-1144-000	621 - 31
FC6-2927-000	810 - 16	FC7-2178-000	351 - 13	FC8-1157-000	100 - 2
FC6-2928-000	810 - 45	FC7-2385-000	250 - 19	FC8-1164-000	100 - 45
FC6-2929-000	810 - 17	FC7-2385-000	251 - 19	FC8-1165-000	100 - 47
FC6-2937-000	640 - 6	FC7-2665-000	500 - 2	FC8-1166-000	100 - 46
FC6-2941-000	115 - 65	FC7-2667-000	104 - 21	FC8-1178-000	310 - 5
FC6-2941-000	810 - 22	FC7-4155-000	115 - 3	FC8-1178-000	311 - 5
FC6-2943-000	810 - 23	FC7-4467-000	351 - 4	FC8-1201-000	100 - 40
FC6-2993-000	250 - 18	FC7-4740-000	354 - 25	FC8-1202-000	310 - 57
FC6-2993-000	251 - 18	FC7-5845-000	310 - 64	FC8-1202-000	311 - 57
FC6-4009-000	350 - 7	FC7-5845-000	311 - 31	FC8-1205-000	310 - 67
FC6-4012-000	353 - 4	FC7-5875-000	100 - 36	FC8-1205-000	311 - 66
FC6-4012-000	354 - 29	FC7-5878-000	115 - 55	FC8-1206-000	300 - 32
FC6-4015-000	115 - 40	FC7-5906-000	104 - 18	FC8-1206-000	301 - 32
FC6-4015-000	810 - 29	FC7-5907-000	104 - 20	FC8-1250-000	130 - 9
FC6-4026-000	115 - 12	FC7-5910-000	101 - 22	FC8-6163-000	400 - 29
FC6-4391-000	100 - 22	FC7-6968-000	100 - 21	FC8-6167-000	400 - 33
FC6-4513-000	400 - 49	FC7-6969-000	100 - 4	FC8-6169-000	400 - 32
FC6-4624-000	103 - 5	FC7-6970-000	100 - 28	FC8-6170-000	400 - 27
FC6-4627-000	810 - 49	FC7-7394-000	100 - 30	FC8-6171-000	400 - 10

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
FC8-6175-000	400 - 16	FC8-6381-000	A41 - 37	FG3-2302-020	310 - 28
FC8-6176-000	400 - 26	FC8-6382-000	A41 - 12	FG3-2302-020	311 - 28
FC8-6177-000	400 - 14	FC8-6383-000	A41 - 24	FG3-3187-000	315 - 1
FC8-6178-000	400 - 15	FC8-6384-000	A41 - 27	FG3-3188-000	115 - 27
FC8-6180-000	400 - 30	FC8-6385-000	A41 - 13	FG3-3294-000	351 - 7
FC8-6183-000	400 - 18	FC8-6386-000	A41 - 14	FG3-3295-000	354 - 7
FC8-6185-000	400 - 17	FC8-6387-000	A10 - 6	FG3-3297-000	351 - 8
FC8-6187-000	400 - 1	FC8-6388-000	A10 - 7	FG3-3299-020	353 - 11
FC8-6188-000	400 - 9	FC8-6395-000	A41 - 15	FG3-3301-000	351 - 9
FC8-6189-000	400 - 37	FC8-6396-000	A41 - 16	FG3-3757-000	A13 - 7
FC8-6196-000	400 - 42	FC8-6397-000	A41 - 17	FH2-6552-000	105 - 17
FC8-6197-000	400 - 43	FC8-6398-000	A41 - 35	FH4-6204-000	994 - IC10
FC8-6198-000	400 - 44	FC8-6399-000	A41 - 30	FH5-1021-010	352 - 10
FC8-6202-000	400 - 34	FC8-6402-000	A11 - 9	FH5-1108-010	352 - 11
FC8-6311-000	A10 - 4	FC8-6402-000	A41 - 23	FH6-5005-020	250 - 7
FC8-6312-000	A01 - 1	FC8-6403-000	A12 - 11	FH6-5075-021	102 - 7
FC8-6316-000	A11 - 19	FC8-6403-000	A41 - 38	FH7-7557-020	351 - 10
FC8-6317-000	A11 - 20	FC8-6404-000	A11 - 8	FH7-7557-020	352 - 6
FC8-6318-000	A11 - 21	FC8-6405-000	A10 - 8	FH7-7557-020	353 - 12
FC8-6319-000	A11 - 6	FC8-6406-000	A21 - 2	FH7-7557-020	354 - 22
FC8-6322-000	A11 - 7	FC8-6407-000	A21 - 3	FH7-7569-000	400 - 19
FC8-6330-000	A10 - 5	FC8-6410-000	A12 - 20	FH7-7625-030	140 - 3
FC8-6331-000	A11 - 15	FC8-6411-000	A41 - 25	FH7-7626-000	140 - 3
FC8-6332-000	A11 - 16	FC8-6412-000	A41 - 28	FK2-0146-000	140 - 10
FC8-6335-000	A13 - 2	FC8-6418-000	A41 - 18	FK2-0148-000	140 - 11
FC8-6336-000	A13 - 11	FC8-6419-000	A11 - 22	FK2-0149-000	101 - 16
FC8-6337-000	A13 - 3	FC8-6420-000	A10 - 9	FK2-0149-000	115 - 28
FC8-6338-000	A13 - 4	FC8-6421-000	A41 - 19	FK2-0149-000	310 - 30
FC8-6339-000	A13 - 5	FC8-6422-000	A11 - 10	FK2-0149-000	311 - 30
FC8-6340-000	A13 - 6	FC8-6423-000	A11 - 11	FK2-0149-000	621 - 4
FC8-6341-000	A13 - 10	FC8-6425-000	A10 - 26	FK2-0149-000	810 - 18
FC8-6345-000	A12 - 4	FC8-6920-000	100 - 38	FK2-0207-000	A21 - 4
FC8-6346-000	A12 - 5	FC8-6922-000	100 - 38	FK2-0216-000	A10 - 10
FC8-6347-000	A12 - 6	FC8-6926-000	100 - 38	FK2-0329-000	130 - 13
FC8-6348-000	A12 - 7	FC8-6931-000	100 - 38	FK2-0340-000	105 - 1
FC8-6350-000	A12 - 9	FC8-9326-000	T21 - 4	FK2-0341-020	105 - 1
FC8-6351-000	A12 - 16	FC8-9329-000	130 - 24	FK2-0349-000	931 - IC5
FC8-6352-000	A12 - 17	FC8-9747-000	100 - 52	FK2-0358-000	621 - 14
FC8-6353-000	A12 - 18	FC8-9748-000	100 - 52	FK2-0358-000	640 - 7
FC8-6355-000	A12 - 19	FC8-9749-000	100 - 52	FK2-0360-000	115 - 20
FC8-6368-000	A41 - 4	FC8-9752-000	100 - 52	FK2-0360-000	910 - 1
FC8-6369-000	A41 - 5	FC8-9753-000	100 - 52	FK2-0361-000	102 - 7
FC8-6371-000	A41 - 6	FC8-9754-000	100 - 52	FK2-0365-000	281 - 2
FC8-6372-000	A41 - 7	FC9-4655-000	102 - 54	FK2-0379-000	621 - 5
FC8-6373-000	A41 - 31	FC9-4659-000	115 - 5	FK2-0384-000	102 - 27
FC8-6374-000	A41 - 32	FF6-0345-000	350 - 5	FK2-0408-000	310 - 29
FC8-6375-000	A41 - 33	FF6-2058-000	310 - 26	FK2-0408-000	311 - 29
FC8-6376-000	A41 - 34	FF6-2058-000	311 - 26	FK2-0428-000	T23 - 4
FC8-6377-000	A41 - 8	FF6-2064-030	300 - 22	FK2-1773-000	930 - IC23
FC8-6378-000	A41 - 9	FF6-2064-030	301 - 22	FK2-2070-000	250 - 20
FC8-6379-000	A41 - 10	FF6-2397-000	310 - 50	FK2-2070-000	251 - 20
FC8-6380-000	A41 - 11	FF6-2397-000	311 - 50	FK2-2509-000	140 - 4

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
FK2-2987-000	140 - 12	FL2-0116-010	102 - 21	FL2-9010-000	140 - 5
FK2-4825-000	001 - 1	FL2-0143-000	115 - 45	FL2-9838-000	400 - 20
FK2-4826-000	001 - 1	FL2-0203-000	101 - 19	FL2-9839-000	400 - 20
FK2-4827-000	001 - 1	FL2-0203-000	106 - 15	FL2-9840-000	400 - 20
FK2-4828-000	001 - 1	FL2-0245-000	102 - 42	FL2-9841-000	400 - 20
FK2-4829-000	001 - 1	FL2-0247-000	116 - 11	FL2-9842-000	400 - 11
FK2-4830-000	001 - 1	FL2-0250-000	116 - 12	FL2-9843-000	400 - 21
FK2-4831-000	001 - 1	FL2-0251-000	116 - 15	FL2-9845-000	400 - 22
FK2-4832-000	001 - 1	FL2-0267-000	101 - 3	FL2-9933-000	A11 - 12
FK2-4833-000	001 - 1	FL2-0295-000	621 - 26	FL2-9934-000	A11 - 13
FK2-4834-000	001 - 1	FL2-0298-000	115 - 59	FL2-9935-010	A11 - 14
FK2-4836-000	001 - 1	FL2-0304-030	640 - 21	FL2-9937-000	A41 - 22
FK2-4843-000	001 - 1	FL2-0307-000	621 - 15	FL2-9938-000	A12 - 10
FK2-4903-000	932 - IC15	FL2-0309-000	621 - 6	FL2-9939-000	A41 - 36
FK2-5758-000	932 - IC45	FL2-0313-000	621 - 16	FL2-9940-000	A12 - 12
FK2-5788-000	950 - IC3	FL2-0314-000	102 - 50	FL2-9941-000	A13 - 1
FK2-5794-000	370 - 1	FL2-0315-000	100 - 26	FL2-9942-000	A41 - 43
FK2-5795-000	370 - 1	FL2-0320-000	640 - 22	FL2-9943-000	A13 - 9
FK2-6297-000	105 - 2	FL2-0322-000	500 - 1	FL2-9945-000	A10 - 12
FK2-6298-000	105 - 2	FL2-0330-000	102 - 48	FL2-9946-000	A10 - 13
FK2-6299-000	251 - 2	FL2-0351-000	350 - 3	FL2-9947-000	A10 - 14
FK2-6300-000	250 - 2	FL2-0352-000	100 - 39	FL3-0187-000	100 - 38
FK2-6301-000	106 - 1	FL2-0376-000	640 - 10	FL3-0188-000	100 - 38
FK2-6305-000	250 - 8	FL2-0379-000	350 - 8	FL3-0189-000	100 - 38
FK2-6305-000	251 - 7	FL2-1200-000	352 - 23	FL3-0191-000	100 - 38
FK2-6306-000	250 - 1	FL2-1201-040	353 - 13	FL3-0192-000	100 - 38
FK2-6306-000	251 - 1	FL2-1202-000	353 - 14	FL3-0193-000	100 - 38
FK2-6308-000	100 - 16	FL2-1203-010	353 - 15	FL3-0196-000	100 - 38
FK2-6309-000	400 - 13	FL2-1205-010	354 - 37	FL3-0197-000	100 - 38
FK2-6316-000	106 - 12	FL2-1206-010	354 - 8	FL3-0198-000	100 - 38
FK2-6317-000	910 - 2	FL2-1207-020	354 - 23	FL3-0199-000	100 - 38
FK2-6319-000	910 - 3	FL2-1208-030	354 - 13	FL3-0201-000	100 - 38
FK2-6321-000	930 - IC17	FL2-1209-030	354 - 24	FL3-0202-000	100 - 38
FK2-6324-000	105 - 1	FL2-1210-020	354 - 43	FL3-0203-000	100 - 38
FK2-6326-000	103 - 6	FL2-1517-000	102 - 8	FL3-0204-000	100 - 38
FK2-6327-000	400 - 13	FL2-1518-000	102 - 13	FL3-0205-000	100 - 38
FK2-6450-000	930 - IC3	FL2-3265-000	102 - 45	FL3-0489-000	130 - 17
FK2-6609-000	931 - IC6	FL2-3266-000	261 - 2	FL3-1370-000	100 - 38
FK2-6627-000	130 - 14	FL2-4399-000	115 - 29	FL3-2594-000	130 - 8
FK2-6691-000	900 - 1	FL2-4520-000	102 - 37	FL3-2595-000	130 - 8
FK2-6692-000	932 - IC51	FL2-6580-000	310 - 14	FL3-2596-000	130 - 8
FK2-6693-000	900 - 2	FL2-6580-000	311 - 14	FL3-2597-000	130 - 8
FK2-6698-000	900 - 3	FL2-8280-000	310 - 69	FL3-2598-000	130 - 8
FK2-6721-000	100 - 48	FL2-8280-000	311 - 68	FL3-2599-000	130 - 8
FK2-6722-000	130 - 16	FL2-8282-000	310 - 25	FM2-0141-020	300 -
FK2-6869-000	A41 - 20	FL2-8283-000	311 - 25	FM2-0142-020	301 -
FK2-6870-000	A41 - 21	FL2-8284-000	300 - 33	FM2-0177-000	350 - 2
FK2-6871-000	A41 - 39	FL2-8284-000	301 - 33	FM2-0242-000	281 -
FK2-6872-000	A10 - 11	FL2-8435-000	100 - 34	FM2-0252-010	116 -
FK2-6919-000	400 - 23	FL2-8441-000	621 - 27	FM2-0287-020	640 -
FK2-7367-000	001 - 4	FL2-9008-000	140 - 8	FM2-0289-000	640 - 11
FL2-0106-000	115 - 1	FL2-9009-000	140 - 9	FM2-0290-000	621 - 7

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
FM2-0299-000	810 - 35	FM3-4405-000	115 -	FM3-6929-000	A10 - 17
FM2-0303-000	101 - 4	FM3-5041-000	460 -	FM3-6930-000	A41 - 46
FM2-0338-000	106 - 7	FM3-5046-000	370 - 3	FM3-6931-000	A41 - 47
FM2-0339-000	106 - 3	FM3-5047-000	370 - 3	FM3-6932-000	A13 - 14
FM2-0355-010	115 - 58	FM3-5048-000	370 - 3	FM3-6933-000	A13 - 16
FM2-0389-000	102 - 14	FM3-5050-000	105 - 7	FM3-6934-000	A41 - 48
FM2-1116-010	130 - 18	FM3-5051-000	930 -	FM3-6935-000	A10 - 21
FM2-1328-050	352 -	FM3-5052-000	930 -	FM3-6936-000	A10 - 23
FM2-1331-080	353 -	FM3-5057-000	910 - 5	FM3-6954-000	931 -
FM2-1335-160	354 -	FM3-5058-000	810 - 43	FM3-6955-000	400 - 12
FM2-1340-030	354 - 26	FM3-5059-000	105 - 10	FM3-6956-000	400 - 5
FM2-1578-130	311 -	FM3-5061-000	370 - 6	FM3-6957-000	400 - 4
FM2-1771-000	281 -	FM3-5063-000	104 - 24	FM3-7052-000	370 - 5
FM2-1775-020	810 - 35	FM3-5066-000	140 - 2	FM3-7054-000	100 - 35
FM2-1776-040	810 - 38	FM3-5070-000	104 - 24	FM3-7059-000	810 - 38
FM2-1777-000	810 - 28	FM3-5071-000	140 - 7	FM3-7060-000	810 - 28
FM2-2768-000	315 - 8	FM3-5072-000	102 - 29	FM3-7061-000	810 -
FM2-2769-000	810 - 40	FM3-5073-000	104 - 9	FM3-7062-000	810 - 19
FM2-2770-000	102 - 16	FM3-5074-000	115 - 19	FM3-7063-000	810 -
FM2-2776-000	103 - 7	FM3-5076-000	621 - 35	FM3-7064-000	810 -
FM2-2816-000	281 - 3	FM3-5077-000	250 - 15	FM3-7066-000	810 -
FM2-2838-000	261 - 3	FM3-5077-000	251 - 15	FM3-7067-000	810 -
FM2-2842-000	250 - 3	FM3-5080-000	105 - 11	FM3-7068-000	810 - 19
FM2-2851-000	102 - 9	FM3-5082-000	105 - 8	FM3-7069-000	810 - 19
FM2-2858-000	102 - 46	FM3-5083-000	105 - 9	FM3-7070-000	810 - 19
FM2-2980-020	300 -	FM3-5084-000	370 - 3	FM3-7071-000	810 - 19
FM2-2981-020	301 -	FM3-5085-000	370 - 3	FM3-7129-000	400 - 6
FM2-3265-000	350 -	FM3-5086-000	102 - 51	FM3-7130-000	400 - 6
FM2-5540-000	315 -	FM3-5101-000	T22 - 2	FM3-7131-000	400 - 45
FM3-0009-000	310 -	FM3-5464-000	460 -	FM3-7132-000	400 - 46
FM3-1283-000	115 - 21	FM3-5535-000	130 - 22	FM3-7133-000	400 - 2
FM3-1296-000	145 -	FM3-5580-000	T22 - 1	FM3-7134-000	400 - 3
FM3-1297-000	104 - 3	FM3-5586-000	T22 - 5	FM3-7135-000	400 - 6
FM3-1298-000	145 - 3	FM3-5587-000	T22 - 6	FM3-7260-000	140 -
FM3-1309-000	115 - 64	FM3-5617-000	T21 - 1	FM3-7261-000	130 -
FM3-1319-000	994 -	FM3-5634-000	900 - 5	FM3-7262-000	130 -
FM3-2982-000	310 -	FM3-5642-000	900 - 5	FM3-7270-000	130 -
FM3-2983-000	311 -	FM3-5743-000	130 - 23	FM3-7271-000	130 -
FM3-3772-000	370 - 1	FM3-5745-000	130 - 21	FM3-7272-000	130 -
FM3-3911-000	104 - 19	FM3-6145-000	910 -	FM3-7286-00	115 -
FM3-4146-000	310 - 8	FM3-6153-000	250 -	FM3-7390-000	105 - 4
FM3-4146-000	311 - 8	FM3-6165-000	810 -	FM3-7391-000	105 - 3
FM3-4150-000	310 - 24	FM3-6166-000	810 - 19	FM3-7395-000	950 -
FM3-4150-000	311 - 24	FM3-6338-000	400 - 7	FM3-9216-000	130 - 19
FM3-4386-000	130 -	FM3-6887-000	A41 -	FM3-9437-000	810 -
FM3-4387-000	251 -	FM3-6890-000	A13 -	FM3-9438-000	810 -
FM3-4389-000	104 - 14	FM3-6891-000	A12 -	FM3-9441-000	115 - 54
FM3-4391-000	370 - 4	FM3-6892-000	A12 - 13	FM4-0024-000	400 - 8
FM3-4396-000	621 -	FM3-6898-000	A41 - 42	FM4-0074-000	130 - 20
FM3-4400-000	140 -	FM3-6914-000	A90 -	FM4-1245-000	932 -
FM3-4401-000	140 -	FM3-6915-000	A13 - 13	FM4-1246-000	932 -
FM3-4403-000	900 - 5	FM3-6916-000	A41 - 45	FM4-1247-000	932 -

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
FM4-1248-000	932 -	FU3-0293-000	301 - 25	FU5-1453-000	810 - 55
FM4-2525-000	310 - 27	FU3-0294-000	300 - 26	FU5-1615-000	250 - 4
FM4-2525-000	311 - 27	FU3-0294-000	301 - 26	FU5-1615-000	251 - 4
FM4-6690-000	130 - 15	FU3-0347-000	310 - 53	FU5-1626-000	A12 - 25
FS1-9009-020	810 - 27	FU3-0347-000	311 - 53	FU5-1626-000	A41 - 51
FS5-1943-000	310 - 33	FU3-0349-000	310 - 54	FU5-1737-000	115 - 33
FS5-1943-000	311 - 33	FU3-0349-000	311 - 54	FU5-1760-000	115 - 56
FS5-1943-000	350 - 9	FU3-0350-000	310 - 55	FU5-1763-000	310 - 34
FS5-1943-000	352 - 25	FU3-0350-000	311 - 55	FU5-1763-000	311 - 34
FS5-1943-000	353 - 22	FU5-0006-000	115 - 48	FU5-2032-000	300 - 27
FS5-1943-000	354 - 38	FU5-0007-000	106 - 13	FU5-2033-000	301 - 27
FS5-1945-000	810 - 36	FU5-0054-000	352 - 12	FU5-2034-000	115 - 37
FS5-6448-000	640 - 12	FU5-0062-000	315 - 10	FU5-2035-000	102 - 43
FS5-6488-000	353 - 23	FU5-0063-000	315 - 9	FU5-2037-000	116 - 16
FS5-9664-020	104 - 15	FU5-0076-000	353 - 25	FU5-2038-000	104 - 10
FS6-1063-000	310 - 35	FU5-0077-000	352 - 13	FU5-2044-000	116 - 17
FS6-1063-000	311 - 35	FU5-0078-000	352 - 14	FU5-2045-000	116 - 18
FS6-2791-000	115 - 35	FU5-0087-000	250 - 9	FU5-2063-000	115 - 50
FS6-8116-000	300 - 23	FU5-0087-000	251 - 8	FU5-2064-000	101 - 12
FS6-8116-000	301 - 23	FU5-0095-000	281 - 4	FU5-2066-000	104 - 13
FS7-2797-000	310 - 36	FU5-0096-000	281 - 5	FU5-2067-000	115 - 47
FS7-2797-000	311 - 36	FU5-0097-000	281 - 6	FU5-2068-030	350 - 11
FS7-2800-000	310 - 38	FU5-0098-000	250 - 10	FU5-2073-000	810 - 34
FS7-2800-000	311 - 38	FU5-0098-000	251 - 9	FU5-2074-000	350 - 12
FS7-2801-000	310 - 39	FU5-0101-000	281 - 7	FU5-2076-000	116 - 19
FS7-2801-000	311 - 39	FU5-0108-000	621 - 18	FU5-2079-000	250 - 11
FS7-2803-000	310 - 41	FU5-0109-000	621 - 19	FU5-2079-000	251 - 10
FS7-2803-000	311 - 41	FU5-0110-000	640 - 13	FU5-2089-000	621 - 21
FS7-2805-000	300 - 24	FU5-0111-000	640 - 14	FU5-2090-000	103 - 8
FS7-2805-000	301 - 24	FU5-0112-000	640 - 15	FU5-2096-000	101 - 15
FS7-2859-000	353 - 24	FU5-0113-000	640 - 16	FU5-2097-000	300 - 28
FS7-2859-000	354 - 34	FU5-0114-000	640 - 17	FU5-2097-000	301 - 28
FS7-5909-000	310 - 42	FU5-0115-000	621 - 20	FU5-2102-000	810 - 37
FS7-5909-000	311 - 42	FU5-0126-000	281 - 8	FU5-2104-000	300 - 29
FS7-5910-000	310 - 43	FU5-0127-000	810 - 48	FU5-2104-000	301 - 29
FS7-5910-000	311 - 43	FU5-0128-000	350 - 10	FU5-2611-000	116 - 20
FS7-8107-000	900 - 7	FU5-0129-000	810 - 46	FU5-2652-000	102 - 10
FS7-8143-020	900 - 8	FU5-1006-000	115 - 49	FU5-2653-000	104 - 11
FU3-0280-000	310 - 44	FU5-1026-000	640 - 18	FU5-3016-000	115 - 51
FU3-0280-000	311 - 44	FU5-1028-000	102 - 36	FU5-3018-000	354 - 39
FU3-0282-000	310 - 45	FU5-1029-000	102 - 35	FU5-3019-000	353 - 26
FU3-0282-000	311 - 45	FU5-1030-000	103 - 12	FU5-3020-000	352 - 15
FU3-0283-000	310 - 46	FU5-1031-000	640 - 19	FU5-3020-000	353 - 27
FU3-0283-000	311 - 46	FU5-1033-000	310 - 32	FU5-3021-000	352 - 26
FU3-0284-000	310 - 47	FU5-1033-000	311 - 32	FU5-3021-000	354 - 40
FU3-0284-000	311 - 47	FU5-1034-000	621 - 17	FU5-3022-000	352 - 16
FU3-0285-000	106 - 8	FU5-1035-000	104 - 4	FU5-3178-000	102 - 11
FU3-0288-000	310 - 48	FU5-1035-000	145 - 8	FU5-3180-000	102 - 20
FU3-0288-000	311 - 48	FU5-1168-000	A11 - 23	FU5-3710-000	400 - 31
FU3-0289-000	310 - 49	FU5-1172-000	A12 - 24	FU5-6014-000	115 - 57
FU3-0289-000	311 - 49	FU5-1172-000	A41 - 50	FU5-6643-000	106 - 14
FU3-0293-000	300 - 25	FU5-1173-000	A10 - 15	FU5-8011-000	145 - 11

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
FU5-8021-000	100 - 54	FU6-2924-000	145 - 9	FU8-0311-000	A21 - 5
FU5-8203-000	400 - 48	FU6-2974-000	145 - 10	FU8-0312-000	A41 - 62
FU5-8204-000	400 - 48	FU6-8059-000	400 - 38	FU8-0313-000	A41 - 63
FU5-8205-000	400 - 48	FU6-8060-000	400 - 38	FU8-0314-000	A41 - 64
FU5-8206-000	400 - 48	FU6-8061-000	400 - 38	FU8-0315-000	A41 - 65
FU5-8207-000	400 - 48	FU6-8726-000	400 - 25	FU8-0316-000	A41 - 66
FU5-8208-000	400 - 48	FU6-8727-000	400 - 25	FU8-0317-000	A41 - 67
FU5-8209-000	400 - 48	FU6-8728-000	400 - 25	FU8-0318-000	A41 - 68
FU5-8210-000	400 - 48	FU6-8729-000	400 - 25	FU8-0319-000	A21 - 6
FU5-8211-000	400 - 48	FU6-8730-000	400 - 28	FU8-0320-000	A21 - 7
FU5-8215-000	400 - 48	FU6-8731-000	400 - 28	HH2-2824-000	T21 - 5
FU5-8216-000	400 - 48	FU6-8732-000	400 - 28	NPN	001 -
FU5-8217-000	400 - 48	FU6-8733-000	400 - 28	NPN	100 -
FU5-8329-000	100 - 54	FU6-8741-000	A13 - 12	NPN	101 -
FU5-8795-000	315 - 2	FU6-8743-000	A10 - 19	NPN	102 -
FU5-8802-000	100 - 53	FU6-8744-000	A10 - 19	NPN	103 -
FU5-8803-000	100 - 53	FU6-8745-000	A10 - 19	NPN	104 -
FU5-8853-000	400 - 38	FU6-8746-000	A10 - 18	NPN	105 -
FU5-8854-000	400 - 38	FU6-8747-000	A10 - 18	NPN	106 -
FU5-9139-000	A01 - 2	FU6-8748-000	A10 - 18	NPN	107 -
FU5-9140-000	A01 - 3	FU6-8749-000	A10 - 18	NPN	261 -
FU6-0019-000	281 - 4	FU7-0342-000	115 - 36	NPN	351 -
FU6-0020-000	281 - 8	FU7-0445-000	310 - 52	NPN	370 -
FU6-0021-000	810 - 48	FU7-0445-000	311 - 52	NPN	400 -
FU6-0022-000	810 - 46	FU7-0848-000	310 - 51	NPN	500 -
FU6-0023-000	810 - 24	FU7-0848-000	311 - 51	NPN	900 -
FU6-0024-000	261 - 5	FU7-2256-000	621 - 40	NPN	A01 -
FU6-0029-000	250 - 21	FU7-2596-000	400 - 35	NPN	A10 -
FU6-0029-000	261 - 6	FU7-2597-000	400 - 36	NPN	A11 -
FU6-0036-000	250 - 22	FU7-2651-000	A10 - 16	NPN	A21 -
FU6-0036-000	251 - 12	FU7-2652-000	A11 - 24	NPN	T21 -
FU6-0040-000	102 - 12	FU7-2653-000	A11 - 17	NPN	T22 -
FU6-0041-000	250 - 23	FU7-2654-000	A12 - 26	NPN	T23 -
FU6-0041-000	251 - 21	FU7-2655-000	A12 - 27	RB1-8945-000	310 - 58
FU6-0054-000	250 - 24	FU7-2656-000	A12 - 28	RB1-8945-000	311 - 58
FU6-0054-000	251 - 11	FU7-2657-000	A41 - 44	RS1-1087-000	810 - 25
FU6-0710-000	310 - 56	FU7-2658-000	A41 - 54	RS5-1446-000	810 - 41
FU6-0710-000	311 - 56	FU7-2659-000	A41 - 55	RS5-1567-000	310 - 59
FU6-1088-000	A41 - 52	FU7-2660-000	A41 - 56	RS5-1567-000	311 - 59
FU6-1089-000	A41 - 53	FU8-0298-000	A13 - 17	VS1-7173-010	281 - 10
FU6-2009-000	102 - 28	FU8-0299-000	A12 - 21	VS1-7173-014	310 - 66
FU6-2011-000	103 - 9	FU8-0300-000	A12 - 22	VS1-7173-014	311 - 65
FU6-2012-000	621 - 38	FU8-0301-000	A12 - 23	VS1-7177-002	105 - 12
FU6-2016-000	101 - 14	FU8-0302-000	A12 - 29	VS1-7177-002	107 - 7
FU6-2020-000	116 - 21	FU8-0303-000	A41 - 57	VS1-7177-002	310 - 65
FU6-2021-000	810 - 47	FU8-0304-000	A41 - 26	VS1-7177-002	311 - 64
FU6-2022-000	115 - 34	FU8-0305-000	A41 - 58	VS1-7177-002	621 - 44
FU6-2684-000	310 - 37	FU8-0306-000	A41 - 40	VS1-7177-002	A10 - 22
FU6-2684-000	311 - 37	FU8-0307-000	A41 - 29	VS1-7177-002	A41 - 49
FU6-2784-000	310 - 63	FU8-0308-000	A41 - 59	VS1-7177-002	T22 - 3
FU6-2784-000	311 - 63	FU8-0309-000	A41 - 60	VS1-7177-003	107 - 1
FU6-2924-000	104 - 5	FU8-0310-000	A41 - 61	VS1-7177-003	115 - 8

NUMERICAL INDEX
iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Numerical Index)

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
VS1-7177-003	621 - 45	XA9-1164-000	250 - 5	XB1-3301-207	300 - 505
VS1-7177-003	910 - 4	XA9-1164-000	251 - 5	XB1-3301-207	301 - 505
VS1-7177-003	A13 - 15	XA9-1164-000	281 - 9	XB2-6300-607	370 - 503
VS1-7177-003	T22 - 4	XA9-1164-000	A41 - 69	XB2-8300-607	300 - 501
VS1-7177-004	105 - 13	XA9-1386-000	100 - 33	XB2-8300-607	301 - 501
VS1-7177-004	261 - 9	XA9-1386-000	101 - 13	XB3-6300-605	310 - 503
VS1-7177-004	A10 - 24	XA9-1386-000	102 - 6	XB3-6300-605	311 - 503
VS1-7177-004	A21 - 8	XA9-1386-000	103 - 3	XB3-6400-805	102 - 507
VS1-7177-005	107 - 2	XA9-1386-000	104 - 12	XB4-5300-607	621 - 501
VS1-7177-006	102 - 33	XA9-1386-000	105 - 6	XB4-5300-607	640 - 501
VS1-7177-006	621 - 39	XA9-1386-000	106 - 11	XB4-5300-607	810 - 502
VS1-7177-006	640 - 24	XA9-1386-000	115 - 52	XB4-5300-805	351 - 502
VS1-7177-008	105 - 14	XA9-1386-000	310 - 31	XB4-5300-805	354 - 501
VS1-7177-009	107 - 3	XA9-1386-000	351 - 11	XB4-5300-807	103 - 502
VS1-7177-010	107 - 4	XA9-1386-000	352 - 17	XB4-5300-807	300 - 502
VS1-7177-012	105 - 15	XA9-1386-000	354 - 41	XB4-5300-807	301 - 502
VS1-7177-012	810 - 44	XA9-1386-000	370 - 7	XB4-5300-807	621 - 503
VS1-7207-003	250 - 12	XA9-1386-000	621 - 22	XB4-5301-005	A10 - 506
VS1-7207-003	251 - 3	XA9-1386-000	T21 - 3	XB4-5301-005	A11 - 503
VS1-7507-005	107 - 5	XA9-1386-000	T23 - 5	XB4-5301-005	A12 - 501
VS1-7507-007	105 - 16	XA9-1415-000	400 - 41	XB4-5301-005	A13 - 501
VS1-8412-003	107 - 8	XA9-1468-000	102 - 5	XB4-5301-005	A41 - 503
VS1-8412-003	140 - 6	XB1-1300-607	400 - 502	XB4-5301-007	130 - 501
VS1-8412-013	102 - 30	XB1-2300-309	A21 - 501	XB4-5400-805	351 - 503
VS1-8412-015	107 - 9	XB1-2300-309	A41 - 504	XB4-5400-807	100 - 501
VS1-8412-027	107 - 6	XB1-2300-405	351 - 501	XB4-5400-807	101 - 502
VT2-5198-016	T21 - 2	XB1-2300-405	353 - 501	XB4-5400-807	102 - 505
WA7-5211-000	900 - 6	XB1-2300-405	354 - 502	XB4-5400-807	145 - 501
WE8-5600-000	400 - 47	XB1-2300-407	103 - 501	XB4-5400-807	250 - 501
WE8-5689-000	001 - 3	XB1-2300-409	810 - 501	XB4-5400-807	251 - 501
WG8-5696-000	A13 - 8	XB1-2300-607	101 - 501	XB4-5400-807	310 - 504
WG8-5696-000	A21 - 9	XB1-2300-607	104 - 501	XB4-5400-807	311 - 504
WG8-5696-000	A41 - 41	XB1-2300-607	106 - 501	XB4-5400-807	350 - 501
WG8-5776-000	400 - 24	XB1-2300-607	145 - 503	XB4-5400-807	351 - 504
WG8-5783-000	102 - 44	XB1-2300-607	900 - 502	XB4-5401-007	115 - 501
WG8-5783-000	115 - 62	XB1-2300-807	310 - 501	XB4-5401-007	116 - 501
WG8-5783-000	281 - 1	XB1-2300-807	311 - 501	XB4-5401-007	315 - 501
WP2-5264-000	101 - 6	XB1-2301-407	102 - 503	XB4-5401-205	352 - 502
WT2-0255-000	A10 - 1	XB1-2302-007	106 - 503	XB4-5401-205	353 - 502
WT2-5694-000	A11 - 18	XB1-2400-603	140 - 501	XB4-5401-205	354 - 503
WT8-5099-000	105 - 18	XB1-2400-607	310 - 506	XB4-5401-205	A10 - 507
X71-9310-000	640 - 20	XB1-2400-607	311 - 506	XB4-5401-205	A11 - 504
XA9-0265-010	105 - 5	XB1-2400-607	370 - 502	XB4-5401-207	310 - 505
XA9-0465-000	900 - 4	XB1-2400-609	A10 - 504	XB4-5401-207	311 - 505
XA9-0656-000	310 - 60	XB1-2400-807	100 - 502	XB4-7300-807	104 - 502
XA9-0656-000	311 - 60	XB1-2401-406	A10 - 501	XB4-7300-807	145 - 502
XA9-0702-000	810 - 31	XB1-2402-007	140 - 502	XB6-7300-606	400 - 501
XA9-0732-000	A10 - 20	XB1-2403-006	900 - 503	XB6-7300-607	105 - 501
XA9-0732-000	A21 - 10	XB1-2403-007	910 - 501	XB6-7300-607	106 - 502
XA9-0813-000	100 - 49	XB1-2500-603	140 - 505	XB6-7300-607	130 - 502
XA9-0894-010	115 - 39	XB1-3300-607	310 - 502	XB6-7300-607	140 - 503
XA9-1164-000	104 - 23	XB1-3300-607	311 - 502	XB6-7300-607	261 - 501

PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO
XB6-7300-607	370 - 501	XD9-0136-000	250 - 13		
XB6-7300-607	640 - 502	XD9-0136-000	251 - 13		
XB6-7300-607	900 - 501	XD9-0136-000	281 - 12		
XB6-7300-607	910 - 502	XD9-0136-000	310 - 62		
XB6-7300-607	T21 - 501	XD9-0136-000	311 - 62		
XB6-7300-607	T22 - 501	XD9-0136-000	350 - 13		
XB6-7300-609	281 - 501	XD9-0136-000	351 - 12		
XB6-7300-807	300 - 503	XD9-0136-000	352 - 27		
XB6-7300-807	301 - 503	XD9-0136-000	353 - 30		
XB7-2300-405	A10 - 502	XD9-0136-000	354 - 33		
XD1-1104-135	300 - 504	XD9-0136-000	640 - 23		
XD1-1104-135	301 - 504	XD9-0136-000	810 - 59		
XD1-1104-634	640 - 503	XD9-0137-010	250 - 14		
XD1-1106-215	640 - 505	XD9-0137-010	251 - 14		
XD1-1106-219	116 - 502	XD9-0137-010	261 - 7		
XD1-1108-215	102 - 502	XD9-0137-010	281 - 13		
XD1-1108-215	640 - 508	XD9-0137-010	621 - 36		
XD1-4200-402	140 - 504	XD9-0137-010	810 - 60		
XD1-4200-502	140 - 506	XF2-1605-760	261 - 8		
XD2-1100-322	A41 - 505	XF2-1607-640	A21 - 11		
XD2-1100-402	102 - 501	XF2-1607-640	A41 - 507		
XD2-1100-402	A10 - 503	XF2-1607-840	106 - 9		
XD2-1100-402	A11 - 501	XF2-1608-860	102 - 19		
XD2-1100-402	A12 - 502	XF2-1609-040	106 - 10		
XD2-1100-402	A21 - 502	XF2-4104-040	281 - 11		
XD2-1100-402	A41 - 501	XF2-4104-240	352 - 18		
XD2-1100-422	115 - 502	XF2-4107-940	353 - 28		
XD2-1100-502	100 - 503	XF2-4108-240	352 - 19		
XD2-1100-502	621 - 504	XF2-4109-240	354 - 42		
XD2-1100-642	102 - 504	XF2-4112-240	115 - 53		
XD2-1100-642	115 - 505	XF2-4606-740	400 - 40		
XD2-1100-642	A41 - 506	XF2-4668-040	400 - 39		
XD2-2100-602	810 - 503	XG9-0111-000	621 - 23		
XD2-2100-802	640 - 507	XG9-0387-000	810 - 56		
XD3-1200-102	102 - 506	XG9-0491-000	640 - 5		
XD3-2160-162	115 - 504	XG9-0507-000	A41 - 508		
XD3-2200-102	115 - 503	XG9-0520-000	353 - 29		
XD3-2200-102	A12 - 503	XG9-0521-000	640 - 504		
XD3-2200-122	261 - 503	XH9-0125-000	102 - 4		
XD3-2200-122	310 - 507	XZ9-0603-000	100 - 27		
XD3-2200-122	311 - 507				
XD3-2200-122	352 - 501				
XD3-2200-122	354 - 504				
XD3-2200-122	A11 - 502				
XD3-2200-122	A41 - 502				
XD3-2200-142	640 - 506				
XD3-2200-162	350 - 502				
XD3-2200-162	621 - 505				
XD3-2200-182	261 - 502				
XD3-2300-142	621 - 502				
XD9-0134-000	810 - 58				
XD9-0136-000	102 - 32				

iR3245/3235/3230/3225 Series(Parts Catalog)

iR3245F

100V	**F15-2013-000**	**DHH**	ADF/FAX model

iR3245N

230V CN	**F15-2054-000**	**DRX**	
230V EUR	**F15-2094-000**	**DHM**	ADF model

iR3245

120V TW	**F15-2001-000**	**DRW**	
100V	**F15-2011-000**	**DHA**	
230V	**F15-2041-000**	**DHN**	
230V AU	**F15-2061-000**	**DHP**	ADF model
230V KR	**F15-2071-000**	**DRY**	
230V EUR	**F15-2091-000**	**DHL**	

imageRUNNER3245i

120V	**F15-2035-000**	**DHK**	ADF model

imageRUNNER3245

120V	**F15-2031-000**	**DHJ**	ADF model
120V	**F15-2032-000**	**DQA**	GOVERNMENT/ADF model

iR3235F

100V	**F15-2113-000**	**DFV**	ADF/FAX model

iR3235i

120V	**F15-2135-000**	**DGA**	ADF model

iR3235N

230V CN	**F15-2154-000**		
230V EUR	**F15-2194-000**	**DGJ**	ADF model

iR3235

120V TW	**F15-2101-000**	**DRZ**	
100V	**F15-2111-000**	**DFU**	
230V	**F15-2141-000**	**DGR**	
230V AU	**F15-2161-000**	**DGY**	ADF model
230V KR	**F15-2171-000**	**DSB**	
230V EUR	**F15-2191-000**	**DGH**	

imageRUNNER3235

120V	**F15-2131-000**	**DFW**	ADF model
120V	**F15-2132-000**	**DPZ**	GOVERNMENT/ADF model

iR3230N

230V CN	**F15-2254-000**	**DSF**	

iR3230

120V TW	**F15-2201-000**	**DSE**	

230V	**F15-2241-000**	**DFS**	
230V AU	**F15-2261-000**	**DFT**	
230V KR	**F15-2271-000**	**DSH**	

imageRUNNER3230

120V	**F15-2231-000**	**DFR**	
120V	**F15-2232-000**	**DPY**	GOVERNMENT/ADF model

iR3225F

100V	**F15-2313-000**	**DFF**	ADF/FAX model

iR3225N

230V CN	**F15-2354-000**	**DSJ**	
230V EUR	**F15-2394-000**	**DFK**	ADF model

iR3225

100V	**F15-2311-000**	**DFE**	
230V	**F15-2341-000**	**DFL**	
230V AU	**F15-2361-000**	**DFQ**	
230V EUR	**F15-2391-000**	**DFJ**	

imageRUNNER3225

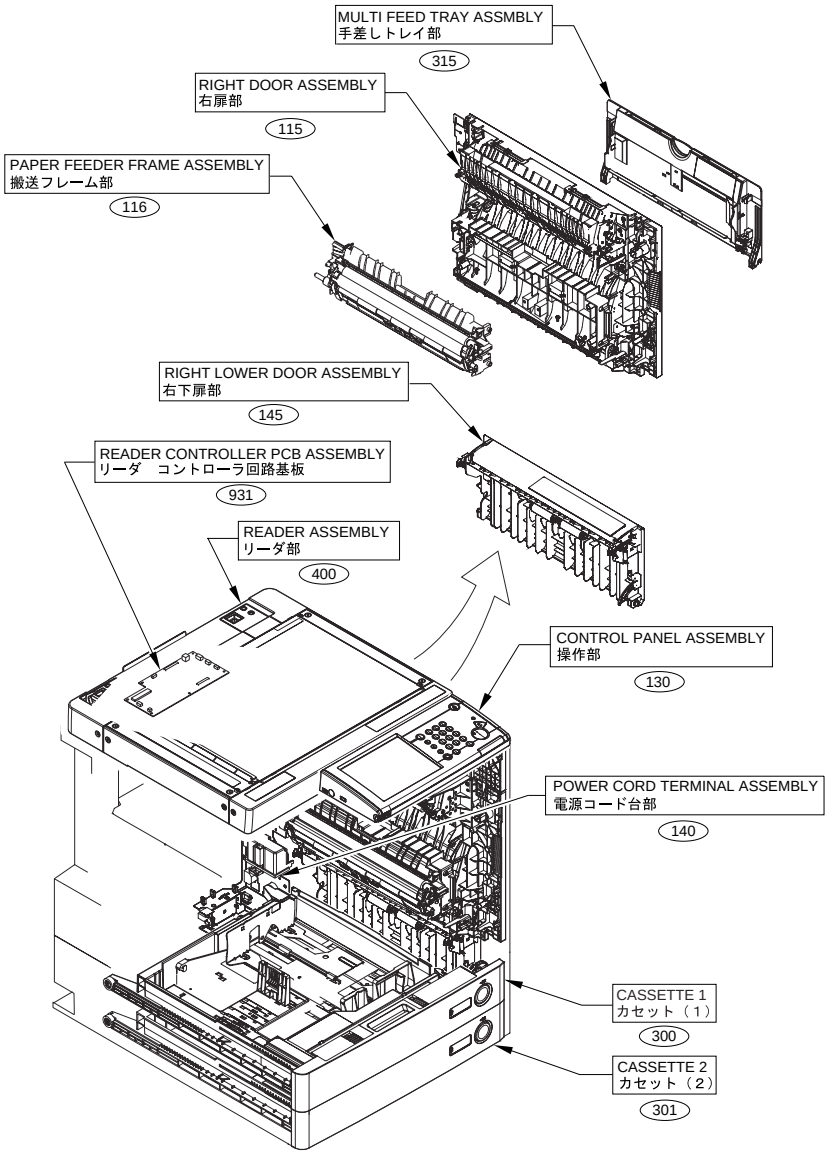
120V	**F15-2331-000**	**DFH**	
120V	**F15-2332-000**	**DPW**	GOVERNMENT/ADF model

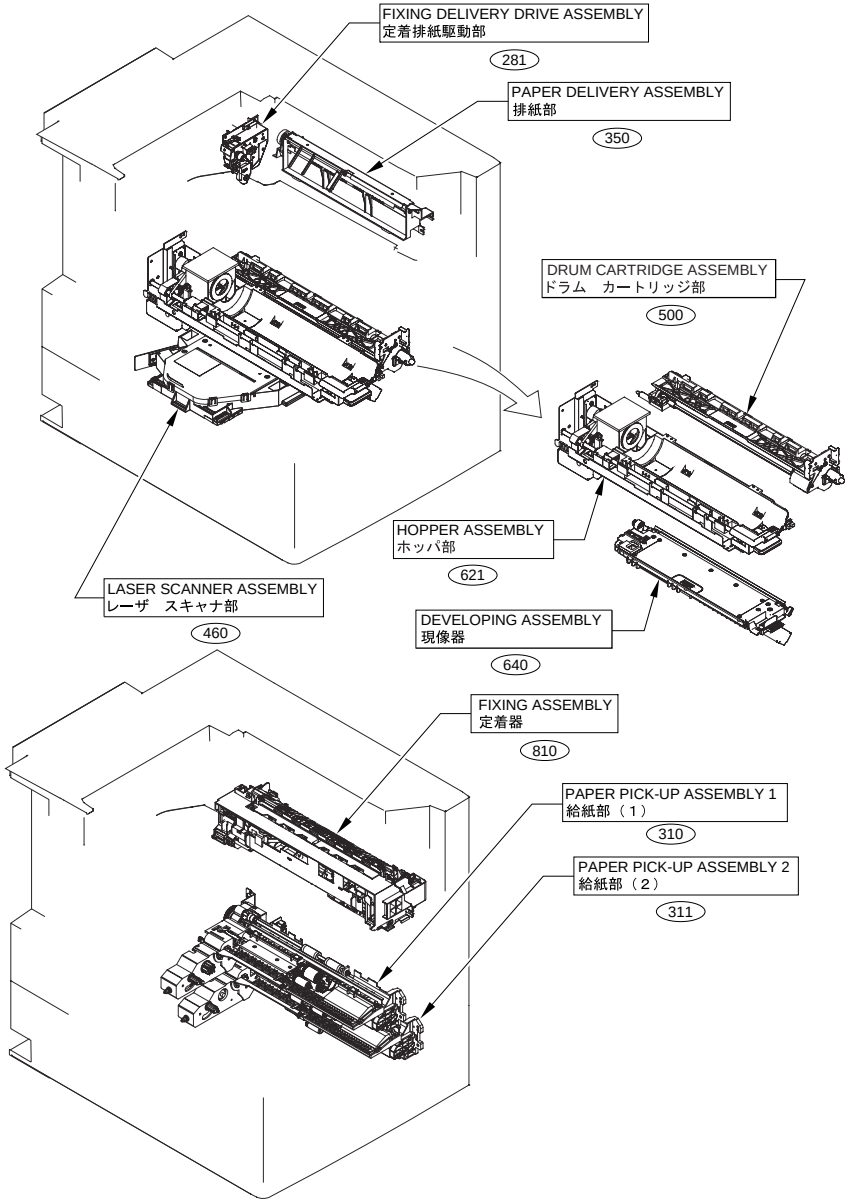
Contents

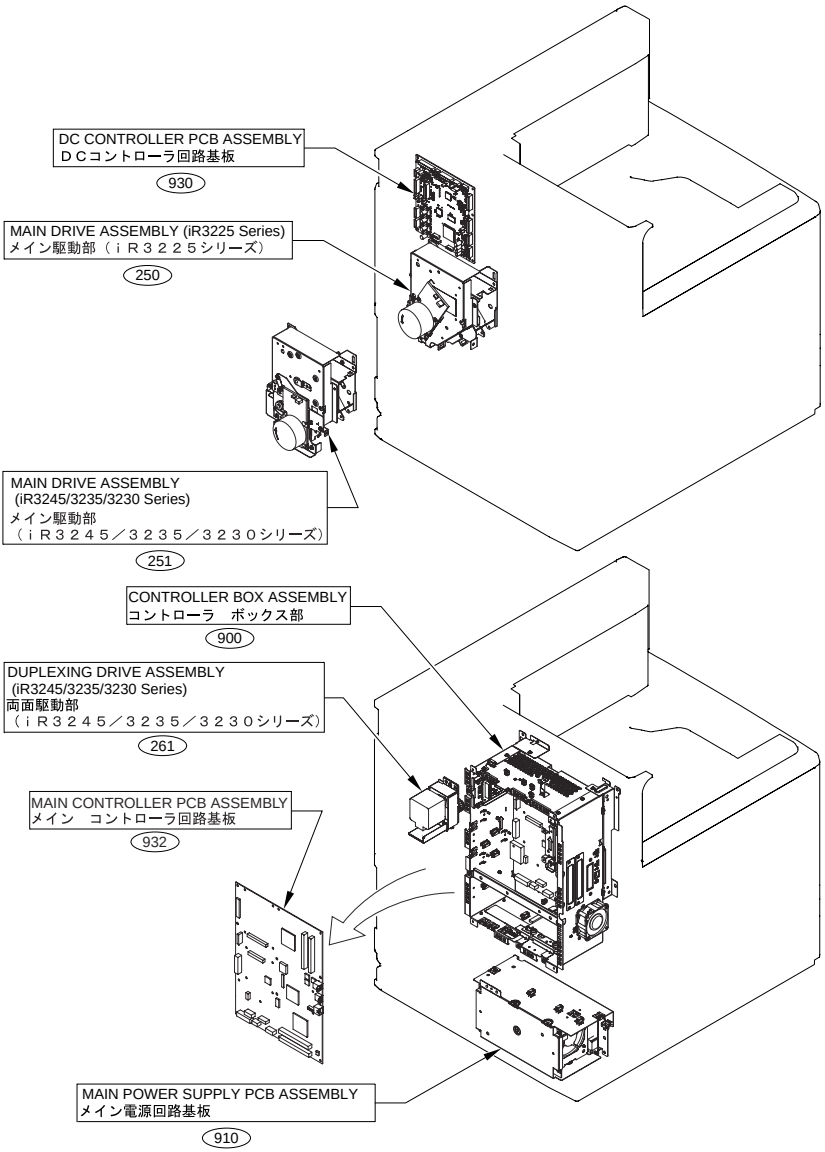
A1 ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM 2-1
A2 OPTION PARTS CATALOG LIST 2-7
001 POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY 2-8
100 EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC. 2-10
101 MACHINE FRONT PLATE 2-15
102 INTERNAL COMPONENTS 1 2-17
103 INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2 2-21
104 INTERNAL COMPONENTS 3 2-23
105 MACHINE REAR PLATE 1 2-25
106 MACHINE REAR PLATE 2 2-27
107 MACHINE REAR PLATE 3 2-29
115 RIGHT DOOR ASSEMBLY 2-31
116 PAPER FEEDER FRAME ASSEMBLY 2-36
130 CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY 2-38
140 POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY 2-41
145 RIGHT LOWER DOOR ASSEMBLY 2-43
250 MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3225 Series) 2-45
251 MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3245/3235/3230 Series) 2-47
261 DUPLEXING DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3245/3235/3230 Series) 2-49
281 FIXING DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY 2-51
300 CASSETTE 1 2-53
301 CASSETTE 2 2-56
310 PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 1 2-59
311 PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 2 2-63
315 MULTI FEED TRAY ASSEMBLY 2-67
350 PAPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY 2-69
351 2ND/3RD DELIVERY ASSEMBLY 2-71
352 2ND UPPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY 2-73
353 2ND DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY 2-75
354 3RD DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY 2-78
370 CASSETTE HEATER ASSEMBLY 2-81
400 READER ASSEMBLY 2-83
460 LASER SCANNER ASSEMBLY 2-88
500 DRUM CARTRIDGE ASSEMBLY 2-89
621 HOPPER ASSEMBLY 2-90
640 DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY 2-93
810 FIXING ASSEMBLY 2-96
900 CONTROLLER BOX ASSEMBLY 2-101
910 MAIN POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY 2-103
930 DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY 2-104
931 READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY 2-105
932 MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY 2-106
950 IMAGE PCB ASSEMBLY 2-107
994 RELAY DELIVERY CONT. PCB ASS'Y 2-108
A01 DADF MOUNTING HARDWARE (ADF model) 2-109

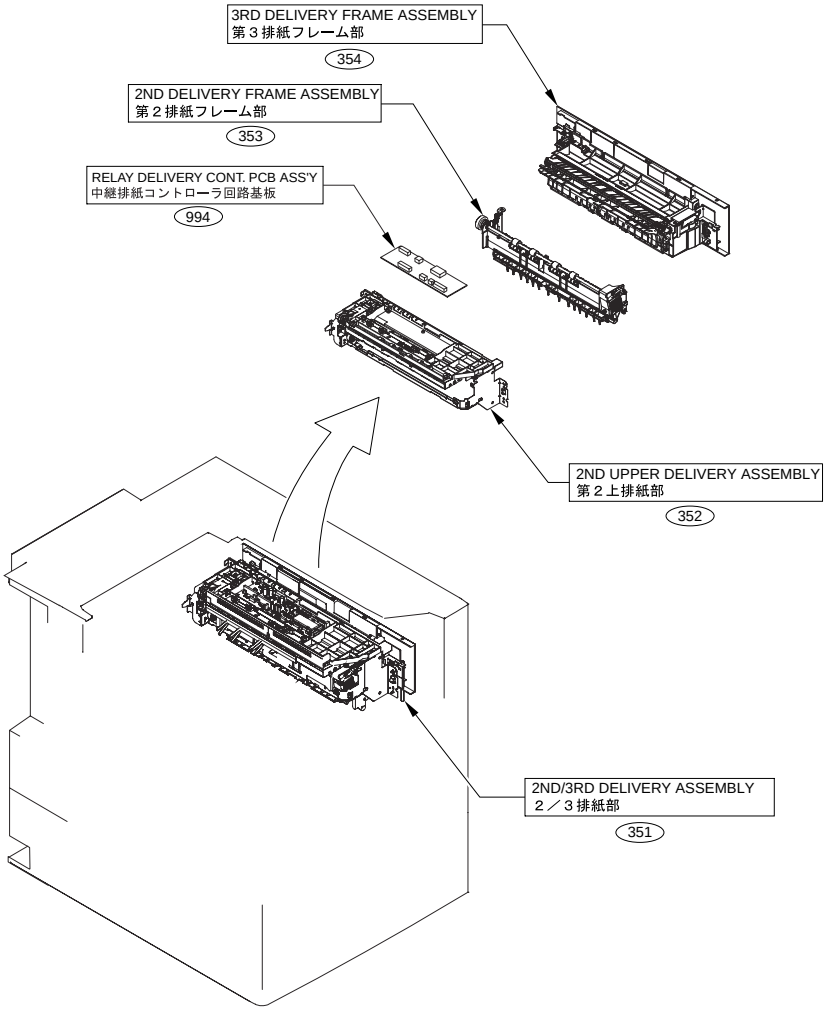
A10 INTERNAL COMPONENTS (ADF model) 2-111
A11 BASE ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-114
A12 PAPER PICK-UP COVER ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-116
A13 DOCUMENT TRAY ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-118
A21 DRIVE ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-120
A41 FEEDER ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-122
A90 ADF CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY (ADF model) 2-127
T21 ATTACHMENT PARTS (FAX model) 2-128
T22 FAX ASSEMBLY (FAX model) 2-129
T23 SPEAKER ASSEMBLY (FAX model) 2-131

FIGURE A1
ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM

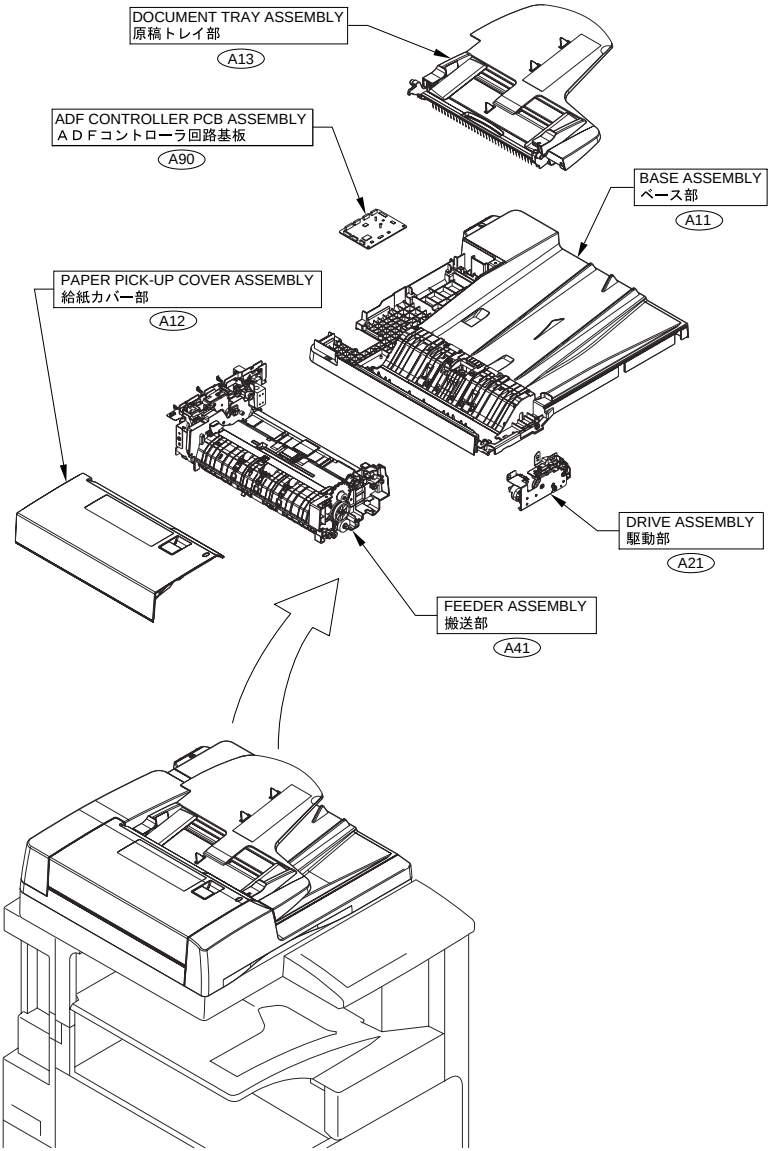



FIXING DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY
定着排紙駆動部
281
PAPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY
排紙部
350
DRUM CARTRIDGE ASSEMBLY
ドラム　カートリッジ部
500
HOPPER ASSEMBLY
ホッパ部
621
LASER SCANNER ASSEMBLY
レーザ　スキャナ部
460
DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY
現像器
640
FIXING ASSEMBLY
定着器
810
PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 1
給紙部（1）
310
PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 2
給紙部（2）
311


DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY
ＤＣコントローラ回路基板
930
MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3225 Series)
メイン駆動部（ｉＲ３２２５シリーズ）
250
MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY
(iR3245/3235/3230 Series)
メイン駆動部
（ｉＲ３２４５／３２３５／３２３０シリーズ）
251
CONTROLLER BOX ASSEMBLY
コントローラ　ボックス部
900
DUPLEXING DRIVE ASSEMBLY
(iR3245/3235/3230 Series)
両面駆動部
（ｉＲ３２４５／３２３５／３２３０シリーズ）
261
MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY
メイン　コントローラ回路基板
932
MAIN POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY
メイン電源回路基板
910


3RD DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY
第３排紙フレーム部
354
2ND DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY
第２排紙フレーム部
353
RELAY DELIVERY CONT. PCB ASS'Y
中継排紙コントローラ回路基板
994
2ND UPPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY
第２上排紙部
352
2ND/3RD DELIVERY ASSEMBLY
２／３排紙部
351

ADF model


DOCUMENT TRAY ASSEMBLY
原稿トレイ部
A13
ADF CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY
ＡＤＦコントローラ回路基板
A90
BASE ASSEMBLY
ベース部
A11
PAPER PICK-UP COVER ASSEMBLY
給紙カバー部
A12
DRIVE ASSEMBLY
駆動部
A21
FEEDER ASSEMBLY
搬送部
A41

FAX model

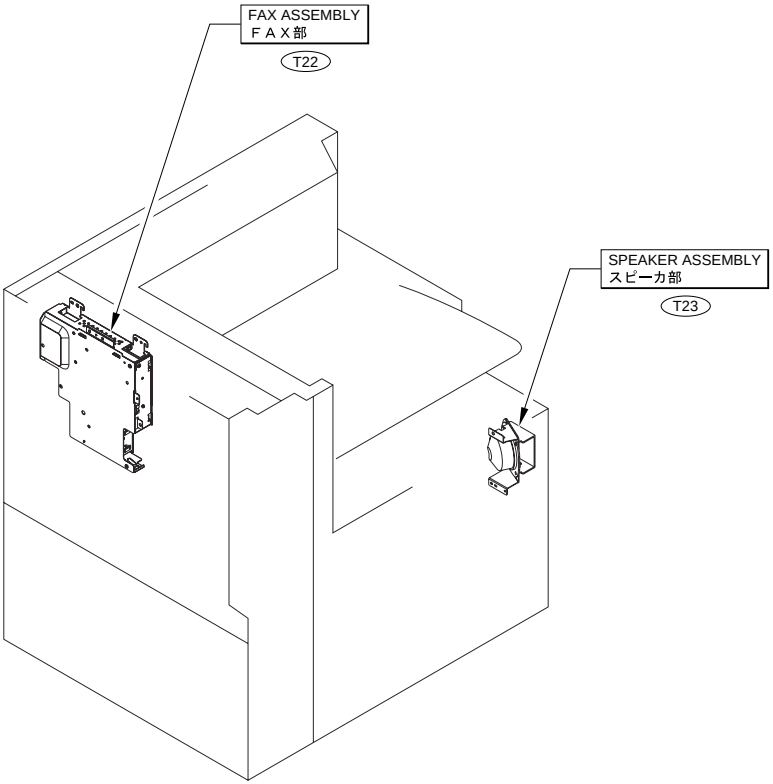


FIGURE A2
OPTION PARTS CATALOG LIST

This is the table of the machine's options whose parts catalog is issued.
本機のオプションで、パーツカタログが発行されている機種の一覧である。

No.	Model Name(English)	Model Name(Japanese)
1	DADF-U1	DADF-U1
2	ADF Access Handle-A1	ADFアクセスハンドル・A1
3	Platen Cover Type M	原稿台カバータイプM
4	3 Way Unit-A1/A2	拡張排紙キット・A1／A2
5	INNER 2 WAY TRAY-D1	INNER 2 WAY TRAY-D1
6	Copy Tray-J1	コピートレイ・J1
7	Document Tray-J1	原稿置き台・J1
8	Finisher-S1	フィニッシャー・S1
9	ADDITIONAL FINISHER TRAY-B1	フィニッシャー用追加トレイ・B1
10	Puncher Unit-Q1/R1/S1/T1	パンチャーユニット・Q1/R1/S1/T1
11	Finisher-AE1/ Ssdddle Finisher-AE2	フィニッシャー・AE1／ サドルフィニッシャー・AE2
12	Finisher-Q1/Q3/R1 Saddle Finisher-Q2/Q4/R2	フィニッシャー・Q1/Q3/R1 サドルフィニッシャー・Q2/Q4/R2
13	BUFFER PASS UNIT-E1/E2	BUFFER PASS UNIT-E1/E2
14	Puncher Unit- L1/M1/N1/P1/AG1/AH1/AJ1/AK1	パンチャーユニット・ L1/M1/N1/P1/AG1/AH1/AJ1/AK1
15	Paper Deck-Q1	サイドペーパーデッキ・Q1
16	Cassette Feeding Unit-Y1/Y2/Y3/Y3H	2段カセットペディスタル・ Y1／Y2／Y3／Y3H
17	FL Cassette-Y1/Z1	FLカセット・Y1／Z1
18	POWER SUPPLY UNIT-T1	オプション電源・T1
19	Expansion Bus-E1	PCIバス拡張キット・E1
20	Super G3 FAX Board-AC1	スーパーG3FAXボード・AC1
22	CARD READER-C1_D1 Rev.00-00	カードリーダ-C1_D1 Rev.00-00
23	Card Reader Attachment-B1/B2/B3	カードリーダー取付けキット・B1／B2／B3
24	Cassette Heater Unit-29	カセットヒータユニット・29
25	CST Heater Unit-31/32	カセットヒーターユニット31／32
26	Cassette Heater Unit-36	カセットヒータユニット・36
27	Cassette Heater Attachment-B1/D1/D2	カセットペディスタル用ヒーター取付キット・ B1/D1/D2
28	Reader Heater Kit-B1	リーダーヒーターキット・B1
29	Serial Interface Kit-G1	シリアルインターフェースキット・G1
30	Voice Guidance Kit-A2/B1/D1/ Voice Guidance Attachment Kit-A1	音声ガイダンスキット・A2／B1／D1／ 音声ガイダンス取付けキット・A1
31	Voice Operation Kit-B1	音声操作キット・B1
32	Wireless LAN Board-A1	無線LANボード・A1
33	IPSec Board-A1	IPSecセキュリティボード・A1
34	HAND SET-G2	ハンドセット・G2
35	HDD Data Encryption Kit-B5	HDDデータ暗号化キット・B5

FIGURE 001
POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY

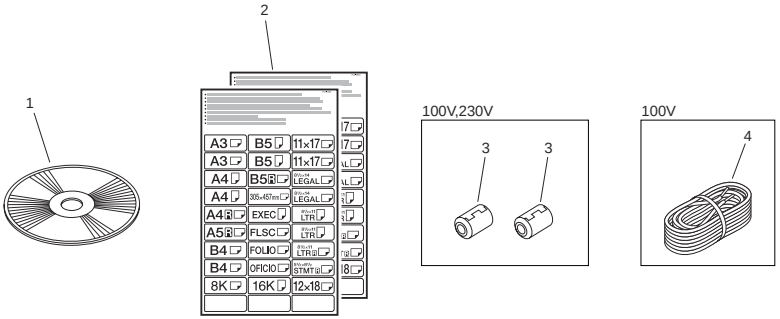
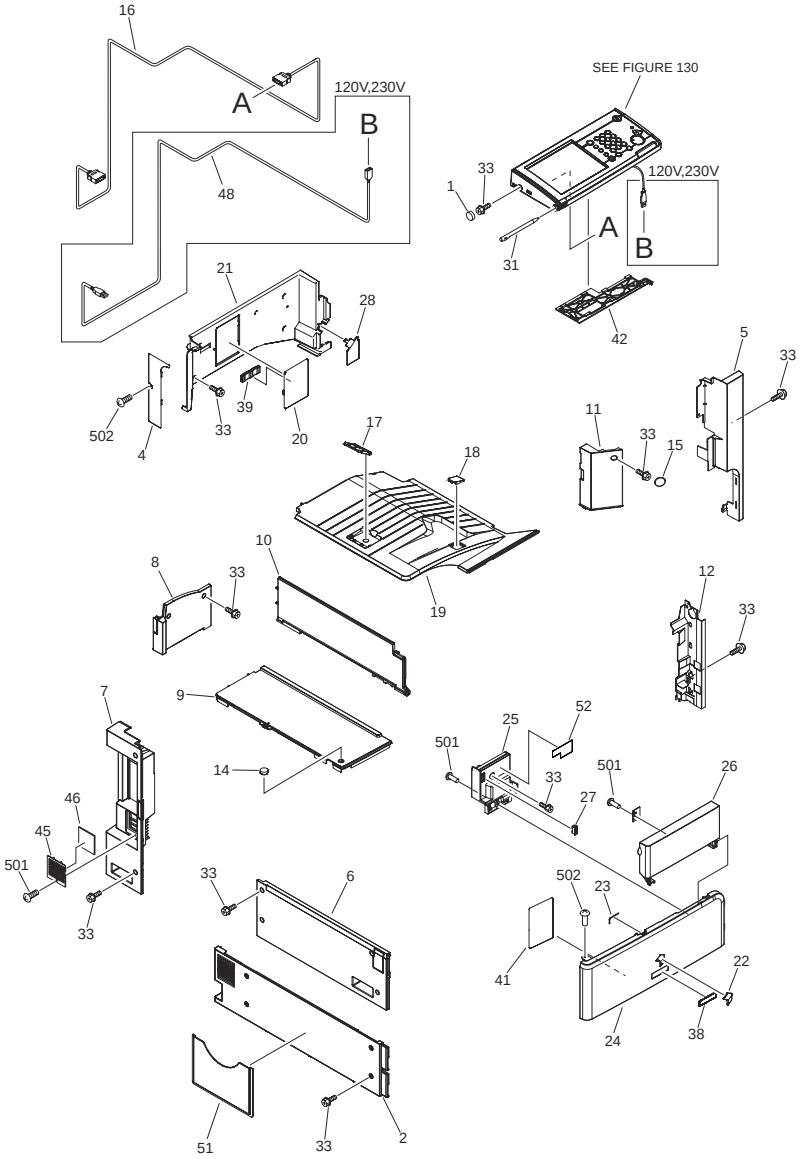


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.001	NPN		RF	ACCESSORIES		
1	FK2-4825-000		1	CD-ROM, MEAP SOFTWARE	JP	
1	FK2-4828-000		1	CD-ROM, MEAP SOFTWARE	EXCEPT JP,EUR,CN,KR,TW	
1	FK2-4831-000		1	CD-ROM, MEAP SOFTWARE	EUR	
1	FK2-4834-000		1	CD-ROM, MEAP SOFTWARE	CN,TW	
1	FK2-4829-000		1	CD-ROM, UFR II/UTILITY	imageRUNNER3245,3235 ,imageRUNNER3230,322 5 English	
1	FK2-4836-000		1	CD-ROM, UFR II/UTILITY	CN English Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Korean	
1	FK2-4830-000		1	CD-ROM, UFR II/PCL/UTILITY	iR3245N,3235N,3225N English	
1	FK2-4832-000		1	CD-ROM, UFR II/PCL/UTILITY	iR3245N,3235N,3225N French/Spanish	
1	FK2-4833-000		1	CD-ROM, UFR II/PCL/UTILITY	iR3245N,3235N,3225N German/Italian	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
1	FK2-4843-000		1	CD-ROM, UFR II/PCL/PS/UTILITY	imageRUNNER3245i,3235i English	
1	FK2-4826-000		1	CD-ROM, LIPS LX	iR3245F,3235F,3225F Japanese	
1	FK2-4827-000		1	CD-ROM, FAX DRIVER	iR3245F,3235F,3225F Japanese	
2	FC5-0563-020		2	LABEL, CASSETTE SIZE, PANEL		
3	WE8-5689-000		2	FILTER, NOISE(RING CORE)	100V,230V	
4	FK2-7367-000		1	CABLE, GROUNDING	100V	

FIGURE 100
EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.



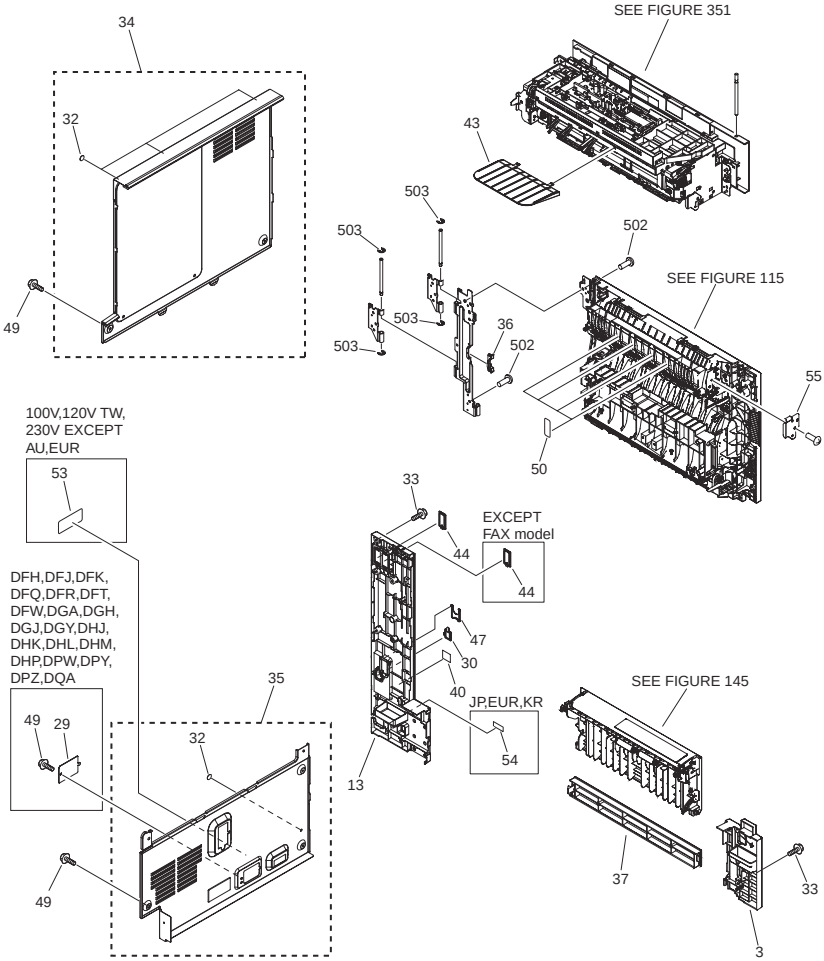

34
32
49
SEE FIGURE 351
43
503
503
503
503
502
SEE FIGURE 115
36
502
55
50
100V,120V TW,
230V EXCEPT
AU,EUR
53
33
EXCEPT
FAX model
44
44
47
30
40
JP,EUR,KR
54
13
DFH,DFJ,DFK,
DFQ,DFR,DFT,
DFW,DGA,DGH,
DGJ,DGY,DHJ,
DHK,DHL,DHM,
DHP,DPW,DPY,
DPZ,DQA
35
49
29
32
49
SEE FIGURE 145
37
33
3

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.100	NPN		RF	EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.		
1	FB6-3771-000		1	COVER, RUBBER		
2	FC8-1157-000		1	PANEL, LEFT		
3	FC5-0953-000		1	PANEL, RIGHT, FRONT LOWER		
4	FC7-6969-000		1	PANEL, READER CROSSMEMBER		
5	FC5-1101-000		1	PANEL, RIGHT, FRONT		
6	FC8-1132-000		1	PANEL, LEFT, MIDDLE		
7	FC8-1093-000		1	COVER, LEFT UPPER, REAR		
8	FC5-1106-000		1	PANEL, INNER, REAR LOWER		
9	FC5-1108-000		1	PANEL, INNER, LEFT LOWER		
10	FC5-1109-000		1	PANEL, INNER, MIDDLE		
11	FC5-1117-000		1	PANEL, INNER, RIGHT		
12	FC5-1277-000		1	PANEL, INNER, RIGHT		
13	FC8-1094-000		1	COVER, RIGHT, REAR		
14	FC5-1282-000		1	RUBBER, COVER		
15	FC5-6540-000		1	COVER, SCREW		
16	FK2-6308-000		1	CABLE, CONTROL PANEL		
17	FC5-0812-000		1	STOPPER, PUSHING		
18	FC5-0957-000		1	CAP, INTERNAL PAPER DELIVERY		
19	FC5-1114-000		1	COVER, INTERNAL PAPER DELIVERY		
20	FC5-0889-000		1	COVER, BLANKING		
21	FC7-6968-000		1	PANEL, INNER, REAR		
22	FC6-4391-000		1	EMBLEM		
23	FC6-5052-000		1	PIN,HINGE		
24	FC5-1100-000		1	COVER, FRONT		
25	FC5-1115-000		1	COVER, FRONT, SMALL		
26	FL2-0315-000		1	DOOR, SUPPLY		
27	XZ9-0603-000		1	CATCH, MAGNET		
28	FC7-6970-000		1	COVER, SENSOR		
29	FC5-1111-000		1	COVER, OUTLET	DFH,DFJ,DFK,DFQ,DFR, DFT,DFW,DGA,DGH,DGJ ,DGY,DHJ,DHK,DHL,DHM ,DHP,DPW,DPY,DPZ,DQ A	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
30	FC7-7394-000		1	COVER,HEATER SW		
31	FB6-3950-000		1	PEN, TOUCH PANEL		
32	FC5-0166-000		4	SEAL, BLANKING		
33	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
34	FL2-8435-000		1	PANEL, REAR, UPPER		
35	FM3-7054-000		1	PANEL, REAR, LOWER		
36	FC7-5875-000		1	COVER, EDGE		
37	FC5-0954-000		1	PANEL, RIGHT, LOWER		
38	FL3-0187-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3225	
38	FL3-0188-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3225F	
38	FL3-0191-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3225N	
38	FL3-0192-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3230	
38	FL3-0196-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3235	
38	FL3-0197-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3235F	
38	FL3-0201-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3235N	
38	FL3-0202-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3245	
38	FL3-0203-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3245F	
38	FL3-1370-000		1	PLATE, NAME	iR3245N	
38	FL3-0189-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3225 EXCEPT GOVERNMENT model	
38	FC8-6920-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3225 GOVERNMENT model	
38	FL3-0193-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3230 EXCEPT GOVERNMENT model	
38	FC8-6922-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3230 GOVERNMENT model	
38	FL3-0198-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3235 EXCEPT GOVERNMENT model	
38	FC8-6926-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3235 GOVERNMENT model	
38	FL3-0199-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3235i	
38	FL3-0204-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3245 EXCEPT GOVERNMENT model	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
38	FC8-6931-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3245 GOVERNMENT model	
38	FL3-0205-000		1	PLATE, NAME	imageRUNNER3245i	
39	FL2-0352-000		1	SHEET,RETAINING		
40	FC8-1201-000		1	LABEL,SHUT,DOWN AB		
41	FC6-5067-000		1	LABEL,TONER BOTTLE CAUTION		
42	FC8-1055-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, LOWER		
43	FC5-0860-020		1	GUIDE, REVERSE BACK END		
44	FC8-1134-000		2	COVER, FAX MODULAR		
45	FC8-1164-000		1	COVER, FILTER		
46	FC8-1166-000		1	FILTER, DUST		
47	FC8-1165-000		1	COVER, POWER SUPPLY SWITCH		
48	FK2-6721-000		1	CABLE, USB	120V,230V	
49	XA9-0813-000		15	SCREW, RS, M3X8		
50	FC8-0959-000		4	SHEET, FEED AUX		
51	FC5-1146-000		1	HOLDER, SERVICE BOOK		
52	FC8-9747-000		1	LABEL, TONER INSTRUCTION	30/25 PPM US model	
52	FC8-9748-000		1	LABEL, TONER INSTRUCTION	30/25 PPM EUR model	
52	FC8-9749-000		1	LABEL, TONER INSTRUCTION	30/25 PPM JP,AU model	
52	FC8-9752-000		1	LABEL, TONER INSTRUCTION	45/35 PPM US model	
52	FC8-9753-000		1	LABEL, TONER INSTRUCTION	45/35 PPM EUR model	
52	FC8-9754-000		1	LABEL, TONER INSTRUCTION	45/35 PPM JP,AU model	
53	FU5-8802-000		1	LABEL,OUTLET	100V	
53	FC8-0957-000		1	LABEL,OUTLET	120V TW	
53	FU5-8803-000		1	LABEL,OUTLET	230V DFL,DFS,DGR,DHN	
54	FU5-8021-000		1	LABEL, GROUNDING CAUTION	EUR	
54	FU5-8329-000		1	LABEL, GROUNDING CAUTION	JP	
55	FC5-6016-000		1	PLATE,CONNECTING		
501	XB4-5400-807		3	SCREW,P,M4X8		
502	XB1-2400-807		7	SCREW, M4X8		
503	XD2-1100-502		2	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		

FIGURE 101
MACHINE FRONT PLATE

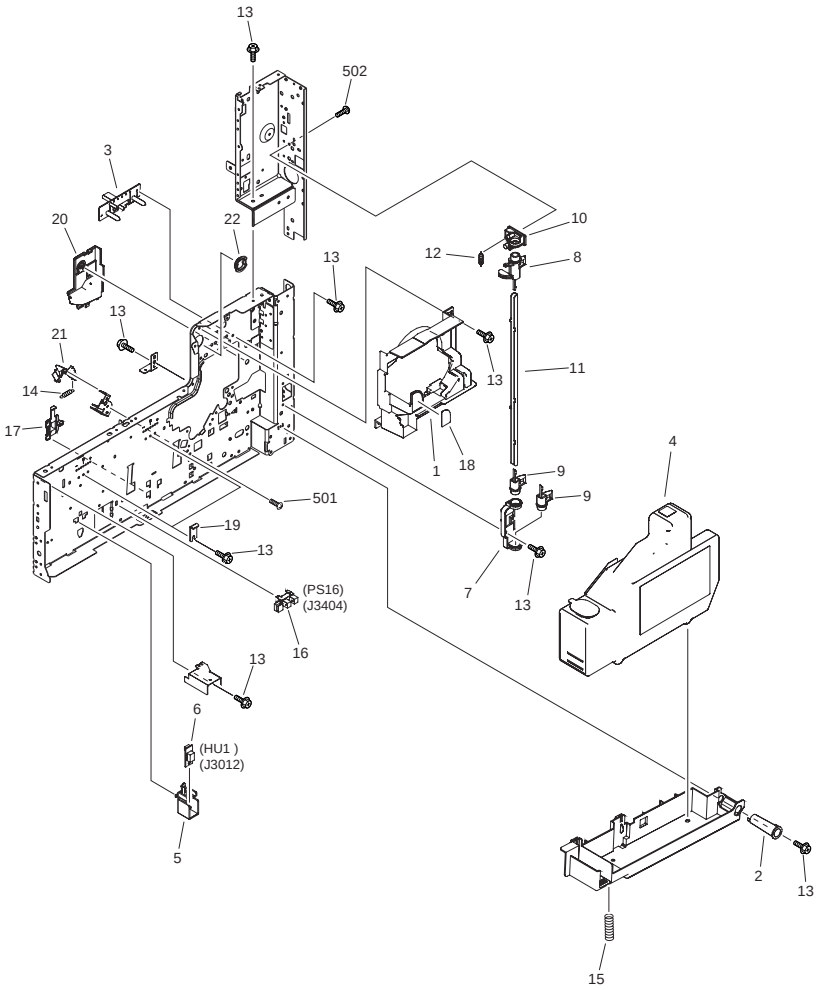


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.101	NPN		RF	MACHINE FRONT PLATE		
1	FC5-1113-000		1	PANEL,INNER		
2	FC5-1413-000		1	PIN STAY		
3	FL2-0267-000		1	PIN,POSITIONING		
4	FM2-0303-000		1	BOX, WASTE TONER		
5	FC8-1119-000		1	MOUNT, ENVIRONMENT SENSOR		
6	WP2-5264-000		1	ENVIRONMENT AL SENSOR UNIT	HU1	
7	FC5-0673-000		1	SUPPORT, HOOK POSITIONING		
8	FC5-0686-010		1	HOOK, RIGHT DOOR, UPPER		
9	FC5-0687-000		2	HOOK, RIGHT DOOR, LOWER		
10	FC5-0688-000		1	BUSHING		
11	FC5-0689-000		1	SHAFT, HOOK		
12	FU5-2064-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
13	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
14	FU6-2016-000		1	SPRING, STOPPER		
15	FU5-2096-000		1	SPRING		
16	FK2-0149-000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1252(C6)	PS16	
17	FC5-1535-000		1	GUIDE, WIRE		
18	FC6-2918-000		1	LABEL, LOCK UNLOCK		
19	FL2-0203-000		2	PIN, POSITIONING		
20	FC5-1118-000		1	COVER, RIGHT IN, SMALL		
21	FC6-4824-000		1	STOPPER BOX		
22	FC7-5910-000		1	BUSHING		
501	XB1-2300-607		1	SCREW, BH3X6		
502	XB4-5400-807		2	SCREW,P,M4X8		

FIGURE 102
INTERNAL COMPONENTS 1

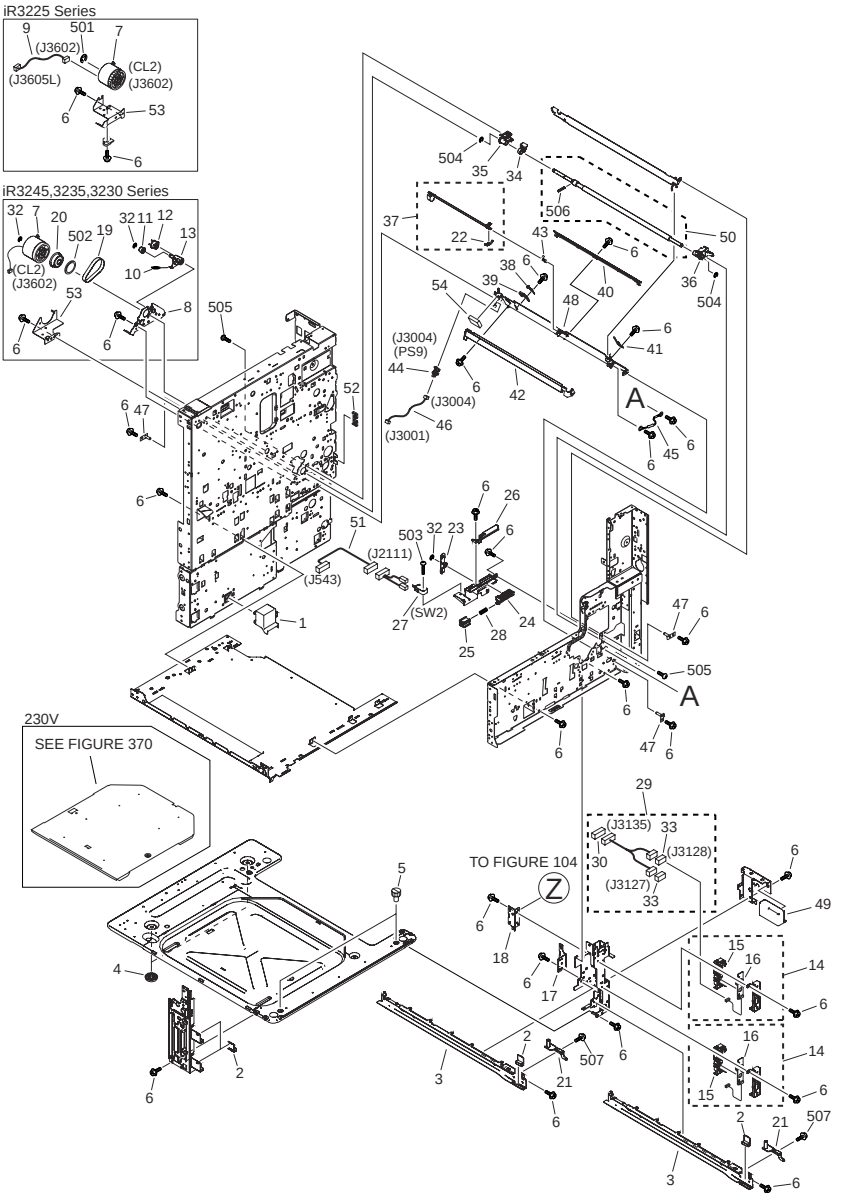


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.102	NPN		RF	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 1		
1	FC6-5053-000		1	COVER, HEATER CONNECTOR		
2	FB6-3507-000		4	BLOCK, SWING		
3	FC5-0571-010		2	RAIL, RIGHT		
4	XH9-0125-000		2	FOOT		
5	XA9-1468-000		2	SCREW, KNURLED, M6X10		
6	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
7	FH6-5075-021		1	CLUTCH, ELECTROMAGNETIC	iR3225 Series CL2	
7	FK2-0361-000		1	CLUTCH, ELECTROMAGNETIC	iR3245,3235,3230 Series CL2	
8	FL2-1517-000		1	SUPPORT, REGIST. CLUTCH	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
9	FM2-2851-000		1	CABLE,REGISTRATION CLUTCH	iR3225 Series	
10	FU5-2652-000		1	SPRING	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
11	FU5-3178-000		1	PULLEY, 20T	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
12	FU6-0040-000		1	PULLEY, 28T	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
13	FL2-1518-000		1	SUPPORT, REGIST. TENSION	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
14	FM2-0389-000		2	CASSETTE SIZE DETECT ASSEMBLY		
15	FC5-1420-000		1	HOLDER, SIZE DETECT		
16	FM2-2770-000		1	SIZE SENSOR PCB ASSEMBLY		
17	FC5-0567-010		1	PLATE, PICK-UP ASS'Y MOUNT, U		
18	FC5-0568-000		1	PLATE, PICK-UP ASS'Y MOUNT, L		
19	XF2-1608-860		1	BELT, TIMING	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
20	FU5-3180-000		1	PULLEY,36T	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
21	FL2-0116-010		2	PIN, SIDE REGIST. POSITIONING		
22	FC7-9370-000		1	PLATE,FLAG,REGISTRATION SENSOR		
23	FC5-1539-000		1	PLATE, ACTUATOR		
24	FC5-1540-000		1	SLIDER		
25	FC5-1541-000		1	BLOCK, SWITCH PRESSURE		
26	FC5-1545-000		1	GUIDE, ACTUATOR		
27	FK2-0384-000		1	SWITCH, MICRO	SW2	
28	FU6-2009-000		1	SPRING, LEAF		
29	FM3-5072-000		1	CABLE,CST.SIZE DETECT CONNECT		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
30	VS1-8412-013		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BL		
32	XD9-0136-000		2	RING, E		
33	VS1-7177-006		2	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
34	FC5-1562-000		1	HOLDER, TRANSFER GUIDE, UPPER		
35	FU5-1029-000		1	BUSHING		
36	FU5-1028-000		1	BUSHING		
37	FL2-4520-000		1	FLAG, PRE-REGISTRATION SENSOR		
38	FC6-5062-000		1	SPRING, GROUNDING		
39	FC5-0540-000		1	HOLDER, GROUNDING SPRING		
40	FC5-0547-000		1	GUIDE, PRE-REGISTRATION PAPER		
41	FC5-1564-000		1	SPRING, LEAF		
42	FL2-0245-000		1	SHEET, PAPER DUST RELEASE		
43	FU5-2035-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
44	WG8-5783-000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1252(C6)	PS9	
45	FL2-3265-000		1	H.V.RESISTOR UNIT		
46	FM2-2858-000		1	CABLE, PRE-REGISTRATION SENSOR		
47	FC6-5051-000		3	PIN, POSITIONING		
48	FL2-0330-000		1	GUIDE,PRE-REGIST.MAIN BODY		
49	FC5-0958-000		1	GRIP, RIGHT FRONT		
50	FL2-0314-000		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION HARD		
51	FM3-5086-000		1	CABLE, INTERLOCK		
52	FC5-7195-000		1	COVER, DOOR POSITIONING, RIGHT		
53	FC5-1087-000		1	PLATE	iR3225 Series	
53	FC5-7181-000		1	PLATE	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
54	FC9-4655-000		1	DAMPER		
501	XD2-1100-402		1	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)	iR3225 Series	
502	XD1-1108-215		1	WASHER,COP		
503	XB1-2301-407		1	SCREW, MACH.,TRUS HEAD, M3X14		
504	XD2-1100-642		2	RING,E		
505	XB4-5400-807		2	SCREW,P,M4X8		
506	XD3-1200-102		1	SPRING PIN		
507	XB3-6400-805		2	SCREW,RS,M4X8		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
	999-9999-999		1	SCREW,RS,M3X8.5		

FIGURE 103
INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2

FIGURE 103 INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2
本体機械内部（２）

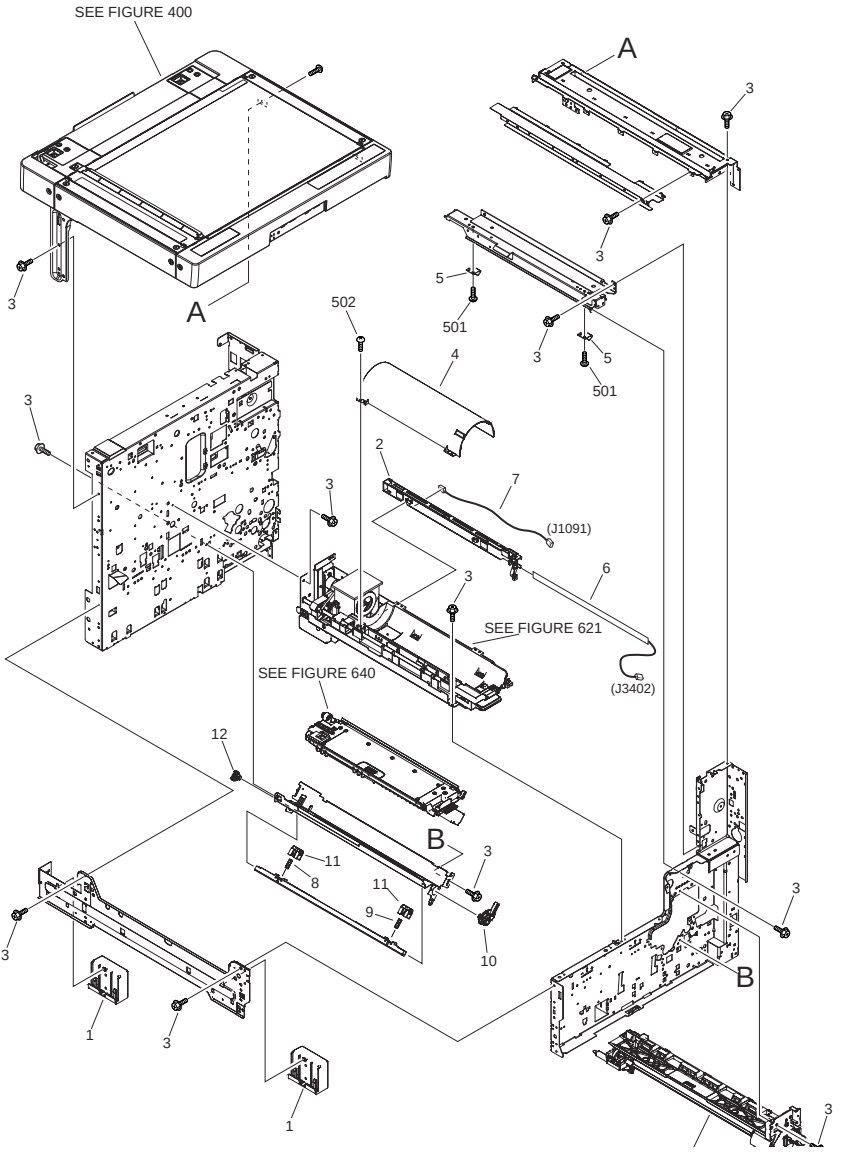


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.103	NPN		RF	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2		
1	FC5-0959-000		2	GRIP, LEFT		
2	FC8-1092-000		1	HOLDER, PRECONDITIONING		
3	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
4	FC8-1131-000		1	COVER, BOTTLE		
5	FC6-4624-000		2	SPRING,LEAF		
6	FK2-6326-000		1	LED ARRAY		
7	FM2-2776-000		1	BOARD, DRUM THERMISTOR		
8	FU5-2090-000		1	SPRING		
9	FU6-2011-000		1	SPRING		
10	FC5-1243-000		1	HANDLE, PRESSURE		
11	FC5-1262-000		2	CAM, DEVELOPING PRESSURE		
12	FU5-1030-000		1	BUSHING		
501	XB1-2300-407		2	SCREW, BH3X4 (S)		
502	XB4-5300-807		4	SCREW, P, M3X8		

FIGURE 104
INTERNAL COMPONENTS 3

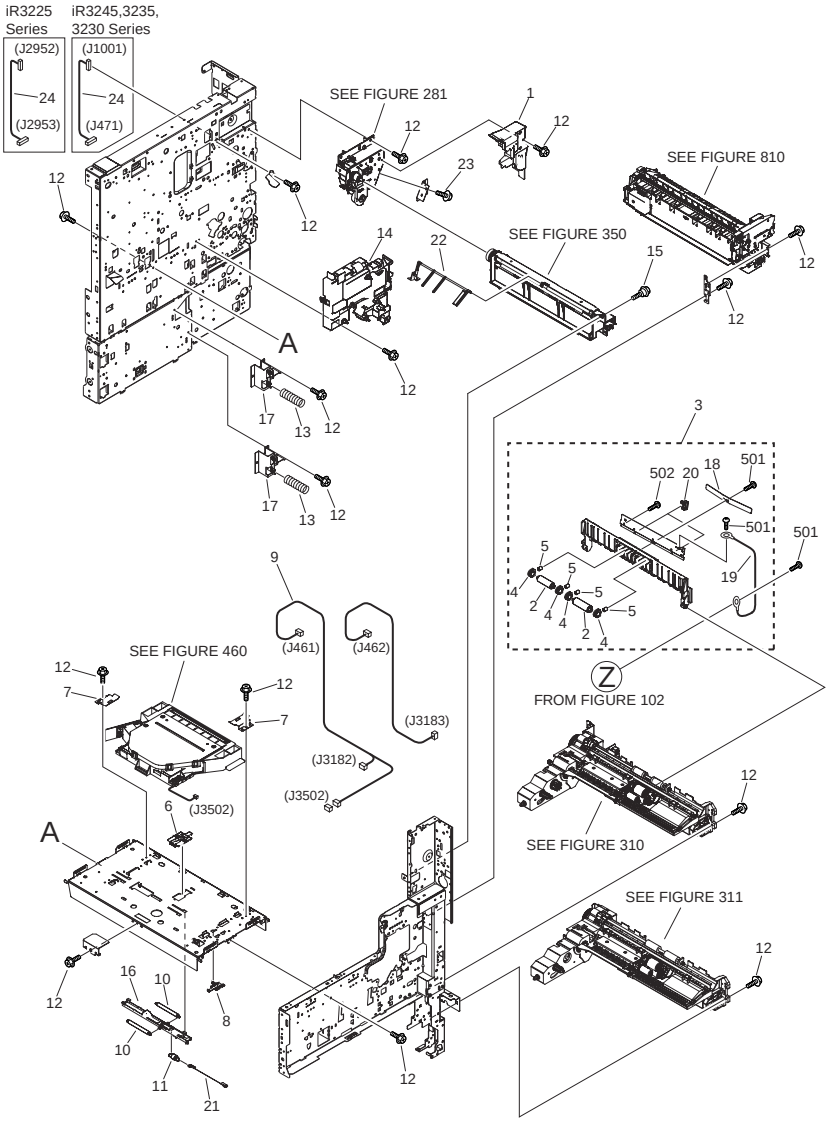


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.104	NPN		RF	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 3		
1	FC5-1130-000		1	COVER, FIXING CONNECTOR		
2	FB6-3313-000		2	ROLLER, PAPER FEED		
3	FM3-1297-000		1	RIGHT LOWER INNER DOOR ASS'Y		
4	FU5-1035-000		4	BUSHING		
5	FU6-2924-000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
6	FC5-0191-000		1	GUIDE, POSITIONING		
7	FC6-7308-000		2	SPRING, LEAF		
8	FC5-1535-000		1	GUIDE, WIRE		
9	FM3-5073-000		1	CABLE, LASER BEAM DETECT		
10	FU5-2038-000		2	SPRING, TORSION		
11	FU5-2653-000		1	SPRING		
12	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
13	FU5-2066-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
14	FM3-4389-000		1	H. V. TRANSFER PCB ASSEMBLY		
15	FS5-9664-020		2	SCREW,RS STEPPED,M3		
16	FC5-1533-000		1	LINK,SHUTTER		
17	FC5-0573-000		2	MOUNT, CASSETTE PUSH SPRING		
18	FC7-5906-000		1	SPRING, LEAF		
19	FM3-3911-000		1	CABLE, GROUNDING		
20	FC7-5907-000		2	SPRING, GROUNDING		
21	FC7-2667-000		1	WIRE, SHUTTER		
22	FC5-0798-000		1	FLAG, FULL DETECT		
23	XA9-1164-000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X6.5		
24	FM3-5063-000		1	CABLE, FIXING AC	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
24	FM3-5070-000		1	CABLE, FIXING AC	iR3225 Series	
501	XB1-2300-607		AR	SCREW, BH3X6		
502	XB4-7300-807		3	SCREW, BH3X6		

FIGURE 105
MACHINE REAR PLATE 1

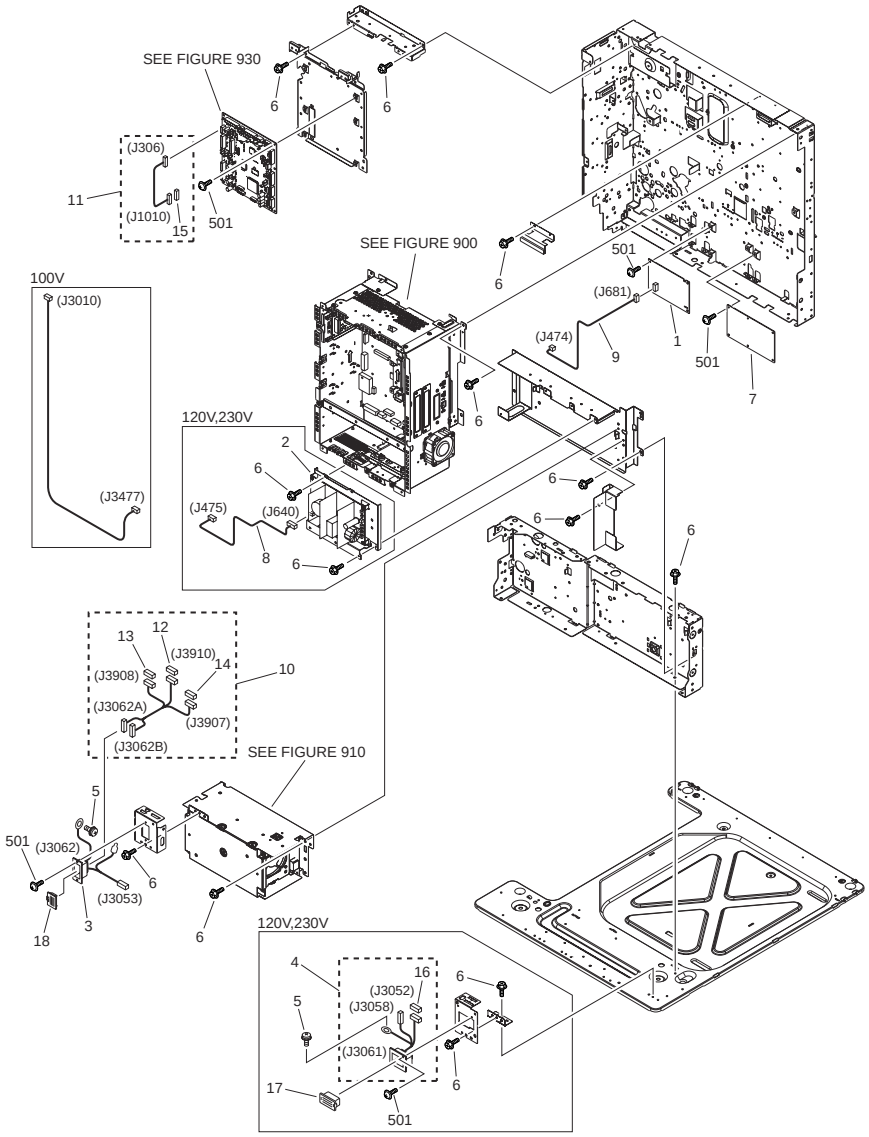


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.105	NPN		RF	MACHINE REAR PLATE 1		
1	FK2-6324-000		1	ALL DAY POWER PCB	100V,120V EXCEPT GOVERNMENT model	
1	FK2-0340-000		1	ALL DAY POWER PCB	120V GOVERNMENT model	
1	FK2-0341-020		1	ALL DAY POWER PCB	230V	
2	FK2-6297-000		1	ACC POWER SUPPLY UNIT	120V	
2	FK2-6298-000		1	ACC POWER SUPPLY UNIT	230V	
3	FM3-7391-000		1	CABLE, LATTICE		
4	FM3-7390-000		1	CABLE, LATTICE	120V,230V	
5	XA9-0265-010		2	SCREW,W/WASHER,TRUSS HEAD		
6	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
7	FM3-5050-000		1	RELAY PCB ASSEMBLY		
8	FM3-5082-000		1	CABLE,ACCESSORY POWER SUPPLY	120V,230V	
9	FM3-5083-000		1	CABLE, ALL NIGHT POWER SUPPLY		
10	FM3-5059-000		1	CABLE, LATTICE		
11	FM3-5080-000		1	CABLE, FIXING CONNECT		
12	VS1-7177-002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
13	VS1-7177-004		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
14	VS1-7177-008		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
15	VS1-7177-012		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
16	VS1-7507-007		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
17	FH2-6552-000		1	COVER, CONNECTOR	120V,230V	
18	WT8-5099-000		1	COVER, DUST		
501	XB6-7300-607		AR	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		

FIGURE 106
MACHINE REAR PLATE 2

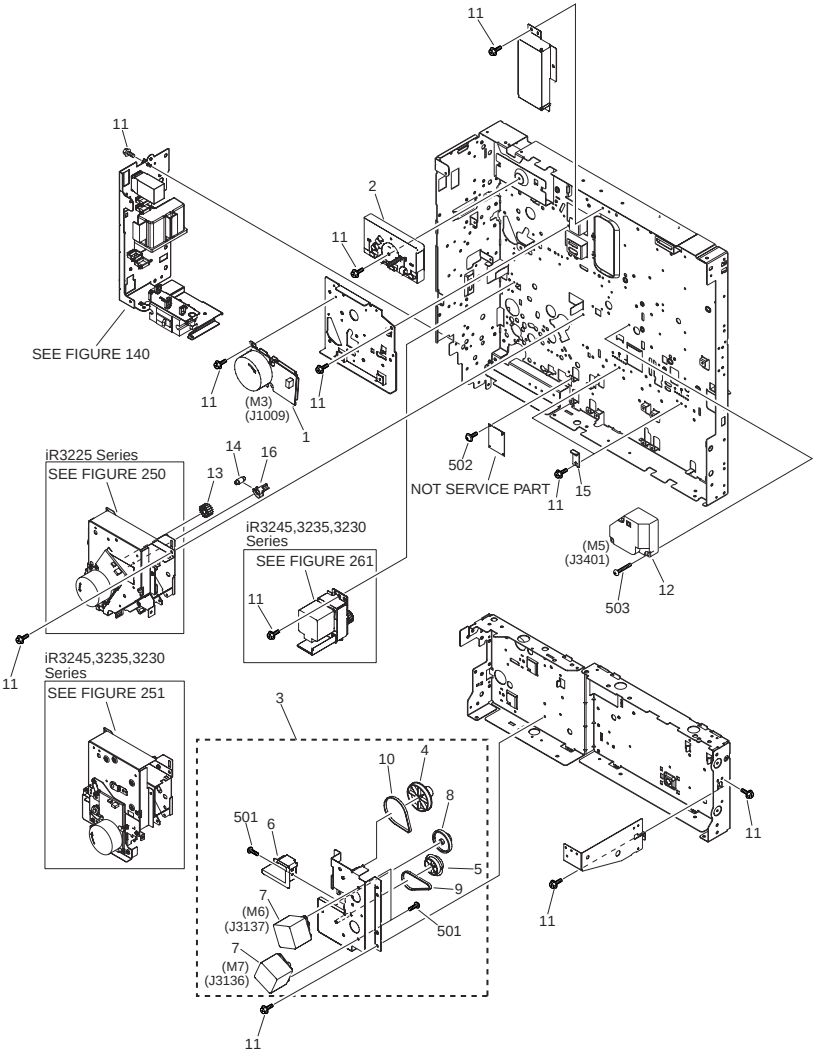


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.106	NPN		RF	MACHINE REAR PLATE 2		
1	FK2-6301-000		1	MOTOR, DC24V	M3	
2	FC8-1120-000		1	COVER, DC NETWORK BACK		
3	FM2-0339-000		1	PAPER PICK-UP MOTOR UNIT		
4	FC5-1516-000		1	PULLEY, 80T		
5	FC5-1517-000		1	PULLEY, 50T		
6	FC5-1518-000		1	COVER, PICK-UP MOTOR SUPPORT		
7	FM2-0338-000		2	MOTOR, DC	M6,M7	
8	FU3-0285-000		1	GEAR, 80T/16T		
9	XF2-1607-840		1	BELT, TIMING		
10	XF2-1609-040		1	BELT,TIMING		
11	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
12	FK2-6316-000		1	MOTOR, DC24V	M5	
13	FU5-0007-000		1	GEAR, 17T		
14	FU5-6643-000		1	ROLLER		
15	FL2-0203-000		2	PIN, POSITIONING		
16	FC6-9613-000		1	CAM, RELEASE		
501	XB1-2300-607		7	SCREW, BH3X6		
502	XB6-7300-607		4	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		
503	XB1-2302-007		3	SCREW, BH3X20 (S)		

FIGURE 107
MACHINE REAR PLATE 3

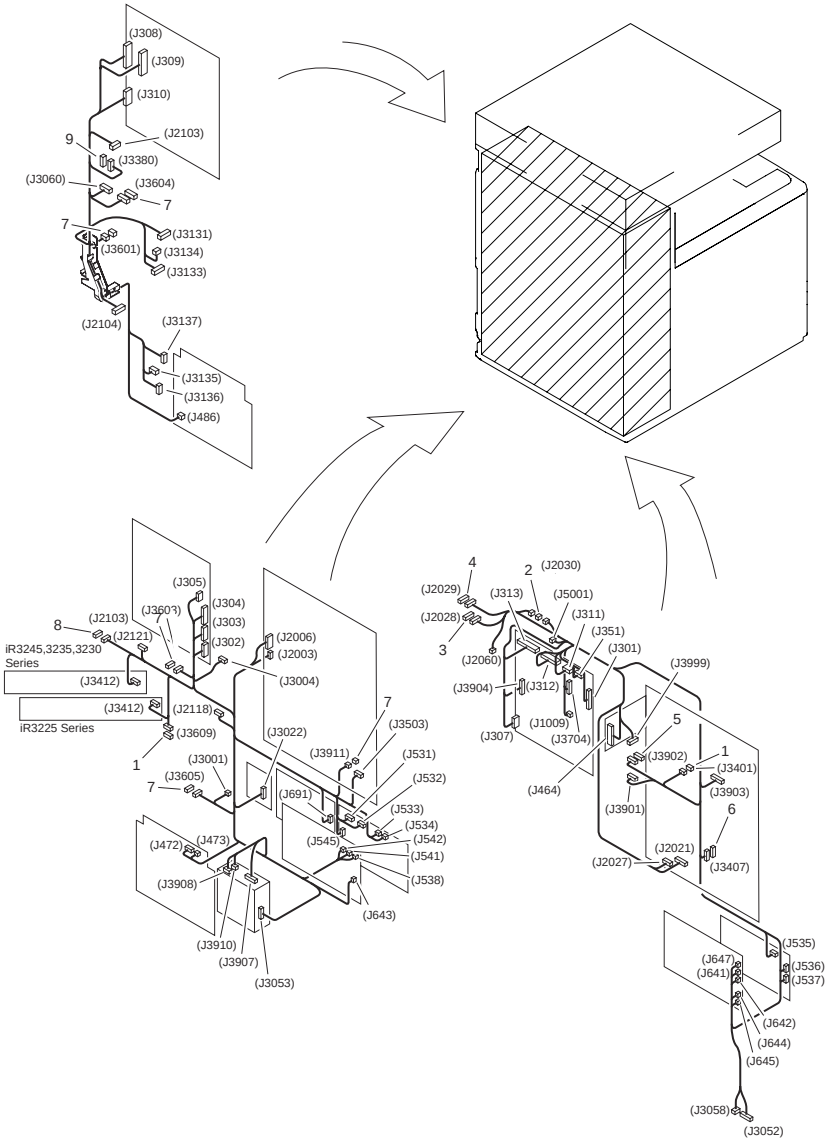
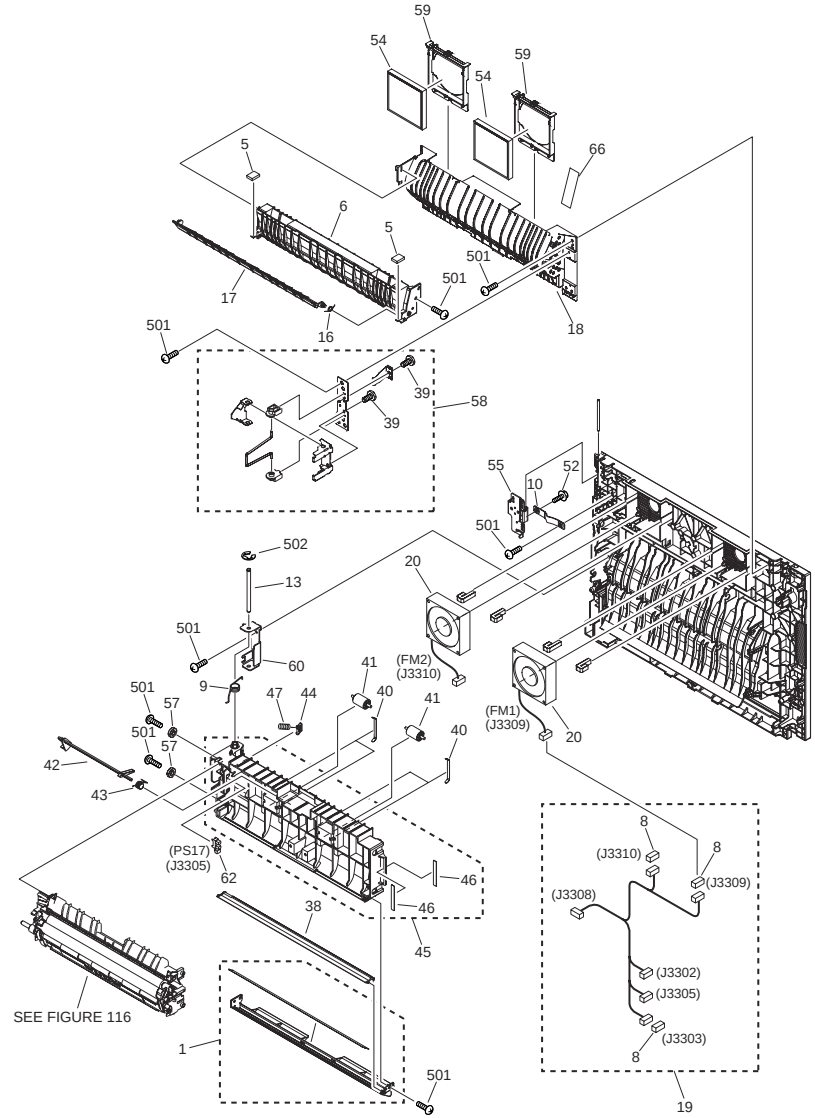


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.107	NPN		RF	MACHINE REAR PLATE 3		
1	VS1-7177-003		2	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
2	VS1-7177-005		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
3	VS1-7177-009		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
4	VS1-7177-010		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
5	VS1-7507-005		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
6	VS1-8412-027		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BL		
7	VS1-7177-002		5	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
8	VS1-8412-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BL		
9	VS1-8412-015		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BL		

FIGURE 115
RIGHT DOOR ASSEMBLY



NOTE 1: This assembly includes the assemblies shown in Figure 116 and 315.
NOTE 2: This assembly does not include the part shown with Key No. 54.
注1 : このユニットはFigure 116, 315のユニットを含みます。
注2 : このユニットにKey No. 54の部品は含みません。

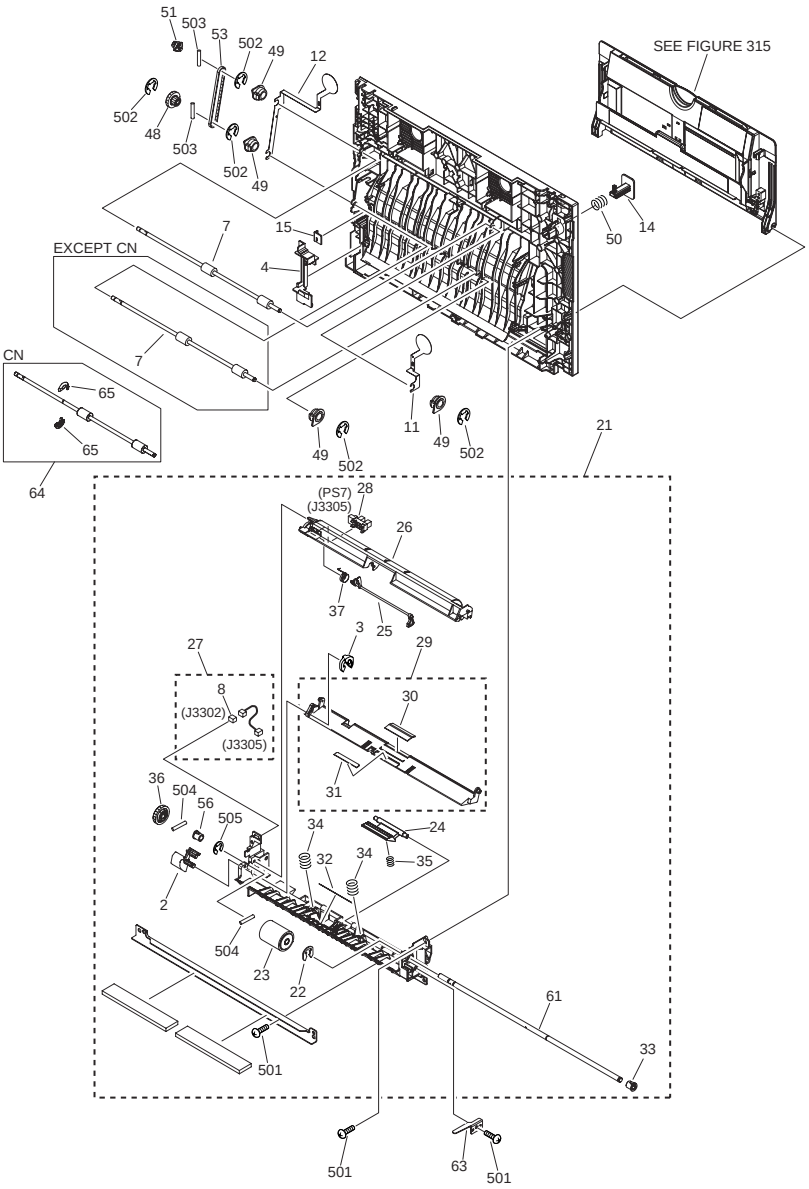
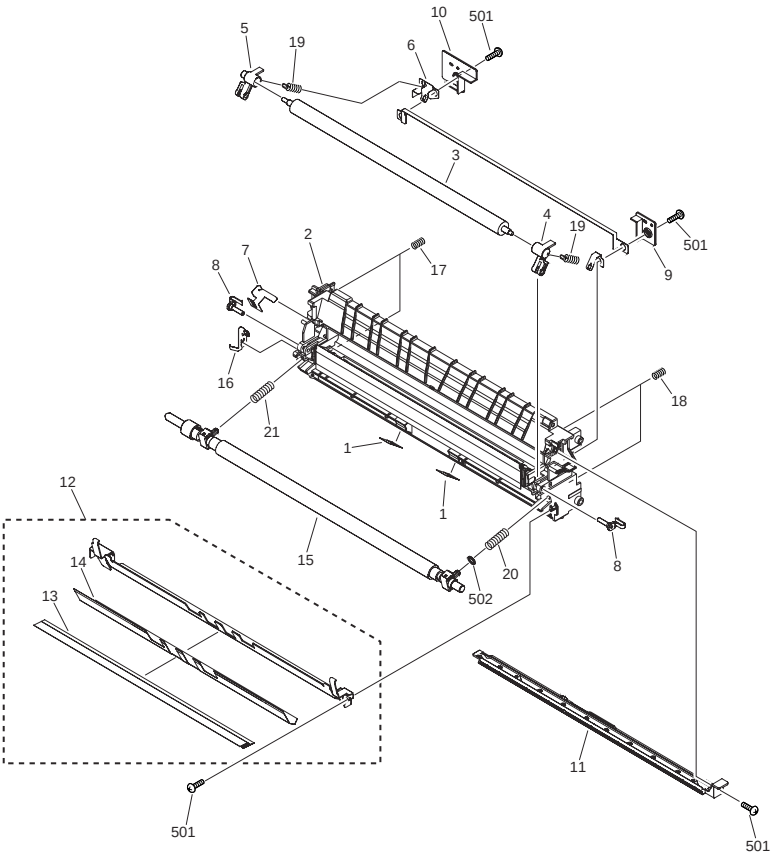

SEE FIGURE 315
EXCEPT CN
CN
(PS7)
(J3305)
(J3302)
(J3305)

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.115	FM3-4405-000		1	RIGHT DOOR ASSEMBLY	EXCEPT CN SEE NOTE 1	
Fig.115	FM3-7286-00		1	RIGHT DOOR ASSEMBLY	CN SEE NOTE 1	
1	FL2-0106-000		1	GUIDE, PRE-REGIST. AUXILIARY		
2	FC6-9604-000		1	LEVER, RELEASE		
3	FC7-4155-000		1	RING, E		
4	FC6-9625-000		1	COVER, MULTI FEED CONNECTOR		
5	FC9-4659-000		2	DAMPER, FLAPPER		
6	FC5-0652-000		1	GUIDE, DUPLEXING FEEDER, 2		
7	FC5-0653-020		2	ROLLER, DUPLEXING FEEDER		
8	VS1-7177-003		4	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
9	FC5-0659-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
10	FC5-0674-000		1	STRAP, RIGHT DOOR		
11	FC5-0676-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
12	FC6-4026-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
13	FC5-0682-000		1	PIN, INNER DOOR HINGE		
14	FC5-0685-000		1	BUTTON, RIGHT DOOR		
15	FC5-0690-000		1	PLATE, SHOCK ABSORBER		
16	FC5-0972-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
17	FC5-1354-000		1	FLAPPER, FIXING DELIVERY REV.		
18	FC6-2902-000		1	GUIDE, DUPLEXING FEEDER		
19	FM3-5074-000		1	CABLE, RIGHT DOOR		
20	FK2-0360-000		2	FAN	FM1,FM2	
21	FM3-1283-000		1	MULTI FEED FRAME ASSEMBLY		
22	FC6-5046-000		1	RING, RETAINING		
23	FB1-8581-000		1	ROLLER		
24	FC7-9481-000		1	PAD, MULTI FEED SEPARATION		
25	FC5-0489-000		1	FLAG, MULTI FEED SENSOR		
26	FC5-0490-000		1	COVER, MULTI FEED ROLLER		
27	FG3-3188-000		1	CABLE, MULTI SENSOR		
28	FK2-0149-000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1252(C6)	PS7,J3304	
29	FL2-4399-000		1	PLATE, MULTI FEED, LIFTER		
30	FC5-0529-000		1	SHEET, SEPARATION		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
31	FC5-0543-000		1	SHEET, SEPARATION		
32	FC5-0542-000		1	SHEET, MULTI FEED OUTLET		
33	FU5-1737-000		1	BUSHING		
34	FU6-2022-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
35	FS6-2791-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
36	FU7-0342-000		1	GEAR, 31T		
37	FU5-2034-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
38	FC5-0496-000		1	GUIDE, PRE-REGIST. AUX., UPPER		
39	XA9-0894-010		3	SCREW,M3X6		
40	FC6-4015-000		4	SPRING, LEAF		
41	FC6-5055-000		2	ROLLER, DUPLEXING		
42	FC5-0657-000		1	FLAG, DUPLEXING FEEDER SENSOR		
43	FC5-0658-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
44	FC5-0691-000		1	STOPPER, DOOR		
45	FL2-0143-000		1	GUIDE, DUPLEXING INTERNAL		
46	FC5-0703-000		2	LABEL, RIGHT INSIDE DOOR GRIP		
47	FU5-2067-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
48	FU5-0006-000		1	GEAR, 26T/PULLEY, 24T		
49	FU5-1006-000		4	BUSHING		
50	FU5-2063-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
51	FU5-3016-000		1	PULLEY, 24T		
52	XA9-1386-000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
53	XF2-4112-240		1	BELT, TIMING, COGGED		
54	FM3-9441-000		2	FILTER, HEAT DISCHARGE FAN	SEE NOTE 2	
55	FC7-5878-000		1	PLATE, HINGE		
56	FU5-1760-000		1	BUSHING		
57	FU5-6014-000		2	COLLAR		
58	FM2-0355-010		1	HOOK HOLDER UNIT		
59	FL2-0298-000		2	HOLDER, FILTER		
60	FC5-0681-000		1	PLATE,INTERNAL DOOR HINGE,		
61	FC7-9358-000		1	SHAFT,MULTIFEED ROLLER		
62	WG8-5783-000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1252(C6)	PS17	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
63	FC5-0473-000		1	LEVER,DOOR SWITCH		
64	FM3-1309-000		1	DUPLEXING FEED ROLLER UNIT	CN	
65	FC6-2941-000		2	ROLLER	CN	
66	FC8-0963-000		3	SHEET, DUPLEXING FEED	CN	
501	XB4-5401-007		AR	SCREW, M4X10		
502	XD2-1100-422		5	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		
503	XD3-2200-102		2	PIN, PARALLEL		
504	XD3-2160-162		2	PIN,DOWEL		
505	XD2-1100-642		1	RING,E		

FIGURE 116
PAPER FEEDER FRAME ASSEMBLY



NOTE : This assembly is included in the assembly shown in Figure 115.
注 : このユニットはFigure 115のユニットに含まれます。

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.116	FM2-0252-010		1	PAPER FEEDER FRAME ASSEMBLY	SEE NOTE	
1	FC5-0548-000		2	SHEET, PRE-REGISTRATION		
2	FC5-1120-000		1	FRAME, FEEDER		
3	FC5-1121-000		1	ROLLER, TRANSFER		
4	FC5-1124-000		1	ARM, TRANSFER, FRONT		
5	FC5-1125-000		1	ARM, TRANSFER, REAR		
6	FC5-1126-000		1	PLATE, TRANSFER ELECTRODE, R.		
7	FC5-1127-010		1	PLATE, STATIC CHARGE ELECTRODE		
8	FC5-1536-000		2	PIN, TRANSFER HINGE		
9	FC5-1558-000		1	COVER,ELECTRODE PLATE,FRONT		
10	FC5-1559-000		1	COVER,ELECTRODE PLATE,REAR		
11	FL2-0247-000		1	HOLDER,STATIC CHARGE ELIMI.		
12	FL2-0250-000		1	GUIDE, PRE-REGIST. DOOR SIDE		
13	FC5-0549-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE		
14	FC5-1552-000		1	SHEET, PRE-REGIST. DOOR SIDE		
15	FL2-0251-000		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION SOFT		
16	FU5-2037-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
17	FU5-2044-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
18	FU5-2045-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
19	FU5-2076-000		2	SPRING		
20	FU5-2611-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
21	FU6-2020-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
501	XB4-5401-007		5	SCREW, M4X10		
502	XD1-1106-219		1	SHIM, CIRCULAR		

FIGURE 130
CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY

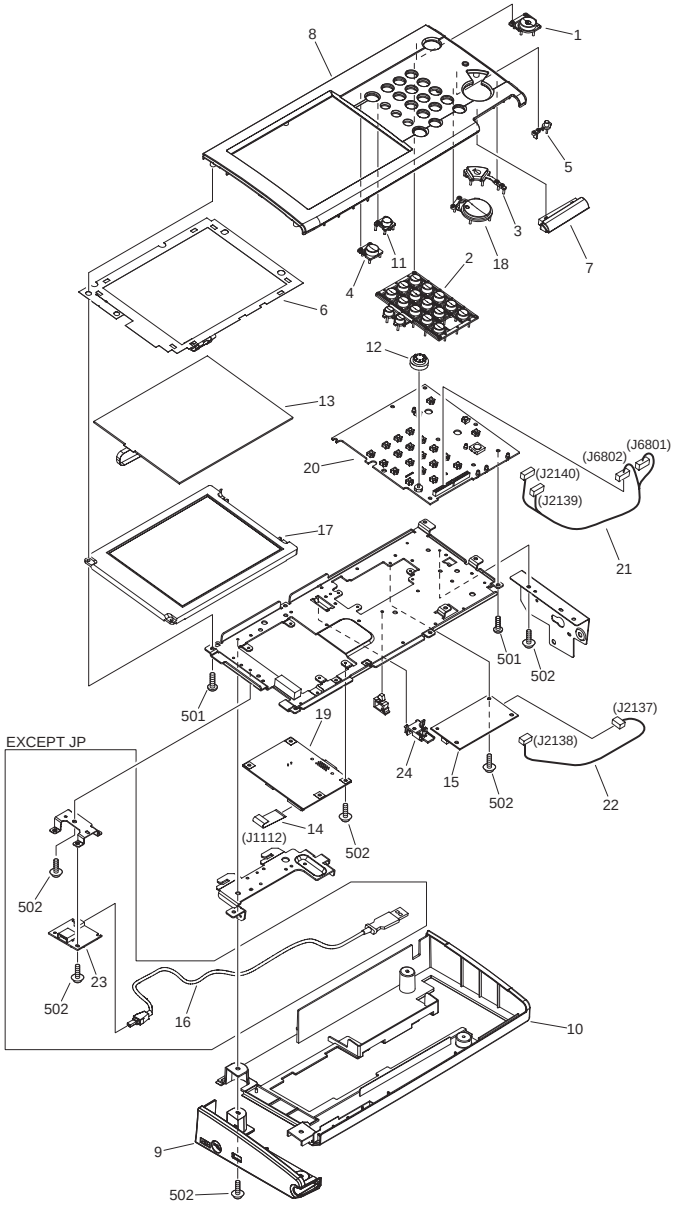
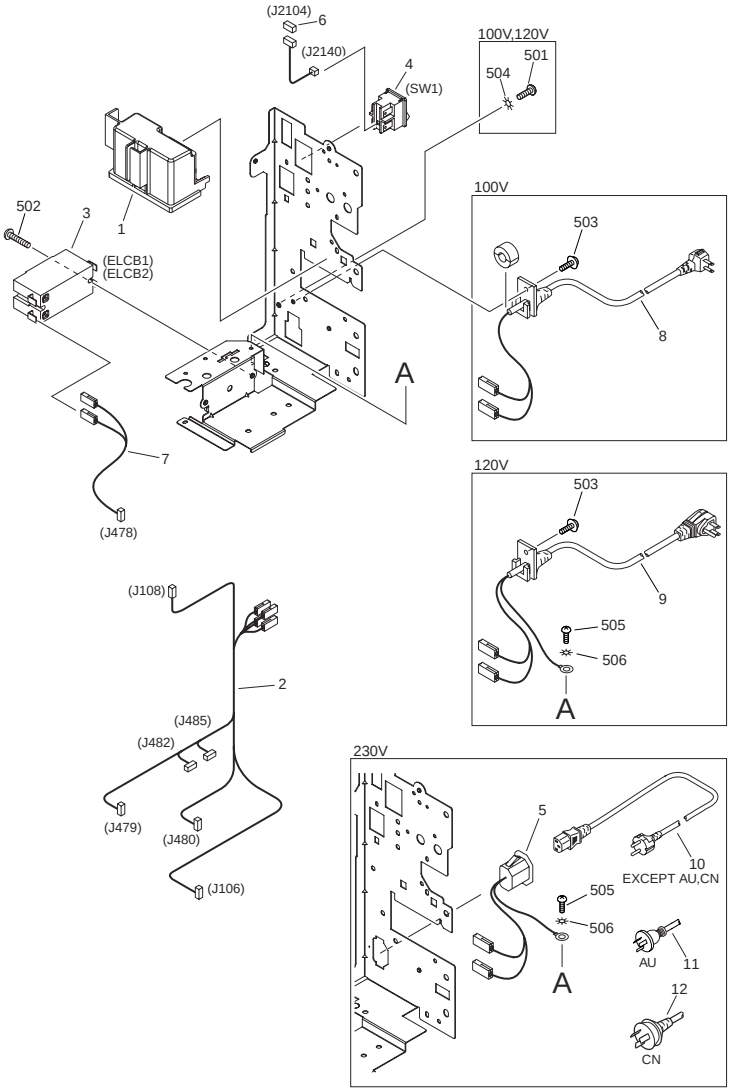


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.130	FM3-4386-000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	JP	
Fig.130	FM3-7261-000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	EXCEPT JP,EUR	
Fig.130	FM3-7262-000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	EUR	
Fig.130	FM3-7270-000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	TW	
Fig.130	FM3-7271-000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	CN	
Fig.130	FM3-7272-000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	KR	
1	FC5-1059-000		1	KEY TOP, POWER SUPPLY		
2	FC5-1061-000		1	KEY TOP, NUMBERS		
3	FC5-1064-000		1	KEY TOP, STOP		
4	FC5-1065-000		1	KEY TOP, RESET		
5	FC5-1066-000		1	KEY TOP, COUNTER		
6	FC5-4458-010		1	SHEET, LCD ELECTROSTATIC		
7	FC6-9571-000		1	WINDOW, LAMP		
8	FL3-2594-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, UPPER	JP	
8	FL3-2595-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, UPPER	EXCEPT JP,EUR	
8	FL3-2596-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, UPPER	EUR	
8	FL3-2597-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, UPPER	TW	
8	FL3-2598-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, UPPER	CN	
8	FL3-2599-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, UPPER	KR	
9	FC8-1250-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL SIDE	JP	
9	FC8-1053-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL SIDE	EXCEPT JP	
10	FC8-1054-000		1	COVER, CONTROL PANEL, LOWER		
11	FC8-1057-000		1	KEYTOP, VOLUME ADJUSTER		
12	FC8-1058-000		1	KNOB, VOLUME		
13	FK2-0329-000		1	ANALOG TOUCH PANEL UNIT		
14	FK2-6627-000		1	CABLE, FLAT		
15	FM4-6690-000		1	INVERTER PCB ASSEMBLY		
16	FK2-6722-000		1	USB CABLE	EXCEPT JP	
17	FL3-0489-000		1	LCD CONTROL PANEL UNIT		
18	FM2-1116-010		1	START KEY TOP ASSEMBLY		
19	FM3-9216-000		1	CONTROL PANEL CPU PCB ASSEMBLY		
20	FM4-0074-000		1	PANEL SWITCH PCB ASSEMBLY		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
21	FM3-5745-000		1	CABLE, PANEL INVERTER		
22	FM3-5535-000		1	CABLE, SWITCH		
23	FM3-5743-000		1	CONTROL PANEL USB PCB ASSEMBLY	EXCEPT JP	
24	FC8-9329-000		1	GUIDE, INVERTER CABLE		
501	XB4-5301-007		13	SCREW, P, M3X10		
502	XB6-7300-607		AR	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		

FIGURE 140
POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY



NOTE : This assembly does not include the parts shown with key No. 10 and 11.
注 : このユニットにKey No. 10, 11の部品は含まれません。

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.140	FM3-4400-000		1	POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY	100V	
Fig.140	FM3-7260-000		1	POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY	120V	
Fig.140	FM3-4401-000		1	POWER CORD TERMINAL ASSEMBLY	230V	
1	FC5-1168-000		1	HANDLE, RIGHT REAR		
2	FM3-5066-000		1	CABLE, AC MAIN		
3	FH7-7626-000		1	BREAKER,ELECTRIC LEAKAGE	100V,120V	
3	FH7-7625-030		1	BREAKER,ELECTRIC LEAKAGE	230V	
4	FK2-2509-000		1	SWITCH, MAIN	SW1	
5	FL2-9010-000		1	CABLE, SOCKET	230V	
6	VS1-8412-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BL		
7	FM3-5071-000		1	CABLE, MAIN SWITCH		
8	FL2-9008-000		1	CORD, POWER SUPPLY	100V	
9	FL2-9009-000		1	CORD, POWER SUPPLY	120V	
10	FK2-0146-000		1	CORD, POWER SUPPLY	SEE NOTE 230V EXCEPT AU	
11	FK2-0148-000		1	CORD, POWER SUPPLY	SEE NOTE 230V AU	
12	FK2-2987-000		1	CORD, POWER SUPPLY	SEE NOTE 230V CN	
501	XB1-2400-603		1	SCREW, MACHINE M4X6 (COP)	100V,120V	
502	XB1-2402-007		2	SCREW, BH4X20 (S)		
503	XB6-7300-607		1	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH	100V,120V	
504	XD1-4200-402		1	WASHER, TOOTHED LOCK, M4	100V,120V	
505	XB1-2500-603		1	SCREW, M5X6	120V,230V	
506	XD1-4200-502		1	LOCK WASHER (SUS)	120V,230V	

FIGURE 145
RIGHT LOWER DOOR ASSEMBLY

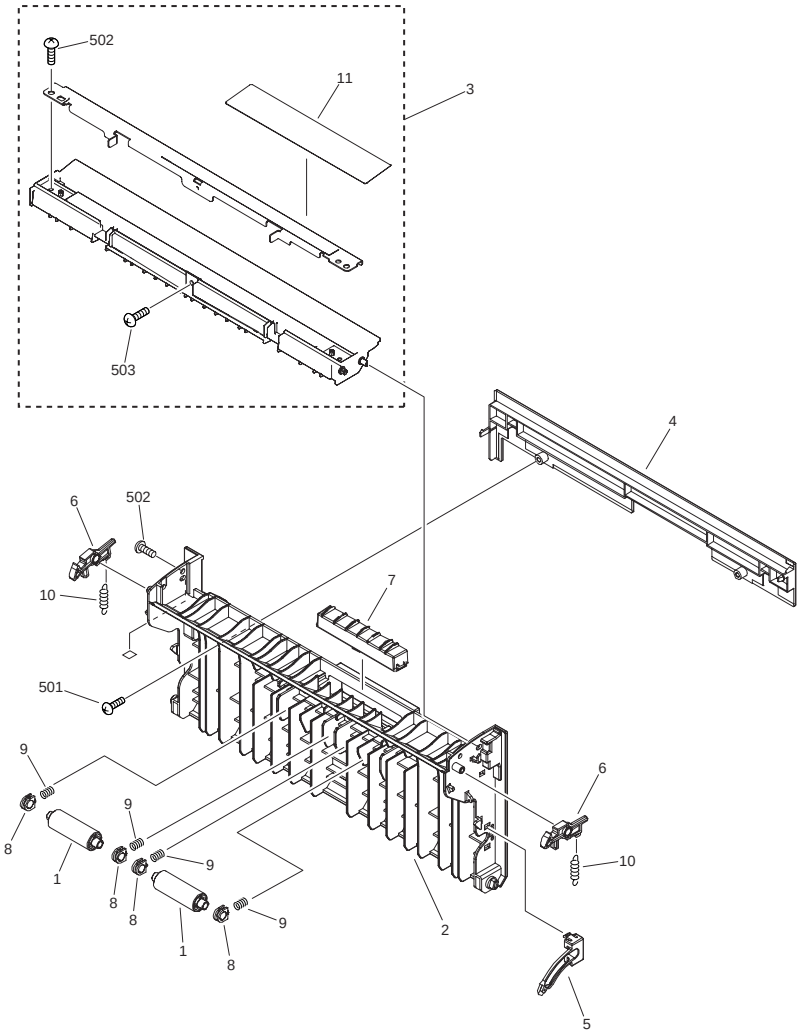


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.145	FM3-1296-000		1	RIGHT LOWER DOOR ASSEMBLY		
1	FB6-3313-000		2	ROLLER, PAPER FEED		
2	FC5-0588-010		1	DOOR, RIGHT LOWER		
3	FM3-1298-000		1	RIGHT LW. DOOR DECK PATH ASS'Y		
4	FC5-0590-000		1	PANEL, BLANKING		
5	FC5-0592-000		1	STOPPER, RIGHT LOWER DOOR		
6	FC5-0593-000		2	HOOK, RIGHT LOWER DOOR		
7	FC5-0594-000		1	GRIP, RIGHT LOWER DOOR		
8	FU5-1035-000		4	BUSHING		
9	FU6-2924-000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
10	FU6-2974-000		2	SPRING, TENSION		
11	FU5-8011-000		1	LABEL, LASER CAUTION		
501	XB4-5400-807		2	SCREW,P,M4X8		
502	XB4-7300-807		3	SCREW, TAP TIGHT, BINDING HEAD		
503	XB1-2300-607		1	SCREW, BH3X6		

FIGURE 250
MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3225 Series)

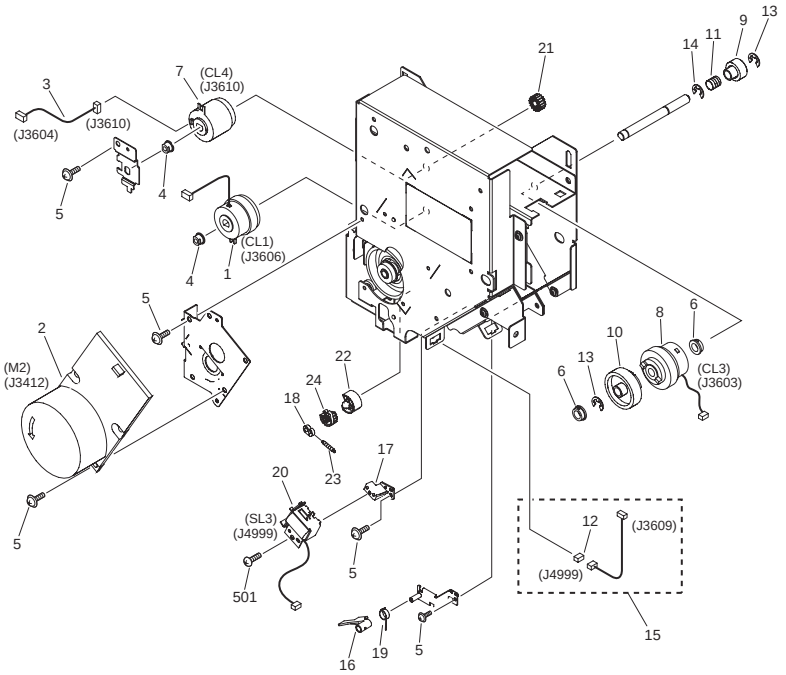


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.250	FM3-6153-000		1	MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY	iR3225 Series	
1	FK2-6306-000		1	CLUTCH, ELECTROMAGNETIC	CL1	
2	FK2-6300-000		1	MOTOR, DC24V	M2	
3	FM2-2842-000		1	CABLE, CLUTCH		
4	FU5-1615-000		2	BUSHING		
5	XA9-1164-000		9	SCREW,RS,M3X6.5		
6	FA9-2112-000		2	BUSHING, PL		
7	FH6-5005-020		1	CLUTCH, ELECTRO MAGNETIC	CL4	
8	FK2-6305-000		1	CLUTCH, ELECTROMAGNETIC	CL3	
9	FU5-0087-000		1	GEAR,20T		
10	FU5-0098-000		1	GEAR,43T		
11	FU5-2079-000		1	SPRING		
12	VS1-7207-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
13	XD9-0136-000		2	RING, E		
14	XD9-0137-010		1	RING, E		
15	FM3-5077-000		1	CABLE, MULTI SOLENOID CONNECT.		
16	FC5-7260-000		1	LEVER, RELEASE		
17	FC5-7261-000		1	MOUNT, SOLENOID		
18	FC6-2993-000		1	COLLAR, SPRING		
19	FC7-2385-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
20	FK2-2070-000		1	SOLENOID, FLAPPER	SL3	
21	FU6-0029-000		1	GEAR, 18T		
22	FU6-0036-000		1	CAM		
23	FU6-0041-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
24	FU6-0054-000		1	GEAR, 15T		
501	XB4-5400-807		1	SCREW,P,M4X8		

FIGURE 251
MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3245/3235/3230 Series)

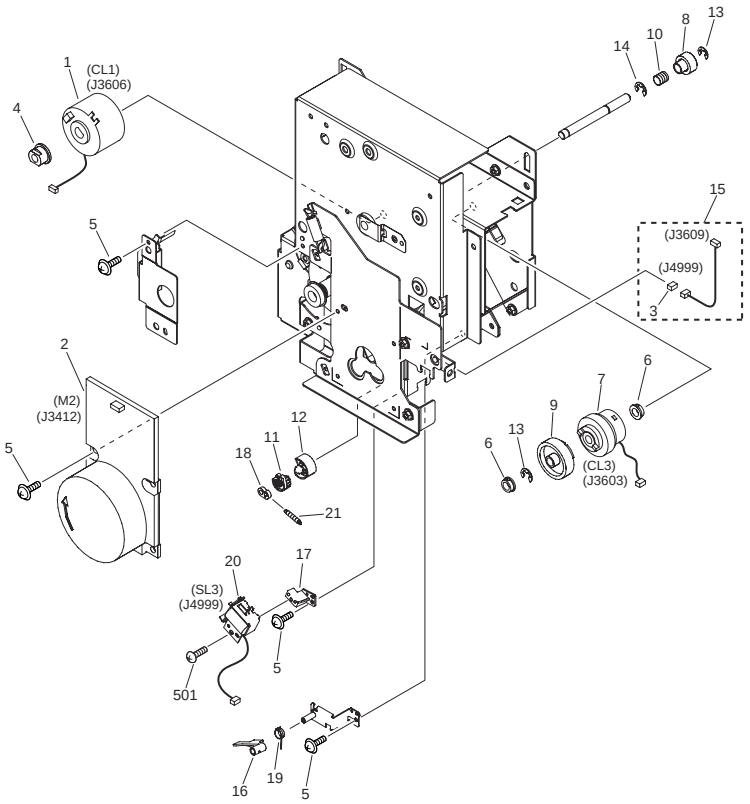


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.251	FM3-4387-000		1	MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
1	FK2-6306-000		1	CLUTCH, ELECTROMAGNETIC	CL1	
2	FK2-6299-000		1	MOTOR, DC24V	M2	
3	VS1-7207-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
4	FU5-1615-000		1	BUSHING		
5	XA9-1164-000		8	SCREW,RS,M3X6.5		
6	FA9-2112-000		2	BUSHING, PL		
7	FK2-6305-000		1	CLUTCH, ELECTROMAGNETIC	CL3	
8	FU5-0087-000		1	GEAR,20T		
9	FU5-0098-000		1	GEAR,43T		
10	FU5-2079-000		1	SPRING		
11	FU6-0054-000		1	GEAR, 15T		
12	FU6-0036-000		1	CAM		
13	XD9-0136-000		2	RING, E		
14	XD9-0137-010		1	RING, E		
15	FM3-5077-000		1	CABLE, MULTI SOLENOID CONNECT.		
16	FC5-7260-000		1	LEVER, RELEASE		
17	FC5-7261-000		1	MOUNT, SOLENOID		
18	FC6-2993-000		1	COLLAR, SPRING		
19	FC7-2385-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
20	FK2-2070-000		1	SOLENOID, FLAPPER	SL3	
21	FU6-0041-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
501	XB4-5400-807		1	SCREW,P,M4X8		

FIGURE 261
DUPLEXING DRIVE ASSEMBLY (iR3245/3235/3230 Series)

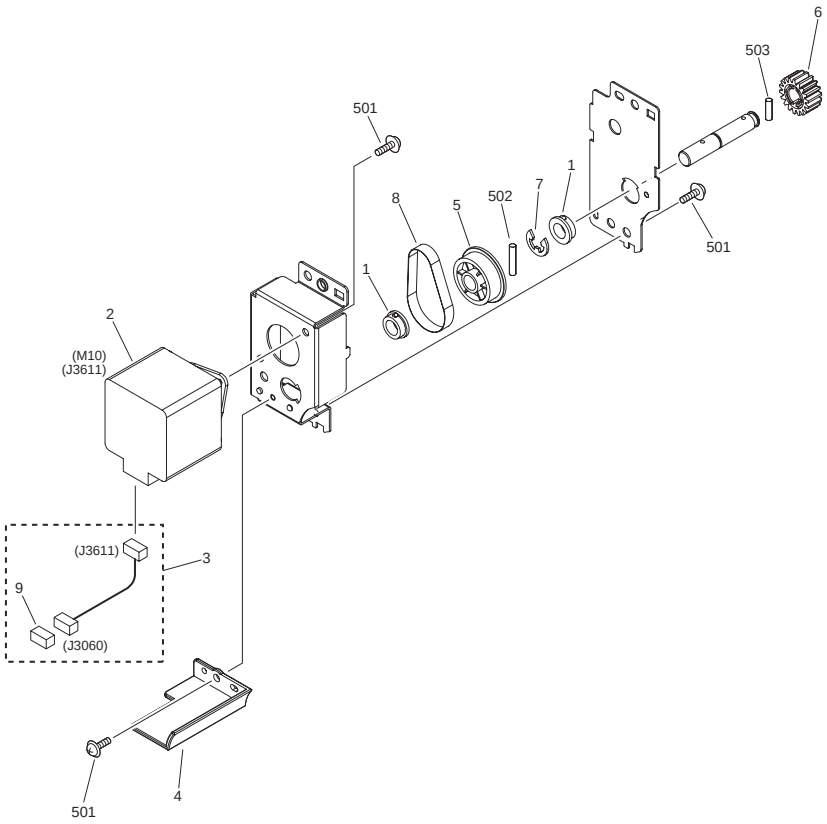


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.261	NPN		RF	DUPLEXING DRIVE ASSEMBLY	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
1	FA9-2112-000		2	BUSHING, PL		
2	FL2-3266-000		1	MOTOR,STEPPING,DC	M10	
3	FM2-2838-000		1	CABLE, DUPLEXING MOTOR		
4	FC5-7257-000		1	COVER, DUPLEX CONNECTOR		
5	FU6-0024-000		1	PULLEY, 40T		
6	FU6-0029-000		1	GEAR, 18T		
7	XD9-0137-010		1	RING, E		
8	XF2-1605-760		1	BELT, TIMING		
9	VS1-7177-004		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
501	XB6-7300-607		4	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		
502	XD3-2200-182		1	PIN, DOWEL		
503	XD3-2200-122		1	PIN, DOWEL		

FIGURE 281
FIXING DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY

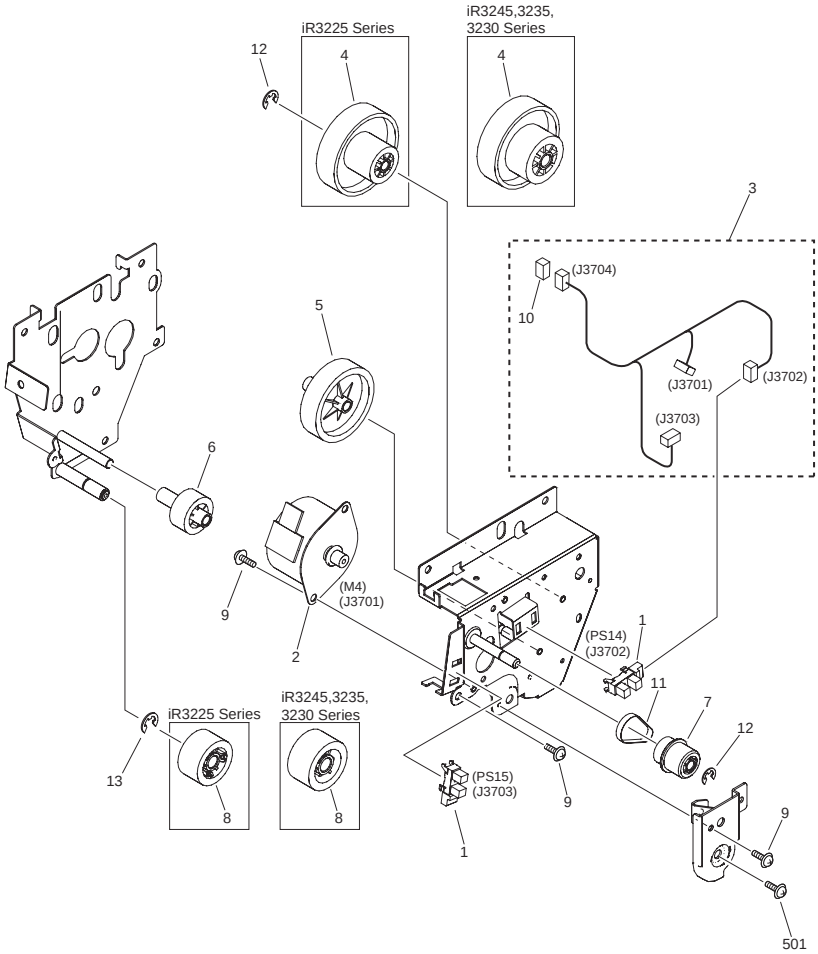
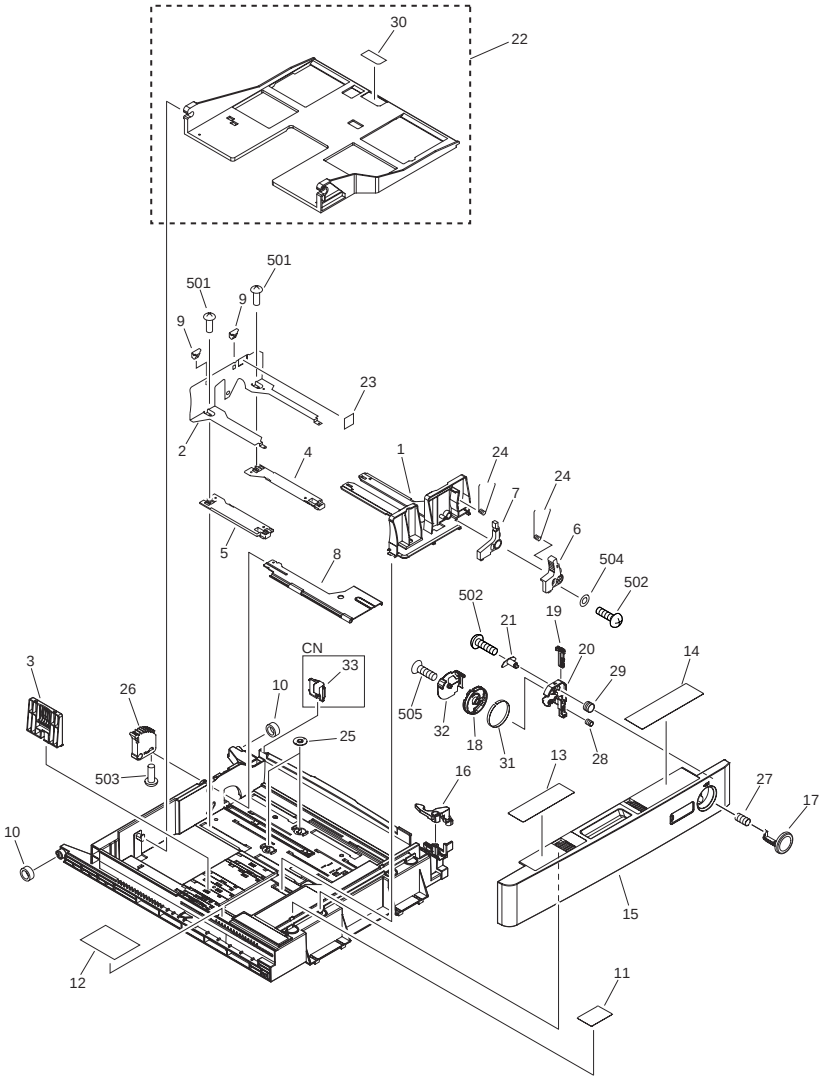


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.281	FM2-1771-000		1	FIXING DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
Fig.281	FM2-0242-000		1	FIXING DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY	iR3225 Series	
1	WG8-5783-000		2	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1252(C6)	PS14,PS15	
2	FK2-0365-000		1	MOTOR, STEPPING, DC	M4	
3	FM2-2816-000		1	CABLE, FIXING DRIVE		
4	FU6-0019-000		1	GEAR, 24T	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
4	FU5-0095-000		1	GEAR, 17T/103T	iR3225 Series	
5	FU5-0096-000		1	GEAR, 36T		
6	FU5-0097-000		1	GEAR, 17T		
7	FU5-0101-000		1	GEAR, 20T/PULLEY 28T		
8	FU6-0020-000		1	GEAR, 24T	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
8	FU5-0126-000		1	GEAR, 21T	iR3225 Series	
9	XA9-1164-000		6	SCREW,RS,M3X6.5		
10	VS1-7173-010		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, 10P, W		
11	XF2-4104-040		1	BELT, TIMING		
12	XD9-0136-000		2	RING, E		
13	XD9-0137-010		1	RING, E		
501	XB6-7300-609		1	SCREW, MACH,PAN HEAD, M3X8		

FIGURE 300
CASSETTE 1



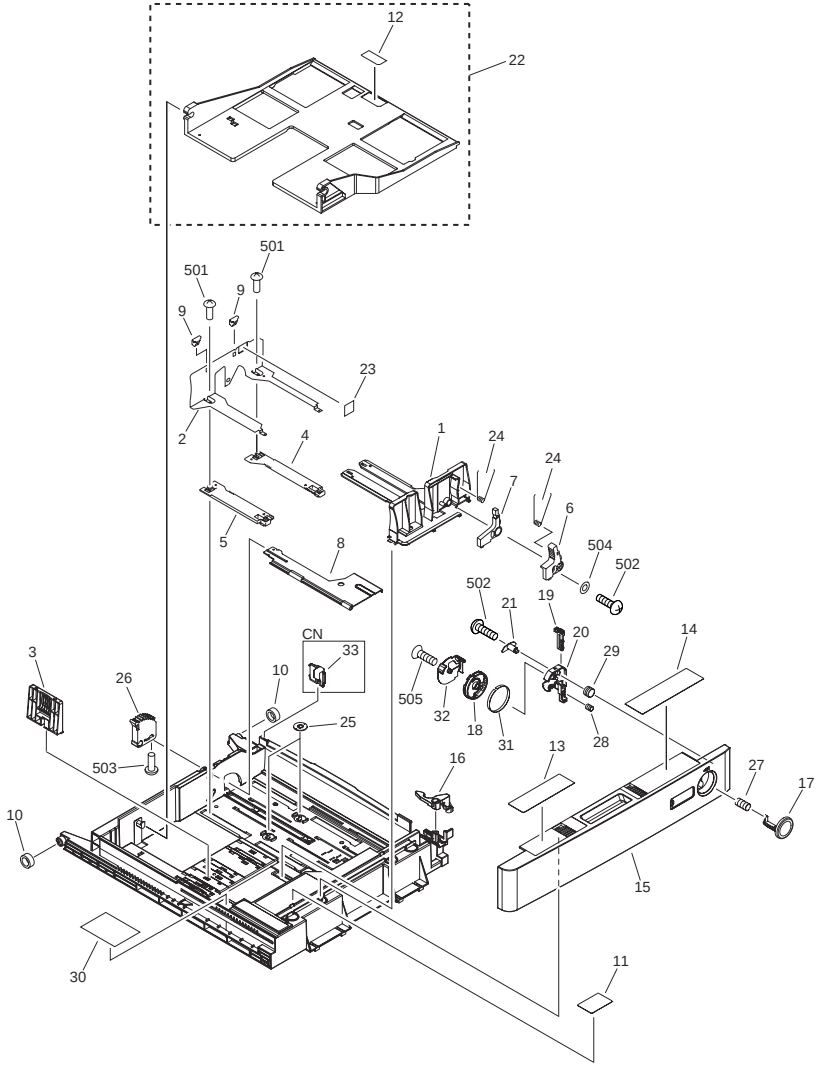
NOTE 1 : Several kinds of labels are attached on the board for the parts of Key No. 31.The same parts as Fig-Key No. 301-31
注1 : Key No. 31の部品は台紙に数種類のラベルが付いています。Fig-Key No. 301-31と同一部品です。

NOTE 2 : This assembly does not include the part shown with Key No. 33.
注2 : Key No. 33の部品は含まれません。

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.300	FM2-0141-020		1	CASSETTE	EXCEPT CN, KR, TW	
Fig.300	FM2-2980-020		1	CASSETTE	CN, KR, TW	
1	FB6-3478-000		1	PLATE, SIDE GUIDE, FRONT		
2	FB6-3479-000		1	PLATE, SIDE GUIDE, REAR		
3	FB6-3480-000		1	PLATE, END GUIDE		
4	FB6-3481-000		1	RACK, 1		
5	FB6-3482-000		1	RACK, 2		
6	FB6-3483-000		1	KNOB, SIDE GUIDE PLATE, 1		
7	FB6-3484-000		1	KNOB, SIDE GUIDE PLATE, 2		
8	FB6-3486-000		1	PLATE, LIFTER		
9	FB6-3490-000		2	CLAW, SIDE PLATE GUIDE		
10	FB6-3506-000		2	COLLAR, CASSETTE SWING		
11	FC5-0583-000		1	LABEL, PAPER SET		
12	FC5-0585-000		1	LABEL, PAPER SET CAUTION	EXCEPT CN, KR, TW	
12	FC6-2848-000		1	LABEL, PAPER SET CAUTION	CN, KR, TW	
13	FC5-0591-000		1	LABEL, SIZE CHANGE		
14	FC5-0598-000		1	LABEL, DIAL SET	EXCEPT CN, KR, TW	
14	FC6-2849-000		1	LABEL, DIAL SET	CN, KR, TW	
15	FC5-0622-000		1	PANEL, CASSETTE FRONT		
16	FC5-0635-000		1	ARM, LOCK		
17	FC5-0636-000		1	BUTTON, PUSH		
18	FC5-1422-020		1	DIAL, SIZE DETECT		
19	FC5-1423-000		1	SLIDER, CONVERT		
20	FC5-1424-020		1	HOLDER, DIAL		
21	FC5-1425-000		1	PIN, FLOAT GUIDE		
22	FF6-2064-030		1	PLATE, PAPER LIFTING		
23	FS6-8116-000		1	LABEL, 'PAPER HEIGHT'		
24	FS7-2805-000		2	SPRING, TORSION		
25	FU3-0293-000		2	GEAR, 16T		
26	FU3-0294-000		1	GEAR, 7T		
27	FU5-2032-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
28	FU5-2097-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
29	FU5-2104-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
30	FB6-3499-000		1	SHEET, SEPARATION		
31	FC5-7216-020		1	LABEL, CASSETTE SIZE, DIAL	SEE NOTE 1	
32	FC8-1206-000		1	PROTECTOR, DIAL		
33	FL2-8284-000		1	GUIDE, CASSETTE	CN SEE NOTE 2	
501	XB2-8300-607		4	SCREW, M3X6, S		
502	XB4-5300-807		2	SCREW, P, M3X8		
503	XB6-7300-807		1	SCREW, TP, M3X8		
504	XD1-1104-135		1	WASHER,COP		
505	XB1-3301-207		1	SCREW,MACH.,C.S. HEAD,M3X12		

FIGURE 301
CASSETTE 2



NOTE 1 : Several kinds of labels are attached on the board for the parts of Key No. 31.The same parts as Fig-Key No. 300-31
注1 : Key No. 31の部品は台紙に数種類のラベルが付いています。Fig-Key No. 300-31と同一部品です。

NOTE 2 : This assembly does not include the part shown with Key No. 33.
注2 : Key No. 33の部品は含まれません。

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.301	FM2-0142-020		1	CASSETTE	EXCEPT CN, KR, TW	
Fig.301	FM2-2981-020		1	CASSETTE	CN, KR, TW	
1	FB6-3478-000		1	PLATE, SIDE GUIDE, FRONT		
2	FB6-3479-000		1	PLATE, SIDE GUIDE, REAR		
3	FB6-3480-000		1	PLATE, END GUIDE		
4	FB6-3481-000		1	RACK, 1		
5	FB6-3482-000		1	RACK, 2		
6	FB6-3483-000		1	KNOB, SIDE GUIDE PLATE, 1		
7	FB6-3484-000		1	KNOB, SIDE GUIDE PLATE, 2		
8	FB6-3486-000		1	PLATE, LIFTER		
9	FB6-3490-000		2	CLAW, SIDE PLATE GUIDE		
10	FB6-3506-000		2	COLLAR, CASSETTE SWING		
11	FC5-0583-000		1	LABEL, PAPER SET		
12	FB6-3499-000		1	SHEET, SEPARATION		
13	FC5-0584-000		1	LABEL, SIZE CHANGE		
14	FC5-0598-000		1	LABEL, DIAL SET	EXCEPT CN, KR, TW	
14	FC6-2849-000		1	LABEL, DIAL SET	CN, KR, TW	
15	FC5-0624-000		1	PANEL, CASSETTE FRONT		
16	FC5-0605-000		1	ARM, LOCK		
17	FC5-0637-000		1	BUTTON, PUSH		
18	FC5-1422-020		1	DIAL, SIZE DETECT		
19	FC5-1423-000		1	SLIDER, CONVERT		
20	FC5-1424-020		1	HOLDER, DIAL		
21	FC5-1425-000		1	PIN, FLOAT GUIDE		
22	FF6-2064-030		1	PLATE, PAPER LIFTING		
23	FS6-8116-000		1	LABEL, 'PAPER HEIGHT'		
24	FS7-2805-000		2	SPRING, TORSION		
25	FU3-0293-000		2	GEAR, 16T		
26	FU3-0294-000		1	GEAR, 7T		
27	FU5-2033-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
28	FU5-2097-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
29	FU5-2104-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
30	FB6-3524-000		1	LABEL, PAPER SIZE SELECT	EXCEPT CN, KR, TW	
30	FB6-6215-000		1	LABEL, PAPER SIZE SELECT	CN, KR, TW	
31	FC5-7216-020		1	LABEL, CASSETTE SIZE, DIAL	SEE NOTE 1	
32	FC8-1206-000		1	PROTECTOR, DIAL		
33	FL2-8284-000		1	GUIDE, CASSETTE	CN SEE NOTE 2	
501	XB2-8300-607		4	SCREW, M3X6, S		
502	XB4-5300-807		2	SCREW, P, M3X8		
503	XB6-7300-807		1	SCREW, TP, M3X8		
504	XD1-1104-135		1	WASHER,COP		
505	XB1-3301-207		1	SCREW,MACH.,C.S. HEAD,M3X12		

FIGURE 310
PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 1

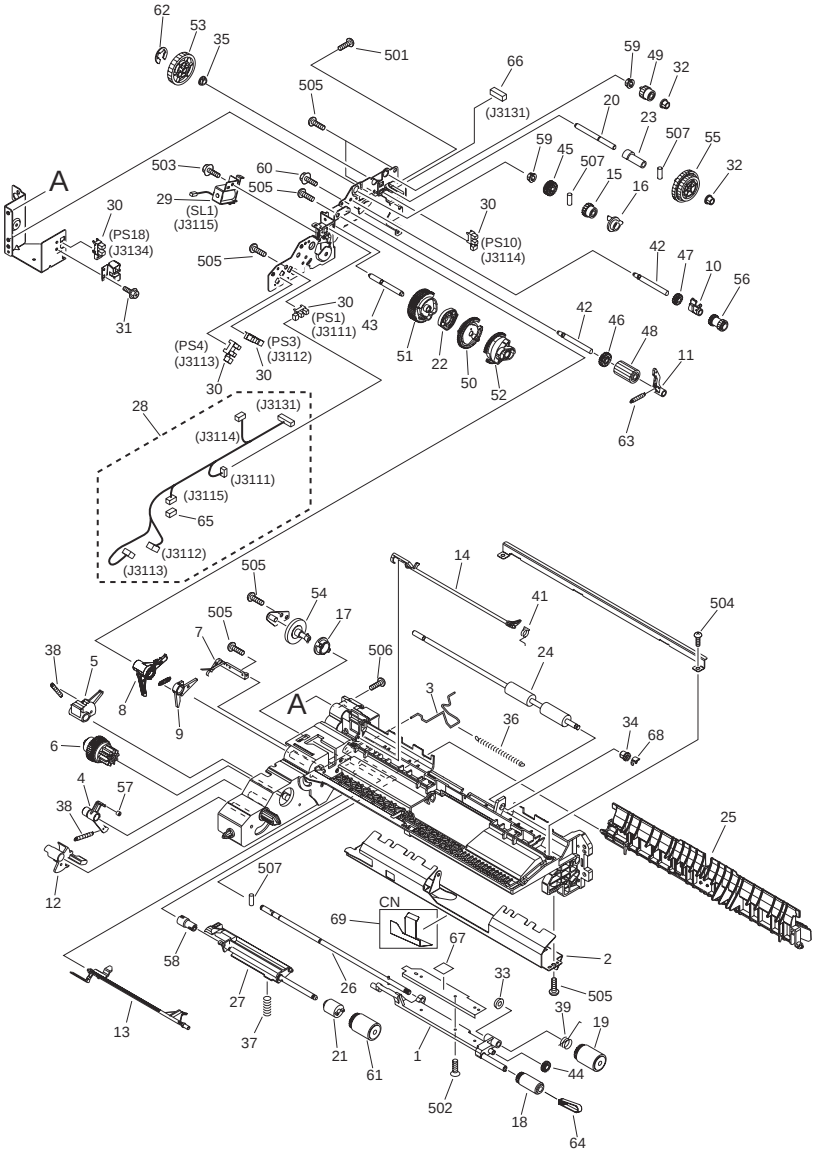


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.310	FM3-2982-000		1	PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY	CN	
Fig.310	FM3-0009-000		1	PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY	EXCEPT CN	
1	FB6-3380-020		1	HOLDER, PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER		
2	FB6-3386-010		1	GUIDE, RETARD		
3	FB6-3388-000		1	ROD, SEPARATION ROLLER RELEASE		
4	FB6-3389-000		1	CLAW, PICK-UP		
5	FC8-1178-000		1	CLAW, PAPER PICK-UP		
6	FB6-3391-000		1	GEAR, RATCHET		
7	FB6-3392-020		1	SPRING, LEAF		
8	FM3-4146-000		1	PICK-UP ARM UNIT		
9	FB6-3394-000		1	ARM, LIFTING		
10	FB6-3395-000		1	ARM, PAPER FEED SHAFT		
11	FB6-3396-010		1	LOCK, PICK-UP		
12	FB6-3397-000		1	FLAG, PAPER SENSOR		
13	FB6-3398-000		1	FLAG, PAPER DETECT SENSOR		
14	FL2-6580-000		1	FLAG, REGISTRATION SENSOR		
15	FB6-3402-000		1	GEAR, RATCHET		
16	FB6-3403-000		1	COUPLING, FEED SHAFT STOP		
17	FB6-3404-000		1	COUPLING, SEPARATION SHAFT		
18	FC7-9381-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER PICK-UP	CN	
18	FB6-3405-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER PICK-UP	EXCEPT CN	
19	FC7-9502-000		1	ROLLER, FEED/SEPARATION	CN	
19	FC6-7083-000		1	ROLLER, FEED/SEPARATION	EXCEPT CN	
20	FB6-3408-000		1	SHAFT, PAPER PICK-UP DRIVE		
21	FB6-3410-000		1	LIMITER, TORQUE		
22	FB6-7078-000		1	CAM, LOCK		
23	FB6-3413-000		1	COLLAR, PAPER PICK-UP SHAFT		
24	FM3-4150-000		1	ROLLER, VERTICAL PATH	CN	
24	FB6-4852-000		1	ROLLER, VERTICAL PATH	EXCEPT CN	
25	FL2-8282-000		1	GUIDE, VERTICAL PATH	CN	
25	FC5-0595-010		1	GUIDE, VERTICAL PATH	EXCEPT CN	
26	FF6-2058-000		1	SHAFT, PAPER FEED ROLLER		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
27	FM4-2525-000		1	HOLDER, SEPARATION ROLLER		
28	FG3-2302-020		1	CABLE, PAPER PICK-UP		
29	FK2-0408-000		1	SOLENOID	SL1	
30	FK2-0149-000		4	IC, EE-SX4235A-P2,	PS1,PS3,PS4,PS10,PS18	
31	XA9-1386-000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
32	FU5-1033-000		2	BUSHING		
33	FS5-1943-000		1	BUSHING		
34	FU5-1763-000		1	BUSHING		
35	FS6-1063-000		1	BUSHING		
36	FS7-2797-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
37	FU6-2684-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
38	FS7-2800-000		2	SPRING, TENSION		
39	FS7-2801-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
41	FS7-2803-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
42	FS7-5909-000		2	SHAFT, IDLER, 2		
43	FS7-5910-000		1	SHAFT, IDLER, 3		
44	FU3-0280-000		1	GEAR, 15T		
45	FU3-0282-000		1	GEAR, 21T		
46	FU3-0283-000		1	GEAR, 21T		
47	FU3-0284-000		1	GEAR, 16T		
48	FU3-0288-000		1	GEAR, 21T		
49	FU3-0289-000		1	GEAR, 14T		
50	FF6-2397-000		1	GEAR, 46T		
51	FU7-0848-000		1	GEAR, 51T		
52	FU7-0445-000		1	GEAR, 42T		
53	FU3-0347-000		1	GEAR, 41T		
54	FU3-0349-000		1	GEAR, 41T		
55	FU3-0350-000		1	GEAR, 41T/41T		
56	FU6-0710-000		1	GEAR, 16T/16T		
57	FC8-1202-000		1	DAMPER		
58	RB1-8945-000		1	JOINT		
59	RS5-1567-000		2	BUSHING		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
60	XA9-0656-000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X10		
61	FC6-6661-000		1	ROLLER, SEPARATION		
62	XD9-0136-000		1	RING, E		
63	FU6-2784-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
64	FC7-5845-000		1	STOPPER, ROLLER		
65	VS1-7177-002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
66	VS1-7173-014		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, 14P, W		
67	FC8-1205-000		1	PAD, PAPER PICK-UP HOLDER		
68	FC6-9867-000		1	RING, RETAINING		
69	FL2-8280-000		1	GUIDE, ROLLER	CN	
501	XB1-2300-807		1	SCREW, CROSS-RECESS, FCH		
502	XB1-3300-607		3	SCREW, FTH3X6		
503	XB3-6300-605		2	SCREW,RS,M3X6		
504	XB4-5400-807		2	SCREW,P,M4X8		
505	XB4-5401-207		7	SCREW,P,M4X12		
506	XB1-2400-607		2	SCREW, CROSS-RECESS, FCH		
507	XD3-2200-122		3	PIN, DOWEL		

FIGURE 311
PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY 2

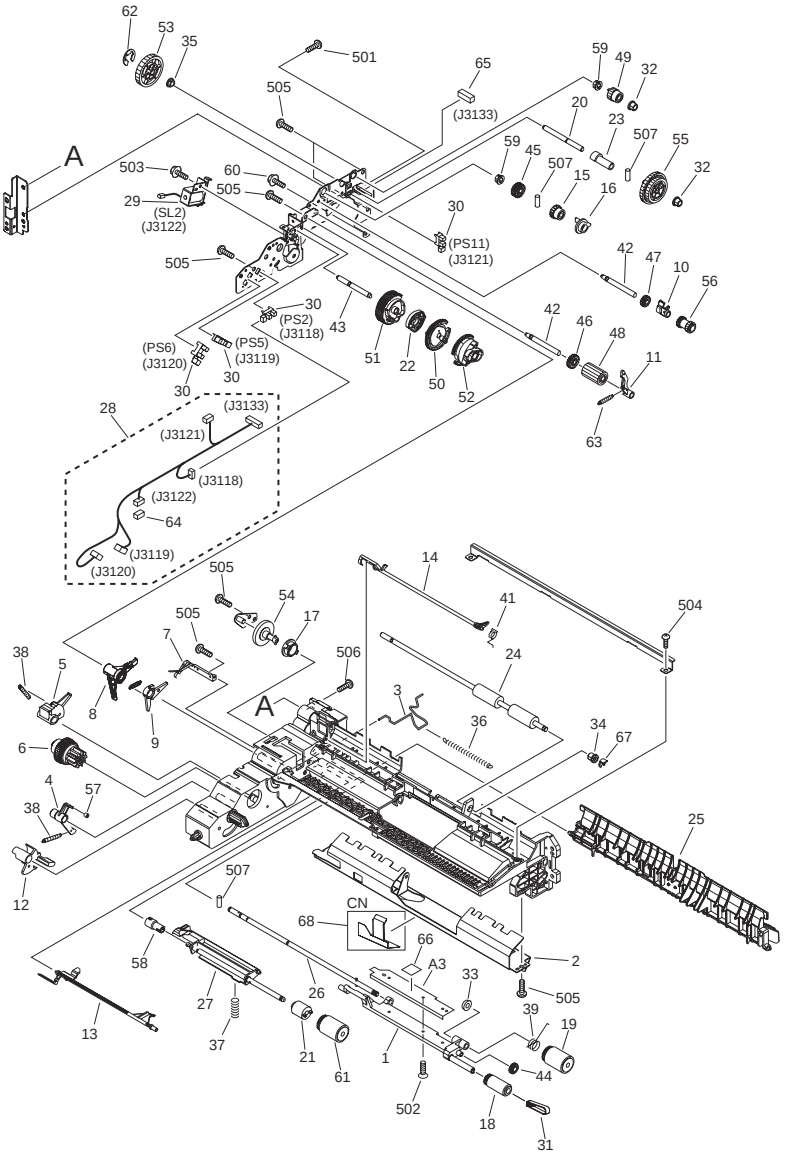
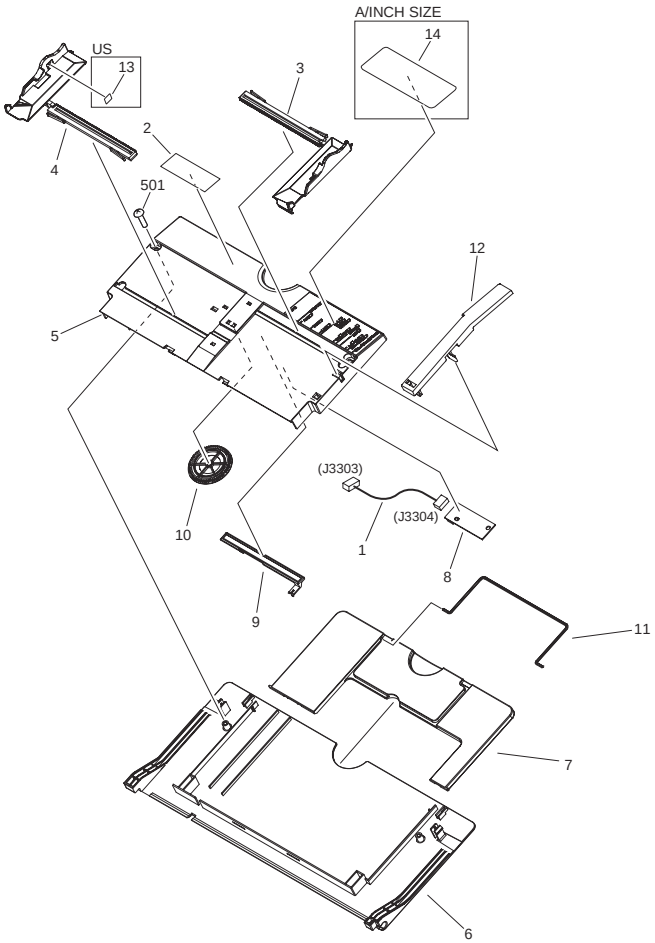


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.311	FM2-1578-130		1	PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY	EXCEPT CN	
Fig.311	FM3-2983-000		1	PAPER PICK-UP ASSEMBLY	CN	
1	FB6-3380-020		1	HOLDER, PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER		
2	FB6-3386-010		1	GUIDE, RETARD		
3	FB6-3388-000		1	ROD, SEPARATION ROLLER RELEASE		
4	FB6-3389-000		1	CLAW, PICK-UP		
5	FC8-1178-000		1	CLAW, PAPER PICK-UP		
6	FB6-3391-000		1	GEAR, RATCHET		
7	FB6-3392-020		1	SPRING, LEAF		
8	FM3-4146-000		1	PICK-UP ARM UNIT		
9	FB6-3394-000		1	ARM, LIFTING		
10	FB6-3395-000		1	ARM, PAPER FEED SHAFT		
11	FB6-3396-010		1	LOCK, PICK-UP		
12	FB6-3397-000		1	FLAG, PAPER SENSOR		
13	FB6-3398-000		1	FLAG, PAPER DETECT SENSOR		
14	FL2-6580-000		1	FLAG, REGISTRATION SENSOR		
15	FB6-3402-000		1	GEAR, RATCHET		
16	FB6-3403-000		1	COUPLING, FEED SHAFT STOP		
17	FB6-3404-000		1	COUPLING, SEPARATION SHAFT		
18	FB6-3405-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER PICK-UP	EXCEPT CN	
18	FC7-9381-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER PICK-UP	CN	
19	FC6-7083-000		1	ROLLER, FEED/SEPARATION	EXCEPT CN	
19	FC7-9502-000		1	ROLLER, FEED/SEPARATION	CN	
20	FB6-3408-000		1	SHAFT, PAPER PICK-UP DRIVE		
21	FB6-3410-000		1	LIMITER, TORQUE		
22	FB6-7078-000		1	CAM, LOCK		
23	FB6-3413-000		1	COLLAR, PAPER PICK-UP SHAFT		
24	FB6-4852-000		1	ROLLER, VERTICAL PATH	EXCEPT CN	
24	FM3-4150-000		1	ROLLER, VERTICAL PATH	CN	
25	FB6-3387-000		1	GUIDE, VERTICAL PATH	EXCEPT CN	
25	FL2-8283-000		1	GUIDE, VERTICAL PATH	CN	
26	FF6-2058-000		1	SHAFT, PAPER FEED ROLLER		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
27	FM4-2525-000		1	HOLDER, SEPARATION ROLLER		
28	FG3-2302-020		1	CABLE, PAPER PICK-UP		
29	FK2-0408-000		1	SOLENOID	SL2	
30	FK2-0149-000		4	IC, EE-SX4235A-P2,	PS2,PS5,PS6,PS11	
31	FC7-5845-000		1	STOPPER, ROLLER		
32	FU5-1033-000		2	BUSHING		
33	FS5-1943-000		1	BUSHING		
34	FU5-1763-000		1	BUSHING		
35	FS6-1063-000		1	BUSHING		
36	FS7-2797-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
37	FU6-2684-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
38	FS7-2800-000		2	SPRING, TENSION		
39	FS7-2801-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
41	FS7-2803-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
42	FS7-5909-000		2	SHAFT, IDLER, 2		
43	FS7-5910-000		1	SHAFT, IDLER, 3		
44	FU3-0280-000		1	GEAR, 15T		
45	FU3-0282-000		1	GEAR, 21T		
46	FU3-0283-000		1	GEAR, 21T		
47	FU3-0284-000		1	GEAR, 16T		
48	FU3-0288-000		1	GEAR, 21T		
49	FU3-0289-000		1	GEAR, 14T		
50	FF6-2397-000		1	GEAR, 46T		
51	FU7-0848-000		1	GEAR, 51T		
52	FU7-0445-000		1	GEAR, 42T		
53	FU3-0347-000		1	GEAR, 41T		
54	FU3-0349-000		1	GEAR, 41T		
55	FU3-0350-000		1	GEAR, 41T/41T		
56	FU6-0710-000		1	GEAR, 16T/16T		
57	FC8-1202-000		1	DAMPER		
58	RB1-8945-000		1	JOINT		
59	RS5-1567-000		2	BUSHING		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
60	XA9-0656-000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X10		
61	FC6-6661-000		1	ROLLER, SEPARATION		
62	XD9-0136-000		1	RING, E		
63	FU6-2784-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
64	VS1-7177-002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
65	VS1-7173-014		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, 14P, W		
66	FC8-1205-000		1	PAD, PAPER PICK-UP HOLDER		
67	FC6-9867-000		1	RING, RETAINING		
68	FL2-8280-000		1	GUIDE, ROLLER	CN	
501	XB1-2300-807		1	SCREW, CROSS-RECESS, FCH		
502	XB1-3300-607		3	SCREW, FTH3X6		
503	XB3-6300-605		2	SCREW,RS,M3X6		
504	XB4-5400-807		2	SCREW,P,M4X8		
505	XB4-5401-207		7	SCREW,P,M4X12		
506	XB1-2400-607		2	SCREW, CROSS-RECESS, FCH		
507	XD3-2200-122		3	PIN, DOWEL		

FIGURE 315
MULTI FEED TRAY ASSEMBLY



NOTE 1 : This assembly is included in the assembly shown in Figure 115.
NOTE 2 : This assembly does not include the parts shown with key No. 2, 12, 13 and 14.
注 1 : このユニットはFigure 115のユニットに含まれます。
注 2 : このユニットにKey No. 2, 12, 13, 14の部品は含まれません。

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.315	FM2-5540-000		1	MULTI FEED TRAY ASSEMBLY	SEE NOTE	
1	FG3-3187-000		1	CABLE, PAPER WIDTH SENSOR		
2	FU5-8795-000		1	LABEL, PAPER SET INSTRUCTION	SEE NOTE	
3	FC6-9606-000		1	PLATE, PAPER SIDE END, FRONT		
4	FC6-9607-000		1	PLATE, PAPER SIDE END, REAR		
5	FC5-0479-030		1	TRAY, MULTI FEED, UPPER		
6	FC7-9522-000		1	TRAY, MULTI FEED, LOWER		
7	FC5-0481-000		1	TRAY, MULTI FEED AUXILIARY		
8	FM2-2768-000		1	MULTI FEED SIZE PCB ASSEMBLY		
9	FU5-0063-000		1	RACK, MULTI FEED SIZE DETECT		
10	FU5-0062-000		1	GEAR, 18T/62T		
11	FC5-0546-000		1	TRAY, WIRE AUXILIARY		
12	FC7-1740-000		1	COVER	SEE NOTE	
13	FC5-0544-000		1	LABEL, MAXIMUM LOAD	SEE NOTE US, CN, KR, TW	
14	FC5-7217-000		1	LABEL,PAPER SIZE	SEE NOTE A/INCH SIZE	
14	FC6-7082-000		1	LABEL,PAPER SIZE	SEE NOTE AB/K SIZE CN	
501	XB4-5401-007		2	SCREW, M4X10		

FIGURE 350
PAPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY

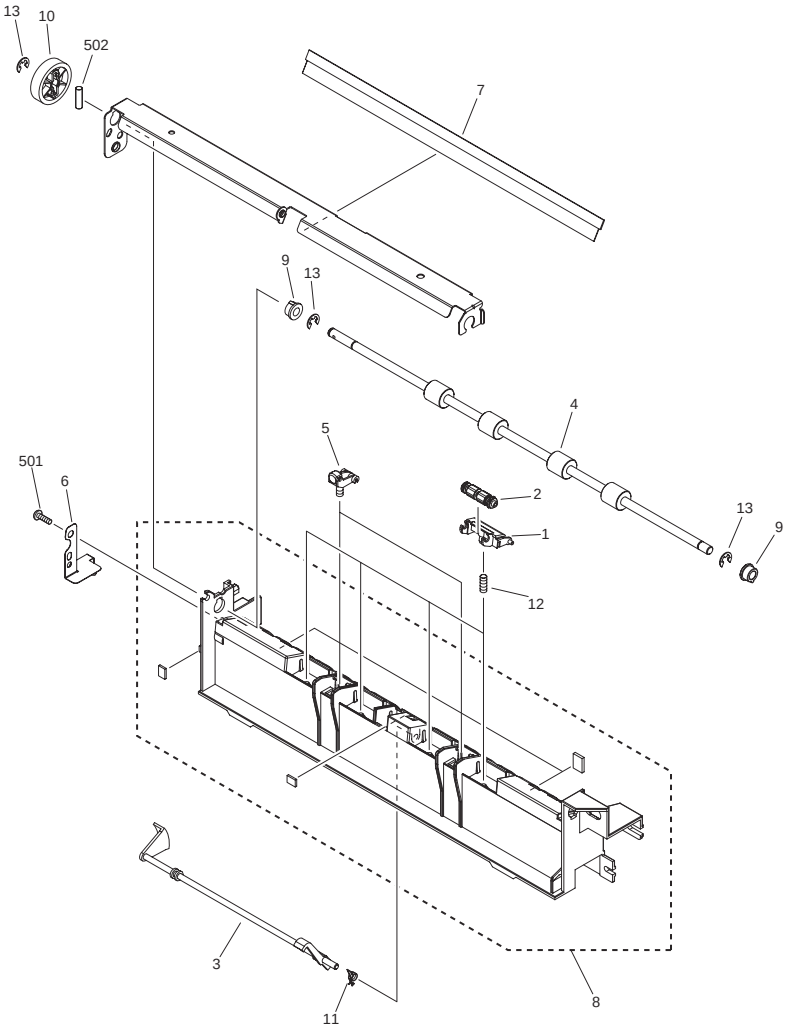


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.350	FM2-3265-000		1	PAPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY		
1	FC6-2915-000		4	HOLDER,ROLLER		
2	FM2-0177-000		4	O RING ROLLER UNIT		
3	FL2-0351-000		1	FLAG, 1ST DELIVERY SENSOR		
4	FC5-0800-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER DELIVERY		
5	FF6-0345-000		2	DELIVERY COLLAR UNIT		
6	FC5-0806-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
7	FC6-4009-000		1	ELIMINATOR,STATIC CHARGE		
8	FL2-0379-000		1	GUIDE, PAPER DELIVERY		
9	FS5-1943-000		2	BUSHING		
10	FU5-0128-000		1	GEAR, 35T		
11	FU5-2068-030		1	SPRING, TORSION		
12	FU5-2074-000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
13	XD9-0136-000		3	RING, E		
501	XB4-5400-807		1	SCREW,P,M4X8		
502	XD3-2200-162		1	PIN, PARALLEL		

FIGURE 351
2ND/3RD DELIVERY ASSEMBLY

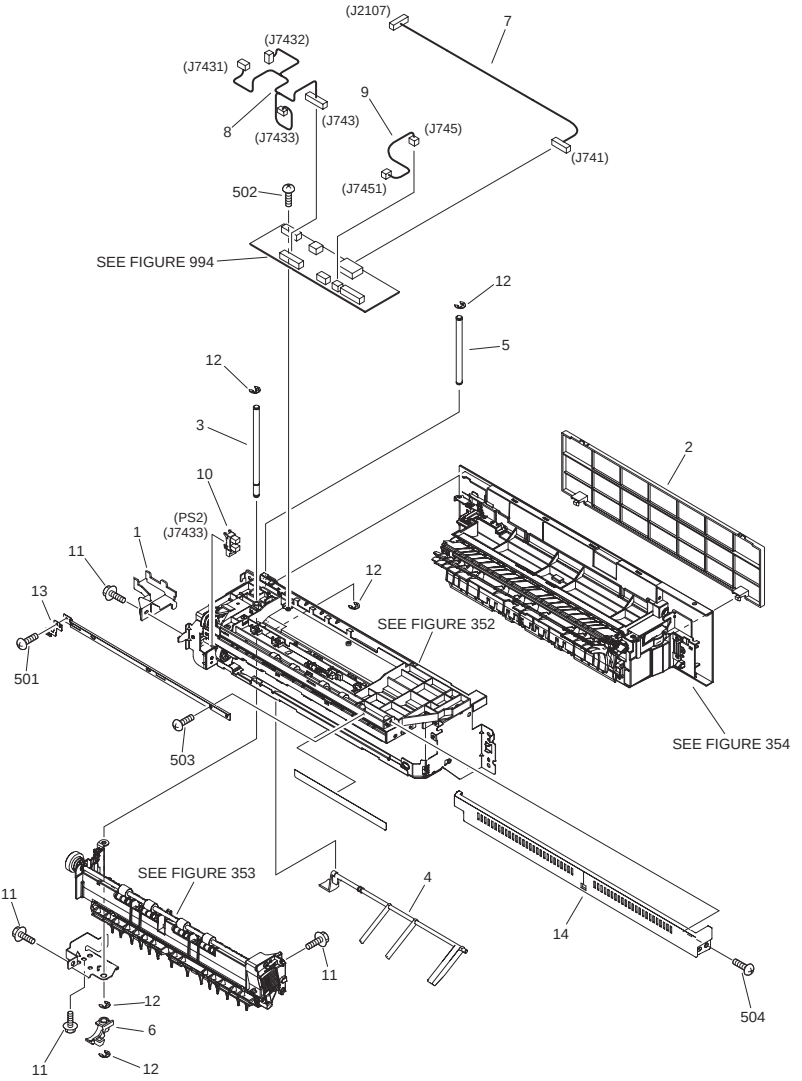


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.351	NPN		RF	2ND/3RD DELIVERY ASSEMBLY		
1	FC5-0859-000		1	COVER, CONNECTOR		
2	FC5-0888-020		1	PANEL, 2ND DELIVERY BLANKING		
3	FC5-0978-020		1	SHAFT, 2ND DELIVERY HINGE		
4	FC7-4467-000		1	FLAG, PAPER FULL SENSOR		
5	FC5-1019-020		1	SHAFT, 3RD DELIVERY HINGE		
6	FC5-6011-000		1	COVER, GEAR		
7	FG3-3294-000		1	CABLE, INTERFACE		
8	FG3-3297-000		1	CABLE, MOTOR		
9	FG3-3301-000		1	CABLE, SENSOR		
10	FH7-7557-020		1	IC,LG-248L1, PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PS2	
11	XA9-1386-000		5	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
12	XD9-0136-000		5	RING, E		
13	FC7-2178-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
14	FC5-6004-000		1	COVER, PROTECTIVE		
501	XB1-2300-405		1	SCREW, MACH. BH, M3X4		
502	XB4-5300-805		2	SCREW,P,M3X8		
503	XB4-5400-805		1	SCREW,P,M4X8		
504	XB4-5400-807		1	SCREW,P,M4X8		

FIGURE 352
2ND UPPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY

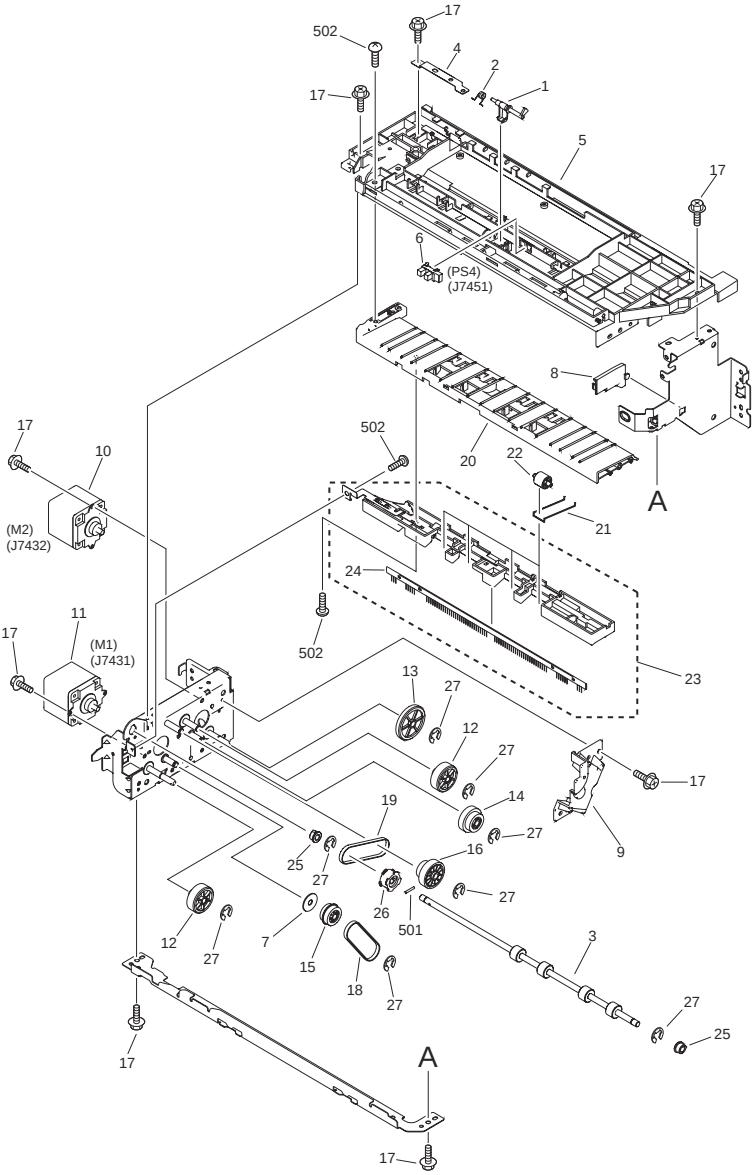


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.352	FM2-1328-050		1	2ND UPPER DELIVERY ASSEMBLY		
1	FC5-0987-000		1	FLAG, REVERSE SENSOR		
2	FC5-0988-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
3	FC5-0989-020		1	ROLLER, REVERSE		
4	FC5-1025-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
5	FC5-1038-000		1	GUIDE, 2ND DELIVERY, UPPER		
6	FH7-7557-020		1	IC,LG-248L1, PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PS4	
7	FB5-4754-000		1	SPACER		
8	FC5-0870-000		1	GUIDE, SLIDE		
9	FC5-6010-000		1	COVER, GEAR, 1		
10	FH5-1021-010		1	MOTOR, STEPPING, AC	M2	
11	FH5-1108-010		1	MOTOR, STEPPING, AC	M1	
12	FU5-0054-000		2	GEAR, 35T		
13	FU5-0077-000		1	GEAR, 46T		
14	FU5-0078-000		1	GEAR, 30T/24T		
15	FU5-3020-000		1	GEAR, 24T/PULLEY, 30T		
16	FU5-3022-000		1	PULLEY, 30T/GEAR, 35T		
17	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
18	XF2-4104-240		1	BELT, TIMING, COGGED		
19	XF2-4108-240		1	BELT, TIMING, COGGED		
20	FC5-0985-020		1	GUIDE, REVERSE LOWER		
21	FC5-0991-000		4	SPRING		
22	FC5-1013-000		4	ROLLER		
23	FL2-1200-000		1	GUIDE, REVERSE LOWER AUXILIARY		
24	FC5-6003-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC-CHARGE		
25	FS5-1943-000		2	BUSHING		
26	FU5-3021-000		1	PULLEY, 30T		
27	XD9-0136-000		8	RING, E		
501	XD3-2200-122		1	PIN, DOWEL		
502	XB4-5401-205		6	SCREW,P,M4X12		

FIGURE 353
2ND DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY

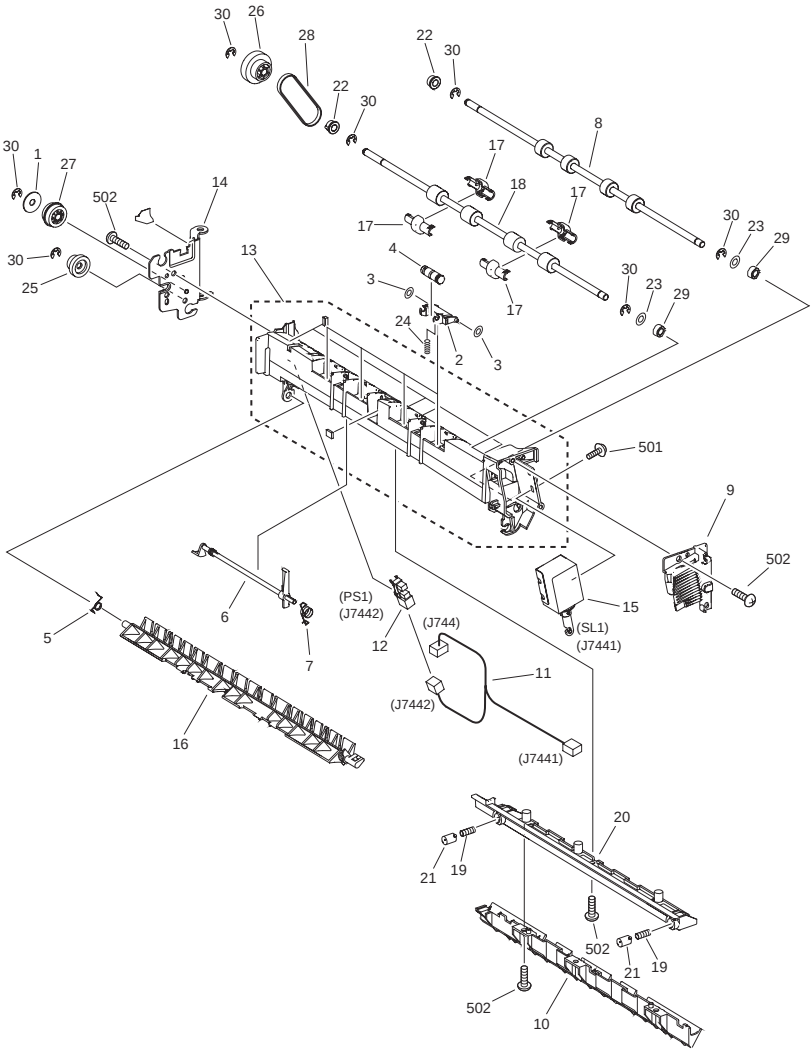


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.353	FM2-1331-080		1	2ND DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY		
1	FB5-4754-000		1	SPACER		
2	FC6-2915-000		4	HOLDER,ROLLER		
3	FC6-5061-000		8	RING		
4	FC6-4012-000		4	ROLLER, PAPER DELIVERY		
5	FC5-0974-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
6	FC5-0996-000		1	FLAG, 2ND DELIVERY SENSOR		
7	FC5-0997-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
8	FC5-1017-000		1	ROLLER, 2ND VERTICAL PATH		
9	FC5-1053-000		1	COVER, SOLENOID, 1		
10	FC5-5474-000		1	GUIDE, 2ND DELIVERY ENTRANCE		
11	FG3-3299-020		1	CABLE,2ND PAPER DELIVERY		
12	FH7-7557-020		1	IC,LG-248L1, PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PS1	
13	FL2-1201-040		1	GUIDE, 2ND PAPER DELIVERY		
14	FL2-1202-000		1	HINGE, 2ND DELIVERY		
15	FL2-1203-010		1	SOLENOID	SL1	
16	FC5-0999-030		1	FLAPPER, 1ST PAPER DELIVERY		
17	FC5-0805-000		4	ROLLER, REFORM		
18	FC5-0998-000		1	ROLLER, 2ND PAPER DELIVERY		
19	FC5-0871-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
20	FC5-0873-000		1	COVER, 2ND DELIVERY FRAME		
21	FC5-6014-000		2	CAP, SPRING		
22	FS5-1943-000		2	BUSHING		
23	FS5-6488-000		2	WASHER		
24	FS7-2859-000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
25	FU5-0076-000		1	GEAR, 24T		
26	FU5-3019-000		1	PULLEY, 30T/GEAR, 35T		
27	FU5-3020-000		1	GEAR, 24T/PULLEY, 30T		
28	XF2-4107-940		1	BELT, TIMING, COGGED		
29	XG9-0520-000		2	BEARING, BALL, MF106ZZS		
30	XD9-0136-000		7	RING, E		
501	XB1-2300-405		2	SCREW, MACH. BH, M3X4		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
502	XB4-5401-205		11	SCREW,P,M4X12		

FIGURE 354
3RD DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY

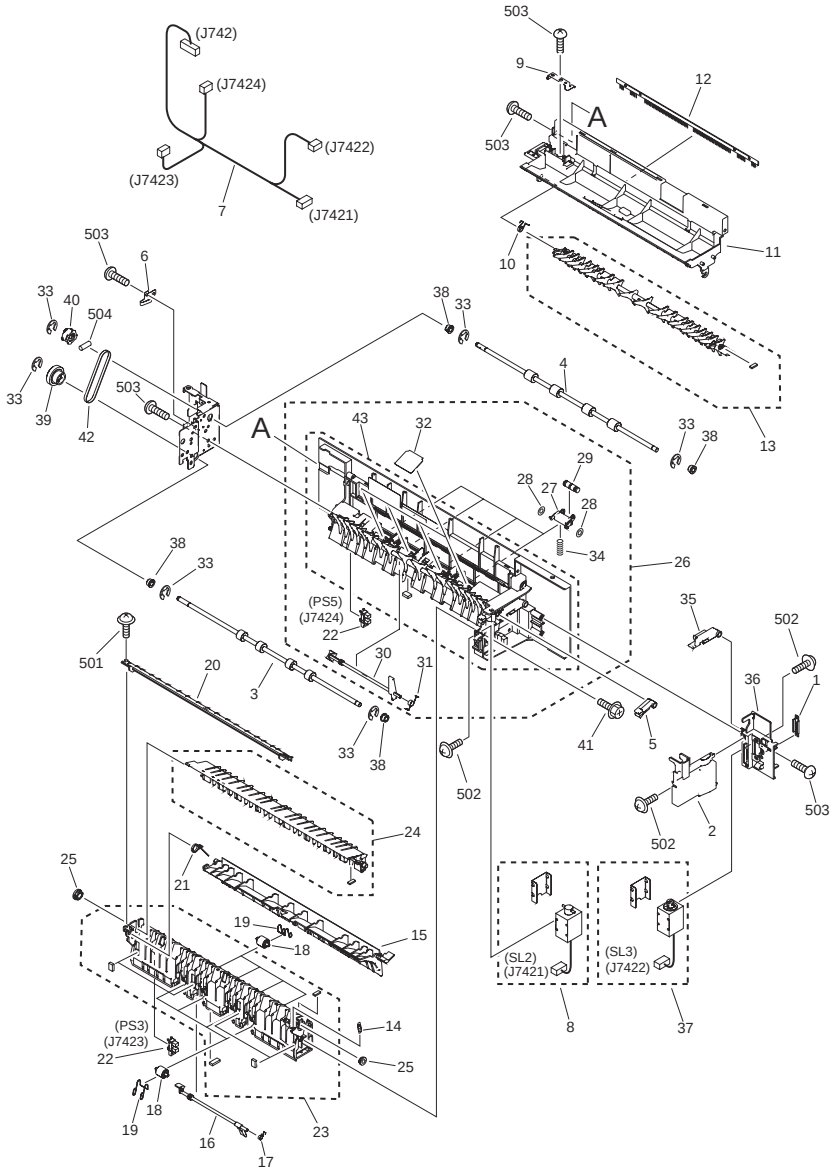


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.354	FM2-1335-160		1	3RD DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY		
1	FB5-9325-000		1	MAGNET, 3RD		
2	FC5-0872-000		1	COVER, DELIVERY SOLENOID, 2		
3	FC5-1012-000		1	ROLLER, DUPLEXING ENTRANCE		
4	FC5-1020-020		1	ROLLER, 3RD DELIVERY		
5	FC5-1023-000		1	ARM, SOLENOID, 2		
6	FC5-6006-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
7	FG3-3295-000		1	CABLE, 3RD DELIVERY		
8	FL2-1206-010		1	SOLENOID	SL2	
9	FC5-0862-000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING		
10	FC5-0977-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
11	FC5-1009-000		1	GUIDE, 3RD DELIVERY, UPPER		
12	FC5-6003-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC-CHARGE		
13	FL2-1208-030		1	FLAPPER,3RD PAPER DELIVERY		
14	FC5-0976-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
15	FC5-1003-050		1	FLAPPER, 2ND PAPER DELIVERY		
16	FC5-1005-000		1	FLAG, DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR		
17	FC5-1006-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
18	FC5-1013-000		8	ROLLER		
19	FC5-1014-000		8	SPRING		
20	FC5-6008-020		1	GUIDE, DUPLEXING ENTRANCE, 2		
21	FC5-6019-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
22	FH7-7557-020		1	IC,LG-248L1, PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PS3,PS5	
23	FL2-1207-020		1	GUIDE, DUPLEXING ENTRANCE		
24	FL2-1209-030		1	FLAPPER, REVERSE		
25	FC7-4740-000		2	BUSHING		
26	FM2-1340-030		1	3RD DELIVERY FRAME ASSEMBLY		
27	FC6-2915-000		4	HOLDER,ROLLER		
28	FC6-5061-000		8	RING		
29	FC6-4012-000		4	ROLLER, PAPER DELIVERY		
30	FC5-1010-000		1	FLAG, 3RD DELIVERY SENSOR		
31	FC5-1011-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
32	FC5-6012-010		4	SHEET,HOLDER		
33	XD9-0136-000		6	RING, E		
34	FS7-2859-000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
35	FC5-1024-000		1	ARM, SOLENOID, 3		
36	FC5-1054-000		1	COVER, DELIVERY SOLENOID, 1		
37	FL2-1205-010		1	SOLENOID	SL3	
38	FS5-1943-000		4	BUSHING		
39	FU5-3018-000		1	PULLEY, 30T/GEAR, 35T		
40	FU5-3021-000		1	PULLEY, 30T		
41	XA9-1386-000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
42	XF2-4109-240		1	BELT, TIMING, COGGED		
43	FL2-1210-020		1	FRAME, 3RD DELIVERY		
501	XB4-5300-805		2	SCREW,P,M3X8		
502	XB1-2300-405		5	SCREW, MACH. BH, M3X4		
503	XB4-5401-205		AR	SCREW,P,M4X12		
504	XD3-2200-122		1	PIN, DOWEL		
	FC5-1029-020		1	SHAFT,CONNECTING		

FIGURE 370
CASSETTE HEATER ASSEMBLY

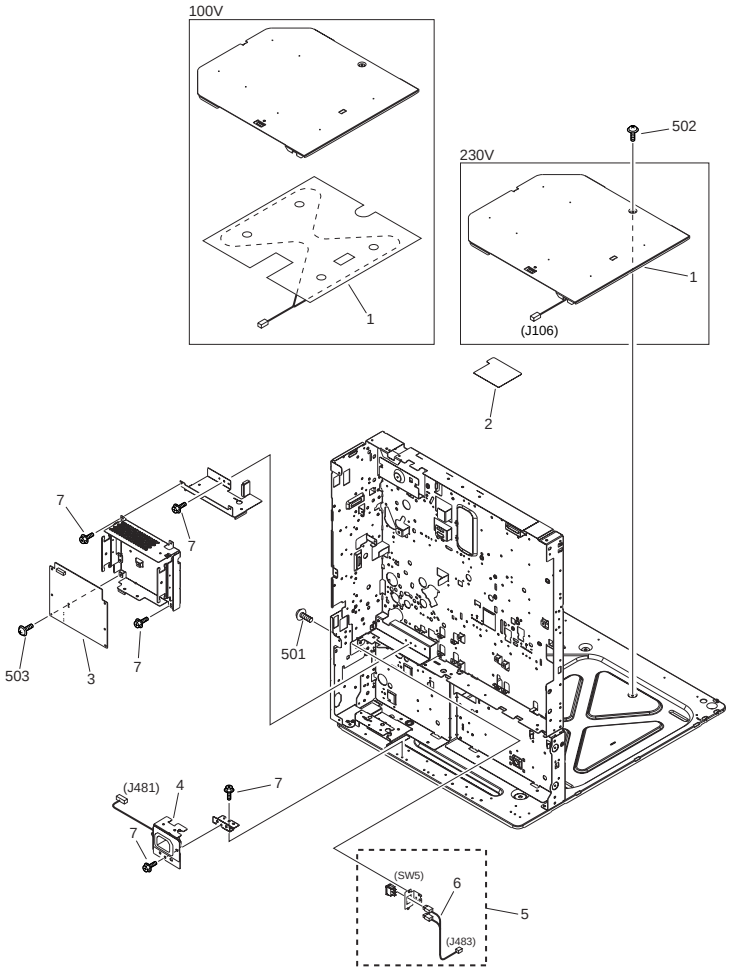
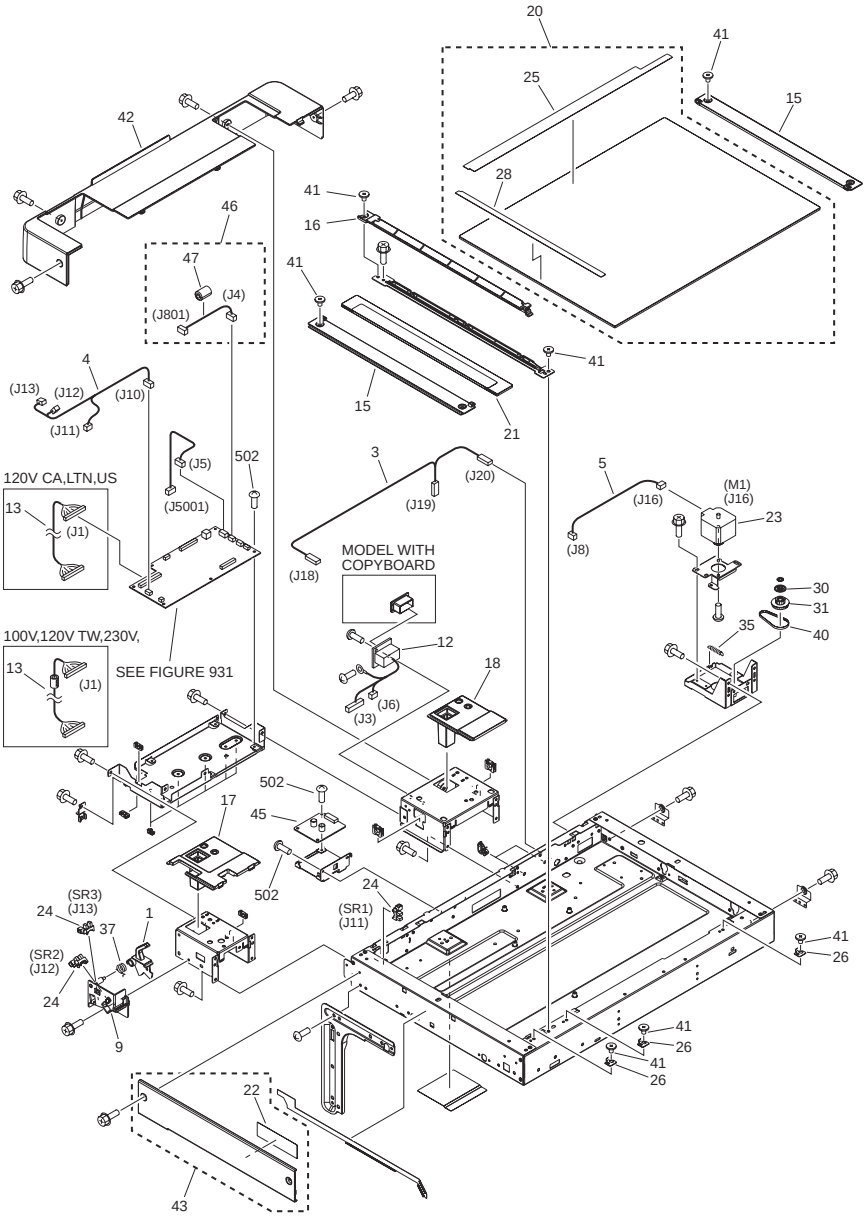


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.370	NPN		RF	CASSETTE HEATER UNIT		
1	FK2-5794-000		1	HEATER, CASSETTE	100V	
1	FK2-5795-000		1	HEATER, CASSETTE	120V	
1	FM3-3772-000		1	HEATER, CASSETTE	230V	
2	FC5-6899-000		1	COVER,HEATER		
3	FM3-5046-000		1	AC DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY	100V	
3	FM3-5047-000		1	AC DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY	120V MODEL WITHOUT CASSETTE HEATER	
3	FM3-5084-000		1	AC DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY	120V MODEL WITH CASSETTE HEATER	
3	FM3-5085-000		1	AC DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY	230V MODEL WITH CASSETTE HEATER	
3	FM3-5048-000		1	AC DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY	230V MODEL WITHOUT CASSETTE HEATER	
4	FM3-4391-000		1	OUTLET CABLE ASS'Y		
5	FM3-7052-000		1	ENVIRONMENT SWITCH ASSEMBLY		
6	FM3-5061-000		1	CABLE, ENVIRONMENT SWITCH		
7	XA9-1386-000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
501	XB6-7300-607		1	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		
502	XB1-2400-607		1	SCREW, CROSS-RECESS, FCH	100V,230V	
503	XB2-6300-607		5	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6		

FIGURE 400
READER ASSEMBLY



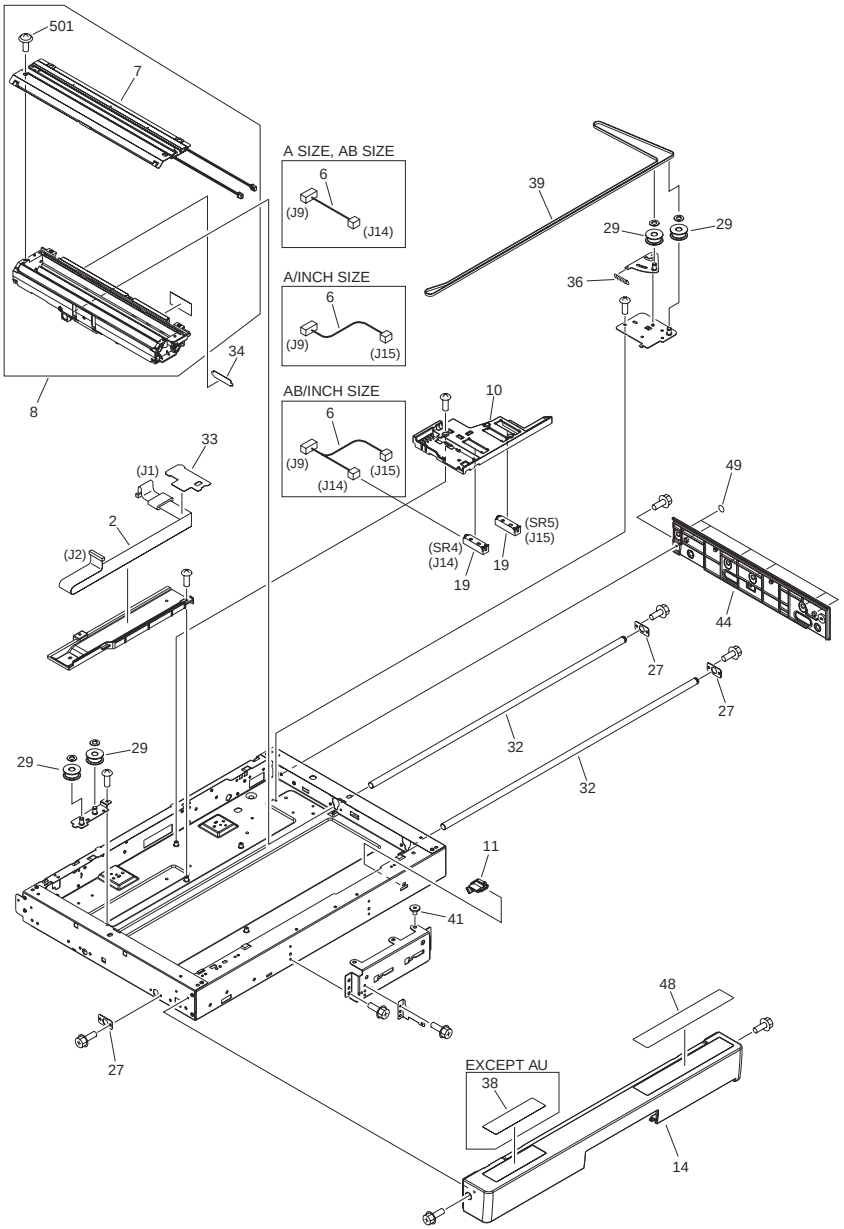

501
7
8
34
A SIZE, AB SIZE
6
(J9)
(J14)
A/INCH SIZE
6
(J9)
(J15)
AB/INCH SIZE
6
(J9)
(J15)
(J14)
39
29
29
36
10
33
(J1)
2
(J2)
(SR4)
(J14)
19
19
(SR5)
(J15)
49
44
27
27
32
32
29
29
11
41
48
EXCEPT AU
38
27
14

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.400	NPN		RF	READER ASSEMBLY		
1	FC8-6187-000		1	ARM, OPEN/CLOSE SENSOR		
2	FM3-7133-000		1	CABLE,CCD		
3	FM3-7134-000		1	CABLE,HEATER		
4	FM3-6957-000		1	CABLE,HOME&COVER OPEN SENSOR		
5	FM3-6956-000		1	CABLE,MOTOR&POWER SUPPLY		
6	FM3-7130-000		1	CABLE,PAPER SIZE SENSOR	A SIZE, AB SIZE	
6	FM3-7129-000		1	CABLE,PAPER SIZE SENSOR	A/INCH SIZE	
6	FM3-7135-000		1	CABLE,PAPER SIZE SENSOR	AB/INCH SIZE	
7	FM3-6338-000		1	CARRIAGE COVER UNIT		
8	FM4-0024-000		1	CARRIAGE UNIT		
9	FC8-6188-000		1	CASE, OPEN/CLOSE SENSOR		
10	FC8-6171-000		1	CASE, PAPER SIZE SENSOR		
11	FL2-9842-000		1	CCD MIRROR CLEANING UNIT		
12	FM3-6955-000		1	CABLE, ADF CONNECTION		
13	FK2-6309-000		1	CABLE	120V CA,LTN,US	
13	FK2-6327-000		1	CABLE ASSEMBLY	100V,120 TW,230V	
14	FC8-6177-000		1	COVER, FRONT		
15	FC8-6178-000		2	COVER, GLASS RETAINING		
16	FC8-6175-000		1	COVER, GLASS SUPPORT		
17	FC8-6185-000		1	COVER, HINGE, LEFT		
18	FC8-6183-000		1	COVER, HINGE, RIGHT		
19	FH7-7569-000		2	DOCUMENT SIZE SENSOR UNIT		
20	FL2-9839-000		1	GLASS, COPYBOARD	A SIZE	
20	FL2-9840-000		1	GLASS, COPYBOARD	A/INCH SIZE	
20	FL2-9838-000		1	GLASS, COPYBOARD	AB SIZE	
20	FL2-9841-000		1	GLASS, COPYBOARD	AB/INCH SIZE	
21	FL2-9843-000		1	GLASS, READER		
22	FL2-9845-000		1	LABEL, SERVICE		
23	FK2-6919-000		1	MOTOR, STEPPING, DC		
24	WG8-5776-000		3	PHOTOINTERRUPTER		
25	FU6-8727-000		1	PLATE, LENGTH INDEX	A SIZE	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
25	FU6-8728-000		1	PLATE, LENGTH INDEX	A/INCH SIZE	
25	FU6-8726-000		1	PLATE, LENGTH INDEX	AB SIZE	
25	FU6-8729-000		1	PLATE, LENGTH INDEX	AB/INCH SIZE	
26	FC8-6176-000		3	PLATE, SCANNER GLASS RETAINING		
27	FC8-6170-000		3	PLATE, SHAFT RETAINING		
28	FU6-8731-000		1	PLATE, WIDTH INDEX	A SIZE	
28	FU6-8732-000		1	PLATE, WIDTH INDEX	A/INCH SIZE	
28	FU6-8730-000		1	PLATE, WIDTH INDEX	AB SIZE	
28	FU6-8733-000		1	PLATE, WIDTH INDEX	AB/INCH SIZE	
29	FC8-6163-000		4	PULLEY		
30	FC8-6180-000		1	PULLEY		
31	FU5-3710-000		1	PULLEY, 24T/41T		
32	FC8-6169-000		2	SHAFT, CARRIAGE DRIVE		
33	FC8-6167-000		1	SHEET, CCD CABLE RETAINING		
34	FC8-6202-000		1	SHEET, CCD CABLE RETAINING		
35	FU7-2596-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
36	FU7-2597-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
37	FC8-6189-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
38	FU6-8059-000		1	LABEL, CLEANING POSITION	CN	
38	FU5-8853-000		1	LABEL, CLEANING POSITION	EXCEPT JP,AU,CN,KR,TW	
38	FU5-8854-000		1	LABEL, CLEANING POSITION	JP	
38	FU6-8060-000		1	LABEL, CLEANING POSITION	KR	
38	FU6-8061-000		1	LABEL, CLEANING POSITION	TW	
39	XF2-4668-040		1	BELT, TIMING		
40	XF2-4606-740		1	BELT, TIMING, COGGED		
41	XA9-1415-000		AR	SCREW, FLAT HEAD, M4		
42	FC8-6196-000		1	COVER, READER, REAR		
43	FC8-6197-000		1	COVER, READER, LEFT		
44	FC8-6198-000		1	COVER, READER, RIGHT		
45	FM3-7131-000		1	LED DRIVER PCB ASSEMBLY		
46	FM3-7132-000		1	CABLE, LED DRIVER		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
47	WE8-5600-000		1	FERRITE CORE, RING TYPE		
48	FU5-8205-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Canadian French	
48	FU5-8209-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	French	
48	FU5-8210-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	German	
48	FU5-8211-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Italian	
48	FU5-8203-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Japanese	
48	FU5-8217-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Korean	
48	FU5-8206-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Portuguese	
48	FU5-8215-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Simplified Chinese	
48	FU5-8207-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Spanish	
48	FU5-8216-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	Traditional Chinese	
48	FU5-8208-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	UK English	
48	FU5-8204-000		1	LABEL, COPY INHIBITED	US English	
49	FC6-4513-000		6	SEAL		
501	XB6-7300-606		AR	SCREW, TP, M3X6		
502	XB1-1300-607		9	SCREW, PH3X6 (S)		

FIGURE 460
LASER SCANNER ASSEMBLY

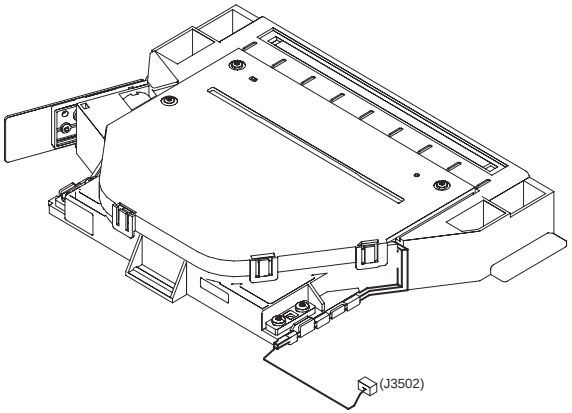


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.460	FM3-5041-000		1	LASER SCANNER ASSEMBLY	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
Fig.460	FM3-5464-000		1	LASER SCANNER ASSEMBLY	iR3225 Series	

FIGURE 500
DRUM CARTRIDGE ASSEMBLY

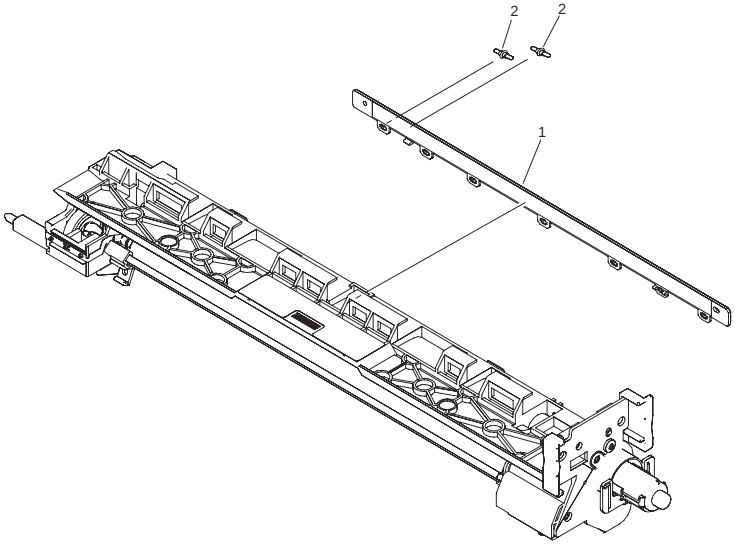
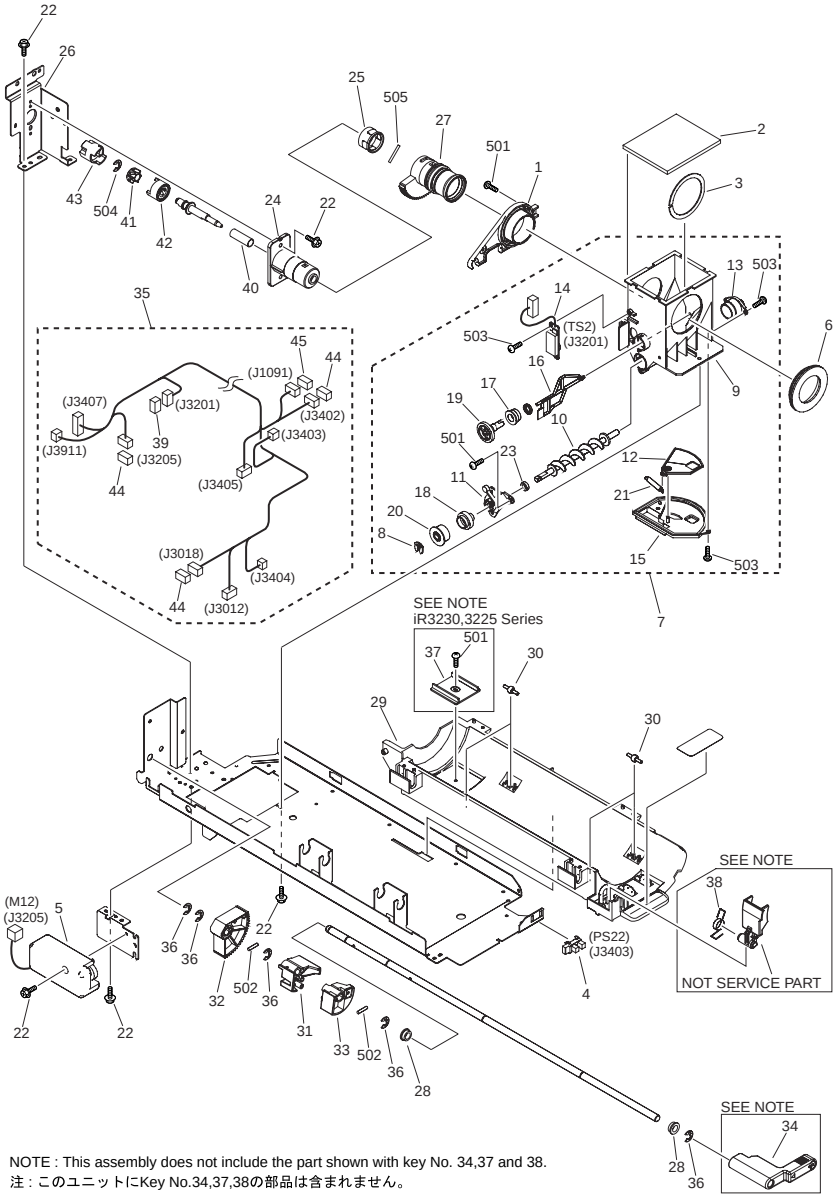


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.500	NPN		RF	DRUM CARTRIDGE ASSEMBLY		
1	FL2-0322-000		1	MOUNT,ROWEL		
2	FC7-2665-000		13	ROWEL		

FIGURE 621
HOPPER ASSEMBLY



NOTE : This assembly does not include the part shown with key No. 34,37 and 38.
注 : このユニットにKey No.34,37,38の部品は含まれません。

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.621	FM3-4396-000		1	HOPPER ASSEMBLY		
1	FC5-1208-000		1	HOLDER, GUIDE		
2	FC5-1209-000		1	COVER, HOPPER		
3	FC5-1221-000		1	RING, SEAL		
4	FK2-0149-000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1252(C6)	PS22	
5	FK2-0379-000		1	MOTOR, DC	M12	
6	FL2-0309-000		1	BASE, SEAL		
7	FM2-0290-000		1	SUB HOPPER UNIT		
8	FA3-8727-000		1	RETAINING RING		
9	FC5-1214-000		1	HOPPER, SUB		
10	FC5-1210-000		1	SCREW		
11	FC5-1211-000		1	FLANGE, SCREW		
12	FC5-1265-000		1	SHUTTER		
13	FC5-1274-000		1	CAP, SCREW		
14	FK2-0358-000		1	SENSOR, TONER	TS2	
15	FL2-0307-000		1	MOUNT, SHUTTER		
16	FL2-0313-000		1	ROD, STIRRING		
17	FU5-1034-000		1	BUSHING		
18	FU5-0108-000		1	GEAR, 18T		
19	FU5-0109-000		1	GEAR, 22T		
20	FU5-0115-000		1	GEAR, 17T		
21	FU5-2089-000		1	SPRING		
22	XA9-1386-000		9	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
23	XG9-0111-000		1	SEAL, OIL		
24	FC8-1117-000		1	BUSHING		
25	FC8-1113-000		1	BUSHING		
26	FL2-0295-000		1	MOUNT, BUSHING		
27	FL2-8441-000		1	HOLDER, RELEASE		
28	FA9-2112-000		2	BUSHING, PL		
29	FC8-1130-000		1	BASE, BOTTLE		
30	FC5-1269-000		4	ROLLER		
31	FC8-1144-000		1	CAM, BOTTLE SLIDE		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
32	FC5-1217-000		1	GEAR		
33	FC8-1140-000		1	CAM, BOTTLE SLIDE		
34	FC8-1126-000		1	LEVER, SET	SEE NOTE	
35	FM3-5076-000		1	CABLE, HOPPER		
36	XD9-0137-010		5	RING, E		
37	FC6-2899-000		1	BASE, BOTTLE	SEE NOTE iR3230,3225 Series	
38	FU6-2012-000		1	SPRING	SEE NOTE	
39	VS1-7177-006		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
40	FU7-2256-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
41	FC8-1110-000		1	COUPLING, INNER		
42	FC8-1111-000		1	COUPLING, DRIVE		
43	FC8-1112-000		1	COUPLING, MOTOR		
44	VS1-7177-002		3	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
45	VS1-7177-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
501	XB4-5300-607		6	SCREW,P,M3X6		
502	XD3-2300-142		2	PIN, DOWEL		
503	XB4-5300-807		6	SCREW, P, M3X8		
504	XD2-1100-502		1	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		
505	XD3-2200-162		1	PIN, PARALLEL		

FIGURE 640
DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY

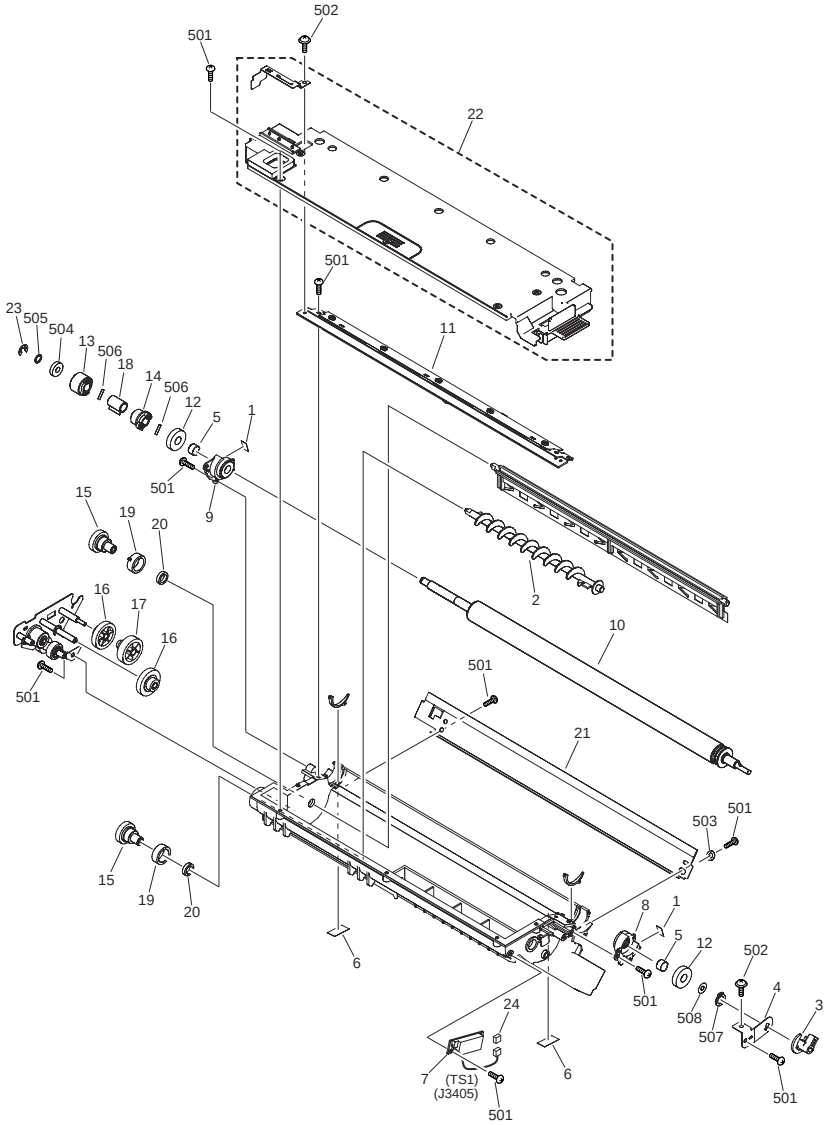
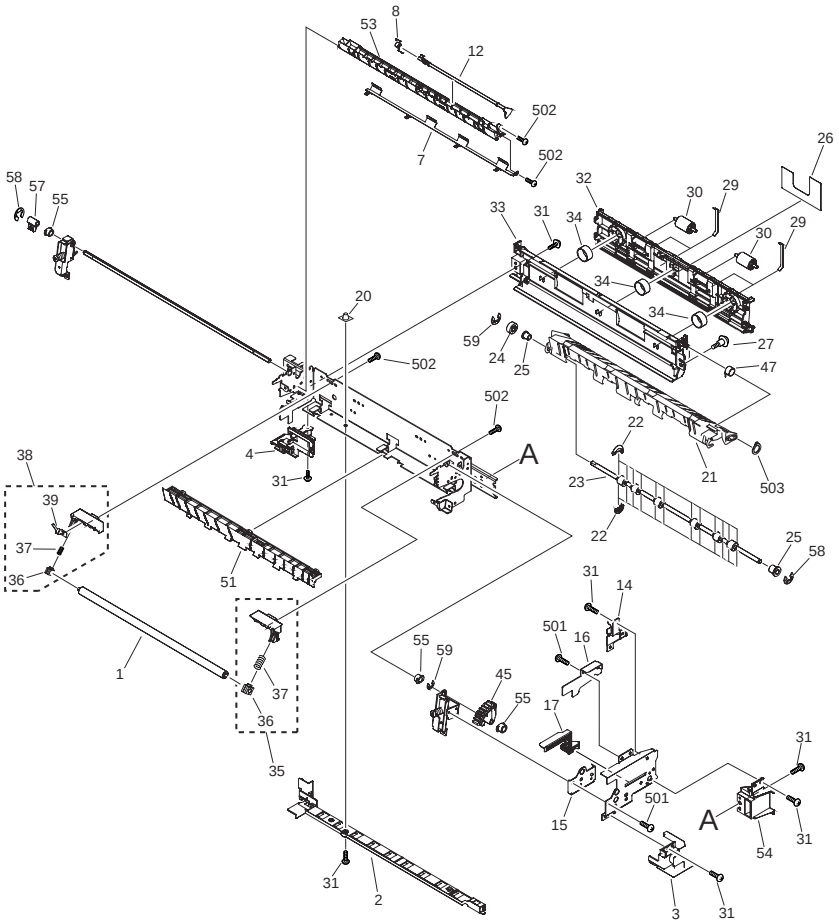


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.640	FM2-0287-020		1	DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY		
1	FC6-5050-000		2	SHEET		
2	FC5-1239-000		1	SCREW		
3	FC5-1246-000		1	GUIDE, SLEEVE, FRONT		
4	FC5-1249-000		1	PLATE, ANGLE ADJUSTMENT		
5	XG9-0491-000		2	BEARING, BALL, NSK P0 16MM		
6	FC6-2937-000		2	TAPE,PLATE END SEAL		
7	FK2-0358-000		1	SENSOR, TONER	TS1	
8	FC5-1254-000		1	HOLDER, SLEEVE, FRONT		
9	FC5-1247-000		1	HOLDER, SLEEVE, REAR		
10	FL2-0376-000		1	DEVELOPING CYLINDER UNIT		
11	FM2-0289-000		1	BLADE UNIT		
12	FS5-6448-000		2	ROLLER, 1		
13	FU5-0110-000		1	GEAR, 20T		
14	FU5-0111-000		1	GEAR, 16T		
15	FU5-0112-000		2	GEAR, 24T		
16	FU5-0113-000		2	GEAR, 31T/13T		
17	FU5-0114-000		1	GEAR, 31T/13T		
18	FU5-1026-000		1	BUSHING		
19	FU5-1031-000		2	BUSHING		
20	X71-9310-000		2	SEAL, OIL		
21	FL2-0304-030		1	GUIDE , UPPER TRANSFER		
22	FL2-0320-000		1	COVER,TOP		
23	XD9-0136-000		1	RING, E		
24	VS1-7177-006		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
501	XB4-5300-607		17	SCREW,P,M3X6		
502	XB6-7300-607		2	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		
503	XD1-1104-634		1	WASHER,COP		
504	XG9-0521-000		1	BEARING, BALL, MR126ZZ		
505	XD1-1106-215		1	WASHER,COP		
506	XD3-2200-142		2	PIN, PARALLEL		
507	XD2-2100-802		1	GRIP RING (D=8)		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
508	XD1-1108-215		1	WASHER,COP		

FIGURE 810
FIXING ASSEMBLY



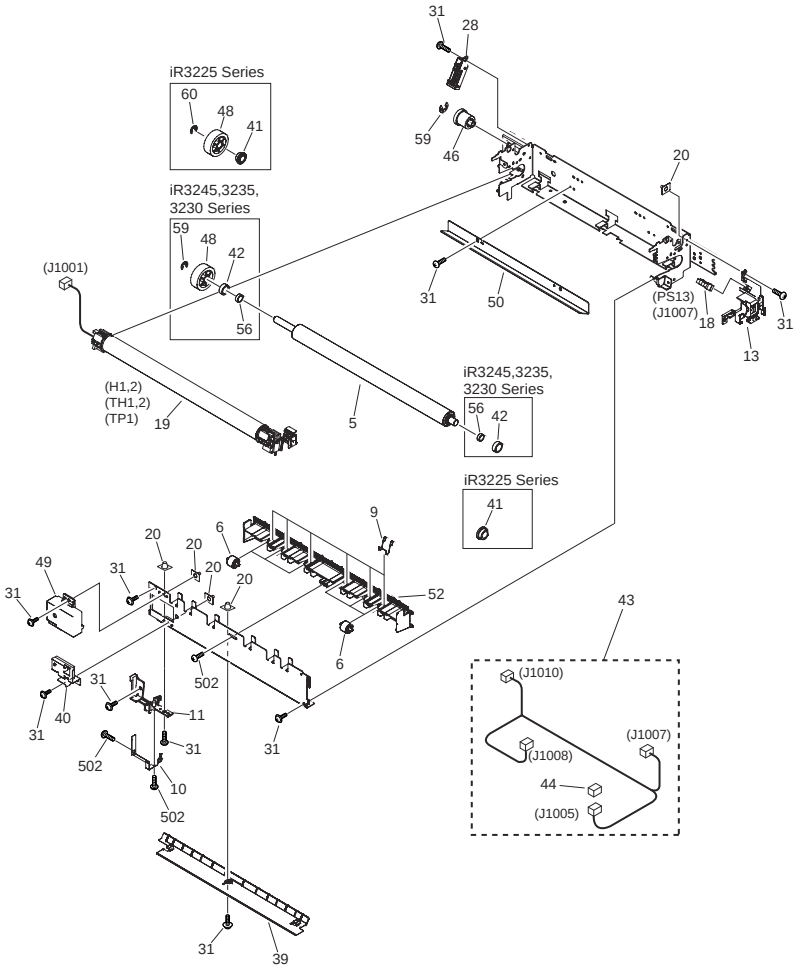

iR3225 Series
60
48
41
iR3245,3235,
3230 Series
59
48
42
56
(J1001)
(H1,2)
(TH1,2)
(TP1)
19
5
iR3245,3235,
3230 Series
56
42
iR3225 Series
41
31
28
59
46
20
31
50
(PS13)
(J1007)
18
31
13
9
6
20
20
20
20
49
31
31
52
6
502
31
40
31
11
31
502
10
502
31
39
43
(J1010)
(J1007)
(J1008)
44
(J1005)

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.810	FM3-6165-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	100V iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
Fig.810	FM3-7061-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	100V iR3225 Series	
Fig.810	FM3-7066-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	120V iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
Fig.810	FM3-7063-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	120V iR3225 Series	
Fig.810	FM3-7067-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	230V iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
Fig.810	FM3-7064-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	230V iR3225 Series	
Fig.810	FM3-9438-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	230V CN iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
Fig.810	FM3-9437-000		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	230V CN iR3225 Series	
1	FB5-4931-000		1	ROLLER, FIXING HEATSINK		
2	FC5-1131-000		1	GUIDE, FIXING CABLE, LOWER		
3	FC6-2920-010		1	COVER, AC CONNECTOR		
4	FC5-1351-000		1	GUARD, FILM SENSOR		
5	FC7-0242-000		1	ROLLER, PRESSURE	iR3225 Series	
5	FC5-7207-010		1	ROLLER, PRESSURE	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
6	FC5-1358-000		6	COLLAR, FIXING DELIVERY		
7	FC5-1360-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE		
8	FC5-1367-000		1	SPRING,SENSOR LEVER		
9	FC5-1368-000		6	SPRING		
10	FC5-1383-000		1	BRUSH, FILM BIAS		
11	FC5-1384-000		1	GUIDE, FILM BIAS		
12	FC5-7160-000		1	LEVER, SENSOR		
13	FC5-1341-010		1	GUIDE, FIXING CABLE, FRONT		
14	FC6-2924-000		1	GUIDE, RELEASE		
15	FC6-2925-000		1	PLATE, PRESSURE ADJUST, SMALL		
16	FC6-2927-000		1	PLATE, RACK AUXILIARY		
17	FC6-2929-000		1	RACK, PRESSURE RELEASE		
18	FK2-0149-000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1252(C6)	PS13	
19	FM3-6166-000		1	FIXING FILM UNIT	100V iR3245,3235,3230 Series H1,2 TH1,2 TP1	
19	FM3-7062-000		1	FIXING FILM UNIT	100V iR3225 Series H1,2 TH1,2 TP1	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
19	FM3-7070-000		1	FIXING FILM UNIT	120V iR3245,3235,3230 Series H1,2 TH1,2 TP1	
19	FM3-7068-000		1	FIXING FILM UNIT	120V iR3225 Series H1,2 TH1,2 TP1	
19	FM3-7071-000		1	FIXING FILM UNIT	230V iR3245,3235,3230 Series H1,2 TH1,2 TP1	
19	FM3-7069-000		1	FIXING FILM UNIT	230V iR3225 Series H1,2 TH1,2 TP1	
20	FC6-5085-000		6	CAP,DUST		
21	FC5-1356-000		1	GUIDE, FIXING DELIVERY, LOWER		
22	FC6-2941-000		24	ROLLER		
23	FC6-2943-000		1	ROLLER, FIXING DELIVERY		
24	FU6-0023-000		1	GEAR, 15T		
25	RS1-1087-000		2	BUSHING		
26	FC5-0655-000		1	LABEL, HIGH TEMP. CAUTION		
27	FS1-9009-020		1	SCREW,STEPPED,M3		
28	FM3-7060-000		1	RESISTOR HOLDER MOUNTING UNIT	iR3225 Series	
28	FM2-1777-000		1	RESISTOR HOLDER MOUNTING UNIT	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
29	FC6-4015-000		4	SPRING, LEAF		
30	FC6-5055-000		2	ROLLER, DUPLEXING		
31	XA9-0702-000		21	SCREW, W/WASHER, M3X6		
32	FC5-0697-000		1	GUIDE, DUPLEXING FEEDER, UPPER		
33	FC5-7156-000		1	MOUNT, DUPLEXING FEEDER		
34	FU5-2073-000		3	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
35	FM2-0299-000		1	CLEANING ROLLER MOUNT UNIT,F.	iR3225 Series	
35	FM2-1775-020		1	CLEANING ROLLER MOUNT UNIT,F.	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
36	FS5-1945-000		2	BUSHING		
37	FU5-2102-000		2	SPRING		
38	FM3-7059-000		1	CLEANING ROLLER MOUNT UNIT,R.	iR3225 Series	
38	FM2-1776-040		1	CLEANING ROLLER MOUNT UNIT,R.	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
39	FC5-1340-000		1	GUIDE, INLET		
40	FM2-2769-000		1	FIXING SPEED SENSOR PCB UNIT		
41	RS5-1446-000		2	BUSHING	iR3225 Series	
42	FC5-7182-000		2	HOUSING,BEARING	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
43	FM3-5058-000		1	CABLE, FIXING		
44	VS1-7177-012		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
45	FC6-2928-000		1	GEAR, 36T		
46	FU5-0129-000		1	GEAR, 17T/19T	iR3225 Series	
46	FU6-0022-000		1	GEAR, 15T/20T	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
47	FU6-2021-000		1	SPRING, FIXING GUIDE, LOWER		
48	FU5-0127-000		1	GEAR, 27T	iR3225 Series	
48	FU6-0021-000		1	GEAR, 27T	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
49	FC6-4627-000		1	COVER, SENSOR		
50	FC5-1346-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE	iR3225 Series	
50	FC5-7228-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
51	FC5-1348-000		1	GUIDE, FIXING INLET		
52	FC5-1353-000		1	GUIDE, FIXING DELIVERY, UPPER		
53	FC5-1382-000		1	GUIDE, FIXING DELIVERY FIX, L.		
54	FC5-1343-000		1	COVER,FIXING FRAME		
55	FU5-1453-000		3	BUSHING		
56	XG9-0387-000		2	BEARING, BALL, L-1680HH LY13	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
57	FC5-1345-000		1	LEVER, PRESSURE		
58	XD9-0134-000		2	RING, E		
59	XD9-0136-000		4	RING, E		
60	XD9-0137-010		1	RING, E	iR3225 Series	
501	XB1-2300-409		6	SCREW, MACHINE M3X4		
502	XB4-5300-607		5	SCREW,P,M3X6		
503	XD2-2100-602		1	GRIP RING (D=6)		

FIGURE 900
CONTROLLER BOX ASSEMBLY

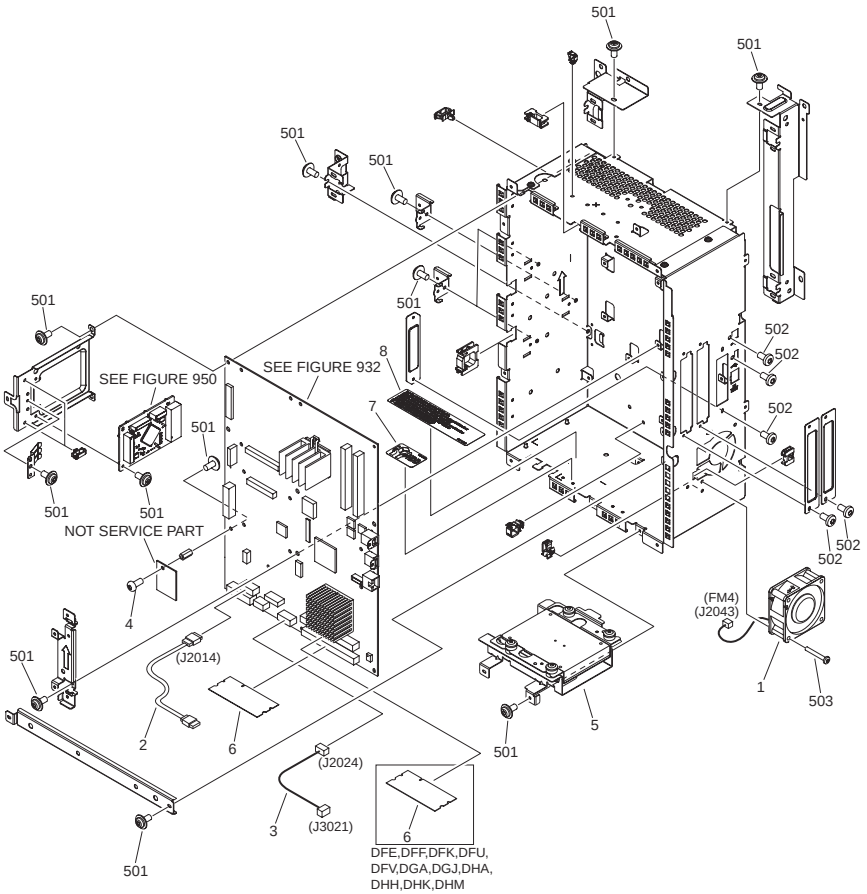


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.900	NPN		RF	CONTROLLER BOX ASSEMBLY		
1	FK2-6691-000		1	FAN	FM4	
2	FK2-6693-000		1	CABLE, HDD INTERFACE		
3	FK2-6698-000		1	CABLE, HDD POWER SUPPLY		
4	XA9-0465-000		1	SCREW, W/WASHER, M3X4		
5	FM3-4403-000		1	HARD DISC DRIVE UNIT	JP	
5	FM3-5642-000		1	HARD DISC DRIVE UNIT	CN,KR,TW	
5	FM3-5634-000		1	HARD DISC DRIVE UNIT	EXCEPT JP,CN,KR,TW	
6	WA7-5211-000		2	DIMM, D2X533BWS512EBA6, 512MB		
7	FS7-8107-000		1	LABEL, HD WARNING		
8	FS7-8143-020		1	LABEL,COUNTER		
501	XB6-7300-607		AR	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		
502	XB1-2300-607		8	SCREW, BH3X6		
503	XB1-2403-006		2	SCREW, BINDING HEAD MACHINE,		

FIGURE 910
MAIN POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY

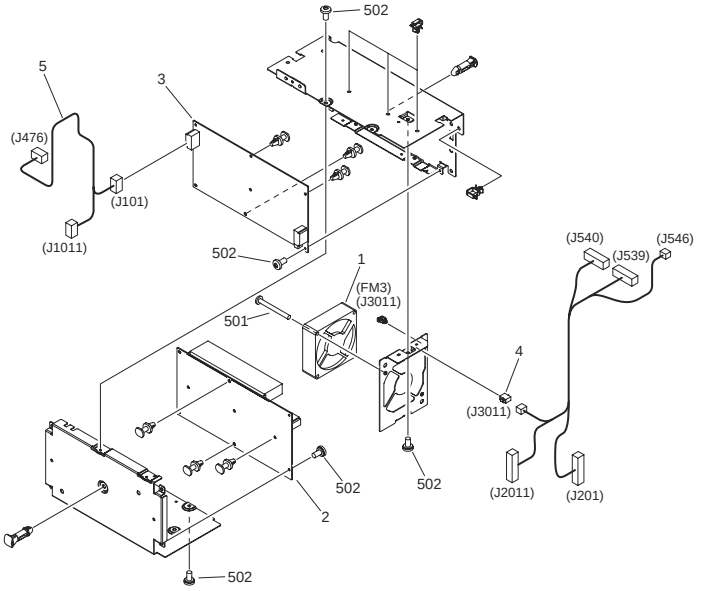


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.910	FM3-6145-000		1	MAIN POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY		
1	FK2-0360-000		1	FAN	FM3	
2	FK2-6317-000		1	24V POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY		
3	FK2-6319-000		1	12V POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY		
4	VS1-7177-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
5	FM3-5057-000		1	CABLE, AC POWER SUPPLY		
501	XB1-2403-007		2	SCREW, BH 4X30 (S)		
502	XB6-7300-607		14	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		

FIGURE 930
DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY

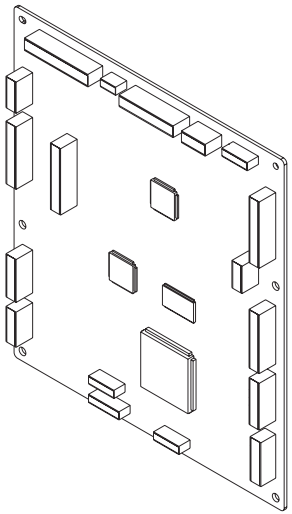


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.930	FM3-5051-000		1	DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	iR3245,3235,3230 Series	
Fig.930	FM3-5052-000		1	DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	iR3225 Series	
IC23	FK2-1773-000		1	IC,TC200GO2EFG-1031,GATE ARRAY		
IC3	FK2-6450-000		1	IC, FSA0AC211AA		
IC17	FK2-6321-000		1	IC, R5F61638N50FPV-FK26321,MCU		

FIGURE 931
READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY

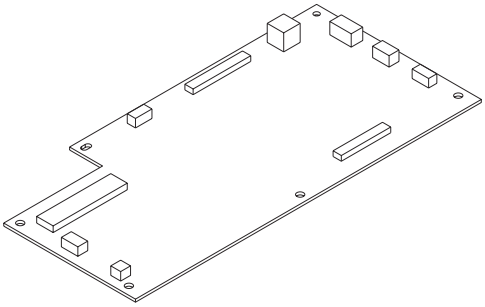


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.931	FM3-6954-000		1	READER CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY		
IC5	FK2-0349-000		1	IC,MB87M4430,ASIC		
IC6	FK2-6609-000		1	IC, MB87M8290PMC1-G-BNDE1		

FIGURE 932
MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY

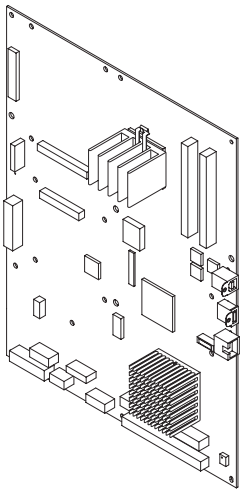


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.932	FM4-1245-000		1	MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	iR3225 Series (25ppm)	
Fig.932	FM4-1246-000		1	MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	iR3230 Series (30ppm)	
Fig.932	FM4-1247-000		1	MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	iR3235 Series (40ppm)	
Fig.932	FM4-1248-000		1	MAIN CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	iR3245 Series (45ppm)	
IC15	FK2-4903-000		1	IC, MB87S4030, ASIC, FUJITSU		
IC45	FK2-5758-000		1	IC, UPD 808000F1-641-RN4-A		
IC51	FK2-6692-000		1	IC, LE80578EG800C		

FIGURE 950
IMAGE PCB ASSEMBLY

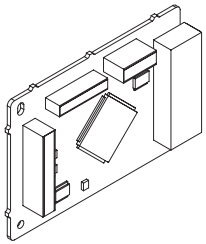


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.950	FM3-7395-000		1	IMAGE PCB ASSEMBLY		
IC3	FK2-5788-000		1	IC, T6TH5EFG-00001		

FIGURE 994
RELAY DELIVERY CONT. PCB ASS'Y

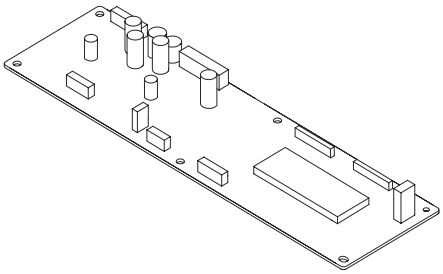


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.994	FM3-1319-000		1	DELIVERY CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y		
IC10	FH4-6204-000		1	IC, S1L50993F22H000,GATE-ARRAY		

FIGURE A01
DADF MOUNTING HARDWARE (ADF model)

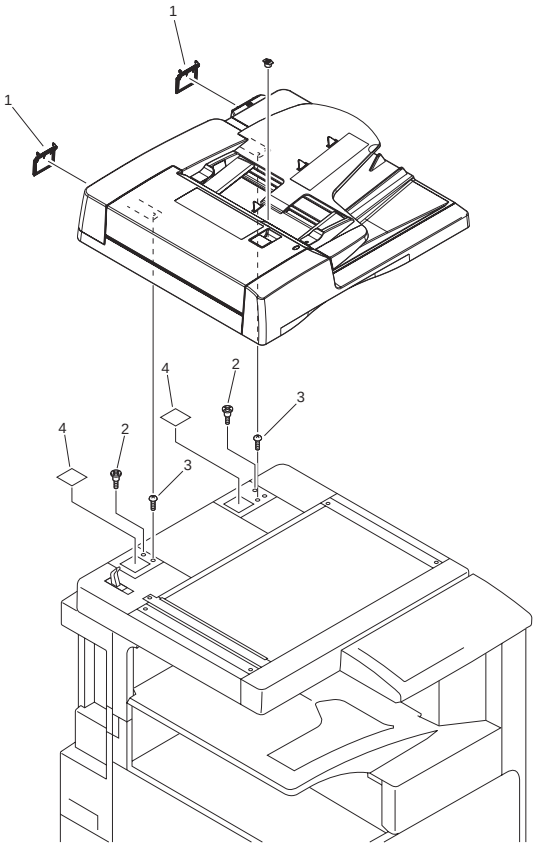


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A01	NPN		RF	DADF MOUNTING HARDWARE	ADF model	
1	FC8-6312-000		2	COVER, HINGE BLANKING		
2	FU5-9139-000		2	SCREW, STEPPED, M5X6		
3	FU5-9140-000		2	SCREW, STEPPED, M4X10		
4	FC5-4427-000		2	SHEET, BLANKING		

FIGURE A10
INTERNAL COMPONENTS (ADF model)

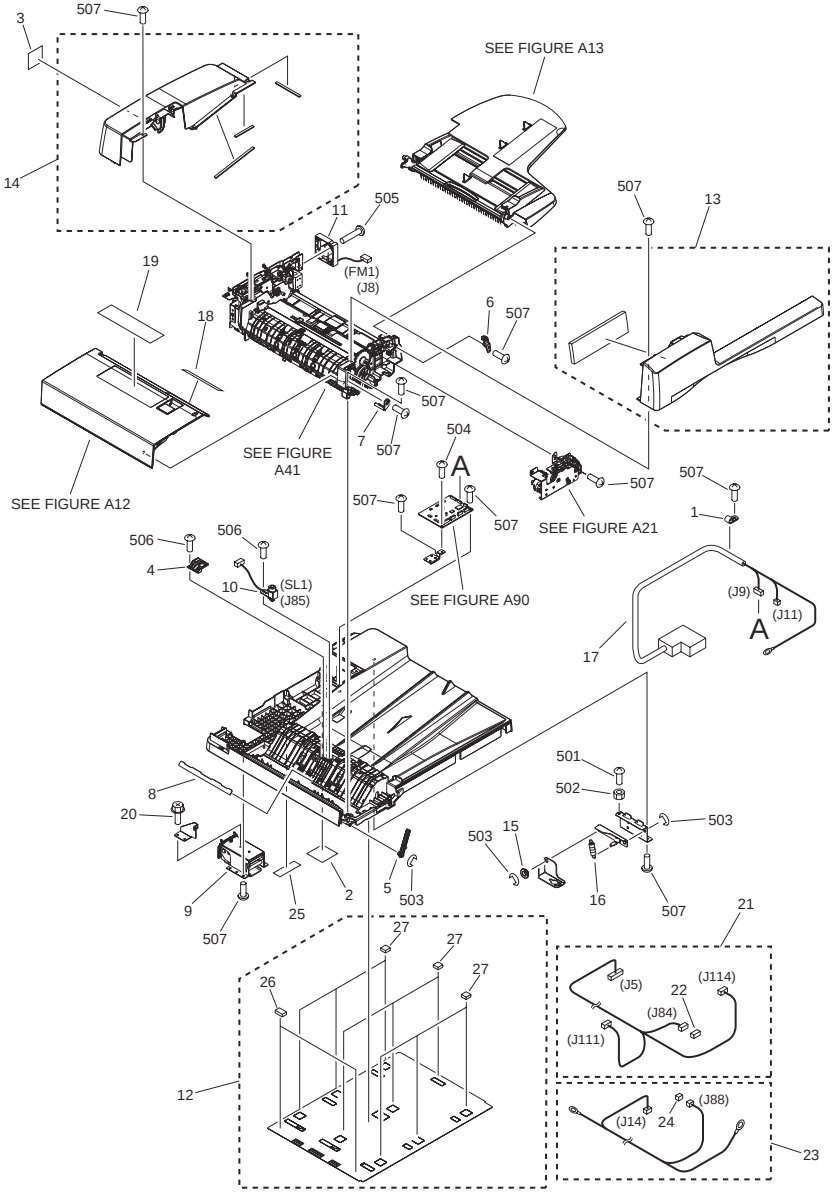


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A10	NPN		RF	INTERNAL COMPONENTS	ADF model	
1	WT2-0255-000		1	WIRE CLAMP		
2	FC5-4399-000		1	LABEL, HINGE CAUTION		
3	FC5-4400-000		1	LABEL, HINGE CAUTION		
4	FC8-6311-000		1	COVER, STAMP		
5	FC8-6330-000		1	LEVER, READ 1 ESTRANGEMENT		
6	FC8-6387-000		1	HOLDER, TRAY SUPPORT		
7	FC8-6388-000		1	HOLDER, FEEDER SHAFT		
8	FC8-6405-000		1	SHEET, READ 2 LEAD		
9	FC8-6420-000		1	HINGE, LEFT		
10	FK2-0216-000		1	SOLENOID	SL1,J85	
11	FK2-6872-000		1	FAN	FM1,J8	
12	FL2-9945-000		1	COVER, COPYBOARD		
13	FL2-9946-000		1	COVER, FRONT		
14	FL2-9947-000		1	COVER, REAR		
15	FU5-1173-000		1	BUSHING		
16	FU7-2651-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
17	FM3-6929-000		1	CABLE, I/F	J9,J11	
18	FU6-8747-000		1	LABEL, DOCUMENT SIZE	A SIZE	
18	FU6-8746-000		1	LABEL, DOCUMENT SIZE	A/B SIZE	
18	FU6-8748-000		1	LABEL, DOCUMENT SIZE	A/INCH SIZE	
18	FU6-8749-000		1	LABEL, DOCUMENT SIZE	AB/INCH/K SIZE	
19	FU6-8744-000		1	LABEL, PROHIBITION DOCUMENT	EUR	
19	FU6-8745-000		1	LABEL, PROHIBITION DOCUMENT	EXCEPT EUR/JP	
19	FU6-8743-000		1	LABEL, PROHIBITION DOCUMENT	JP	
20	XA9-0732-000		6	SCREW,RS,M4		
21	FM3-6935-000		1	CABLE, BASE	J5,J84,J111,J114	
22	VS1-7177-002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
23	FM3-6936-000		1	CABLE, REG. MOTOR	J14,J88	
24	VS1-7177-004		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
25	FC5-4397-000		1	LABEL, HINGE CAUTION	EXCEPT JP	
25	FC5-4396-000		1	LABEL, HINGE CAUTION	JP	

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
26	FC8-6425-000		2	SPONGE, COPYBOARD PANEL		
27	FC5-4295-010		9	SHEET,COPYBOARD COVER,LARGE		
501	XB1-2401-406		1	BINDING HEAD MACHINE SCREW		
502	XB7-2300-405		1	NUT,S		
503	XD2-1100-402		3	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		
504	XB1-2400-609		1	SCREW,NACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X6		
506	XB4-5301-005		2	SCREW,P,M3X10		
507	XB4-5401-205		25	SCREW,P,M4X12		

FIGURE A11
BASE ASSEMBLY (ADF model)

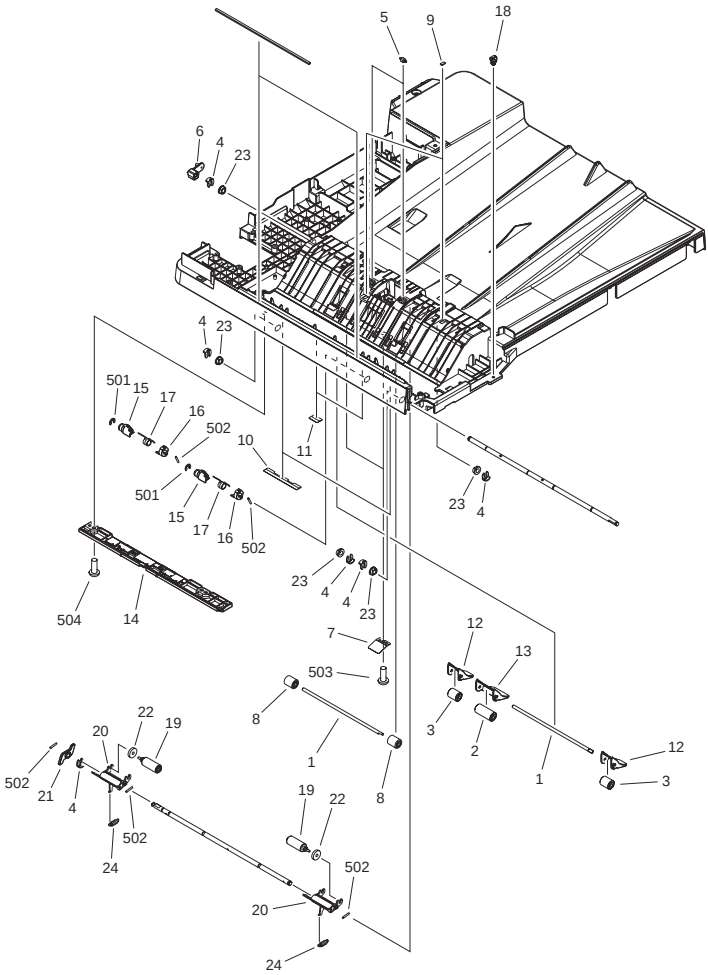


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A11	NPN		RF	BASE ASSEMBLY	ADF model	
1	FC5-4285-030		2	SHAFT, PAPER FEED ROLLER		
2	FC5-4286-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER FEED, 1		
3	FC5-4287-000		2	ROLLER, PAPER FEED, 2		
4	FC5-4425-000		6	CLIP		
5	FC6-8973-000		2	ROLLER, PLATEN		
6	FC8-6319-000		1	HOLDER, SOLENOID		
7	FC8-6322-000		2	SPRING, LEAF		
8	FC8-6404-000		2	ROLLER, READ 2 PINCH		
9	FC8-6402-000		2	DAMPER, SENSOR LEVER		
10	FC8-6422-000		2	SHEET, PAPER FEED		
11	FC8-6423-000		2	SHEET, PAPER FEED		
12	FL2-9933-000		2	HOLDER, ROLLER, SMALL		
13	FL2-9934-000		1	HOLDER, ROLLER, LARGE		
14	FL2-9935-010		1	COVER, BASE, LOWER		
15	FC8-6331-000		2	LEVER, READ 1 PRESSURE		
16	FC8-6332-000		2	COLLAR, READ 1 PRESSURE		
17	FU7-2653-000		2	SPRING, TORSION		
18	WT2-5694-000		1	CLIP CLAMP, WIRE		
19	FC8-6316-000		2	ROLLER, DELIVERY		
20	FC8-6317-000		2	HOLDER, DELIVERY ROLLER		
21	FC8-6318-000		1	CAM, DELIVERY ESTRANGEMENT		
22	FC8-6419-000		2	DAMPER, DELIVERY		
23	FU5-1168-000		5	BUSHING		
24	FU7-2652-000		2	SPRING, TENSION		
501	XD2-1100-402		2	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		
502	XD3-2200-122		5	PIN, DOWEL		
503	XB4-5301-005		2	SCREW,P,M3X10		
504	XB4-5401-205		2	SCREW,P,M4X12		

FIGURE A12
PAPER PICK-UP COVER ASSEMBLY (ADF model)

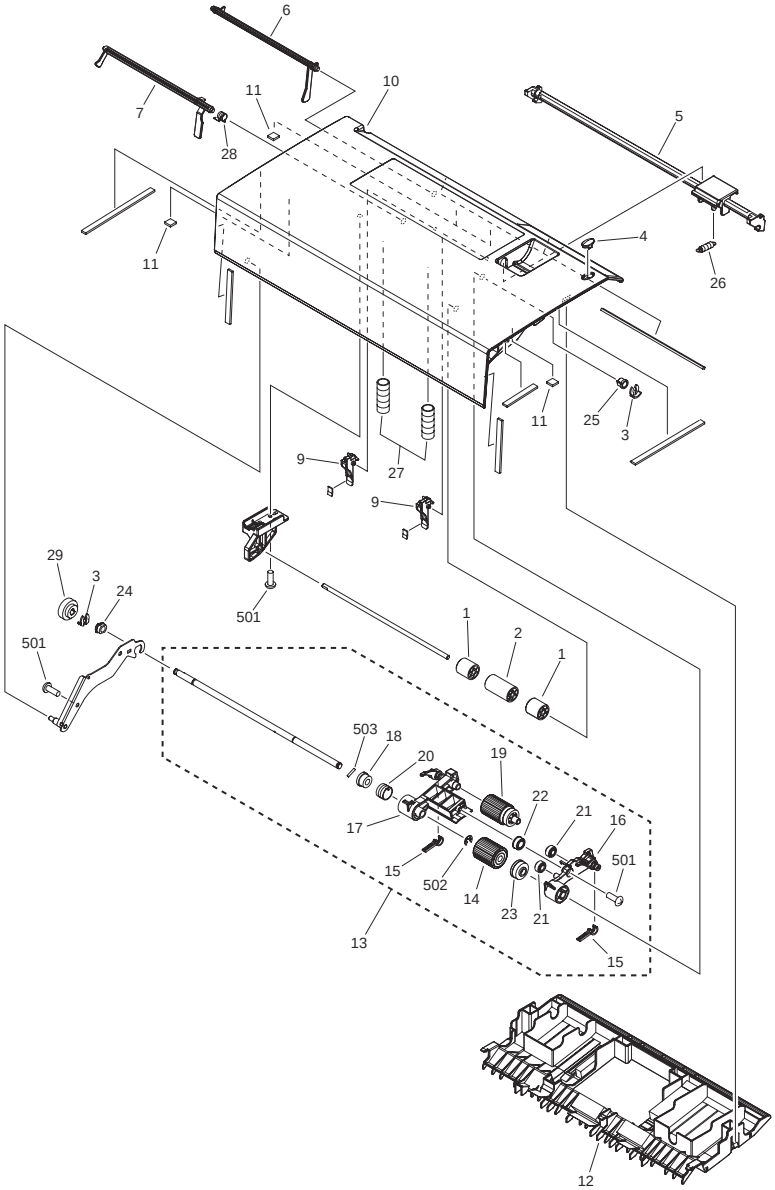


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A12	FM3-6891-000		1	PAPER PICK-UP COVER ASSEMBLY	ADF model	
1	FC5-4323-000		2	ROLLER, REGISTRATION, 1		
2	FC5-4324-000		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION, 2		
3	FC5-4425-000		2	CLIP		
4	FC8-6345-000		1	CASE, LED		
5	FC8-6346-000		1	KNOB, PAPER PICK-UP COVER		
6	FC8-6347-000		1	LEVER, EMPTY SENSOR		
7	FC8-6348-000		1	LEVER, TIMING SENSOR		
9	FC8-6350-000		2	SHUTTER		
10	FL2-9938-000		1	COVER, PAPER PICK-UP		
11	FC8-6403-000		4	DAMPER, REV. GUIDE RETAINING		
12	FL2-9940-000		1	GUIDE, PAPER PICK-UP, LOWER		
13	FM3-6892-000		1	PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER UNIT		
14	FC6-2784-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER SEPARATION		
15	FC6-8971-010		2	LEVER, STOP		
16	FC8-6351-000		1	ARM, PICK, FRONT		
17	FC8-6352-000		1	ARM, PICK, REAR		
18	FC8-6353-000		1	JOINT		
19	FC8-6355-000		1	ROLLER, PICK-UP		
20	FC8-6410-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
21	FU8-0299-000		2	GEAR, 20T		
22	FU8-0300-000		1	GEAR, 22T		
23	FU8-0301-000		1	GEAR, 33T		
24	FU5-1172-000		1	BUSHING		
25	FU5-1626-000		1	BUSHING		
26	FU7-2654-000		1	SPRING, TENSION		
27	FU7-2655-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
28	FU7-2656-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
29	FU8-0302-000		1	GEAR, 24T		
501	XB4-5301-005		4	SCREW,P,M3X10		
502	XD2-1100-402		1	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		
503	XD3-2200-102		1	PIN, PARALLEL		

FIGURE A13
DOCUMENT TRAY ASSEMBLY (ADF model)

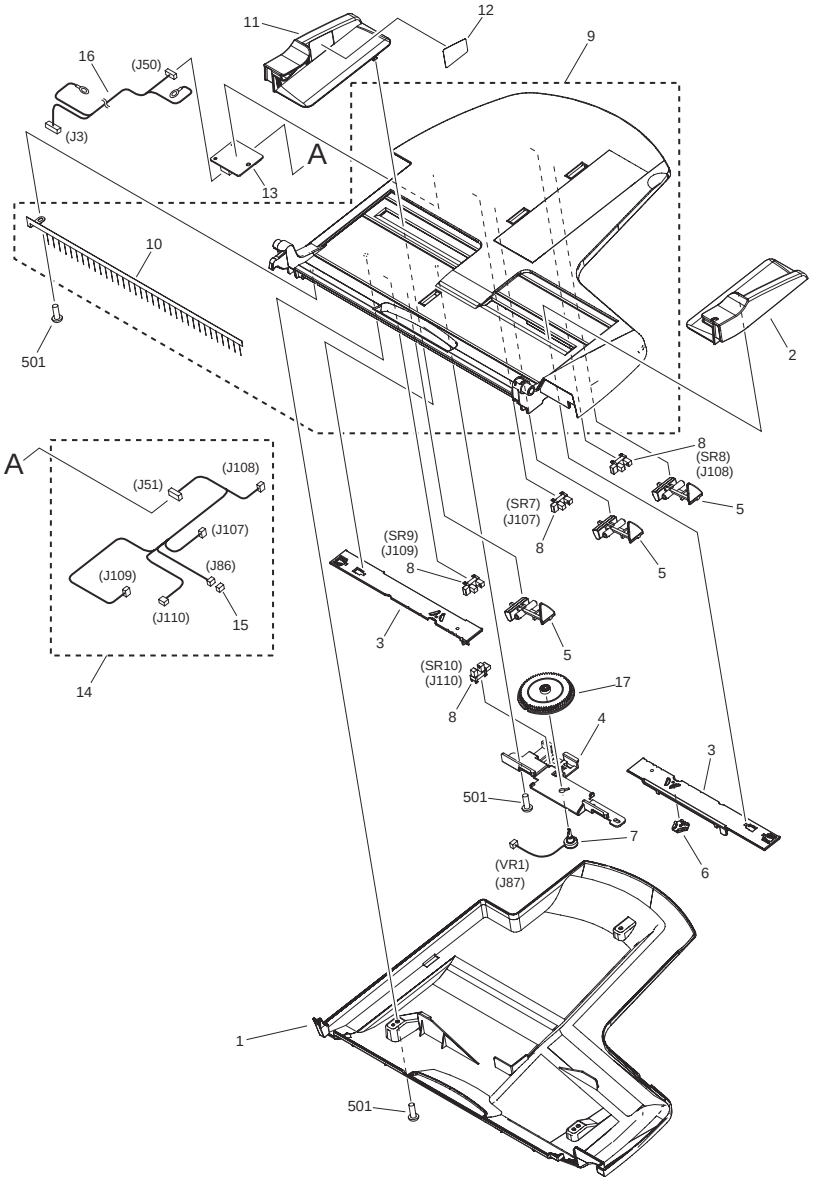


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A13	FM3-6890-000		1	DOCUMENT TRAY ASSEMBLY	ADF model	
1	FL2-9941-000		1	COVER, TRAY, LOWER		
2	FC8-6335-000		1	GUIDE, TRAY, FRONT		
3	FC8-6337-000		2	RACK, TRAY		
4	FC8-6338-000		1	HOLDER, TRAY VOLUME		
5	FC8-6339-000		3	LEVER, TRAY SENSOR		
6	FC8-6340-000		1	RACK, TRAY		
7	FG3-3757-000		1	VARIABLE RESISTOR UNIT	VR1,J87	
8	WG8-5696-000		4	PHOTO INTERRUPTER, TLP1243	SR7,J107 SR8,J108 SR9,J109 SR10,J110	
9	FL2-9943-000		1	TRAY, DOCUMENT		
10	FC8-6341-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE		
11	FC8-6336-000		1	GUIDE, TRAY, REAR		
12	FU6-8741-000		1	LABEL, DOCUMENT MAXIMUM LOAD		
13	FM3-6915-000		1	CONNECTING PCB		
14	FM3-6932-000		1	CABLE, TRAY SENSOR	J107,J108,J109,J110	
15	VS1-7177-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
16	FM3-6933-000		1	CABLE, RELAY	J3,J50	
17	FU8-0298-000		1	GEAR, 62T		
501	XB4-5301-005		6	SCREW,P,M3X10		

FIGURE A21
DRIVE ASSEMBLY (ADF model)

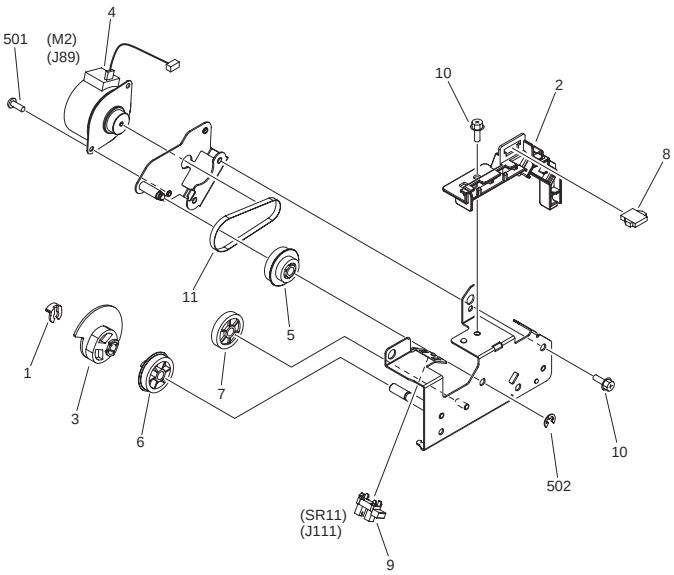
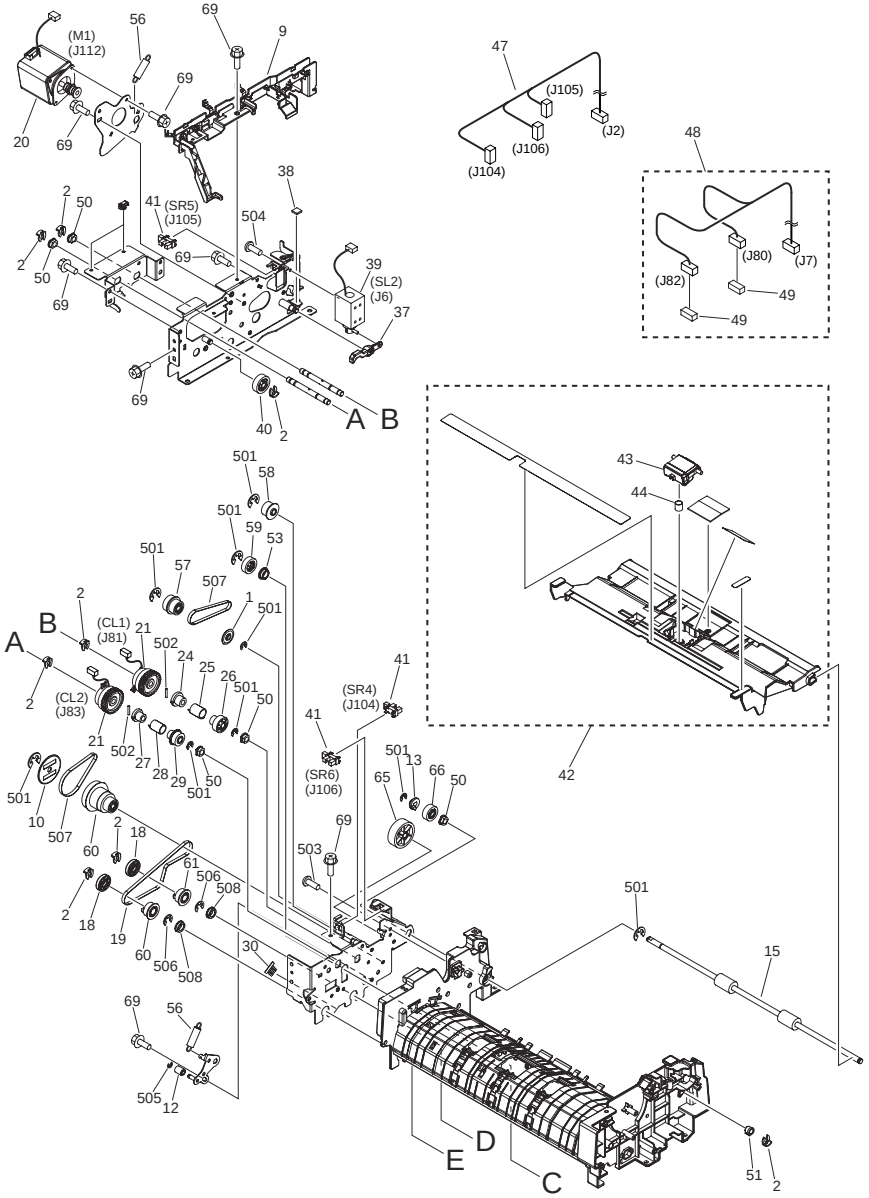


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A21	NPN		RF	DRIVE ASSEMBLY	ADF model	
1	FC5-4425-000		2	CLIP		
2	FC8-6406-000		1	DUCT, ESTRANGEMENT HARNESS		
3	FC8-6407-000		1	CAM, ESTRANGEMENT		
4	FK2-0207-000		1	MOTOR, STEPPING, DC	M2,J89	
5	FU8-0311-000		1	PULLEY/GEAR, 40T/20T		
6	FU8-0319-000		1	GEAR, 31T		
7	FU8-0320-000		1	GEAR, 30T		
8	VS1-7177-004		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
9	WG8-5696-000		1	PHOTO INTERRUPTER, TLP1243	SR11,J111	
10	XA9-0732-000		3	SCREW,RS,M4		
11	XF2-1607-640		1	BELT, TIMING		
501	XB1-2300-309		2	SCREW, MACHINE M3X3,S		
502	XD2-1100-402		1	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		

FIGURE A41
FEEDER ASSEMBLY (ADF model)



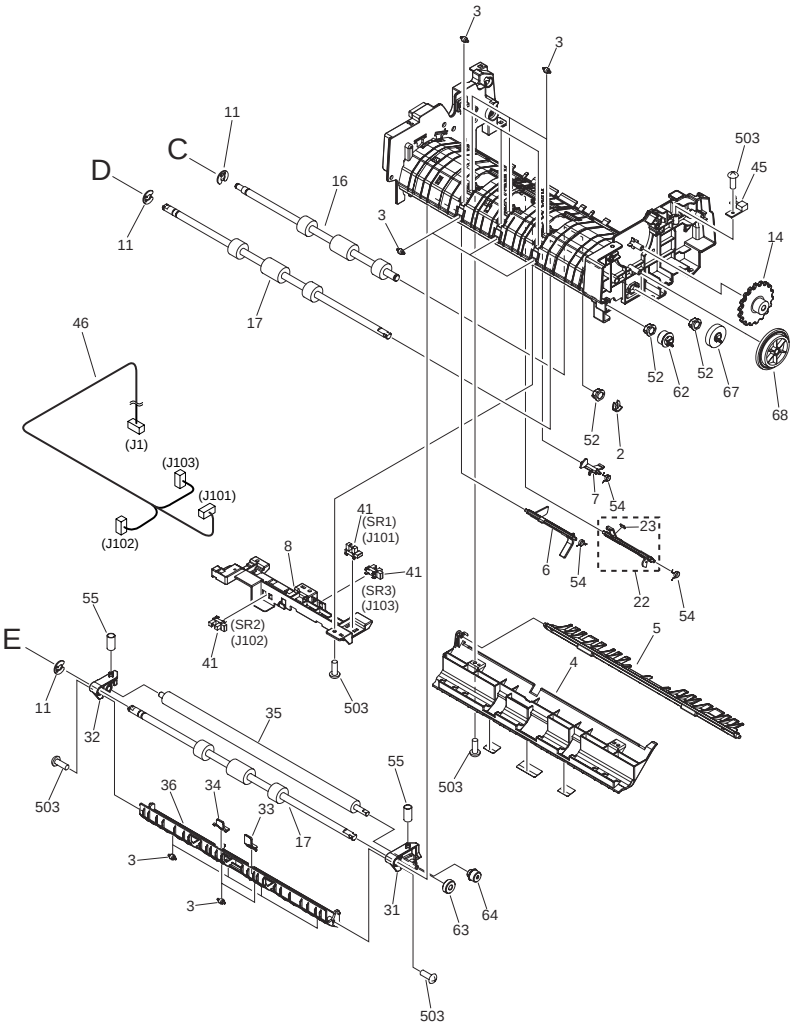

3
3
11
C
D
11
16
3
503
45
14
17
46
52
62
52
67
68
52
2
(J1)
(J103)
(J101)
(J102)
7
54
41
(SR1)
(J101)
23
8
41
6
54
22
54
(SR3)
(J103)
55
(SR2)
(J102)
E
41
5
4
11
503
503
35
55
32
503
36
34
33
17
3
3
31
63
64
503

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A41	FM3-6887-000		1	FEEDER ASSEMBLY	ADF model	
1	FC5-4353-000		1	FLANGE, BELT		
2	FC5-4425-000		9	CLIP		
3	FC6-8973-000		15	ROLLER, PLATEN		
4	FC8-6368-000		1	GUIDE, PLATEN, 2		
5	FC8-6369-000		1	FLAPPER, REVERSE		
6	FC8-6371-000		1	LEVER, READ SENSOR		
7	FC8-6372-000		1	LEVER, PAPER DELIVERY SENSOR		
8	FC8-6377-000		1	HOLDER, SENSOR		
9	FC8-6378-000		1	DUCT, HARNESS		
10	FC8-6379-000		1	FLANGE, PULLEY		
11	FC8-6380-000		3	CLIP		
12	FC8-6382-000		1	ROLLER, BELT TENSION		
13	FC8-6385-000		1	JOINT, DELIVERY GEAR		
14	FC8-6386-000		1	DIAL, JAM		
15	FC8-6395-000		1	ROLLER, DELIVERY		
16	FC8-6396-000		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION		
17	FC8-6397-000		2	ROLLER, READ		
18	FC8-6418-000		2	JOINT, READ PULLEY		
19	FC8-6421-000		1	BELT, TIMING		
20	FK2-6869-000		1	MOTOR, STEPPING, DC	M1,J112	
21	FK2-6870-000		2	CLUTCH, ELECTROMAGNETIC	CL1,J81 CL2,J83	
22	FL2-9937-000		1	FLAG, REGISTRATION SENSOR		
23	FC8-6402-000		1	DAMPER, SENSOR LEVER		
24	FC8-6383-000		1	JOINT, PICK-UP		
25	FC8-6411-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
26	FU8-0304-000		1	GEAR, 22T		
27	FC8-6384-000		1	JOINT, REGISTRATION		
28	FC8-6412-000		1	SPRING, TORSION		
29	FU8-0307-000		1	GEAR, 18T		
30	FC8-6399-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE		
31	FC8-6373-000		1	ARM, PLATEN, FRONT		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
32	FC8-6374-000		1	ARM, PLATEN, REAR		
33	FC8-6375-000		1	SPACER, READ, FRONT		
34	FC8-6376-000		1	SPACER, READ, REAR		
35	FC8-6398-000		1	ROLLER, WHITE		
36	FL2-9939-000		1	GUIDE, PLATEN, 1		
37	FC8-6381-000		1	LINK, SOLENOID		
38	FC8-6403-000		1	DAMPER, REV. GUIDE RETAINING		
39	FK2-6871-000		1	SOLENOID	SL2,J6	
40	FU8-0306-000		1	GEAR, 25T		
41	WG8-5696-000		6	PHOTO INTERRUPTER, TLP1243	SR1,J101 SR2,J102 SR3,J103 SR4,J104 SR5,J105 SR6,J106	
42	FM3-6898-000		1	GUIDE, SEPARATION REVERSE		
43	FL2-9942-000		1	HOLDER, SEPARATION PAD UNIT		
44	FU7-2657-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
45	FM3-6916-000		1	LED PCB		
46	FM3-6930-000		1	CABLE, PASS SENSOR	J1,J101,J102,J103	
47	FM3-6931-000		1	CABLE, PICK-UP SENSOR	J2,J104,J105,J106	
48	FM3-6934-000		1	CABLE, CLUTCH	J7,J80,J82	
49	VS1-7177-002		2	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
50	FU5-1172-000		5	BUSHING		
51	FU5-1626-000		1	BUSHING		
52	FU6-1088-000		3	BUSHING		
53	FU6-1089-000		1	BUSHING		
54	FU7-2658-000		3	SPRING, TORSION		
55	FU7-2659-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION		
56	FU7-2660-000		2	SPRING, TENSION		
57	FU8-0303-000		1	PULLEY/GEAR, 27T/22T		
58	FU8-0305-000		1	GEAR, 18T		
59	FU8-0308-000		1	GEAR, 22T		
60	FU8-0309-000		1	PULLEY/GEAR, 36T/54T/28T		
61	FU8-0310-000		2	PULLEY, 36T		
62	FU8-0312-000		1	GEAR, 18T		

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
63	FU8-0313-000		1	GEAR, 18T		
64	FU8-0314-000		1	GEAR, 14T		
65	FU8-0315-000		1	GEAR, 39T		
66	FU8-0316-000		1	GEAR, 21T		
67	FU8-0317-000		1	GEAR, 32T		
68	FU8-0318-000		1	GEAR, 48T/62T		
69	XA9-1164-000		8	SCREW,RS,M3X6.5		
501	XD2-1100-402		8	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		
502	XD3-2200-122		2	PIN, DOWEL		
503	XB4-5301-005		10	SCREW,P,M3X10		
504	XB1-2300-309		2	SCREW, MACHINE M3X3,S		
505	XD2-1100-322		1	RETAINING RING (E-TYPE)		
506	XD2-1100-642		2	RING,E		
507	XF2-1607-640		2	BELT, TIMING		
508	XG9-0507-000		2	BEARING, BALL, MF128ZZ		

FIGURE A90
ADF CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY (ADF model)

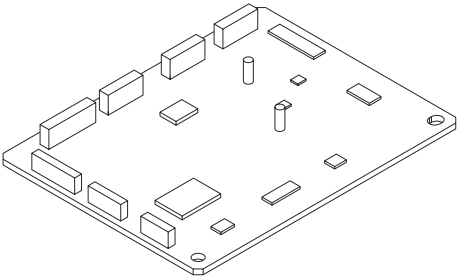


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.A90	FM3-6914-000		1	ADF CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY		

FIGURE T21
ATTACHMENT PARTS (FAX model)

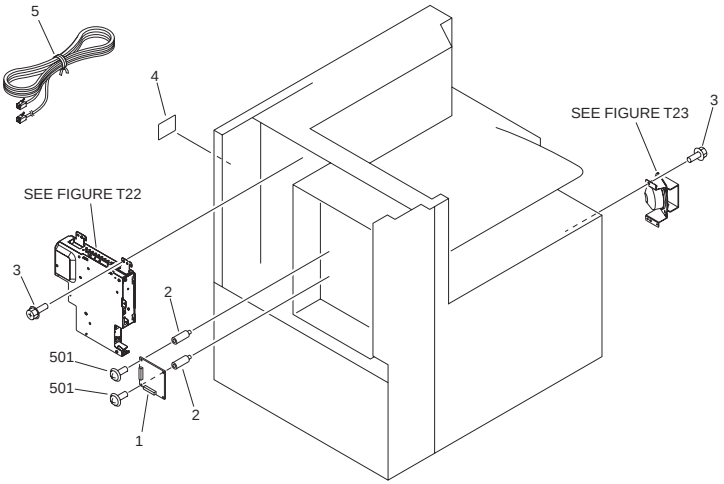


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.T21	NPN		RF	ATTACHMENT PARTS	FAX model	
1	FM3-5617-000		1	G3 FAX EXPANSION PCB ASSEMBLY		
2	VT2-5198-016		2	SPACER, PCB		
3	XA9-1386-000		6	SCREW,RS,M3X8		
4	FC8-9326-000		1	LABEL, MODULAR JACK		
5	HH2-2824-000		1	MODULAR CORD, 2P		
501	XB6-7300-607		4	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		

FIGURE T22
FAX ASSEMBLY (FAX model)

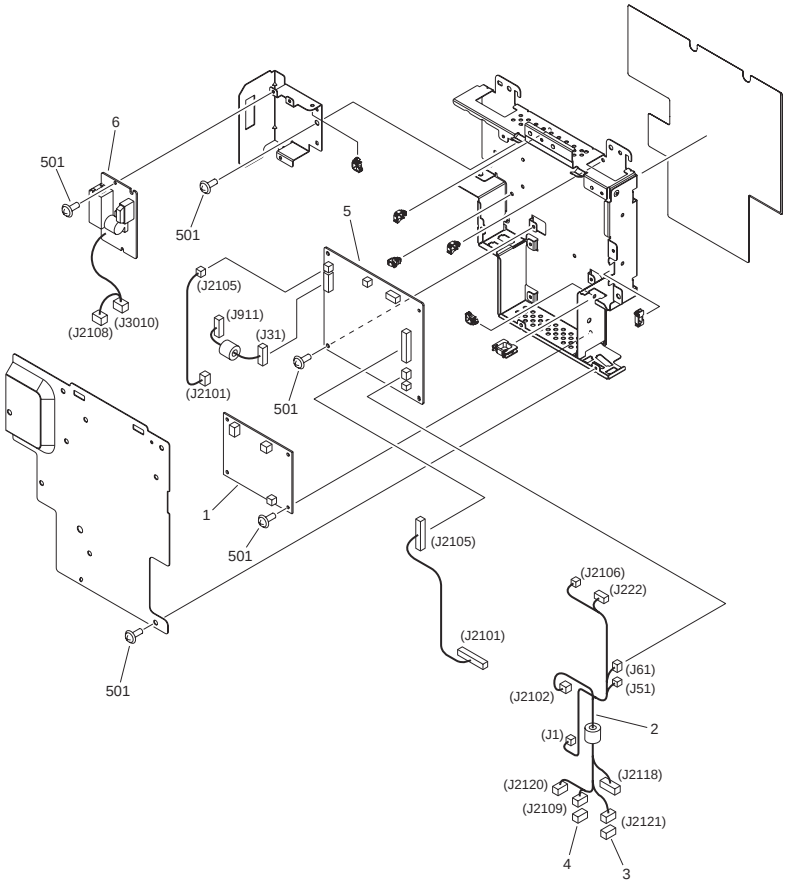


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.T22	NPN		RF	FAX ASSEMBLY	FAX model	
1	FM3-5580-000		1	PSEUDO CI2 PCB ASSEMBLY		
2	FM3-5101-000		1	CABLE, FAX POWER SUPPLY		
3	VS1-7177-002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
4	VS1-7177-003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT, BK		
5	FM3-5586-000		1	G3 FAX PCB ASSEMBLY		
6	FM3-5587-000		1	G3 MODULAR PCB ASSEMBLY		
501	XB6-7300-607		17	SCREW, CROOSS-RECESS, FCH		

FIGURE T23
SPEAKER ASSEMBLY (FAX model)

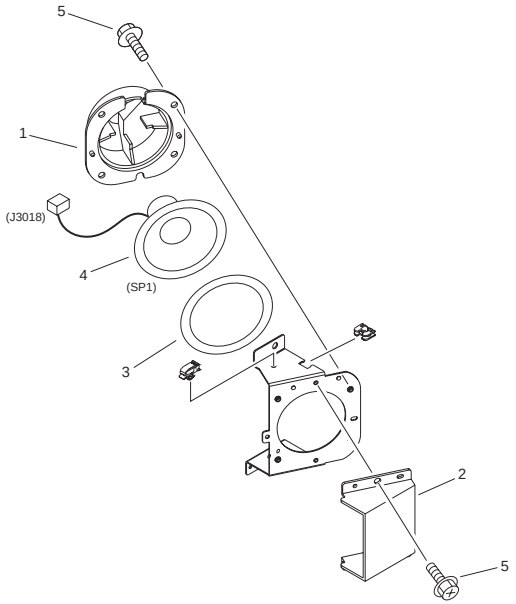


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER/ REMARKS	SVC
Fig.T23	NPN		RF	SPEAKER ASSEMBLY	FAX model	
1	FC5-5472-000		1	HOLDER, SPEAKER		
2	FC5-5473-000		1	DUCT, SPEAKER		
3	FC6-5059-000		1	DAMPER, RUBBER		
4	FK2-0428-000		1	SPEAKER	SP1	
5	XA9-1386-000		6	SCREW,RS,M3X8		